A

GRAMMAR

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE;

FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

BY

E. A. ANDREWS AND S. STODDARD.

THE SIXTY-FIFTH EDITION.

REVISED WITH CORRECTIONS AND ADDITION

BY E. A. ANDREWS, LL. D.

PREFACE.

As more than twenty years have elapsed, since the first publication of this Grammar, it can scarcely be necessary, in offering to the public a revised edition of the work, to make more than a passing allusion to its original plan or to the circumstances to which it owed its origin.

For some years previous to the date of its publication, the progress of classical learning in Europe, and particularly in Germany, had been such, as plainly to indicate the necessity of a corresponding advance in the manuals of Latin grammar employed in the schools of this country. Their deficiencies had indeed become so apparent, that various attempts had already been made to furnish a remedy by means of translations of German grammars; but none of these, however excellent in many respects, had seemed to be fully adapted to the purpose for which they were intended.

To unite the acknowledged excellencies of the older English manuals and of the more recent German grammars was the special aim of the authors of this work; and to this end their attention was directed, first to the preparation of more extended rules for the pronunciation of the language, secondly to a clearer exposition of its inflectional changes, thirdly to the proper basis of its syntax, and fourthly to greater precision in its rules and definitions.

The system of rules for the division and accentuation of Latin words, prepared in pursuance of the plan which has just been specified, was accordingly more copious than any previously found in the Latin grammars in common use in this country. For the purpose also of preventing the formation of erroneous habits of pronunciation in the early part of the student's course, the penultimate quantities of all Latin words occurring in the Grammar were carefully marked, unless determinable by some general rule, and the paradigms were divided and accented in such a manner as to indicate their true pronunciation.

In their treatment of Latin etymology, the authors aimed to render its study less a mere exercise of memory, and in a greater degree an efficient aid in the general cultivation of the mental powers. The principal means adopted for this purpose consisted in the practical distinction, every where made in treating inflected words, between the root, or ground-form, and the termination.

The third prominent peculiarity of the original work was its direct derivation of the rules of Syntax from the logical analysis of sentences, and its distinct specification of the particular use of each of the several words of which a sentence is composed. This method of treating syntax—a method previously unknown in the schools of this country—has, since that period, been extensively adopted, and in some instances greatly extended, particularly in a portion of the English grammars recently published in this country, and has probably contributed more to the advancement of grammatical science, than any other innovation of modern times.

The errors noticed in the original work have been corrected, as successive editions have issued from the press, but no opportunity has occurred, until the present, of thoroughly revising it in every part. Two years of continuous labor have now been devoted to its revision, and to the purpose of rendering it conformable in all respects to the advanced position which it originally aspired to occupy.

In all the modifications which have now been made, I have aimed to accomplish these two purposes—to preserve, as far as possible, the identity of the work, and at the same time to bring it as near, as should be practicable, to the present state of philological science. Hence, while I have made no changes either in language or arrangement, but such as appeared to me quite necessary, I have omitted none which logical accuracy or requisite fulness of explanation seemed to demand. In doing even this it soon became evident, that the changes and additions must be more numerous, than would well consist with the convenient use of the old and the new editions in the same classes. Though not insensible of the trouble occasioned to the teacher by alterations in a familiar text-book, I could not but suppose, that such modifications as the progress of the last twenty years had rendered necessary, would still be welcomed by him, notwithstanding the personal inconvenience arising from the disturbance of his previous associations. To his pupils, who will have known no other form of the Grammar, than that in which it now appears, the work, it is believed, will not only be as easy of comprehension in its new, as in its old form, but in its practical application far more satisfactory.

Of the minor changes and additions occurring on almost every page, and even of the occasional rearrangement of small portions of the materials, it is unnecessary to speak particularly. The student familiar with former editions will at once detect these slight modifications, and note them in his memory for future use; and though he may fail to find a rule, exception, or remark on the page where he has been wont to see it, he will still meet with it in the same relative position,—in the same section and subdivision of the section in which it formerly appeared.

In the department of Orthoëpy will now be found some account of the Continental mode of pronouncing Latin; and, by means of the joint exhibition of

this and of the English methods, the student will be able to use the Grammar with equal facility, whether choosing to adhere to the usual pronunciation of English and American scholars, or preferring that of the continental schools.

In the Etymology of nouns, no other alteration need be specified, except the introduction, in the third declension, of "Rules for forming the nominative singular from the root." These are copied, in a modified form, from the editor's First Latin Book. In themselves they are of considerable utility in showing the mutual relations between the sounds of certain letters, and they are also closely connected with corresponding changes in some of the verbal roots. In the Etymology of adjectives, besides the minor modifications already alluded to, a few changes in arrangement have been made in those sections which relate to Comparison. To pronouns have been added some remarks on Pronominal Adjectives, which seemed to require a more particular notice, than they had heretofore received, both in their relation to each other and to the Adverbial Correlatives. The Etymology of particles has been treated somewhat more fully than in former editions—a fulness especially observable in relation to adverbs and conjunctions, and which was rendered necessary by the more extended treatment of those particles in the revised Syntax.

In almost every section of the Syntax the student will meet with modifications and especially with additions, which, as in other parts of the work, are introduced in such a manner as seldom to interfere with the references made to former editions in the series based upon this Grammar. The principal exception to the latter remark is to be found in sections 247—251, which relate to certain uses of the ablative.

A comparison of the Prosody in the present and former editions will show, that it has been revised with minute care in every part. Similar attention has also been given to the Appendix, in which will be found some additions relating to Roman Money, Weights and Measures. For the greater convenience of the student the Index in this edition has been much enlarged.

In conclusion, I would briefly indicate the principal sources from which have been derived the various additions and corrections, to which allusion has been made. In preparing the original work, the earlier editions of Zumpt's Grammar were consulted at almost every step, and while frequent use was made of the grammars of Scheller, Grant, Adam, Ruddiman, Hickie and others, the treatises of Zumpt were even then regarded as the most valuable embodiment of the principles of Latin philology. It was therefore natural and almost unavoidable, in revising a work which had in so many points received both its form and its substance from the earlier labors of that distinguished grammarian, to look to his maturer works for many of the materials by means of which our original sketch should be made more complete. Accordingly I have constantly consulted the last edition of his Grammar, translated by Dr. Schmitz, and have freely incorporated in this edition such

1*

of its materials, as were suited to my purpose. In most cases his ideas have been either expressed in my own language, or in language so modified as to suit the general plan of my work. In the Etymology, and not unfrequently in the Syntax also, the copious Grammar of Ramshorn has furnished valuable materials; and the Grammars of Key and of Kühner, the latter translated by Prof. Champlin, have been consulted with profit and satisfaction. In the sections comprising conjunctions, and especially in those relating to grammatical analysis, I am happy to acknowledge my indebtedness to Prof. S. S. Greene of Brown University. To the sources already specified I must add the Latin Lexicon of Dr. Freund, in editing a translation of which I had frequent occasion to note such matters as promised to be of utility in the revision of this Grammar. The additions in the Appendix relating to Roman money, etc., are taken principally from Dr. Riddle's translation of Dr. Freund's School Dictionary. To these references I will only add, that such other notes relating to Latin philology, as I have made during the past twenty years, so far as they were adapted to my purpose, have either been used in my former occasional corrections, or are incorporated in the present edition.

In taking a final leave of the earliest of the elementary Latin works with which my name has been associated, and with which, in my own mind, must ever be connected the pleasant memory of my early friend and associate, Prof. Stoddard, I trust I shall be pardoned in commending it once more to the kind indulgence of the teachers of this country, and in expressing the hope that, in its present form, it will be deemed not altogether unworthy of a continuance of the favor which it has so long received. I cannot indeed venture to indulge the hope, that all the imperfections of the work have even now been removed, or that, in my attempts to render it more perfect, I may not sometimes have fallen into new errors; but this I can truly say, that since its first publication I have devoted much time to its revision, and have sought to manifest my sense of the kindness with which it has been received, by doing all in my power to render it less unworthy of public favor.

E. A. ANDREWS.

New Britain, Conn., Oct., 1857.

CONTENTS.

LATIN GRAMMAR.

§ **1.** The Latin language is the language spoken by the ancient Romans. Latin Grammar teaches the principles of the Latin language. These relate,

1. To its written characters;
2. To its pronunciation;
3. To the classification and derivation of its words;
4. To the construction of its sentences;
5. To the quantity of its syllables, and its versification.

The first part is called Orthography; the second, Orthoëpy; the third, Etymology; the fourth, Syntax; and the fifth, Prosody.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

§ **2.** Orthography treats of the letters, and other characters of written language, and the proper mode of spelling words.

1. The Latin alphabet consists of twenty-five letters. They have the same names as the corresponding characters in English. They are A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

2. The Romans used only the capital letters.
3. *I* and *j* were anciently but one character, as were likewise *u* and *v*.
4. *W* is not found in Latin words, and *k* occurs only at the beginning of a few words before *a*, and even in these *c* is commonly used, except in their abbreviated form; as, *K* or *Kal.* for *Kalendæ* or *Calendæ*, the Calends.
5. *Y* and *z* are found only in words derived from the Greek.
6. *H*, though called a letter, only denotes a breathing, or aspiration.

DIVISION OF LETTERS.

§ **3.**   Letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*.

1. The vowels are . . . . *a, e, i, o, u, y.*

The consonants are
divided into
{
Liquids, ... *l, m, n, r.*
Mutes,
{
Labials, ... *p, b, f, v.*
Palatals, ... *c, g, k, q, j.*
Linguals, ... *t, d.*
}
Sibilant, ... *s.*
Double consonants, ... *x, z.*
Aspirate, ... *h.*
}

2. *X* is equivalent to *cs* or *gs; z* to *ts* or *ds;* and, except in compound words, the double consonant is always written, instead of the letters which it represents. In some Greek words *x* is equivalent to *chs.*

DIPHTHONGS.

§ **4.**   Two vowels, in immediate succession, in the same syllable, are called a *diphthong.*

The diphthongs are *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe, oi, ua, ue, ui, uo, uu,* and *yi. Ae* and *oe* are frequently written together, *æ, œ.*

PUNCTUATION.

§ **5.**   The only mark of punctuation used by the ancients was a point, which denoted pauses of different length, according as it was placed at the top, the middle, or the bottom of the line. The moderns use the same marks of punctuation, in writing and printing Latin, as in their own languages, and assign to them the same power.

Marks of *quantity* and of *accent* are sometimes found in Latin authors, especially in elementary works:—

1. There are three marks of quantity, viz. ˘, ¯, ⨯; the first denotes that the vowel over which it stands is short; the second, that it is long; the third, that it is doubtful, that is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

2. There are also three written accents—the acute (´), the grave (`), and the circumflex (^). These were used by the old grammarians to denote the rising and sinking of the voice in the Roman mode of pronouncing words. (See §§ 14 and 15.) In modern elementary Latin works, the acute marks the emphatic syllable of a word, (§ 16), the grave distinguishes certain particles from other words spelled in the same manner; as, *quòd,* because; *quod,* which; and the circumflex is placed over certain penultimate and final syllables that are formed by contraction.

The diæresis (¨) denotes that the vowel over which it stands does not form a diphthong with the preceding vowel; as, *aër,* the air.   It is used principally with *ae, ai,* and *oe.*

ORTHOËPY.

§ 6.   Orthoëpy treats of the right pronunciation of words.

The ancient pronunciation of the Latin language being in a great measure lost, the learned, in modern times, have applied to it those principles which regulate the pronunciation of their own languages; and hence has arisen, in different countries, a great diversity of practice.

The various systems now prevalent in Europe, may, however, be reduced to two—the *Continental* and the *English*—the former prevailing, with only slight diversities, in most of the countries of continental Europe, and the latter in England.   Their principal difference is found in the pronunciation of the vowels and diphthongs, since, in both methods, the consonants are pronounced in nearly the same manner.

The Continental Method.

[According to this system, each of the vowels, when standing at the end of a syllable, is considered as having but one sound, which, however, may be either short or long.   Thus,

Short ă, as in hat.	Long ō, as in no.
Long ā, as in father.	Short ŭ, as in tub.
Short ĕ, as in met.	Long ū, as in full.
Long ē, as in there.	æ *or* œ, as *e* in there.
Short ĭ, as in sit.	au, as *ou* in our.
Long ī, as in machine.	eu, as in feudal.
Short ŏ, as in not.	ei, as *i* in ice.

REMARK.   These sounds are sometimes slightly modified when followed by a consonant in the same syllable.]

The English Method.

In the following rules for dividing and pronouncing Latin words, regard has been had both to English analogy and to the laws of Latin accentuation.   See § 14 and 15.   The basis of this system is that which is exhibited by Walker in his "Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names."   To pronounce correctly, according to this method, a knowledge of the following particulars is requisite:—

1. Of the *sounds* of the letters in all their combinations.
2. Of the *quantities* of the penultimate and final syllables.
3. Of the place of the *accent*, both primary and secondary.
4. Of the mode of dividing words into *syllables*.

OF THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

I. Of the Vowels.

§ 7.   A vowel, when ending an accented syllable, has always its long English sound; as,

pa′-ter, de′-dit, vi′-vus, to′-tus, tu′-ba, Ty′-rus; in which the accented vowels are pronounced as in *fatal, metre, vital, total, tutor, tyrant.*

1. *A*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, has nearly the sound of *a* in *father* or in *ah*, but less distinct or prolonged; as, *mu'-sa, e-pis'-tŏ-la, a-cer'-bus, Pal-a-mē'-des;* pronounced *mu'-zah*, etc.

2. *E, o,* and *u*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, have nearly the same sound as when accented, but shorter and less distinct; as, *re'-te, vo'-lo, u'-su-i.*

3. (*a.*) *I* final has always its long sound; as, *qui, au'-di-le-gā'-ti.*

REM. 1. The final *i* of *tibi* and *sibi* has its short sound.

(*b.*) *I*, at the end of an unaccented syllable not final, has an indistinct sound like short *e*; as, *Fa'-bi-us* (fa'-be-us), *phi-los'-o-phus* (phe-los'-o-phus).

EXC. *I* has its long sound in the first syllable of a word the second of which is accented, when it either stands alone before a consonant, as in *i-do'-ne-us,* or ends a syllable before a vowel, as in *fi-ē'-bam.*

REM. 2. *Y* is always pronounced like *i* in the same situation.

§ 8. A vowel has always its *short* English sound, when followed by a consonant in the same syllable; as,

mag'-nus, reg'-num, fin'-go, hoc, fus'-tis, cyg'nus, in which the vowels are pronounced as in *mammet, seldom, finish, copy, lustre, symbol.*

EXCEPTION 1. *A*, when it follows *qu* before *dr* and *rt*, has the sounds of *a* in *quadrant* and in *quart;* as, *qua'-dro, quad-ra-gin'-ta, quar'-tus.* In other connections *a* before *r* has the sound of *a* in *part;* as, *par-tĭ-ceps, ar'-ma;* except when followed by another *r*, as in *par-ri-cī'-da.*

EXC. 2. *Es*, at the end of a word, is pronounced like the English word *ease;* as, *ig'-nes, au'-des.*

EXC. 3. *Os*, at the end of plural cases, is pronounced like *ose* in *dose;* as, *nos, il'-los, dom'-ĭ-nos.*

EXC. 4. *Post* is pronounced like the same word in English; so also are its compounds; as, *post'-quam, post'-e-a;* but not its derivatives; as, *pos-trē'-mus.*

EXC. 5. *E, i* and *y* before final *r*, or before *r* in a syllable not final, when followed in the next syllable by any other consonant, except *r*, have the sound of *e* and *i* in the English words *her* and *fir;* as, *fer, fert, fer'tĭ-lis; hir, hir'-cus, myr'-tus.*

II. OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

§ 9. *Ae* and *oe* are always diphthongs unless separated by diæresis. They are pronounced as *e* would be in the same situation; as, *œ'-tas, œs'-tas, pœ'-na, œs'-trum.*

1. *Ai, ei, oi,* and *yi,* usually have the vowels pronounced separately. When they are accented, and followed by another vowel, the *i* is pronounced like initial *y*, and the vowel before it has its long sound; as, *Maia, Pompeius, Troia, Harpyia;* pronounced *Ma'-ya, Pom-pe'-yus, Tro'-ya, Har-py'-ya.*

REMARK 1: *Ei*, when a diphthong and not followed by another vowel, is pronounced like *i*; as in *hei*, *om'-neis*.

2. *Au*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like *aw*; as, *laus*, *au'-rum*, pronounced *laws*, etc.

REM. 2. In the termination of Greek proper names, the letters *au* are pronounced separately; as, *Men-e-lā-us*.

3. *Eu*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like long *u*; as, *heu*, *Orpheus* (or'-phuse), *Eu-phrā-tes*.

REM. 3. The letters *eu* are pronounced separately in the terminations *eus* and *eum* of *Latin* nouns, and of all adjectives, whether Greek or Latin, except *neuter*; as, *ur'-ce-us*, *me'-us*, *me'-um*, *e'-um*. In other terminations they form a diphthong; as, *Eu-rō'-pa*, *Thē'-seus*, *e'-heu*.

4. *Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, *uu*, when diphthongs, are pronounced like *wa*, *we*, etc.; as, *lin'-gua*, *quĕ'-ror*, *sua'-de-o*, *quŏ'-tus*, *ĕ'-quus*. They are always diphthongs after *q*, usually also after *g*, and often after *s*.

5. *Ui* in *cui* and *huic*, when monosyllables, is pronounced like *wi*, and by some like long *i*.

III. OF THE CONSONANTS.

§ 10. The consonants have, in general, the same power in Latin as in English words.

The following cases, however, require particular attention.

C.

C has the sound of *s* before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *œ*, *œ*, and *eu*; as, *ce'-do*, *cĭ'-bus*, *Cœ'-sar*, *cœ'-lum*, *ceu*, *Cy'-rus*. In other situations, it has the sound of *k*; as, *Ca'-to*, *cr   dus*, *lac*.

1. *Ch* has always the sound of *k*; as, *cha   (kar'-tah)*, *machĭna* (mak'-ĕ-nah).

EXC. *C*, following or ending an accented syllable, before *i* followed by a vowel, and also before *eu* and *yo*, has the sound of *sh*; as, *socia* (so'-she-ah), *caduceus* (ca-du'she-us), *Sicyon* (sish'-e-on).

REMARK. In the pronunciation of the ancient Romans, the hard sound of *c* and *g* seems to have been retained in all their combinations.

G.

G has its soft sound, like *j*, before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *œ* and *œ*; as, *ge'-nus*, *ag'-ĭ-lis*, *Gy'-ges*, *Gœ-tū'-li*. In other situations, it has its hard sound, as in *bag*, *go*.

EXC. When *g* comes before *g* soft, it coalesces with it in sound; as, *agger* (aj'-er), *exaggeratio* (ex-aj-e-ra'-she-o).

S.

§ 11. *S* has generally its hissing sound, as in *so*, *thus*.

EXC. 1. (*a*.) When *si* followed by a vowel is immediately preceded by a consonant in an accented syllable, the *s* has the sound of *sh*; as, *Per'-si-a* (per'-she-a).

2

(*b.*) But when *si* or *zi* followed by a vowel is immediately preceded by an accented vowel, the *s* or *z* has the sound of *zh ;* as, *As-pa'-si-a* (as-pa'-zhe-ah), *Sa-ba'-zi-a* (sa-ba'-zhe-ah).

NOTE. In a few proper names, *s* preceded by a vowel in an accented syllable and followed by *i* before another vowel, has the sound, not of *zh*, but of *sh ;* as, *A'-si-a* (a'-she-a): so *Sosia, Theodosia, Lysias.*

EXC. 2. *S*, at the end of a word, after *e, œ, au, b, m, n,* and *r,* has the sound of *z ;* as, *res, œs, laus, trabs, hĭ'-ems, lens, Mars.*

English analogy has also occasioned the *s* in *Cœ'-sar, cœ-sŭ'-ra, mi'-ser, mu'-sa, re-sid'-u-um, cau'-sa, ro'-sa,* and their derivatives, and in some other words, to take the sound of *z.* *Cœs-a-re'-a,* and the oblique cases of *Cæsar,* retain the hissing sound; so likewise the compounds of *trans ;* as, *trans'-e-o.*

T.

§ **12.** 1. *T*, following or ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, has the sound of *sh ;* as, *ratio* (ra'-she-o), *Sulpi-tius* (sul-pish'-e-us).

EXC. *T,* in such case, retains its hard sound *(a)* after *s, t,* or *x ;* as, *Sal-lus'-ti-us, Brut'-ti-i, Sex'-ti-us:* (*b*) in proper names in *tion* and *tyon ;* as, *Eu-ryt'-i-on, Am-phic'-ty-on ;* and (*c*) in old infinitives in *er ;* as, *flec'-ti-er,* for *flec'-tĭ.*

X.

2. *X*, at the beginning of a syllable, has the sound of *z ;* at the end, that of *ks ;* as, *Xenŏphon* (zen'-o-phon) ; *axis* (ak'-sis).

EXC. 1. When *ex* or *ux* is followed by a vowel in an accented syllable, *x* has the sound of *gz ;* as, *exemplum* (eg-zem'-plum), *ux-o'-ri-us* (ug-zo'-re-us), *inexhaustus* (in-eg-zaus'-tus).

EXC. 2. *X,* ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, and before *u* ending a syllable, has the power of *ksh ;* as, *noxius* (nok'-she-us), *pexui* (pek'-shu-i).

REMARK. *Ch* and *ph,* before *th,* in the beginning of a word, are silent; as, *Chthonia* (tho'-ni-a), *Phthia* (thi'-a). Also in the following combinations of consonants, in the beginning of words of Greek origin, the first letter is not sounded :—*mne-mon'-ĭ-ca, gna'-vus, tme'-sis, Cte'-si-as, Ptol-e-mœ'-us, psal'-lo.*

OF THE QUANTITIES OF THE PENULTIMATE AND FINAL SYLLABLES.

§ **13.** 1. The *quantity* of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it.

2. A *short* syllable requires, in pronunciation, half the time of a *long* one.

REM. The *penultimate* syllable, or *penult,* is the last syllable but one. The *antepenult* is the last syllable but two.

The quantity of a syllable is generally to be learned from the rules of prosody, §§ 282—301; but for the convenience of the student, the following general rules are here inserted :—

3. A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short.

4. Diphthongs, not beginning with *u,* are long.

5. A vowel before *x, z, j,* or any two consonants, except a mute followed by a liquid, is long by *position,* as it is called.

6. A vowel naturally short before a mute followed by a liquid is common, *i. e.* either long or short.

In this Grammar, when the quantity of a penult is determined by one of the preceding rules, it is not marked; in other cases, except in dissyllables, the proper mark is written over its vowel.

To pronounce Latin words correctly, it is necessary to ascertain the quantities of their last two syllables only; and the rules for the quantities of final syllables would, for this purpose, be unnecessary, but for the occasional addition of enclitics. As these are generally monosyllables, and, for the purpose of accentuation, are considered as parts of the words to which they are annexed, they cause the final syllable of the original word to become the penult of the compound. But as the enclitics begin with a consonant, the final vowels of all words ending with a consonant, if previously short, are, by the addition of an enclitic, made long by position. It is necessary, therefore, to learn the quantities of those final syllables *only* which end with a *vowel.*

OF ACCENTUATION.

I. OF LATIN ACCENTS.

§ **14.**   1. Accent, in Latin, signifies the rising and falling of the voice in pronouncing the syllables of a Latin word. It is a general rule of the Latin language, that every word has its accent. The enclitics, however, have no accent of their own, but they modify the accent of the words to which they are annexed, and prepositions lose their accent, when they precede the cases which they govern.

2. The Latin language has three accents, the acute (´), or rising tone, the grave (`), or falling tone, and the circumflex (^), composed of the acute and the grave, i. e. of the rising and the falling tone.

3. A monosyllable, when short by nature, takes the acute, when long by nature, the circumflex accent; as, *pix, ét, párs; dôs, jûs, spês.*

4. In words of two syllables, the penult is always accented; as, *pă'ter, mā'-ter, pen'-na.*

REM. 1. Words of two syllables have the circumflex accent, when the vowel of the penult is naturally long and that of the last syllable short; as, *Rô-mā, mû-sā, lû-cĕ, jû-rĭs;* if otherwise, they have the acute; as, *hŏ'-mŏ, dĕ'ās, Rō'-mă* (abl.), and *ar'-tĕ,* in which *a* is long only by position.

5. In words of more than two syllables, if the *penult* is *long,* it is accented; but if it is *short,* the accent is on the *antepenult;* as, *a-mī'-cus, dom'-ĭ-nus.*

REM. 2. When the accent of a word of more than two syllables falls upon the penult, it may be either the circumflex or the acute according as the last syllable is short or long. The antepenult can take no accent except the acute, and in no case can the accent be drawn farther back than to the antepenult.

EXC. Vocatives of the second declension in *i,* instead of *ie,* from nominatives in *ius,* and genitives in *i,* instead of *ii,* are accented as they would be, if the rejected letters were annexed, i. e. with the acute upon the penult, even when it is short; as, *Vir-gíl-i; Va-lĕ'-ri, in-gĕ'-ni.* So, also, the compounds of *facio* with words which are not prepositions; as, *cal-e-fă'-cit, tep-e-fă'-cit.*

§ **15.**   If the penult is *common,* the accent, in prose, is upon the *antepenult;* as, *vol'-ŭ-cris, phar'-ĕ-tra, ib'-ĭ-que:* but genitives in *ius,* in which *i* is common, accent their *penult* in prose; as, *u-nī'-us, is-tī'-us.*

REM. 3. All the syllables of a Latin word, except that on which the acute or circumflex accent falls, are supposed to have the grave accent, and were pronounced with the lower tone.

1. The rules for the *accentuation* of compound and simple words are the same; as, *se'-cum, sub'-e-o.*

2. In accentuation, the enclitics *que, ne, ve,* and also those which are annexed to pronouns,* are accounted constituent parts of the words to which they are subjoined; as, *ĭ'-ta, ĭt'-ă-que ; vĭ'-rum, vi-rum'-que.*

II. OF ENGLISH ACCENTS.

§ 16. Accent, in English, is a particular stress of voice upon certain syllables of words. Cf. § 5, 2.

According to the English method of pronouncing Latin, a word may have two, three, or even four accents. That accent which is nearest to the termination of the word, and which always corresponds in position with the Latin accent, is called the *primary* or *principal* accent, and the *secondary* accent is that which next precedes the primary. The *third* and *fourth* accents, in like manner, precede the secondary, and are subject in all respects to the same rules; as, *pă'-ter, mă'-ter, ser-mŏ'-nes, dom'-ĭ-nis ; pe-rīc'-ŭ-lum, con''-ju-ra'-ti-o, op'''-por-tu''-ni-tă'-tes, ex-er''''-ci-ta'''-ti-on'-i-bus'-que.*

1. If only two syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary accent is on the first; as, *mod''-e-rā'-tus, tol''-e-rab'-ĭ-lis.*

2. If three or four syllables stand before the primary accent, the secondary accent is placed, sometimes on the first, and sometimes on the second syllable; as, *de-mon''-stra-ban'-tur, ad''-o-les-cen''-ti-a.*

3. Some words which have only four syllables before the primary accent, and all which have more than four, have *three* accents; as, *mod'''-e-ra''-ti-ō'-nis, tol'''-e-ra-bil''-i-ō'-rem, ex-er''''-ci-ta''-ti-ō'-nis.*

DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

VOWELS.

§ 17. Every Latin word is to be divided into as many syllables, as it has separate vowels and diphthongs.

REMARK. In the following rules, the term *vowel* includes not only single vowels, but diphthongs; and when a particular vowel is mentioned, a diphthong, also, ending with that vowel is intended.

CONSONANTS.

SPECIAL RULES.

§ 18. REMARK. The following special rules, relating to particular letters or to particular combinations of letters, are in all cases to be regarded rather than the general rules, §§ 19—23, when the latter are inconsistent with the former.

1. *H*, when standing alone between two vowels, is always joined to the vowel that follows it.

Thus, *mĭ'-hi, tra'-hĕ-re, co'-hors, co''-hor-ta'-ti-o.*

---

* These are *te, met, pte, ce, cĭne,* and *dem ;* as, *tute, egŏmet, meapte, hicce, hiccĭne, idem.*

2. *Ch*, *ph*, and *th*, in the division of words into syllables, are considered, not as separate letters, but as single aspirated mutes, and hence are never separated.

Thus, *A-chil′-les*, *Ach″-ra-di′-na*, *Neph′-ĕ-le*, *Te′-thys*.

3. *Gl*, *tl*, and *thl*, when standing alone between any two vowels, unless the first be *u*, and *bl* after *u* are always separated.

Thus, *Æg′-le*, *Ag-lau′-rus*, *At′-las*, *ath-let′-i-cus ;—Pub′-li-us*, *Pub-lic′-ŏ-la*, *res-pub′-li-ca*.

4. In writing syllables, *x*, when standing alone between two vowels, is united to the vowel before it, but, in pronouncing such syllables, its elementary sounds are separated.

Thus, *sax′-um* (sak′-sum); *ax-il′-la* (ak-sil′-lah); *ex-em′-plum* (eg-zem′-plum); *ux-o′-ri-us* (ug-zo′-re-us).

GENERAL RULES.

I. SIMPLE WORDS.

§ **19.**   A.—*A single Consonant between two Vowels.*

1. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, between the *last two vowels* of a word, or between the vowels of any two *unaccented* syllables, must be joined to the latter vowel.

Thus, *t* in *pă′-ter* and *au′-tem ; th* in *œ′-ther ; cl* in *Hi-er′-ŏ-cles ; q* in *ă′-qua ; cr* in *ă′-cris* and *vol′-ŭ-cris ; chr* in *a′-chras ; r* in *tol″-e-ra-bil′-i-us ; m* in *et″-y-mo-lŏ′-gi-a ; l* in *am″-bu-lā-tŏ′-ri-us ;* and *gr* in *per″-e-gri-na′-ti-o.* Respecting *ch* and *th* cf. § 18, 2.

Exc. *Tib′-i* and *sib′-i* are commonly excepted.

§ **20.**   2. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, *before* the vowel of an accented syllable, must be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *t* in *i-tin′-ĕ-ra ; d* in *vi-dē′-to ; th* in *œ-the′-ri-us ; cl* in *Eu-clī′-des* and *Her″-a-clē′-a ; gr* in *a-gres′-tis* and *a-gric′-ŏ-la ; pr* in *ca-pre′-ŏ-lus ; q* in *a-quā′-ri-us ;* and *phr* in *Eu-phrā′tes.*

§ **21.**   3. A single consonant *after* the vowel of any accented syllable, except a penult, must be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *m* in *dom′-i-nus* and *dom″-i-na′-ti-o ; t* in *pat′-ĕ-ra ; th* in *Scyth′-i-a ;* and *q* in *aq′-ui-la* (ak′-we-lah), and *Aq″-ui-ta′-ni-a* (ak″-we-ta′-ne-ah).

4. When a mute with *l* or *r* follows the vowel of any accented syllable, except the penult, the mute is to be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *cr* in *ac′-ri-ter*, *ac″-ri-mo′-ni-a ; tr* in *det″-ri-men′-tum ; pr* in *cap′-ri-pes*, *cap″-ri-mul′-gus, phl* in *Paph″-la-go′-ni-a ;* and *phr* in *Aph″-ro-dis′-i-a.* Respecting *phl* and *phr* cf. § 18, 2.

EXCEPTIONS TO THE 3D AND 4TH RULES.

Exc. 1. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *a*, *e*, or *o*, and before two vowels the first of which is *e*, *i*, or *y*, must be joined to the syllable following the accent.

2*

Thus, *d* in *ra'-di-us, tæ'-di-um, me''-di-ā'-tor ; r* in *hæ'-re-o, Ca''-ry-ā'-tes ; ch* in *bra'-chi-um ; q* in *re'-qui-es, re''-qui-es'-co ; tr* in *pa'-tri-us, Œ-no'-tri-a ;* and *r* and *l* in *ce''-re-a'-li-a.*

Exc. 2. A single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *u*, must be joined to the vowel following it.

Thus, *r* in *lu'-ri-dus, au'-re-us ; cr* in *Eu'-cri-tus ; gl* in *ju'-glans ;* and *pl* in *Nau'-pli-us, du'-pli-co,* and *du''-pli-ca'-ti-o.* Cf. § 18, 3.

§ 22. B.—*Two Consonants between two Vowels.*

Any two consonants, except a mute followed by *l* or *r* in the cases before mentioned, when standing between two vowels, must be separated.

Thus, *rp* in *cor'-pus, rm* in *for'-ma* and *ger-mā'nus ; rv* in *ca-ter'-va ; sc* in *ad-o-les'-cens ; nn* in *an'-nus ; phth* in *aph'-tha ; cch* in *Bac'-chus* and *Bac''-cha-na'-li-a ;* and *thl* in *ath-lē'-ta.*

C.—*Three or four Consonants between two Vowels.*

1. When three consonants stand between any two vowels, the last, or, if that be *l* or *r* after a mute, the two last, are joined to the latter vowel.

Thus, *mpt* in *emp'-tor, ad-emp'-ti-o ; str* in *fe-nes'-tra ; mpl* in *ex-em'-plum ; rthr* in *ar-thrī'-tis.*

2. When four consonants stand between two vowels, two are joined to each vowel ; as, *nstr* in *trans-trum.*

II. Compound Words.

§ 23. 1. In dividing a compound word into syllables the component parts are to be separated, if the former part ends with a consonant ; as, *ab-es'-se, in'-ers, cir'-cum-er'-ro, su'-pĕr-est, sub'-ĭ-tus, præter'-e-a, trans'-ĭ-tur, sub'-stru-o.* So, also, if a consonant is inserted to prevent hiatus, it is joined to the preceding vowel ; as, *prod'-e-o, red'-e-o, sed-it'-i-o.*

2. But if the former part either ends with a vowel, or has dropped its termination, it is to be divided like a simple word ; as, *def''-ē-ro, dil'-ĭ-gens, be-nev'-o-lus, præs'-to, eg'-ŏ-met ;—po'-tes, po-tes'-tis, an''-i-mad-ver'-to, ve'-ne-o* (from *venum, eo*), *mag-nan'-ĭ-mus, am-bā'-ges, lon-gæ'-vus.*

ETYMOLOGY.

§ 24. 1. Etymology treats of the different classes of words, their derivation, and their various inflections.

2. The classes, into which words are divided in reference to their signification, are called *Parts of Speech.*

3. The parts of speech in Latin are eight—*Substantive* or *Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction,* and *Interjection.*

4. The first four are *inflected;* the last four, which are sometimes called *Particles,* are *not inflected,* except that some adverbs change their termination to express comparison.

REM. Substantives, pronouns, and adjectives are often included by grammarians under the general term *nouns;* but, in this Grammar, the word *noun* is used as synonymous with *substantive* only.

§ **25.** 1. To verbs belong *Participles, Gerunds,* and *Supines,* which partake of the meaning of the verb, and the inflection of the noun.

2. *Inflection,* in Latin grammar, signifies a change in the termination of a word. It is of three kinds—*declension, conjugation,* and *comparison.*

3. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, participles, gerunds, and supines, are *declined;* verbs are *conjugated,* and adjectives and adverbs are *compared.*

NOUNS.

§ **26.** 1. A substantive or noun is the *name* of an object.

2. A *proper* noun is the name of an individual object; as, *Cæsar; Rōma,* Rome; *Tĭbĕris,* the Tiber.

3. A *common* or *appellative* noun is the name of a class of objects, to each of which it is alike applicable; as, *hŏmo,* man or a man; *avis,* a bird; *quercus,* an oak; *leo,* a lion; *mendacium,* a falsehood.

4. A *collective* noun is one which, in the singular number, denotes a collection of individuals; as, *exercĭtus,* an army.

REM. 1. The following are examples of nouns used as collectives, viz. *exercĭtus, gens, juventus, multitūdo, nobilĭtas, plebs, popŭlus, turba, vis,* and *vulgus.*

5. An *abstract* noun is the name of a quality, action, or other attribute; as, *bonĭtas,* goodness; *gaudium,* joy; *festinatio,* haste.

REM. 2. A *concrete,* in distinction from an abstract noun, is one which denotes an object that has an actual and independent existence; as, *Rōma, hŏmo, popŭlus, ferrum.*

6. A *material* noun is the name of a substance considered in the gross; as, *lignum,* wood; *ferrum,* iron; *cĭbus,* food.

REM. 3. Proper, abstract, and material nouns become common, when employed to denote one or more of a class of objects. A verb in the infinitive mood is often used as an abstract noun.

7. To nouns belong *gender, number,* and *case.*

REM. 4. Adjectives and participles have likewise different genders, numbers, and cases, corresponding to those of nouns.

GENDER.

§ **27.** 1. The gender of a noun is its distinction in regard to sex.

2. Nouns have three genders—the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

3. The gender of Latin nouns is either *natural* or *grammatical*.

4. Those nouns are naturally masculine or feminine, which are used to designate the sexes; as, *vir*, a man; *mulier*, a woman.

5. Those are grammatically masculine or feminine, which, though denoting objects that are neither male nor female, take adjectives of the form appropriated to nouns denoting the sexes.

Thus, *domĭnus*, a lord, is naturally masculine, because it denotes a male; but *sermo*, speech, is grammatically masculine, because. though not indicative of sex, it takes an adjective of that form which is appropriated to nouns denoting males.

6. The grammatical gender of Latin nouns depends either on their signification, or on their declension and termination. The following are the general rules of gender, in reference to *signification*. Many exceptions to them, on account of *termination*, occur: these will be specified under the several declensions.

§ **28.** MASCULINES. 1. Names, proper and appellative, of all male beings are masculine; as, *Homērus*, Homer; *păter*, a father; *consul*, a consul; *ĕquus*, a horse.

As proper names usually follow the gender of the general name under which they are comprehended; hence,

2. Names of rivers, winds, and months, are masculine, because *fluvius*, *ventus*, and *mensis*, are masculine; as, *Tibĕris*, the Tiber; *Aquĭlo*, the north wind; *Aprīlis*, April.

Exc. *Styx* and some names of rivers in *a* and *e* are feminine. §§ 62, and 41, 1.

3. Names of mountains are sometimes masculine, because *mons* is masculine; as, *Othrys*, a mountain of Thessaly; but they usually follow the gender of their termination; as, *hic* Atlas*, *hæc Ida*, *hoc Soracte*.

§ **29.** FEMININES. 1. Names, proper and appellative, of all female beings are feminine; as, *Helĕna*, Helen; *māter*, a mother; *juvenca*, a heifer.

2. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, ships, islands, poems, and gems, are feminine; because *terra*, *urbs*, *arbor*, *planta*, *nāvis*, *insŭla*, *fabŭla*, and *gemma*, are feminine; as,

Ægyptus, Egypt; *Corinthus*, Corinth; *pĭrus*, a pear-tree; *nardus*, spikenard; *Centaurus*, the ship Centaur; *Sămos*, the name of an island; *Eunūchus*, the Eunuch, a comedy of Terence; *amethystus*, an amethyst.

Exc. Names of countries and islands in *um*, *i*, and (plur.) *a*, *ōrum*, are neuter.—Names of towns in *i*, *ōrum*; four in *o*, *ŏnis*, viz. *Trusĭno*, *Hippo*, *Narbo*, and *Sulmo*, with *Tunes*, *Taras*, and *Canōpus*, are masculine. Names of towns in *um* or *on*, *i*, and (plur.) *a*, *ōrum*; those in *e* and *ur* of the third declension, indeclinable nouns in *i* and *y*, and some barbarous names, as *Suthul*, *Hispul* and *Gadir* are neuter.—Names of trees and plants in *er* of the third declension, (§ 60), with *baccar* and *rōbur* are neuter. A few names in *us*, *i*, (§ 50), with *oleaster*, *pinaster*, *Stijrax* and *unĕdo* are masculine.—A few names of gems in *us*, *i*, are also masculine.

---

* To distinguish the gender of Latin nouns, grammarians write *hic* before the masculine, *hæc* before the feminine, and *hoc* before the neuter.

§ **30.**   COMMON AND DOUBTFUL GENDER.   Some words are either masculine or feminine.   These, if they denote things animate, are said to be of the *common* gender; if things inanimate, of the *doubtful* gender.

Of the former are *părens*, a parent; *bos*, an ox or cow: of the latter, *finis*, an end.

The following nouns are of the common gender:—

Adolescens, *a youth.*
Affinis, *a relative by marriage.*
Ales, *a bird.*
Antistes, *a chief priest.*
Auctor, *an author.*
Augur, *an augur.*
Bos, *an ox or cow.*
Cănis, *a dog.*
Cīvis, *a citizen.*
Cŏmes, *a companion.*
Conjux, *a spouse.*
Consors, *a consort.*
Convīva, *a guest.*
Custos, *a keeper.*
Dux, *a leader.*

Exsul, *an exile.*
Grus, *a crane.*
Hospes, *a guest, a host.*
Hostis, *an enemy.*
Index, *an informer.*
Infans, *an infant.*
Interpres, *an interpreter.*
Jūdex, *a judge.*
Juvĕnis, *a youth.*
Martyr, *a martyr.*
Mīles, *a soldier.*
Munĭceps, *a burgess.*
Mus, *a mouse.*
Nēmo, *nobody.*
Obses, *a hostage.*
Patruēlis, *a cousin.*

Palumbes, *a wood-pigeon.*
Părens, *a parent.*
Par, *a mate.*
Præses, *a president.*
Præsul, *a chief priest.*
Princeps, *a prince or princess.*
Serpens, *a serpent.*
Sacerdos, *a priest or priestess.*
Satelles, *a life-guard.*
Sus, *a swine.*
Testis, *a witness.*
Vātes, *a prophet.*
Verna, *a slave.*
Vindex, *an avenger.*

The following hexameters contain nearly all the above nouns:—

> Conjux, *atque* părens, princeps, pătruēlis, *et* infans,
> Affinis, vindex, jūdex, dux, mīles, *et* hostis,
> Augŭr, *et* antistes, juvĕnis, convīva, săcerdōs,
> Mūnĭ-*que*-ceps, vātes, adolescens, cīvis, *et* auctor,
> Custōs, nēmo, cŏmes, testis, sus, bōs-*que*, cănis-*que*,
> *Pro* consorte tŏrī par, præsul, verna, sătelles,
> Mus-*que* obses, consors, interprĕs, *et* exsŭl, *et* hospes.

§ **31.**   1.   When nouns of the common gender denote males, they take a masculine adjective; when they denote females, a feminine.

2.   The following are either masculine or feminine in sense, but masculine only in grammatical construction:—

Artĭfex, *an artist.*
Auspex, *a soothsayer.*
Eques, *a horseman.*

Fur, *a thief.*
Hēres, *an heir.*
Hŏmo, *a man or woman.*

Lătro, *a robber.*
Libĕri, *children.*
Pĕdes, *a footman.*

To these may be added personal appellatives of the first declension; as, *advĕna*, a stranger; and some gentile nouns; as, *Persa*, a Persian.

§ **32.**   1.   The following, though masculine or feminine in sense, are feminine only in construction:—

Copiæ, *troops.*
Custodiæ, *guards.*
Excubiæ, *sentinels.*

Opĕræ, *laborers.*
Prōles, } *offspring.*
Subōles, }

Vigiliæ, *watchmen.*

2. Some nouns, signifying persons, are neuter, both in their termination and construction; as,

Acroāma, *a buffoon.*   Mancipium, } *a slave.*   Scortum, } *a prostitute.*
Auxilia, *auxiliaries.*   Servitium, }   Prostibŭlum, }

3. (*a.*) In some personal appellatives masculines and feminines are distinguished by different terminations affixed to the same root. The masculines end in *us, er, o, tor,* etc.; the feminines in *a* or *trix;* as, *cŏquus, cŏqua ; magister, magistra ; lēno, lēna ; inventor, inventrix ; tibīcen, tibicĭna ; ăvus, avia ; rex, regina ; poēta, poētria.*

(*b.*) So also in some names of animals; as, *ĕquus, ĕqua; gallus, gallīna ; leo, lea* and *leœna.* Sometimes the words are wholly different; as, *taurus, vacca.*

4. Some names of animals are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine without regard to difference of sex; as, *anguis, serpens, dā-ma, talpa, tigris, colŭber* and *colŭbra,* etc.

§ **33.** EPICENES. Names of animals which include both sexes, but admit of an adjective of one gender only, are called *epicene.* These commonly follow the gender of their terminations.

Thus, *passer,* a sparrow, *corvus,* a raven, are masculine; *aquĭla,* an eagle, *vul-pes,* a fox, are feminine; though each of them is used to denote both sexes.

NOTE. This class includes the names of animals, in which the distinction of sex is seldom attended to. When it is necessary to mark the sex, *mas* or *femĭna* is usually added.

§ **34.** NEUTERS. Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine, are said to be of the neuter gender ; such are,

1. All indeclinable nouns ; as, *fas, nĕfas, nihil, gummi, pondo.*

2. Names of letters; as, *o longum,* long *o.* But these are sometimes feminine, *litĕra* being understood.

3. Words used merely as such, without reference to their meaning; as, *pater est dissyllăbum ; pater* is dissyllabic.

4. All infinitives, imperatives, clauses of sentences, adverbs, and other particles, used substantively ; as *scire tuum,* your knowledge ; *ultĭmum vale,* the last farewell ; *hoc diu,* this (word) *diu.*

REMARK. 1. Words derived from the Greek retain the gender which they have in that language.

REM. 2. Some nouns have different genders in the singular and plural, and are called *heterogeneous* nouns. See § 92.

NUMBER.

§ **35.** 1. (*a.*) Number, in nouns, is the form by which they denote whether they represent one object or more than one.

(*b.*) Latin nouns have two numbers,—the *singular* and the *plural,*—which are distinguished by their terminations. The singular number denotes one object ; the plural, more than one.

PERSON.

2. The person of a noun or pronoun is the character sustained by the object which it represents, as being the speaker, the person addressed, or the person or thing spoken of.

Hence there are three persons. The speaker is of the *first* person, the person addressed is of the *second* person, and the person or thing spoken of is of the *third* person.

CASES.

§ **36.** Many of the relations of objects, which, in English, are denoted by prepositions, are, in Latin, expressed by a change of termination.

Cases are those terminations of nouns, which denote their relations to other words. Latin nouns have six cases; viz. *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative,* and *Ablative.*

REMARK. Though there are six cases in each number, no noun has in each number so many different terminations.

§ **37.** 1. The nominative denotes the relation of a *subject* to a finite verb; as, ego *scribo,* I write. Caius *dicit,* Caius says.

2. The genitive denotes *origin, possession,* and many other relations, which, in English, are expressed by the preposition *of* or by the *possessive* case; as, *Vita Cæsăris,* the life *of Cæsar,* or *Cæsar's* life.

3. The dative denotes that *to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done; as, *Ille* mihi *librum dedit,* He gave the book *to me.*

4. The accusative is either the *object* of an active verb, or of certain prepositions, or the *subject* of an infinitive.

5. The vocative is the form appropriated to the name of any object which is addressed.

6. The ablative denotes *privation,* and many other relations, especially those expressed in English by the prepositions *with, from, in,* or *by.*

REMARK. The nominative and vocative are sometimes called *casus recti,* i. e. the uninflected cases; and the others, *casus oblīqui;* i. e. the oblique or inflected cases.

DECLENSIONS.

§ **38.** The regular forming of the several cases in both numbers, by annexing the appropriate terminations to the root, is called *declension.*

The Latin language has five declensions or modes of declining nouns, distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular, which, in the first declension, ends in *æ,* in the second in *i,* in the third in *is,* in the fourth in *ūs,* and in the fifth in *eï*

§ **39.** The following table exhibits a comparative view of the terminations or case-endings of the five declensions.

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.

	I.	II. M.	II. N.	III. M.	III. N.	IV. M.	IV. N.	V.
Nom.	ă,	ŭs, ĕr,	ŭm,	ŏr, etc.	ŏ, etc.	ŭs,	ū,	ēs,
Gen.	æ,	ī,		ĭs,		ūs,		eï,
Dat.	æ,	ō,		ī,		uī,	ū,	eï,
Acc.	ăm,	ŭm,		ĕm,(ĭm),	ĕ, etc.	ŭm,	ū,	ĕm,
Voc.	ă,	ĕ, ĕr,	ŭm,	ŏr, etc.	ŏ, etc.	ŭs,	ū,	ēs,
Abl.	ā.	ō.		ĕ, (ī.)		ū.		ē.

Plural.

	I.	II. M.	II. N.	III. M.	III. N.	IV. M.	IV. N.	V.
Nom.	æ,	ī,	ă,	ēs,	ă, (iă),	ūs,	uă,	ēs,
Gen.	ārŭm,	ōrŭm,		ŭm, (iŭm),		uŭm,		ērŭm,
Dat.	īs,	īs,		ĭbŭs,		ĭbŭs,	(ŭbŭs),	ēbŭs,
Acc.	ās,	ōs,	ă,	ēs,	ă, (iă),	ūs,	uă,	ēs,
Voc.	æ,	ī,	ă,	ēs,	ă, (iă),	ūs,	uă,	ēs,
Abl.	īs.	īs.		ĭbŭs.		ĭbŭs,	(ŭbŭs).	ēbŭs.

Remarks.

§ **40.** 1. The terminations of the nominative, in the third declension, are very numerous. See §§ 55, 58, 62, 66.

2. The accusative singular of masculines and feminines, always ends in *m*.

3. The vocative singular is like the nominative in all Latin nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension.

4. The nominative and vocative plural always end alike.

5. The genitive plural always ends in *um*.

6. The dative and ablative plural always end alike;—in the 1st and 2d declensions, in *is;* in the 3d, 4th, and 5th, in *bus*.

7. The accusative plural of masculines and feminines, always ends in *s*.

8. Nouns of the neuter gender have the accusative and vocative like the nominative, in both numbers; and these cases, in the plural, always end in *a*.

9. The 1st and 5th declensions contain no nouns of the neuter gender, and the 4th and 5th contain no proper names.

10. Every inflected word consists of two parts—a *root*, and a *termination*. The root or *crude form*, is the part which is not changed by inflection. The termination is the part annexed to the root. The root of a *declined* word may be found by removing the termination of any of its oblique cases. The case commonly selected for this purpose is the genitive singular.

11. The preceding table exhibits terminations only. In the fifth declension, the *e* of the final syllable, though unchanged, is considered as belonging to the termination.

FIRST DECLENSION.

§ **41.**   Nouns of the first declension end in *ă, ē, ās, ēs*. Those in *a* and *e* are feminine; those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

. *Latin* nouns of the first declension end only in *a*. They are thus declined:—

	Singular.			Plural.	
Nom.	mū´-să,	*a muse;*	Nom.	mu´-sæ,	*muses,*
Gen.	mu´-sæ,	*of a muse;*	Gen.	mu-sā´-rŭm,	*of muses,*
Dat.	mu´-sæ,	*to a muse;*	Dat.	mu´-sīs,	*to muses,*
Acc.	mu´-săm,	*a muse;*	Acc.	mu´-sās,	*muses,*
Voc.	mu´-să,	*O muse;*	Voc.	mu´-sæ,	*O muses;*
Abl.	mu´-sā,	*with a muse.*	Abl.	mu´-sīs,	*with muses.*

In like manner decline

Au´-la, *a hall.*	Lit´-ĕ-ra, *a letter.*	Sa-git´-ta, *an arrow.*
Cu´-ra, *care.*	Lus-cin´-i-a, *a nightingale.*	Stel´-la, *a star.*
Ga´-le-a, *a helmet.*	Mach´-ĭ-na, *a machine.*	Tŏ´-ga, *a gown.*
In´-sŭ-la, *an island.*	Pen´-na, *a feather, a quill.*	Vi´-a, *a way.*

NOTE. As the Latin language has no article, appellative nouns may be rendered either with or without the English articles *a, an,* or *the,* according to their connection.

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ **42.**   1. Names proper and appellative of men, as, *Sulla, Cinna; poēta,* a poet; *nauta,* a sailor; and names of rivers, though ending in *a,* are masculine: § 28, 1 and 2.   But the following names of rivers have been used as feminine: viz. *Albŭla, Allia, Druentia, Garumna, Himĕra, Matrŏna, Mosella, Trebia.* *Lēthe* is always feminine.

Ossa and *Œta,* names of mountains, are masculine or feminine.

2. *Hadria,* the Adriatic sea, *dăma* in Virgil and Statius, and *talpa* in Virgil, are masculine.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ **43.**   *Genitive singular.* 1. The poets sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āī;* as, *aula,* gen. *aulāī.*

2. *Familia,* after *păter, māter, filius,* or *filia,* usually forms its genitive in *as;* as, *mater-familias,* the mistress of a family; gen. *matris-familias;* nom. plur. *matres-familias* or *familiārum.* Some other words anciently formed their genitive in the same manner.

Genitive plural. The genitive plural of patronymics in *es,* of several compounds in *cŏla* and *gĕna,* and of some names of nations, is sometimes, especially in poetry, formed in *um* instead of *ārum;* as, *Æneădum, Cælicŏlum, terrigĕnum, Lapĭthum.* So *amphŏrum, drachmum,* for *amphorārum, drachmārum.*

Dative and Ablative plural. The following nouns have sometimes *ābus* instead of *is,* in the dative and ablative plural, especially when it is necessary to distinguish them from the same cases of masculines in *us* of the second declension having the same root; as, *filiis et filiābus,* to sons and daughters.

Dea, *a goddess.*   Equa, *a mare.*
Filia, *a daughter.*   Mūla, *a she mule.*

The use of a similar termination in *anima, asina, liberta, nāta, conserva,* and some other words, rests on inferior authority.

GREEK NOUNS.

§ 44. Nouns of the first declension in *ē, ās,* and *ēs,* and some also in *ă,* are Greek. Greek nouns in *ă* are declined like *musa,* except that they sometimes have *ān* in the accusative singular; as, *Ossa; acc. Ossam,* or *Ossan.*

Greek nouns in *e, as,* and *es,* are thus declined in the singular number:—

N. Pe-nel′-ŏ-pē,	*N.* Æ-nē′-ās,	*N.* An-chī′-sēs,
G. Pe-nel′-ŏ-pēs,	*G.* Æ-nē′-æ,	*G.* An-chī′-sæ,
D. Pe-nel′-ŏ-pæ,	*D.* Æ-nē′-æ,	*D.* An-chī′-sæ,
Ac. Pe-nel′-ŏ-pēn,	*Ac.* Æ-nē′-ăm *or* ān,	*Ac.* An-chī′-sēn,
V. Pe-nel′-ŏ-pē,	*V.* Æ-nē′-ā,	*V.* An-chī′-sē *or* ā,
Ab. Pe-nel′-ŏ-pē.	*Ab.* Æ-nē′-ā.	*Ab.* An-chī′-sā *or* ē.

§ 45. In like manner decline

Al′-o-e, *aloes.*	Ti-ā′-ras, *a turban.*
E-pit′-ŏ-me, *an abridgment.*	Co-mē′-tes, *a comet.*
This′-be.	Dy-nas′-tes, *a ruler.*
Bo′-rĕ-as, *the north wind.*	Pri-am′-ĭ-des, *a son of Priam.*
Mī′-das.	Py-rī′-tes, *a kind of stone.*

1. Most proper names in *es,* except patronymics, follow the third declension; but in the accusative they often have both *em* and *en,* and in the vocative both *es* and *e.* See §§ 80, IV, and 81.

2. Greek nouns of the first declension, which admit of a plural, are declined in that number like the plural of *musa.*

3. The Latins frequently change the terminations of Greek nouns in *ēs* and *ē* into *ă;* as, *Atrīdes, Atrīda,* a son of Atreus; *Perses, Persa,* a Persian; *geomētres, geomētra,* a geometrician; *Circe, Circa;* *epitōme, epitōma;* *grammatĭce, grammatĭca,* grammar; *rhetorĭce, rhetorĭca,* oratory.—So also *tiāras, tiāra.*

SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 46. Nouns of the second declension end in *ĕr, ĭr, ŭs, ŭm, os, on.* Those ending in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns in *er, us,* and *um,* are thus declined:—

SINGULAR.

	A lord.	*A son-in-law.*	*A field.*	*A kingdom.*
N.	dŏm′-ĭ-nŭs,	gĕ′-nĕr,	ă′-gĕr,	reg′-nŭm,
G.	dom′-ĭ-nī,	gen′-ĕ-rī,	a′-grī,	reg′-nī,
D.	dom′-ĭ-nō,	gen′-ĕ-rŏ,	a′-grō,	reg′-nō,
Ac.	dom′-ĭ-nŭm,	gen′-ĕ-rŭm,	a′-grŭm,	reg′-nŭm,
V.	dom′-ĭ-nĕ,	gĕ′-nĕr,	a′-gĕr,	reg′-nŭm,
Ab.	dom′-ĭ-nō.	gen′-ĕrō.	a′-grō.	reg′-nō.

PLURAL.

N. dom′-ĭ-nī,	gen′-ĕ-rī,	a′-grī,	reg′-nă,
G. dom-i-nō′-rŭм,	gen-e-rō′-rŭm,	a-grō′-rŭm,	reg-nō′-rŭm,
D. dom′-ĭ-nīs,	gen′-ĕ-rīs,	a′-grīs,	reg′-nīs,
Ac. dom′-ĭ-nŏs,	gen′-ĕ-rōs,	a′-grōs,	reg′-nă,
V. dom′-ĭ-nī,	gen′-ĕ-rī,	a′-grī,	reg′-nă,
Ab. dom′-ĭ-nīs.	gen′-ĕ-rīs.	a′-grīs.	reg′-nīs.

Like *domĭnus* decline

An′-ĭ-mus, *the mind.*	Fŏ′-cus, *a hearth.*	Nu′-mĕ-rus, *a number*
Clip′-e-us, *a shield.*	Gla′-di-us, *a sword.*	O-ce′-ă-nus, *the ocean.*
Cor′-vus, *a raven.*	Lū′-cus, *a grove.*	Trŏ′-chus, *a trundling-hoop.*

NOTE. Nouns in *us* of the second declension are the only Latin nouns, whose nominative and vocative singular differ in form. See § 40, R. 3.

§ **47.** A few nouns in *er*, like *gener*, add the terminations to the nominative singular, as a root. They are the compounds of *gĕro* and *fĕro*; as, *armĭger, -ĕri*, an armor-bearer; *Lucĭfer, -ĕri*, the morning star; and the following:—

A-dul′-ter, *an adulterer.*	Lĭ′-ber, *Bacchus.*	Pu′-er, *a boy.*
Cel′-tĭ-bēr, *a Celtiberian.*	Lib′-ĕ-ri, *(plur.), children.*	Sŏ′-cer, *a father-in-law.*
I′-ber, *a Spaniard.*	Pres′-bў-ter, *an elder.*	Ves′-per, *the evening.*

Mul′-cĭ-ber, Vulcan, sometimes has this form.

§ **48.** 1. All other nouns in *er* reject the *e* in adding the terminations, (§ 322, 4), and are declined like *ager*; thus,

A′-per, *a wild boar.*	Lĭ′-ber, *a book.*	Al-ex-an′-der.
Aus′-ter, *the south wind.*	Ma-gis′-ter, *a master.*	Is′-ter.
Fä′-ber, *a workman.*	On′-ă-ger, *a wild ass.*	Teu′-cer.

2. *Vir*, a man, with its compounds, and the patrial *Trēvir*, (the only nouns in *ir*,) are declined like *gener*.

Like *regnum* decline

An′-trum, *a cave.*	Ex-em′-plum, *an example.*	Præ-sid′-i-um, *a defence.*
A′-tri-um, *a hall.*	Ne-go′-ti-um,* *a business.*	Sax′-um, *a rock.*
Bel′-lum, *war.*	Ni′-trum, *natron.*	Scep′-trum, *a sceptre.*

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ **49.** 1. The following nouns in *us* and *os* are feminine:—

Abyssus, *a bottomless pit.*	Dialectos, *a dialect.*	Miltos, *vermilion.*
Alvus, *the belly.*	Diphthongus, *a diphthong.*	Phärus(os), *a light-house.*
Antidŏtus, *an antidote.*	Dŏmus, *a house, home.*	Plinthus, *the base of a*
Arctos(us), *the Northern Bear.*	Erēmus, *a desert.*	*column.*
Carbăsus, *a sail.*	Hŭmus, *the ground.*	Vannus, *a corn-fan.*

2. Greek nouns in *ŏdus* (ἡ ὁδος), and *mĕtros*, are likewise feminine; as, *synŏdus*, an assembly; *diamĕtros*, a diameter.

---

* Pronounced *ne-go′-she-um.* See § 12.

§ **50.**   Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, etc. are feminine. See § 29, 2.

Yet the following names of plants are masculine:—

Acanthus, *bear's-foot.*	Ebŭlus, *an elder.*	Rŭbus, *a blackberry-bush.*
Amarantus, *amaranth.*	Hellebŏrus, *hellebore.*	Tribŭlus, *a caltrops.*
Asparăgus, *asparagus.*	Intŭbus, *endive.*	
Calămus, *a reed.*	Juncus, *a bulrush.*	And sometimes
Carduus, *a thistle.*	Raphănus, *a radish.*	Amarăcus, *marjoram.*
Dūmus, *a bramble.*	Rhamnos, *buck-thorn.*	Cytīsus, *snail-clover.*

Oleaster and *pinaster*, names of trees, are also masculine.

The following names of gems are also masculine:—

Beryllus, *a beryl.*	Chrysoprăsus, *chrysoprase.*	So also,
Carbuncŭlus, *a carbuncle.*	Opălus, *opal.*	Pyrōpus, *gold-bronze.*

Chrysolĭthus, *chrysolite,* and smaragdus, *an emerald,* are doubtful.

Names of females in *um* are feminine: § 29, 1; as, *mea Glycerium,* Ter.

Names of trees and plants in *um* are generally neuter; as, *apium,* parsley; *aconītum,* wolf's bane.

Canōpus, Pontus, Hellespontus, Isthmus, and all plural names in *i* of countries and towns are masculine. *Abўdus(os)* is doubtful.

Names of countries and towns ending in *um,* or, if plural, in *a,* are neuter as, *Ilium* or *Ilion ; Ecbătăna, ōrum.*

§ **51.**   The following are doubtful, but more frequently masculine:—

Balănus, *a date.*	Grossus, *an unripe fig.*	Phasēlus, *a light vessel.*
Barbĭtos, *a lute.*	Pampĭnus, *a vine-leaf.*	

Atōmus, an atom, and *cŏlus,* a distaff, are doubtful, but more frequently feminine.

Pelăgus, the sea, and *vĭrus,* poison, are neuter.

Vulgus, the common people, is neuter, and rarely masculine.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ **52.**   *Genitive singular.* When the genitive singular ends in *ĭi,* the poets frequently contract it into *ī ;* as, *ingĕnī,* for *ingenii.*

Vocative singular. The vocative of nouns in *us* is sometimes like the nominative, especially in poetry; as, *fluvius, Latīnus,* in Virgil. So, *audi tu, popŭlus Albānus.* Liv.

Proper names in *ĭus* omit *e* in the vocative ; as, *Horatius, Horātī ; Virgilius, Virgĭli.*

Filius, a son, and *genius,* a guardian angel, make also *fĭlī* and *genī.* Other nouns in *ĭus,* including patrials and possessives derived from proper names, form their vocative regularly in *e ;* as, *Delius, Delie ; Tirynthius, Tirynthie ; Laertius, Laertie.*

§ **53.**   *Genitive plural.* The genitive plural of some nouns of the second declension, especially of those which denote money, weight and measure, is commonly formed in *um,* instead of *ōrum :* § 322, 4.

Such are particularly *nummum, sestertium, denarium, medimnum, jugĕrum, modium, talentum.* The same form occurs in other words, especially in poetry; as, *deum, libĕrum, Danaum ;* etc., and sometimes *om* is found instead of *um ;* as, *Achivom.* Virg. Cf. § 322, 8.

Deüs, *a god*, is thus declined :—

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N.	de′-us,	*N.*	dǐ′-i, dī, *or* de′-i,
G.	de′-i,	*G.*	de-ō′-rum,
D.	de′-o,	*D.*	dǐ′-is, dīs, *or* de′-is,
Ac.	de′-um,	*Ac.*	de′-os,
V.	de′-us,	*V.*	dǐ′-i, dī, *or* de′-i,
Ab.	de′-o.	*Ab.*	dǐ′-is, dīs, *or* de′-is.

Jēsus, or *Iēsus*, the name of the Savior, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other oblique cases.

GREEK NOUNS.

§ **54.** 1. *Os* and *on*, in the second declension, are Greek terminations, and are commonly changed, in Latin, into *us* and *um ;* but sometimes both forms are in use ; as, *Alphēos*, and *Alphēus* ; *Ilion* and *Ilium.* Greek names in *ros* after a consonant commonly change *ros* into *er ;* as, *Alexandros, Alexander ; Teucros, Teucer.* In a few words *ros* is changed to *rus ;* as, *Codrus, hydrus*, and once in Virgil, *Teucrus.*

Greek nouns are thus declined in the singular number :—

Singular.			Barbǐton, *a lyre.*	
N.	Dē′-lŏs,	Andrŏ′-ge-ōs,	*N.*	bar′-bǐ-tŏn,
G.	De′-lī,	An-dro′-ge-ō, *or* ī,	*G.*	bar′-bǐ-tī,
D.	De′-lō,	An-dro′-ge-ō,	*D.*	bar′-bǐ-tō,
Ac.	De′-lŏn *or* ǔm,	An-dro′-ge-ō, *or* ōn,	*Ac.*	bar′-bǐ-tŏn,
V.	De′-lĕ,	An-dro′-ge-ōs,	*V.*	bar′-bǐ-tŏn,
Ab.	De′-lō.	An-dro′-ge-ō.	*Ab.*	bar′-bǐ-tō.

2. The plurals of Greek nouns in *os* and *on* are declined like those of *dominus* and *regnum ;* but the nominative plural of nouns in *os* sometimes ends in *æ ;* as, *canephóræ.*

3. In early writers some nouns in *os* have a genitive in *ū* (*ου*) ; as, *Menandrū.* Ter.

4. A genitive plural in *ōn*, instead of *ōrum*, occurs in the titles of books and in some names of places ; as, *Georgǐcōn ; Philēnōn aræ.* Sall.

5. Greek proper names in *eus* (see § 9, R. 3), are declined like *dominus*, except that the vocative ends in *eu ;* but sometimes in the genitive, dative, and accusative also, they retain the Greek form, viz. gen. *ěŏs*, dat. *ěī* (contracted *eī*), acc. *ěă* or *ēă*, and are of the third declension. See §§ 86, and 306, (1.) So in Lucretius the neuter *pelăgus* (Greek *πέλαγος, εος*) has an accusative plural *pelăgē* for *pelagea* after the third declension. § 83, 1.—See also respecting a genitive in *i* of some proper nouns in *es*, § 73, Rem.—*Panthū* occurs in Virgil, A. 2, 322, as the vocative of *Panthūs.* Cf. § 81.

THIRD DECLENSION.

§ **55.** The number of final letters, in this declension, is twelve. Five are vowels—*a, e, i, o, y ;* and seven are consonants—*c, l, n, r, s, t, x.* The number of its final syllables exceeds fifty.

REM. The following terminations belong exclusively to Greek nouns; viz. *ma, i, y, ăn, ĭn, ŏn, ȳn, ēr, ȳr, ys, eus, yx, inx, ynx*, and plurals in *e.*

3*

Mode of declining Nouns of the Third Declension.

To decline a word properly, in this declension, it is necessary to know its ʟender, its nominative singular, and one of its oblique cases; since the root of the cases is not always found entire and unchanged in the nominative. The case usually selected for this purpose is the genitive singular. The formation of the accusative singular, and of the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, depends upon the gender: if it is masculine or feminine, these cases have one form; if neuter, another.

§ **56.** The student should first fix well in his memory the terminations of one of these forms. He should next learn the nominative and genitive singular of the word which is to be declined. If *is* be removed from the genitive, the remainder will always be the root of the oblique cases, and by annexing their terminations to this root, the word is declined; thus, *rupes*, genitive (found in the dictionary) *rupis*, root *rup*, dative *rupi*, etc.: so *ars*, gen. *artis*, root *art*, dat. *arti*, etc.; *opus*, gen. *opĕris*, root *opĕr*, dat. *opĕri*, etc.

RULES FOR FORMING THE NOMINATIVE SINGULAR OF THE THIRD DECLENSION FROM THE ROOT.

I. Roots ending in *c, g; b, m, p; u, t, d,* and some in *r,* add *s* to form the nominative; as, *trăbis, trabs; hiĕmis, hiems; gruis, grus.*

REMARK 1. *T, d* and *r* before *s* are dropped; as, *nepŏtis, nepos; laudis, laus; floris, flos.* So *bovis, bos,* drops *v.*

REM. 2. *C* and *g* before *s* form *x;* as, *vocis, vox; regis, rex.* So *vs* forms *x* in *nivis, nix.* Cf. §§ 3, 2, and 171, 1.

REM. 3. Short *i* in the root before *c, b, p, t,* is commonly changed to *ĕ;* as, *pollĭcis, pollex; cælĭbis, cœlebs; princĭpis, princeps; comĭtis, comes.* So *u* is changed to *ĕ* in *aucŭpis, auceps.*

REM. 4. Short *ĕ* or *ŏ* before *r* in neuters is changed to *u;* as, *genĕris, genŭs; tempŏris, tempŭs.*

REM. 5. Short *ĕ* before *r* is changed to *i* in the masculines *cinĕris, cinis; cucumĕris, cucumis; pulvĕris, pulvis; vomĕris, vomis.*

REM. 6. A few and those mostly monosyllabic roots of masculines and feminines, not increasing in the genitive, add *es* or *is,* instead of *s* alone; as, gen. *rŭpis,* nom. *rŭpes;* gen. *auris,* nom. *auris.*

REM. 7. A few neuters add *ĕ* to the root to form the nominative; as, *rētis, rētĕ; măris, mărĕ.*

II. To roots ending in *l* and *n,* to some in *r* and *s,* and to those of most neuters in *t,* no addition is made in forming the nominative; as, *animālis, animal; canŏnis, cănon; honōris, hŏnor; assis, as.*

REMARK 1. Final *ōn* and *in* in the roots of masculines and feminines, become *o* in the nominative; as, *sermōnis, sermo; arundĭnis, arundo.*

REM. 2. Final *in* in the roots of neuters becomes *ĕn* in the nominative; as, *fluminis, flūmĕn.* So also in the masculines, *oscen, pecten, tibīcen* and *tubīcen.*

REM. 3. *Tr* and *br* at the end of a root, take *ĕ* between them in the nominative; as, *patris, păter; imbris, imber.* Cf. §§ 108, 48, and 106.

REM. 4. Short *ŏ* is changed to *u* in *ebŏris, ebŭr; femŏris, fĕmŭr; jecŏris, jĕcŭr;* and *robŏris, rōbŭr.*

REM. 5. In the roots of neuters *at* drops *t,* and *it* becomes *ut* in the nominative; as, *poĕmătis, poēma; capitis, caput.*

REM. 6. Roots of this class ending in repeated consonants drop one of them in the nominative; as, *fellis, fel; farris, far; assis, as; bessis, bes.*

The following are the two forms of termination in this declension:—

	Singular.		Plural	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N.	*,	*,	ēs,	ă, (iă),
G.	ĭs,	ĭs,	ŭm, (iŭm),	ŭm, (iŭm),
D.	ī,	ī,	ĭbŭs,	ĭbŭs,
Ac.	ĕm, (ĭm),	*,	ēs,	ă, (iă),
V.	*,	*,	ēs,	ă, (iă),
Ab.	ĕ, (ī).	ĕ, (ī).	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.

The asterisk stands for the nominative, and for those cases which are like it.

§ **57.** The following are examples of the most common forms of nouns of this declension, declined through all their cases.

Hŏnor, *honor ;* masc.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	ho'-nor,	ho-nō'-res,
G.	ho-nō'-ris,	ho-nō'-rum,
D.	ho-nō'-ri,	ho-nor'-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	ho-nō'-rem,	ho-nō'-res,
V.	ho'-nor,	ho-nō'-res,
Ab.	ho-nō'-re.	ho-nor'-ĭ-bus.

Turris, *a tower ;* fem.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	tur'-ris,	tur'-res,
G.	tur'-ris,	tur'-ri-um,
D.	tur'-ri,	tur'-rĭ-bus,
Ac.	tur'-rim, rem,	tur'-res,
V.	tur'-ris,	tur'-res,
Ab.	tur'-ri, *or* re.	tur'-rĭ-bus.

Rūpes, *a rock ;* fem.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
G.	ru'-pis,	ru'-pi-um,
D.	ru'-pi,	ru'-pĭ-bus,
Ac.	ru'-pem,	ru'-pes,
V.	ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
Ab.	ru'-pe.	ru'-pĭ-bus.

Nox, *night ;* fem.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	nox,	noc'-tes,
G.	noc'-tis,	noc'-ti-um,*
D.	noc'-ti,	noc'-tĭ-bus,
Ac.	noc'-tem,	noc'-tes,
V.	nox,	noc'-tes,
Ab.	noc'-te.	noc'-tĭ-bus.

Ars, *art ;* fem.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	ars,	ar'-tes,
G.	ar'-tis,	ar'-ti-um,*
D.	ar'-ti,	ar'-tĭ-bus,
Ac.	ar'-tem,	ar'-tes,
V.	ars,	ar'-tes,
Ab.	ar'-te.	ar'-tĭ-bus.

Miles, *a soldier ;* com. gen.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	mi'-les,	mil'-ĭ-tes,
G.	mil'-ĭ-tis,	mil'-ĭ-tum,
D.	mil'-ĭ-ti,	mi-lit'-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	mil'-ĭ-tem,	mil'-ĭ-tes,
V.	mi'-les,	mil'-ĭ-tes,
Ab.	mil'-ĭ-te.	mi-lit'-ĭ-bus.

Sermo, *speech ;* masc.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	ser'-mo,	ser-mō'-nes,
G.	ser-mō'-nis,	ser-mō'-num,
D.	ser-mō'-ni,	ser-mon'-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	ser-mō'-nem,	ser-mō'-nes,
V.	ser'-mo,	ser-mō'-nes,
Ab.	ser-mō'-ne.	ser-mon'-ĭ-bus.

Păter, *a father ;* masc.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
G.	pa'-tris,	pa'-trum,
D.	pa'-tri,	pat'rĭ-bus,
Ac.	pa'-trem,	pa'-tres,
V.	pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
Ab.	pa'-tre.	pat'-rĭ-bus.

* Pronounced *ar'-she-um, noc'-she-um.* See § 12.

Sĕdĭle, *a seat;* neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. se-dĭ′-le,	se-dil′-i-a,
G. se-dĭ′-lis,	se-dil′-i-um,
D. se-dĭ′-li,	se-dil′-ĭ-bus,
Ac. se-dĭ′-le,	se-dil′-i-a,
V. se-dĭ′-le,	se-dil′-i-a,
Ab. se-dĭ′-li.	se-dil′-ĭ-bus.

Carmen, *a verse;* neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. car′-men,	car′-mĭ-na,
G. car′-mĭ-nis,	car′-mĭ-num,
D. car′-mĭ-ni,	car-min′-ĭ-bus,
Ac. car′-men,	car′-mĭ-na,
V. car′-men,	car′-mĭ-na,
Ab. car′-mĭ-ne.	car-min′-ĭ-bus.

Iter, *a journey;* neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. ĭ′-ter,	i-tin′-ĕ-ra,
G. i-tĭn′-ĕ-ris,	i-tin′-ĕ-rum,
D. i-tĭn′-ĕ-ri,	it-i-ner′-ĭ-bus,
Ac. ĭ′-ter,	i-tin′-ĕ-ra,
V. ĭ′-ter,	i-tin′-ĕ-ra,
Ab. i-tĭn′-ĕ-re.	it-i-ner′-ĭ-bus.

Lăpis, *a stone;* masc.

Singular.	Plural.
N. la′-pis,	lap′-ĭ-des,
G. lap′-ĭ-dis,	lap′-ĭ-dum,
D. lap′-ĭ-di,	la-pid′-ĭ-bus,
Ac. lap′-ĭ-dem,	lap′-ĭ-des,
V. la′-pis,	lap′-ĭ-des,
Ab. lap′-ĭ-de.	la-pid′i-bus.

Virgo, *a virgin;* fem.

Singular.	Plural.
N. vir′-go,	vir′-gĭ-nes,
G. vir′-gĭ-nis,	vir′-gĭ-num,
D. vir′-gĭ-ni,	vir-gin′-ĭ-bus,
Ac. vir′-gĭ-nem,	vir′-gĭ-nes,
V. vir′-go,	vir′-gĭ-nes,
Ab. vir′-gĭ-ne.	vir-gin′-ĭ-bus.

Anĭmal, *an animal;* neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. ăn′-ĭ-mal,	an-i-ma′-li-a.
G. an-i-mā′-lis,	an-i-ma′-li-um,
D. an-i-mā′-li,	an-i-mal′-ĭ-bus.
Ac. an′-ĭ-mal,	an-i-ma′-li-a,
V. an′-ĭ-mal,	an-i-ma′-li-a,
Ab. an-i-mā′-li.	an-i-mal′-ĭ-bus.

Opus, *work;* neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. ŏ′-pus,	op′-ĕ-ra,
G. op′-ĕ-ris,	op′-ĕ-rum,
D. op′-ĕ-ri,	o-per′-ĭ-bus,
Ac. o′-pus,	op′-ĕ-ra,
V. o′-pus,	op′-ĕ-ra,
Ab. op′-ĕ-re.	o-per′-ĭ-bus.

Căput, *a head;* neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. ca′-put,	cap′-ĭ-ta,
G. cap′-ĭ-tis,	cap′-ĭ-tum,
D. cap′-ĭ-ti,	ca-pit′-ĭ-bus,
Ac. ca′-put,	cap′-ĭ-ta,
V. ca′-put,	cap′-ĭ-ta,
Ab. cap′-ĭ-te.	ca-pit′-ĭ-bus.

Poëma, *a poem;* neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. po-ē′-ma,	po-em′-ă-ta,
G. po-em′-ă-tis,	po-em′-ă-tum,
D. po-em′-ă-ti,	po-e-mat′-ĭ-bus, *or* po-em′-ă-tis,
Ac. po-ē′-ma,	po-em′-ă-ta,
V. po-ē′-ma,	po-em′-ă-ta,
Ab. po-em′-ă-te.	po-e-mat′-ĭ-bus, *or* po-em′-ă-tis.

RULES FOR THE GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ **58.**   Nouns whose gender is determined by their signification, according to the general rules, § 28—34, are not included in the following rules and exceptions.

MASCULINES.

Nouns ending in *o, er, or, es* increasing in the genitive, *os,* and *n,* are masculine; as,

sermo, speech; *dŏlor,* pain; *flos,* a flower; *carcer,* a prison; *pes,* a foot; *cănon,* a rule.

Exceptions in O.

§ **59.**   1. Abstract and collective nouns in *io* are feminine; as, *ratio,* reason; *legio,* a legion.

REM. 1. But numerals in *io;* as, *binio, trinio,* etc., except *unio,* unity, are masculine.

2. Nouns in *do* and *go,* of more than two syllables, are feminine; as, *arundo,* a reed; *imāgo,* an image. So also *grando,* hail. But *comĕdo,* a glutton; *unĕdo,* the arbute tree; and *harpăgo,* a grappling-hook, are masculine.

REM. 2. *Margo,* the brink of a river, is doubtful. *Cupīdo,* desire, is often masculine in poetry, but in prose is always feminine.
3. *Căro,* flesh, and Greek nouns in *o,* are feminine; as, *ēcho,* an echo. *Būbo,* the owl, is once feminine, Virg. A. 4, 462.

Exceptions in ER.

§ **60.**   1. *Laver,* a water plant, and *tŭber,* the tuber tree, are feminine, but when the latter denotes the fruit, it is masculine. *Linter,* a boat, is feminine, and once, in Tibullus, masculine. *Siser,* skirret, is neuter in the singular, but masculine in the plural.

2. The following, in *er,* are neuter:—

Acer, *a maple-tree.*	Papāver, *a poppy.*	Tūber, *a swelling.*
Cadāver, *a dead body.*	Pīper, *pepper.*	Uber, *a teat.*
Cĭcer, *a vetch.*	Siler, *an osier.*	Ver, *the spring.*
Iter, *a journey.*	Spinther, *a clasp.*	Verber, *a scourge.*
Lāser, *assafœtida.*	Sūber, *a cork-tree.*	Zingĭber, *ginger.*

Exceptions in OR.

§ **61.**   *Arbor,* a tree, is feminine: *ădor,* spelt; *œquor,* the sea; *marmor,* marble; and *cor,* the heart, are neuter.

Exceptions in ES *increasing in the genitive.*

1. The following are feminine:—

Compes, *a fetter.*	Quies, *and* Requies, *rest.*	Tĕges, *a mat.*
Merces, *a reward.*	Inquies, *restlessness.*	
Merges, *a sheaf of corn.*	Sĕges, *growing corn.*	

2. *Ales,* a bird; *cŏmes,* a companion; *hospes,* a guest; *interpres,* an interpreter; *miles,* a soldier; *obses,* a hostage; *præses,* a president; and *satelles,* a life-guard, are common, § 30. *Æs,* brass, is neuter.

Exceptions in OS.

3. *Arbos*, a tree; *cos*, a whetstone; *dos*, a dowry; *eos*, the morning; and rarely *něpos*, a grandchild, are feminine: *sacerdos*, *custos*, and *bos* are common, § 30: *ōs*, the mouth, and *ŏs*, a bone, are neuter; as are also the Greek words *ĕpos*, epic poetry; and *mělos*, melody.

Exceptions in N.

4. Nouns in *men* with four in *n* are neuter—*glūten*, glue; *inguen*, the groin; *pollen*, fine flour; and *unguen*, ointment.

5. Four nouns in *on* are feminine—*aēdon*, a nightingale; *halcyon*, a kingfisher; *ĭcon*, am image; and *sindon*, muslin.

FEMININES.

§ **62.** Nouns ending in *as*, *es* not increasing in the genitive, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, *s* preceded by a consonant, and *x*, are feminine; as,

ætas, age; *nūbes*, a cloud; *ăvis*, a bird; *chlămys*, a cloak; *laus*, praise; *trabs*, a beam; *pax*, peace.

Exceptions in AS.

1. *Mas*, a male, *vas*, a surety, and *as*, a piece of money, or any unit divisible into twelve parts, are masculine. Greek nouns in *as*, *antis*, are also masculine; as, *adămas*, adamant. So also *Mělas*, the name of a river, § 28, 2. *Arcas* and *Nŏmas* are common.—2. *Vas*, a vessel, the indeclinable nouns, *fas* and *něfas*, and Greek nouns in *as*, *ătis*, are neuter; as, *artocreas*, a meat-pie; *bucĕras*, a species of herb.

Exceptions in ES not increasing in the genitive.

3. *Acinăces*, a scimitar, and *cōles* or *cōlis*, a stalk, are masculine. *Antistes*, *palumbes*, *vātes*, and *vepres*, are masculine or feminine. *Cacoēthes*, *hippomănes*, *nepenthes*, and *panăces*, Greek words, are neuter.

Exceptions in IS.

§ **63.** 1. Latin nouns in *nis* are masculine or doubtful.

(1.) Masc. *Crīnis*, hair; *ignis*, fire; *pānis*, bread; *mānes*, (plur.), departed spirits.—(2.) Masc. or fem. *Amnis*, a river; *cĭnis*, ashes; *fīnis*, an end; *clūnis*, the haunch; *cănis*, a dog; *fūnis*, a rope. The plurals, *cĭnĕres*, the ashes of the dead, and *fīnes*, boundaries, are always masculine.

2. The following are common or doubtful:—

Anguis, *a snake.*	Corbis, *a basket.*	Tigris, *a tiger.*
Callis, *a path.*	Pollis, *fine flour.*	Torquis, *a chain.*
Canālis, *a conduit pipe.*	Pulvis, *dust.*	
Contubernālis, *a comrade.*	Scrŏbis, *a ditch.*	

3. The following are masculine:—

Axis, *an axle.*	Cenchris, *a serpent.*	Follis, *a pair of bellows.*
Aquālis, *a water-pot.*	Collis, *a hill.*	Fustis, *a club.*
Cassis, *a net.*	Cucŭmis, *a cucumber.*	Glis, *a dormouse.*
Caulis, *or* } *a stalk.*	Ensis, *a sword.*	Lăpis, *a stone.*
Cōlis, }	Fascis, *a bundle.*	Lemŭres, pl., *spectres.*

Mensis, *a month.*	Sanguis, *blood.*	Sentis, *a brier.*
Mugĭlis, *a mullet.*	Sēmis, or	Sodālis, *a companion.*
Orbis, *a circle.*	Semissis,	Torris, *a firebrand.*
Piscis, *a fish.*	Bessis,	compounds	Unguis, *a nail.*
Postis, *a post.*	Centussis,	of *as.*	Vectis, *a lever.*
Quīris, *a Roman.*	Decussis,	Vermis, *a worm.*
Samnis, *a Samnite.*	Tressis,	Vōmis, *a ploughshare.*

4. Names of male beings, rivers, and months in *is* are masculine; as, *Dis*, Pluto; *Anūbis*, an Egyptian deity; *Tigris*, the river Tigris; *Aprīlis*, April. See § 28.

Exceptions in YS.

Names of rivers and mountains in *ys* are masculine; as, *Hălys, Othrys.* See § 28, 2 and 3.

Exceptions in S preceded by a consonant.

§ 64. 1. *Dens*, a tooth; *fons*, a fountain; *mons*, a mountain; and *pons*, a bridge, are masculine. So also are *auceps*, a bird-catcher; *chălybs*, steel; *cliens*, a client; *ellops*, a kind of fish; *ĕpops*, a hoopoe; *gryps*, a griffin; *hydrops*, the dropsy; *mĕrops*, a kind of bird. *Rūdens*, a rope, is masculine and very rarely feminine.

2. The following nouns also are masculine, viz. (*a.*) these which are properly adjectives—*confluens* and *torrens*, scil. *amnis ; occidens* and *oriens*, scil. *sol ;* (*b.*) compounds of *dens*—*tridens*, a trident, and *bidens*, a two-pronged mattock;— but *bidens*, a sheep, is feminine; (*c.*) the parts of *as* ending in *ns ;* as, *sextans, quadrans, triens, dodrans,* and *dextans.*

3. The following are common or doubtful :—

Adeps, *grease.*	Seps, *a kind of serpent.*	Serpens, *a serpent.*
Forceps, *pincers.*	Scrobs, *a ditch.*	Stirps, *the trunk of a tree.*

Anĭmans an animal, which is properly an adjective, is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

Exceptions in X.

§ 65. 1. AX. *Anthrax*, cinnabar; *cŏrax*, a raven; *cordax*, a kind of dance; *drŏpax*, an ointment; *stўrax*, a kind of tree; *thōrax*, a breast-plate; and *Atax*, the river Aude, are masculine; *limax*, a snail, is common.

2. EX. Nouns in *ex* are masculine, except *fæx, forfex, lex, nex, prex,* (obsolete in nom. and gen. sing.), and *supellex*, which are feminine; to which add (§ 29) *cārex, ĭlex, mūrex, pellex,* and *vītex. Atriplex* is neuter and very rarely masculine or feminine. *Alex*, a fish-pickle; *cortex*, bark; *imbrex*, a gutter-tile; *ŏbex*, a bolt; and *sīlex*, a flint, are doubtful: *sĕnex*, an old person; *grex*, a herd; *rūmex*, sorrel; and *pūmex*, pumice-stone, are masculine and very rarely feminine.

3. IX. *Cālix*, a cup; *fornix*, an arch; *phœnix*, a kind of bird; and *spādix*, a palm-branch, are masculine: *lărix*, the larch-tree; *perdix*, a partridge; and *vārix*, a swollen vein, are masculine or feminine.

4. OX. *Box* and *ĕsox*, names of fishes, are masculine.

5. UX. *Trādux*, a vine-branch, is masculine.

6. YX. *Bombyx*, a silk-worm; *călyx*, the bud of a flower; *coccyx*, a cuckoo; *ŏryx*, a wild goat, and names of mountains in *yx*, as *Eryx*, are masculine. *Onyx*, a box made of the onyx-stone, and *sardŏnyx*, a precious stone; also, *calx*, the heel, and *calx*, lime; *lynx*, a lynx, and *sandyx*, a kind of color, are masculine or feminine.

NOTE. *Bombyx*, when it signifies silk, is doubtful.

7. *Quincunx, septunx, dĕcunx, deunx,* parts of *as*, are masculine.

NEUTERS.

§ **66.** Nouns ending in *a, e, i, y, c, l, t, ar, ur, us,* and *men,* are neuter; as,

dĭadĕma, a crown; *rēte,* a net; *hydromĕli,* mead; *lac,* milk; *vectīgal,* revenue; *căput,* the head; *calcar,* a spur; *guttur,* the throat; *pectus,* the breast; and *flū-men,* a river.

Exceptions in L, C, and E.

Mŭgil, a mullet, and *sol,* the sun, are masculine. *Sal,* salt, is masculine or neuter, in the singular; but, in the plural, it is always masculine. *Lac* is neuter and rarely masculine. *Præneste* is neuter, and once in Virgil feminine.

Exceptions in AR and UR.

§ **67.** *Furfur,* bran; *sălar,* a trout; *turtur,* a turtle dove; and *vultur,* a vulture, are masculine.

Exceptions in US.

1. *Lĕpus,* a hare; and Greek nouns in *pus* (πoῦς), are masculine; as, *tripus,* a tripod; but *lagōpus,* a kind of bird, is feminine.

2. Nouns in *us,* having *ūtis,* or *ūdis,* in the genitive, are feminine; as, *juventus,* youth; *incus,* an anvil.

3. *Pecus, -ŭdis,* a brute animal, and *tellus,* the earth, are feminine. *Pessĭnus,* and *Selīnus,* names of towns, are also feminine. See § 29.

4. *Grus,* a crane; *mus,* a mouse; and *sus,* a swine, are masculine or feminine.

5. *Rhus,* sumach, is masculine, and rarely feminine.

RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

GENITIVE SINGULAR.

§ **68.** 1. The genitive singular of the third declension of *Latin* nouns always ends in *is,* in *Greek* nouns it sometimes ends in *os* and *us.*

A.

2. Nouns in *a* form their genitive in *ătis;* as, *di-a-dē'-ma, di-a-dem'-ă-tis,* a crown; *dog'-ma, dog'-mă-tis,* an opinion.

E.

3. Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is;* as, *rē'-te, rē'-tis,* a net; *se-dĭ'-le, se-dĭ'-lis,* a seat.

L.

4. Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin, and are generally indeclinable; but *hy-drom'-ĕ-li,* mead, has *hyd-ro-mel'-ĭ-tis* in the genitive.

O.

§ **69.** Nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ōnis;* as, *ser'-mo, ser-mō'-nis,* speech; *pā'-vo, pa-vō'-nis,* a peacock.

REMARK. Patrials in *o* have *ŏnis;* as, *Macĕdo, -ŏnis;* but some have *ōnis;* as, *Eburōnes*, etc. See 3d exception to increments in O, § 287.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *do* and *go* form their genitive in *ĭnis;* as, *a-run'-do, a-run'-dĭ-nis,* a reed; *i-mā'-go, i-mag'-ĭ-nis,* an image.

But four dissyllables—*cūdo, ūdo, līgo* and *mango;* and three trisyllables—*comĕdo, unĕdo,* and *harpăgo,* have *ŏnis.*

Exc. 2. The following nouns, also, have *ĭnis :—Apollo; hŏmo,* a man; *nēmo,* nobody; and *turbo,* a whirlwind.
Cáro, flesh, has, by syncope, *carnis. Anio,* the name of a river, has *Aniēnis; Nerio,* the wife of Mars, *Neriēnis;* from the old nominatives, *Anien,* and *Neriēnes.*

Exc. 3. Some Greek nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ūs,* and their other cases singular, in *o;* as, *Dido,* gen. *Didus,* dat. *Dido,* etc.; *Argo, -us;* but they are sometimes declined regularly; as, *Dido, Didōnis.*

Y.

Greek nouns in *y* have their genitive in *yos;* as, *mĭsy, misўos,* or, by contraction, *misys.*

C.

§ **70.**   The only nouns in *c* are *ā'-lec, a-lĕ'-cis,* fish-brine, and *lac, lac'-tis,* milk.

L. N. R.

Nouns in *l, n,* and *r,* form their genitive by adding *is;* as, *con'-sul, con'-sŭ-lis,* a consul; *că'-non, can'-ŏ-nis,* a rule; *hŏ'-nor, ho-nō'-ris,* honor.

So, An'-ĭ-mal, an-i-mā'-lis, *an animal.*	Cal'-car, cal-cā'-ris, *a spur.*
Vĭ'-gil, vig'-ĭ-lis, *a watchman.*	Car'-cer, car'-cĕ-ris, *a prison.*
Tĭ'-tan, Tĭ-tā'-nis, *Titan.*	A'-mor, a-mō'-ris, *love.*
Sĭ'-ren, Si-rē'-nis, *a Siren.*	Gut'-tur, gut'-tŭ-ris, *the throat.*
Del'-phin, del-phī'-nis, *a dolphin.*	Mar'-tyr, mar'-tў-ris, *a martyr.*

Exceptions in L.

Fel, gall, and *mel,* honey, double *l* before *is,* making *fellis* and *mellis.*

Exceptions in N.

§ **71.** 1. Neuters in *en* form their genitive in *ĭnis;* as, *flū'-men, flu'-mĭ-nis,* a river; *glū'-ten, glu'-tĭ-nis,* glue.

The following masculines, also, form their genitive in *ĭnis :—oscen,* a bird which foreboded by its notes; *pecten,* a comb; *tibīcen,* a piper; and *tubīcen,* a trumpeter.

2. Some Greek nouns in *ŏn* form their genitive in *ontis;* as, *Laomĕdon, Laomedontis.* Some in *ĭn* and *ўn* add *is* or *os;* as, *Trāchin,* or *Trāchyn, Trāchĭnis* or *Trachўnos.*

Exceptions in R.

1. Nouns in *ter* drop *e* in the genitive ; as, *pă'-ter, pa'-tris,* a father. So also *imber,* a shower, and names of months in *ber ;* as, *Octōber, Octōbris.*

But *crāter*, a cup; *sōter*, a savior; and *lăter*, a brick, retain *e* in the genitive.

2. *Far*, a kind of corn, has *farris*; *hĕpar*, the liver, *hepătis*; *Lar* or *Lars*, *Lartis*; *iter*, a journey, has *itĭnĕris* from the old nominative *itiner*; *Jupiter*, *Jŏvis*; and *cor*, the heart, *cordis*.

3. These four in *ur* have *ŏris* in the genitive:—*ĕbur*, ivory; *fĕmur*, the thigh; *jĕcur*, the liver; *rōbur*, strength.
Fĕmur has also *femĭnis*, and *jĕcur*, *jecinŏris*, and *jocinŏris*.

AS.

§ **72.** Nouns in *as* form their genitive in *ātis*; as, *æ'-tas*, *æ-tā'-tis*, age; *pĭ'-ĕ-tas*, *pi-e-tā'-tis*, piety.

Exc. 1. *As* has *assis*; *mās*, a male, *măris*; *vas*, a surety, *vădis*; and *vās*, a vessel, *vāsis*. *Anas*, a duck, has *anătis*.

Exc. 2. Greek nouns in *as* form their genitive according to their gender; the masculines in *antis*, the feminines in *ădis* or *ădos*, and the neuters in *ătis*; as, *adāmas*, *-antis*, adamant; *lampas*, *-ădis*, a lamp; *Pallas*, *-ădis* or *-ădos*; *bucĕras*, *-ătis*, a species of herb. *Arcas*, an Arcadian, and *Nŏmas*, a Numidian, which are of the common gender, form their genitive in *ădis*. *Mĕlas*, the name of a river, has *Melānis*.

ES.

§ **73.** 1. Nouns in *es* form their genitive by changing *es* into *is*, *ĭtis*, *ĕtis*, or *ētis*; as, *rū'-pes*, *ru'-pis*, a rock; *mī'-les*, *mil'-ĭ-tis*, a soldier; *sĕ'-ges*, *seg'-ĕ-tis*, growing corn; *quī'-es*, *qui-ē'-tis*, rest.

REMARK. A few Greek proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes form their genitive in *ei*, or, by contraction, *i*, after the second declension; as, *Achilles*, *is*, *ei* or *-i*: and a few in *æ* after the first declension; as, *Orestes*, *is* or *æ*.

2. Those which make *ĭtis* are,

Ales, *a bird.*	Gurges, *a whirlpool.*	Poples, *the ham.*
Ames, *a fowler's staff.*	Hospes, *a guest.*	Satelles, *a lifeguard.*
Antīstes, *a priest.*	Līmes, *a limit.*	Stīpes, *the stock of a tree.*
Cæspes, *a turf.*	Merges, *a sheaf of corn.*	Termes, *an olive bough.*
Cŏmes, *a companion.*	Mīles, *a soldier.*	Trāmes, *a by-path.*
Eques, *a horseman.*	Palmes, *a vine-branch.*	Vēles, *a skirmisher.*
Fōmes, *touchwood.*	Pĕdes, *a foot-soldier.*	

3. The following have *ĕtis:*—*abies*, a fir-tree; *aries*, a ram; *indĭges*, a man deified; *interpres*, an interpreter; *paries*, a wall; *sĕges*, a corn-field; and *tĕges*, a mat.

4. The following have *ētis:*—*Cĕbes*; *Cres*, a Cretan; *lĕbes*, a caldron; *magnes*, a loadstone; *quies* and *requies*, rest; *inquies*, restlessness; and *tāpes* (used only in acc. and abl.), tapestry.—Some Greek proper names have either *ĕtis* or *is* in the genitive; as, *Chrĕmes*, *-ētis*, or *-is*. *Dāres*, *-ētis*, or *-is*.

Exc. 1. *Obses*, a hostage, and *præses*, a president, have *ĭdis*. *Hēres*, an heir, and *merces*, a reward, have *ēdis*; *pes*, a foot, and its compounds, have *ĕdis*.

Exc. 2. *Cĕres* has *Cerĕris;* *bes*, *bessis;* *præs*, *prædis;* and *æs*, *æris*.

IS.

§ **74.** Nouns in *is* have their genitive the same as the nominative; as, *au'-ris*, *au'-ris*, the ear; *ă'-vis*, *ă'-vis*, a bird.

Exc. 1. The following have the genitive in *ĕris*:—*cĭnis*, ashes; *pulvis*, dust; *vōmis* or *vōmer*, a ploughshare. *Cŭcūmis*, a cucumber, has *ĕris* and rarely *is*.

Exc. 2. The following have *ĭdis*:—*cāpis*, a cup; *cassis*, a helmet; *cuspis*, a point; *lăpis*, a stone; and *prōmulsis*, an antepast.

Exc. 3. Two have *ĭnis*:—*pollis*, fine flour, and *sanguis* or *sanguen*, blood.

Exc. 4. Four have *ītis*:—*Dis*, Pluto; *lis*, strife; *Quĭris*, a Roman; and *Samnis*, a Samnite.

Exc. 5. *Glis*, a dormouse, has *glīris*.

GREEK NOUNS.

1. Greek nouns in *is*, whose genitive ends in *ios* or *eos*, (*ιος* or *εως*), form their genitive in Latin in *is*; as (*a*.) verbals in *sis* ; as, *basis*, *mathēsis*, etc. (*b*.) compounds of *polis* (πόλις); as, *metropŏlis*, *Neapŏlis*, etc.; and (*c*.) a few other proper names, as *Charybdis*, *Lachĕsis*, *Syrtis*, etc. In some nouns of this class the Greek genitive is sometimes found; as, *Nemēsis*, *Nemesios*.

2. Greek nouns in *is*, whose Greek genitive is in *ĭdos* (*ιδος*), form their Latin genitive in *ĭdis*; as, *ægis*, *aspis*, *ephemĕris*, *pyrămis*, *tyrannis*, *Ænēis*, *Iris*, *Nerēis*, etc. *Tigris* has both *is* and *ĭdis*; and in some other words of this class later writers use *is* instead of *ĭdis*.

3. *Chăris* has *Charĭtis*; *Salămis*, *Salamīnis*, and *Simŏis*, *Simoentis*.

OS.

§ **75.** Nouns in *ōs* form their genitive in *ōris* or *ōtis* ; as, *flos*, *flō-ris*, a flower ; *nĕ-pos*, *ne-pō´-tis*, a grandchild.

The following have *ōris* :—

Flos, *a flower.*	Lăbos *or* lăbor, *labor.*	Os, *the mouth.*
Glos, *a husband's sister.*	Lĕpos *or* lĕpor, *wit.*	Ros, *dew.*
Hŏnos *or* hŏnor, *honor.*	Mos, *a custom.*	

Arbos or *arbor*, a tree, has *ŏris*.

The following have *ōtis* :—

Cos, *a whetstone.*	Monocĕros, *a unicorn.*	Nĕpos, *a grandchild.*
Dos, *a dowry.*	Rhinocĕros, *a rhinoceros.*	Sacerdos, *a priest.*

Exc. 1. *Custos*, a keeper, has *custōdis* ; *bos*, an ox, *bŏvis* ; and *ŏs*, a bone, *ossis*.

Exc. 2. Some Greek nouns in *os* have *ŏis* in the genitive; as, *hēros*, a hero; *Mīnos*; *Tros*, a Trojan; and some Greek neuters in *os* are used in the third declension in the nominative and accusative only; as, *Argos*, *cētos*, *ĕpos*, *mēlos*.

US.

§ **76.** 1. Nouns in *ŭs* form their genitive in *ĕris* or *ŏris* ; as, *gĕ-nus*, *gen´-ĕ-ris*, a kind ; *tem´-pus*, *tem´-pŏ-ris*, time.

2. Those which make *ĕris* are, *ăcus*, (chaff), *fœdus*, *fūnus*, *gĕnus*, *glŏmus*, *lătus*, *mūnus*, *ŏlus*, *ŏnus*, *ŏpus*, *pondus*, *rūdus*, *scĕlus*, *sīdus*, *ulcus*, *vellus*, *viscus* and *vulnus*. In early writers *pignus* has sometimes *pignĕris*.

3. Those which make *ŏris* are, *corpus*, *dĕcus*, *dedĕcus*, *facĭnus*, *fēnus*, *frīgus*, *lĕpus*, *lītus*, *nĕmus*, *pectus*, *pĕcus*, *pĕnus*, *pignus*, *stercus*, *tempus*, and *tergus*.

Exc. 1. These three in *ŭs* have *ūdis*:—*incūs*, an anvil; *pălūs*, a morass; and *subscūs*, a dove-tail. *Pĕcūs*, a brute animal, has *pecŭdis*.

Exc. 2. These five have *ūtis*:—*juventūs*, youth; *sălūs*, safety; *senectūs*, old age; *servitūs*, slavery; *virtūs*, virtue.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *ūs* have *ūris;* as, *crus*, the leg; *jus*, right; *jus*, broth; *mus*, a mouse; *pus*, matter; *rus*, the country; *tus*, frankincense; except *grus*, and *sus*, which have *gruis*, and *suis;* and *rhus*, which has *rhoïs* or *roris*. *Tellus*, the earth, has *tellūris;* and *Ligus* or *Ligur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris.*

Exc. 4. *Fraus*, fraud, and *laus*, praise, have *fraudis, laudis.*

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *pūs* (πους) have *ŏdis;* as, *tripus, tripŏdis*, a tripod; *Œdipus, -ŏdis;* but this is sometimes of the second declension.

Exc. 6. Some Greek names of cities in *us* have *untis;* as, *Amăthus, Amathun-tis*. So *Trapĕzus, Opus, Pessĭnus*, and *Selinus.*

Exc. 7. Greek nouns ending in *eus* are all proper names, and have their genitive in *eos;* as, *Orpheus, -eos*. But these nouns are found also in the second declension; as, *Orpheus, -ěi* or-*ī*. Cf. § 64, 5.

YS.

§ **77.** 1. Nouns in *ys* are Greek, and make their genitive in *ўis* (contracted *ўs*), or, as in Greek, *yos* (υος); as,

Cŏtys, gen. *Cotyis* or *Cotys; Tēthys, -ўis* or *ўos*. So *Atys, Căpys, Erinnys, Hālys, Othrys*. A few have *ўdis;* as, *chlămys, chlamўdis.*

S *preceded by a consonant.*

2. Nouns in *s*, with a consonant before it, form their genitive by changing *s* into *is* or *tis;* as, *trabs, tră'-bis*, a beam; *hi'-ems, hi'-ĕ-mis*, winter; *pars, par'-tis*, a part; *frons, fron'-tis*, the forehead.

(1.) Those in *bs*, *ms*, and *ps;* as, *scrobs, hiems, stirps*, change *s* into *is;* except *gryps*, a griffin, which has *grўphis.*

REMARK. Compounds in *ceps* from *căpio* have *ĭpis;* as, *princeps, princĭpis*, a prince. But *auceps* has *aucŭpis.*

(2.) Those in *ls*, *ns*, and *rs*, as, *puls, gens, ars*, change *s* into *tis.*

Exc. 1. The following in *ns* change *s* into *dis:—frons*, foliage: *glans*, an acorn; *juglans*, a walnut; *lens*, a nit; and *librĭpens*, a weigher.

Exc. 2. *Tīryns*, a town of Argolis, has *Tirynthis* in the genitive.

T.

§ **78.** 1. Nouns in *t* form their genitive in *ĭtis*. They are, *căput*, the head, gen. *cap'-ĭ-tis;* and its compounds, *occĭput* and *sincĭput.*

X.

2. Nouns in *x* form their genitive by resolving *x* into *cs* or *gs*, and inserting *i* before *s;* as, *vox (vocs) vō'-cis*, the voice; *lex (legs) lē'-gis*, a law.

(1.) Latin nouns in *ax* have *ācis;* as, *fornax, fornācis*, except *fax, făcis*. Most Greek nouns in *ax* have *ācis;* as, *thōrax, thorācis;* a few have *ăcis;* as, *cŏrax, corācis;* and Greek names of men in *nax* have *nactis;* as, *Astyănax, Astyanactis.*

(2.) Nouns in *ex* have *ĭcis;* as, *jūdex, judĭcis: ŏbex* has *obĭcis* or *objĭcis;* and *vibex, vibĭcis. Nex, prex*, (nom. obs.), *rĕsex* and *fenīsex* have *ĕcis; ălex, nar-thex*, and *verrex* have *ēcis*, and *fœx, fœcis. Lex* and *rex* have *ēgis; aquĭlex* and *grex* have *ĕgis; rēmex* has *remĭgis; sĕnex, sĕnis;* and *supellex, supellectĭlis.*

(3.) Nouns in *ix* have *īcis;* as, *cervix, cervīcis;* and less frequently *ĭcis;* as, *călix, calĭcis.* But *nix* has *nivis; strix,* foreign names of men, and gentile nouns in *rix* have *ĭgis;* as, *Bitŭrix, Dumnŏrix,* etc.

(4.) Nouns in *ox* have *ōcis;* as, *vox, vōcis;* but *Cappădox* has *Cappadŏcis; Allŏbrox, Allŏbrŏgis;* and *nox, noctis.*

(5.) Of nouns in *ux, crux, dux, trādux,* and *nux* have *ŭcis; lux* and *Pollux, ūcis.*—*Conjux* has *conjŭgis, frux* (nom. obs.) *frūgis,* and *faux, faucis.*

(6.) *Yx,* a Greek termination, has *ўcis, ўcis,* or *ўgis, ўgis. Onyx* and *sar-dŏnyx,* in which *x* is equivalent to *chs* (§ 3, 2) have *ўchis;* as, *ŏnyx, onўchis.*

DATIVE SINGULAR.

§ **79.** The dative singular ends in *i ;* as, *sermo,* dat. *sermōni.*

Anciently it also ended in *e;* as, *morte dătus.* Varro in Gellius. So *œre* for *œri,* Cic. and Liv.; and *jūre* for *jūri.* Liv.

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

(*a.*) The accusative singular of all neuter nouns is like the nominative.

(*b.*) The accusative singular of masculines and feminines, ends in *em.* Yet some Latin nouns in *is,* which do not increase in the genitive, have *im,* and some Greek nouns have *im, in,* or *a.*

1. Many proper names in *is,* denoting places, rivers, or gods, have the accusative singular in *im;* as, *Hispălis, Tiběris, Anūbis;* so also *Albis, Athěsis, Bœtis, Arar* or *Arăris, Bilbilis, Apis, Osiris, Syrtis,* etc. These sometimes, also, make the accusative in *in;* as, *Albin. Scaldis* has *in* and *em,* and *Liris, im, in,* and *em. Liger* has *Ligěrim.*

2. The following also have the accusative in *im:*—

Amussis, *a mason's rule.*	Mephītis, *foul air.*	Sināpis, *mustard.*
Būris, *a plough-tail.*	Pelvis, *a basin.*	Sitis, *thirst.*
Cannăbis, *hemp.*	Rāvis, *hoarseness.*	Tussis, *a cough.*
Cucūmis, (*gen.* -is), *a cucumber.*	Secūris, *an axe.*	Vis, *strength.*

3. These have *im,* and sometimes *em:*—

Febris, *a fever.*   Puppis, *the stern.*   Restis, *a rope.*   Turris, *a tower.*

But these have *em,* and rarely *im:*—

Bipennis, *a battle-axe.*	Nāvis, *a ship.*	Sementis, *a sowing.*
Clāvis, *a key.*	Præsēpis, *a stall.*	Strigĭlis, *a flesh-brush.*
Messis, *a harvest.*		

4. *Lens* and *pars* have rarely *lentim* and *partim ;* and *crātim* from *crates,* is found in Plautus.

5. Early writers formed the accusative of some other nouns in *im.*

Accusative of Greek Nouns.

§ **80.** The accusative singular of masculine and feminine Greek nouns sometimes retains the Greek terminations *in* and *a,* but often ends, as in Latin, in *em* or *im.*

I. Masculine and feminine Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os, impure,* that is, with a consonant going before, have their accusative in *em* or *a ;* as, *lampas, lampădis* (Greek *-δος*), *lampăda; chlămys, chlamȳdis, chlamȳdem,* or *-ȳda; Helicon, Helicōnis, Helicōna.*

4*

REMARK. In like manner these three, which have *is pure* in the genitive—*Trōs, Trōis, Trōem,* and *Trōa,* a Trojan; *hēros,* a hero; and *Mĭnos,* a king of Crete.—*Aër,* the air; *æther,* the sky; *delphin,* a dolphin; and *pœan,* a hymn, have usually *a ;* as, *aëra, æthĕra, delphīna, pœāna. Pan,* a god, has only *a.*

EXC. 1. Masculines in *is,* whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, have their accusative in *im* or *in;* sometimes in *idem; Păris, Parĭdis; Parim,* or *Parĭdem.*

EXC. 2. Feminines in *is,* increasing impurely in the genitive, though they usually follow the rule, have sometimes *im* or *in;* as, *Eŭs, Eŭdis; Elin* or *Eŭdem.* So *tigris,* gen. *is* or *ĭdis ;* acc. *tigrim* or *tigrin.*

II. Masculine and feminine Greek nouns in *is* not increasing, and in *ys,* gen. *yos,* form their accusative by changing the *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n;* as, *Charybdis,* (gen. Lat. *-is,* Gr. *εως*), acc. *Charybdim* or *-in ; Hălys, -yis* or *-yos, Halym* or *-yn.* So *rhus,* gen. *rhois,* has *rhum* or *rhun.*

III. Proper names ending in the diphthong *eus,* gen. *ĕi* and *ĕos,* have the accusative in *ea;* as, *Thēseus, Thesea; Tȳdeus, Tydea.* See § 54, 5.

IV. Some Greek proper names in *es,* whose genitive is in *is,* have in Latin, along with the accusative in *em,* the termination *en,* as if of the first declension; as, *Achilles, Achillen; Xerxes, Xerxen; Sophŏcles, Sophŏclen.* Cf. § 45, 1. Some also, which have either *ĕtis* or *is* in the genitive, have, besides *ētem, ēta,* or *em,* the termination *en;* as, *Chrĕmes, Thăles.*

VOCATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 81. The vocative is like the nominative.

REMARK. Many Greek nouns, however, particularly proper names, drop *s* of the nominative to form the vocative; as, *Daphnis, Daphni; Tĕthys, Tethy; Melampus, Melampu; Orpheus, Orpheu.* Proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes have a vocative in *ĕ,* after the first declension; as, *Socrătes, Socrăte.* § 45, 1.

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 82. The ablative singular commonly ends in *e.*

EXC. 1. (*a.*) Neuters in *e, al,* and *ar,* have the ablative in *i ;* as, *sedīle, sedīli ; anĭmal, animāli ; calcar, calcāri.*

(*b.*) But names of towns in *e,* and the following neuters in *ar,* have *e* in the ablative; viz. *baccar,* an herb; *far,* corn; *hĕpar,* the liver; *jŭbar,* a sunbeam; *nectar,* nectar; *par,* a pair; *sal,* salt. *Rēte,* a net, has either *e* or *i;* and *mărĕ,* the sea, has sometimes in poetry *mare* in the ablative.

EXC. 2. (*a.*) Nouns which have *im* alone, or both *im* and *in* in the accusative, and names of months in *er* or *is,* have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis, vim, vi ; Tĭbĕris, -im, i ; December, Decembri ; Aprīlis, Aprīli.*

(*b.*) But *Bætis, cannăbis,* and *sināpis,* have *e* or *i. Tigris,* the tiger, has *tigride;* as a river it has both *Tigride* and *Tigri.*

EXC. 3. (*a.*) Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, have their ablative in *e* or *i;* as, *turris, turre* or *turri.*

(*b.*) So *Elis,* acc. *Elĭdem* and *Elin,* has *Elĭde* or *Elĭ.* But *restis,* and most Greek nouns with *ĭdis* in the genitive, have *e* only; as, *Păris, -ĭdis, -ĭde.*

EXC. 4. (*a.*) Adjectives in *is,* used as nouns, have commonly *i* in the ablative, but sometimes *e;* as, *familiāris,* a friend; *natālis,* a birthday; *sodālis,* a companion; *trirēmis,* a trireme.—Participles in *ns,* used as nouns, have commonly *e* in the ablative, but *contĭnens* has *i.*

(*b.*) When adjectives in *is* become proper names, they always have *e;* as, *Juvenālis, Juvenāle. Affīnis* and *ædīlis* have generally *e;* as have always *juvĕnis,* a youth; *rŭdis,* a rod; and *volŭcris,* a bird.

Exc. 5. (*a.*) The following, though they have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative, but most of them have oftener *e* than *i:*—

Amnis,	Collis,	Ignis,	Pars,	Supellex,
Anguis,	Convallis,	Imber,	Postis,	Trīdens,
Avis,	Corbis,	Mugīlis,	Pūgil,	Unguis,
Bīlis,	Fīnis,	Orbis,	Sordes,	Vectis,
Civis,	Fustis,	Ovis,	Sors,	Vesper.
Classis,				

(*b.*) *Occiput* has only *i,* and *rus* has either *e* or *i;* but *rure* commonly signifies from the country, and *ruri,* in the country. *Mel* has rarely *i.*

(*c.*) So also names of towns, when denoting the place where any thing is said to be, or to be done, have the ablative in *i;* as, *Carthagĭni,* at Carthage; so, *Anxŭri* and *Lacedæmŏni,* and, in the most ancient writers, many other nouns occur with this termination in the ablative. *Canālis* has *i,* and very rarely *e.*

Exc. 6. Nouns in *ys,* which have *ym* or *yn* in the accusative, have their ablative in *ye* or *y;* as, *Atys, Atye,* or *Aty.*

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

§ **83.**   I.   The nominative plural of masculines and feminines ends in *es;* as, *sermōnes, rūpes:*—but neuters have *a,* and those whose ablative singular ends in *i* only, or in *e* and *i,* have *ia;* as, *căput, capĭta; sedīle, sedilia; rēte, retia. Aplustre* has both *a* and *ia.*

1.   Some Greek neuters in *os* have *ē* in the nominative plural; as, *mĕlos;* nom. plural, *mele;* (in Greek μίλεα, by contraction μίλη). So *Tempe.*

GENITIVE PLURAL.

II.   The genitive plural commonly ends in *um;* sometimes in *ium.*

1.   Nouns which, in the ablative singular, have *i* only, or both *e* and *i,* make the genitive plural in *ium;* as, *sedīle, sedīli, sedilium; turris, turre* or *turri, turrium.*

2.   Nouns in *es* and *is,* which do not increase in the genitive singular, have *ium;* as, *nūbes, nubium; hostis, hostium.*

Exc. *Cănis, juvĕnis, fŏris, mugĭlis, prōles, strues,* and *vātes,* have *um;* so oftener have *ăpis, strĭgilis,* and *volŭcris;* less frequently *mensis, sēdes,* and, in the poets only, *ambāges, cædes, clādes, vepres,* and *cælestis.*

3.   Monosyllables ending in two consonants have *ium* in the genitive plural; as, *urbs, urbium; gens, gentium; arx, arcium.*

Exc. *Lynx, sphinx,* and *ops* (nom. obsolete) have *um.*

Most monosyllables in *s* and *x* pure have *um,* but the following have *ium; dos, mas, glis, lis, os* (*ossis*), *faux,* (nom. obs.) *nix, nox, strix, vis,* generally *fraus* and *mus;* so also *fur* and *ren,* and sometimes *lar.*

4.   Nouns of two or more syllables, in *ns* or *rs,* and names of nations in *as,* have commonly *ium,* but sometimes *um;* as, *cliens, clientium* or *clientum; Arpīnas, Arpinatium.*

(1.) Other nouns in *as* generally have *um*, but sometimes *ium*; as, *ætas*, *ætā-tum* or *ætatium*. *Penātes* and *optimātes* have usually *ium*.

5. The following have *ium*:—*căro*, *compes*, *linter*, *imber*, *ūter*, *venter*, *Samnis*, *Quiris*, and usually *Insŭber*. *Fornax* and *pălus* have sometimes *ium*.

6. Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *gĭgas*, *gĭgantum*; *Arabs*, *Arăbum*; *Thrax*, *Thrăcum*;—but a few, used as titles of books, have sometimes *ōn*; as, *Epĭgramma*, *epigrammătōn*; *Metamorphōsis*, *-eōn*. The patrial *Maleōn* also is found in Curtius, 4, 13.

REMARK 1. *Bos* has *boum* in the genitive plural.

REM. 2. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; as, *mănes*, *manium*; *cœlĭtes*, *cœlĭtum*; *ĭlia*, *ilium*; as if from *mănis*, *cœles*, and *īle*. So also names of feasts in *alia*; as, *Saturnalia*, *Saturna-lium*; but these have sometimes *ōrum* after the second declension. *Ales* has sometimes, by epenthesis, *alituum*. See § 322, 3.

DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLURAL.

§ **84.** The dative and ablative plural end in *ĭbus*.

EXC. 1. *Bos* has *bōbus* and *būbus*, by contraction, for *bovĭbus*; *sus* has *sŭbus* by syncope, for *suĭbus*. § 322, 5, and 4.

EXC. 2. Greek nouns in *ma* have the dative and ablative plural more frequently in *is* than in *ĭbus*; as, *poĕma*, *poemătis*, or *poematĭbus*.

EXC. 3. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns, that increase in the genitive, in *si*, and, before a vowel, in *sin*; as, *herōis*, *heroĭdis*; *heroĭsi*, or *heroĭsin*. Ovid. So in Quintilian, *Metamorphosēsi*.

ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

§ **85.** The accusative plural ends, like the nominative, in *ēs*, *ă*, *iă*.

EXC. 1. The accusative plural of masculines and feminines, whose genitive plural ends in *ium*, anciently ended in *īs* or *ēis*, instead of *ēs*; as, *partes*, gen. *partium*, acc. *partĕis* or *partēs*.

EXC. 2. Greek masculines and feminines, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, have their accusative in *as*; as, *lumpas*, *lampădis*, *lampădas*. So also *hēros*, *herōis*, *herōas*, and some barbarian names of nations have a similar form; as, *Brigantas*, *Allobrŏgas*.

Jupĭter, and *vis*, strength, are thus declined :—

Singular.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Ju′-pĭ-ter,	*N.* vis,	vī′-res,
G. Jŏ′-vis,	*G.* vis,	vir′-i-um,
D. Jŏ′-vi,	*D.* —	vir′-i-bus,
Ac. Jŏ′-vem,	*Ac.* vim,	vī′-res,
V. Ju′-pĭ-ter,	*V.* vis,	vī′-res,
Ab. Jŏ′-ve.	*Ab.* vi.	vir′-i-bus.

§ **86.**   The following table exhibits the principal forms of Greek nouns of the third declension :—

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Acc.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
S.	Lampas,	{ -ădis, -ădos, }	-ădi,	{ -ădem, -ăda, }	-as,	-ăde.
Pl.	-ădes,	-ădum,	-adĭbus,	{ -ădes, -ădas, }	-ădes,	-adĭbus.
S.	Hēros,	-ōis,	-ōi,	{ -ōem, -ōa, }	-os,	-ōe.
Pl.	-ōes,	-ōum,	-oĭbus,	{ -ōes, -ōas, }	-ōes,	-oĭbus.
	Chĕlys,	{ -ўis, ўos, }	-ўi,	{ -ym, -yn, }	-y,	-ўe *or* y.
	Poēsis,	{ -is, -ĭos, -ĕos, }	-i,	{ -im, -in, }	-i,	-i.
	Achilles,	{ -is, -ei, -i, -ĕos, }	-i,	{ -em, -ĕa, ēn, }	-es, -ē,	-e *or* -i.
	Orpheus,	-ĕos,	-ĕi,	-ĕa,	-eu,	See § 54.
	Aër,	-ĕris,	-ĕri,	-ĕra,	-er,	-ĕre.
	Dīdō,	-ūs,	-ō,	-ō,	-ō,	-ō.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ **87.** Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*. Those in *us* are masculine ; those in *u* are neuter, and, except in the genitive, are indeclinable in the singular.

Nouns of this declension are thus declined :—

	Fructus, *fruit.*			Cornu, *a horn.*	
	Singular.	*Plural.*		*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N.	fruc'-tŭs,	fruc'-tūs,	*N.*	cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ă,
G.	fruc'-tūs,	fruc'-tu-ŭm,	*G.*	cor'-nūs,	cor'-nu-ŭm,
D.	fruc'-tu-ī,	fruc'-tĭ-bŭs,	*D.*	cor'-nū,	cor'-nĭ-bŭs,
Ac.	fruc'-tŭm,	fruc'-tūs,	*Ac.*	cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ă,
V.	fruc'-tŭs,	fruc'-tūs,	*V.*	cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ă,
Ab.	fruc'-tū.	fruc'-tĭ-bŭs.	*Ab.*	cor'-nū.	cor'-nĭ-bŭs.

In like manner decline

Can'-tus, *a song.*	Fluc'-tus, *a wave.*	Se-nā'-tus, *the senate.*
Cur'-rus, *a chariot.*	Luc'-tus, *grief.*	Gĕ'-lu, *ice.* (in sing.)
Ex-er'-cĭ-tus, *an army.*	Mō'-tus, *motion.*	Vĕ'-ru, *a spit.*

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ **88.**   1. The following are feminine :—

Acus, *a needle.*	Fīcus, *a fig.*	Portĭcus, *a gallery.*
Dŏmus, *a house.*	Mănus, *a hand.*	Trĭbus, *a tribe.*

Cŏlus, a distaff, and the plurals *Quinquātrus*, a feast of Minerva, and *Idus*, the Ides, are also feminine. So *noctu*, by night, found only in the ablative singular

Pēnus, a store of provisions, when of the fourth declension, is masculine or feminine. *Sĕcus*, sex, is neuter; see § 94. *Spĕcus*, a den, is masculine and rarely feminine or neuter.

2. Some personal appellatives, and names of trees, are feminine by signification; as,

Anus, nŭrus, socrus;—cornus, laurus, and *quercus. Myrtus* also is feminine and rarely masculine. See § 29, 1 and 2.

Exceptions in Declension.

§ **89.** *Dŏmus*, a house, is partly of the fourth declension, and partly of the second. It is thus declined:—

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	do′-mŭs,	do′-mūs,
G.	do′-mūs, *or* do′-mī,	dom′-u-ŭm, *or* do-mō′-rŭm,
D.	dom′-u-ī, *or* do′-mō,	dom′-ĭ-bŭs,
Ac.	do′-mŭm,	do′-mūs, *or* do′-mōs,
V.	do′-mŭs,	do′-mūs,
Ab.	do′-mō.	dom′-ĭ-bŭs.

(*a.*) *Domūs*, in the genitive, signifies, of a house; *domī* commonly signifies, at home. The ablative *domu* is found in Plautus, and in ancient inscriptions. In the genitive and accusative plural the forms of the second declension are more used than those of the fourth.

(*b.*) *Cornus*, a cornel-tree; *fĭcus*, a fig, or a fig-tree; *laurus*, a laurel; and *myrtus*, a myrtle, are sometimes of the second declension. *Pĕnus* is of the second, third or fourth declension.

(*c.*) Some nouns in *u* have also forms in *us* and *um;* as, *cornu, cornus,* or *cornum.* Adjectives, compounds of *manus*, are of the first and second declensions.

Remark 1. Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were formed by contraction, thus:—

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	frŭctŭs,	frutuēs, ūs,
G.	fructuīs, -ūs,	fructuŭm, -ŭm,
D.	fructui, -ū,	fructuībŭs, -ūbŭs, *or* -ĭbŭs,
Ac.	fructuĕm, -ŭm,	fructuēs, ūs,
V.	fructŭs,	fructuēs, -ūs,
Ab.	fructuĕ, -ū.	fructuībŭs, -ūbŭs, *or* -ĭbŭs.

2. The genitive singular in *is* is sometimes found in ancient authors; as, *anuis*, Ter. A genitive in *i*, after the second declension, also occurs; as, *senātus, senāti; tumultus, tumulti.* Sall.

3. The contracted form of the dative in *u* is not often used; yet it sometimes occurs, especially in Cæsar, and in the poets.

4. The contracted form of the genitive plural in *um* rarely occurs.

5. The following nouns have *ŭbus* in the dative and ablative plural:—

Acus, *a needle.*	Artus, *a joint.*	Partus, *a birth.*	Spĕcus, *a den.*
Arcus, *a bow.*	Lăcus, *a lake.*	Pĕcu, *a flock.*	Trĭbus, *a tribe.*

Gĕnu, a knee; *portus*, a harbor; *tonĭtrus*, thunder; and *vĕru*, a spit, have *ĭbus* or *ŭbus.*

FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ **90.** Nouns of the fifth declension end in *ēs*, and are of the feminine gender.

They are thus declined : —

Res, *a thing.*			Dies, *a day.*	
Singular.	*Plural.*		*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N. rēs,	rēs,		*N.* dĭ′-ēs,	dĭ′-ēs,
G. rĕ′-ī,	rē′-rŭm,		*G.* di-ē′-ī,	di-ē′-rŭm,
D. rĕ′-ī,	rē′-bŭs,		*D.* di-ē′-ī,	di-ē′-bŭs,
Ac. rĕm,	rēs,		*Ac.* di′-ĕm,	dĭ′-ēs,
V. rēs,	rēs,		*V.* dĭ′-ēs,	dĭ′-ēs,
Ab. rē.	rē′-bŭs.		*Ab.* dĭ′-ē.	di-ē′-bŭs.

REMARK. Nouns of this declension, like those of the fourth, seem to have belonged originally to the third declension.

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. *Dies*, a day, is masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural; *meridies*, mid-day, is masculine only.

NOTE. *Dies* is seldom feminine, in good prose writers, except when it denotes duration of time, or a day fixed and determined.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

2. The genitive and dative singular sometimes end in *ē* or in *ī*, instead of *ei*; as, gen. *diē* for *diēi*, Virg.; *fĭde* for *fidei*, Hor.; *acie* for *aciēi*, Cæs.—gen. *plēbi* for *plebēi*, Liv.—dat. *fĭde* for *fidei*, Hor., *pernice*, Liv., and *pernicii*, Nep., for *perniciēi*. The genitive *rabĭēs* contracted for *rabieis*, after the third declension, is found in Lucretius.

REMARK 1. There are only about eighty nouns of this declension, and of these only two, *res* and *diēs*, are complete in the plural. *Acies, effigies, eluvies, facies, glacies, progenies, series, species, spes*, want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and the rest want the plural altogether.

REM. 2. All nouns of this declension end in *ies*, except four—*fĭdes*, faith; *res*, a thing; *spes*, hope; and *plēbes*, the common people;—and all nouns in *ies* are of this declension, except *abies, aries, paries, quies*, and *requies*, which are of the third declension.

DECLENSION OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

§ **91.** When a compound noun consists of two nominatives, both parts are declined; but when one part is a nominative, and the other an oblique case, the nominative only is declined. Of the former kind are *respublĭca*, a commonwealth, and *jusjurandum*, an oath; of the latter, *mater-familias*, a mistress of a family. Cf. § 43, 2.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N. V.	res-pŭb′-lĭ-ca,	*N. V.* res-pub′-lĭ-cæ,
G. D.	re-i-pub′-lĭ-cæ,	*G.* re-rum-pub-li-cā′-rum,
Ac.	rem-pub′-lĭ-cam,	*D. Ab.* re-bus-pub′-lĭ-cis,
Ab.	re-pŭb′-lĭ-cā.	*Ac.* res-pub′-lĭ-cas.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.
N. jus-ju-ran′-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran′-da,	*N.* ma-ter-fa-mil′-i-as,
G. ju-ris-ju-ran′-di,	————————	*G.* ma-tris-fa-mil′-i-as,
D. ju-ri-ju-ran′-do,	————————	*D.* ma-tri-fa-mil′-i-as,
Ac. jus-ju-ran′-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran′-da,	*Ac.* ma-trem-fa-mil′-i-as,
V. jus-ju-ran′-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran′-da.	*V.* ma-ter-fa-mil′-i-as,
Ab. ju-re-ju-ran′-do.	————————	*Ab.* ma-tre-fa-mil′-i-as, *etc.*

NOTE. The preceding compounds are divided and pronounced like the simple words of which they are compounded.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

§ 92. Irregular nouns are divided into three classes— *Variable, Defective,* and *Redundant.*

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

A noun is variable, which, in some of its parts, changes either its gender or declension or both.

Nouns which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous;* those which vary in declension are called *heteroclites.*

Heterogeneous Nouns.

1. Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as,

Avernus, Dindȳmus, Ismărus, Massĭcus, Mœnălus, Pangœus, Tartărus, Taygĕtus; plur. *Averna,* etc.

2. Masculine in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural; as,

jŏcus, a jest; plur. *jŏci,* or *jŏca;—lŏcus,* a place; plur. *lŏci,* passages in books, topics, places; *lŏca,* places;—*sibĭlus,* a hissing; plur. *sibĭla,* rarely *sibĭli;—intŭbus,* endive; plur. *intŭbi* or *intŭba.*

3. Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as,

carbăsus, a species of flax; plur. *carbăsa,* very rarely *carbăsi,* sails, etc., made of it;—*Hierosolȳma, -œ,* Jerusalem; plur. *Hierosolȳma, -ōrum.*

4. Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural; as,

cœlum, heaven; plur. *cœli;—Elysium;* plur. *Elysii;—Argos;* plur. *Argi.* So *siser,* neut., plur. *sisĕres,* masc.

5. Neuter in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural; as,

frēnum, a bridle; plur. *frēni* or *frēna;—rastrum,* a rake; plur. *rastri,* or, more rarely, *rastra;—pugillar,* a writing tablet; plur. *pugillāres* or *pugillaria.*

6. Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural; as,

epŭlum, a feast; plur. *epŭlœ;—balneum,* a bath; plur. *balnĕœ* or *balnea;— nundĭnum,* a market-day; plur. *nundĭnœ,* a fair.

7. Feminine or neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural; as,

delicia or *delicium,* delight; plur. *deliciœ.*

Heteroclites.

§ 93. 1. Second or third declension in the singular, and third in the plural; as,

nom. and acc. *jugĕrum*, an acre; gen. *jugĕri* or *jugĕris;* abl. *jugĕro* and *jugĕre;* plur., nom., and acc. *jugĕra;* gen. *jugĕrum;* abl. *jugĕris* and *jugeribus.*

2. Third declension in the singular, and second in the plural; as,

vās, a vessel; plur. *vāsa, ōrum. Ancile*, a shield, has sometimes *anciliōrum*, in the genitive plural.

NOTE. Variable nouns seem anciently to have been redundant, and to have retained a part of each of their original forms. Thus, *vāsa, -ōrum*, properly comes from *vāsum, -i*, but the latter, together with the plural of *vas, vāsis*, became obsolete.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

§ 94. Nouns are defective either in case or in number.

1. Nouns defective in case may want either one or more cases. Some are altogether indeclinable, and are called *aptotes.*

Such are *pondo*, a pound; most nouns in *i;* as, *gummi*, gum: foreign words; as, *Aaron, Jacob: sēmis*, a half; *git*, a kind of plant; the singular of *mille*, a thousand; words put for nouns; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination; and names of the letters of the alphabet.

A noun which is found in one case only, is called a *Monoptote;* if found in two cases, a *Diptote;* if in three, a *Triptote;* if in four, a *Tetraptote;* and if in five, a *Pentaptote.*

The following list contains most nouns defective in case. Those which occur but once in Latin authors are distinguished by an asterisk :—

Abactus, acc. pl.; a driving away.
Accītu, *abl.; a calling for.*
Admissu, *abl.; admission.*
Admonĭtu, *abl.; admonition.*
Æs, not used in *gen. pl.*
Affātu, *abl.; an addressing ;—pl.* affātus, -ĭbus.
Algus, *nom.;* algum, *acc.;* algu, *abl.; cold.*
Ambāge, *abl.; a going around ;—pl.* entire.
Amissum, acc.; a loss.
Aplustre, *nom.* and *acc.; the flag of a ship ;—pl.* aplustria, *or* aplustra.
Arbitrātus, *nom.;* -um, *acc.;* -u, *abl.; judgment.*
Arcessītu, *abl.; a sending for.*
Astu, *nom., acc.; a city.*
Astus, *nom.;* astu, *abl.; craft ;—*astus, *acc. pl.*
Cacoēthes, *nom., acc.; an evil custom ;—*cacoēthe, *nom. pl.;* -e, *and* -es, *acc. pl.*
Canĭties, *nom.;* -em, *acc.;* -e, *abl.*

Cētos, *acc.; a whale ;—*cēte, *nom.* and *acc. pl.;* cetis, *dat.*
Chāos, *nom. acc.;* chao, *abl.; chaos.*
Cassem, *acc.;* casse, *abl.; a net ;—pl.* entire.
Circumspectus, *nom.;* -um; -u; *a looking around.*
Coactu, *abl.; constraint.*
Cœlĭte, *abl.; pl.* entire; *inhabitants of heaven.*
Commutātum, acc.; an alteration.
Compĕdis, *gen.;* compĕde, *abl.; a fetter ;—pl.* compĕdes, -ium, -ĭbus.
Concessu, *abl.; permission.*
Condiscipulātu, *abl.; companionship at school.*
Crātim, *or* -em, *acc.;* -e, *abl.; a hurdle ;—pl.* crātes, -ium, -ĭbus.
Cupressu, *abl.; a cypress.*
Daps, *nom.,* scarcely used; dăpis, *gen.* etc. *pl.* dapes, -ĭbus; *a feast.*
Dătu, abl.; a giving.
Derīsus, -ui, *dat.;* -um, *acc.;* -u, *abl.; ridicule.*

Despicatui, *dat.*; *contempt.*

Dīca, *nom.*; dicam, *acc.*; *a legal process;*—dicas, *acc. pl.*

Dicis, *gen.*; *as*, dicis gratiā, *for form's sake.*

Ditiōnis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *power.*

Diu, *abl.*; *in the day time.*

Divisui, *dat.*; *a dividing.*

Ebur, *ivory;*—not used in the plural.

*Efflagitātu, *abl.*; *importunity.*

*Ejectus, *nom.*; *a throwing out.*

Epos, *nom.* and *acc.*; *an epic poem.*

Ergo, *abl.* (or *adv.*); *for the sake.*

Essēdas, *acc. pl.*; *war chariots.*

Evectus, *nom.*; *a carrying out.*

Fæx, *dregs*, wants *gen. pl.*

Fāmē, *abl.*; *hunger.*

Far, *corn*, not used in the *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*

Fas, *nom.*; *acc.*; *right.*

Fauce, *abl.*; *the throat;*—*pl.* entire.

Fax, *a torch*, wants *gen. pl.*

Fel, *gall*, wants *gen. pl.*

Feminis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -e, *abl.*; *the thigh;*—mĭna, -ĭbus.

Flictu, *abl.*; *a striking.*

Fŏris, *nom.* and *gen.*; -em, *acc*; -e, *abl.*; *a door;*—*pl.* entire.

Fors, *nom.*; -tis, *gen.*; -tem, *acc.*; -te, *abl.*; *chance.*

*Frustratui, *abl.*; *a deceiving.*

Frux, *fruit*, *nom.* scarcely used;—frūgis, *gen.*, etc.

Fulgetras, *acc. pl.*; *lightning.*

Gausăpe, *nom.*, *acc.*, *abl.*; *a rough garment;*—gausăpa, *acc. pl.*

Glos, *nom.*; *a husband's sister.*

Grātes, *acc. pl.*;—gratĭbus, *abl.*; *thanks.*

Hebdomădam, *acc.*; *a week.*

Hiems, *winter*, not used in *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*

Hippomānes, *nom.* and *acc.*

*Hir, *nom.*; *the palm of the hand.*

Hortātu, *abl.*; *an exhorting;*—*pl.* hortatĭbus.

Impĕtis, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; *a shock;*—*pl.* impetĭbus.

Incĭtas, *or* -a, *acc. pl.*; *as*, ad incĭtas redactus, *reduced to a strait.*

*Inconsultu, *abl.*; *without advice.*

*Indultu, *abl.*; *indulgence.*

Inferiæ, *nom. pl.*; -as, *acc.*; -is, *abl.*; *sacrifices to the dead.*

Infitias, *acc. pl.*; *a denial; as*, ire infitias, *to deny.*

Ingratiis, *abl. pl.*, (used adverbially); *against one's will.*

Injussu, *abl.*; *without command.*

Inquies, *nom.*; *restlessness.*

Instar, *nom.*, *acc.*: *a likeness.*

Interdiu, *abl.* (or *adv.*); *in the day time.*

*Invitātu, *abl.*; *an invitation.*

Irrisui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *derision.*

Jŏvis, *nom.*, rarely used;—*pl.* Joves.

Jugĕris, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; *an acre;*—*pl.* jugĕra, -um, -ĭbus.

Jussu, *abl.*; *command.*

Lābes, *a spot*, wants *gen. pl.*

Lūcu, *abl.*; *day-light.*

*Ludificatui, *dat.*; *a mockery.*

Lux, *light*, wants the *gen. pl.*

Mandātu, *abl.*; *a command.*

Māne, *nom.*, *acc.*; mane, *or* rarely -I, *abl.*; *the morning.*

Mel, *honey*, not used in *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*

Mĕlos, *nom.*, *acc.*; melo, *dat.*; *melody;*—mĕle, *nom.*, *acc. pl.*

Mĕtus, *fear*, not used in *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*

Missu, *abl.*; *a sending;*—*pl.* missus, -ĭbus.

Monĭtu, *abl.*; *admonition;*—*pl.* monĭtus.

Nātu, *abl.*; *by birth.*

Nauci, *gen.*, with non; *as*, homo non nauci, *a man of no account.*

Nĕfas, *nom.*, *acc.*; *wickedness.*

Nēmo, *nobody*, wants the *voc.* and the *pl.*

Nepenthes, *nom.*, *acc.*; *an herb.*

Nex, *death*, wants the *voc.*;—nĕces, *nom.*, *acc. pl.*

Nihil, *or* nihĭlum, *nom.* and *acc.*; -i, *gen.*; -o, *abl.*; *nothing.*

Noctu, *abl.*; *by night.*

Nuptui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *marriage.*

Obex, *nom.*; -ĭcem, *acc.*; -ĭce, *or* -jīce, *abl.*; *a bolt;*—*pl.* ŏbĭces, -jicĭbus.

Objectum, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *an interposition;*—*pl.* objectus.

Obtentui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *a pretext.*

Opis, *gen.*; ŏpem, *acc.*; ŏpe, *abl.*; *help;*—*pl.* entire.

Opposĭtu, *abl.*; *an opposing;*—*pl.* opposĭtus, *acc.*

Opus, *nom.*, *acc.*; *need.*

Os, *the mouth*, wants the *gen. pl.*

Panăces, *nom.*; -is, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; *an herb.*

Pax, *peace*, wants *gen. pl.*

Peccātu, *abl.*; *a fault.*

Pecŭdis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*: -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*;—*pl.* entire.

Pelăge, *acc. pl.* of pelăgus; *the sea.*

Permissu, *abl.*; -um, *acc.*; *permission.*

Piscātus, *nom.*; -i, *gen.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *a fishing.*

Pix, *pitch*; pīces, *acc. pl.*

Pondo, *abl.*; *in weight.* Cf. § 94, 1.

Prēci, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *prayer;*
　—pl. entire.

Prōcer; *nom.*; -em, *acc.*; *a peer;—pl.*
　entire.

Promptu, *abl.*, *readiness.*

Pus wants *gen. dat.* and *abl.* pl.

Reiātum, *acc.*;—u, *abl.*; *a recital.*

Repetundārum, *gen. pl.*; -is, *abl.*;
　money taken by extortion.

Rogātu, *abl.*; *a request.*

Ros, *dew*, wants *gen. pl.*

Rus, *the country*, wants *gen.*, *dat.*, and
　abl. pl.

Satias, *nom.*; -ātem, *acc.*; āte, *abl.*;
　satiety.

Sĕcus, *nom.*, *acc.*; *sex.*

Sītus, *nom.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *situa-*
　*tion;—*sītus, *nom.* and *acc. pl.*

Sītus, *nom.*; -ūs, *gen.*; -um, *acc.*; -u,
　abl.; *rust;—*sītus, *acc. pl.*

Sol, *the sun*, wants *gen. pl.*

Sordis, *gen.*; -em, *acc.*; -e and -i, *abl;*
　filth;—pl. sordes,-ium, etc.

Spontis, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; *of one's own*
　accord.

Subōles, *offspring*, wants *gen. pl.*

Suppetiæ, *nom. pl.*; -as, *acc.*; *sup-*
　plies.

Tābum, *nom.*; -i, *gen.*; -o, *abl.*; *cor-*
　rupt matter.

Tempe, *nom. acc. voc. pl.*; *a vale in*
　Thessaly.

Tus wants *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*

Vēnui and -o, *dat.*; um, *acc.*; -o, *abl.;*
　sale.

Veprem, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *a brier;—pl.*
　entire.

Verbĕris, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; *a stripe;—pl.*
　verbĕra, um, ĭbus.

Vesper, *nom.*; -um, *acc-*; -e, -i, *or* -o,
　abl.; *the evening.*

Vespĕra, *nom.*; -am, *acc.*; -ā, *abl.*; *the*
　evening.

Vicis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e,
　abl.; *change ;—pl.* entire, except *gen.*

Vīrus, *nom.*; -i, *gen*,; -us, *acc.*; -o, *abl.*;
　poison.

Vis, *gen.* and *dat.* rare ; *strength; pl.*
　vīres, -ium, etc.　See § 85.

Viscus, *nom.*; -ĕris, *gen.*: -ĕre, *abl.*;
　an internal organ. pl. viscĕra, etc.

Vocātu, *abl.*; *a calling ;—*vocātus, *acc.*
　pl.

REMARK 1. To these may be added nouns of the fifth declension, which either want the plural, as most of them are abstract nouns, or have in that number only the nominative, accusative, and vocative. *Res* and *dies,* however, have the plural entire. Cf. § 90, R. 1.

REM. 2. For the use of the vocative, also, of many nouns, no classical authority can be found.

§ 95. 2. Nouns defective in number, want either the plural or the singular.

(a) Many nouns want the plural from the nature of the things which they express. Such are generally names of persons, most names of places (except those which have only the plural), the names of herbs, of the arts, most material and abstract nouns; but these may have a plural when used as common nouns, (§ 26, R. 3.), and many others.

REM. In Latin the plural of abstract nouns is often used to denote the existence of the quality, attribute, etc. in different objects, or the repetition of an action ; and in poetry such plurals are used for the sake of emphasis or metre. See § 98.

The following list contains many of the *nouns which want the plural,* and also some, marked *p,* which are included in the above classes, but are sometimes used in the plural.

Aconītum, *wolfsbane*, p.

Adorea, *a military re-*
　ward.

Aër, *the air*, p.

Æs, *brass, money*, p.

Æther, *the sky.*

Ævum, *age, lifetime*, p.

Album, *an album.*

Allium, *garlic*, p.

Amicitia, *friendship*, p.

Argilla, *white clay.*

Avēna, *oats*, p.

Balaustium, *the flower of*
　the pomegranate.

Balsămum, *balsam*, p.

Barathrum, *a gulf.*

Callum, *hardened skin*, p.

Cálor, *heat*, p.

Carduus, *a thistle*, p.
Căro, *flesh*, p.
Cēra, *wax*, p.
Cestus, *a girdle*.
Cicūta, *hemlock*, p.
Cœnum, *mud*.
Contagium, *contagion*, p.
Crŏcum, *saffron*.
Crŏcus, *saffron*, p.
Cruor, *blood*, p.
Cŭtis, *the skin*, p.
Dilucŭlum, *the dawn*.
Ebur, *ivory*.
Electrum, *amber*, p.
Far, *corn*, p.
Fel, *gall*, p.
Fervor, *heat*, p.
Fĭdes, *faith*.
Fīmus, *dung*.
Fŭga, *flight*, p.
Fūmus, *smoke*, p.
Fŭror, *madness*, p.
Galla, *an oak-apple*, p.
Gĕlu, *frost*.
Glarea, *gravel*.
Gloria, *glory*, p.
Glastum, *woad*.
Glūten, *or*
Glutĭnum, *glue*.
Gypsum, *white plaster*.
Hēpar, *the liver*.
Hespěrus, *the evening star*.
Hīlum, *a little thing*.
Hordeum, *barley*, p.
Hŭmus, *the ground*.
Indŏles, *native quality*, p.
Ira, *anger*, p.
Jŭbar, *radiance*.
Jus, *justice, law*, p.
Justitium, *a law vacation*.

Lac, *milk*.
Lætitia, *joy*, p.
Languor, *faintness*, p.
Lardum, *bacon*, p.
Lătex, *liquor*, p.
Lētum, *death*.
Lignum, *wood*, p.
Līnus, *mud*.
Līquor, *liquor*, p.
Lues, *a plague*.
Lŭtum, *clay*, p.
Lux, *light*, p.
Macellum, *the shambles*.
Māne, *the morning*.
Marmor, *marble*, p.
Mel, *honey*, p.
Meridies, *mid-day*.
Mors, *death*, p.
Munditia, *neatness*, p.
Mundus, *female orna-ments*.
Muscus, *moss*.
Nectar, *nectar*.
Nēmo, *no man*.
Nequitia, *wickedness*, p.
Nihīlum, *nihil, or nil, no-thing*.
Nitrum, *natron*.
Oblivio, *forgetfulness*, p.
Omāsum, *bullock's tripe*.
Opium, *opium*.
Palea, *chaff*, p.
Pax, *peace*, p.
Pěnum, *and*
Pěnus, *provisions*, p.
Piper, *pepper*.
Pix, *pitch*, p.
Pontus, *the sea*.
Prolubium, *desire*.
Pūbes, *the youth*.
Pulvis, *dust*, p.

Purpŭra, *purple*, p.
Quies, *rest*, p.
Ros, *dew*, p.
Rŭbor, *redness*, p.
Sabŭlo *and*
Sabŭlum, *gravel*.
Sal, *salt*.
Sălum, *the sea*.
Sălus, *safety*.
Sanguis, *blood*.
Scrupŭlum, *a scruple*, p.
Senium, *old age*.
Siler, *an osier*.
Sināpi, *mustard*.
Sĭser, *skirret*, p.
Sĭtis, *thirst*.
Sol, *the sun*, p.
Sŏpor, *sleep*, p.
Specĭmen, *an example*.
Spūma, *foam*, p.
Sulfur, *sulphur*, p.
Supellex, *furniture*.
Tābes, *a consumption*.
Tābum, *corrupt matter*.
Tellus, *the earth*.
Terror, *terror*, p.
Thŷmum, *thyme*, p.
Tribŭlus, *a thistle*, p.
Tristitia, *sadness*.
Ver, *spring*.
Vespěra, *the evening*.
Veternus, *lethargy*.
Vīgor, *strength*, p.
Vīnum, *wine*, p.
Vīrus, *poison*.
Viscum, *and*
Viscus, *bird-lime*.
Vitrum, *woad*.
Vulgus, *the common peo-ple*.
Zingĭber, *ginger*.

§ **96.** (*b*). The names of festivals and games, and several names of places and books, want the singular; as, *Bacchanalia*, a festival of Bacchus; *Olympia*, the Olympic games; *Bucolĭca*, a book of pastorals; and the following names of places:—

Acroceraunia,	Baiæ,	Fundi,	Locri,	Sūsa,
Amyclæ,	Ceraunia,	Gabii,	Parisii,	Syracūsæ,
Artaxāta,	Ecbatăna,	Gādes,	Philippi,	Thermopýlæ,
Athēnæ,	Esquiliæ,	Gemoniæ,	Puteŏli,	Veii.

NOTE. Some of those in *i* properly signify the people.

The following list contains most other *nouns which want the singular,* and also some, marked *s*, which are rarely used in that number:—

Acta, *records*.
Adversaria, *a memoran-dum-book*.
Æstīva, sc. castra, *sum-mer quarters*.

Alpes, *the Alps*, s.
Annāles, *annals*, s.
Antæ, *door-posts*.
Antes, *rows*.
Antiæ, *a forelock*.

Apīnæ, *trifles*.
Argutiæ, *witticisms*, s.
Arma, *arms*.
Artus, *the joints*, s.
Bellaria, *sweetmeats*.

Bīgæ, *a two-horse char-iot*, s.
Braccæ, *breeches.*
Branchiæ, *the gills of fishes.*
Brevia, *shallow places.*
Calendæ, *the Calends.*
Cancelli, *balustrades.*
Cāni, *gray hairs.*
Casses, *a hunter's net*, s.
Caulæ, *sheep-folds.*
Celĕres, *the body-guard of the Roman kings.*
Cibaria, *victuals*, s.
Clitellæ, *a pack-saddle.*
Codicilli, *a writing.*
Cœlĭtes, *the gods*, s.
Crepundia, *a rattle.*
Cunabŭla, *and*
Cūnæ, *a cradle.*
Cyclădes, *the Cyclades*, s.
Decĭmæ, *tithes*, s.
Dīræ, *the Furies*, s.
Divitiæ, *riches.*
Druĭdes, *the Druids.*
Dryădes, *the Dryads*, s.
Epŭlæ, *a banquet*, s.
Eumenīdes, *the Furies*, s.
Excubiæ, *watches.*
Exsequiæ, *funeral rites.*
Exta, *entrails.*
Exuviæ, *spoils.*
Facetiæ, *pleasantry*, s.
Feriæ, *holidays*, s.
Fĭdes, *a stringed instru-ment*, s.
Flabra, *blasts.*
Frăces, *the lees of oil.*
Frāga, *strawberries*, s.
Gemĭni, *twins*, s.
Gĕnæ, *cheeks*, s.
Gerræ, *trifles.*
Grātes, *thanks.*
Habēnæ, *reins*, s.
Hibĕrna, sc. castra, *win-ter quarters.*
Hyădes, *the Hyades*, s.
Idus, *the ides of a month.*
Ilia, *the flank.*
Incunabŭla, *a cradle.*
Indutiæ, *a truce.*

Induviæ, *clothes.*
Ineptiæ, *fooleries*, s.
Infĕri, *the dead.*
Inferiæ, *sacrifices in honor of the dead.*
Insecta, *insects.*
Insidiæ, *an ambuscade*, s.
Justa, *funeral rites.*
Lactes, *small entrails*, s.
Lamenta, *lamentations.*
Lapicidīnæ, *a stone quar-ry.*
Latĕbræ, *a hiding place*, s.
Laurĭces, *young rabbits.*
Lautia, *presents to for-eign ambassadors.*
Lemŭres, *hobgoblins.*
Lendes, *nits*
Libĕri, *children*, s.
Lucĕres, *a division of the Roman cavalry.*
Magalia, *cottages.*
Majōres, *ancestors.*
Mānes, *the shades*, s.
Manubiæ, *spoils of war.*
Mapalia, *huts*, s.
Minaciæ, *and*
Mĭnæ, *threats.*
Minōres, *posterity.*
Mœnia, *the walls of a city*, s.
Multitia, *garments finely wrought.*
Munia, *official duties.*
Naiădes, *water-nymphs*, s.
Nāres, *the nostrils*, s.
Natāles, *parentage.*
Nātes, *the haunches*, s.
Nŏmæ, *corroding sores or ulcers.*, s.
Nōnæ, *the nones of a month.* § 326, 1.
Nūgæ, *jests, nonsense.*
Nundĭnæ, *the weekly mar-ket.*
Nuptiæ, *a marriage.*
Oblivia, *forgetfulness*, s.
Offuciæ, *cheats*, s.
Optimātes, *the aristo-cratic party*, s.

Palearia, *the dewlap*, s.
Pandectæ, *the pandects.*
Parietīnæ, *old walls.*
Partes, *a party*, s.
Pascua, *pastures*, s.
Penātes, *household gods*, s.
Phalĕræ, *trappings.*
Philtra, *love potions.*
Pleiădes, *the Pleiads* or *seven stars*, s.
Postĕri, *posterity.*
Præbia, *an amulet.*
Præcordia, *the dia-phragm, the entrails.*
Primitiæ, *first fruits.*
Procĕres, *nobles*, s.
Pugillaria, *or* -āres, *writing-tablets*, s.
Quadrīgæ, *a team of four horses*, s.
Quirītes, *Roman citizens*, s.
Quisquiliæ, *refuse.*
Reliquiæ, *the remains*, s.
Salĕbræ, *rugged roads*, s.
Salīnæ, *salt pits.*
Scālæ, *a ladder*, s.
Scatebræ, *a spring*, s.
Scōpæ, *a broom.*
Scrūta, *old stuff.*
Sentes, *thorns*, s.
Sponsalia, *espousals.*
Statīva, sc. castra, *a stationary camp.*
Supĕri, *the gods above.*
Talaria, *winged shoes.*
Tenebræ, *darkness*, s.
Tesca, *rough places.*
Thermæ, *warm baths.*
Tormīna, *colic-pains.*
Transtra, *seats for row-ers*, s.
Trīcæ, *trifles, toys.*
Utensilia, *utensils.*
Valvæ, *folding doors*, s.
Vepres, *brambles*, s.
Vergiliæ, *the seven stars.*
Vindiciæ, *a legal claim*, s.
Virgulta, *bushes.*

§ **97.**　The following usually differ in meaning in the different numbers.

Ædes, -is, *a temple.*
Ædes, -ium, *a house.*
Aqua, *water.*
Aquæ, *medicinal springs.*
Auxilium, *aid.*
Auxilia. *auxiliary troops.*

Bŏnum, *a good thing.*
Bŏna, *property.*
Carcer, *a prison.*
Carcĕres, *the barriers of a race-course.*
Castrum, *a castle.*

Castra, *a camp.*
Comĭtium, *a part of the Roman forum.*
Comitia, *an assembly for election.*
Copia, *plenty.*

Copiæ, *troops, forces.*
Cupedia, -æ, *daintiness.*
Cupediæ, -ārum, *and*
Cupedia, -ōrum, *dainties.*
Facultas, *ability.*
Facultātes, *property.*
Fastus, -ūs, *pride.*
Fastus, -uum, *and*
Fasti, -ōrum, *a calendar.*
Fortūna, *Fortune.*
Fortūnæ, *wealth.*
Furfur, *bran.*
Furfūres, *dandruff.*
Gratia, *favor.*
Gratiæ, *thanks.*

Impedimentum, *a hinderance.*
Impedimenta, *baggage.*
Litĕra, *a letter of the alphabet.*
Litĕræ, *an epistle.*
Lūdus, *pastime.*
Lūdi, *public games.*
Lustrum, *a morass.*
Lustra, *a haunt or den of wild beasts.*
Mos, *custom.*
Mōres, *manners.*
Nāris, *a nostril.*
Nāres, *the nose.*

Natālis, *a birthday.*
Natāles, *birth, lineage.*
Opĕra, *work, labor.*
Opĕræ, *workmen.*
Opis, gen. *power.*
Opes, -um, *means, wealth.*
Plăga, *a region, tract.*
Plăgæ, *nets, toils.*
Principium, *a beginning.*
Principia, *the general's quarters.*
Rostrum, *a beak, prow.*
Rostra, *the Rostra.*
Sal, *salt.*
Sāles, *witticisms.*

§ **98.** The following plurals, with a few others, are sometimes used in poetry, especially in the nominative and accusative, instead of the singular, for the sake of emphasis or metre.

Æquŏra, *the sea.*
Alta, *the sea.*
Anĭmi, *courage.*
Auræ, *the air.*
Carīnæ, *a keel.*
Cervīces, *the neck.*
Colla, *the neck.*
Cōmæ, *the hair.*
Connubia, *marriage.*
Corda, *the heart.*
Corpŏra, *a body.*
Crepuscŭla, *twilight.*
Currūs, *a chariot.*
Exsilia, *banishment.*
Frigŏra, *cold.*
Gaudia, *joy.*
Gramĭna, *grass.*
Guttūra, *the throat.*

Hymenæi, *marriage.*
Ignes, *love.*
Inguĭna, *the groin.*
Iræ, *anger.*
Jejunia, *fasting.*
Jŭbæ, *a mane.*
Limĭna, *a threshold.*
Litŏra, *a shore.*
Mensæ, *a service or course of dishes.*
Neniæ, *a funeral dirge.*
Numĭna, *the divinity.*
Odia, *hatred.*
Ora, *the mouth, the countenance.*
Oræ, *confines.*
Ortus, *a rising, the east.*
Otia, *ease, leisure.*

Pectŏra, *the breast.*
Reditūs, *a return.*
Regna, *a kingdom.*
Rictūs, *the jaws.*
Robŏra, *strength.*
Silentia, *silence.*
Sinūs, *the bosom of a Roman garment.*
Tædæ, *a torch.*
Tempŏra, *time.*
Terga, *the back.*
Thalămi, *marriage or marriage-bed.*
Tŏri, *a bed, a couch.*
Tūra, *frankincense.*
Viæ, *a journey.*
Vultus, *the countenance.*

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

§ **99.** Nouns are redundant either in termination, in declension, in gender, or in two or more of these respects.

1. In termination : (*a.*) of the nominative ; as, *arbor*, and *arbos*, a tree: (*b.*) of the oblique cases; as, *tigris,*; gen. *tigris*, or -*idis*; a tiger.

2. In declension; as, *laurus;* gen. -*i*, or -*ūs;* a laurel.

3. In gender; as, *vulgus*, masc. or neut.; the common people.

4. In termination and declension; as, *senecta*, -*æ*, and *senectus*, -*ūtis;* old age.

5. In termination and gender; as *pileus*, masc., and *pileum*, neut.; a hat.

6. In declension and gender; as *pĕnus*, -*i* or *ūs*, masc. or fem., and *pĕnus*, -*ŏris*, neut.; a store of provisions. *Spĕcus*, -*ūs* or -*i*, masc. fem. or neut.; a cave.

7. In termination, declension, and gender; as, *menda*, -*æ*, fem. and *mendum*, -*i*, neut.; a fault.

The following list contains most *Redundant Nouns* of the above classes :—

Acĭnus, -um, *and* -a, *a berry.*
Adagium, *and* -io, *a proverb.*
Admonĭtio, -um, *and* -us, *ūs, a reminding.*
Æthra, *and* æther, *the clear sky.*
Affectio, *and* -us, *ūs, affection.*
Agamemno, *and* -on, *Agamemnon.*
Alabaster, *tri, and pl.* -tra, *ōrum, an alabaster box.*
Alimonia, *and* -um, *aliment.*
Alluvio, *and* -es, *a flood.*
Alvearium, *and* -āre, *a bee-hive.*
Amarācus, *and* -um, *marjoram.*
Amygdăla, *and* -um, *an almond.*
Anfractum, *and* -us, *ūs, a winding.*
Angiportum, *and* -us, *ūs, a narrow lane or alley.*
Antidŏtus, *and* -um, *an antidote.*
Aranea, *and* -us, *i, a spider.*
Arar, *and* Arāris, *the river Arar.*
Arbor, *and* -ōris, *a tree.*
Architectus, *and* -on, *an architect.*
Arcus, *-ūs,* and *i, a bow.*
Attagēna, *and* -gen, *a moor-hen.*
Avaritia, *and* -ies, *avarice.*
Augmentum, *and* -men, *an increase.*
Baccar, *and* -āris, *a kind of herb.*
Bacŭlus, *and* -um, *a staff.*
Balteus, *and* -um, *a belt.*
Barbaria, *and* -ies, *barbarism.*
Barbĭtus, *and* -on, *a harp.*
Batillus, *and* -um, *a fire-shovel.*
Blanditia, *and* -ies, *flattery.*
Buccĭna, *and* -um, *a trumpet.*
Būra, *and* -is, *a plough-tail.*
Buxus, *and* -um, *the box-tree.*
Cæpa, *and* cæpe, *an onion.*
Calamister, *tri, and* -trum, *a crisping-pin.*
Callus, *and* -um, *hardened skin.*
Cancer, *cri, or* ĕris, *a crab.*
Canitia, *and* -ies, *hoariness.*
Cāpus, *and* cāpo, *a capon.*
Carrus, *and* -um, *a kind of waggon.*
Cassĭda, *and* -cassis, *a helmet.*
Catīnus, *and* -um, *a bowl, dish.*
Chirogrăphus, *and* -um, *a hand-writing.*
Cingŭla, *-us, and* -um, *a girdle.*
Clipeus, *and* -um, *a shield.*
Cochlearium, *-ar, and* -āre, *a spoon.*
Colluvio, *and* -ies, *filth.*
Commentarius, *and* -um, *a journal.*
Compăges, *and* -go, *a joining.*
Conātum, *and* -us, *ūs, an attempt.*
Concinnĭtas, *and* -tūdo, *neatness.*
Consortium, *and* -io, *partnership.*
Contagium, -io, *and* -es, *contact.*
Cornum, -us, *i, or* ūs, *a cornel tree.*
Costos, *i, and* -um, *a kind of shrub.*

Cratēra, *and* crāter, *a bowl.*
Crŏcus, *and* -um, *saffron.*
Crystallus, *and* -um, *crystal.*
Cubĭtus, *and* -um, *the elbow.*
Cupidĭtas, *and* -pīdo, *desire.*
Cupressus, *i, or* ūs, *a cypress-tree.*
Delicia, *and* -um, *delight.*
Delphīnus, *and* delphin, *a dolphin.*
Dictamnus, *and* -um, *dittany.*
Diluvium, -o, *and* -ies, *a deluge.*
Dŏmus, *i, or* ūs, *a house.*
Dorsus, *and* -um, *the back.*
Duritia, *and* -ies, *hardness.*
Effigia, *and* -ies, *an image.*
Elegīa, *and* -on, *i, an elegy.*
Elĕphantus, *and* -phas, *an elephant.*
Epitŏma, *and* -e, *an abridgment.*
Essĕda, *and* -um, *a chariot.*
Evander, *dri, and* -drus, *Evander.*
Eventum, *and* -us, *ūs, an event.*
Exemplar, *and* -āre, *a pattern.*
Fīcus, *i, or* ūs, *a fig-tree.*
Fīmus, *and* -um, *dung.*
Frētum, *and* -us, *ūs, a strait.*
Fulgetra, *and* -um, *lightning.*
Galērus, *and* -um, *a hat, cap.*
Ganea, *and* -um, *an eating-house.*
Gausăpa, -es, -e, *and* -um, *frieze.*
Gibba, -us, *and* -er, *ĕri, a hump.*
Glutĭnum, *and* -ten, *glue.*
Gobius, *and* -io, *a gudgeon.*
Grammatĭca, *and* -e, *grammar.*
Grus, *gruis, and* gruis, *is, a crane.*
Hebdomăda, *and* -mas, *a week.*
Hellebŏrus, *and* -um, *hellebore.*
Hŏnor, *and* hŏnos, *honor.*
Hyssōpus, *and* -um, *hyssop.*
Ilios, -um, *and* -on, *Troy.*
Incestum, *and* -us, *ūs, incest.*
Intŭbus, *and* -um, *endive.*
Jugŭlus, *and* -um, *the throat.*
Juventa, -us, *ūtis, and* -as, *youth.*
Lăbor, *and* lăbos, *labor.*
Lacerta, *and* -us, *a lizard.*
Laurus, *i, or* ūs, *a laurel.*
Lĕpor, *and* lĕpos, *wit.*
Ligur, *and* -us, *ŭris, a Ligurian.*
Lupīnus, *and* -um, *a lupine.*
Luxuria, *and* -ies, *luxury.*
Mæander, -dros, *and* -drus, *Mæander.*
Margarīta, *and* -um, *a pearl.*
Materia, *and* -ies, *materials.*
Medimnus, *and* -um, *a measure.*
Menda, *and* -um, *a fault.*
Modius, *and* -um, *a measure.*
Mollitia, *and* -ies, *softness.*
Momentum, *and* -men, *influence.*
Mūgil, *and* -ĭlis, *a mullet.*
Mulcĭber, *ĕri, or* ĕris, *Vulcan.*

Mulctra, *and* -um, *a milk-pail.*
Munditia, *and* -ies, *neatness.*
Muria, *and* -ies, *brine* or *pickle.*
Myrtus, *i* or *ūs, a myrtle.*
Nardus, *and* -um, *nard.*
Nāsus, *and* -um, *the nose.*
Necessĭtas, *and* -ūdo, *necessity.*
Nequitia, *and* -ies, *worthlessness.*
Notitia, *and* -ies, *knowledge.*
Oblivium, *and* -io, *forgetfulness.*
Obsidium, *and* -io, *a siege.*
Œdĭpus, *i,* or *ŏdis, Œdipus.*
Ostrea, *and* -um, *an oyster.*
Palātus, *and* -um, *the palate.*
Palumba, -us, *and* -es, *a pigeon.*
Papȳrus, *and* -um, *papyrus.*
Paupertas, *and* -ies, *poverty.*
Pāvus, *and* pāvo, *a peacock.*
Pĕnus, *i, -ŏris,* or *ūs,* and pĕnum, *pro-
    visions.*
Peplus, *and* -um, *a veil.*
Perseus, *ei,* or *eos, Perseus.*
Pileŭs, *and* -um, *a hat.*
Pīnus, *i,* or *ūs, a pine-tree.*
Pistrīna, *and* -um, *a bake-house.*
Planitia, *and* -ies, *a plain.*
Plāto, *and* Plăton, *Plato.*
Plebs, *and* plēbes, *ei, the common
    people.*
Porrus, *and* -um, *a leek.*
Postulātum, *and* -io, *a request.*
Præsēpia, -ium, -es, *or* -is, *and* -e, *a
    stable.*
Prætextum, *and* -us, *ŭs, a pretext.*
Prosapia, *and* -ies, *lineage.*
Rāpa, *and* -um, *a turnip.*
Requies, *ētis* or *ĕi, rest.*
Rēte, *and* rētis, *a net.*
Reticŭlus, *and* -um, *a small net.*

Rictum, *and* -us, *ūs, the open mouth.*
Sævitia, -ūdo *and* -ies, *ferocity.*
Săgus, *and* -um, *a military cloak.*
Sanguis, *and* sanguen, *blood.*
Satrăpes, *and* satraps, *a satrap.*
Scabritia, *and* -ies, *roughness.*
Scorpius, -os, *and* -io, *a scorpion.*
Segmentum, *and* -men, *a piece.*
Segnitia, *and* -ies, *sloth.*
Senecta, *and* -us, *old age.*
Sequester, *tri,* or *tris, a trustee.*
Sesăma, *and* -um, *sesame.*
Sibĭlus, *and* -a, *ōrum, a hissing.*
Sināpi, *and* -is, *mustard.*
Sīnus, *and* -um, *a goblet.*
Spărus, *and* -a, *ōrum, a spear.*
Spurcitia, *and* -ies, *filthiness.*
Stramentum, *and* -men, *straw.*
Suffimentum, *and* -men, *fumigation.*
Suggestus, *and* -um, *a pulpit, stage.*
Suppărus, *and* -um, *a linen garment.*
Supplicium, -icamentum, *and* -icatio,
    a public supplication.
Tapētum, -ēte, *and* -es, *tapestry.*
Tenĕritas, *and* -tūdo, *softness.*
Tergum, *and* -us, *ŏris, the back.*
Tiāra, *and* -as, *a turban.*
Tignus, *and* -um, *a beam, timber.*
Tigris, *is,* or *ĭdis, a tiger.*
Titānus, *and* Tītan, *Titan.*
Tonitruum, *and* -trus, *ūs, thunder.*
Torāle, *and* -al, *a bed-covering.*
Trābes, *and* trabs, *a beam.*
Tribŭla, *and* -um, *a threshing sledge.*
Vespĕra, -per, *ĕri* and *ĕris, the evening.*
Vinacĕus, *and* -a, *ōrum, a grape-stone.*
Viscus, *and* -um, *the mistletoe.*
Vulgus, *masc.* and *neut., the common
    people.*

REMARK 1. To these may be added some other verbals in *us* and *io,* and Greek nouns in *o* and *on;* as, *Dio* and *Dion;* also some Greek nouns in *es* and *e,* which have Latin forms in *a;* as, *Atrīdes* and *Atrīda.* See § 45.

REM. 2. Some proper names of places also are redundant in number; as, *Argos* and *Argi; Fidēna* and *Fidēnæ; Thēbe* and *Thēbæ.*

NOTE. The different forms of most words in the above list are not equally common, and some are rarely used, or only in particular cases.

DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

§ **100.** Nouns are derived from other nouns, from adjectives, and from verbs.

I. FROM NOUNS.

From nouns are derived the following classes :—

1. A *patronymic* is the name of a person, derived from that of his father or other ancestor, or of the founder of his nation.

NOTE 1. Patronymics are properly Greek nouns, and have been borrowed from that language by the Latin poets.

(a.) Masculine patronymics end in ĭdes, īdes, ădes, and ĭădes.

(1.) Nouns in *us* of the second declension, and those nouns of the third declension, whose root ends in a short syllable, form their patronymics in *ĭdes;* as, *Prĭămus, Prĭamĭdes; Agamemnōn,* gen. *ŏnis, Agamemnŏnĭdes.*

(2.) Nouns in *ēus* and *cles* form their patronymics in *ĭdes;* as, *A-trēus, Atrīdes; Herăcles* (i. e. Hercules,) *Heraclīdes.*

REM. 1. *Ænīdes,* in Virg. A. 9, 653, is formed in like manner, as if from *Ænēus,* instead of *Ænēas.*

(3.) Nouns in *ās* and *ēs* of the first declension form their patronymics in *ădes,* as *Ænēas, Ænēădes; Hippŏtēs, Hippŏtădes.*

(4.) Nouns in *ius* of the second declension, and those nouns of the third declension, whose root ends in a long vowel, form their patronymics in *ĭădes;* as, *Thestius, Thestĭădes; Amphitryō* (gen. *ŏnis), Amphitryonĭădes.*

REM 2. A few nouns also of the first declension have patronymics in *ĭădes;* as, *Anchīses, Anchisĭădes.*

(b.) Feminine patronymics end in *is, ēis,* and *ias,* and correspond in termination to the masculines, viz. *is* to *ĭdes, ēis* to *īdes,* and *ias* to *ĭădes;* as, *Tyndărus,* masc. *Tyndarīdes,* fem. *Tyndăris; Nēreus,* masc. *Nereīdes,* fem. *Nerēis; Thestius,* masc. *Thestĭădes,* fem. *Thestĭas.*

REM. 3. A few feminines are found in *īne,* or *iōne;* as, *Nerīne, Acrisiōne,* from *Nereus* and *Acrisius.*

NOTE 2. Patronymics in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension; those in *is* and *as,* of the third.

2. A *patrial* or *gentile* noun is derived from the name of a country, and denotes an inhabitant of that country; as,

Trōs, a Trojan man; *Trōas,* a Trojan woman: *Macĕdo,* a Macedonian; *Samnis,* a Samnite; from *Trōja, Macedonia,* and *Samnium.*

NOTE 3. Most patrials are properly adjectives, relating to a noun understood; as, *hŏmo, cīvis,* etc. See § 128, 6.

3. A *diminutive* signifies a small thing of the kind denoted by the primitive; as, *lĭber,* a book; *lĭbellus,* a little book.

Diminutives generally end in *ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum,* or *cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum,* according as the primitive is masuline, feminine, or neuter.

A. 1. If the primitive is of the first or second declension, or its root ends in *c, g, d,* or *t* after a vowel, the diminutive is formed by annexing *ŭlus, a, um* to the root; as, *arŭla, servŭlus, puerŭlus, scutŭlum, corniŭ ăla, regŭlus, capĭtŭlum, mercedŭla;* from *āra, servus, puer, scūtum, corniŭc, (-ĭcis), rex, (rēgis), căput, (-ĭtis), merces, (-ēdis.)*

2. Primitives of the first or second declension whose root ends in *e* or *i,* instead of *ŭlus, a, um,* add *ŏlus, a, um;* as, *filiŏlus, gloriŏla, horreŏlum;* from *filius, gloria, horreum.*

3. Primitives of the first or second declension whose root ends in *l, n,* or *r,* form diminutives by contraction in *ellus, a, um,* and some in *illus, a, um;* as, *ocellus, asellus, libellus, lucellum;* from *ocŭlus, asĭna, lĭber, lucrum;* and *sigillum, tigillum,* from *signum, tignum.*

B. 1. If the primitive is of the third, fourth, or fifth declension, the diminutive is formed in *cŭlus,* (or *ĭcŭlus), a, um.*

2. Primitives of the third declension whose nominative ends in *r,* or in *os* or *us* from roots ending in *r,* annex *cŭlus* to the nominative; as, *fratercŭlus, soror-*

cŭla, oscŭlum, corpuscŭlum; from *frăter, sŏror, ŏs, (ŏris), corpus, (-ŏris).*—So also primitives in *es* and *is*, but these drop the *s* of the nominative; as, *igniculus, nūbecŭla, diecŭla;* from *ignis, nūbes, dies.*

3. Primitives of other terminations of the third declension, and those of the fourth, add *icŭlus* to the root; as, *pontĭcŭlus, cotĭcŭla, ossĭcŭlum, versĭcŭlus, cornĭcŭlum;* from *pons, cos, ŏs, (ossis), versus, cornu.*

4. Primitives in *o, (ĭnis* or *ōnis),* in adding *cŭlus, a, um,* change the final vowel of the root (*i* or *o*) into *u ;* as, *homuncŭlus, sermuncŭlus;* from *hŏmo* and *sermo ;* and a few primitives of other terminations form similar diminutives; as, *avuncŭlus, domuncŭla ;* from *ăvus* and *dŏmus.*

C. 1. A few diminutives end in *uleus,* as, *equuleus, aculeus;* from *ĕquus* and *ăcus ;* and a few also in *io;* as, *homuncio, senecio,* from *hŏmo* and *sĕnex.*

2. Diminutives are sometimes formed from other diminutives; as, *asellŭlus,* from *asellus;* sometimes two or more diminutives with different terminations are formed from the same primitive, as, *homuncŭlus, homullus,* and *homuncio;* from *hŏmo;* and sometimes the primitive undergoes euphonic changes; as *rumuscŭlus,* from *rūmor.*

REM. Some diminutives differ in gender from their primitives; as *ranuncŭlus, scamillus,* from *rāna* and *scamnum.*

4. (*a.*) An amplificative is a personal appellation denoting an excess of that which is expressed by its primitive; as,

Capito, one who has a large head: so *nāso, labeo, bucco, fronto, mento,* one who has a large nose, lips, or cheeks; a broad forehead or long chin; from *căput, nāsus, labia, bucca, frons,* and *mentum.*

(*b.*) A few personal appellatives in *io* denote the trade or profession to which a person belongs; as, *ludio,* an actor; *pellio,* a furrier; from *lūdus,* and *pellis.*

5. The termination *ium* added to the root of a noun, indicates the office or condition, and often, derivatively, an assemblage of the individuals denoted by the primitive; as, *collegium,* colleagueship, and thence an assembly of colleagues; *servitium,* servitude, and collectively the servants; so *sacerdotium,* and *ministerium;* from *collēga, servus, sacerdos,* and *minister.*

6. The termination *imonium* is added to the root of a few nouns, denoting something derived from the primitives, or imparting to it its peculiar character; as, *testimonium,* testimony; so *vadimonium, patrimonium, matrimonium;* from *testis, vās (vădis), păter,* and *māter.*

7. The termination *ētum,* added to the root of names of plants, denotes a place where they grow in abundance; as, *quercētum, laurētum, olivētum,* from *quercus, laurus,* and *oliva.*

So, also, *œscŭlētum, dumētum, myrtētum,* and by analogy *saxētum.* But some drop *e ;* as, *carectum, salictum, virgultum,* and *arbustum.*

8. The termination *ārium,* added to the root of a noun, denotes a receptacle of the things signified by the primitive; as, *aviārium,* an aviary; *plantārium,* a nursery; from *ăvis,* a bird, and *planta,* a plant.

9. The termination *īle,* added to the root of names of animals, marks the place where they are kept; as, *bovīle,* a stall for oxen; so *caprīle, ovīle ;* from *bōs,* an ox, *căper,* a goat, and *ŏvis,* a sheep.

NOTE 1. This class and the preceding are properly neuter adjectives.

NOTE 2. Abstract nouns are derived either from adjectives or from verbs. See § 26, 5.

II. FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ **101.** 1. Abstract nouns are formed by adding the termination *ĭtas, ĭtūdo, ia, itia* or *ities, ēdo,* and *imōnia* to the root of the primitive.

2. Abstracts in *ĭtas*, (equivalent to the English *ty* or *ity*), are formed from adjectives of each declension ; as, *cupĭdĭtas, tenerĭtas, celerĭtas, crudelĭtas, fe'icĭtas ;* from *cupĭdus, tĕner, cĕler, crudēlis,* and *f ēlix.*

(1.) When the root ends in *i*, the abstract is formed in *ĕtas ;* as, *pĭĕtas,* from *pĭus ;* and when it ends in *t, as* only is added ; as, *honestas* from *honestus.*

(2.) In a few abstracts *i* before *tas* is dropped ; as, *libertas, juventas,* from *liber, juvĕnis.* In *facultas* and *difficultas,* from *facĭlis, diffĭcĭlis,* there is a change also in the root-vowel from *i* to *u.*

(3.) A few abstracts are formed in *ĭtus* or *tus,* instead of *ĭtas ;* as, *servĭtus, juventus,* from *servus* and *juvĕnis.* See § 76, Exc. 2.

3. Abstracts in *ĭtūdo* are formed from adjectives in *us,* and some from adjectives of the third declension of two or three terminations; as, *magnĭtūdo, altĭtūdo, fortĭtūdo, acrĭtūdo,* from *magnus, altus, fortis, ācer.* Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus,* generally form their abstracts by adding *ūdo* instead of *ĭtūdo* to their root; as, *consuetŭdo,* from *consuētus.*

4. Abstracts in *ia* (equivalent to the English *ce* or *cy,*) are for the most part formed from adjectives of one termination ; as, *clementia, constantia, impudentia,* from *clemens, constans, impŭdens.* But some adjectives in *us* and *er* ,including verbals in *cundus,* likewise form their verbals in *ia ;* as, *miseria, angustia, facundia,* from *miser, angustus, facundus.*

5. Abstracts in *itia* and *ĭties* are formed from adjectives in *us* and *is ;* as, *justitia, tristitia, durĭtia,* and *durĭties, segnitia* and *segnĭties,* from *justus, tristis, dūrus,* and *segnis.*

6. A few abstracts are formed in *ēdo,* and a few in *imōnia ;* and sometimes two or more abstracts of different terminations are formed from the same adjective ; as, *acrĭtas, acrĭtūdo, acrēdo,* and *acrimonia,* from *ācer.* In such case those in *ĭtūdo* and *imonia* seem to be more intensive in signification than those in *ĭtas.*

REMARK. Adjectives, as distinguished from the abstracts which are formed from them, are called *concretes.*

III. FROM VERBS.

§ **102.**   Nouns derived from verbs are called *verbal* nouns.

The following are the principal classes :—

1. Abstract nouns expressing the action or condition denoted by a verb, especially by a neuter verb, are formed by annexing *or* to their first root ; as, *ămor,* love ; *făvor,* favor ; *mœror,* grief ; *splendor,* brightness ; from *ămo, făveo, mœreo,* and *splendeo.*

2. (*a.*) Abstracts are also formed from many verbs by annexing *ium* to the first or to the third root ; as, *colloquium,* a conference ; *gaudium,* joy ; *exordium,* a beginning ; *exitium,* destruction ; *solatium,* consolation ; from *collŏquor, gaudeo, exordior, exeo* and *sōlor.*

3. Some verbal abstracts are formed by annexing *ēla, imōnia,* or *imōnium,* to the first root of the verb ; as, *querēla* and *querimonia,* a complaint ; *suadēla,* persuasion ; from *quĕror* and *suadeo.*

4. (*a.*) The terminations *men* and *mentum,* added to the first root of the verb, generally with a connecting vowel, denote the thing to which the action belongs, both actively and passively, or a means for the performance of the action ; as, *fulmen* from *fulgeo, flūmen* from *fluo, agmen* from *ăgo, solāmen* from *sŏlor, documentum* from *dŏceo, blandimentum* from *blandior.*

(*b.*) The final consonant of the root is often dropped, and the preceding and connecting vowels contracted into one syllable ; as, *ăgo,* (*ăgĭmen,*) *agmen ; fŏveo,* (*fŏvĭmentum,*) *fŏmentum.*

(*c.*) Some words of this class have no primitive verb in use; as, *atramentum*, ink; but, in this case, the connecting vowel seems to imply its reference to such a verb as *atrāre*, to blacken.

5. (*a.*) The terminations *ŭlum, bŭlum, cŭlum; brum, crum, trum*, annexed to the first root of a verb, denote an instrument for performing the act expressed by the verb, or a place for its performance; as, *cingŭlum, opercŭlum, venabŭlum, ventilābrum, fulcrum, spectrum*, from *cingo, opĕrio, vēnor, ventilo, fulcio, spĕcio*.

(*b.*) Sometimes *cŭlum* is contracted into *clum*; as, *vinclum* for *vincŭlum*. Sometimes, also, *s* is inserted before *trum*; as, *rostrum*, from *rōdo*, and a connecting vowel is placed before this and some of the other terminations; as, *arātrum, stabŭlum, cubicŭlum*, from *āro, sto*, and *cŭbo*.

(*c.*) Some words of this kind are formed from nouns; as, *acetabŭlum*, a vinegar cruet; *turibŭlum*, a censer; from *acētum* and *tus*.

6. (*a.*) Nouns formed by adding *or* and *rix* to the third root of the verb, denote respectively the male and female agent of the action expressed by the verb; as, *adjūtor, adjūtrix*, an assistant; *fautor, fautrix*, a favorer; *victor, victrix*, a conqueror; from *adjŭvo (adjūt-), făveo (faut-), vinco (vict-)*. They are often likewise used as adjectives. The feminine form is less common than the masculine, and when the third-root of the verb ends in *s*, the feminine is sometimes formed in *trix*; as, *tondeo (tons-) tonstrix*.

(*b.*) Some nouns in *tor* are formed immediately from other nouns; as, *viātor*, a traveller; *jānitor*, a door-keeper; from *via* and *jānua*. In *meretrix* from *mereo, i* of the third root becomes *e*.

(*c.*) The agent of a few verbs is denoted by the terminations *a* and *o* annexed to the first root; as, *conviva*, a guest; *advĕna*, a stranger; *scrība*, a scribe; *erro*, a vagrant; *bibo*, a drunkard; *comĕdo*, a glutton, from *convivo, advĕnio*, etc.

7. Many abstract nouns are formed by annexing *io* and *us* (gen. *ūs*) to the third root of a verb; as, *actio*, an action; *lectio*, reading; from *ăgo (act-), lĕgo (lect-);—cantus*, singing; *vīsus*, sight; *ūsus*, use; from *căno (cant-), video (vīs-), ūtor (ūs-)*.

REMARK 1. Nouns of both forms, and of like signification, are frequently derived from the same verb; as, *concursio* and *concursus*, a running together; *mōtio* and *mōtus*, etc.

REM. 2. Nouns formed by adding the termination *ūra* to the third root of a verb, sometimes have the same signification as those in *io* and *us*, and sometimes denote the result of an action; as, *positūra*, position; *vinctūra*, a binding together; from *pōno*, and *vincio*; and the termination *ēla* has sometimes the same meaning; as, *querēla*, complaint; *loquēla*, speech, from *quĕror* and *lŏquor*.

NOTE. One of these forms is generally used to the exclusion of the others, and when two or more are found, they are usually employed in somewhat different senses.

8. The termination *ōrium*, added to the third root of a verb, denotes the place where the action of the verb is performed; as, *auditōrium*, a lecture-room; *conditōrium*, a repository; from *audio* and *condo*.

COMPOSITION OF NOUNS.

§ **103.** Compound nouns are formed variously:—

1. Of two nouns; as, *rupicapra*, a wild goat, of *rūpes* and *capra*. In some words, compounded of two nouns, the former is a genitive; as, *senatūsconsultum*, a decree of the senate; *jurisconsultus*, a lawyer; in others, both parts are declined; as, *respublica, jusjurandum*. See § 91.

2. Of a noun and a verb; as, *artifex*, an artist, of *ars* and *făcio; fĭdĭcen*, a harper, of *fides* and *căno; agricŏla*, a husbandman, of *ăger* and *cŏlo*.

3. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquinoctium*, the equinox, of *æquus* and *nox; millepĕda*, a millepede, of *mille* and *pes.*

In *duumvir, triumvir, decemvir, centumvir*, the numeral adjective is in the genitive plural.

REMARK 1. When the former part of a compound word is a noun or an adjective, it usually ends in *ĭ*; as, *artĭfex, rupĭcapra, agrĭcŏla*, etc. If the second word begins with a vowel, an elision takes place ; as, *quinquennium*, of *quinque* and *annus; magnanĭmus*, of *magnus* and *anĭmus.*

4. Of an adverb and a noun : as, *nĕfas*, wickedness; *nĕmo*, nobody; of *ne, fas*, and *hŏmo.* So *biduum*, of *bis* and *dies.*

5. Of a preposition and a noun: as, *incuria*, want of care, of *in* and *cūra.* So *intervallum*, an interval; *præcordia*, the diaphragm; *proverbium*, a proverb; *subsellium*, a low seat; *superficies*, a surface.

REM. 2. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to that which follows it : as, *ignobilis, illepĭdus, imprudentia, irrumpo*, of *in* and *nobilis, lepĭdus*, etc. See § 196.

ADJECTIVES.

§ **104.** An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a substantive.

Adjectives may be divided, according to their *signification*, into various classes; as denoting,

1. Character or quality ; as, *bŏnus*, good; *albus*, white; *amīcus*, friendly.
2. State or condition; as, *fēlix*, happy; *dīves*, rich.
3. Possession; as, *herīlis*, a master's; *patrius*, a father's.
4. Quantity; as, *magnus*, great; *tōtus*, entire; *parvus*, small.
5. Number; as, *ūnus*, one; *secundus*, second; *tot*, so many; *quot*, as many. These are called *numerals.*
6. Time; as, *annuus*, yearly; *hesternus*, of yesterday; *bīmus*, of two years; *trimestris*, of three months.
7. Place; as, *altus*, high; *vicīnus*, near; *aĕrius*, aĕrial; *terrestris*, terrestrial.
8. Material; as, *aureus*, golden; *fagineus*, beechen; *terrēnus*, earthen.
9. Part; as, *nullus*, no one; *aliquis*, some one. These are called *partitives.*
10. Country; as, *Romānus*, Roman; *Arpīnas* of *Arpīnum.* These are called *patrials.*
11. Diminution; as, *parvŭlus*, from *parvus*, small; *misellus*, from *mĭser*, miserable. These are called *diminutives.*
12. Amplification; as, *vinōsus* and *vinolentus*, much given to wine; *aurītus*, having long ears. These are called *amplificatives.*
13. Relation; as, *ăvĭdus*, desirous of ; *mĕmor*, mindful of ; *insuētus.* These are called *relatives.*
14. Interrogation; as, *quantus?* how great; *qualis?* of what kind; *quot?* how many? *quotus?* of what number? These are called *interrogatives*; and, when not used interrogatively, they are called *correlatives.*
15. Specification; as, *tālis*, such; *tantus*, so great; *tot*, so many. These are called *demonstratives.*

6

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ **105.** 1. Adjectives are declined like substantives, and are either of the first and second declensions, or of the third only.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DE-CLENSIONS.

2. The masculine of adjectives belonging to the first and second declensions, ends either in *us* or in *er*. The feminine and neuter are formed respectively by annexing *a* and *um* to the root of the masculine. The masculine in *us* is declined like *dŏmĭnus;* that in *er* like *gĕner* or *ăger;* the feminine always like *mūsa ;* and the neuter like *regnum.*

REMARK 1. The masculine of one adjective, *sătur, -ŭra, -ŭrum,* full, ends in *ur*, and is declined like *gĕner.*

Bŏnŭs, *good.*

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	bo′-nŭs.	bo′-nă,	bo′-nŭm,
G.	bo′-nī,	bo′-næ,	bo′-nī,
D.	bo′-nō,	bo′-næ,	bo′-nō,
Ac.	bo′-nŭr	bo′-năm,	bo′-nŭm,
V.	bo′-nĕ,	bo′-nă,	bo′-nŭm,
Ab.	bo′-nō.	bo′-nā.	bo′-nō.

Plural.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	bo′-nī,	bo′-næ,	bo′-nă,
G.	bo-nō′-rŭm,	bo-nā′-rŭm,	bo-nō′-rŭm,
D.	bo′-nīs,	bo′-nīs,	bo′-nīs,
Ac.	bo′-nōs,	bo′-nās,	bo′-nă,
V.	bo′-nī,	bo′-næ,	bo′-nă,
Ab.	bo′-nīs.	bo′-nīs.	bo′-nīs.

In like manner decline

Al′-tus, *high.*	Fi′-dus, *faithful.*	Lon′-gus, *long.*
A-vā′-rus, *covetous.*	Im-prŏ-bus, *wicked.*	Plē′-nus, *full.*
Be-nig′-nus, *kind.*	In-ī′-quus, *unjust.*	Tac′-ĭ-tus, *silent.*

REM. 2. Like *bŏnus* are also declined all participles in *us ;* as,

A-mā′-tus.   Am-a-tū′-rus.   A-man′-dus.

Rem. 3. The masculine of the vocative singular of adjectives in *us* is sometimes like the nominative; as, *O vir fortis atque amīcus.* Hor. *Meus* has both *mi* and *meus.*

REM. 4. The genitive plural of distributive numerals ends commonly in *ûm* instead of *ōrum ;* as, *crassitūdo binûm digitōrum.* Plin.

3. Tĕner, *tender.*

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	te´-nĕr,	ten´-ĕ-ră,	ten´-ĕ-rŭm,
G.	ten´-ĕ-rī,	ten´-ĕ-ræ,	ten´-ĕ-rī,
D.	ten´-ĕ-rō,	ten´-ĕ-ræ,	ten´-ĕ-rō,
Ac.	ten´-ĕ-rŭm,	ten´-ĕ-răm,	ten´-ĕ-rŭm,
V.	te´-nĕr,	ten´-ĕ-ră,	ten´-ĕ-rŭm,
Ab.	ten´-ĕ-rō.	ten´-ĕ-rā.	ten´-ĕ-rō.

Plural.

N.	ten´-ĕ-rī,	ten´-ĕ-ræ,	ten´-ĕ-ră,
G.	ten-e-rō´-rŭm,	ten-e-rā´-rŭm,	ten-e-rō´-rŭm,
D.	ten´-ĕ-rīs,	ten´-ĕ-rīs,	ten´-ĕ-rīs,
Ac.	ten´-ĕ-rōs,	ten´-ĕ-rās,	ten´-ĕ-ră,
V.	ten´-ĕ-rī,	ten´-ĕ-ræ,	ten´-ĕ-ră,
Ab.	ten´-ĕ-rīs.	ten´-ĕ-rīs.	ten´-ĕ-rīs.

In like manner are declined

As´-per, *rough.*	Lă´-cer, *torn.*	Pros´-per, *prosperous.*
Ex´-ter, *foreign.*	Lī´-ber, *free.*	Sŭ-tur, *full.*
Gib´-ber, *crook-backed.*	Mī´-ser, *wretched.*	

So also *alter*, except in the genitive and dative singular (see § 107), *semĭfer*, and the compounds of *gĕro* and *fĕro*; as, *laniger, opĭfer.*

NOTE. *Prosper* is less frequent than *prospĕrus*, and *exter* is scarcely used in the nominative singular masculine.

§ **106.**   The other adjectives in *er* drop *e* in declension; as,

Pĭger, *slothful.*

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	pĭ´-gĕr,	pĭ´-gră,	pĭ´-grŭm,
G.	pĭ´-grī,	pĭ´-græ,	pĭ´-grī,
D.	pĭ´-grō,	pĭ´-græ,	pĭ´-grō,
Ac.	pĭ´-grŭm,	pĭ´-grăm,	pĭ´-grŭm,
V.	pĭ´-gĕr,	pĭ´-gră,	pĭ´-grŭm,
Ab.	pĭ´-grō.	pĭ´-grā.	pĭ´-grō.

Plural.

N.	pĭ´-grī,	pĭ´-græ,	pĭ´-gră,
G.	pi-grō´-rŭm,	pi-grā´-rŭm,	pi-grō´-rŭm,
D.	pĭ´-grīs,	pĭ´-grīs,	pĭ´-grīs,
Ac.	pĭ´-grōs,	pĭ´-grās,	pĭ´-gră,
V.	pĭ´-grī,	pĭ´-græ,	pĭ´-gră,
Ab.	pĭ´-grīs.	pĭ´-grīs.	pĭ´-grīs.

<div style="text-align:center">In like manner decline</div>

Æ′-ger, *sick.*	Mă′-cer, *lean.*	Scă′-ber, *rough.*
A′-ter, *black.*	Nĭ′-ger, *black.*	Si-nis′-ter, *left.*
Crĕ′-ber, *frequent.*	Pul′-cher, *fair.*	Tē′-ter, *foul.*
Glă′-ber, *smooth.*	Rŭ′-ber, *red.*	Vă′-fer, *crafty.*
In′-tĕ-ger, *entire.*	Să′-cer, *sacred.*	

<div style="text-align:center">Dexter, *right,* has -tra, -trum, and less frequently -tĕra, -tĕrum.</div>

§ 107. Six adjectives in *us,* and three in *er,* have their genitive singular in *ius,* and their dative in *ī,* in all the genders :—

Alius, *another.*	Tōtus, *whole.*	Alter, -tĕra, -tĕrum, *the other.*
Nullus, *no one.*	Ullus, *any.*	Uter, -tra, -trum, *which of the two.*
Sōlus, *alone.*	Unus, *one.*	Neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither.*

To these may be added the other compounds of *ŭter,*—namely, *uterque,* each of two; *utercumque, uterlibet,* and *utervis,* which of the two you please; gen. *utriusque,* etc.—also, *alterŭter,* one of two; gen. *alterutrius,* and sometimes *alterius utrius;* dat. *alterutri.* So *alteruterque,* and *unusquisque.* See § 138, 4.

Nullus, sōlus, tōtus, ullus, and *ūnus* are thus declined :—

<div style="text-align:center">Singular.</div>

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ū′-nŭs,	ū′-nă,	ū′-nŭm,
G.	u-nī′-ŭs,*	u-nī′-ŭs,	u-nī′-ŭs,
D.	u′-nī,	u′-nī,	u′-nī,
Ac.	u′-nŭm,	u′-năm,	u′-nŭm,
V.	u′-nĕ,	u′-nă,	u′-nŭm,
Ab.	u′-nō.	u′-nā.	u′-nō.

<div style="text-align:center">The plural is regular, like that of *bŏnus.*</div>

REMARK 1. *Alius* has *aliud* in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, and in the genitive *alius,* contracted for *aliius.*

REM. 2. Except in the genitive and dative singular, *alter* is declined like *tĕner,* and *uter* and *neuter* like *pĭger.*

REM. 3. Some of these adjectives, in early writers, and occasionally even in Cicero, Cæsar, and Nepos, form their genitive and dative regularly, like *bŏnus, tĕner,* or *pĭger.*

<div style="text-align:center">ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.</div>

§ 108. Some adjectives of the third declension have three terminations in the nominative singular; some two; and others only one.

I. Those of three terminations end in *er,* masc.; *is,* fem.; and *e,* neut.; and are thus declined :—

<div style="text-align:center">Acer, *sharp.*</div>

<div style="text-align:center">Singular.</div>

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ā′-cĕr,	ā′-crĭs,	ā′-crĕ,
G.	a′-crĭs,	a′-crĭs,	a′-crĭs,
D.	a′-crī,	a′-crī,	a′-crī,
Ac.	a′-crĕm,	a′-crĕm,	a′-crĕ,
V.	a′-cĕr,	a′-crĭs,	a′-crĕ,
Ab.	a′-crī.	a′-crī.	a′-crī.

<div style="text-align:center">* See § 15.</div>

Plural.

N.	a'-crēs,	a'-crēs,	a'-crĭ-ă,
G.	a'-crĭ-ŭm,	a'-crĭ-um,	a'-crĭ-ŭm,
D.	ac'-rĭ-bŭs,	ac'-rĭ-bŭs,	ac'-rĭ-bŭs,
Ac.	a'-crēs,	a'-crēs,	a'-crĭ-ă,
V.	a'-crēs,	a'-crēs,	a'-crĭ-ă,
Ab.	ac'-rĭ-bŭs.	ac'-rĭ-bŭs.	ac'-rĭ-bŭs.

In like manner are declined the following ;—

Al'-ăcer, *cheerful.*　　　　Pa-lus'-ter, *marshy.*　　　Sil-ves'-ter, *woody.*
Cam-pes'-ter, *champaign.*　Pe-des'-ter, *on foot.*　　　Ter-res'-ter, *terrestrial.*
Cel'-ĕ-ber, *famous.*　　　　Pŭ'-ter, *rotten.*　　　　Vol'-ŭ-cer, *winged.*
E-ques'-ter, *equestrian.*　　Sa-lū'-ber, *wholesome.*

To these add names of months in -*ber,* used as adjectives; as, *Octŏber,* etc. (cf. § 71), and *cĕler,* swift, which has *celĕris, celĕre ;* gen. *celĕris,* etc.

REMARK 1. The termination *er* was anciently sometimes feminine; as, *volŭcer fama.* Petr.: and, on the other hand, the masculine often ends in *is ;* as, *collis silvestris,* Cæs.

REM. 2. *Volŭcer* has *um* in the genitive plural.

§ 109. II. Adjectives of two terminations end in *is* for the masculine and feminine, and *e* for the neuter, except comparatives, which end in *or* and *us.*

Those in *is, e,* are thus declined :—

Mītis *mild.*

	Singular.				*Plural.*	
	M. & F.	*N.*			*M. & F.*	*N.*
N.	mi'-tĭs,	mi'-tĕ,		N.	mi'-tēs,	mit'-ĭ-ă,*
G.	mi'-tĭs,	mi'-tĭs,		G.	mit'-ĭ-ŭm,*	mit'-ĭ-ŭm,
D.	mi'-tī,	mi'-tī,		D.	mit'-ĭ-bŭs,	mit'-ĭ-bŭs,
Ac.	mi'-tĕm,	mi'-tĕ,		Ac.	mi'-tēs,	mit'-ĭ-ă,
V.	mi'-tĭs,	mi'-tĕ,		V.	mi'-tēs,	mit'-ĭ-ă,
Ab.	mi'-tī.	mi'-tī.		Ab.	mit'-ĭ-bŭs.	mit'-ĭ-bŭs.

In like manner decline

Ag'-ĭ-lis, *active.*　　　　Dul'-cis, *sweet.*　　　　In-col'-ŭ-mis, *safe.*
Brĕ'-vis, *short.*　　　　For'-tis, *brave.*　　　　Mi-rab'-ĭ-lis, *wonderful.*
Cru-dē'-lis, *cruel.*　　　Grä'-vis, *heavy.*　　　　Om'-nis, *all.*

Tres, three, is declined like the plural of *mītis.*

NOTE. Several adjectives of this class have forms also in *us, a, um.* See § 116.

§ 110. (*a.*) All comparatives, except *plus,* more, are thus declined :—

---

* Pronounced *mish'-e-a,* etc.　See § 12.

Mitior,* *milder.*

Singular.

	M. & F.	N.
N.	mit'-i-ŏr,	mit'-i-ŭs,
G.	mit-i-ō'-rĭs,	mit-i-ō'-r s,
D.	mit-i-ō'-rī,	mit-i-ō'-rī,
Ac.	mit-i-ō'-rĕm,	mit'-i-ŭs,
V.	mit'-i-ŏr,	mit'-i-ŭs,
Ab.	mit-i-ō'-rĕ, *or* -rī.	mit-i-ō'-rĕ, *or* -rī.

Plural.

	M. & F.	N.
N.	mit-i-ō'-rēs,	mit-i-ō'-ră,
G.	mit-i-ō'-rŭm,	mit-i-ō'-rŭm,
D.	mit-i-or'-ĭ-bŭs,	mit-i-or'-ĭ-bŭs,
Ac.	mit-i-ō'-rēs,	mit-i-ō'-ră,
V.	mit-i-ō'-rēs,	mit-ĭ-ō'-ră,
Ab.	mit-i-or'-ĭ-bŭs.	mit-i-or'-ĭ-bŭs.

In like manner decline

Al'-ti-or, *higher.*	Dul'-ci-or, *sweeter.*	Gra'-vi-or, *heavier.*
Au-da'-ci-or, *bolder.*	Fe-lic'-i-or, *happier.*	Pru-den'-ti-or, *more prudent.*
Bre'-vi-or, *shorter.*	Fe-ro'-ci-or, *fiercer.*	
Cru-de'-li-or, *more cruel.*	For'-ti-or, *braver.*	U-be'-ri-or, *more fertile.*

Plūs, *more,* is thus declined :—

	Singular.			Plural.	
	N.			*M. & F.*	*N.*
N.	plus,		N.	plū'-rēs,	plū'-ră, *rarely* plu'-rĭ-ă,
G.	plū'-rĭs,		G.	plu'-ri-ŭm,	plu'-ri-ŭm,
D.	——,		D.	plu'-rĭ-bŭs,	plu'-rĭ-bŭs,
Ac.	plus,		Ac.	plū'-rēs,	plū'-ră,
V.	——,		V.	——,	——,
Ab.	(plū'-rĕ, *obs.*)		Ab.	plu'-rĭ-bŭs.	plu'rĭ-bŭs.

So, but in the plural number only, *complūres,* a great many.

§ **111.** III. Other adjectives of the third declension have but one termination in the nominative singular for all genders. They all end in *l, r, s,* or *x,* and increase in the genitive.

They are thus declined :—

Fēlix, *happy.*

Singular.

	M. & F.	N.
N.	fe'-lix,	fe'-lix,
G.	fe-lī'-cĭs,	fe-lī'-cĭs,
D.	fe-lī'-cī,	fe-lī'-cī,
Ac.	fe-lī'-cĕm,	fe'-lix,
V.	fe'-lix,	fe'-lix,
Ab.	fe-lī'-cĕ, *or* -cī.	fe-lī'-cĕ, *or* -cī.

---

* Pronounced *mish'-e-or,* etc. See § 12.

Plural.

	M. & F.	N.
N.	fe-lī′-cēs,	fe-lĭc′-ĭ-ă,*
G.	fe-lĭc′-ĭ-ŭm,*	fe-lĭc′-ĭ-ŭm,
D.	fe-lĭc′-ĭ-bŭs,	fe-lĭc′-ĭ-bŭs,
Ac.	fe-lī′-cēs,	fe-lĭc′-ĭ-ă,
V.	fe-lī′-cēs,	fe-lĭc′-ĭ-ă,
Ab.	fe-lĭc′-ĭ-bŭs.	fe-lĭc′-ĭ-bŭs.

Præsens, present.
Singular.

	M. & F.	N.
N.	præ′-sens,	præ′-sens,
G.	præ-sen′-tĭs,	præ-sen′-tĭs,
D.	præ-sen′-tī,	præ-sen′-tī,
Ac.	præ-sen′-tĕm,	præ′-sens,
V.	præ′-sens,	præ′-sens,
Ab.	præ-sen′-tĕ, or -tī.	præ-sen′-tĕ, or -tī.

Plural.

	M. & F.	N.
N.	præ-sen′-tēs,	præ-sen′-tĭ-ă,†
G.	præ-sen′-tĭ-ŭm,	præ-sen′-tĭ-ŭm,
D.	præ-sen′-tĭ-bŭs,	præ-sen′-tĭ-bŭs,
Ac.	præ-sen′-tēs,	præ-sen′-tĭ-ă,
V.	præ-sen′-tēs,	præ-sen′-tĭ-ă,
Ab.	præ-sen′-tĭ-bŭs.	præ-sen′-tĭ-bŭs.

In like manner decline

Au′-dax, -ācis, *bold.*	Par′-tĭ-ceps, -ĭpis, *par-*	Sol′-lers, -tis, *shrewd.*
Com′-pos, -ōtis, *master of.*	*ticipant.*	Sos′-pes, -ĭtis, *safe.*
Fĕ′-rox, -ōcis, *fierce.*	Præ′-pes, -ĕtis, *swift.*	Sup′-plex, -ĭcis, *sup-*
In′-gens, -tis, *huge.*	Prū′-dens, -tis, *prudent.*	*pliant.*

REMARK. All present participles are declined like *præsens*; as,
A′-mans. Mŏ′-nens. Rĕ′-gens. Ca′-pi-ens. Au′-di-ens.

NOTE. A few adjectives of one termination have redundant forms in *us, a, um*; see § 116.

RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

GENITIVE SINGULAR.

§ **112.** Most adjectives of the third declension form their genitive singular like nouns of the same termination.

The following may here be specified:—

1. Of those in *es* (cf. § 73) some have -*ĕtis*; as, *hĕbes, perpes, præpes,* and *tĕres*; —*inquies* and *locŭples* have -*ētis*;—some have -*ĭtis*; as, *dives, sospes,* and *super-stes*;—some have -*ĭdis*; as, *dēses,* and *rĕses*;—*bipes,* and *tripes* have -*pĕdis*;—*pūbes* has *pubĕris,* and *impūbes, impubĕris* and *impūbis.*

2. *Compos* and *impos* have *-ŏtis*, and *exos*, *exossis.—Exlex* has *exlēgis*, *pernox* has *pernoctis* (§ 78), *præcox*, *præcŏcis*, and *rĕdux*, *redŭcis.* — *Cœlebs* has *cœlibis*, (§ 77); *intercus*, *intercŭtis*, and *vĕtus*, *vetĕris.* Those in *ceps* which are compounds of *căput*, have *-cipitis;* as, *anceps*, *præceps* (§ 78, 1); but the compounds of *ceps* from *căpio* have *-ipis;* as, *particeps*, *particĭpis.*—Those in *cors*, compounds of *cor*, have *-cordis ;* as, *concors*, *concordis* (§ 71, Exc. 2).—*Mĕmor* and *immĕmor* have *-ŏris.*

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

§ **113.** 1. Adjectives which have *e* in the nominative singular neuter have only *i* in the ablative.

Exc. 1. The ablatives *bimestre*, *cœleste*, and *perenne* are found in Ovid, and *cognomĭne* in Virgil.

2. Comparatives and participles in *ns*, when used as participles, especially in the ablative absolute, have rather *e* than *i;* but participial adjectives in *ns* have rather *i* than *e*.

3. Adjectives of one termination have either *e* or *i* in the ablative.

Exc. 2. The following adjectives of one termination have only *e* in the ablative:—

Bicorpor, bĭpes, cælebs, compos, dēses, discŏlor, hospes, impos, impūbes, jŭvĕnis, locŭples, pauper, princeps, pūber *or* pūbes, sĕnex, sospes, superstes, tricorpor, tricuspis, *and* trĭpes.

Exc. 3 . The following adjectives of one termination have only *i* in the ablative:—

Anceps, concors, discors, hĕbes, immĕmor, ĭners, ingens, ĭnops, mĕmor, par, præceps, rĕcens, rĕpens, vĭgil, and most adjectives in *x*, especially those in *plex.*

Rem. 1. *Inerte* occurs in Ovid, *recente* in Ovid and Catullus, and *præcĭpe* in Ennius.

Rem. 2. *Præsens*, when used of things, makes the ablative in *i;* when used of persons, it has *e*.

NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, AND GENITIVE PLURAL.

§ **114.** 1. The neuter of the nominative and accusative plural ends in *ia*, and the genitive plural of all genders in *ium;* but comparatives in *or*, with *vĕtus*, old, and *ūber*, fertile, have *a*, and *um.*

2. The accusative plural of masculine and feminine adjectives, whose genitive plural ends in *ium*, anciently ended in *īs* or *ēis*, instead of *ēs.* Cf. § 85, Exc. 1.

Exc. 1. Those adjectives that have only *e* in the ablative singular, have *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. Compounds of *făcio*, *căpio*, and of such nouns as make *um* in their genitive plural, with *cĕler*, *compar*, *cĭcur*, *dīves*, *mĕmor*, *immĕmor*, *præpes*, *supplex*, and *vĭgil*, make their genitive plural in *um.*

Exc. 3. *Dis*, *locuples*, *sons*, and *insons* have either *um* or *ium.* The poets and the later prose writers sometimes form the genitive plural of other adjectives and of participles in *ns*, by syncope, in *um*, instead of *ium;* as, *cælestum*, Virg. Ovid, etc.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

§ **115.** Some adjectives are defective, others redundant.

DEFECTIVE ADJECTIVES.

1. (*a.*) Many adjectives denoting personal qualities or attributes want the neuter gender, unless when occasionally joined to a neuter substantive used figuratively. Such are the following :—

Bicorpor, bīpes, cælebs, compos, consors, degĕner, dīves, impos, impūbes, industrius, īnops, insons, invītus, locuples, mĕmor, pauper, partīceps, princeps, pūber, *or* pūbes, rĕdux, sĕnex, sons, sospes, superstes, supplex, tricorpor, vīgil.

(*b.*) *Victrix* and *ultrix* are feminine in the singular, seldom neuter; in the plural, they are feminine and neuter. Such verbals partake of the nature both of substantives and adjectives, and correspond to masculines in *tor.* See § 102, 6, (*a.*)

2. The following want the genitive plural, and are rarely used in the neuter gender :—

Concŏlor, dēses, hĕbes, perpes, rĕses, tĕres, versicŏlor.

3. The names of months, which are properly adjectives, have only the masculine and feminine genders.

4. Some adjectives are wholly indeclinable.

Such are *frūgi,* temperate; *nēquam,* worthless; *săt* or *sătis,* sufficient; the plurals *ălĭquot, tŏt, quŏt, totĭdem, quotquot ;* and the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum* inclusive, and also *mille.* Cf. § 118, 1, and 6, (*b.*)

5. The following adjectives are used only in certain cases : —

Bilĭcem, *acc. ; doubly-tissued.* Cetĕra, cetĕrum, *the rest,* wants the nom. sing. masc. Decemplĭcem, *acc. : tenfold.* Exspes, *nom. ; hopeless.* Inquies, *nom. ; -ētem, acc. ; -ēte, abl. ; restless.* Mactus, *and* macte, *nom. ;* macte, *acc. ; honored;* —macti, *nom. plur.* Necesse, *and* necessum, *nom., acc. ; necessary.* Plus, *nom., acc. ;* plūris, *gen. ; more ;—pl.* plūres, -a, *nom. acc. ; -ium gen. ;* ĭbus, *dat., abl.* Cf. § 110. Postĕra, postĕrum, *coming after,* wants the nom. sing. masc. Pŏtis, *nom. sing.* and *pl.,* all genders; *able.* Pŏte, *nom. sing.,* for potest; *possible.* Septemplĭcis, *gen. ; -ce, abl. ; seven-fold.* Sĭremps, *and* sirempse, *nom.* and *acc. ; alike.* Tantundem, *nom. acc. ;* tantĭdem, *gen. ;* tantandem, *acc. ; so much.* Trilĭcem, *acc. ; trebly-tissued ;* trilīces, *nom.* and *acc. pl.*

REDUNDANT ADJECTIVES.

§ **116.** The following adjectives are redundant in termination and declension. Those marked *r* are more rarely used.

Acclīvis, *and* -us, *r, ascending.*
Auxiliāris, *and* -ius, *auxiliary.*
Bijŭgis, *and* -us, *yoked two together.*
Declīvis, *and* -us, *r, descending.*
Exanĭmis, *and* -us, *r, lifeless.*
Hilāris, *and* -us, *cheerful.*
Imbecillis, *r, and* -us, *weak.*
Impūbes, *and* -is, *r, -is* or *-ĕris, not grown up.*
Inermis, *and* -us, *r, unarmed.*
Infrēnis, *and* -us, *unbridled.*

Inquies, *and* -ētus, *restless.*
Joculāris, *and* -ius, *r, laughable.*
Multijŭgis, *r, and* -us, *yoked many together.*
Opŭlens, *and* -lentus, *rich.*
Præcox, -cŏquis, *and* -cŏquus, *early ripe.*
Proclīvis, *and* -us, *r, sloping.*
Quadrijŭgis, *and* -us, *yoked four together.*
Semianĭmis, *and* -us, *half alive*

Semiermis, *and* -us, *half armed.*
Semisomnis, *and* -us, *r, half asleep.*
Singulāris, *and* -ius, *single.*

Sublīmis, *and* -us, *r, high.*
Unanĭmis, *r, and* -us, *unanimous.*
Viŏlens, *r, and* -lentus, *violent.*

To these may be added some adjectives in *er* and *is;* as, *salūber* and *-bris,* *celĕber* and *-bris.* Cf. § 108, R. 1.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ 117. Numeral adjectives are divided into three principal classes—*Cardinal, Ordinal,* and *Distributive.*

I. Cardinal numbers are those which simply denote the number of things, in answer to the question *Quot?* 'How many?' They are,

1.	Unus,	*one.*	I.
2.	Duo,	*two.*	II.
3.	Tres,	*three.*	III.
4.	Quătuor,	*four.*	IIII. *or* IV.
5.	Quinque,	*five.*	V.
6.	Sex,	*six.*	VI.
7.	Septem,	*seven.*	VII.
8.	Octo,	*eight.*	VIII.
9.	Nŏvem,	*nine.*	VIII. *or* IX.
10.	Dĕcem,	*ten.*	X.
11.	Undĕcim,	*eleven.*	XI.
12.	Duodĕcim,	*twelve.*	XII.
13.	Tredĕcim,	*thirteen.*	XIII.
14.	Quatuordĕcim,	*fourteen.*	XIIII. *or* XIV.
15.	Quindĕcim,	*fifteen.*	XV.
16.	Sedĕcim, *or* sexdĕcim,	*sixteen.*	XVI.
17.	Septendĕcim,	*seventeen.*	XVII.
18.	Octodĕcim,	*eighteen.*	XVIII.
19.	Novendĕcim,	*nineteen.*	XVIII. *or* XIX.
20.	Viginti,	*twenty.*	XX.
21.	Viginti unus, *or* unus et viginti,	*twenty-one.*	XXI.
22.	Viginti duo, *or* duo et viginti, etc.,	*twenty-two.*	XXII.
30.	Trĭginta,	*thirty.*	XXX.
40.	Quădrāginta,	*forty.*	XXXX. *or* XL.
50.	Quinquaginta,	*fifty.*	L.
60.	Sexaginta,	*sixty.*	LX.
70.	Septuaginta,	*seventy.*	LXX.
80.	Octoginta, *or* octuaginta,	*eighty.*	LXXX.
90.	Nōnāginta,	*ninety.*	LXXXX. *or* XC.
100.	Centum,	*a hundred.*	C.
101.	Centum unus, *or* centum et unus, etc.,	*a hundred and one.*	CI.
200.	Dŭcenti, -æ, a,	*two hundred.*	CC.
300.	Trĕcenti, etc.,	*three hundred.*	CCC.
400.	Quadringenti,	*four hundred.*	CCCC, *or* CD.
500.	Quingenti,	*five hundred.*	IƆ, *or* D.
600.	Sexcenti,	*six hundred.*	IƆC, *or* DC.
700.	Septingenti,	*seven hundred.*	IƆCC, *or* DCC.
800.	Octingenti,	*eight hundred.*	IƆCCC, *or* DCCC.
900.	Nongenti,	*nine hundred.*	IƆCCCC, *or* DCCCC.
1000.	Mille,	*a thousand.*	CIƆ, *or* M.
2000.	Duo millia, *or* bis mille,	*two thousand.*	CIƆCIƆ, *or* MM.

5000.	Quinque millia, *or* quinquies mille,	*five thousand.*	ISO.
10000.	Decem millia, *or* decies mille,	*ten thousand.*	CCISO.
50000.	Quinquaginta millia, *or* quinquagies mille,	*fifty thousand.*	ISOO.
100000.	Centum millia, *or* centies mille,	*a hundred thousand.*	CCCISOO.

§ **118.** 1. The first three cardinal numbers are declined; from four to a hundred inclusive they are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bŏnus.*

For the declension of *ūnus* and *tres*, see §§ 107 and 109.

Duo is thus declined :—

Plural.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	dŭ′-o,	du′-æ,	du′-o,
G.	du-ō′-rum,	du-ā′-rum,	du-ō′-rum,
D.	du-ō′-bus,	du-ā′-bus,	du-ō′-bus,
Ac.	du′-os, *or* du′-o,	du′-as,	du′-o,
V.	du′-o,	du′-æ,	du′-o,
Ab.	du-ō′-bus.	du-ā′-bus.	du-ō′-bus.

REMARK 1. *Duōrum, duārum,* are often contracted into *duûm,* especially in compounds; as, *duûmvir,* and when joined with *millium.—Ambo,* both, which partakes of the nature of a numeral and of a pronoun, is declined like *duo.*

2. The cardinal numbers, except *ūnus* and *mille,* are used in the plural only.

REM. 2. The plural of *unus* is used with nouns which have no singular, or whose singular has a different sense from the plural; as, *unæ nuptiæ,* one marriage; *una castra,* one camp. It is used also with nouns denoting several things considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta,* one suit of clothes. So, also, when it takes the signification of " alone " or " the same "; as, *uni Ubii,* the Ubians alone; *unis moribus vivĕre,*—with the same manners.

3. (*a.*) Thirteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, and nineteen, are often expressed by two numbers, the greater of which usually precedes, united by *et;* thus, *dĕcem et tres, dĕcem et nŏvem,* or, omitting *et, dĕcem nŏvem. Octodĕcim* has no good authority. See *infra,* 4.

(*b.*) From twenty to a hundred, the smaller number with *et* is put first, or the greater without *et;* as, *unus et viginti,* or *viginti unus.* Above one hundred, the greater precedes, with or without *et;* as, *centum et unus,* or *centum unus; trecenti sexaginta sex,* or *trecenti et sexaginta sex. Et* is never twice used, but the poets sometimes take *ac, atque,* or *que,* instead of *et.*

4. For eighteen, twenty-eight, etc., and for nineteen, twenty-nine, etc. (excepting sixty-eight, sixty-nine, and ninety-eight), a subtractive expression is more frequent than the additive form; as, *duodeviginti,* two from twenty; *undeviginti,* one from twenty; *duodetriginta, undetriginta,* etc. Neither *un* (*unus*) nor *duo* can be declined in these combinations. The additive forms for thirty-eight, etc. to ninety-eight, and for forty-nine, etc. to ninety-nine, except those for sixty-nine, seem not to occur.

5. (*a.*) Thousands are generally expressed by prefixing the smaller cardinal numbers to *millia;* as, *dĕcem millia,* ten thousand; *ducenta millia,* two hundred thousand. As there is in Latin no unit above *mille,* a thousand, the higher units of modern numeration are expressed by prefixing the numeral adverbs to the

combination *centēna millia;* as, *decies centēna millia,* a million; *centies centēna millia,* ten millions. In such combinations *centēna millia* is sometimes omitted; as, *decies, scil. centēna millia.*

(*b.*) The poets sometimes make use of numeral adverbs in expressing smaller numbers; as, *bis sex* for *duodĕcim; bis centum* for *ducenti,* etc.

6. *Mille* is used either as a substantive or as an adjective.

(*a.*) When taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number, and, in the plural, has *millia, millĭum, millĭbus,* etc.; as, *mille homĭnum,* a thousand men; *duo millia homĭnum,* two thousand men, etc. When *mille* is a substantive, the things numbered are put in the genitive, as in the preceding examples, unless a declined numeral comes between; as, *habuit tria millia trecentos milites.*

(*b.*) As an adjective, *mille* is plural only, and indeclinable: as, *mille homĭnes* a thousand men; *cum bis mille homĭnibus,* with two thousand men.

7. Capitals were used by the Romans to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X., which are, therefore, called *Numeral Letters.* I. denotes *one;* V. *five;* X. *ten;* L. *fifty;* and C. *a hundred.* By the various combinations of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

(*a.*) The repetition of a numeral letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two;* III. *three;* XX. *twenty;* XXX. *thirty;* CC. *two hundred,* etc. But V. and L. are never repeated.

(*b.*) When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater value, the less takes away its value from the greater; but being placed after, it adds its value to the greater; thus,

IV. Four.	V. Five.	VI. Six.
IX. Nine.	X. Ten.	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty.	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety.	C. A hundred.	CX. A hundred and ten.

(*c.*) A *thousand* was marked thus, CIƆ, which, in later times, was contracted into M. *Five hundred* is marked thus, IƆ, or, by contraction, D.

(*d.*) The annexing of the *apostrophus* or inverted C (Ɔ) to IƆ makes its value ten times greater; thus, IƆƆ marks *five thousand;* and IƆƆƆ, *fifty thousand.*

(*e.*) The prefixing of C, together with the annexing of Ɔ, to the number CIƆ, makes its value ten times greater; thus, CCIƆƆ denotes *ten thousand;* and CCCIƆƆƆ, *a hundred thousand.* The Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no further in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, CCCIƆƆƆ, CCCIƆƆƆ, signified *two hundred thousand,* etc.

(*f.*) We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numeral letters. Thus, IIĪ. denotes *three thousand;* X̄., *ten thousand.*

§ **119**. II. *Ordinal* numbers are such as denote order or rank, and answer to the question, *Quŏtus?* Which of the numbers? They all end in *us,* and are declined like *bŏnus;* as, *prīmus,* first; *secundus,* second.

III. *Distributive* numbers are those which indicate an equal division among several persons or things, and answer to the question, *Quotēni?* How many apiece? as, *singŭli,* one by one, or, one to each; *bīni,* two by two, or two to each, etc. They are always used in the plural, and are declined like the plural of *bŏnus,* except that they usually have *ŭm* instead of *ōrum* in the genitive plural. Cf. § 105, R. 4.

The following table contains the ordinal and distributive numbers, and the corresponding numeral adverbs, which answer to the question, *Quoties ?* How many times ?

	Ordinal.	Distributive.	Numeral Adverbs.
1.	Prīmus, *first.*	Singŭli, *one by one.*	Sĕmel, *once.*
2.	Sĕcundus, *second.*	Bīni, *two by two.*	Bis, *twice.*
3.	Tertius, *third.*	Terni, *or* trīni.	Ter, *thrice.*
4.	Quartus, *fourth.*	Quaterni.	Quăter, *four times.*
5.	Quintus, *fifth.*	Quīni.	Quinquies.
6.	Sextus, *sixth.*	Sēni.	Sexies.
7.	Septĭmus, *seventh.*	Septēni.	Septies.
8.	Octāvus, *eighth.*	Octōni.	Octies.
9.	Nōnus, *ninth.*	Novēni.	Novies.
10.	Dĕcĭmus, *tenth,* etc.	Dēni.	Dēcies.
11.	Undecĭmus.	Undēni.	Undecies.
12.	Duodecĭmus.	Duodēni.	Duodecies.
13.	Tertius decĭmus.	Terni dēni.	Terdecies.
14.	Quartus decĭmus.	Quaterni dēni.	Quatuordecies.
15.	Quintus decĭmus.	Quīni dēni.	Quindecies.
16.	Sextus decĭmus.	Sēni dēni.	Sedecies.
17.	Septĭmus decĭmus.	Septēni dēni.	Decies et septies.
18.	Octāvus decĭmus.	Octōni dēni.	Duodevicies.
19.	Nōnus decĭmus.	Novēni dēni.	Undevicies.
20.	{ Vicēsĭmus, *or* vigesĭmus. }	Vicēni.	Vīcies.
21.	Vicesĭmus prīmus.	Vicēni singŭli.	Semel et vicies.
22.	Vicesĭmus secundus.	Vicēni bīni, etc.	Bis et vicies, etc.
30.	{ Trīcesĭmus, *or* trigesĭmus. }	Trīcēni.	Trīcies.
40.	Quādrāgesĭmus.	Quadragēni.	Quadragies.
50.	Quinquagesĭmus.	Quinquagēni.	Quinquagies.
60.	Sexagesĭmus.	Sexagēni.	Sexagies.
70.	Septuagesĭmus.	Septuagēni.	Septuagies.
80.	Octogesĭmus.	Octogēni.	Octogies.
90.	Nonagesĭmus.	Nonagēni.	Nonagies.
100.	Centesĭmus.	Centēni.	Centies.
200.	Dŭcentesĭmus.	Ducēni.	Ducenties.
300.	Trĕcentesĭmus.	Trecēni, *or* trecentēni.	{ Trecenties, *or* tricenties. }
400.	Quādringentesĭmus.	{ Quadringēni, *or* quadringentēni. }	Quadringenties.
500.	Quingentesĭmus.	Quingēni.	Quingenties.
600.	Sexcentesĭmus.	Sexcēni, *or* sexcentēni.	Sexcenties.
700.	Septingentesĭmus.	Septingēni.	Septingenties.
800.	Octingentesĭmus.	Octingēni.	Octingenties.
900.	Nongentesĭmus.	Nongēni.	Noningenties.
1000.	Millesĭmus.	{ Millēni, *or* singŭla millia. }	Millies.
2000.	Bis millesĭmus.	{ Bis millēni, *or* bīna millia. }	Bis millies.

§ **120.** 1. In the ordinals, instead of *primus, prior* is used, if only two are spoken of. *Alter* is often used for *secundus.*

2. (*a.*) From thirteenth to nineteenth, the smaller number is usually put first, without *et;* as, *tertius decĭmus,* but sometimes the greater with or without *et;* as, *decimus et tertius,* or *decimus tertius.*

(*b.*) Twenty-first, thirty-first, etc., are often expressed by *unus et vicesĭmus, unus et tricesĭmus,* etc., one and twentieth, etc.; and twenty-second, etc., by *duo,* or *alter et vicesĭmus,* etc., in which *duo* is not changed. In the other compound numbers, the larger precedes without *et,* or the smaller with *et;* as, *vicesĭmus quartus,* or *quartus et vicesĭmus.*

(c.) For eighteenth, etc., to fifty-eighth, and for nineteenth, ⬛⬛⬛ fifty-ninth, the subtractive forms, *duodevicesimus*, etc., and *undevicesimus*, etc., are often used.

3. In the distributives, eighteen, thirty-eight, forty-eight, and nineteen and twenty-nine, are often expressed by the subtractives *duodeviceni*, etc., *undeviceni*, etc.

4. (a.) Distributives are sometimes used by the poets for cardinal numbers; as, *bina spicula*, two darts. Virg. So likewise in prose, with nouns that want the singular; as, *binæ nuptiæ*, two weddings.

(b.) The singular of some distributives is used in the sense of multiplicatives; as, *binus*, twofold. So *ternus, quinus, septēnus.*

5. In the numeral adverbs, for the intermediate numbers 21, 22, etc., the larger number also may be put first, either with or without *et;* and for twenty-eight times and thirty-nine times, *duodetricies* and *undequadragies* are found.

§ **121.** To the preceding classes may be added the following :—

1. *Multiplicatives*, which denote how many fold, in answer to the question, *quotuplex?* They all end in *plex*, and are declined like *fēlix ;* as,

Simplex, *single.*	Quincuplex, *fivefold.*
Duplex, *twofold*, or *double.*	Septemplex, *sevenfold.*
Triplex, *threefold.*	Decemplex, *tenfold.*
Quadruplex, *fourfold.*	Centuplex, *a hundred fold.*

2. *Proportionals*, which denote how many times one thing is greater than another; as, *duplus, a, um*, twice as great; so *triplus, quadruplus, octuplus, decuplus.* They are generally found only in the neuter.

3. *Temporals*, which denote time; as, *bimus, a, um*, two years old; so *trimus, quadrimus*, etc. Also, *biennis*, lasting two years, biennial; so *quadriennis, quinquennis*, etc. So also, *bimestris*, of two months' continuance; *trimestris*, etc., *biduus*, etc. To these may be added certain nouns, compounds of *annus* and *dies* with the cardinal numbers; as, *biennium, triennium*, etc., a period of two, etc. years; *biduum, triduum*, etc., a period of two, etc. days.

4. Adjectives in *arius*, derived from the distributives, and denoting of how many equal parts or units a thing consists; as, *binarius*, of two parts; *ternarius*, etc.

5. *Interrogatives;* as, *quot*, how many? *quotus*, of what number? *quotēni*, how many each? *quoties*, how many times? Their correlatives are *tot, totidem*, so many; *aliquot*, some; which, with *quot*, are indeclinable; and the adverbs, *toties*, so often; *aliquoties*, several times.

6. *Fractional expressions*, which denote the parts of a thing. These are expressed in Latin by *pars* with *dimidia, tertia, quarta*, etc. Thus, ½, *dimidia pars;* ⅓, *tertia pars*, etc. When the number of parts into which a thing is divided exceeds by one only the parts mentioned, as in ⅔, ¾, etc. the fraction is expressed simply by *duæ, tres*, etc. *partes*, denoting two out of three, three out of four, etc.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ **122.** 1. Adjectives may be divided into two classes—those which denote a *variable*, and those which denote an *invariable*, quality or limitation.

Thus, *bonus*, good, *altus*, high, and *opacus*, dark, denote variable attributes; but *æneus*, brazen, *triplex*, threefold, and *diurnus*, daily, do not admit of different degrees in their signification.

2. The *comparison* of an adjective is the expression of its quality in different degrees.

3. Th{...}e three degrees of comparison—the *positive*, the *comparative*, a{...}e *superlative*.

4. The positive simply denotes a quality, without reference to other degrees of the same quality; as, *altus*, high; *mītis*, mild.

5. The comparative denotes that a quality belongs to one of two objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to the other; as, *altior*, higher; *mitior*, milder.

6. The superlative denotes that a quality belongs to one of several objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to any of the rest; as, *altissĭmus*, highest; *mitissĭmus*, mildest.

Rem 1. Sometimes also the comparative denotes that a quality, at different times or in other circumstances, belongs in different degrees to the *same* object; as, *est sapientior quam fuit*, he is wiser than he was.

Rem. 2. The comparative sometimes expresses the proportion between two qualities of the same object; as, *est doctior quam sapientior*, he is more learned than wise; that is, his learning is greater than his wisdom.

Rem. 3. The comparative is also used elliptically instead of our 'too' or 'rather'; as, *vivit līberius*, he lives too freely, or, rather freely. Cf. § 256, R. 9.

Rem. 4. The superlative, like the positive with *per*, (cf. § 127, 2), often indicates a high degree of a quality without direct comparison with the same quality in other objects; as, *amīcus carissĭmus*, a very dear friend.

§ **123.** 1. Degrees of a quality *inferior* to the positive may be denoted by the adverbs *mĭnus*, less; *minĭme*, least, prefixed to the positive; as, *jucundus*, pleasant; *minus jucundus*, less pleasant; *minĭme jucundus*, least pleasant.

2. A small degree of a quality is indicated by *sub* prefixed to the positive; as, *amārus*, bitter; *subamārus*, bitterish, or, somewhat bitter.

3. An *equal* degree of a quality may be denoted by *tam* followed by *quam*, *æque* followed by *ac*, *sic* followed by *ut*, etc.; as, *hĕbes*, *æque ac pĕcus*, as stupid as a brute.

§ **124.** 1. The comparative and superlative in Latin, as in English, are denoted either by peculiar terminations, or by certain adverbs prefixed to the positive.   Cf. § 127, 1.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.

2. The terminational comparative ends in *ior*, *ior*, *ius*; the terminational superlative in *issĭmus*, *issĭma*, *issĭmum*.

3. These terminations are added to the root of the positive; as,
altus, *altior*, *altissĭmus*;   high, higher, highest.
mītis, *mitior*, *mitissĭmus*;   mild, milder, mildest.
fēlix, (gen. *fēlīcis*,) *felicior*, *felicissĭmus*; happy, happier, happiest.

In like manner compare

Arc'-tus, *strait*.	Cru-dē'-lis, *cruel*.	Că'-pax, *capacious*.
Că'-rus, *dear*.	Fer'-tĭ-lis, *fertile*.	Clē'-mens, (*gen*. -tis) *merciful*.
Doc'-tus, *learned*.	Lĕ'-vis, *light*.	In'-ers, (*gen*. -tis), *sluggish*.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

§ **125.** 1. Adjectives in *er* form their superlative by adding *rĭmus* to that termination; as, *ācer*, active; gen. *acris*; comparative, *acrior*; superlative, *acerrĭmus*.

In like manner, *pauper, pauperrĭmus.*   *Vĕtus* has a similar superlative, *veter-rĭmus*, from the old collateral form *vĕter.*

2. Six adjectives in *lis* form their superlative by adding *lĭmus* to the root:—

Facĭlis,	facilior,	facillĭmus,	*easy.*
Difficĭlis,	difficilior,	difficillĭmus,	*difficult.*
Gracĭlis,	gracilior,	gracillĭmus,	*slender.*
Humĭlis,	humilior,	humillĭmus,	*low.*
Simĭlis,	similior,	simillĭmus,	*like.*
Dissimĭlis,	dissimilior,	dissimillĭmus,	*unlike.*

Imbecillus or *imbecillis*, weak, has two forms, *imbecillissimus* and *imbecillĭmus.*

3. (*a.*) Five adjectives in *ficus* (from *făcio*) derive their comparatives and superlatives from supposed forms in *ens:*—

Benefĭcus,	beneficentior,	beneficentissĭmus,	*beneficent.*
Honorifĭcus,	honorificentior,	honorificentissĭmus,	*honorable.*
Magnifĭcus,	magnificentior,	magnificentissĭmus,	*splendid.*
Munifĭcus,	munificentior,	munificentissĭmus,	*liberal.*
Malefĭcus,	——————,	maleficentissimus,	*hurtful.*

(*b.*) Adjectives in *dĭcens* and *vŏlens* form their comparatives and superlatives regularly; but instead of those positives, forms in *dicus* and *vŏlus* are more common; as,

Maledĭcens *or* dĭcus, maledicentior, maledicentissĭmus, *slanderous.*
Benevŏlens, *or* -vŏlus, benevolentior, benevolentissĭmus, *benevolent.*

4. These five have regular comparatives, but irregular superlatives:—

Dexter,	dexterior,	dextĭmus,	*right.*
Extĕra, (*fem.*)	exterior,	extrēmus, *or* extĭmus,	*outward.*
Postĕra, (*fem.*)	posterior,	postrēmus, *or* postŭmus,	*hind.*
Infĕrus,	inferior,	infĭmus, *or* imus,	*below.*
Supĕrus,	superior,	suprēmus, *or* summus,	*above.*

REMARK 1. The nominative singular of *postĕra* does not occur in the masculine, and that of *extĕra* wants good authority.

5. The following are very irregular in comparison :—

Bŏnus,	melior,	optĭmus,	*good,*	*better,*	*best.*
Mălus,	pējor,	pessĭmus,	*bad,*	*worse,*	*worst.*
Magnus,	mājor,	maxĭmus,	*great,*	*greater,*	*greatest.*
Parvus,	mĭnor,	minĭmus,	*little,*	*less,*	*least.*
Multus,	——	plurĭmus,			
Multa,	——	plurĭma,	*much,*	*more,*	*most.*
Multum,	plus,*	plurĭmum,			
Nēquam,	nequior,	nequissĭmus,	*worthless,* etc.		
Frūgi,	frugalior,	frugalissĭmus,	*frugal,* etc.		

REM. 2. All these, except *magnus*, whose regular forms are contracted, either form their comparatives and superlatives from obsolete adjectives, or take them from other words of similar signification.

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

§ **126.** 1. Seven adjectives want the positive :—

Citerior, citĭmus, *nearer.*	Prior, prĭmus, *former.*
Deterior, deterrĭmus, *worse.*	Propior, proxĭmus, *nearer.*
Interior, intĭmus, *inner.*	Ulterior, ultĭmus, *farther.*
Ocior, ocissĭmus, *swifter.*	

* See § 110.

2. Eight want the terminational comparative :—

Consultus, consultissĭmus, *skilful.*
Inclŭtus, inclutissĭmus, *renowned.*
Invictus, invictissĭmus, *invincible.*
Invītus, invitissĭmus, *unwilling.*
Merĭtus, meritissĭmus, (very rare,) *deserving.*

Par, parissĭmus, (very rare), *equal.*
Persuāsus, persuasissĭmum (neuter), *persuaded.*
Săcer, sacerrĭmus, *sacred.*

3. Eight have very rarely the terminational comparative :—

Aprīcus, apricissĭmus, *sunny.*
Bellus, bellissĭmus, *fine.*
Cōmis, comissĭmus, *courteous.*
Diversus, diversissĭmus, *different.*

Falsus, falsissĭmus, *false.*
Fīdus, fidissĭmus, *faithful.*
Nŏvus, novissĭmus, *new.*
Vĕtus, veterrĭmus, *old.*

4. The following want the terminational superlative :—

Adolescens, adolescentior, *young.*
Agrestis, agrestior, *rustic.*
Alăcer, alacrior, *active.*
Ater, atrior, *black.*
Cæcus, cæcior, *blind.*
Dēses, desidior, *inactive.*
Diuturnus, diuturnior, *lasting.*
Infinītus, infinitior, *unlimited.*
Ingens, ingentior, *great.*
Jejūnus, jejunior, *fasting.*
Juvĕnis, junior, *young.*
Licens, licentior, *unrestrained.*
Longinquus, longinquior, *distant.*
Opīmus, opimior, *rich.*

Proclīvis, proclivior, *sloping.*
Prōnus, pronior, *bending down.*
Protervus, protervior, *violent.*
———— sequior, *worse.*
Propinquus, propinquior, *near.*
Salutāris, salutarior, *salutary.*
Sătis, *sufficient;* satius, *preferable.*
Sătur, saturior, *full.*
Sĕnex, senior, *old.*
Silvestris, silvestrior, *woody.*
Sinister, sinistrior, *left.*
Supīnus, supinior, *lying on the back.*
Surdus, surdior, *deaf.*
Tĕres, teretior, *round.*

REMARK 1. The superlative of *juvĕnis* and *adolescens* is supplied by *minĭmus nātu*, youngest; and that of *sĕnex* by *maxĭmus nātu*, oldest. The comparatives *minor nātu* and *mājor nātu* sometimes also occur.

REM. 2. Most adjectives also in *ĭlis, ilis, ālis,* and *bĭlis,* have no terminational superlative.

5. Many variable adjectives have no terminational comparative or superlative. Such are,

(*a.*) Adjectives in *bundus, ĭmus, ĭnus* (except *dīvīnus*), *ŏrus,* most in *īvus,* and in *us* pure (except *-quus.*) Yet *arduus, assiduus, egregius, exiguus, industrius, perpetuus, pius, strenuus,* and *vacuus,* have sometimes a terminational comparison. So, dropping *i, noxior, innoxior, sobrior.*

(*b.*) The following—*almus, calvus, cānus, cĭcur, claudus, degĕner, delīrus, dispar, egēnus, impar, impĭger, invĭdus, lăcer, mĕmor, mīrus, nūdus, præcox, præditus, rŭdis, salvus, sospes, superstes, vulgāris,* and some others.

§ **127.** 1. The comparative and superlative may also be formed by prefixing to the positive the adverbs *măgĭs,* more, and *maxĭme,* most; as, *idoneus,* fit; *magis idoneus, maxĭme idoneus.*

2. Various degrees of a quality above the positive are expressed by *admŏdum, aliquanto, apprīme, bĕne, imprīmis, multum, oppĭdo, perquam,* and *valde,* and also by *per* compounded with the positive; as, *diffĭcĭlis,* difficult; *perdifficĭlis,* very difficult. To a few adjectives *præ* is in like manner prefixed; as, *prædūrus,* very hard.

3. The force of the comparative is increased by prefixing *etiam,* even, still, *or* yet; and that of both comparative and superlative, by

prefixing *longe* or *multo*, much, far; as, longe *nobilissĭmus;* longe *melior, ĭter* multo *facilius;* multo *maxĭma pars.*

4. *Vel*, 'even', and *quam*, with or without *possum*, 'as much as possible', before the superlative, render it more emphatic; as, *Cicĕro* vel *optĭmus oratōrum Romanōrum.* Quam *maxĭmum* potest *milĭtum numĕrum collĭgit;* quam *doctissĭmus*, extremely learned; quam *celerrĭme*, as speedily as possible.

NOTE 1. Instead of *quam* with *possum*, *quantus* is sometimes used, in the same case as the superlative; as, Quantis *maxĭmis* potuit *itinerĭbus contendit.*

NOTE 2. *Unus*, with or without *omnium*, is sometimes added to superlatives to increase their force; as, *Hoc ego* ūno omnium *plurimum ūtor.* Cic. *Urbem* ūnam *mihi amicissimam declināvi*, Id. It is used in like manner with *excello.*

5. All adjectives whose signification admits of different degrees, if they have no terminational comparison, may be compared by means of adverbs.

6. Instead of the comparative and superlative degrees, the positive with the prepositions *præ, ante, præter,* or *supra*, is sometimes used; as, *præ nobis beātus*, happier than we. Cic. *Ante alias pulchritudĭne insignis*, most beautiful. Liv. Sometimes the preposition is used in connection with the superlative; as, *Ante alios pulcherrĭmus omnes.* Virg.

7. Among adjectives which denote an invariable quality or limitation, and which, therefore, cannot be compared, are those denoting matter, time, number, possession, country, part, interrogation; also compounds of *jŭgum, somnus, gĕro,* and *fĕro,* and many others.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ **128.** Derivative adjectives are formed chiefly from nouns, from other adjectives, and from verbs.

I. Those derived from nouns and adjectives are called *denominatives.* The following are the principal classes:—

1. (*a.*) The termination *ĕus*, added to the root, denotes the material of which a thing is made, and sometimes similarity; as, *aureus*, golden; *argenteus*, of silver; *ligneus*, wooden; *vitreus*, of glass; *virgineus*, maidenly; from *aurum, argentum*, etc. See § 9, Rem. 3.

(*b.*) Some adjectives of this kind have a double form in *neus* and *nus;* as, *eburneus* and *eburnus*, of ivory.

(*c.*) The termination *ĭnus* has the same meaning; as, *adamantĭnus*, of adamant; *cedrĭnus*, of cedar; from *adămas* and *cedrus.* So, also, *ēnus;* as, *terrēnus*, of earth, from *terra.*

(*d.*) The termination *ĕus* or * īus* (Greek *εος*), and also *ĭcus*, belong to adjectives formed from Greek names of men, and denote 'of' or 'pertaining to'; as, *Achillēus, Sophoclēus, Aristotelīus, Platonĭcus; Pythagorēus* and *Pythagorĭcus; Homerīus* and *Homerĭcus.* Names in *ias* make adjectives in *iăcus;* as, *Archĭas, Archiăcus.* Sometimes, though rarely in the purest Latin authors, adjectives in *ēus* or *īus* are formed from Latin names; as, *Marcellīa* or *-ēa,* a festival in honor of the Marcelli.

2. (*a.*) The terminations *ālis, āris, ārius, ilis, atĭlis, ĭcius, ĭcus, ius, ĕus,* and *ĭnus,* denote 'belonging' 'pertaining,' or 'relating to'; as, *capitālis*, relating to the life; from *caput.*

So *comitiālis, regālis; Apollināris, consulāris, populāris; argentarius; civīlis, hostīlis, juvenīlis; aquatīlis, fluviatīlis; tribunicius, patricius; bellicus, civicus, Germanicus; accusatorius, imperatorius, regius; Hectorĕus; canīnus, equīnus, ferīnus, masculīnus;* from *comitia, rex, Apollo, consul, popŭlus, argentum, cīvis,* etc.

(*b.*) The termination *ĭlis* sometimes expresses character; as, *hostīlis,* hostile; *puerīlis,* boyish; from *hostis* and *puer.*

(*c.*) The termination *īnus* belongs especially to derivatives from names of animals, and other living beings.

3. The termination *arius,* as a substantive, scil. *făber,* etc., generally denotes profession or occupation; as, *argentarius,* a silversmith; from *argentum;—coriarius, statuarius;* from *corium* and *statua.* When added to numeral adjectives, it denotes how many equal parts a thing contains. See § 121, 4.

4. The terminations *ōsus* and *lentus* denote abundance, fulness; as, *animōsus,* full of courage; *fraudulentus,* given to fraud; from *anĭmus* and *fraus.* So *lapidōsus, vinōsus, portuōsus, turbulentus, sanguinolentus, violentus.* Before *lentus,* a connecting vowel is inserted, which is commonly *ŭ,* but sometimes *ŏ.*

NOTE.—Adjectives of this class are called *amplificatives.* See § 104, 12.

5. From adjectives are formed *diminutives* in *ŭlus, cŭlus,* etc., in the same manner as from nouns; as, *dulciculus,* sweetish; from *dulcis.* So *lentŭlus, misellus, parvŭlus,* etc. See § 100, 3, and § 104, 11. Diminutives are sometimes formed from comparatives; as, *majuscŭlus, duriuscŭlus,* somewhat great, somewhat hard, etc. Double diminutives are formed from *paucus,* viz *pauxillus* and *pauxillŭlus;* and from *bŏnus, (bĕnus)* are formed *bellus* and *bellŭlus.*

6. (*a.*) From the names of places, and especially of towns, are derived *patrial* adjectives in *ensis, īnus, as,* and *ānus,* denoting of or belonging to such places.

(*b.*) Thus from *Cannœ* is formed *Cannensis;* from *Sulmo, Sulmonensis.* In like manner, from *castra* and *circus* come *castrensis, circensis.* But *Athēnœ* makes *Atheniensis;* and some Greek towns in *īa* and *ēa* drop *i* and *e* in their adjectives; as, *Antiochensis, Nicomedensis.*

(*c.*) Those in *īnus* are formed from names of places ending in *ia* and *ium;* as, *Aricia, Aricīnus; Caudium, Caudīnus; Capitolium, Capitolīnus; Latium, Latīnus.* Some names of towns, of Greek origin, with other terminations, also form adjectives in *īnus;* as, *Tarentum, Tarentīnus.*

(*d.*) Most of those in *as* are formed from nouns in *um;* some from nouns in *a;* as, *Arpīnum, Arpīnas; Capēna, Capēnas.*

(*e.*) Those in *ānus* are formed from names of towns of the first declension, or from certain common nouns; as, *Alba, Albānus; Rōma, Romānus; Cūmœ, Cumānus; Thēbœ, Thebānus;* also from some of the second declension; as, *Tuscŭlum, Tusculānus; Fundi, Fundānus:—fons, fontānus; mons, montānus; urbs, urbānus: oppidum, oppidānus.*

(*f.*) Adjectives with the terminations *ānus, iānus,* and *īnus* are formed from names of men; as, *Sulla, Sullānus; Tullius, Tulliānus; Jugurtha, Jugurthīnus.*

(*g.*) Greek names of towns in *pŏlis* form patrial adjectives in *politānus;* as, *Neapŏlis, Neapolitānus.*

(*h.*) Greek names of towns generally form patrials in *ius;* as, *Rhodus, Rhodius; Lacedœmon, Lacedœmonius;*—but those in *a* form them in *œus;* as, *Larissa, Larissœus; Smyrna, Smyrnœus.*

(*i.*) From many patrials; as, *Britannus, Gallus, Afer, Persa, Arabs,* etc., adjectives are formed in *icus* and *ius;* as, *Britannicus, Gallicus, Africus, Persicus, Arabicus;* so *Sӯrus, Syrius; Thrax, Thracius.*

7. A large class of derivative adjectives, though formed from nouns, have the terminations of perfect participles. They generally signify *wearing* or *furnished with;* as,

alātus, winged; *barbātus,* bearded; *galeātus,* helmeted; *aurītus,* long-eared; *turrītus,* turreted; *cornūtus,* horned; from *ala, barba, galea, auris,* etc.

8. The termination *aneus*, annexed to the root of an adjective or participle in *us*, expresses a resemblance to the quality denoted by the primitive; as, *supervacaneus*, of a superfluous nature.

§ **129.** II. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *verbal* adjectives. Such are the following classes:—

1. The termination *bundus*, added to the first root of the verb, with a connecting vowel, which is commonly that of the verb, (see § 150, 5,) has the general meaning of the present participle; as,

errābundus, morĭbundus, from *erro, morior*, equivalent to *errans, moriens*.

(*a.*) In many the meaning is somewhat strengthened; as, *gratulābundus*, full of congratulations; *lacrĭmābundus*, weeping profusely.

(*b.*) Most verbals in *bundus* are from verbs of the first conjugation, a few from those of the third, and but one from the second and fourth respectively, viz. *pudĭbundus* and *lascivĭbundus*.

(*c.*) Some verbal adjectives in *cundus* have a similar sense; as, *rubĭcundus, verēcundus*, from *rubeo* and *vereor*.

2. The termination *ĭdus*, added to the root, especially of neuter verbs, denotes the quality or state expressed by the verb; as,

algĭdus, cold; *calĭdus*, warm; *madĭdus*, moist; *rapĭdus*, rapid; from *algeo, caleo, madeo, rapio*.

3. The termination *uus*, also, denotes the quality expressed by the verb; and adjectives in *uus* derived from active verbs take a passive meaning; as,

congruus, agreeing, from *congruo;* so, *assiduus, nocuus, innocuus :—irriguus*, well watered; *conspicuus*, visible; from *irrĭgo, conspicio*.

4. (*a.*) The terminations *ĭlis* and *bĭlis*, added to the root of a verb, with its connecting vowel, denote passively, capability, or desert; as,

amabĭlis, worthy to be loved; *credibĭlis*, deserving credit; *placabĭlis*, easy to be appeased; *agĭlis*, active; *ductĭlis*, ductile; from *ămo, crēdo, plăco; ăgo, dūco*. They are rarely active; as, *horribĭlis, terribĭlis, fertĭlis ; aër per cuncta meabĭlis.* Plin.

(*b.*) In adjectives of these forms, derived from verbs of the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is *ĭ*; sometimes, also, in those from verbs of the second conjugation, in these and other forms, *i* is used instead of *e ;* as, *horribĭlis, terribĭlis*, from *horreo* and *terreo*.

(*c.*) These terminations, with the connecting vowel, are sometimes added to the third root; as, *flexĭlis, flexibĭlis; coctĭlis, coctibĭlis*, from *flecto (flex-)*, etc.

5. The termination *icius* or *itius*, added to the third root of the verb, has a passive sense; as, *fictitius*, feigned; *conductitius*, to be hired; from *fingo (fict-)*, etc.

6. The termination *ax*, added to the root of a verb, denotes an inclination, often one that is faulty; as,

audax, audacious; *lŏquax*, talkative; *răpax* rapacious; from *audeo. lŏquor, răpio*.

7. The termination *ĭvus*, annexed to the third root of a verb, denotes fitness or ability to produce the action expressed by the verb; as, *disjunctīvus*, disjunctive, from *disjungo*.

8. Verbals in *tor* and *trix*, (see § 102, 6, (*a*.), are often used as adjectives, especially in poetry; as, *victor exercĭtus, victrīces litĕræ*. In the plural they become adjectives of three terminations; as, *victōres, victrīces, victrīcia*. So also *hospes*, especially by the later poets, is used as an adjective, having *hospĭta* in the feminine singular and also in the neuter plural.

§ **130.**   III. Adjectives derived from participles, and retaining their form, are called *participial adjectíves*; as, *ămans*, fond of; *doctus*, learned.

IV. Some adjectives are derived from adverbs; as, *crastĭnus*, of to-morrow; *hodiernus*, of this day; from *cras* and *hodie*.

V. Some adjectives are derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, contrary, from *contra*; *postĕrus*, subsequent, from *post*.

COMPOSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ **131.**   Compound adjectives are formed variously:—

1. Of two nouns; as, *caprĭpes*, goat-footed—of *căper* and *pes*; *ignicŏmus*, having fiery hair—of *ignis* and *cŏma*.

NOTE.—See, respecting the connecting short ĭ, in case the first part of the compound is a noun or an adjective, § 103, Rem. 1.

2. Of a noun and an adjective; as, *noctivăgus*, wandering in the night—of *nox* and *văgus*. So *lucifŭgax*, shunning the light—of *lux* and *fugax*.

3. Of a noun and a verb; as, *cornĭger*, bearing horns—of *cornu* and *gĕro*; *letĭfer*, bringing death—of *lētum* and *fĕro*. So *carnivŏrus, causidĭcus, ignivŏmus, lucifŭgus, particeps*.

4. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquævus*, of the same age—of *æquus* and *ævum*; *celerĭpes*, swift-footed—of *cĕler* and *pes*. So *centimănus, decennis, magnanĭmus, misericors, unanĭmis*.

5. Of two adjectives; as, *centumgemĭnus*, a hundred-fold; *multicăvus*, having many cavities; *quintusdecĭmus*, the fifteenth.

6. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *brevilŏquens*, speaking briefly—of *brĕvis* and *lŏquor*; *magnifĭcus*, magnificent—of *magnus* and *făcio*.

7. Of an adjective and a termination; as, *qualiscumque, quotcumque, uterque*.

8. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *bicorpor*, two-bodied—of *bis* and *corpus*.

9. Of an adverb and an adjective; as, *maledĭcax*, slanderous—of *măle* and *dĭcax*. So *antemeridiānus*, before mid-day.

10. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *benefĭcus*, beneficent—of *bĕne* and *făcio*; *malevŏlus*, malevolent—of *măle* and *vŏlo*.

11. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *āmens*, mad—of *a* and *mens*. So *consors, decŏlor, deformis, implūmis, inermis*.

12. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *concăvus*, concave; *infĭdus*, unfaithful. So *improvĭdus, percārus, prædīves, subalbĭdus*.

13. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *continuus*, uninterrupted—of *con* and *teneo*; *insciens*, ignorant—of *in* and *scio*. So *præcipuus, promiscuus, substillus, superstes*.

REMARK. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to the consonant which follows it; as, *imprūdens*—of *in* and *prūdens*. See § 196; and cf. § 103, R. 2.

PRONOUNS.

§ 132. 1. A pronoun is a word which supplies the place of a noun.

2. There are eighteen simple pronouns:—

Ego, *I.*	Hic, *this, the latter.*	Suus, *his, hers, its,* etc.
Tu, *thou.*	Is, *that* or *he.*	Cujus? *whose?*
Sui, *of himself,* etc.	Quis? *who?*	Noster, *our.*
Ille, *that, the former.*	Qui, *who.*	Vester, *your.*
Ipse, *himself.*	Meus, *my.*	Nostras, *of our country.*
Iste, *that, that of yours.*	Tuus, *thy.*	Cujas? *of what country?*

3. *Ego, tu,* and *sui,* and commonly also *quis* and its compounds, are substantives: the other pronouns, both simple and compound, are adjectives, but are often by ellipsis used as substantives.

4. *Ego, tu,* and *sui* are commonly called *personal pronouns.* They are a species of appellatives (§ 26, 3,) of general application. *Ego* is used by a speaker to designate himself; *tu,* to designate the person whom he addresses. Hence *ego* is of the first person, *tu* of the second. (§ 35, 2.) *Sui* is of the third person, and has always a reflexive signification, referring to the subject of the sentence. The oblique cases of *ego* and *tu* are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person.

5. The remaining pronouns, except *quis* and its compounds, are adjectives, as they serve to limit the meaning of substantives; and they are pronouns, because, like substantive pronouns, they may designate any object in certain situations or circumstances.

6. *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester,* and *cujus,* have the same extent of signification as the pronouns from which they are derived, and are equivalent to the genitive cases of their primitives.

7. Pronouns, like substantives and adjectives, are declined; but most of them want the vocative. *Sui,* from the nature of its signification, wants also the nominative in both numbers.

8. The substantive pronouns take the gender of the objects which they denote. The adjective pronouns, like adjectives, have three genders.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 133. The substantive pronouns are thus declined :—

Singular.

N. ĕ'-gŏ, *I.*	tū, *thou.*	
G. me'-ī, *of me.*	tu'-ī, *of thee.*	{ su'-ī, *of himself, herself, itself.*
D. mĭ'-hĭ, *to me.*	tĭb'-ĭ,* *to thee.*	sĭb'-ĭ,* *to himself,* etc.
Ac. mē, *me.*	tē, *thee.*	sē, *himself,* etc.
V. ———	tū, *O thou.*	
Ab. mē, *with me.*	tē, *with thee.*	sē, *with himself,* etc.

* See § 19, 1, Exc.

Plural.

N.	nōs, *we.*	vōs, *ye* or *you.*	
G.	nos'-trum or nos'-trī, } *of us.*	ves'-trum or ves'-trī, } *of you.*	su'-ī, *of themselves.*
D.	nō'-bīs, *to us.*	vō'-bīs, *to you.*	sĭb'-ī, *to themselves.*
Ac.	nōs, *us.*	vōs, *you.*	sē, *themselves.*
V.	————	vōs, *O ye* or *you.*	————
Ab.	nō'-bīs, *with us.*	vō'-bīs, *with you.*	sē, *with themselves.*

REMARK 1. *Mē* and *mī* are ancient forms for *mihi.* So *min'* for *mihine,* Pers. 1, 2.

REM. 2. The syllable *met* is sometimes annexed to the substantive pronouns, in an intensive sense, either with or without *ipse;* as, *egŏmet,* I myself; *mihimet ipsi,* for myself. It is not annexed, however, to the genitives plural, nor to *tu* in the nominative or vocative. In these cases of *tu, tūtĕ* or *tutĕmet* is used. In the accusative and ablative the reduplicated forms *mēmē* and *tētē* in the singular, and *sēsē* in both numbers, are employed intensively. *Mepte,* intensive, *med* and *ted,* for *me* and *te,* and *mis* and *tis* for *mei* and *tui,* occur in the comic writers.

3. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are contracted from *nostrōrŭm, nostrārŭm,* and *vestrōrŭm, vestrārŭm.* Respecting the difference in the use of *nostrum* and *nostri, vestrum* and *vestri,* see § 212, R. 2, N. 2.

4. The preposition *cum* is affixed to the ablative of these pronouns in both numbers; as, *mēcum, nobiscum,* etc. Cf. § 136, R. 1.

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ **134.** †Adjective pronouns may be divided into the following classes :—*demonstrative, intensive, relative, interrogative, indefinite, possessive,* and *patrial.*

NOTE. Some pronouns belong to two of these classes.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Demonstrative pronouns are such as specify what object is meant.

They are *ille, iste, hic,* and *is,* and their compounds, and are thus declined :—

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	il'-lĕ,	il'-lă,	il'-lŭd,	il'-lī,	il'-læ,	il'-lă,
G.	il-lī'-us,*	il-lī'-us,	il-lī'-us,	il-lō'-rum,	il-lā'-rum,	il-lō'-rum,
D.	il'-lī,	il'-lī,	il'-lī,	il'-līs,	il'-līs,	il'-līs,
Ac.	il'-lum,	il'-lam,	il'-lŭd,	il'-lōs,	il'-lās,	il'-lă,
V.	il'-lĕ,	il'-lă,	il'-lŭd,	il'-lī,	il'-læ,	il'-lă,
Ab.	il'-lō.	il'-lā.	il'-lō.	il'-līs.	il'-līs.	il'-līs.

*See § 15, 1.

Iste is declined like *ille*.

	Singular.				Plural.	
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	hĭc,	hæc,	hŏc,	hī,	hæ,	hæc,
G.	hū′-jŭs,	hū′-jŭs,	hū′-jŭs,	hō′-rum,	hā′-rum,	hō′-rum,
D.	huic*,	huic,	huic,	hīs,	hīs,	hīs,
Ac.	hunc,	hanc,	hŏc,	hōs,	hās,	hæc,
V.	hĭc,	hæc,	hŏc,	hī,	hæ,	hæc,
Ab.	hōc.	hāc.	hōc.	hīs.	hīs.	hīs.

	Singular.				Plural.	
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ĭs,	e′-ă,	ĭd,	ī′-ī,	e′-æ,	e′-ă,
G.	ē′-jŭs,	ē′-jŭs,	ē′-jŭs,	e-ō′-rum,	e-ā′rum,	e-ō′-rum,
D.	e′-ī,	e′-ī,	e′-ī,	ī′-īs *or* e′-īs,	ī′-īs *or* e′-īs,	ī′-īs *or* e′-īs,
Ac.	e′-um,	e′-am,	ĭd,	e′-ōs,	e′-ās,	e′-ă,
V.	——					
Ab.	e′-ō.	e′-ā.	e′-ō.	ī′-īs *or* e′-īs.	ī′-īs *or* e′-īs.	ī′-īs *or* e′-īs.

REMARK 1. Instead of *ille, ollus* was anciently used; whence *olli* masc. plur. in Virgil. *Illæ* fem., for *illius* and *illi*, is found in Lucretius and Cato, as also in Cato, *hæ* for *huic* fem.; *hice* for *hi*, and *hæc* for *hæ* in Plautus and Terence. *Im* for *eum*, is found in the Twelve Tables; *eii* for *ei*, and *ibus* and *iibus* for *iis*, in Plautus; *eæ*, fem., for *ei*, and *eäbus* for *iis*, in Cato.

REM. 2. From *ecce*, lo! with *ille, iste*, and *is*, are formed, in colloquial language, nom., *ecca; eccilla, eccillud;* acc. sing., *eccum, eccam; eccillum* (by syncope *ellum*), *eccillam; eccistam;* acc. plur., *eccos, ecca.*

REM. 3. *Istic* and *illic* are compounded of *iste hic*, and *ille hic;* or, as some say, of *iste ce*, and *ille ce.* The former sometimes retains the aspirate, as *isthic.* They are more emphatic than *ille* and *iste.*

Istic is thus declined:—

	Singular.				Plural.	
	M.	*F.*	*N.*		*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	is′-tĭc,	is′-tæc,	is′-tŏc, *or* is′-tūc,	*N.*	——	is′-tæc,	——
Ac.	is′-tunc,	is′-tanc,	is′-tŏc, *or* is′-tūc,	*Ac.*	——	——	is′-tæc.
Ab.	is′-tŏc.	is′-tāc.	is′-tŏc.				

Illic is declined in the same manner.

REM. 4. *Ce*, intensive, is sometimes added to the several cases of *hic*, and rarely to some cases of the other demonstrative pronouns; as, *hujusce, huncce, hancce, hocce, hice, hæce* or *hæc, horunc, harumce, harunce,* or *harunc, hosce, hasce, hisce; illiusce, illāce, illosce, illasce, illisce; istāce, istisce; ejusce, iisce.* When *ne*, interrogative, is also annexed, *ce* becomes *ci*; as, *hæccine, hoscine, hiscine; istuccine, istaccine, istoscine; illiccine, illanccine.*

REM. 5. *Mŏdi*, the genitive of *mŏdus*, annexed to the genitive singular of demonstrative and relative pronouns, imparts to them the signification of adjectives of quality; as, *hujusmŏdi* or *hujuscemŏdi*, like *talis*, of this sort, such; *illiusmŏdi* and *istiusmŏdi*, of that sort; *cujusmŏdi*, of what sort, like *quälis; cu-*

juscemŏdi, cujusquemŏdi, cujusmodicumque, of what kind soever; *cujusdammŏdi,* of some kind. So also *istimŏdi, cuimŏdi* and *cuicuimŏdi,* instead of *istiusmŏdi, cujusmŏdi,* etc.

REM. 6. The suffix *dem* is annexed to *is,* forming *ĭdem,* "the same," which is thus declined:—

Singular.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	ĭ′-dem,	e′-ă-dem,	ĭ′-dem,
G.	e-jus′-dem,	e-jus′-dem,	e-jus′-dem,
D.	e-ī′-dem,	e-ī′-dem,	e-ī′-dem,
Ac.	e-un′-dem,	e-an′-dem,	ĭ′-dem,
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	e-ō′-dem.	e-ā′-dem.	e-ō′-dem.

Plural.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	i-ī′-dem,	e-æ′-dem,	e′-ă-dem,
G.	e-o-run′-dem,	e-a-run′-dem,	e-o-run′-dem,
D.	e-is′-dem, *or* i-is′-dem,	e-is′-dem, *or* i-is′-dem,	e-is′-dem, *or* i-is′-dem,
Ac.	e-os′-dem,	e-as′-dem,	e′-ă-dem,
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	e-is′-dem, *or* i-is′-dem.	e-is′-dem, *or* i-is′-dem.	e-is′dem, *or* i-is′-dem.

NOTE 1. In compound pronouns, *m* before *d* is changed into *n;* as, *eundem, eorundem,* etc.

NOTE 2. In Sallust *isdem,* and in Palladius *hisdem* occur for *iisdem;* and Ennius in Cicero has *eademmet* for *eădem.*

INTENSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ **135.** Intensive pronouns are such as serve to render an object emphatic.

To this class belong *ipse,* and the intensive compounds already mentioned. See §§ 133, R. 2, and 134, R. 4.

Ipse is compounded of *is* and the suffix *pse,* and is thus declined:—

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	ip′-sĕ,	ip′-să,	ip′-sum,	ip′-sī,	ip′-sæ,	ip′-să,
G.	ip-sī′-us,	ip-sī′-us,	ip-sī′-us,	ip-sō′-rum,	ip-sā′-rum,	ip-sō′-rum,
D.	ip′-sī,	ip′-sī,	ip′-sī,	ip′-sīs,	ip′-sīs,	ip′-sīs,
Ac.	ip′-sum,	ip′-sam,	ip′-sum,	ip′-sōs,	ip′-sās,	ip′-să,
V.	ip′-sĕ,	ip′-să,	ip′-sum,	ip′-sī,	ip′-sæ,	ip′-să,
Ab.	ip′-sō.	ip′-sā.	ip′-sō.	ip′-sīs.	ip′-sīs.	ip′-sīs.

REMARK 1. *Ipse* is commonly subjoined to nouns or pronouns; as, *Jupiter ipse,* *tu ipse,* Jupiter himself, etc.; and hence is sometimes called the *adjunctive* pronoun.

REM. 2. A nominative *ipsus,* occurs in early writers, and a superlative *ipsissimus,* his very self, is found in Plautus.

REM. 3. In old writers the *is* of *ipse* is declined, while *pse* remains undeclined; as, *eapse,* (nom. and abl.), *eampse,* and *eopse,* instead of *ipsa, ipsam,* and *ipso.* So also *reapse,* i. e. *re eapse,* "in fact."

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 136. Relative pronouns are such as relate to a preceding noun or pronoun.

1. They are *qui*, who, and the compounds *quicumque* and *quisquis*, whoever. The latter are called *general* relatives.

2. In a general sense, the demonstrative pronouns are often relatives; but the name is commonly appropriated to those above specified. They serve to introduce a proposition, limiting or explaining a preceding noun or pronoun, to which they relate, and which is called the *antecedent.*

Qui is thus declined :—

| | *Singular.* | | | *Plural.* | | |
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	quī,	quæ,	quŏd,	quī,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cū′-jŭs,	cū′-jŭs,	cū′-jŭs,	quō′-rum,	quā′-rum,	quō′-rum,
D.	cui,*	cui,	cui,	quī′-bŭs,	quī′-bŭs,	quī′-bŭs,
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quŏd,	quōs,	quās,	quæ,
V.	——	——	——			
Ab.	quō.	quā.	quō.	quī′-bŭs.	quī′-bŭs.	quī′-bŭs.

REMARK 1. *Quī* is sometimes used for the ablative singular, in all genders, and rarely also for the ablative plural. To the ablatives *quo, qua, qui,* and *quibus, cum* is commonly annexed, cf. § 133, 4. Cicero uses *quīcum* for *quōcum,* when an indefinite person is meant.

REM. 2. *Queis* (monosyllabic, § 9, R. 1), and *quīs* are sometimes used in the dative and ablative plural for *quibus. Cūjus* and *cui* were anciently written *quōjus* and *quoi:* and, instead of the genitive *cūjus,* a relative adjective *cūjus, a, um,* very rarely occurs.

3. *Quicumque,* (or *quicunque*), is declined like *qui.*

REM. 3. *Qui* is sometimes separated from *cumque* by the interposition of one or more words; as, *quæ me cumque vocant terræ.* Virg. A similar separation sometimes occurs in the other compounds of *cumque.*

4. *Quisquis* is thus declined :—

| | *Singular.* | | | *Plural.* |
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*
N.	quis′-quis,	quis′-quis,†	quid′-quĭd,	*N.* quī′-quī,
Ac.	quem′-quem,	——	quid′-quĭd,	*D.* qui-bus′-quĭ-bus.
Ab.	quō′-quō.	quā′-quā.	quō′-quō.	

REM. 4. *Quicquid* is sometimes used for *quidquid. Quīquī* for *quisquis* occurs in Plautus; and *quidquid* is used adjectively in Cato R. R. 48.

---

* See § 9, 5; and cf. § 306, (1.)   † Cf. § 137, R. (1.)

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 137.   Interrogative pronouns are such as serve to inquire which of a number of objects is intended.

They are

Quis?	} *who? what?*	Ecquis?		Cūjus? *whose?*	
Quisnam ?		Ecquisnam ?	} *is any one?*	Cūjas? *of what*	
Qui ?	} *which? what?*	Numquis?		*country?*	
Quīnam ?		Numquisnam,	}		

1. *Quis* is commonly used substantively; *qui*, adjectively. The interrogative *qui* is declined like *qui* the relative.

Quis is thus declined :—

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	quĭs,	quæ,	quĭd,	quī,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cū′-jŭs,	cū′-jŭs,	cū′-jŭs,	quō′-rum,	quā′-rum,	quō′-rum,
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,	quĭ′-bŭs,	quĭ′-bŭs,	quĭ′-bŭs,
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quĭd,	quōs,	quās,	quæ,
V.	———	———	———			
Ab.	quō.	quā.	quō.	quĭ′-bŭs.	quĭ′-bŭs.	quĭ′-bŭs.

REMARK (1.)   *Quis* is sometimes used by comic writers in the feminine, and even in the neuter.   *Quisnam, quisque* and *quisquam* also occur as feminine.

REM. (2.)   *Qui* is used for the ablative of *quis* in all genders, as it is for that of the relative *qui*. Cf. § 136, R. 1.

REM. (3.)   *Quis* and *qui* have sometimes the signification of the indefinite pronoun *alĭquis* (some one, any one), especially after the conjunctions *ec* (for *en*), *si, ne, neu, nĭsi, num;* and after relatives, as *quo, quanto,* etc.   Sometimes *quis* and *qui* are used in the sense of *quālis?* what sort ?

2. The compounds *quisnam* and *quīnam* have respectively the signification and declension of the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*.   In the poets *nam* sometimes stands before *quis*. Virg. G. 4, 445.

3. *Ecquis* and *numquis* are declined and used like *quis;* but are sometimes adjectives. Virg. Ecl. 10, 28: Cic. Att. 13, 8.

REM. (4.)   *Ecqua* is sometimes found in the nominative singular feminine; and the neuter plural of *numquis* is *numqua*.

REM. (5.)   *Ecqui* and *numqui* also occur, declined like the interrogative *qui,* and, like that, used adjectively.

4. *Ecquisnam* and *numquisnam* are declined like *ecquis;* but are found only in the singular;—the former in the nominative in all genders, and in the ablative masculine; the latter in the nominative masculine and accusative neuter.   In the nominative feminine and in the ablative, the former is used adjectively.

5. The interrogative *cujus* is also defective :—

	Singular.		Plural.
M.	*F.*	*N.*	*F.*
N. cū'-jŭs,	cū'-jă,	cū'-jum,	*N.* cū'-jæ,
Ac. cū'-jum,	cū'-jam,	———	*Ac.* cū'-jās.
Ab. ———	cū'-jā.	———	

6. *Cūjās* is declined like an adjective of one termination; *cūjas, cujātis.* See § 139, 4.

Note. The interrogative pronouns are used not only in direct questions but in such dependent clauses also, as contains only an indirect question; as, e. g. in the direct question, *quis est?* who is he? in the indirect, *nescio quis sit*, I know not who he is. *Qui*, in this sense, is found for *quis*; as, *qui sit apěrit*, he discloses who he is. Cf. § 265, N.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 138. Indefinite pronouns are such as denote an object in a general manner, without indicating a particular individual. They are

Alĭquis, *some one.*　Quisquam, *any one.*　Quīdam, *a certain one.*
Sĭquis, *if any.*　Quispiam, *some one.*　Quīlĭbet, ⎱ *any one you*
Nēquis, *lest any.*　Unusquisque, *each.*　Quīvis, ⎰ *please.*
Quisque, *every one.*　Aliquĭpiam, *any, some.*　Quis *and* qui, § 137, R. (3.)

Note. *Siquis* and *nequis* are commonly written separately, *si quis* and *ne quis:* so also *unus quisque.*

1. *Alĭquis* is thus declined :—

Singular.

	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	al'-ĭ-quis,	al'-ĭ-qua,	al'-ĭ-quod, *or* -quid,
G.	al-i-cū'-jus,	al-i-cū'-jus,	al-i-cū'-jus,
D.	al'-ĭ-cui,	al'-ĭ-cui,	al'-ĭ-cui,
Ac.	al'-ĭ-quem,	al'-ĭ-quam,	al'-ĭ-quod, *or* -quid,
V.	———	———	———
Ab.	al'-ĭ-quo.	al'-ĭ-quā.	al'-ĭ-quo.

Plural.

	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	al'-ĭ-qui,	al'-ĭ-quæ,	al'-ĭ-qua,
G.	al-i-quō'-rum,	al-i-quā'-rum,	al-i-quō'-rum,
D.	a-liq'-uĭ-bus,*	a-liq'-uĭ-bus,	a-liq'-uĭ-bus,
Ac.	al'-ĭ-quos,	al'-ĭ-quas,	al'-ĭ-qua,
V.	———	———	———
Ab.	a-liq'-uĭ-bus.	a-liq'-uĭ-bus.	a-liq'-uĭ-bus.

---

* Pronounced *a-lik'-wĕ-bus*. See §§ 9, 4, and 21, 3.

2. *Sīquis* and *nēquis* are declined in the same manner; but they sometimes have *quæ* in the fem. singular and neut. plural.

(*a.*) *Alĭquis*, in the nominative singular masculine, is used both as a substantive and as an adjective;—*alĭqui*, as an adjective, but is nearly obsolete. *Alĭquæ* in the fem. sing. occurs as an adjective in Lucretius, 4, 2, 64. *Sīqui*, and *nēqui*, which are properly adjectives, are used also substantively for *sīquis* and *nēquis*, and in the nominative singular masculine these two forms are equivalent. The ablatives *alĭqui* and *sīqui* also occur.

(*b.*) *Alĭquid*, *sīquid*, and *nēquid*, like *quid*, are used substantively; *alĭquod*, etc., like *quod*, are used adjectively.

3. *Quisque*, *quisquam*, and *quispiam*, are declined like *quis*.

(*a.*) In the neuter singular, however, *quisque* has *quodque*, *quidque*, or *quicque*; *quisquam* has *quidquam* or *quicquam*; and *quispiam* has *quodpiam*, *quidpiam*, or *quippiam*. The forms *quidque* or *quicque*, *quidpiam* or *quippiam* are used substantively.

(*b.*) *Quisquam* wants the feminine (except *quamquam*, Plaut. Mil. 4, 2, 68), and also the plural, and, with a few exceptions in Plautus, it is always used substantively, its place as an adjective being supplied by *ullus*. *Quispiam* is scarcely used in the plural, except in the nominative feminine, *quæpiam*.

4. *Unusquisque* is compounded of *unus* and *quisque*, which are often written separately, and both words are declined.

Thus *unusquisque*, *uniuscujusque*, *unicuique*, *unumquemque*, etc. The neuter is *unumquodque*, or *unumquidque*. It has no plural. *Unumquidquid* for *unumquidque* occurs in Plautus and Lucretius.

5. *Quīdam*, *quilĭbet*, and *quīvis*, are declined like *qui*, except that they have both *quod* and *quid* in the neuter, the former used adjectively, the latter substantively.

NOTE.   *Quīdam* has usually *n* before *d* in the accusative singular and genitive plural; as, *quendam*, *quorundam*, etc. Cf. § 134, NOTE 1.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ **139**. 1. The possessive are derived from the genitives of the substantive pronouns, and of *quis*, and designate something belonging to their primitives.

They are *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, and *cūjus*. *Meus*, *tuus*, and *suus*, are declined like *bŏnus*; but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine *mi*, and very rarely *meus*. Cf. § 105, R. 3. In late writers *mi* occurs also in the feminine and neuter.

2. *Cūjus* also is declined like *bŏnus*; but is defective. See § 137, 5. It occurs only in early Latin and in legal phraseology.

3. *Noster* and *vester* are declined like *pĭger*. See § 106.

REMARK 1. The terminations *pte* and *met* intensive are sometimes annexed to possessive pronouns, especially to the ablative singular; as, *suopte pondĕre*, by its own weight; *suapte manu*, by his own hand. So *nostrapte culpā*; *suumpte amīcum*; *meamet culpā*. The suffix *met* is usually followed by *ipse*; as, *Hannĭbal suāmet ipse fraude captus abiit.* Liv.; but Sallust has *meamet facta dicĕre.*

REM. 2. *Suus*, like its primitive *sui*, has always a reflexive signification, referring to the subject of the sentence. *Meus*, *tuus*, *noster*, and *vester*, are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person. See § 132, 4.

8*

PATRIAL PRONOUNS.

4. (a.) These are *nostras* and *cūjas*. See §§ 100, 2, and 128, 6. They are declined like adjectives of one termination; as, *nostras, nostrātis*, but both are defective.

(b.) *Nostras* is found in the nominative and genitive singular, in the nominative plural, (masc. and fem., *nostrātes*, neut. *nostratia*), and in the ablative, *(nostratībus)*. *Cūjas* or *quōjas* occurs in the nominative, genitive and accusative (*cujātem* masc.) singular, and in the nominative plural, masc. (*cujātes*). Cf. § 137, 6.—*Nostrātis* and *cujātis* (or *quojātis*) also occur in the nominative.

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

5. To the adjective pronouns may be added certain adjectives of so general a meaning, that they partake, in some degree, of the character of pronouns. Of this kind are :—

(1.) (a.) *Alius, ullus, nullus*, and *nonnullus*, which answer to the question, who ?

(b.) *Alter, neuter, alterŭter, utervis*, and *uterlĭbet*, which answer to the question, *ŭter ?* which of two ?

(2.) Adjectives denoting quality, size, or number, in a general way. These stand in relation to one another, and are hence called *correlatives*.

REMARK. The *relatives* and *interrogatives* of this class begin with *qu*, and are alike in form. The *indefinites* are formed from the relatives by prefixing *ali*. The *demonstratives* begin with *t*, and are sometimes strengthened by *dem*. A *general relative*, having a meaning more general than the relative, is formed by doubling the simple relative, or by affixing to it the termination *cumque*. A *general indefinite* is formed by annexing *libet* or *vis* to the relative.

(3.) Their mutual relation is denoted by the following table, with which may be compared the *adverbial correlatives*, § 191, R. 1.

Interrog.	Demonstr.	Relat.	Relat. general.	Indefin.	Indef. general.
quālis?	tālis,	quālis,	{ qualis-qualis, qualiscumque.	———	qualislĭbet,
quantus?	{ tantus, tantundem,	quantus,	{ quantus-quantus, quantuscumque,	aliquantus,	quantuslĭbet,
quŏt?	tŏt, totĭdem,	quŏt,	{ quot-quot, quotcumque,	alĭquot,	quotlĭbet,
quŏtus?	tŏtus,	quŏtus,	quotuscumque.	(aliquŏtus),	———.

Diminutives.

quantŭlus?	tantŭlus.	———.	quantuluscumque.	aliquantŭlum.	———.

NOTE 1. The suffix *cumque*, which is used in forming general relatives, is composed of the relative adverb *cum (quum)* and the suffix *que*, expressive of universality, as in *quisque* and in adverbs, (see § 191). *Cumque*, therefore, originally signified 'whenever.' When attached to a relative, whether a pronoun, adjective, or adverb, it renders the relative meaning more general; as, *qui*, who; *quicumque*, whoever; or, every one who.

NOTE 2. *Cujusmŏdi* is sometimes used for *qualis*, and *hujusmŏdi, istiusmŏdi, ejusmŏdi*, and *ejusdemmŏdi* for *tālis*. Cf. § 134, R. 5.

VERBS.

§ **140**. A verb is a word by which something is affirmed of a person or thing.

1. That of which any thing is affirmed is called the *subject* of the verb. (2.) That which is affirmed of the subject is called the *predicate*. Cf. § 201.

3. A verb either expresses an action or state; as, *puer legit*, the boy *reads; aqua* calet, the water *is warm;*—or it connects an attribute with a subject; as, *terra* est *rotunda*, the earth *is* round.

4. All verbs belong to the former of these classes, except *sum*, I am, the most common use of which is, to connect an attribute with a subject. When so used, it is called the *copŭla*.

§ **141**.   Verbs are either *active* or *neuter*.

NOTE. Active and neuter verbs are sometimes called *transitive* and *intransitive;* and verbs of motion are by some grammarians divided into *active-transitive* and *active-intransitive*, according as they require, or do not require, an object after them.

I. An *active* or *transitive verb* expresses such an action as requires the addition of an object to complete the sense ; as, *amo te,* I love thee ; *sequĭtur consŭlem,* he follows the consul.

II. A *neuter* or *intransitive verb* expresses such an action or state, as does not require the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *equus currit,* the horse runs ; *gradior,* I walk.

REMARK 1. Many verbs, in Latin, are considered as neuter, which are usually translated into English by active verbs. Thus *indulgeo,* I indulge, *noceo,* I hurt, *pareo,* I obey, are reckoned among neuter verbs. In strictness, such Latin verbs denote rather a state than an action, and their sense would be more exactly expressed by the verb *to be* with an adjective; as, 'I am indulgent, I am hurtful,' etc. Some verbs in Latin, which do not usually take an object after them, are yet active, since the object is omitted by ellipsis. Thus *credo* properly signifies *to intrust,* and, in this sense, takes an object; as, *credo tibi salūtem meam,* I intrust my safety to you; but by ellipsis it usually means *to believe;* as, *crede mihi,* believe me.

To verbs belong *voices, moods, tenses, numbers,* and *persons.*

VOICES.

(*a.*) Voice, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the relation of the agent to the action of the verb.

(*b.*) Most active Latin verbs have, for this purpose, two forms, which are called the *active* and *passive voices.*

1. A verb in the *active voice* represents the agent as *acting upon* some person or thing, called the *object ;* as, *puer lĕgit librum,* the boy *is reading* a book.

2. A verb in the *passive voice* represents the object as *acted upon* by the agent ; as, *liber* legĭtur *a puĕro*, a book *is read* by the boy.

REM. 2. By comparing the two preceding examples, it will be seen that they have the same meaning. The passive voice may thus be substituted at pleasure for the active, by making the object of the active the subject of the passive, and placing the subject of the active in the ablative case, with or without the preposition *a* or *ab*, according as it is a voluntary or involuntary agent. The active form is used to direct the attention especially to the agent as acting; the passive, chiefly to exhibit the object as acted upon. In the one case the object, in the other the agent, is frequently omitted, and left indefinite; as, *puer legit*, the boy is reading, scil. *librum*, *litĕras*, etc., a book, a letter, etc.; *virtus laudātur*, virtue is praised, scil. *ab hominibus*, by men.

The two voices are distinguished from each other by peculiar terminations. Cf. § 152.

§ **142.** 1. Neuter verbs have, in general, only the form of the active voice. They are, however, sometimes used impersonally in the passive voice. See § 184, 2.

2. The neuter verbs *audeo*, I dare, *fĭdo*, I trust, *gaudeo*, I rejoice, and *soleo*, I am wont, have the passive form in the perfect and its cognate tenses; as, *ausus sum*, I dared. Hence these verbs are called *neuter passives*, or *semideponents*.

3. The neuter verbs *vapŭlo*, I am beaten, and *vēneo*, I am sold, have an active form, but a passive meaning, and are hence called *neutral passives*.

4. (*a.*) *Deponent* verbs have a transitive or intransitive signification with only the passive form. They are called *deponent verbs*, from *depōno*, to lay aside, as having laid aside their active form, and their passive signification; as, *sĕquor*, I follow; *mŏrior*, I die.

(*b.*) Some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive signification, especially in the perfect participle. These are sometimes called *common verbs*. Cf. § 162, 17.

MOODS.

§ **143.** (*a.*) Moods (or modes) are forms of the verb, which denote the relation of the action or state, expressed by the verb, to the mind of the speaker or to some other action.

(*b.*) Latin verbs have four moods—the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

1. The *indicative* mood is used in independent and absolute *assertions* and *inquiries;* as, *amo*, I love ; *audisne?* dost thou hear ?

2. The *subjunctive* mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind ; as, *si me* obsēcret, *redĭbo ;* if *he entreat* me, I will return.

3. The *imperative* mood is used in commanding, exhorting, or entreating ; as, *ama*, love thou ; *amanto*, they shall love.

4. The *infinitive* mood is used to denote an action or state indefinitely, without limiting it to any person or thing as its subject; as, *virtus est vitium* fugĕre, *to shun* vice is a virtue.

TENSES.

§ **144.** Tenses are forms of the verb, denoting the *time* of the action or state expressed by the verb.

1. Time admits of a threefold division, into present, past, and future; and, in each of these times, an action may be represented either as going on, or as completed. From these two divisions arise the six tenses of a Latin verb, each of which is distinguished by its peculiar terminations.

2. They are called the *present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect,* and *future perfect* tenses.

Present ⎧ action ⎫ *amo,* I love, *or* am loving; *Present tense.*
Past ⎨ not com- ⎬ *amābam,* I was loving; *Imperfect tense.*
Future ⎩ pleted; ⎭ *amābo,* I shall love, *or* be loving; *Future tense.*
Present ⎧ action ⎫ *amāvi,* I have loved; *Perfect tense.*
Past ⎨ com- ⎬ *amavĕram,* I had loved; *Pluperfect tense.*
Future ⎩ pleted; ⎭ *amavĕro,* I shall have loved; *Future perfect tense.*

3. There is the same number of tenses in the passive voice, in which actions not completed are represented by simple forms of the verb, and those which are completed by compound forms.

Present ⎧ action ⎫ *amor,* I am loved; *Present tense.*
Past ⎨ not com- ⎬ *amābar,* I was loved; *Imperfect tense.*
Future ⎩ pleted; ⎭ *amābor,* I shall be loved; *Future tense.*
Present ⎧ action ⎫ *amātus sum,* or *fui,* I have been loved; *Perfect tense.*
Past ⎨ com- ⎬ *auātus eram,* or *fuĕram,* I had been loved; *Pluperfect.*
Future ⎩ pleted; ⎭ *amātus ero,* or *fuĕro,* I shall have been loved; *Future Perfect.*

§ **145.** I. The *present tense* represents an action as now going on, and not completed; as, *ămo,* I love, *or* am loving.

1. Any existing custom, or general truth, may be expressed by this tense; as, *apud Parthos, signum datur tympăno;* among the Parthians, the signal is given by a drum. A general truth is sometimes also expressed by the perfect.

2. The present tense may also denote an action which has existed for some time, and which still exists; as, *tot annos bella gero;* for so many years I have waged, and am still waging war.

3. The present tense is often in narration used for the perfect indefinite. It is then called the *historical present;* as, *desiliunt ex equis, provŏlant in primum;* they dismount, they fly forward to the front.

II. The *imperfect tense* represents an action as going on at some past time, but not then completed; as, *amābam,* I was loving.

1. The imperfect sometimes denotes repeated or customary past action; as, *legēbam,* I was wont to read.

2. It may also denote an action which had existed for some time, and which was still existing at a certain past time; as, *audiēbat jamdūdum verba;* he had long heard, and was still hearing the words.

3. In letters, and with reference not to the time of their being written, but to that of their being read, the imperfect is sometimes used for the present as, *expectābam*, I was expecting, (i. e. when I wrote).

4. The imperfect also sometimes denotes the *intending*, *preparing*, or *attempting* to act at a definite past time.

III. The *future tense* denotes that an action will be going on hereafter, but without reference to its completion; as, *amābo*, I shall love, *or* shall be loving.

IV. The *perfect tense* represents an action either as just completed, or as completed in some indefinite past time; as, *amāvi*, I have loved, *or* I loved.

REMARK. In the former sense, it is called the *perfect definite;* in the latter, the *perfect indefinite, historical perfect*, or *aorist.*

V. The *pluperfect tense* represents a past action as completed, at or before the time of some other past action or event; as, *littĕras* scripsĕram, *quum nuncius vēnit ; I had written* the letter, when the messenger arrived.

VI. The *future perfect tense* denotes that an action will be completed, at or before the time of some other future action or event; as, *quum cœnavĕro, proficiscar ;* when *I shall have supped,* I will go.

NOTE 1. This tense is often, but improperly, called the *future subjunctive.* It has the signification of the indicative mood, and corresponds to the *second future* in English.

NOTE 2. The imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect tenses are sometimes called *preterites* or the *preterite tenses.*

NOTE 3. The present, imperfect, and future tenses passive, in English, do not express the exact sense of those tenses in Latin, as denoting an action which is, was, or will be, going on at a certain time. Thus *laudor* signifies, not 'I am praised,' but 'I am in the act of being praised,' or, if such an expression is admissible, 'I am being praised.'

REMARK 1. The six tenses above enumerated are found only in the indicative mood.

REM. 2. The subjunctive mood, in the regular conjugation, has the present and past, but no future tenses.

NOTE 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mood have less definiteness of meaning, in regard to time, than those of the indicative. Thus the present and perfect, besides their common signs, *may* or *can*, *may have* or *can have*, must, in certain connections, be translated by *might, could, would,* or *should; might have. could have*, etc. The tenses of this mood must often, also, be translated by the corresponding tenses of the indicative. For a more particular account of the signification of each of the tenses of the subjunctive mood, see § 260.

REM. 3. The imperative mood has two tenses—a present and a future; the former for that which is to be done at once, and the latter for that which is to be done in future.

REM. 4. The infinitive mood has three tenses—the present, the perfect, and the future; the first of which denotes an incomplete, the second a completed action, and the last an action to be performed.

NUMBERS.

§ **146.** Number, in verbs, is the form by which the *unity* or *plurality* of their subject is denoted. Hence verbs, like nouns, have two numbers—the *singular* and the *plural.* Cf. § 35, 1.

PERSONS.

§ **147.** Person, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the person of their subject. Hence in each number there are three persons—the *first, second,* and *third.* Cf. § 35, 2.

1. The imperative *present* has only the second person in both numbers. The imperative *future* has in each number the second and third persons, but in the singular they have both the same form, *-to* in the active, and *-tor* in the passive voice.

2. As the signification of the infinitive mood is not limited to any subject, it admits no change to express either number or person.

3. The following are the terminations of the different persons of each number, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, in both voices:—

Person.	*Active.* 1.	2.	3.	*Passive.* 1.	2.	3.
Singular.	o, i, *or* m,	s,	t;	r,	ris,	tur;
Plural.	mus,	tis,	nt.	mur,	mǐni,	ntur.

These may be called *personal* terminations.

Remark 1. The perfect indicative active is irregular in the second person singular and plural, which end in *sti* and *stis,* and in one of the forms of the third person plural, which ends in *re.*

Rem. 2. The passive form above given belongs to the simple tenses only.

Rem. 3. The pronouns of the first and second persons, *ego, nos; tu* and *vos,* are seldom expressed in Latin as subjects of a finite verb, the several persons being sufficiently distinguished by the terminations of the verb.

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

§ **148.** 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, and partaking of its meaning, but having the form of an adjective.

(1.) Like a verb, it has different *voices* and *tenses;* like an adjective, it has *declension** and *gender;* and like both, it has two *numbers.*

(2.) Active verbs have usually *four* participles—two in the active voice, a present and a future; as, *amans,* loving; *amatūrus,* about to love;—and two in the passive voice, a perfect and a future; as, *amā-tus,* loved, *or* having been loved; *amandus,* to be loved.

---

*See §§ 105, R. 2: and 111, R.

(3.) Neuter verbs have usually only the participles of the active voice.

(4.) Deponent verbs, both active and neuter, may have the participles of both voices.

2. (a.) *Gerunds* are verbal nouns, used only in the oblique cases, and expressing the action or state of the verb; as, *amandi*, of loving, etc.

(b.) Like other abstract nouns, they are found only in the singular number, and by their cases supply the place of a declinable present infinitive active.

3. *Supines* also are verbal nouns of the fourth declension in the accusative and ablative singular; as, *amātum*, to love; *amātu*, to be loved.

REMARK. These also serve in certain connections to supply the place of the infinitive present both active and passive. The supine in *um* is called the *former* supine; that in *u*, the *latter*. The former is commonly used in an active, the latter in a passive sense.

CONJUGATION.

§ **149.** 1. The conjugation of a verb is the regular formation and arrangement of its several parts, according to their voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

2. There are four conjugations, which are characterized by the vowel before *re* in the present of the infinitive active.

> In the first conjugation, it is *ā* long;
> In the second, ... *ē* long;
> In the third, ... *ĕ* short;
> In the fourth, ... *ī* long.

EXCEPTION. *Do, dăre*, to give, and such of its compounds as are of the first conjugation, have *ă* short before *re*.

§ **150.** A verb, like a noun, consists of two parts—the *root*, and the *termination*. Cf. § 40, R. 10.

1. The *first* or *general* root of a verb consists of those letters that are found in every part. This root may always be found by removing the termination of the present infinitive.

2. There are also two special roots, the first of which is found in the perfect, and is called the *second* root; the other, found in the supine or perfect participle, is called the *third* root.

3. In regular verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second* root is formed by adding, respectively, *āv*, *u*, and *īv*, to the *general* root; and the *third* root by a similar addition of *āt*, *ĭt*, and *īt*.

REMARK. Many verbs, in each of the conjugations, form their second and third roots irregularly.

4. In the third conjugation, the second root either is the same as the first, or is formed from it by adding *s;* the third root is formed by adding *t.* See § 171.

Note. In the second and fourth conjugations, *e* and *i* before *o* are considered as belonging not to the root, but to the termination. In verbs whose second or third roots are formed irregularly, the general root often undergoes some change in the parts derived from them.

5. The vowel which unites the general root with the remaining letters of the verb, is called the *connecting* vowel. Each conjugation, except the third, is, in a great degree, distinguished by a peculiar connecting vowel, which is the same as characterizes the infinitives. See § 149, 2.

(*a.*) In the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is generally *ĕ* or *ĭ.* In the second and fourth conjugations, and in verbs in *io* of the third, a second connecting vowel is sometimes added to that which characterizes the conjugation; as, *a* in *doceant*, *u* in *capiunt*, etc.

(*b.*) In verbs whose second and third roots are formed irregularly, the connecting vowel often disappears, or is changed in the parts derived from those roots; but it is almost always found in the parts derived from the first root.

§ **151.** 1. From the *first* root are derived, in each voice, the present, imperfect, and future indicative; the present and imperfect subjunctive; the imperative, and the present infinitive. From this root are derived also the present participle, the gerund, and the future participle passive.

2. From the *second* root are derived, in the active voice, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, and the perfect infinitive.

3. (*a.*) From the *third* root are derived, in the active voice, the supine in *um*, and the future participle; the latter of which, with the verb *esse*, constitutes the future infinitive active.

(*b.*) From this root are derived, in the passive voice, the supine in *u*, and the perfect participle; from the latter of which, with the verb *sum*, are formed all the tenses which in the active are derived from the second root. The future infinitive passive is formed from the supine in *um*, and *īri*, the present infinitive passive of the verb *eo,* to go.

4. The present and perfect indicative, the supine in *um*, and the present infinitive, are called the *principal parts* of the verb, because from the first three the several roots are ascertained, and from the last, the characteristic vowel of the conjugation. In the passive voice, the principal parts are the present indicative and infinitive, and the perfect participle.

Note. As the supine in *um* is wanting in most verbs, the third root must often be determined from the perfect participle, or the future participle active.

§ **152.** The following table exhibits a connected view of the verbal terminations, in all the conjugations. By annexing these to the several roots, all the parts of a verb may be formed.

Terminations added to the First Root.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Conjug.	Sing. 1.	2.	3.	Plur. 1.	2.	3.
1.	-ŏ,	-ās,	-ăt;	-ămŭs,	-ātĭs,	-ant.
2.	-eŏ,	-ēs,	-ĕt;	-ēmŭs,	-ētĭs,	-ent.
3.	-ŏ,	-ĭs,	-ĭt;	-ĭmŭs,	-ĭtĭs,	-unt.
4.	-ĭŏ,	-īs,	-ĭt;	-īmŭs,	-ītĭs,	-iunt.

IMPERFECT.

Conjug.	Sing. 1.	2.	3.	Plur. 1.	2.	3.
1.	-ābam,	-ābās,	-ābăt;	-ābāmŭs,	-ābātĭs,	-ābant.
2.	-ēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbăt;	-ēbāmŭs,	-ēbātĭs,	-ēbant.
3.	-ēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbăt;	-ēbāmŭs,	-ēbātĭs,	-ēbant.
4.	-iēbam,	-iēbās,	-iēbăt;	-iēbāmŭs,	-iēbātĭs,	-iēbant.

FUTURE.

Conjug.	Sing. 1.	2.	3.	Plur. 1.	2.	3.
1.	-ābŏ,	-ābĭs,	-ābĭt;	-ābĭmŭs,	-ābĭtĭs,	-ābunt.
2.	-ēbŏ,	-ēbĭs,	-ēbĭt;	-ēbĭmŭs,	-ēbĭtĭs,	-ēbunt.
3.	-am,	-ēs,	-ĕt;	-ēmŭs,	-ētĭs,	-ent.
4.	-iam,	-iēs,	-iĕt;	-iēmŭs,	-iētĭs,	-ient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Conjug.	Sing. 1.	2.	3.	Plur. 1.	2.	3.
1.	-em,	-ēs,	-ĕt;	-ēmŭs,	-ētĭs,	-ent.
2.	-eam,	-eās,	-eăt;	-eāmŭs,	-eātĭs,	-eant.
3.	-am,	-ās,	-ăt;	-āmŭs,	-ātĭs,	-ant.
4.	-iam,	-iās,	-iăt;	-iāmŭs,	-iātĭs,	-iant.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Conjug.	Sing. 1.	2.	3.	Plur. 1.	2.	3.
1.	-ŏr,	-ārĭs or -ārĕ,	-ātŭr;	-āmŭr,	-amĭnĭ,	-antŭr.
2.	-eŏr,	-ērĭs or -ērĕ,	-ētŭr;	-ēmŭr,	-emĭnĭ,	-entŭr.
3.	-ŏr,	-ĕrĭs or -ĕrĕ,	-ĭtŭr;	-ĭmŭr,	-imĭnĭ,	-untŭr.
4.	-iŏr,	-īrĭs or -īrĕ,	-ītŭr;	-īmŭr,	-imĭnĭ,	-iuntŭr.

IMPERFECT.

Conjug.	Sing. 1.	2.	3.	Plur. 1.	2.	3.
1.	-ābăr,	-abārĭs or -abārĕ,	-abātŭr;	-abāmŭr,	-abamĭnĭ,	-abantŭr.
2.	-ēbăr,	-ebārĭs or -ebārĕ,	-ebātŭr;	-ebāmŭr,	-ebamĭnĭ,	-ebantŭr.
3.	-ēbăr,	-ebārĭs or -ebārĕ,	-ebātŭr;	-ebāmŭr,	-ebamĭnĭ,	-ebantŭr.
4.	-iēbăr,	-iebārĭs or -iebārĕ,	-iebātŭr;	-iebāmŭr,	-iebamĭnĭ,	-iebantŭr.

FUTURE.

Conjug.	Sing. 1.	2.	3.	Plur. 1.	2.	3.
1.	-ābŏr,	-abĕrĭs or -abĕrĕ,	-abĭtŭr;	-abĭmŭr,	-abimĭnĭ,	-abuntŭr.
2.	-ēbŏr,	-ebĕrĭs or -ebĕrĕ,	-ebĭtŭr;	-ebĭmŭr,	-ebimĭnĭ,	-ebuntŭr.
3.	-ăr,	-ērĭs or -ērĕ,	-ētŭr;	-ēmŭr,	-emĭnĭ,	-entŭr.
4.	-iăr,	-iērĭs or -iērĕ,	-iētŭr;	-iēmŭr,	-iemĭnĭ,	-ientŭr.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Conjug.	Sing. 1.	2.	3.	Plur. 1.	2.	3.
1.	-ĕr,	-ērĭs or -ērĕ,	-ētŭr;	-ēmŭr,	-ēmĭnĭ,	-entŭr.
2.	-eăr,	-eārĭs or eārĕ,	-eātŭr;	-eāmŭr,	-eāmĭnĭ,	-eantŭr.
3.	-ăr,	-ārĭs or ārĕ,	-ātŭr;	-āmŭr,	-āmĭnĭ,	-antŭr.
4.	-iăr,	-iārĭs or iārĕ,	-iātŭr;	-iāmŭr,	-iāmĭnĭ,	-iantŭr.

IMPERFECT.

Present. (Imperfect Subjunctive)

Active —
1. -ārem, -ārēs, -āret, -arēmŭs, -arētĭs, -ārent.
2. -ĕrem, -ĕrēs, -ĕret, -erēmŭs, -erētĭs, -ĕrent.
3. -ĕrem, -ĕrēs, -ĕret, -erēmŭs, -erētĭs, -ĕrent.
4. -īrem, -īrēs, -īret, -irēmŭs, -irētĭs, -īrent.

Passive —
1. -ārĕr, -arērīs or -arērĕ, -arētŭr, -arēmŭr, -aremĭnī, -arentŭr.
2. -ĕrĕr, -erērīs or -erērĕ, -erētŭr, -erēmŭr, -eremĭnī, -erentŭr.
3. -ĕrĕr, -erērīs or -erērĕ, -erētŭr, -erēmŭr, -eremĭnī, -erentŭr.
4. -īrĕr, -irērīs or -irērĕ, -irētŭr, -irēmŭr, -iremĭnī, -irentŭr.

Future.

1. -ābŏr, -ēbŏr,
2. -ētŏr, -ĕtŏr,
3. -ītŏr, -ĭtŏr,
4. -ītŏr,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present —
1. -andī,
2. -endī,
3. -endī,
4. -iendī.

GER. { 1. -andī, 2. -endī, 3. -endī, 4. -iendī.

INFIN. *Pres.* { 1. -ārī, 2. -ērī, 3. -ī, 4. -īrī.

Present — { 1. -andī, 2. -endī, 3. -endī, 4. -iendī. }
-antŏr, -entŏr, -untŏr, -iuntŏr.

PART. *Pres.* { (-abamĭnī,) (-ebamĭnī,) (-emĭnī,) (-iemĭnī,) }
PART. *Fut.* { 1. -andŭs, 2. -endŭs, 3. -endŭs, 4. -iendŭs. }

NOTE. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have two connecting vowels in all the parts in which they occur in verbs of the fourth conjugation, and these vowels are the same in both.

Terminations added to the Second and Third Roots.

The terminations of the tenses which are formed from the second and third roots, are the same in all the conjugations. Thus:—

	ACTIVE VOICE.—SECOND ROOT.	PASSIVE VOICE.—THIRD ROOT.

ACTIVE VOICE.—SECOND ROOT.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

Perf.	-ī,	-istī, -it;
Plup.	-ĕram,	-ĕrās, -ĕrat;
Fut. perf.	-ĕro,	-ĕris, -ĕrit;

Plural.

Perf.	-ĭmus,	-istĭs, -ērunt or -ēre.
Plup.	-ĕrāmŭs,	-ĕrātĭs, -ĕrant.
Fut. perf.	-ĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs, -ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perf.	-ĕrim, -ĕrīs, -ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrītĭs, -ĕrint.
Plup.	-issem, -issēs, -isset;	-issēmŭs, -issētĭs, -issent.

INFIN. *Perf.* -isse.

THIRD ROOT. INF. *Fut.* -ūrus esse. PART. *Fut.* -ūrus. F. SUP. -um.

PASSIVE VOICE.—THIRD ROOT.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

Perf.	-ŭs sum or fuī,	-ŭs ĕs or fuistī, etc.
Plup.	-ŭs ĕram or fuĕram,	-ŭs ĕrās or fuĕrās, etc.
Fut. perf.	-ŭs ĕro or fuĕro,	-ŭs ĕris or fuĕris, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perf.	-ŭs sim or fuĕrim,	-ŭs sīs or fuĕrīs, etc.
Plup.	-ŭs essem or fuissem,	-ŭs essēs or fuissēs, etc.

INFIN. *Perf.* -ŭs esse or fuisse.

PART. *Perf.* -ŭs. L. SUP. -ū.

REMARK 1. In analyzing a verb, the voice, person, and number, are ascertained by the *personal* terminations. See § 147, 3. The conjugation, mood, and tense, are, in general, determined by the letter or letters which intervene between the root of the verb and the personal terminations. Thus in *amabamus, mus* denotes that the verb is of the active voice, plural number, and first person; *ba* denotes that it is of the indicative mood, imperfect tense; and the connecting vowel *a* determines it to be that of the first conjugation. So in *amaremini, mini* denotes the passive voice, plural number, and second person; *re*, the subjunctive mood, imperfect tense; and *a*, as before, the first conjugation.

REM. 2. Sometimes, the part between the root of the verb and the personal termination, does not precisely determine the conjugation, mood, and tense, but only within certain limits. In such cases, the conjugation may be learned, by finding the present tense in the dictionary, and if two forms are alike in the same conjugation, they can only be distinguished by the sense. Thus *amēmus* and *docēmus* have the same termination; but, as *amo* is of the first, and *doceo* of the second conjugation, the former is determined to be the subjunctive, the latter the indicative, present. *Regar* may be either the future indicative, or the present subjunctive—*bibimus* either the present or the perfect indicative.

§ **153.** Sum, I am, is called an *auxiliary* verb, because it is used, in conjunction with participles, to supply the want of simple forms in other verbs. From its denoting existence, it is sometimes called the *substantive* verb.

REMARK. *Sum* is very irregular in those parts which, in other verbs, are formed from the first root. Its imperfect and future tenses, except in the third person plural of the latter, have the form of a pluperfect and future perfect. It is thus conjugated:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	*Fut. Part.*
Sum,	es'-sĕ,	fu'-ī,	fŭ'-tū'-rŭs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. sum, *I am,*	sŭ'-mŭs, *we are,*
2. ĕs, *thou art,**	es'-tĭs, *ye† are,*
3. est, *he is;*	sunt, *they are.*

Person.

Imperfect.

1. ĕ'-ram, *I was,*	ĕ-rā'-mŭs, *we were,*
2. ĕ'-rās, *thou wast,*	ĕ-rā'-tĭs, *ye were,*
3. ĕ'-răt, *he was;*	ĕ'-rant, *they were.*

Future. *shall,* or *will.*

1. ĕ'-rŏ, *I shall be,*	ĕr'-ĭ-mŭs, *we shall be,*
2. ĕ'-rĭs, *thou wilt be,*	ĕr'-ĭ-tĭs, *ye will be.*
3. ĕ'-rĭt, *he will be;*	ĕ'-runt, *they will be.*

---

* In the second person singular in English, the plural form *you* is commonly used, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, you are.

† The plural pronoun of the second person is either *ye* or *you*.

Perfect. *have been*, or *was.*

1. fu'-ī, *I have been,*   fu'-ĭ-mŭs, *we have been,*
2. fu-is'-tī, *thou hast been,*   fu-is'-tĭs, *ye have been,*
3. fu'-ĭt, *he has been ;*   fu-ē'-runt *or* rĕ, *they have been.*

Pluperfect.

1. fu'-ĕ-ram, *I had been,*   fu-e-rā'-mŭs, *we had been,*
2. fu'-ĕ-rās, *thou hadst been,*   fu-e-rā'-tĭs, *ye had been,*
3. fu'-ĕ-răt, *he had been ;*   fu'-ĕ-rant, *they had been.*

Future Perfect. *shall* or *will have.*

1. fu'-ĕ-rŏ, *I shall have been,*   fu-er'-ĭ-mŭs, *we shall have been,*
2. fu'-ĕ-rĭs, *thou wilt have been,*   fu-er'-ĭ-tĭs, *ye will have been,*
3. fu'-ĕ-rĭt, *he will have been ;*   fu'-ĕ-rint, *they will have been.*

✗   SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may,* or *can.*

1. sim, *I may be,*   sī'-mŭs, *we may be,*
2. sīs, *thou mayst be,*   sī'-tĭs, *ye may be,*
3. sĭt, *he may be ;*   sint, *they may be.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

1. es'-sem, *I would be,*   es-sē'-mŭs, *we would be,*
2. es'-sēs, *thou wouldst be,*   es-sē'-tĭs, *ye would be,*
3. es'-sĕt, *he would be ;*   es'-sent, *they would be.*

Perfect.

1. fu'-ĕ-rim, *I may have been,*   fu-ĕr'-ĭ-mus, *we may have been,*
2. fu'-ĕ-rĭs, *thou mayst have been,*   fu-ĕr'-ĭ-tĭs, *ye may have been,*
3. fu'-ĕ-rĭt, *he may have been ;*   fu'-ĕ-rint, *they may have been.*

Pluperfect. *might, could, would,* or *should have.*

1. fu-is'-sem, *I would have been,*   fu-is-sē'-mŭs, *we would have been,*
2. fu-is'-sēs, *thou wouldst have been,* fu-is-sē'-tĭs, *ye would have been,*
3. fu-is'-sĕt, *he would have been ;*   fu-is'-sent, *they would have been.*

✗ IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. 1. ĕs, *be thou,*   es'-tĕ, *be ye.*
Fut.   2. es'-tŏ, *thou shalt be,*   es-tō'-tĕ, *ye shall be,*
         ℨ. es'-tŏ, *let him be ;*   sun-tŏ, *let them be.*

✗   INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. es'-sĕ, *to be.*
Perfect. fu-is'-sĕ, *to have been.*
Future. fū-tū'-rŭs (ă, um), es'-sĕ, *or* fŏ'-rĕ, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

Future.   fŭ-tū′-rus, a, um, *about to be.*

§ **154.**   REMARK 1. A present participle *ens* seems to have been anciently in use, and is still found in the compounds *absens*, *præsens*, and *pŏtens*.

REM. 2. The perfect *fui*, and its derivative tenses, are formed from an obsolete *fuo*, whence come also the participle *futūrus*, an old subjunctive present *fuam*, *fuas*, *fuat* ; ——, ——, *fuant*, and the forms *fuvĭmus*, perf. ind., *fuvĕrint*, perf. subj., and *fuvisset*, plup. subj.

REM. 3. From *fuo* appear also to be derived the following :—

Subj. imperf. fŏ′-rem, fŏ′-rēs, fŏ′-rĕt; ——, ——, fŏ′-rent.
Inf. pres.   fŏ′-rĕ.

These forms seem to have been contracted from *fuĕrem*, etc., and *fuĕre*. *Fŏrem* is equivalent in meaning to *essem*, but the infinitive *fŏre* has, in most cases, acquired a future signification, equivalent to *futūrus esse*.

REM. 4. *Siem, sies, siet, sient*, for *sim, sis, sit, sint*, are found in ancient writers, as are also *escit* for *erit*, *escunt* for *erunt*, *ese*, *esētis*, and *esent*, for *esse*, *essētis*, and *essent*.

REM. 5. Like *sum* are conjugated its compounds, *absum, adsum, dēsum, insum, intersum, obsum, præsum, subsum*, and *supersum*.

REM. 6. PROSUM, from the old form *prōd* for *prō*, and *sum*, has *d* after *pro*, when the simple verb begins with *e ;* as,

Ind. pres.   prō′-sum, prōd′-es, prōd′-est, etc.
—— imperf. prod′-ĕ-ram, prod′-ĕ-rās, etc.

REM. 7. (*a.*) POSSUM is compounded of *pŏtis*, able, and *sum*. They are sometimes written separately, and then *pŏtis* is the same in all genders and numbers.

(*b.*) In composition, *is* is omitted in *pŏtis*, and *t*, as in other cases, coming before *s*, is changed into *s*. In the infinitive, and imperfect subjunctive, *es* of the simple verb is dropped, as is also *f* at the beginning of the second root. In every other respect *possum* is conjugated like *sum*, wherever it is found; but the imperative, and the parts derived from the third root, are wanting.

Pres. Indic.   Pres. Infin.   Perf. Indic.
Pos′-sum,   pos′-sĕ,   pŏt′-u-ĭ,   *I can,* or *I am able.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Present.	
pos′-sum, pŏ′-tĕs, pŏ′-test;	pos′-sim, pos′-sīs, pos′-sĭt;
pos′-sŭ-mŭs, pŏ-tes′-tĭs, pos′-sunt.	pos-sī′-mŭs, pos-sī′-tĭs, pos′-sint.
Imperfect.	
pŏt′-ĕ-ram, pot′-ĕ-rās, pot′-ĕ-răt;	pos′-sem, pos′-sēs, pos′-sĕt;
pŏt-e-rā′-mŭs, -ĕ-rā′-tĭs, -ĕ-rant.	pos-sē′-mŭs, -sē′-tĭs, pos′-sent.
Future.	
pŏt′-ĕ-rŏ, pŏt′-ĕ-rĭs, pŏt′-ĕ-rĭt;	
pŏ-tĕr′-ĭ-mŭs, po-tĕr′-ĭ-tĭs, pot′-ĕ-runt.	
Perfect.	
pŏt′-u-ĭ, pŏt-u-is′tĭ, pŏt′-u-ĭt;	pŏ-tu′-ĕ-rim, -ĕ-rĭs, -ĕ-rĭt;
pŏ-tu′-ĭ-mŭs, -ĭs′-tĭs, -ĕ′-runt *or* -ĕ′rĕ.	pŏt-u-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs, -ĭ-tĭs, -ĕ-rint.

Pluperfect.

pŏ-tu'-ĕ-ram, -ĕ-rās, -ĕ-răt; pŏt-u-is'-sem, -is'-sēs, -is'-sĕt;
pŏt-u-ĕ-rā'-mŭs, -ĕ-rā'-tĭs, -ĕ-rant. pŏt-u-is-sē'-mŭs, -is-sē'-tĭs, -is'-sent.

Future Perfect.

pŏ-tu'-ĕ-rŏ, pŏ-tu'-ĕ-rĭs, pŏ-tu'-ĕ-rĭt;
pŏt-u-ĕr'-ĭ-mŭs, pŏt-u-ĕr'-ĭ-tis, pŏ-tu'-ĕ-rint.

(No Imperative.)

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE.
Pres. pos'-sĕ. *Perf.* pŏt-u-is'-sĕ.	pŏ'-tens, *able.*

NOTE. The following forms are also found; *potissum* for *possum, potessunt* for *possunt, potessim* and *possiem* for *possim, possies, possiet* and *potessit* for *possis* and *possit, potessem* for *possem, potesse* for *posse,* and before a passive infinitive the passive forms *potestur* for *potest, poterātur* for *potĕrat,* and *possētur* for *posset.—Potis* and *pote* without *est* are sometimes used for *potest.*

§ **155.** FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*
A'-mŏ,	ă-mā'-rĕ,	ă-mā'-vī,	ă-mā'-tum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.   *love, do love, am loving.*

Sing. ă'-mŏ,	*I love,*
ă'-mās,	*thou lovest,*
ă'-măt,	*he loves;*
Plur. ă-mā'-mŭs,	*we love,*
ă-mā'-tĭs,	*ye love,*
ă'-mant,	*they love.*

Imperfect.   *was loving, loved, did love.*

Sing. ă-mā'-bam,	*I was loving,*
ă-mā'-bās,	*thou wast loving,*
ă-mā'-băt,	*he was loving;*
Plur. ăm-ā-bā'-mŭs,	*we were loving,*
ăm-ā-bā'-tĭs,	*ye were loving,*
ă-mā'-bant,	*they were loving.*

Future.   *shall,* or *will.*

Sing. ă-mā'-bŏ,	*I shall love,*
ă-mā'-bĭs,	*thou wilt love,*
ă-mā'-bĭt,	*he will love;*
Plur. ă-māb'-ĭ-mŭs,	*we shall love,*
ă-māb'-ĭ-tĭs,	*ye will love,*
ă-mā'-bunt,	*they will love.*

Perfect. *loved*, or *have loved*.

Sing.	ă-mā′-vĭ,	*I have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vĭs′-tĭ,	*thou hast loved,*
	ă-mā′-vĭt,	*he has loved;*
Plur.	ă-māv′-ĭ-mŭs,	*we have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vĭs′-tĭs,	*ye have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vē′-runt *or* -rĕ,	*they have loved.*

Pluperfect. *had.*

Sing.	ă-māv′-ĕ-ram,	*I had loved,*
	ă-māv′-ĕ-răs,	*thou hadst loved,*
	ă-māv′-ĕ-răt,	*he had loved;*
Plur.	ă-māv-ĕ-rā′-mŭs,	*we had loved,*
	ă-māv-ĕ-rā′-tĭs,	*ye had loved,*
	ă-māv′-ĕ-rant,	*they had loved.*

Future Perfect. *shall*, or *will have.*

Sing.	ă-māv′-ĕ-rŏ,	*I shall have loved,*
	ă-māv′-ĕ-rĭs,	*thou wilt have loved,*
	ă-māv′-ĕ-rĭt,	*he will have loved;*
Plur.	ăm-ā-vĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,	*we shall have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,	*ye will have loved,*
	ă-māv′-ĕ-rint,	*they will have loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD,

Present. *may*, or *can.*

Sing.	ă′-mem,	*I may love,*
	ă′-mēs,	*thou mayst love,*
	ă′-mĕt,	*he may love;*
Plur.	ă-mē′-mŭs,	*we may love,*
	ă-mē′-tĭs,	*ye may love,*
	ă′-ment,	*they may love.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

Sing.	ă-mā′-rem,	*I would love,*
	ă-mā′-rēs,	*thou wouldst love,*
	ă-mā′-rĕt,	*he would love;*
Plur.	ăm-ā-rē′-mŭs,	*we would love,*
	ăm-ā-rē′-tĭs,	*ye would love,*
	ă-mā′-rent,	*they would love.*

Perfect. *may*, or *can have.*

Sing.	ă-māv′-ĕ-rim,	*I may have loved,*
	ă-māv′-ĕ-rĭs,	*thou mayst have loved,*
	ă-māv′-ĕ-rĭt,	*he may have loved;*
Plur.	ăm-ā-vĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,	*we may have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,	*ye may have loved,*
	ă-māv′-ĕ-rint,	*they may have loved.*

Pluperfect. *might, could, would,* or *should have.*

Sing.	ăm-ā-vis´-sem,	*I would have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vis´-sēs,	*thou wouldst have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vis´-sĕt,	*he would have loved;*
Plur.	ăm-ā-vis-sē´-mŭs,	*we would have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vis-sē´-tĭs,	*ye would have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vis´-sent,	*they would have loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	*Sing.*	ă´-mā,	*love thou;*
	Plur.	ă-mā´-tĕ,	*love ye.*
Fut.	*Sing.*	ă-mā´-tŏ,	*thou shalt love,*
		ă-mā´-tŏ,	*he shall love;*
	Plur.	ăm-ā-tō´-tĕ,	*ye shall love,*
		ă-man´-tŏ,	*they shall love.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	ă-mā´-rĕ,	*to love.*
Perfect.	ăm-ā-vis´-sĕ,	*to have loved.*
Future.	ăm-ā-tū´-rŭs, (ă, um,) es´-sĕ,	*to be about to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	ă´-mans,	*loving.*
Future.	ăm-ā-tū´-rŭs, ă, um,	*about to love.*

GERUND.

G.	ă-man´-dī,	*of loving,*
D.	ă-man´-dŏ,	*for loving,*
Ac.	ă-man´-dum,	*loving,*
Ab.	ă-man´-dŏ,	*by loving.*

SUPINE.

Former.	ă-mā´-tum,	*to love.*

§ **156.** PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*
A´-mor,	ă-mā´-rī,	ă-mā´-tŭs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *am.*

Sing.	ă'-mŏr,	*I am loved,*
	ă-mā'-rĭs *or* -rĕ,	*thou art loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭr,	*he is loved;*
Plur.	ă-mā'-mŭr,	*we are loved,*
	ă-mām'-ĭ-nī,	*ye are loved,*
	ă-man'-tŭr,	*they are loved.*

Imperfect. *was.*

Sing.	ă-mā'-băr,	*I was loved,*
	ăm-ā-bā'-rĭs *or* -rĕ,	*thou wast loved,*
	ăm-ā-bā'-tŭr,	*he was loved;*
Plur.	ăm-ā-bā'-mŭr,	*we were loved,*
	ăm-ā-bām'-ĭ-nī,	*ye were loved,*
	ăm-ā-ban'-tŭr,	*they were loved.*

Future. *shall, or will be.*

Sing.	ă-mā'-bŏr,	*I shall be loved,*
	ă-māb'-ĕ-rĭs *or* -rĕ,	*thou wilt be loved,*
	ă-māb'-ĭ-tŭr,	*he will be loved;*
Plur.	ă-māb'-ĭ-mŭr,	*we shall be loved,*
	ăm-ā-bĭm'-ĭ-nī,	*ye will be loved,*
	ăm-ā-bun'-tŭr,	*they will be loved.*

Perfect. *have been, or was.*

Sing.	ă-mā'-tŭs sum *or* fu'-ī,	*I have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs ĕs *or* fu-ĭs'-tī,	*thou hast been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs est *or* fu'-ĭt,	*he has been loved;*
Plur.	ă-mā'-tī sŭ'-mŭs *or* fu'-ĭ-mŭs,	*we have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tī es'-tĭs *or* fu-ĭs'-tĭs,	*ye have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tī sunt, fu'ē'-runt *or* -rĕ,	*they have been loved.*

Pluperfect. *had been.*

Sing.	ă-mā'-tŭs ĕ'-ram *or* fu'-ĕ-ram,	*I had been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs ĕ'-rās *or* fu'-ĕ-rās,	*thou hadst been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs ĕ'-răt *or* fu'-ĕ-răt,	*he had been loved;*
Plur.	ă-mā-tī ĕ-rā'-mŭs *or* fu-ĕ-rā'-mŭs,	*we had been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tī ĕ-rā'-tĭs *or* fu-ĕ-rā'-tĭs,	*ye had been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tī ĕ'-rant *or* fu'-ĕ-rant,	*they had been loved.*

Future Perfect. *shall have been.*

Sing.	ă-mā'-tŭs ĕ'-rŏ *or* fu'-ĕ-rŏ,	*I shall have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs ĕ'-rĭs *ōr* fu'-ĕ-rĭs,	*thou wilt have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs ĕ'-rĭt *or* fu'-ĕ-rĭt,	*he will have been loved;*
Plur.	ă-mā'-tī ĕr-ĭ-mŭs *or* fu-ĕr'-ĭ-mŭs,	*we shall have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tī ĕr'-ĭ-tĭs *or* fu-ĕr'-ĭ-tĭs,	*ye will have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tī ĕ'-runt *or* fu'-ĕ-rĭnt,	*they will have been loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may*, or *can be.*

Sing.	ă'-mĕr,	*I may be loved,*
	ă-mē'-rĭs *or* -rĕ,	*thou mayst be loved,*
	ă-mē'-tŭr,	*he may be loved;*
Plur.	ă-mē'-mŭr,	*we may be loved,*
	ă-mēm'-ĭ-nī,	*ye may be loved,*
	ă-men'-tŭr,	*they may be loved.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would,* or *should be.*

Sing.	ă-mā'-rĕr,	*I would be loved,*
	ăm-ā-rē'-rĭs *or* -rĕ,	*thou wouldst be loved,*
	ăm-ā-rē'-tŭr,	*he would be loved;*
Plur.	ăm-ā-rē'-mŭr,	*we would be loved,*
	ăm-ā-rēm'-ĭ-nī,	*ye would be loved,*
	ăm-ā-ren'-tŭr,	*they would be loved.*

Perfect. *may have been.*

Sing.	ă-mā'-tŭs sim *or* fu'-ĕ-rim,	*I may have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs sis *or* fu'-ĕ-rĭs,	*thou mayst have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs sĭt *or* fu'-ĕ-rĭt,	*he may have been loved;*
Plur.	ă-mā'-tī sī'-mŭs *or* fu-er'-ĭ-mŭs,	*we may have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tī sī'-tĭs *or* fu-er'-ĭ-tĭs,	*ye may have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tī sint *or* fu'-ĕ-rint,	*they may have been loved.*

Pluperfect. *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

Sing.	ă-mā'-tŭs es'-sem *or* fu-is'-sem,	*I would have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs es'-sēs *or* fu-is'-sēs,	*thou wouldst have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs es'-sĕt *or* fu-is'-sĕt,	*he would have been loved;*
Plur.	ă-mā'-tī es-sē'-mŭs *or* fu-is-sē'-mŭs,	*we would have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tī es-sē'-tĭs *or* fu-is-sē'-tĭs,	*ye would have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tī es'-sent *or* fu-is'-sent,	*they would have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Sing.	ă-mā'-rĕ,	*be thou loved;*
Plur.	ă-mām'-ĭ-nī,	*be ye loved.*
Fut. Sing.	ă-mā'-tŏr,	*thou shalt be loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŏr,	*he shall be loved;*
Plur.	(ăm-ā-bĭm-ĭ-nī,	*ye shall be loved),*
	ă-man'-tŏr,	*they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	ă-mā'-rī,	*to be loved.*
Perfect.	ă-mā'-tŭs es'-sĕ *or* fu-is'-sĕ,	*to have been loved.*
Future.	ă-mā'-tum ĭ'-rī,	*to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	ă-mā′-tŭs,	*loved,* or *having been loved.*
Future.	ă-man′-dŭs,	*to be loved.*

SUPINE.

Latter. ă-mā′-tū, *to be loved.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *am*, are derived

	Active.	Passive.
Ind. pres.	amo,	amor.
—— *imperf.*	amābam,	amābar.
—— *fut.*	amābo,	amābor.
Subj. pres.	amem,	amer.
—— *imperf.*	amārem,	amārer.
Imperat. pres.	amā,	amāre.
——— *fut.*	amāto,	amātor.
Inf. pres.	amāre,	amāri.
Part. pres.	amans,	
—— *fut.*		amandus.
Gerund.	amandi.	

From the second root, *amav*, are derived

	Active.	Passive.
Ind. perf.	amāvi,	amātus sum, etc.
—— *plup.*	amavĕram,	amātus eram, etc.
—— *fut. perf.*	amavĕro,	amātus ero, etc.
Subj. perf.	amavĕrim,	amātus sim, etc.
—— *plup.*	amavissem,	amātus essem, etc.
Inf. perf.	amavisse,	amātus esse, etc.

From the third root,

Inf. fut.	amatūrus esse, amātum iri.
Part. fut.	amatūrus.
—— *perf.*	amātus.
Form. sup. amātum.	*Lat. sup.* amātu.

From the third root, *amat*, are derived

§ 157. SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.　　　PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	mŏ′-ne-ŏ̄.
Pres. Inf.	mŏ-nē′-rĕ.
Perf. Ind.	mŏn′-u-ī.
Supine.	mŏn′-ĭ-tum.

Pres. Ind.	mŏ′-ne-ŏr.
Pres. Inf.	mŏ-nē′-rī.
Perf. Part.	mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

I advise.

Sing.	mŏ′-ne-ŏ̄,
	mŏ′-nēs,
	mŏ′-nĕt ;
Plur.	mŏ-nē′-mŭs,
	mŏ-nē′-tĭs,
	mŏ′-nent.

I am advised.

Sing.	mŏ′-ne-ŏr,
	mŏ-nē′-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
	mŏ-nē′-tŭr ;
Plur.	mŏ-nē′-mŭr,
	mŏ-nēm′-ĭ-nī,
	mŏ-nen′-tŭr.

Imperfect.

I was advising.

S.	mŏ-nē′-bam,
	mŏ-nē′-bās,
	mŏ-nē′-băt ;
P.	mŏn-ē-bā′-mŭs,
	mŏn-ē-bā′-tĭs,
	mŏ-nē′-bant.

I was advised.

S.	mŏ-nē′-băr,
	mŏn-ē-bā′-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
	mŏn-ē-bā′-tŭr ;
P.	mŏn-ē-bā′-mŭr,
	mŏn-ē-bām′-ĭ-nī,
	mŏn-ē-ban′-tŭr.

ACTIVE. PASSIVE.

Future.

I shall or *will advise.*
- S. mŏ-nē′-bŏ,
  mŏ-nē′-bĭs,
  mŏ-nē′-bĭt;
- P. mŏ-nēb′-ĭ-mŭs,
  mŏ-nēb′-ĭ-tĭs,
  mŏ-nē′-bunt.

I shall or *will be advised.*
- S. mŏ-nē′-bŏr,
  mŏ-nēb′-ĕ-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
  mŏ-nēb′-ĭ-tŭr;
- P. mŏ-nēb′-ĭ-mŭr,
  mŏn-ē-bĭm′-ĭ-nī,
  mŏn-ē-bun′-tŭr.

Perfect.

I advised or *have advised.*
- S. mŏn′-u-ī,
  mŏn-u-is′-tī,
  mŏn′-u-ĭt;
- P. mŏ-nu′-ĭ-mŭs,
  mŏn-u-is′-tĭs,
  mŏn-u-ē′-runt *or* -rĕ.

I was or *have been advised.*
- S. mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs sum *or* fu′-ī,
  mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs ĕs *or* fu-is′-tī,
  mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs est *or* fu′-ĭt;
- P. mŏn′-ĭ-tī sŭ′-mŭs *or* fu′-ĭ-mŭs,
  mŏn′-ĭ-tī es′-tĭs *or* fu-is′-tĭs,
  mŏn′-ĭ-tī sunt, fu-ē′-runt *or* -rĕ.

Pluperfect.

I had advised.
- S. mŏ-nu′-ĕ-ram,
  mŏ-nu′-ĕ-rās,
  mŏ-nu′-ĕ-răt;
- P. mŏn-u-ĕ-rā′-mŭs,
  mŏn-u-ĕ-rā′-tĭs,
  mŏ-nu′-ĕ-rant.

I had been advised.
- S. mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs ĕ′-ram *or* fu′-ĕ-ram,
  mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs ĕ′-rās *or* fu′-ĕ-rās,
  mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs ĕ′-răt *or* fu′-ĕ-răt;
- P. mŏn′ĭ-tī ĕ-rā′-mŭs *or* fu-e-rā′-mŭs,
  mŏn′-ĭ-tī ĕ-rā′-tĭs *or* fu-e-rā′-tĭs,
  mŏn′-ĭ-tī ĕ′-rant *or* fu′-ĕ-rant.

Future Perfect.

I shall have advised.
- S. mŏ-nu′-ĕ-rŏ,
  mŏ-nu′-ĕ-rĭs,
  mŏ-nu′-ĕ-rĭt;
- P. mŏn-u-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,
  mŏn-u-ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,
  mŏ-nu′-ĕ-rint.

I shall have been advised.
- S. mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs ĕ′-rŏ *or* fu′-ĕ-rŏ,
  mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs ĕ′-rĭs *or* fu′-ĕ-rĭs,
  mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs ĕ′-rĭt *or* fu′-ĕ-rĭt;
- P. mŏn′-ĭ-tī ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs *or* fu-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,
  mŏn′-ĭ-tī ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs *or* fu-ĕr′-ĭ-tis,
  mŏn′-ĭ-tī ĕ′-runt *or* fu′-ĕ-rint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may or *can advise.*
- S. mŏ′-ne-am,
  mŏ′-ne-ās,
  mŏ′-ne-ăt;
- P. mŏ-ne-ā′-mŭs,
  mŏ-ne-ā′-tĭs,
  mŏ′-ne-ant.

I may or *can be advised.*
- S. mŏ′-ne-ăr,
  mŏ-ne-ā′-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
  mŏ-ne-ā′-tŭr;
- P. mŏ-ne-ā′-mŭr,
  mŏ-ne-ām′-ĭ-nī,
  mŏ-ne-an′-tŭr.

10

ACTIVE.　　　　　　　　　PASSIVE.

Imperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should advise.*

I might, could, would, or *should be advised.*

S. mŏ-nē′-rem,
   mŏ-nē′-rēs,
   mŏ-nē′-rĕt;
P. mŏn-ē-rē′-mŭs,
   mŏn-ē-rē′-tĭs,
   mŏ-nē′-rent.

S. mŏ-nē′-rĕr,
   mŏn-ē-rē′-rĭs or -rĕ,
   mŏn-ē-rē′-tŭr;
P. mŏn-ē-rē′-mŭr,
   mŏn-ē-rēm′-ĭ-nī,
   mŏn-ē-ren′-tŭr.

Perfect.

I may have advised.

I may have been advised.

S. mŏ-nu′-ĕ-rim,
   mŏ-nu′-ĕ-rĭs,
   mŏ-nu′-ĕ-rĭt;
P. mŏn-u-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,
   mŏn-u-ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,
   mŏ-nu′-ĕ-rint.

S. mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs sim or fu′-ĕ-rim,
   mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs sīs or fu′-ĕ-rĭs,
   mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs sĭt or fu′-ĕ-rĭt;
P. mŏn′-ĭ-tī sī′-mŭs or fu-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,
   mŏn′-ĭ-tī sī′-tĭs or fu-ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,
   mŏn′-ĭ-tī sint or fu′-ĕ-rint.

Pluperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should have advised.*

I might, could, would, or *should have been advised.*

S. mŏn-u-is′-sem,
   mŏn-u-is′-sēs,
   mŏn-u-is′-sĕt;
P. mŏn-u-is-sē′-mŭs,
   mŏn-u-is-sē′-tĭs,
   mŏn-u-is′-sent.

S. mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs es′-sem or fu-is′-sem,
   mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs es′-sēs or fu-is′-sēs,
   mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs es′-sĕt or fu-is′-sĕt;
P. mŏn′-ĭ-tī es-sē′-mŭs or fu-is-sē′-mŭs,
   mŏn′-ĭ-tī es-sē′-tĭs or fu-is-sē′-tĭs,
   mŏn′-ĭ-tī es′-sent or fu-is′-sent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. mŏ′-nē, *advise thou;*
      P. mŏ-nē′-tĕ, *advise ye.*
Fut. S. mŏ-nē′-tŏ, *thou shalt advise,*
      mŏ-nē′-tŏ, *he shall advise;*
   P. mŏn-ē-tō′-tĕ, *ye shall advise,*
      mŏ-nen′-tŏ, *they shall advise.*

Pres. S. mŏ-nē′-rĕ, *be thou advised;*
      P. mŏ-nēm′-ĭ-nī, *be ye advised.*
Fut. S. mŏ-nē′-tŏr, *thou shalt be advised,*
      mŏ-nē′-tŏr, *he shall be advised;*
   P. (mŏn-ē-bĭm′-ĭ-nī, *ye shall be advised,)*
      mŏ-nēn′-tŏr, *they shall be advised.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. mŏ-nē′-rĕ, *to advise.*
Perf. mŏn-u-is′-sĕ, *to have advised.*
Fut. mŏn-ĭ-tū′-rŭs es′-sĕ, *to be about to advise.*

Pres. mŏ-nē′-rī, *to be advised.*
Perf. mŏn′-ĭ-tŭs es′-sĕ or fu-is′-sĕ, *to have been advised.*
Fut. mŏn′-ĭ-tum ī′-rī, *to be about to be advised.*

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. mŏ'-nens, *advising.*	*Perf.* mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs, *advised.*
Fut. mŏn-ĭ-tū'-rŭs, *about to advise.*	*Fut.* mŏ-nen'-dŭs, *to be advised.*

GERUND.

    G.   mŏ-nen'-dī, *of advising,*
    D.   mŏ-nen'-dŏ, *etc.*
    Ac. mŏ-nen'-dum,
    Ab. mŏ-nen'-dŏ.

SUPINES.

Former. mŏn'-ĭ-tum, *to advise.* | *Latter.* mŏn'-ĭ-tū, *to be advised.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *mon*, are derived,			From the second root, *monu*, are derived,	From the third root, *monit*, are derived,
	Active.	*Passive.*	*Active.*	*Passive.*
Ind. pres.	moneo,	moneor.	*Ind. perf.* monui,	monĭtus sum, etc.
— *imperf.*	monēbam,	monēbar.	— *plup.* monuĕram,	monĭtus eram, etc.
— *fut.*	monēbo,	monēbor.	— *fut. perf.* monuĕro,	monĭtus ero, etc.
Subj. pres.	moneam,	monear.	*Subj. perf.* monuĕrim,	monĭtus sim, etc.
— *imperf.*	monērem,	monērer.	— *plup.* monuissem,	monĭtus essem, etc.
Imperat. pres.	mone,	monēre.	*Inf. perf.* monuisse,	monĭtus esse, etc.
— *fut.*	monēto,	monētor.	From the third root,	
Inf. pres.	monēre,	monēri.	*Inf. fut.* monitūrus esse,	monĭtum iri.
Part. pres.	monens,		*Part. fut.* monitūrus,	
— *fut.*		monendus.	— *perf.*	monĭtus.
Gerund.	monendi.		*Form. Sup.* monĭtum. *Lat. Sup.* monĭtu.	

§ 158.   THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. rĕ'-gŏ.	*Pres. Ind.*	rĕ'-gŏr.
Pres. Inf. rĕg'-ĕ-rĕ.	*Pres. Inf.*	rĕ'-gĭ.
Perf. Ind. rex'-ī.	*Perf. Part.*	rec'-tŭs.
Supine. rec'-tum.		

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

I rule.	*I am ruled.*
Sing. rĕ'-gŏ,	*Sing.* rĕ'-gŏr,
rĕ'-gĭs,	rĕg'-ĕ-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
rĕ'-gĭt ;	rĕg'-ĭ-tŭr ;
Plur. rĕg'-ĭ-mŭs,	*Plur.* rĕg'-ĭ-mŭr,
rĕg'-ĭ-tĭs,	rĕ-gĭm'-ĭ-nī,
rĕ'-gunt.	rĕ-gun'-tŭr.

ACTIVE.   ### PASSIVE.

Imperfect.

I was ruling.

  S. rĕ-gē′-bam,
    rĕ-gē′-bās,
    rĕ-gē′-băt;
  P. rĕg-ē-bā′-mŭs,
    rĕg-ē-bā′-tĭs,
    rĕ-gē′-bant.

I was ruled.

  S. rĕ-gē′-băr,
    rĕg-ē-bā′-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
    rĕg-ē-bā′-tŭr;
  P. rĕg-ē-bā′-mŭr,
    rĕg-ē-bām′-ĭ-nī,
    rĕg-ē-ban′-tŭr.

Future.

I shall or *will rule.*

  S. rĕ′-gam,
    rĕ′-gēs,
    rĕ′-gĕt;
  P. rĕ-gē′-mŭs,
    rĕ-gē′-tĭs,
    rĕ′-gent.

I shall or *will be ruled.*

  S. rĕ′-găr,
    rĕ-gē′-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
    rĕ-gē′-tŭr;
  P. rĕ-gē′-mŭr,
    rĕ-gēm′-ĭ-nī,
    rĕ-gen′-tŭr.

Perfect.

I ruled or *have ruled.*

  S. rex′-ī,
    rex-is′-tī,
    rex′-ĭt;
  P. rex′-ĭ-mŭs,
    rex-is′-tĭs,
    rex-ē′-runt *or* -rĕ.

I was or *have been ruled.*

  S. rec′-tŭs sum *or* fu′-ī,
    rec′-tŭs ĕs *or* fu-is′-tī,
    rec′-tŭs est *or* fu′-ĭt;
  P. rec′-tī sŭ′-mŭs *or* fu′-ĭ-mŭs,
    rec′-tī es′-tĭs *or* fu-is′-tĭs,
    rec′-tī sunt, fu-ē′-runt *or* -rĕ.

Pluperfect.

I had ruled.

  S. rex′-ĕ-ram,
    rex′-ĕ-rās,
    rex′-ĕ-răt;
  P. rex-ĕ-rā′-mŭs,
    rex-ĕ-rā′-tĭs,
    rex′-ĕ-rant.

I had been ruled.

  S. rec′-tŭs ĕ′-ram *or* fu′-ĕ-ram,
    rec′-tŭs ĕ′-rās *or* fu′-ĕ-rās,
    rec′-tŭs ĕ′-răt *or* fu′-ĕ-răt;
  P. rec′-tī ĕ-rā′-mŭs *or* fu-ĕ-rā′-mŭs,
    rec′-tī ĕ-rā′-tĭs *or* fu-ĕ-rā′-tĭs,
    rec′-tī ĕ′-rant *or* fu′-ĕ-rant.

Future Perfect.

I shall have ruled.

  S. rex′-ĕ-rŏ,
    rex′-ĕ-rĭs,
    rex′-ĕ-rĭt;
  P. rex-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,
    rex-ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,
    rex′-ĕ-rint.

I shall have been ruled.

  S. rec′-tŭs ĕ′-rŏ *or* fu′-ĕ-rŏ,
    rec′-tŭs ĕ′-rĭs *or* fu′-ĕ-rĭs,
    rec′-tŭs ĕ′-rĭt *or* fŭ′ ĕ-rĭt;
  P. rec′-tī ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs *or* fu-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,
    rec′-tī ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs *or* fu-ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,
    rec′-tī ĕ′-runt *or* fu′-ĕ-rint.

ACTIVE.　　　　　　　　　　PASSIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may or *can rule.*　　　　　　　*I may* or *can be ruled.*
S. rĕ′-gam,　　　　　　　　S. rĕ-gär,
　rĕ′-gās,　　　　　　　　　rĕ-gā′-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
　rĕ′-găt;　　　　　　　　　rĕ-gā′-tŭr;
P. rĕ-gā′-mŭs,　　　　　　P. rĕ-gā′-mŭr,
　rĕ-gā′-tĭs,　　　　　　　　rĕ-gām′-ĭ-nī,
　rĕ′-gant.　　　　　　　　　rĕ-gan′-tŭr.

Imperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should*　*I might, could, would,* or *should*
　　　　rule.　　　　　　　　　　　*be ruled.*
S. rĕg′-ĕ-rem,　　　　　　S. rĕg′-ĕ-rĕr,
　rĕg′-ĕ-rēs,　　　　　　　　rĕg-ĕ-rē′-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
　rĕg′-ĕ-rĕt;　　　　　　　　rĕg-ĕ-rē′-tŭr;
P. rĕg-ĕ-rē′-mŭs,　　　　　P. rĕg-ĕ-rē′-mŭr,
　rĕg-ĕ-rē′-tĭs,　　　　　　　rĕg-ĕ-rēm′-ĭ-nī,
　rĕg′-ĕ-rent.　　　　　　　　rĕg-ĕ-ren′-tŭr.

Perfect.

I may have ruled.　　　　　　　*I may have been ruled.*
S. rex′-ĕ-rim,　　　　　　S. rec′-tŭs sim *or* fu′-ĕ-rim,
　rex′-ĕ-rĭs,　　　　　　　　rec′-tŭs sīs *or* fu′-ĕ-rĭs,
　rex′-ĕ-rĭt;　　　　　　　　rec′-tŭs sĭt *or* fu′-ĕ-rĭt;
P. rex-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,　　　　　P. rec′-tī sī′-mŭs *or* fu-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,
　rex-ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,　　　　　　　rec′-tī sī′-tĭs *or* fu-ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,
　rex′-ĕ-rint.　　　　　　　　rec′-tī sint *or* fu′-ĕ-rint.

Pluperfect.

I might, could, would, or　　　　*I might, could, would,* or *should have*
should have ruled.　　　　　　　　*been ruled.*
S. rex-ĭs′-sem,　　　　　　S. rec′-tŭs es′-sem *or* fu-ĭs′-sem,
　rex-ĭs′-sēs,　　　　　　　　rec′-tŭs es′-sēs *or* fu-ĭs′-sēs,
　rex-ĭs′-sĕt;　　　　　　　　rec′-tŭs es′-sĕt *or* fu-ĭs′-sĕt;
P. rex-ĭs-sē′-mŭs,　　　　　P. rec′-tī es-sē′-mŭs *or* fu-ĭs-sē′-mŭs,
　rex-ĭs-sē′-tĭs,　　　　　　　rec′-tī es-sē′-tĭs *or* fu-ĭs-sē′-tĭs,
　rex-ĭs′-sent.　　　　　　　　rec′-tī es′-sent *or* fu-ĭs′-sent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. rĕ′-gĕ, *rule thou,*　　　*Pres.* S. rĕg′-ĕ-rĕ, *be thou ruled;*
　　　P. rĕg′-ĭ-tĕ, *rule ye.*　　　　　　P. rĕ-gĭm′-ĭ-nī, *be ye ruled.*
Fut. S. rĕg′-ĭ-tŏ, *thou shalt rule,*　*Fut.* S. rĕg′-ĭ-tŏr, *thou shalt be ruled,*
　　　rĕg′-ĭ-tŏ, *he shall rule;*　　　　　rĕg′-ĭ-tŏr, *he shall be ruled;*
　　P. rĕg-ĭ-tō′-tĕ, *ye shall rule,*　　P. (rĕ-gĭm′-ĭ-nī, *ye shall,* etc.)
　　　rĕ-gun′-tŏ, *they shall rule.*　　　　rĕ-gun′-tŏr, *they shall,* etc.

10*

<center>ACTIVE.　　　　　　　　PASSIVE.</center>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. rĕg′-ĕ-rĕ, *to rule.*	*Pres.* rĕ′-gī, *to be ruled.*
Perf. rex-is′-sĕ, *to have ruled.*	*Perf.* rec′-tŭs es′-sĕ *or* fu-is′-sĕ, *to have been ruled.*
Fut. rec-tū′-rŭs es′-se, *to be about to rule.*	*Fut.* rec′-tum ĭ′-rī, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. rĕ′-gens, *ruling.*	*Perf.* rec′-tŭs, *ruled.*
Fut. rec-tū′-rŭs, *about to rule.*	*Fut.* rĕ-gen′-dŭs, *to be ruled.*

GERUND.

G. rĕ-gen′-dī, *of ruling.*
D. rĕ-gen′-dŏ, *etc.*
Ac. rĕ-gen′-dum,
Ab. rĕ-gen′-dŏ.

SUPINES.

Former. rec′-tum, *to rule.* | *Latter.* rec′-tū, *to be ruled.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *reg*, are derived,		From the second root, *rex*, are derived,	From the third root, *rect.* are derived,
	Active.　*Passive.*	*Active.*	*Passive.*
Ind. pres.	rego,　regor.	*Ind. perf.* rexi,	rectus sum, etc.
—— *imperf.*	regēbam,　regēbar.	—— *plup.* rexĕram,	rectus eram, etc.
—— *fut.*	regam,　regar.	—— *fut. perf.* rexĕro,	rectus ero, etc.
Subj. pres.	regam,　regar.	*Subj. perf.* rexĕrim,	rectus sim, etc.
—— *imperf.*	regĕrem,　regĕrer.	—— *plup.* rexissem,	rectus essem, etc.
Imperat. pres.	rege,　regĕre.	*Inf. perf.* rexisse.	rectus esse, etc.
—— *fut.*	regito,　regitor.	From the third root,	
Inf. pres.	regĕre,　regi.	*Inf. fut.* rectūrus esse,	rectum iri.
Part. pres.	regens,	*Part. fut.* rectūrus.	
—— *fut.*	regendus.	—— *perf.*	rectus.
Gerund.	regendi.	*Form. Sup.* rectum.	*Lat. Sup.* rectu.

§ 159. VERBS IN *IO* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation, in tenses formed from the first root, have, as connecting vowels, *ia*, *ie*, *io*, or *iu*, wherever the same occur in the fourth conjugation; but where they have only a single connecting vowel, it is the same which characterizes other verbs of the third conjugation. They are all conjugated like *căpio*.

ACTIVE.   PASSIVE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. că'-pĭ-ŏ, *to take.* | *Pres. Ind.* că'-pĭ-ŏr, *to be taken.*
Pres. Inf. căp'-ĕ-rĕ. | *Pres. Inf.* că'-pī.
Perf. Ind. cē'-pī. | *Perf. Part.* cap'-tŭs.
Supine.   cap'-tum. |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

S. că'-pĭ-ŏ, | S. că'-pĭ-ŏr,
   că'-pĭs, | căp'-ĕ-rĭs or -rĕ,
   că'-pĭt; | căp'-ĭ-tŭr;
P. căp'-ĭ-mŭs, | P. căp'-ĭ-mŭr,
   căp'-ĭ-tĭs, | că-pĭm'-ĭ-nī,
   că'-pĭ-unt. | că-pĭ-un'-tŭr.

Imperfect.

S. că-pĭ-ē'-bam, | S. că-pĭ-ē'-băr,
   că-pĭ-ē'-bās, | că-pĭ-ē-bā'-rĭs or -rĕ,
   că-pĭ-ē'-băt; | că-pĭ-ē-bā'-tŭr;
P. că-pĭ-ē-bā'-mŭs, | P. că-pĭ-ē-bā'-mŭr,
   că-pĭ-ē-bā'-tĭs, | că-pĭ-ē-bām'-ĭ-nī,
   că-pĭ-ē'-bant. | că-pĭ-ē-ban'-tŭr.

Future.

S. că'-pĭ-am, | S. că'-pĭ-ăr,
   că'-pĭ-ēs, | că-pĭ-ē'-rĭs or -rĕ,
   că'-pĭ-ĕt; | că-pĭ-ē'-tŭr;
P. că-pĭ-ē'-mŭs, | P. că-pĭ-ē'-mŭr,
   că-pĭ-ē'-tĭs, | că-pĭ-ēm'-ĭ-nī,
   că'-pĭ-ent. | că-pĭ-en'-tŭr.

The parts formed from the second and third roots being entirely regular, only a synopsis of them is given.

Perf.   cē'-pī. | *Perf.* cap'-tŭs sum or fu'-ī.
Plup.   cēp'-ĕ-ram. | *Plup.* cap'-tŭs ĕ'-ram or fu'-ĕ-ram.
Fut. perf. cēp'-ĕ-rŏ. | *Fut. perf.* cap'-tŭs ĕ'-rŏ or fu'-ĕ-rŏ.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

S. că'-pĭ-am, | S. că'-pĭ-ăr,
   că'-pĭ-ās, | că-pĭ-ā'-rĭs or -rĕ,
   că'-pĭ-ăt; | că-pĭ-ā'-tŭr;
P. că-pĭ-ā'-mŭs, | P. că-pĭ-ā'-mŭr,
   că-pĭ-ā'-tĭs, | că-pĭ-ām'-ĭ-nī,
   că'-pĭ-ant, | că-pĭ-an'-tŭr.

ACTIVE.   PASSIVE.

Imperfect.

S. căp′-ĕ-rem,	S. căp′-ĕ-rēr,
căp′-ĕ-rēs,	căp-ĕ-rē′-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
căp′-ĕ-rĕt ;	căp-ĕ-rē′-tŭr ;
P. căp-ĕ-rē′-mŭs,	P. căp-ĕ-rē′-mŭr,
căp-ĕ-rē′-tĭs,	căp-ĕ-rēm′-ĭ-nī,
căp′-ĕ-rent.	căp-ĕ-ren′-tŭr.

Perf. cēp′-ĕ-rim.	*Perf.* cap′-tŭs sim *or* fu′-ĕ-rim.
Plup. cē-pis′-sem.	*Plup.* cap′-tŭs es′-sem *or* fu-is′-sem.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. 2. S. că′-pĕ ;	P. 2. căp′-ĭ-tĕ.	S. căp′-ĕ-rĕ ;	P. că-pĭm′-ĭ-nī.
Fut. 2. căp′-ĭ-tŏ,	căp-ĭ-tō-tĕ,	căp′-ĭ-tŏr,	(că-pĭ-ēm′-ĭ-nī,)
—— 3. căp′-ĭ-tŏ ;	că-pi-un′-tŏ.	căp′-ĭ-tŏr ;	că-pi-un′-tŏr.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. căp′-ĕ-rĕ.	*Pres.* că′-pī.
Perf. cē-pis′-sĕ.	*Perf.* cap′-tŭs es′-sĕ *or* fu-is′-sĕ.
Fut. cap-tū′-rŭs es′-sĕ.	*Fut.* cap′-tum ĭ′-rī.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. că′-pi-ens.	*Perf.* cap′-tŭs.
Fut. cap-tū′-rŭs.	*Fut.* că-pi-en′-dŭs.

GERUND.

G. că-pi-en′-dī, etc.

SUPINES.

Former. cap′-tum. | *Latter.* cap′-tū.

§ **160.** FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. au′-di-ŏ.	*Pres. Ind.* au′-di-ŏr.
Pres. Inf. au-dī′-rĕ.	*Pres. Inf.* au-dī′-rī.
Perf. Ind. au-dī′-vī.	*Perf. Part.* au-dī′-tŭs.
Supine. au-dī′-tum.	

ACTIVE.   PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

I hear.

S. au'-di-ŏ,
   au'-dīs,
   au'dĭt ;
P. au-dī'-mŭs,
   au'-dī'-tĭs,
   au'-di-unt.

I am heard.

S. au'-di-ŏr,
   au-dī'-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
   au-dī'-tŭr ;
P. au-dī'-mŭr,
   au-dīm'-ĭ-nī,
   au-di-un'-tŭr.

Imperfect.

I was hearing.

S. au-di-ē'-bam,
   au-di-ē'-bās,
   au-di-ē'-băt ;
P. au-di-ē-bā'-mŭs,
   au-di-ē-bā'-tĭs,
   au-di-ē'-bant.

I was heard.

S. au-di-ē'-băr,
   au-di-ē-bā'-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
   au-di-ē-bā'-tŭr ;
P. au-di-ē-bā'-mŭr,
   au-di-ē-bām'-ĭ-nī,
   au-di-ē-ban'-tŭr.

Future.

I shall or *will hear.*

S. au'-di-am,
   au'-di-ēs,
   au'-di-ĕt ;
P. au-di-ē'-mŭs,
   au-di-ē'-vĭt ;
   au'-di-ent.

I shall or *will be heard.*

S. au'-di-ăr,
   au-di-ē'-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
   au-di-ē'-tŭr ;
P. au-di-ē'-mŭr,
   au-di-ēm'-ĭ-nī,
   au-di-en'-tŭr.

Perfect.

I heard or *have heard.*

S. au-dī'-vī,
   au-dī-vis'-tī,
   au-dī'-vĭt ;
P. au-dīv'-ĭ-mŭs,
   au-dī-vis'-tĭs,
   au-dī-vē'-runt *or* -rĕ.

I have been or *was heard.*

S. au-dī'-tŭs sum *or* fu'-ī,
   au-dī'-tŭs ĕs *or* fu-is'-tī,
   au-dī'-tŭs est *or* fu'-ĭt;
P. au-dī'-tī sŭ'-mŭs *or* fu'-ĭ-mŭs,
   au-dī'-tī es'-tĭs *or* fu-is'-tĭs,
   au-dī'-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt *or* -rĕ.

Pluperfect.

I had heard.

S. au-dīv'-ĕ-ram,
   au-dīv'-ĕ-rās,
   au-dīv'-ĕ-răt ;
P. au-dīv-ĕ-rā'-mŭs,
   au-dīv-ĕ-rā'-tĭs,
   au-dīv'-ĕ-rant.

I had been heard.

S. au-dī'-tŭs ĕ'-ram *or* fu'-ĕ-ram,
   au-dī'-tŭs ĕ'-rās *or* fu'-ĕ-rās,
   au-dī'-tŭs ĕ'-răt *or* fu'-ĕ-răt ;
P. au-dī'-tī ĕ-rā'-mŭs *or* fu-ĕ-rā'-mŭs,
   au-dī'-tī ĕ-rā'-tĭs *or* fu-ĕ-rā'-tĭs,
   au-dī'-tī ĕ'-rant *or* fu'-ĕ-rant.

ACTIVE.   PASSIVE.

Future Perfect.

I shall have heard. | *I shall have been heard.*

S. au-dīv′-ĕ-rŏ,
   au-dīv′-ĕ-rĭs,
   au-dīv′-ĕ-rĭt;
P. au-di-vĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,
   au-di-vĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,
   au-dīv′-ĕ-rint.

S. au-dī′-tŭs ĕ′-rŏ *or* fu′-ĕ-rŏ,
   au-dī′-tŭs ĕ′-rĭs *or* fu′-ĕ-rĭs,
   au-dī′-tŭs ĕ′-rĭt *or* fu′-ĕ-rĭt;
P. au-dī′-tī ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs *or* fu-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,
   au-dī′-tī ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs *or* fu-ĕr′-ĭ-tis,
   au-dī′-tī ĕ′-runt *or* fu′-ĕ-rint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may or *can hear.* | *I may* or *can be heard.*

S. au′-di-am,
   au′-di-ās,
   au′-di-ăt;
P. au-di-ā′-mŭs,
   au-di-ā′-tĭs,
   au′-di-ant.

S. au′-di-ăr,
   au-di-ā′-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
   au-di-ā′-tŭr;
P. au-di-ā′-mŭr,
   au-di-ām′-ĭ-nī,
   au-di-an′-tŭr.

Imperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should hear.* | *I might, could, would,* or *should be heard.*

S. au-dī′-rem,
   au-dī′-rēs,
   au-dī′-rĕt;
P. au-di-rē′-mŭs,
   au-di-rē′-tĭs,
   au-dī′-rent.

S. au-dī′-rĕr,
   au-dī-rē′-rĭs *or* -rē,
   au-dī-rē′-tŭr;
P. au-dī-rē′-mŭr,
   au-dī-rēm′-ĭ-nī,
   au-dī-ren′-tŭr.

Perfect.

I may have heard. | *I may have been heard.*

S. au-dīv′-ĕ-rim,
   au-dīv′-ĕ-rĭs,
   au-dīv′-ĕ-rĭt;
P. au-di-vĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,
   au-di-vĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,
   au-dīv′-ĕ-rint.

S. au-dī′-tŭs sim *or* fu′-ĕ-rim,
   au-dī′-tŭs sīs *or* fu′-ĕ-rĭs,
   au-dī′-tŭs sīt *or* fu′-ĕ-rĭt;
P. au-dī′-tī sī′-mŭs *or* fu-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,
   au-dī′-tī sī′-tĭs *or* fu-ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,
   au-dī′-tī sint *or* fu′-ĕ-rint.

Pluperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should have heard.* | *I might, could, would,* or *should have been heard.*

S. au-dī-vis′-sem,
   au-dī-vis′-sēs,
   au-dī-vis′-sĕt;
P. au-di-vis-sē′-mŭs,
   au-di-vis-sē′-tĭs,
   au-di-vis′-sent.

S. au-dī′-tŭs es′-sem *or* fu-is′-sem,
   au-dī′-tŭs es′-sēs *or* fu-is′-sēs,
   au-dī′-tŭs es′-sĕt *or* fu-is′-sĕt;
P. au-dī′-tī es-sē′-mŭs *or* fu-is-sē′-mŭs,
   au-dī′-tī es-sē′-tĭs *or* fu-is-sē′-tĭs,
   au-dī′-tī es′-sent *or* fu-is′-sent.

ACTIVE.   PASSIVE.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. au'-dī, *hear thou ;*
  P. au-dī'-tĕ, *hear ye.*
Fut. S. au-dī-tō̆, *thou shalt hear,*
   au-dī'-tō̆, *he shall hear ;*
  P. au-dī-tō'-tĕ, *ye shall hear,*
   au-di-un'-tō̆, *they shall hear.*

Pres. S. au-dī'-rĕ, *be thou heard ;*
  P. au-dīm'-ĭ-nī, *be ye heard.*
Fut. S. au-dī'-tŏr, *thou shalt be heard,*
   au-dī'-tŏr, *he shall be heard ;*
  P. (au-di-ēm'-ĭ-nī, *ye shall be heard,*)
   au-di-un'-tŏr, *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. au-dī'-rĕ, *to hear.*
Perf. au-dī-vis'-sĕ, *to have heard.*
Fut. au-dī-tū'-rŭs es-sĕ, *to be about to hear.*

Pres. au-dī'-rī, *to be heard.*
Perf. au-dī'-tŭs es'-sĕ *or* fu--is'-sĕ, *to have been heard.*
Fut. au-dī'-tum ī'-rī, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. au'-di-ēns, *hearing.*
Fut. au-dī-tū'-rŭs, *about to hear.*

Perf. au-dī'-tŭs, *heard.*
Fut. au-di-en'-dŭs, *to be heard.*

GERUND.

  G. au-di-en'-dī, *of hearing.*
  D. au-di-en'-dō̆, *etc.*
  Ac. au-di-en'-dum,
  Ab. au-di-en'-dō̆.

SUPINES.

Former. au-dī'-tum, *to hear.* | *Latter.* au-dī'-tū, *to be heard.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

	From the first root, *aud*, are derived		From the second root, *audīv*, are derived,	From the third root, *audīt*, are derived,
	Active.	*Passive.*	*Active.*	*Passive.*
Ind. pres.	audio,	audior.	*Ind. perf.* audīvi,	audītus sum, etc.
—— *imperf.*	audiēbam,	audiēbar.	—— *plup.* audīveram,	audītus eram, etc.
—— *fut.*	audiam,	audiar.	—— *fut. perf.* audīvero,	audītus ero, etc.
Subj. pres.	audiam,	audiar.	*Subj. perf.* audīverim,	audītus sim, etc.
—— *imperf.*	audīrem,	audīrer.	—— *plup.* audivissem,	audītus essem, etc.
Imperat. pres.	audi,	audīre.	*Inf. perf.* audivisse,	audītus esse, etc.
—— *fut.*	audīto,	audītor.	From the third root,	
Inf. pres.	audīre,	audīri.	*Inf. fut.* auditūrus esse, auditum iri.	
Part. pres.	audiens,		*Part. fut.* auditūrus.	
—— *fut.*		audiendus.	—— *perf.*	audītus.
Gerund.	audiendi.		*Form. sup.* audītum.	*Lat. sup.* audītu.

DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 161. Deponent verbs are conjugated like the passive voice, and have also all the participles and participial formations of the active voice. Neuter deponent verbs, however, want the future passive participle, except that the neuter in *dum* is sometimes used impersonally. See § 184, 3.

The following is an example of an active deponent verb of the first conjugation :—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Mī′-rŏr, mī-rā′-rī, mī-rā′-tŭs, *to admire.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	mī′-rŏr, mī-rā′-rĭs, etc.	*I admire*, etc.
Imperf.	mī-rā′-băr, etc.	*I was admiring.*
Fut.	mī-rā′-bŏr,	*I shall admire.*
Perf.	mī-rā′-tŭs sum *or* fu′-ī,	*I have admired.*
Plup.	mī-rā′-tŭs ĕ′-ram *or* fu′-ĕ-ram,	*I had admired.*
Fut. Perf.	mī-rā′-tŭs ĕ′-ro *or* fu′-ĕ-ro,	*I shall have admired.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	mī′-rĕr, mī-rē′-rĭs, etc.	*I may admire*, etc.
Imperf.	mī-rā′-rĕr,	*I would admire.*
Perf.	mī-rā′-tŭs sim *or* fu′-ĕ-rim,	*I may have admired.*
Plup.	mī-rā′-tŭs es′-sem *or* fu-is′-sem,	*I would have admired.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. mī-rā′-rĕ, *admire thou ;*	*P.* mī-rām′-ĭ-nī, *admire ye.*
Fut. S. mī-rā′-tŏr, *thou shalt admire,*	*P.* (mīr-ā-bĭm′-ĭ-nī, *ye shall*, etc.)
mī-rā′-tŏr, *he shall admire ;*	mī-ran′-tŏr, *they shall*, etc.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	mī-rā′-rī,	*to admire.*
Perf.	mī-rā′-tŭs es′-sĕ *or* fu-is′-sĕ,	*to have admired.*
Fut. Act.	mīr-ā-tū′-rŭs es′-sĕ,	*to be about to admire.*
Fut. Pass.	mī-rā′-tum ī′-rī,	*to be about to be admired.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	mī′-rans,	*admiring.*
Perf.	mī-rā′-tŭs,	*having admired.*
Fut. Act.	mīr-ā-tū′-rŭs,	*about to admire.*
Fut. Pass.	mī-ran′-dŭs,	*to be admired.*

GERUND.

G. mī-ran′-dī, *of admiring*, etc.

SUPINES.

Former. mī-rā′-tum, *to admire.* | *Latter.* mī-rā′-tū, *to be admired.*

REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

14.
sum.   *Of the Tenses formed from the First Root.*

§ **162**. 1. A few words in the present subjunctive of the first and third conjugations, in the earlier writers and in the poets, end in *im, is, it,* etc. ; as, *ĕdim, ĕdis, ĕdit, edimus ; comĕdim, comĕdis, comĕdint ;* for *edam,* etc. *comĕdam,* etc.; *duim, duis, duit, duint ;* and *perduim, perduis, perduit, perduint ;* for *dem,* etc. *perdam,* etc. from old forms *duo* and *perduo,* for *do* and *perdo :* so *creduis, creduit,* and also *creduam, creduas, creduat,* for *credam,* etc. from the old form *creduo,* for *credo.* The form in *im,* etc. was retained as the regular form in *sim* and *velim,* from *sum* and *volo,* and in their compounds.

2. The imperfect indicative in the fourth conjugation, sometimes, especially in the more ancient writers, ends in *ībam* and *ībar,* for *iēbam* and *iēbar,* and the future in *ībo* and *ībor,* for *iam* and *iar ;* as, *vestībat,* Virg., *largībar,* Propert., for *vestiēbat, largiēbar ; scībo, opperībor,* for *sciam, opperiar.* *Ibam* and *ībo* were retained as the regular forms of *eo, queo,* and *nequeo.* Cf. § 182.

3. The termination *re,* in the second person singular of the passive voice, is rare in the present, but common in the other simple tenses.

4. The imperatives of *dīco, dūco, făcio,* and *fĕro,* are usually written *dīc, dūc, fac,* and *fer ;* in like manner their compounds, except those compounds of *făcio* which change *a* into *i ;* as, *effĭce, confĭce ;* but *calfăce* also is found in Cicero; and in old writers *dīce, edīce, addīce, indīce, dūce, abdūce, redūce, tradūce,* and *făce.* *Inger* for *ingĕre* is rare. *Scio* has not *sci,* but its place is supplied by *scīto,* and *scitōte* is preferred to *scīte.*

5. In the imperative future of the passive voice, but especially of deponents, early writers and their imitators sometimes used the active instead of the passive form; as, *arbitrāto, amplexāto, utīto, nitīto ;* for *arbitrātor,* etc.; and *censento, utunto, tuento,* etc. for *censentor,* etc.—In the second and third persons singular occur, also, forms in *-mĭno ;* as, *hortamĭno, veremĭno, fruimĭno ;* for *hortātor,* etc.

6. The syllable *er* was often added to the present infinitive passive by early writers and especially by the poets; as, *amarier* for *amāri, dicier* for *dīci.*

Of the Tenses formed from the Second Root.

7. (*a.*) When the second root ends in *v,* a syncopation and contraction often occur in the tenses formed from it, by omitting *v,* and sinking the first vowel of the termination in the final vowel of the root, when followed, in the fourth conjugation, by *s,* and in the other conjugations, by *s* or *r ;* as, *audissem* for *audivissem, amasti* for *amavisti, implērunt* for *implevērunt, nōram* and *nosse* for *novĕram* and *novisse.*

(*b.*) When the second root ends in *iv, v* is often omitted without contraction; as, *audiĕro* for *audivĕro ; audiisse* for *audivisse.*

(*c.*) When this root ends in *s* or *x,* especially in the third conjugation, the syllables *is, iss,* and *sis,* are sometimes omitted in the termination of tenses derived from it; as, *evasti* for *evasisti, extinxti* for *extinxisti, divisse* for *divisisse ; extinxem* for *extinxissem, surrexe* for *surrexisse ; accestis* for *accessistis, justi* for *jussisti ; dixti* for *dixisti.* So *faxem* for (*facsissem,* i. e.) *fecissem.*

(*d.*) In the perfect of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, a syncope sometimes occurs in the last syllable of the root and the following syllable of the termination, especially in the third person singular; as, *fūmāt, audĭt, cŭpĭt ;* for *fumāvit, audīvit, cupīvit.* So, also, but rarely, in the first person; as, *sepĕli, enarrāmus ;* for *sepelīvi, enarrāvimus.*

8. In the third person plural of the perfect indicative active, the form in *ĕre* is less common than that in *ērunt,* especially in prose.

9. Ancient forms of a future perfect in *so*, a perfect and plu̟, tive in *sim* and *sem*, and a perfect infinitive in *se* sometimes occui. in general, be formed by adding these terminations to the second ı passive verb; as, *recepso, emissim, ausim* from the obsolete perfect, *ausi*, froᵔ̞ations *confexim* and *promissem: divisse* and *promisse*. But when the root enᵈ.. and frequently when it ends in *s*, only *o*, *im*, *em*, and *e*, etc. are added;ᵗʰᵉ *jusso, dixis ; intellexes, percepset ; surrexe, sumse.* *V*, at the end of the root, ıᴵ̞ the first conjugation, is changed into *s ;* as, *levasso, locassim.* • *U,* at the end of the root, in the second conjugation, is changed into *es ;* as, *habesso, licessit.* Sometimes the vowel of the present is retained in these forms, though changed in the other parts derived from the second root; as, *capso, faxo (facso), faxim (facsim).*

NOTE. *Faxo* expresses determination, ʻI will,ʼ or, ʻI am resolved, to make, cause,ʼ etc. The subjunctive *faxit*, etc., expresses a solemn wish; as, *dii immortāles faxint. Ausim*, etc. express doubt or hesitation, ʻI might venture,ʼ etc. The perfect in *sim* is used also in connection with the present subjunctive; as, *quæso uti tu calamitātes prohibessis, defendas, averruncesque.* Cato.

10. In the ancient Latin a few examples occur of a future passive of similar form; as, *turbassītur, jussītur*, instead of *turbātum fuĕrit*, and *jussus fuĕrit.*—A future infinitive active in *sĕre* is also found, in the first conjugation, which is formed by adding that termination to the second root, changing, as before, *v* into *s ;* as, *expugnassĕre, impetrassĕre,* for *expugnatūrum esse,* etc.

Of the Tenses formed from the Third Root.

11. The supine in *um*, though called one of the principal parts of the verb, belongs in fact to very few verbs, the whole number which have this supine not amounting to three hundred. The part called in dictionaries the supine in *um* must therefore, in most cases, be considered as the neuter gender of the perfect participle.

12. In the compound tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, the participle is always in the nominative case, but it is used in both numbers, and in all genders, to correspond with the number and gender of the subject of the verb; as, *amātus, -a, -um, est ; amāti, -æ, -a, sunt,* etc.

(1.) *Fui, fuĕram, fuĕrim, fuissem,* and *fuisse,* are seldom used in the compound tenses of deponent verbs, and not so often as *sum,* etc., in those of other verbs, but when used they have generally the same sense. It is to be remarked, however, that *fui* with the perfect participle usually denotes that which has been, but which no longer exists. In the pluperfect subjunctive, *fŏrem,* etc., for *essem,* etc., are sometimes found.

(2.) But as the perfect participle may be used in the sense of an adjective, expressing a permanent state, (see § 162, 22), if then connected with the tenses of *sum* its meaning is different from that of the participle in the same connection; *epistŏla scripta est,* when *scripta* is a participle, signifies, the letter *has been* written, but if *scripta* is an adjective, the meaning of the expression is, the letter *is* written, and *epistŏla scripta fuit,* in this case, would signify, the letter *has been* written, or, *has existed* as a written one, implying that it no longer exists.

13. The participles in the perfect and future infinitive, are used only in the nominative and accusative, but in all genders and in both numbers; as, *amātus, -a, -um, esse* or *fuisse ; amātum, -am, -um, esse* or *fuisse ; amāti, -æ, -a, esse* or *fuisse ; amātos, -as, -a, esse* or *fuisse ;* and so of the others. With the infinitive *fuisse, amātus,* etc. are generally to be considered as participial adjectives.

(1.) These participles in combination with *esse* are sometimes used as indeclinable; as, *cohortes ad me* missum *facias.* Cic. *Ad me, mea Terentia, scribis,* te *vicum* venditurum. Id.

Periphrastic Conjugations.

14. The participle in *rus*, joined to the tenses of the verb *sum*, denotes either *intention*, or *being upon the point* of doing something. This form of the verb is called the *active periphrastic conjugation.*

REMARK 1. As the performance of the act depends either on the will of the subject, on that of others, or upon circumstances, we may say, in English, in the first case, 'I intend,' and in the others, 'I am to,' or 'I am about to' (be or do any thing).

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	amatūrus sum,	*I am about to love.*
Imperf.	amatūrus eram,	*I was about to love.*
Fut.	amatūrus ero,	*I shall be about to love.*
Perf.	amatūrus fui,	*I was or have been about to love.*
Plup.	amatūrus fuĕram,	*I had been about to love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	amatūrus sim,	*I may be about to love.*
Imperf.	amatūrus essem,	*I would be about to love.*
Perf.	amatūrus fuĕrim,	*I may have been about to love.*
Plup.	amatūrus fuissem,	*I would have been about to love.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	amatūrus esse,	*to be about to love.*
Perf.	amatūrus fuisse,	*to have been about to love.*

REM. 2. *Fuĕro* is scarcely used in connection with the participle in *rus.*

REM. 3. *Amatūrus sim* and *amatūrus essem* serve also as subjunctives to the future *amābo.* The infinitive *amatūrus fuisse* answers to the English, 'I should have loved,' so that in hypothetical sentences it supplies the place of an infinitive of the pluperfect subjunctive.

REM. 4. In the passive, the fact that an act is about to be performed is expressed by a longer circumlocution; as, *in eo est,* or *futūrum est, ut epistŏla scribātur,* a letter is about to be written. So *in eo erat,* etc., through all the tenses.

15. The participle in *dus*, with the verb *sum*, expresses *necessity* or *propriety;* as, *amandus sum,* I must be loved, *or* deserve to be loved. With the various moods and tenses of *sum*, it forms a *passive* periphrastic conjugation ;—thus :

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	amandus sum,
Imperf.	amandus ĕram,
Fut.	amandus ĕro,
Perf.	amandus fui,
Plup.	amandus fuĕram,
Fut. Perf.	amandus fuĕro.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	amandus sim,
Imperf.	amandus essem,
Perf.	amandus fuĕrim,
Plup.	amandus fuissem.

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	amandus esse,
Perf.	amandus fuisse.

REM. 5. The neuter of the participle in *dus* with *est* and the dative of a person, expresses the necessity of performing the action on the part of that person; as, *mihi scribendum est*, I must write, etc., and so through all the tenses.

Participles.

16. The following perfect participles of neuter verbs, like those of active deponents, are translated by active participles:—*cœnātus*, having supped; *pōtus*, having drunk; *pransus*, having dined; and sometimes *jurātus*, having sworn. So also *adultus, coalĭtus, conspirātus, interĭtus, occāsus, obsolētus*, and *crētus*.

For the active meaning of *ōsus* and its compounds, see § 183, 1.

17. (*a.*) The perfect participles of some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive sense; as, *adeptus lībertātem*, having obtained liberty, *or adeptâ lībertāte*, liberty having been obtained. Cf. § 142, 4, (*b.*)

So *abominātus, comitātus, commentātus, complexus, confessus, contestātus, detestātus, dignātus, dimensus, effātus, emensus, ementītus, emerĭtus, expertus, exsecrātus, interpretātus, largītus, machinātus, meditātus, mercātus, metātus, oblītus, opinātus, orsus, pactus, partītus, perfunctus, periclitātus, pollicĭtus, populātus, depopulātus, stipŭlātus, testātus, ultus, venerātus.*

(*b.*) The participle in *dus*, of deponent verbs, is commonly passive.

18. The perfect participles of neuter passive verbs have the signification of the active voice; as, *gavīsus*, having rejoiced. But *ausus* is used both in an active and a passive sense.

19. The genitive plural of participles in *rus* is seldom used, except that of *futūrus*. *Venturōrum* is found in Ovid, *exiturārum, transiturārum* and *periturōrum* in Seneca, and *moriturōrum* in Augustine.

20. In the third and fourth conjugations, the gerund and future passive participle (including deponents) sometimes end in *undum* and *undus*, instead of *endum* and *endus*, especially when *i* precedes; as, *faciundum, audiundum, scribundus. Potior* has usually *potiundus.*

21. Many present and perfect participles are compounded with *in*, signifying *not*, whose verbs do not admit of such composition; they thus become adjectives; as, *insciens*, ignorant; *imparātus*, unprepared.

22. Participles, when they do not express distinctions of time, become adjectives, and as such are compared; as, *amans*, loving; *amantior, amantissimus.* They sometimes also become substantives; as, *præfectus*, a commander; *ausum*, an attempt; *commissum*, an offence.

NOTE. Many words derived from substantives, with the terminations of participles, *ātus, ĭtus*, and *ūtus*, are yet adjectives; as, *alātus*, winged; *turrītus*, turreted, etc. See § 128, 7.

GENERAL RULES OF CONJUGATION.

§ **163.** 1. Verbs which have *a* in the first root have it also in the third, even when it is changed in the second; as, *făcio, factum; hăbeo, habĭtum.*

2. The connecting vowel is often omitted in the second root, and in such cases, if *v* follows, it is changed into *u*.   This happens in most verbs of the second conjugation.

REMARK. Some verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations prefix to the second root their initial consonant with the vowel which follows it, or with *ĕ;* as, *curro, cŭcurri; fallo, fĕfelli.* This prefix is called a *reduplication.*

NOTE 1. *Spondeo* and *sto* lose *s* in the second syllable, making *spŏpondi* and *stĕti.* For the verbs that take a reduplication, see §§ 165, R. 2; 168, N. 2; 171, EXC. 1,(*b.*)

3. Verbs which want the second root commonly want the third root also.

4. Compound verbs form their second and third roots like the simple verbs of which they are compounded; as, *audio, audīvi, audītum; exaudio, exaudīvi, exaudītum.*

NOTE 2. Some compound verbs, however, are defective, whose simples are complete, and some are complete, whose simples are defective.

EXC. 1. Compound verbs omit the reduplication; but the compounds of *do, sto, disco, posco,* and some of those of *curro,* retain it.

EXC. 2. Verbs which, in composition, change *a* into *e* in the first root, (see § 189, 1,) retain *e* in the second and third roots of the compound; as, *scando, scandi, scansum; descendo, descendi, descensum.*

EXC. 3. (*a.*) When *a, æ,* or *e,* in the first root of the simple verb, is changed in the compound into *i,* (see § 189, 2,) the same is retained in the second and third roots, in case the third root of the simple verb is a dissyllable; as, *hăbeo, hăbui, hăbĭtum; prohĭbeo, prohĭbui, prohĭbĭtum.*

(*b.*) But if the third root is a monosyllable, the second root of the compound has usually the same vowel as that of the simple, but sometimes changes *a* or *e* into *i,* and the third root has *e;* as, *făcio, fēci, factum; confĭcio, confēci, confectum; tĕneo, tĕnui, tentum; retĭneo, retĭnui, retentum; răpio, răpui, raptum; abrĭpio, abrĭpui, abreptum.*

NOTE 3. The compounds of *cădo, ăgo, frango, pango,* and *tango,* retain *a* in the third root.   See § 172.

EXC. 4. The compounds of *părio,* (*ĕre*), and some of the compounds of *do* and *cŭbo,* are of different conjugations from their simple verbs. See *do, cŭbo* and *părio* in §§ 165 and 172.

A few other exceptions will be noticed in the following lists.

FORMATION OF SECOND AND THIRD ROOTS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ **164.** In regular verbs of this conjugation, the second root ends in *āv,* and the third in *āt;* as, amo, amāvi, amātum.

The following list contains such regular verbs of this conjugation as are of most frequent occurrence.

11*

NOTE. In this and subsequent lists, those verbs which are marked * are said to have no perfect participle; those marked † to have no second root. A dash(—) after the present, denotes that there is no second root. The participles in *rus* and *dus*, and the supines in *um* and *u* which are in use, are indicated respectively by the letters *r.*, *d.*, *m.*, and *u*. *Abundo*, for example, has no perfect participle, no supine, no participle in *dus*; but it has a present participle, and a participle in *rus*.

In the lists of irregular verbs, those compounds only are given, whose conjugation differs from that of their simples.

When *p.* is subjoined to a deponent verb, it denotes that some of the parts which have commonly an active meaning, are used either actively and passively, or passively alone. Such verbs are by some grammarians called *common*. Cf. § 142, 4, (*b*.)

*Abundo, r. *to overflow.*
Accūso, m. r. d. *to accuse.*
†Adumbro, d. *to delineate.*
Ædĭfĭco, r. d. *to build.*
Æquo, r. d. *to level.*
Æstĭmo, r. d. *to value.*
*Ambŭlo, m. d. *to walk.*
Amo, r. d. *to love.*
†Amplio, d. *to enlarge.*
Appello, d. *to call.*
Apto, d. *to fit.*
Aro, r. d. *to plough.*
*†Ausculto, *to listen.*
*†Autŭmo, *to assert.*
†Bāsio, —, d. *to kiss.*
*Bello, m. r. d. *to wage war.*
†Beo, *to bless.*
*Boo, *to bellow.*
†Brĕvio, r. d. *to shorten.*
†Cæco, *to blind.*
†Cælo, *to carve.*
†Calceo, d. *to shoe.*
*†Calcĭtro, *to kick.*
Canto, m. *to sing.*
Capto, m. r. d. *to seize.*
†Castĭgo, m. d. *to chastise.*
Celĕbro, d. *to celebrate.*
Cēlo, d. *to conceal.*
Cesso, d. *to cease.*
Certo, r. d. *to strive.*
Clāmo, *to shout.*
Cogĭto, d. *to think.*
Concĭlio, r. d. *to conciliate.*
Consĭdĕro, r. d. *to consider.*
Crĕmo, d. *to burn.*—concrĕmo, r.
†Creo, r. d. *to create.*
Crŭcio, d. *to torment.*
Culpo, d. *to blame.*
†Cŭneo, d. *to wedge in.*
Cūro, r. d. *to care for.*
Damno, m. r. d. *to condemn.*
Decōro, d. *to adorn.*
*†Delĭneo, *to delineate.*
Desĭdĕro, r. d. *to desire.*

Destĭno, d. *to design.*
Dīco, m. r. d. *to dedicate.*
Dicto, d. *to dictate.*
†Dŏlo, *to hew.*
Dōno, r. d. *to bestow.*
Duplĭco, r. d. *to double.*
Dūro, r. *to harden.*
†Effĭgio, *to portray.*
†Enucleo, d. *to explain.*
Equĭto, d. *to ride.*
Erro, d. *to wander.*
Existĭmo, u. r. d. *to think.*
Explōro, m. d. *to search.*
Exsŭlo, m. r. *to be banished.*
Fabrĭco, d. *to frame.*
†Fatĭgo, r. d. *to weary.*
Festĭno, r. *to hasten.*
Firmo, r. d. *to strengthen.*
Flagĭto, m. d. *to demand.*
*Flagro, r. *to be on fire.*—conflagro, r.—deflagro.
Flo, d. *to blow.*
Formo, r. d. *to form.*
Fŏro, d. *to bore.*
†Fraudo, d. *to defraud.*
†Frēno, d. *to bridle.*
†Frio, —, *to crumble.*
Fŭgo, r. d. *to put to flight.*
†Fundo, r. *to found.*
†Fŭrio, —, *to madden.*
†Gălĕo, —, *to put on a helmet.*
Gesto, d. *to bear.*
Glăcio, —, *to congeal.*
Grăvo, d. *to weigh down.*
Gusto, d. *to taste.*
*Hālo, —, *to breathe.*
Hiĕmo, m. *to winter.*
*Hio, d. *to gape.*
†Hŭmo, r. d. *to bury.*
Ignōro, r. d. *to be ignorant of.*
Impĕro, r. d. *to command.*
†Impetro, r. d. *to obtain.*
Inchoo, r. *to begin.*
Indāgo, r. d. *to trace out.*

Indĭco, m. r. d. *to show.*
†Inēbrio,—, *to inebriate.*
Initio, m. d. *to initiate.*
Inquino, *to pollute.*
Instauro, d. *to renew.*
Intro, r. d. *to enter.*
Invīto, d. *to invite.*
Irrīto, r. d. *to irritate.*
Itĕro, u. d. *to do again.*
Jacto, r. d. *to throw.*
Judĭco, r. d. *to judge.*
Jŭgo, d. *to couple.*
Jŭgŭlo, m. d. *to butcher.*
Jūro, d. *to swear.*
Labōro, r. d. *to labor.*
Lacĕro, d. *to tear.*
*Lacto, d. *to suckle.*
†Lănio, d. *to tear in pieces.*
Lātro, r. *to bark.*
Laudo, r. d. *to praise.*
Laxo, d. *to loose.*
†Lēgo, d. *to depute.*
Lĕvo, r. d. *to lighten.*
Lībĕro, r. d. *to free.*
Lībo, d. *to pour out.*
Lĭgo, d. *to bind.*
†Lĭquo, d. *to melt.*
Līto, *to appease.*
Lŏco, r. d. *to place.*
Lustro, d. *to survey.*
Luxŭrio, *to be luxuriant.*
Macto, d. *to sacrifice.*
Macŭlo, *to spot, stain.*
Mando, r. d. *to command.*
Mandūco, d. *to chew.*
*Māno, d. *to flow.*
Matūro, d. *to ripen.*
Memŏro, u. d. *to tell.*
*Meo, *to go.*
*Migro, u. r. d. *to depart.*
*Milĭto, m. r. *to serve as a soldier.*
†Mĭnio, d. *to paint red.*
Ministro, d. *to serve.*
Mitĭgo, d. *to pacify.*
Monstro, r. *to show.*—†demonstro, d.
Mūto, r. d. *to change.*

Narro, r. d. *to tell.*
Năto, m. r. *to swim.*
*Nauseo, *to be sea-sick.*
†Navīgo, r. d. *to sail.*
Nāvo, r. d. *to perform.*
Nĕgo, m. r. d. *to deny.*
*No, *to swim.*
Nomĭno, r. d. *to name.*
Nŏto, d. *to mark.*
Nŏvo, r. d. *to renew.*
Nūdo, d. *to make bare.*
Nuncŭpo, r. d. *to name.*
Nuntio, m. r. *to tell.*—
    renuntio, d.
*Nūto, r. *to nod.*
Obsecro, m. r. d. *to be-seech.*
Obtrunco, r. *to kill.*
Onĕro, r. d. *to load.*
Opto, d. *to wish.*
†Orbo, r. *to bereave.*
Orno, r. d. *to adorn.*
Oro, m. r. d. *to beg.*
Pāco, d. *to subdue.*
Păro, r. d. *to prepare.*
    compăro, d. *to compare.*
Patro, r. d. *to perform.*
*Pecco, r. d. *to sin.*
†Pio, d. *to propitiate.*
Plāco, r. d. *to appease.*
Plŏro, m. d. *to bewail.*
Porto, u. r. d. *to carry.*
Postŭlo, m. r. d. *to de-mand.*
Prīvo, d. *to deprive.*
Prŏbo, m. u. r. d. *to ap-prove.*—comprŏbo, m.
Profligo, d. *to rout.*
Propĕro, d. *to hasten.*
*†Propīno, *to drink to.*
Propitio, d. *to appease.*
Pugno, r. d. *to fight.*
Pulso, d. *to beat.*
Purgo, u. r. d. *to cleanse.*

Pŭto, d. *to reckon.*
Quasso, d. *to shake.*
Rădio, *to emit rays.*
Rapto, d. *to drag away.*
Recupĕro, m. r. d. *to re-cover.*
Recūso, r. d. *to refuse.*
Redundo, *to overflow.*
Regno, r. d. *to rule.*
†Repŭdio, r. d. *to reject.*
Resĕro, d. *to unlock.*
*†Retālio, —, *to retaliate.*
Rīgo, *to water.*
Rŏgo, m. r. d. *to ask.*
Rŏto, *to whirl around.*
Sacrifico, m. *to sacrifice.*
Sacro, d. *to consecrate.*
†Sagīno, d. *to fatten.*
Salto, r. *to dance.*
Salūto, m. r. d. *to salute.*
Sāno, r. d. *to heal.*
Sătio, d. *to satiate.*
†Satŭro, *to fill.*
Saucio, d. *to wound.*
*Secundo, *to prosper.*
Sēdo, m. d. *to allay.*
Servo, r. d. *to keep.*
*†Sibĭlo, *to hiss.*
Sicco, d. *to dry.*
Signo, r. d. *to mark out.*—
    assigno, m.
Simŭlo, r. d. *to pretend.*
Sŏcio, d. *to associate.*
*Somnio, *to dream.*
Specto, m. r. d. *to behold.*
Spēro, r. d. *to hope.*
*Spīro, *to breathe.*—con-spīro. — exspīro, r. —
    suspīro, d.
Spŏlio, m. d. *to rob.*
Spūmo, to *foam.*
Stillo, d. *to drop.*
Stimŭlo, *to goad.*
Stīpo, *to stuff.*

Sūdo, *to sweat.*
Suffŏco, *to strangle.*
Sugillo, d. *to taunt.*
Supĕro, r. d. *to overcome.*
Suppedito, *to afford.*
*Supplĭco, m. *to suppli-cate.*
*Susurro, *to whisper.*
Tardo, *to delay.*
Taxo, d. *to rate.*
Temĕro, d. *to defile.*
Tempĕro, r. d. *to temper.*
    —obtempĕro, r. *to obey.*
Tento, m. r. d. *to try.*
Terebro, *to bore.*
Termĭno, r. d. *to limit.*
Titŭbo, *to stagger.*
Tolĕro, u. r. d. *to bear.*
Tracto, u. d. *to handle.*
*†Tripŭdio, *to dance.*
Triumpho, r. *to triumph.*
Trucīdo, r. d. *to kill.*
Turbo, d. *to disturb.*
*Văco, r. d. *to be at leisure.*
*Vapŭlo, m. d. *to be beat-en.* Cf. § 142, 3.
Vărio, *to diversify.*
Vasto, d. *to lay waste.*
Vellĭco, *to pluck.*
Verbĕro, r. d. *to beat.*
*Vestīgo, *to search for.*
Vexo, d. *to tease.*
Vibro, d. *to brandish.*
Vigĭlo, *to watch.*
Viŏlo, m. r. d. *to violate.*
Vĭtio, d. *to vitiate.*
Vīto, u. d. *to shun.*
Ulŭlo, *to howl.*
Umbro, r. *to shade.*
Vŏco, r. d. *to call.*
*Vŏlo, r. d. *to fly.*
Vŏro, r. d. *to devour.*
Vulgo, r. d. *to publish.*
Vulnĕro, d. *to wound.*

§ **165.** The following verbs of the first conjugation are either irregular or defective.

*Crĕpo, crepui, *to make a noise.* *dis-crĕpo, -ui, *or* -āvi. incrĕpo, -ui *or* -āvi, -ĭtum *or* -ātum. *†percrĕpo, —.
*†recrĕpo, —.
*Cŭbo, cubui, *(perf. subj.* cubāris *; inf.* cubasse), cubĭtum *(sup.*), *to recline.* incŭbo, -ui *or* āvi, d. *Those com-pounds of* cubo *which take* m *before* b, *are of the third conjugation.*
Do, dĕdi, dātum, m. r. d. *to give.*—
So circumdo, pessumdo, satisdo, *and*

venumdo; *the other compounds of* do *are of the third conjugation. See* § 163, Exc. 1.
Dŏmo, domui, domĭtum, r. d. *to tame.*
Frīco, fricui, frictum *or* fricātum, d. *to rub.*   confrīco, —, -ātum. *So* infrī-co. defrīco, —, -ātum *or* -ctum.
Jŭvo, jūvi, jūtum, r. d., *also* juvatū-rus, *to help.* adjŭvo, -jūvi, -jūtum, m. r. d. *also* adjuvatūrus.
*Lăbo, labasse,, *to totter*

Lăvo, lāvi, *rar.* lăvāvi, lavātum, lautum
　or lōtum; *(sup.)* lautum *or* lavātum,
　lavātūrus, d. *to wash.* Lăvo *is also
　sometimes of the third conjugation.*
*Mĭco, micui, d. *to glitter.* dimĭco,
　-āvi *or* -ui, -atūrus. *emĭco, -uĭ,
　-atūrus. *intermĭco, —. *promĭ-
　co, —, d.
Nĕco, necāvi *or* necui, necātum, r. d.
　to kill. enĕco, -āvi *or* -ui, -ātum, *or*
　-ctum, d. †internĕco, —, -ātum.
*†Nexo, —, *to tie.*
Plĭco, —, plicātum, *to fold.* duplĭco,
　-āvi, -ātum, r. d.　multiplĭco *and* re-
　plĭco *have* -āvi, -ātum. *supplĭco,
　-āvi, m. r. applĭco, -āvi *or* -ui,
　-ātum *or* -ĭtum, -itūrus. *So* implĭco.
　—complĭco, -ui, -ĭtum *or* ātum.
　explĭco, -āvi *or* -ui, -ātum *or* -ĭtum,
　-atūrus *or* -itūrus.
Pōto, potāvi, potātum *or* pōtum, r. r.
　m. m. d. *to drink.* †epōto, -āvi, -um.
　—*perpōto, -āvi.
Sĕco, secui, sectum, secatūrus, d. *to

cut.—*circumsĕco, —. *intersĕco,
　—, d. *persĕco, -ui. præsĕco, -ui,
　-tum *or* -ātum. *So* resĕco, d.
*Sŏno, sonui, -atūrus, d. *to sound.*
　*consŏno, -ui. *So* ex-, in-, per-,
　præ-sŏno. *resŏno, -āvi. *assŏno,
　—. *So* circumsŏno *and* dissŏno.
*Sto, stĕti, statūrus, d. *to stand.* *an-
　testo, -stĕti. *So* circumsto, intersto,
　supersto.—*Its compounds with mo-
　nosyllabic prepositions have* stĭti;
　as, *consto, -stĭti, -statūrus. *So* ex-
　sto, insto, obsto, persto. *præsto,
　-stĭti, -statūrus, d. *adsto *or* asto,
　-stĭti, -stitūrus. *prosto, -stĭti. *So*
　resto, restĭti: *but subj. perf.* restāvĕ-
　rit, Propert, 2, 34, 55. *disto, —.
　So substo *and* supersto.
*Tŏno, tonui, *to thunder.* *So* circum-
　tŏno. attŏno, -ui, -ĭtum. intŏno,
　-ui, -ātum. *retŏno, —.
Vĕto, vetui, *rarely* āvi, vetĭtum, *to
　forbid.*

REMARK 1. The principal irregularity, in verbs of the first and second con-
jugations, consists in the omission of the connecting vowel in the second root,
and the change of the long vowels *ā* and *ē* in the third root into *ĭ*. The *v* re-
maining at the end of the second root, when it follows a consonant, is pro-
nounced as *u*; as, *cubo,* (*cubāvi,* by syncope *cubvi,*) i. e. *cubui;* (*cubātum,* by
change of the connecting vowel,) *cubĭtum.* Sometimes in the first conjugation,
and very frequently in the second, the connecting vowel is omitted in the third
root also; as, *juvo,* (*āre*) *jūvi, jūtum; tĕneo,* (*ēre*) *tĕnui, tentum.* In the second
conjugation several verbs whose general root ends in *d* and *g,* and a few others
of different terminations, form either their second or third root or both, like
verbs of the third conjugation, by adding *s;* as, *rideo, rīsi, rīsum.*

REM. 2. The verbs of the first conjugation whose perfects take a redu
plication are *do, sto,* and their compounds.

REM. 3. The following verbs in *eo* are of the first conjugation, viz. *beo, calceo,
creo, cŭneo, enucleo, illăqueo, collĭneo, delĭneo, meo, nauseo, screo; eo* and its com-
pounds are of the fourth.

§ 166.

All deponent verbs, of the first conjugation, are regular,
and are conjugated like *miror,* § 161; as,

Abomĭnor, d. *to abhor.*
Adŭlor, d. *to flatter.*
Æmŭlor, d. *to rival.*
Ancillor, *to be a handmaid.*
*Aprĭcor, *to bask in the
　sun.*
Arbitror, r. d. *to think.*
Aspernor, d. p. *to despise.*
Aucŭpor, r. p. *to hunt
　after.*
Auxĭlior, p. *to help.*
Aversor, d. *to dislike.*
Bacchor, p. *to revel.*
Calumnior, *to censure un-
　fairly.*

Causor, *to allege.*
*Comissor, m. *to revel.*
Comĭtor, p. *to accompany.*
Conciōnor, *to harangue.*
*Confabŭlor, m. *to con-
　verse together.*
Cōnor, d. *to endeavor.*
†Conspĭcor, *to see.*
Contemplor, d. p. *to view
　attentively.*
Crimĭnor, m. p. *to com-
　plain of.*
Cunctor, d. p. *to delay.*
Deprĕcor, m. r. d. p. *to
　deprecate.*

*†Diglădior, *to fence.*
Dignor, d. p. *to deem wor-
　thy.*
Domĭnor, p. *to rule.*
Epŭlor, r. d. *to feast.*
*Famŭlor, m. *to wait on.*
Fātur, (defect.) u. d. p.
　to speak. See § 183, 6.
†Fērior, r. *to keep holiday.*
*Frumentor, m. *to forage.*
Fŭror, m. *to steal.*
Glōrior, r. d. *to boast.*
Gratŭlor, m. d. *to con-
　gratulate.*

Hariŏlor, *to practise sooth-saying.*
Hortor, d. *to encourage.*
Imĭtor, u. r. d. *to imitate.*
Indignor, p. *to disdain.*
Infĭtior, d. *to deny.*
Insector, *to pursue.*
Insĭdior, r. d. *to lie in wait for.*
Interprĕtor, p. *to explain.*
Jacŭlor, p. *to hurl.*
Jŏcor, *to jest.*
Lætor, r. d. p. *to rejoice.*
Lamentor, d. p. *to bewail.*
*†Lignor, m. *to gather wood.*
Luctor, *to wrestle.*
Medĭcor, r. d. p. *to heal.*
Medĭtor, p. *to meditate.*
Mercor, m. r. d. p. *to buy.*
Minor, *to threaten.*
Mīror, u. r. d. *to admire.*
Misĕror, d. *to pity.*
Modĕror, u. d. *to govern.*

Modŭlor, d. p. *to modulate.*
Mŏror, r. d. *to delay.*
†Mūtuor, p. *to borrow.*
Negōtior, r. *to traffic.*
*†Nūgor, p. *to trifle.*
Obsōnor, m. *to cater.*
Obtestor, p. *to beseech.*
Opĕror, *to work.*
Opīnor, u. r. d. *to think.*
Opĭtŭlor, m. *to help.*
†Ōtior, p. *to be at leisure.*
Pabŭlor, m. d. *to graze.*
Pālor, *to wander about.*
Percontor, m. *to inquire.*
Periclĭtor, d. p. *to try.*
†Piscor, m. *to fish.*
Popŭlor, r. d. p. *to lay waste.*
Prædor, m. p. *to plunder.*
Prĕcor, m. u. r. d. *to pray.*
Prœlior, *to fight.*
Recordor, d. *to recollect.*
Rīmor, d. *to search.*
Rixor, *to quarrel.*

*Rustĭcor, *to live in the country.*
Sciscĭtor, m. p. *to inquire.*
*Scītor, m. *to ask.*
Scrūtor, p. *to search.*
Sōlor, d. *to comfort.*
Spătior, *to walk about.*
Specŭlor, m. r. d. *to spy out.*
†Stipŭlor, p. *to bargain, stipulate.*
†Suāvior, d. *to kiss.*
Suspĭcor, *to suspect.*
Testifĭcor, p. *to testify.*
Testor, d. p. *to testify. So* detestor.
Tūtor, *to defend.*
Văgor, *to wander.*
Venĕror, d. p. *to venerate, worship.*
Vēnor, m. p. *to hunt.*
Versor, *to be employed.*
Vocifĕror, *to bawl.*

Note. Some deponents of the first conjugation are derived from nouns, and signify *being* or *practising* that which the noun denotes; as, *ancillāri*, to be a handmaid; *hariŏlāri*, to practise soothsaying; from *ancilla* and *hariŏlus.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 167. Verbs of the second conjugation end in *eo*, and form their second and third roots in *u* and *ĭt; as, moneo, monui,* monĭt*um.*

The following list contains most of the regular verbs of this conjugation, and many also which want the second and third roots:—

*Aceo, *to be sour.*
*Ægreo, —, *to be sick.*
*Albeo, —, *to be white.*
*Arceo, d. *to drive away; part. adj.* arctus *or* artus. *The compounds change* a *into* e; *as,* coerceo, d. *to restrain.* exerceo, r. d. *to exercise.*
*Areo, *to be dry.*
*Aveo, —, *to covet.*
*Căleo, r. *to be warm.*
*Calleo, —, *to be hardened. *percalleo, *to know well.*
*Calveo, —, *to be bald.*
*Candeo, *to be white.*
*Cāneo, *to be hoary.*
*Căreo, r. *to want.*
*Cēveo, —, *to fawn.*

*Clāreo, —, *to be bright.*
*Clueo, —, *to be famous.*
*Denseo, —, *to thicken.*
*Dirĭbeo, —, *to sort the voting tablets.*
*Dŏleo, r. d. *to grieve.*
*Egeo, r. *to want.*
*Emĭneo, *to rise above.*
*Flacceo, *to droop.*
*Flāveo, —, *to be yellow.*
*Flōreo, *to blossom.*
*Fœteo, —, *to be fetid.*
*Frīgeo, —, *to be cold.*
*Frondeo, —, *to bear leaves.*
Hăbeo, r. d. *to have. The compounds, except* post-hăbeo, *change* ă *into* ĭ; *as.* ad-, ex-, pro-hĭbeo. cohĭbeo, d. *to restrain.* inhĭbeo, d. *to hinder.*

*†perhĭbeo, d. *to report.*
†posthăbeo, *to postpone.*
præbeo, (*for* præhĭbeo), r. d. *to afford.*
*præhĭbeo, —. dēbeo, (*for* dehăbeo), r. d. *to owe.*
*Hĕbeo, —, *to be dull.*
*Horreo, d. *to be rough.*
*Hūmeo, —. *to be moist.*
*Jăceo, r. *to lie.*
*Lacteo, —, *to suck.*
*Langueo, —, *to be faint.*
*Lăteo, *to lie hid.*
*Lenteo, —, *to be slow.*
*Līceo, *to be valued.*
*Līveo, —, *to be livid.*
*Măceo, —, *to be lean.*
*Mădeo, *to be wet.*
*Mæreo, —, *to grieve.*
Mĕreo, r. *to deserve.*

†commĕreo, *to fully de-serve.* †dēmĕreo, d. *to earn.* †emĕreo, *to serve out one's time.* *†per-mĕreo, —, *to go through service.* promĕreo, *to deserve.*
Mŏneo, r. d. *to advise.* admŏneo, m. r. d. *to remind.* commŏneo, *to impress upon.* præmŏneo, *to forewarn.*
*Mūceo, —, *to be mouldy.*
*Nigreo, —, *to be black.*
*Nĭteo, *to shine.*
Nŏceo, m. r. d. *to hurt.*
*Oleo, *to smell.*
*Palleo, *to be pale.*

*Pāreo, m. r. d. *to obey.*
*Păteo, *to be open.*
Plăceo, *to please.*
*Polleo, —, *to be able.*
*Pūteo, *to stink.*
*Putreo, *to be putrid.*
*Renīdeo, —, *to glitter.*
*Rĭgeo, *to be stiff.*
*Rŭbeo, *to be red.*
*Scăteo, —, *to gush forth.*
*Sĕneo, —, *to be old.*
*Sīleo, d. *to be silent.*
*Sordeo, —, *to be filthy.*
*Splendeo, —, *to shine.*
*Squāleo, —, *to be foul.*
*Strīdeo, —, *to creak.*
*Stŭdeo, d. *to study.*
*Stŭpeo, *to be amazed.*

*Sueo, —, *to be wont.*
Tăceo, r. d. *to be silent.*
*Tĕpeo, *to be warm.*
Terreo, d. *to terrify.* So deterreo, *to deter.* †absterreo, *to deter.* †conterreo, †exterreo, †perterreo, *to frighten.*
*Tīmeo, d. *to fear.*
*Torpeo, —, *to be stiff.*
*Tūmeo, *to swell.*
*Văleo, r. *to be able.*
*Vĕgeo, —, *to arouse.*
*Vieo, —, *to plait.* Pa. viētus, *shriveled.*
*Vīgeo, *to flourish.*
*Vīreo, *to be green.*
*Uveo, —, *to be moist.*

§ 168.
The following verbs of the second conjugation are irregular in their second or third roots or in both.

NOTE 1. As the proper form of verbs of the first conjugation is, *o, āvi, ātum,* of the fourth *io, īvi, ītum,* so that of the second would be *eo, ēvi, ētum.* Very few of the latter conjugation, however, retain this form, but most of them, as noticed in § 165, Rem. 1, drop in the second root the connecting vowel, *ē,* and those in *veo* drop *vē;* as, *căveo, (căvēvi) cāvi, (căvētum* or *cărītum) cautum.* Others, imitating the form of those verbs of the third conjugation whose general root ends in a consonant, add *s* to form the second and third roots. Cf. § 165, Rem. 1, and § 171.

NOTE 2. Four verbs of the second conjugation take a reduplication in the parts formed from the second root, viz. *mordeo, pendeo, spondeo,* and *tondeo.* See § 163, Rem.

Abŏleo, -ēvi, -ĭtum, r. d. *to efface.*
*Algeo, alsi, d. *to be cold.*
Ardeo, arsi, arsum, r. *to burn.*
Audeo, ausus sum, (*rarely* ausi, *whence* ausim, § 188, R. 1,) r. d. *to dare.*
Augeo, auxi, auctum, r. d. *to increase.*
Căveo, cāvi, cautum, m. d. *to beware.*
Censeo, censui, censum, d. *to think.* recenseo, -ui, -um *or* -ĭtum. *per-censeo, -ui. *succenseo, -ui, d.
Cieo, cīvi, cĭtum, *to excite. There is a cognate form,* cio, *of the fourth conjugation, both of the simple verb and of its compounds. The penult of the participles* excitus *and* concitus *is common, and that of* accītus *is always long.*
*Connīveo, -nīvi, *to wink at.*
Dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum, d. *to blot out.*
Dŏceo, docui, doctum, d. *to teach.*
*Făveo, fāvi, fautūrus, *to favor.*
*Ferveo, ferbui, *to boil. Sometimes* fervo, vi, *of the third conjugation.*
Fleo, flēvi, flētum, r. d. *to weep.*
Fŏveo, fōvi, fōtum, d. *to cherish.*

*Fulgeo, fulsi, *to shine.* Fulgo, *of the third conjugation, is also in use.*
Gaudeo, gavīsus sum, r. *to rejoice.* § 142, 2.
*Hæreo, hæsi, hæsūrus, *to stick.* So ad-, co-, in-, ob- hæreo; *but* *subhæreo, —.
Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, r. d. *to indulge.*
Jŭbeo, jussi, jussum, r. d. *to order.*
*Lūceo, luxi, *to shine.* pollūceo, -luxi, -luctum.
*Lūgeo, luxi, d. *to mourn.*
*Măneo, mansi, mansum, m. r. d. *to remain.*
Misceo, miscui, mistum *or* mixtum, mistūrus, d. *to mix.*
Mordeo, momordi, morsum, d. *to bite.* remordeo, -di, -morsum, r.
Mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum, r. d. *to move.*
Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, d. *to soothe.* permulceo, permulsi, permulsum *and* permulctum, *to rub gently.*
*Mulgeo, mulsi *or* mulxi, *to milk.* emulgeo, —, emulsum, *to milk out.*

Neo, nēvi, nētum, *to spin.*
*Păveo, păvi, d. *to fear.*
*Pendeo, pependi, *to hang.*   *impendeo, —.   propendeo, —, propensum.
Pleo, (*obsolete*).   compleo, -ēvi, -ētum, *to fill.   So the other compounds.*
Prandeo, prandi, pransum, r. *to dine.*
Rideo, rīsi, rīsum, m. r. d. *to laugh.*
*Sĕdeo, sēdi, sessum, m. r. *to sit.   The compounds with monosyllabic prepositions change ĕ into ī, in the first root; as, insīdeo, insēdi, insessum. *dissīdeo, -sēdi.   So praesīdeo, and rarely circumsīdeo.
Sŏleo, solitus sum *and rarely* solui, *to be accustomed.   § 142, 2.*
*Sorbeo, sorbui, *to suck in.   So* *exsorbeo: but* *resorbeo, —.   *absorbeo, -sorbui *or* -sorpsi.

Spondeo, spopondi, sponsum, *to promise.   See § 163, Rem.*
*Strīdeo, īdi, *to whiz.*
Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, r. d. *to advise.*
Tĕneo, tĕnui, tentum, r. d. *to hold.   The compounds change ĕ into ī in the first and second roots; as, detīneo, detīnui, detentum. *attīneo, -tīnui.   So pertīneo.
Tergeo, tersi, tersum, *to wipe.   Tergo, of the third conjugation, is also in use.*
Tondeo, tŏtondi, tonsum, *to shear.   The compounds have the perfect* tondi.
Torqueo, torsi, tortum, d. *to twist.*
Torreo, torrui, tostum, d. *to roast.*
*Turgeo, tursi, *to swell.*
*Urgeo *or* urgueo, ursi, d. *to urge.*
Vĭdeo, vīdi, vīsum, m. u. r. d. *to see.*
Vŏveo, vōvi, vōtum, d. *to vow.*

§ 169.   *Impersonal Verbs of the Second Conjugation.*

Dĕcet, decuit, *it becomes.*
Lĭbet, libuit *or* libītum est, *it pleases, is agreeable.*
Lĭcet, licuit *or* licĭtum est, *it is lawful, or permitted.*
Lĭquet, lĭquit, *it is clear, evident.*
Mĭsĕret, miseruit *or* miserĭtum est, *it moves to pity;* misĕret me, *I pity.*
Oportet, oportuit, *it behooves.*

Pĭget, piguit *or* pigĭtum est, d. *it troubles, grieves.*
Pœnĭtet, pœnituit, pœnitūrus, d. *it repents;* pœnĭtet me, *I regret.*
Pŭdet, puduit *or* pudĭtum est, d.; *it shames;* pudet me, *I am ashamed.*
Tædet, tæduit *or* tæsum est, *it disgusts or wearies.* pertædet, pertæsum est.

NOTE. *Lŭbet* is sometimes written for *lĭbet,* especially in the comic writers.

§ 170.   *Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.*

Făteor, fassus, r. d. p. *to confess.   The compounds change* ā *into* ī *in the first root, and into* e *in the third; as,* confĭteor, confessus, d. p. *to acknowledge.* *†diffĭteor, *to deny.* profĭteor, professus, d. p. *to declare.*
Līceor, licĭtus, *to bid a price.*

*Mĕdeor, d. *to cure.*
Mĕreor, merĭtus, *to deserve.*
Misĕreor, miserĭtus *or* misertus, *to pity.*
Pollĭceor, pollicĭtus, p. *to promise.*
Reor, rātus, p. *to think, suppose.*
Tueor, tuĭtus, d. p. *to protect.*
Vĕreor, verĭtus, d. p. *to fear.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 171.   In the third conjugation, when the first root ends with a consonant, the second root is regularly formed by adding *s;* when it ends with a vowel, the first and second roots are the same: the third root is formed by adding *t;* as, carp*o,* carps*i,* carp*tum;* argu*o,* argu*i,* argū*tum.*

In annexing *s* and *t,* certain changes occur in the final consonant of the root :—

1. The palatals *c, g, qu,* and also *h,* at the end of the first root, form with *s* the double letter *x* in the second root; in the third root, *c* remains, and the others are changed into *c* before *t;* as, dico, (dicsi, i. e.), dixi, dictum; rego, (regsi, i. e.), rexi, rectum; vĕho, vexi, vectum; cŏquo, coxi, coctum.

NOTE. *Fluo* and *struo* form their second and third roots after the analogy of verbs whose first root ends in a palatal or *h*.

2. *B* is changed into *p* before *s* and *t*; as, *scrībo, scripsi, scriptum.*

3. *D* and *t*, before *s*, are either dropped, or changed into *s*; as, *claudo, clausi; cēdo, cessi; mitto, mīsi.* Cf. § 56, I, Rem. 1. After *m*, *p* is sometimes inserted before *s* and *t*; as, *sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum.* *R* is changed to *s* before *s* and *t* in *gĕro* and *ūro.*

4. Some other consonants are dropped, or changed into *s*, in certain verbs.

EXC. 1. Many verbs whose first root ends in a consonant, do not add *s* to form the second root.

(*a*.) Of these, some have the second root the same as the first, but the vowel of the second root, if a monosyllable, is long; as,

Bĭbo,	Excūdo,	Ico,	Mando,	Scăbo,	Solvo,	Verro,
Edo,	Fŏdio,	Lambo,	Prehendo,	Scando,	Strīdo,	Verto,
Emo,	Fūgio,	Lĕgo,	Psallo,	Sīdo,	Tollo,	Volvo;

to which add the compounds of the obsolete *cando, fendo,* and *nuo.*

(*b*.) Some make a change in the first root. Of these, some change a vowel, some drop a consonant, some prefix a reduplication, others admit two or more of these changes; as,

Ago, ēgi.	Căpio, cēpi.	Făcio, fēci.
Findo, fīdi.	Frango, frēgi.	Fundo, fūdi.
Jăcio, jēci.	Linquo, līqui.	Rumpo, rūpi.
Scindo, scīdi.	Sisto, stīti.	Vinco, vīci.

Those which have a reduplication are

Cădo, cĕcĭdi.	Cædo, cĕcīdi.	Căno, cĕcĭni.
Curro, cŭcurri.	Disco, dĭdĭci.	Fallo, fĕfelli.
Păgo, (*obs.*) pĕpĭgi	Parco, pĕperci.	Pário, pĕpĕri.
and pēgi.	Pĕdo, pĕpēdi.	Pello, pĕpŭli.
Pendo, pĕpendi.	Posco, pŏposci.	Pungo, pŭpŭgi.
Tango, tĕtĭgi.	Tendo, tĕtendi.	Tundo, tŭtŭdi.

EXC. 2. Some, after the analogy of the second conjugation, add *u* to the first root of the verb; as,

Alo, alui, etc.	Consŭlo,	Gĕmo,	Răpio,	Trĕmo,
Cŏlo,	Depso,	Gĕno, (*obs.*)	Strĕpo,	Vŏlo,
Compesco,	Frĕmo,	Mŏlo,	Texo,	Vŏmo.

Mĕto, messui; and *pōno, pŏsui;* add *su,* with a change in the root.

EXC. 3. The following, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, add *īv* to the first root:—

Arcesso,	Cŭpio,	Lăcesso,	Rŭdo,	Tĕro, *dropping ĕ.*
Căpesso,	Incesso,	Pĕto,	Quæro, *with a change of* r *into* s.

EXC. 4. The following add *v*, with a change in the root; those in *no* and *sco* dropping *n* and *sc*, and those having *er* before *n* changing it to *rē* or *rā*:—

Cresco,	Pasco,	Scisco,	Sperno,	Līno,	Sĕro,
Nosco,	Quiesco,	Cerno,	Sterno,	Sĭno,	*to sow.*

EXC. 5. (*a*.) The third root of verbs whose first root ends in *d* or *t*, and some in *g*, add *s*, instead of *t*, to the root, either dropping the *d, t,* and *g*, or changing them into *s*; as, *claudo, clausum; dēfendo, dēfensum; cēdo, cessum; flecto, flexum; figo, fixum.* But the compounds of *do* add *ĭt*; as, *perdo, perdĭtum.*

(b.) The following, also, add s, with a change of the root:—

Excello,	Fallo,	Pello,	Spargo,	Verro.
Percello,	Mergo,	Prĕmo,	Vello,	

Exc. 6. The following add t, with a change of the root; those having n, nc, ng, nqu, or mp at the end of the first root dropping n and m in the third:—

Cerno,	Fingo,	Gĕro,	Sĕro,	Sperno,	Stringo,	Uro,
Cŏlo,	Frango,	Rumpo, Sisto,	Sterno,	Tĕro,	Vinco;

to which add the compounds of *linquo*, and verbs in *sco* with the second root in *v*; the latter drop *sc* before *t*; as, *nosco, nŏvi, nŏtum*; except *pasco*, which drops *c* only.

Exc. 7. (a.) The following have *ŭt*:—

Bĭbo,	Elĭcio,	Mŏlo,	Pōno, *with a change of* ōn *into* ŏs.
Gĕno, (*obs. form of* gigno,)	Vŏmo,	Sĭno, *dropping* n.	

(b.) The following, like verbs of the fourth conjugation, add *ŭt* to the first root:—

Arcesso,	Cŭpio,	Pĕto,	Tĕro, *dropping* ĕ.
Făcesso,	Lăcesso,	Quæro, *with a change of* r *into* s.	

For other irregularities occurring in this conjugation, see § 172–174.

§ **172.** The following list contains most of the simple verbs, both regular and irregular, in the third conjugation, with such of their compounds as require particular notice:—

Acuo, ăcui, ăcūtum, d. *to sharpen.*

Ago, ēgi, actum, r. d. *to drive.* So circumăgo, cōgo, *and* pĕrăgo. *Ambĭgo, —, to doubt.* So sătăgo. *The other compounds change* ă *into* ĭ, *in the first root*; as, exĭgo, exēgi, exactum, *to drive out.* *prōdĭgo, -ēgi, to squander.* See § 189, 2.

Alo, ălui, altum, *and later* ălĭtum, d. *to nourish.*

*Ango, anxi, *to strangle.*

Arguo, argui, argūtum, d. *to convict.*

Arcesso, -cessīvi, -cessītum, r. d. *to call for.* *Pass. inf.* arcessīri *or* arcessi.

*Bătuo, bătui, d. *to beat.*

Bĭbo, bibi, bĭbĭtum, d. *to drink.*

*Cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsūrus, *to fall.* *The compounds change* ă *into* ĭ, *in the first root, and drop the reduplication*; as, occĭdo, -cĭdi, -cāsum, r. *to set.*

Cædo, cĕcĭdi, cæsum, r. d. *to cut.* *The compounds change* æ *into* ĭ, *and drop the reduplication*; as, occīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum.

Cando, (*obsolete*,) *synonymous with* candeo *of the second conjugation.* Hence accendo, -cendi, -censum, d. *to kindle.* So incendo, succendo.

*Căno, cĕcĭni, d. *to sing.* *The compounds change* ă *into* ĭ; *as,* *concĭno,

-cĭnui. So occĭno, præcĭno. *accĭno, —. So incĭno, intercĭno, succĭno, recĭno.

*Capesso, -īvi, r. d. *to undertake.*

Căpio, cēpi, captum, r. d. *to take.* So antĕcăpio. *The other compounds change* ă *into* ĭ, *in the first root, and into* e *in the third*; as, dēcĭpio, dēcēpi, dēceptum.

Carpo, carpsi, carptum, d. *to pluck.* *The compounds change* a *into* e; *as,* dēcerpo, dēcerpsi, dēcerptum.

Cēdo, cessi, cessum, r. d. *to yield.*

Cello, (*obsolete*.) excello, -cellui, -celsum, r. *to excel.* *antĕcello, —. So præcello, rĕcello. percello, -cŭli, -culsum, *to strike.*

Cerno, crēvi, crētum, d. *to decree.*

*Cerno, —, *to see.*

Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, d. *to gird.*

*Clango, —, *to clang.*

Claudo, clausi, clausum, r. d. *to shut.* *The compounds change* au *into* ū; *as,* occlūdo, occlūsi, occlūsum, *to shut up.*

*†Claudo, —, *to limp.*

*†Clēpo, clepsi, *rarely* clēpi, *to steal.*

Cŏlo, cŏlui, cultum, d. *to till.* †occŭlo, -cŭlui, -cultum, *to hide.*

Cōmo, compsi, comptum, *to deck.*

*Compesco, -pescui, *to restrain.*

12

Consŭlo, -sŭlui, -sultum, m. r. d. *to consult.*

Cŏquo, coxi, coctum, m. d. *to cook.*

Crēdo, crēdĭdi, crēdĭtum, r. d. *to believe.*

*Cresco, crēvi, *to grow.* concresco, -crēvi, -crētum.

Cŭbo *is of the first conjugation.* Cf. § 165. *accumbo, -cŭbui, *to lie down.* So the other compounds which insert m.*

*Cūdo, —, *to forge.* excūdo, -cūdi, -cūsum, d. *to stamp.*

Cŭpio, cŭpīvi, cŭpītum, d. *to desire.* *Subj. imperf.* cŭpīret. *Lucr.* 1, 72.

*Curro, cŭcurri, cursūrus, *to run.* concurro, succurro, *and* transcurro, *drop the reduplication; the other compounds sometimes drop, and sometimes retain it; as,* dēcurro, dĕcurri, *and* dēcŭcurri, dēcursum. *antĕcurro, —. So* circumcurro.

*Dēgo, dēgi, d. *to live.*

Dēmo, dempsi, demptum, r. d. *to take away.*

†Depso, depsui, depstum, *to knead.*

Dīco, dixi, dictum, u. r. d. *to say.*

*Disco, dĭdĭci, discĭtūrus, d. *to learn.*

*Dispesco, —, *to separate.*

Dīvĭdo, dīvīsi, dīvīsum, r. d. *to divide.*

Do *is of the first conjugation.* abdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, d. *to hide. So* condo, indo. addo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, r. d. *to add. So* dēdo, ēdo, prōdo, reddo, trādo, vendo. †dūdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, *to distribute. So* abdo, subdo. perdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, m. r. d. abscondo, -dī *or* -dĭdi, -dĭtum *or* -sum.

Dūco, duxi, ductum, m. u. r. d. *to lead.*

Edo, ĕdi, ēsum, m. u. r. d. *to eat.*

Exuo, exui, exūtum, d. *to strip off.*

Emo, ēmi, emptum, r. d. *to buy. So* cŏemo. *The other compounds change* ĕ *to* ĭ; *as,* eximo, -ēmi, -emptum.

Făcesso, -cessi, -cessĭtum, *to execute.*

*Făcio, fēci, factum, m. u. r. d. *to do. Compounded with a preposition, it changes* ă *into* ĭ *in the first root, and into* e *in the third, makes -fīce in the imperative, and has a regular passive. Compounded with other words, it retains* ă *when of this conjugation, makes* făc *in the imperative, and has the passive,* fīo, factum. *See* § 180.

Fallo, fĕfelli, falsum, d. *to deceive.* *rĕfello, -felli, d. *to refute.*

Fendo, (*obsolete.*) dēfendo, -fendi, -fensum, m. u. r. d. *to defend.* offendo, -fendi, -fensum, d. *to offend.*

Fĕro, tŭli, lātum, r. d. *to bear. See* § 179. *A perfect* tĕtŭli *is rare. Its compounds are* afféro, attŭli, allātum;

aufĕro, abstŭli, ablātum; diffĕro, distŭli, dīlātum; confĕro, contŭli, collātum; infĕro, intŭli, illātum; offĕro, obtŭli, oblātum; effĕro, extŭli, elātum; suffĕro, sustŭli, sublātum; *and* circum-, per-, trans-, dē-, prō-, antĕ-, præfĕro, -tŭli, -lātum.

*Fervo, vi, *to boil.* Cf. ferveo, 2d *conj.*

Fīdo, —, fīsus, *to trust. See* § 162, 18. confīdo, confisus sum *or* confīdi, *to rely on.* diffīdo, diffīsus sum, *to distrust.*

Fīgo, fixi, fixum, r. *rarely* fictum, *to fix.*

Findo, fĭdi, fissum, d. *to cleave.*

Fingo, finxi, fictum, d. *to feign.*

Flecto, flexi, flexum, r. d. *to bend.*

*Flīgo, flixi, *to dash. So* conflīgo. afflīgo, -flixi, -flictum, *to afflict. So* inflīgo. prōflīgo *is of the first conjugation.*

Fluo, fluxi, fluxum, (fluctum, *obs.*) r. d. *to flow.*

Fŏdio, fōdi, fossum, d. *to dig. Old pres. inf. pass.* fŏdīri: *so also* effŏdīri.

Frango, frēgi, fractum, r. d. *to break. The compounds change* a *into* i, *in the first root; as,* infringo, infrēgi, infractum, *to break in upon.*

*Frĕmo, frĕmui, d. *to roar, howl.*

Frendo, —, frēsum *or* fressum, *to gnash.*

Frīgo, frixi, frictum, *rarely* frixum, *to roast.*

*Fŭgio, fūgi, fŭgĭtūrus, d. *to flee.*

*Fulgo, —, *to flash.*

Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, r. d. *to pour.*

*Fŭro, —, *to rage.*

*Gĕmo, gĕmui, d. *to groan.*

Gĕro, gessi, gestum, r. d. *to bear.*

Gigno, (*obsolete* gĕno,) gĕnui, gĕnĭtum, r. d. *to beget.*

*Glisco, —, *to grow.*

*Glūbo, —, *to peel.* deglūbo, —, -gluptum.

Gruo, (*obsolete.*) *congruo, -grui, *to agree. So* ingruo.

Ico, īci, ictum, r. *to strike.*

Imbuo, imbui, imbūtum, d. *to imbue.*

*Incesso, -cessīvi *or* -cessi, *to attack.*

†Induo, indui, indūtum, *to put on.*

Jăcio, jēci, jactum, d. *to cast. The compounds change* ă *into* ĭ *in the first root, and into* e *in the third.* (§ 163, *Exc.* 3;) *as,* rĕjĭcio, rejēci, rejectum.

Jungo, junxi, junctum, r. d. *to join.*

Lăcesso, -cessīvi, -cessĭtum, r. d. *to provoke.*

Lăcio, (*obsolete.*) *The compounds change* ă *into* ĭ; *as,* allĭcio, -lexi, -lectum, d. *to allure. So* illĭcio, pellĭcio. ēlĭcio, -lĭcui, -lĭcĭtum, *to draw out.*

Lædo, læsi, læsum, m. r. *to hurt. The compounds change æ into ī; as,* illīdo, illīsi, illīsum, *to dash against.*

*Lambo, lambi, *to lick.*

Lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, r. d. *to read. So* allĕgo, perlĕgo, prælĕgo, relĕgo, sublĕgo, *and* translĕgo; *the other compounds change* ĕ *into* ī; *as,* collĭgo, collēgi, collectum, *to collect. But the following add* s *to form the second root ;* § 171, 1; dilĭgo, -lexi, -lectum, *to love.* intellĭgo, -lexi, -lectum, u. r. d. *to understand.* neglĭgo, -lexi, -lectum, r. d. *to neglect.*

Lingo, —, linctum, d. *to lick.* *delingo, —, *to lick up.*

Lĭno, līvi *or* lēvi, lĭtum, d. *to daub.*

*Linquo, līqui, —, d. *to leave.* relinquo, -līqui, -lictum, r. d. delinquo, -līqui, -lictum. *So* derelinquo.

Lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, m. r. *to play.*

*Luo, lui, luitūrus, d. *to atone.* abluo, -lui, -lūtum, r. d. diluo, -lui, -lūtum, d. *So* eluo.

Mando, mandi, mansum, d. *to chew.*

Mergo, mersi, mersum, r. d. *to dip. So* immergo; *but pres. inf. pass.* immergēri, Col. 5, 9, 3.

Mĕto, messui, messum, d. *to reap.*

Mĕtuo, metui, metūtum, d. *to fear.*

*Mingo, minxi, mictum, (sup.) *to make water.*

Mĭnuo, mĭnui, mĭnūtum, d. *to lessen.*

Mitto, mīsi, missum, r. d. *to send.*

Mŏlo, mŏlui, mŏlĭtum, d. *to grind.*

Mungo, (obsolete.) emungo, -munxi, -munctum, *to wipe the nose.*

Necto, nexi, nexum, d. *to knit.* innecto, -nexui, -nexum. *So* annecto, connecto.

*Ningo *or* -guo, ninxi, *to snow.*

Nosco, nōvi, nōtum, d. *to learn.* agnosco, -nōvi, -nītum, d. *to recognize.* cognosco, -nōvi, -nītum, u. r. d. *to know. So* recognosco. *internosco, nōvi, *to distinguish between.* præcognosco, —, præcognĭtum, *to fore-know.* *dignosco, —. *So* prænosco. ignosco, -nōvi, -nōtum, d. *to pardon.*

Nūbo, nupsi, *or* nupta sum, nuptum, m. r. *to marry.*

Nuo, (obsolete,) *to nod.* *abnuo, -nui, -nuitūrus, d. *to refuse.* *annuo, -nui. *So* innuo, renuo.

*Olo, ŏlui, *to smell.*

Pando, —, passum *or* pansum, *to open. So* expando. dispando, —, -pansum.

Pago, (obs. the same as paco whence pāciscor,) pĕpĭgi, pactum, *to bargain: hence*

Pango, panxi *or* pēgi, pactum, panctūrus, d. *to drive in.* compingo, -pēgi, -pactum. *So* impingo. *oppango, -pēgi. *depango, —. *So* repango, suppingo.

*Parco, pĕperci *rarely* parsi, parsūrus, to spare. Some of the compounds change a to e; as, *comparco *or* comperco. *imperco, —.

Pārio, pĕpĕri, partum, părĭtūrus, d. *to bring forth. The compounds are of the fourth conjugation.*

Pasco, pāvi, pastum, m. r. d. *to feed.*

Pecto, —, pexum, *and* pectĭtum, d. *to comb. So* depecto. repecto.

*Pēdo, pĕpēdi. *oppēdo, —.

Pello, pĕpŭli, pulsum, d. *to drive. Its compounds are not reduplicated.*

Pendo, pĕpendi, pensum, r. r. *to weigh. The compounds drop the reduplication. See* § 163, Exc. 1.

Pĕto, pĕtīvi, pĕtītum, m. u. r. d. *to ask.*

Pingo, pinxi, pictum, *to paint.*

Pinso, pinsi, pinsĭtum, pinsum *or* pistum, *to pound.*

*Plango, planxi, planctūrus, *to lament.*

Plaudo, plausi, plausum, d. *to clap, applaud. So* applaudo. *†circumplaudo, —. The other compounds change* au *into* ō.

Plecto, —, plexum, d. *to twine.*

*Pluo, plui *or* plūvi, *to rain.*

Pōno, pŏsui, (anciently posīvi), pŏsĭtum, r. d. *to place.*

*†Porrĭcio, —, *to offer sacrifice.*

*Posco, pŏposci, d. *to demand.*

Prehendo, ⎱
Prendo,   ⎰ -di, -sum, r. d. *to seize.*

Prĕmo, pressi, pressum, r. d. *to press. The compounds change* ĕ *into* ī, *in the first root ; as,* imprĭmo, impressi, impressum, *to impress.*

Prōmo, prompsi, promptum, r. d. *to bring out.*

*Psallo, psalli, *to play on a stringed instrument.*

Pungo, pŭpŭgi, punctum, *to prick.* compungo, -punxi, -punctum. *So* dispungo, expungo. interpungo, —, -punctum. *repungo, —.

Quæro, quæsīvi, quæsītum, m. r. d. *to seek. The compounds change* æ *into* ī; *as,* requīro, requisīvi, requisītum, *to seek again.*

Quătio, —, quassum, *to shake. The compounds change* quă *into* cŭ; *as,* concŭtio, -cussi, -cussum, d. discŭtio, -cussi, -cussum, r. d.

Quiesco, quiēvi, quiētum, r. d. *to rest.*

Rādo, rāsi, rāsum, d. *to shave.*

Răpio, răpui, raptum, r. d. *to snatch. The compounds change* ă *into* ĭ *in the*

first and second roots, and into e *in the third; as,* diripio, -rĭpui, -reptum, m. r. *So* erĭpio *and* prærĭpio.

Rēgo, rexi, rectum, r. d. *to rule. The compounds change* ĕ *into* ĭ, *in the first root; as,* dirĭgo, direxi, directum. *pergo, (for* perrĭgo) perrexi, r. *to go forward.* surgo *(for* surrĭgo), surrexi, surrectum, r. d. *to rise. So* porrĭgo *(for* prorĭgo), *to stretch out.*

*Rēpo, repsi, *to creep.*

Rōdo, rōsi, rōsum, r. *to gnaw.* ab-, ar-, e-, ob-, præ-rōdo, *want the perfect.*

*Rŭdo, rudīvi, *to bray.*

Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, r. d. *to break.*

Ruo, rui, rŭtum, ruitūrus, d. *to fall.* dĭruo, -rui, -rŭtum, d. *So* obruo. *corruo, -rui. *So* irruo.

*Săpio, sapīvi, *to be wise. The compounds change* ă *into* ĭ; *as,* *resĭpio, -sĭpīvi *or* -sĭpui. *desĭpio, —, *to be silly.*

*†Scăbo, scăbi, *to scratch.*

Scalpo, scalpsi, scalptum, *to engrave.*

Sălo *or* sallo, — salsum, *to salt.*

*Scando, —, d. *to climb. The compounds change* a *into* e; *as,* ascendo, ascendi, ascensum, r. d. descendo, descendi, (*anciently* descendĭdi,) descensum.

Scindo, scĭdi, (*anciently* sciscĭdi,) scissum, d. *to cut.*

Scisco, scīvi, scītum, d. *to ordain.*

Scrībo, scripsi, scriptum, r. d. *to write.*

Sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum, d. *to carve.*

Sĕro, sēvi, sătum, r. d. *to sow.* consĕro, -sēvi, -sĭtum. *So* insĕro, r., *and* obsĕro.

Sĕro, —, sertum, *to entwine. Its compounds have* -sĕrui; *as,* assĕro, -sĕrui, -sertum, r. d.

*Serpo, serpsi, *to creep.*

*Sīdo, sīdi, *to settle. Its compounds have generally* sēdi, sessum, *from* sedeo.

*Sĭno, sīvi, sĭtūrus, *to permit.* desĭno, desīvi, desĭtum, r. § 284, R. 3, Exc. 2.

Sisto, stĭti, stătum, d. *to stop.* *absisto, -stĭti. *So the other compounds; but* circumsisto *wants the perfect.*

Solvo, solvi, sŏlūtum, r. d. *to loose.*

Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, r. d. *to spread. The compounds change* a *into* e; *as,* respergo, -spersi, -spersum; *but with* circum *and* in, *a sometimes remains.*

Spĕcio, (*obsolete.*) *The compounds change* ĕ *into* ĭ, *in the first root; as,* aspĭcio, aspexi, aspectum, d. *to look at.* inspĭcio, inspexi, inspectum. r. d.

Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, d. *to despise.*

*†Spuo, spui, *to spit.* *respuo, respui, d.

Stătuo, stătui, stătūtum, d. *to place. The compounds change* ă *into* ĭ; *as,* instĭtuo, instĭtui, instĭtūtum, *to institute.*

Sterno, strāvi, strātum, d. *to strew.*

*Sternuo, sternui, *to sneeze.*

*Sterto, —, *to snore.* *†desterto, destertui.

*Stinguo, —, *to extinguish.* distinguo, distinxi, distinctum. *So* exstinguo, r. d.

*Strĕpo, strĕpui, *to make a noise.*

*Strīdo, strīdi, *to creak.*

Stringo, strinxi, strictum, r. d. *to bind or tie tight.*

Struo, struxi, structum, d. *to build.*

Sūgo, suxi, suctum, *to suck.*

Sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, r. d. *to take.*

Suo, —, sūtum, d. *to sew. So* consuo, dissuo. insuo, -sui, sūtum. *assuo, —.

Tăgo, (*very rare*), *to touch. Hence*

Tango, tĕtĭgi, tactum, r. d. *to touch. The compounds change* a *into* ĭ *in the first root, and drop the reduplication; as,* contingo, contĭgi, contactum, r.

Tĕgo, texi, tectum, r. d. *to cover.*

*Temno, —, d. *to despise.* contemno, -tempsi, -temptum, d.

Tendo, tĕtendi, tentum *or* tensum, *to stretch. The compounds drop the reduplication; as,* extendo, -tendi, -tentum *or* -tensum. *So* in-, os-, *and* retendo. detendo *has* tensum. *The other compounds have* tentum.

*†Tergo, tersi, tersum, d. *to wipe.* Tergeo, *of the second conjugation has the same second and third roots.*

Tĕro, trīvi, trītum, d. *to rub.*

Texo, texui, textum, d. *to weave.*

Tingo *or* tinguo, tinxi, tinctum, r. d. *to moisten,* tinge.

*Tollo, *anciently* tĕtŭli, *rarely* tolli, d. *to raise. The perfect and supine* sustŭli *and* sublātum *from* suffĕro *take the place of the perfect and supine of* tollo *and* sustollo. *sustollo, —, r. *to raise up, to take away.* *attollo, —. *So* extollo.

Trăho, traxi, tractum, r. d. *to draw.*

*Trĕmo, trĕmui, d. *to tremble.*

Trĭbuo, trĭbui, trĭbūtum, r. d. *to ascribe.*

Trūdo, trūsi, trūsum, *to thrust.*

Tundo, tŭtŭdi, tunsum *or* tūsum, *to beat. The compounds drop the reduplication, and have* tūsum. *Yet* contunsum, detunsum, obtunsum, *and* retunsum, *are also found.*

Ungo, (*or* -guo,) unxi, unctum, d. *to anoint.*

Uro, ussi, ustum, d. *to burn.*
*Vādo, —, *to go.* So supervādo. *The other compounds have* vāsi; *as,* *evādo, evāsi, r. *So* pervādo; *also* invādo, r. d.
Vĕho, vexi, vectum, r. *to carry.*
Vello, velli *or* vulsi, vulsum, d. *to pluck.* So avello, d., divello, evello, d., revello, revelli, revulsum. *The other compounds have* velli *only, except* intervello, *which has* vulsi.

*Vergo, versi, *to incline.*
Verro, —, versum, d. *to brush.*
Verto, verti, versum, r. d. *to turn.* See § 174, *Note.*
Vinco, vīci, victum, r. d. *to conquer.*
*Vīso, —, d. *to visit.*
*Vīvo, vixi, victūrus, d. *to live.*
*Vŏlo, vŏlui, velle (*for* vŏlĕre), *to be willing.* See § 178.
Volvo, volvi, vŏlūtum, d. *to roll.*
Vŏmo, vŏmui, vŏmĭtum, r. d. *to vomit.*

REMARK. Those verbs in *io* (and deponents in *ior*), of the third conjugation, which are conjugated like *capio* (page 115) are, *căpio, cŭpio, făcio, fŏdio, fŭgio, jăcio, părio, quătio, răpio, săpio,* compounds of *lăcio* and *spĕcio,* and *grădior, mōlior, pātior,* and *mŏrior:* but compare *mŏrior* in § 174, and *ŏrior,* and *pŏtior* in § 177.

Inceptive Verbs.

§ **173.** Inceptive verbs in general either want the third root, or adopt that of their primitives: (see § 187, II, 2). Of those derived from nouns and adjectives, some want the second root, and some form it by adding *u* to the root of the primitive.

In the following list, those verbs to which *s* is added, have a simple verb in use from which they are formed:—

*Acesco, ăcui, s. *to grow sour.*
*Ægresco, *to grow sick.*
*Albesco, —, s. *to grow white.*
*Alesco, —, s. *to grow.* coalesco, -alui, -alĭtum, *to grow together.*
*Ardesco, arsi, s. *to take fire.*
*Aresco, —, s. *to grow dry.* *exaresco, -arui. *So* inaresco, peraresco.
*Augesco, auxi, s. *to increase.*
*Călesco, cālui, s. *to grow warm.*
*Calvesco, —, s. *to become bald.*
*Candesco, candui, s. *to grow white.*
*Cānesco, cānui, s. *to become hoary.*
*Clāresco, clārui, s. *to become bright.*
*Condormisco, -dormīvi, s. *to go to sleep.*
*Conticesco, -tĭcui, *to become silent.*
*Crebresco, crēbui *and* crebrui, *to increase.*
*Crūdesco, crūdui, *to become violent.*
*Dītesco, —, *to grow rich.*
*Dulcesco, —, *to grow sweet.*
*Dūresco, dūrui, *to grow hard.*
*Evilesco, evīlui, *to become worthless.*
*Extĭmesco, -tĭmui, *to fear greatly.*
*Fātisco, —, *to gape.*
*Flaccesco, flaccui, s. *to wilt.*
*Fervesco, ferbui, s. *to grow hot.*
*Flōresco, flōrui, s. *to begin to flourish.*
*Frācesco, frācui, *to grow rancid.*
*Frīgesco, —, s. *to grow cold.* *perfrīgesco, -frixi. *So* refrīgesco.

*Frondesco, —, s. *to put forth leaves.*
*Frŭticesco, —, s. *to put forth shoots.*
*Gĕlasco, —, s. *to freeze.* So *congĕlasco, s. *to congeal.*
*Gĕmisco, —, s. *to begin to sigh.*
*Gemmasco, —, s. *to begin to bud.*
*Gĕnĕrasco, —, s. *to be produced.*
*Grandesco, —, *to grow large.*
*Grăvesco, —, s. *to grow heavy.*
*Hæresco, —, s. *to adhere.*
*Hĕbesco, —, s. *to grow dull.*
*Horresco, horrui, s. *to become rough.*
*Hūmesco, —, s. *to grow moist.*
*Ignesco, —, s. *to become inflamed.*
*Indŏlesco, -dŏlui, d. *to be grieved.*
*Insŏlesco, —, *to become haughty.*
*Intĕgrasco, —, *to be renewed.*
*Jŭvĕnesco, —, *to grow young.*
*Languesco, langui, s. *to grow languid.*
*Lăpĭdesco, —, *to become stone.*
*Lātesco, —, *to grow broad.*
*Lătesco, *to be concealed.* s. *delĭtesco, -lĭtui; *oblĭtesco, -lĭtui.
*Lentesco, —, *to become soft.*
*Līquesco, —, s. *to become liquid.* *delīquesco, -lĭcui.
*Lūcesco, —, s. *to grow light, to dawn.*
*Lŭtesco, —, s. *to become muddy.*
*Măcesco, —, s. } *to grow lean.*
*Macresco, —, s. }
   *remacresco, -macrui.
*Mădesco, mădui, s. *to grow moist.*

12*

*Marcesco, —, s. *to pine away.*
*Māturesco, mātūrui, *to ripen.*
*Mĭseresco, mĭserui, s. *to pity.*
*Mītesco, —, *to grow mild.*
*Mollesco, —, s. *to grow soft.*
*Mūtesco, —, *to become dumb.*   *obmūtesco, obmūtui.
*Nigresco, nigrui, s. *to grow black.*
*Nĭtesco, nĭtui, s. *to grow bright.*
*Nōtesco, nōtui, s. *to become known.*
*Obbrūtesco, —, *to become brutish.*
*Obdormisco, —, s. *to fall asleep.*
*Obsurdesco, -surdui, *to grow deaf.*
*Occallesco, -callui, *to become callous.*
*Olesco, (*scarcely used.*)   *ăbŏlesco, -ŏlēvi, s. *to cease.* ădŏlesco, -ŏlēvi, -ultum, s. *to grow up.* exŏlesco, -ŏlēvi, -ŏlētum, *to grow out of date.* So obsŏlesco. inŏlesco, -ŏlēvi, -ŏlĭtum, d. *to grow in or on.*
*Pallesco, pallui, s. *to grow pale.*
*Pătesco, pătui, s. *to be opened.*
*Păvesco, păvi, s. *to grow fearful.*
*Pertĭmesco, -tĭmui, d. *to fear greatly.*
*Pinguesco, —, *to grow fat.*
*Pūbesco, —, *to come to maturity.*
*Pŭerasco, —, *to become a boy.*
*Pūtesco, —, s. } *to become putrid.*
*Putresco, —, s. }
*Rāresco, —, *to become thin.*
*Rĕsĭpisco, -sĭpui, s. *to recover one's senses.*
*Rĭgesco, rĭgui, s. *to grow cold.*
*Rŭbesco, rŭbui, s. *to grow red.*   *ērŭbesco, -rŭbui, d.

*Sānesco, —, *to become sound.*   *consānesco, -sānni.
*Sĕnesco, sĕnui, s. d. *to grow old.* So consĕnesco.
*Sentisco, —, s. *to perceive.*
*Siccesco, —, *to become dry.*
*Sīlesco, sīlui, s. *to grow silent.*
*Sŏlĭdesco, —, *to become solid.*
*Sordesco, sordui, s. *to become filthy.*
*Splendesco, splendui, s. *to become bright.*
*Spūmesco, —, *to begin to foam.*
*Stĕrĭlesco, —, *to become barren.*
*Stŭpesco, stŭpui, s. *to become astonished.*
Suesco, suēvi, suētum, s. *to become accustomed.*
*Tābesco, tābui, s. *to waste away.*
*Tĕnĕresco *and* -asco, —, *to become tender.*
*Tĕpesco, tĕpui, s. *to grow warm.*
*Torpesco, torpui, s. *to grow torpid.*
*Trĕmisco, —, s. *to begin to tremble.*
*Tŭmesco, tŭmui, s. } *to begin to swell.*
*Turgesco, —, s. }
*Uvesco, —, *to become moist.*
*Vălesco, —, s. *to become strong.*
*Vānesco, —, *to vanish.*   *ēvānesco, ēvānui.
*Vĕtĕrasco, vĕtĕrāvi, *to grow old.*
*Vīresco, vīrui, s. *to grow green.*
*Vīvesco, vixi, s. *to come to life.*   *rĕvīvisco, -vixi.

§ 174.   *Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.*

Apiscor, aptus, *to get. The compounds change* ă *into* ĭ *in the first root, and into* e *in the third; as,* ădĭpiscor, ădeptus. *So* indĭpiscor.
Expergiscor, experrectus, *to awake.*
*Fătiscor, *to gape* or *crack open. The compounds change* ă *into* ĕ*; as,* dēfĕtiscor, -fessus.
Fruor, fruĭtus *or* fructus, fruĭtūrus, d. *to enjoy.*
Fungor, functus, r. d. *to perform.*
Grădior, gressus, *to walk. The compounds change* ă *into* ĕ*; as,* aggrĕdior, aggressus, r. d. *Inf. pres.* aggrĕdi *and* aggrĕdīri *; so,* progrĕdi *and* progrĕdīri *; and pres. ind.* ēgrĕdītur, *Plaut.*
*Irascor, *to be angry.*
Lābor, lapsus, r. *to fall.*
*Lĭquor, *to melt, flow.*
Lŏquor, lŏcūtus, r. d. *to speak.*
Mĭniscor, (*obsolete.*) commĭniscor, commentus, p. *to invent.*   *rĕmĭniscor, *to remember.*

Mŏrior, (mŏri, *rarely* mŏrīri,) mortuus, mŏrĭtūrus, d. *to die.* So ēmŏrĭri, *Plaut.* for emōri.
Nanciscor, nactus *or* nanctus *to obtain.*
Nascor, nātus, nascĭtūrus, u. *to be born.*
Nītor, nixus *or* nīsus, nīsūrus, *to lean upon.*
Oblīviscor, oblītus, d. p. *to forget.*
Pāciscor, pactus, d. *to bargain.* So dēpāciscor.
Pātior, passus, r. d. *to suffer.* perpĕtior, -pessus.
From plecto, *to twine, come,* amplector, amplexus, d. p. complector, complexus, p. *So* circumplector.
Prōfīciscor, prŏfectus, r. *to depart.*
Quĕror, questus, m. u. d. *to complain.*
*Ringor, *to snarl.*
Sĕquor, sĕcūtus, r. d. *to follow.*
Tuor, tūtus, *to protect.*
*Vescor, d. *to eat.*
Ulciscor, ultus, m. d. p. *to avenge.*
Utor, ūsus, r. d. *to use.*

Note. *Dēvertor, prævertor, rēvertor*, compounds of *verto*, are used as deponents in the present and imperfect tenses; *rēvertor* also, sometimes, in the perfect.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ **175.**   Verbs of the fourth conjugation regularly form their second root in *īv*, and their third in *īt;* as, aud*io*, audiv*i*, audīt*um*.

The following list contains most regular verbs of this conjugation:—

Audio, -īvi *or* -ii, m. u. r. d. *to hear.*
*Cio, cīvi, *to excite.* Cf. cieo, § 168.
Condio, -īvi *or* -ii, *to season.*
Custōdio, -īvi *or* -ii, d. *to guard.*
*Dormio, -īvi *or* -ii, m. r. d. *to sleep.*
Erūdio, -īvi *or* -ii, d. *to instruct.*
Expēdio, -īvi *or* -ii, d. *to disentangle.*
Fīnio, -īvi *or* -ii, r. d. *to finish.*
*Gestio, -īvi *or* -ii, *to exult; desire.*
Impēdio, -īvi *or* -ii, r. d. *to entangle.*
Insānio, -īvi *or* -ii, *to be mad.*
Irrētio, -īvi *or* ii, *to ensnare.*
Lēnio, -īvi *or* ii, d. *to mitigate.*
Mollio, -īvi *or* -ii, d. *to soften.*

*Mūgio, -īvi *or* -ii, *to bellow.*
Mūnio, -īvi *or* -ii, r. d. *to fortify.*
Mūtio, -īvi, *to mutter.*
Nūtrio, -īvi *or* -ii, d. *to nourish.*
Partio, -īvi *or* -ii, r. *to divide.*
Pōlio, -īvi *or* -ii, d. *to polish.*
Pūnio, -īvi *or* -ii, d. *to punish.*
Rēdīmio, -īvi, *to crown.*
Scio, -īvi, u. r. *to know.*
Servio, -īvi *or* -ii, m. r. d. *to serve.*
Sōpio, -īvi *or* -ii, *to lull asleep.*
Stābīlio, -īvi *or* -ii, *to establish.*
Tinnio, -īvi *or* -ii, r. *to tinkle.*
Vestio, -īvi *or* -ii, *to clothe.*

§ **176.**   The following list contains those verbs of the fourth conjugation which form their second and third roots irregularly, and those which want either or both of them.

Remark. The principal irregularity in verbs of the fourth conjugation arises from following the analogy of those verbs of the third conjugation whose first root ends in a consonant; as, *sēpio, sepsi, septum.* A few become irregular by syncope; as, *vĕnio, vēni, ventum.*

Amīcio, -ui *or* -xi, amictum, d. *to clothe.*
*Balbūtio, —, *to stammer.*
Bullio, ii, ītum, *to bubble.*
*Cæcūtio, —, *to be dim-sighted.*
*Cambio, —, *to exchange.*
*Dementio, —, *to be mad.*
Effūtio, —, *to babble.*
Eo, īvi *or* ii, ītum, r. d. *to go.* The compounds have only ii *in the perfect, except* ŏbeo, præeo, *and* sŭbeo, *which have* īvi *or* ii. *All the compounds want the supine and perfect participles, except* ădeo, ambio, īneo, ŏbeo, prætēreo, sŭbeo, circŭmeo *or* circueo, rĕdeo, transeo, *and* *†vēneo, vēnii, r. (*from* vēnum eo), *to be sold.*
Farcio, farsi, fartum *or* farctum, *to cram. The compounds generally change* a *to* e; *as,* rĕfercio, -fersi, -fertum, *but* con- *and* ef-, -farcio *and* -fercio.
Fastīdio, -ii, -ītum, d. *to loathe.*
*Fērio, —, d. *to strike.*

*Fĕrōcio, —, *to be fierce.*
Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, d. *to prop up.*
*Gannio, —, *to yelp, bark.*
*Glōcio, —, *to cluck as a hen.*
*Glūtio, īvi, *or* glūtii, *to swallow.*
Grandio, —, *to make great.*
*Grunnio, grunnii, *to grunt.*
Haurio, hausi, *rar.* haurii, haustum, *rar.* hausītum, haustūrus, hausūrus, u. d. *to draw.*
*Hinnio, —, *to neigh.*
*Ineptio, —, *to trifle.*
*Lascīvio, lascīvii, *to be wanton.*
*Līgūrio, līgūrii, *to feed delicately.*
*Lippio, —, r. *to be blear-eyed.*
*Obēdio, obēdii, r. *to obey.*
Pārio *is of the third conjugation, but its compounds are of the fourth, changing* ă *to* ĕ; *as,* ăpĕrio, ăpĕrui, ăpertum, r. d. *to open.* So ŏpĕrio, d. compĕrio, compĕri, compertum, *rarely dep.* compĕrior, *to find out.* So rĕpĕrio, r. d.

Păvio, —, păvītum, *to beat.*
*Prūrio, —, *to itch.*
Queo, quīvi *or* quii, quītum, *to be able.*
So *nĕqueo.
*Raucio, —, r. *to be hoarse.*
*Rŭgio, —, *to roar as a lion.*
Saevio, saevii, ītum, r. *to rage.*
*Sāgio, —, *to perceive keenly.*
*Salio, sălui *or* sălii, *to leap. The compounds change ă into ĭ; as,* *absĭlio, —. *So* circumsĭlio. *assĭlio, -ui. *So* dissĭlio, insĭlio. *dēsĭlio, -ui *or* -ii. *So* exsĭlio, rĕsĭlio, subsĭlio. *transĭlio, -ui *or* -īvi, d. *So* prōsĭlio.
Sălio, —, ītum, r. d. *to salt.*
Sancio, sanxi, sancītum *or* sanctum, d. *to ratify, sanction.*

Sarcio, sarsi, sartum, d. *to patch.*
Sarrio, -īvi *or* -ui, sarrītum, d. *to weed, hoe.*
*Scătūrio, —, *to gush out.*
Sentio, sensi, sensum, r. *to feel.*
Sĕpĕlio, sĕpĕlīvi *or* -ii, *rar.* sĕpĕli, sĕpultum, r. d. *to bury.*
Sēpio, sepsi, septum, d. *to hedge in.*
*Singultio, —, *to sob, hiccup.*
*Sĭtio, sĭtii, *to thirst.*
Suffio, -ii, -ītum, d. *to fumigate.*
*Tussio, —, *to cough.*
*Vāgio, vāgii, *to cry.*
Vĕnio, vēni, ventum, r. *to come.*
Vincio, vinxi, vinctum, r. d. *to bind.*

NOTE. Desiderative verbs want both the second and third roots, except these three ;—*ēsŭrio, —, ēsŭrītus, r. to desire to eat; *nuptŭrio, -īvi, to desire to marry; *partŭrio, -īvi, to be in travail. See § 187, II. 3.

§ **177.** *Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.*

Assentior, assensus, r. d. p. *to assent.*
Blandior, blandītus, *to flatter.*
Largior, largītus, p. *to give, bestow.*
Mentior, mentītus, r. p. *to lie.*
Mētior, mensus *or* mētītus, d. p. *to measure.*
Mōlior, mōlītus, d. *to strive, toil.*
Ordior, orsus, d. p. *to begin.*
Orior, ortus, ōrītūrus, d. *to spring up. Except in the present infinitive, this verb seems to be of the third conjugation.*

Pĕrior, (*obs. whence* pĕrītus.) expĕrior, expertus, r. d. *to try.* oppĕrior, oppertus *or* oppĕrītus, d. *to wait for.*
Partior, partītus, d. *to divide.*
Pŏtior, pŏtītus, r. d. *to obtain, enjoy. In the poets the present indicative and imperfect subjunctive are sometimes of the third conjugation.*
Sortior, sortītus, r. *to cast lots.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ **178.** Irregular verbs are such as deviate from the common forms in some of the parts derived from the first root.

They are *sum, vŏlo, fĕro, ĕdo, fĭo, eo, queo,* and their compounds.

Sum and its compounds have already been conjugated. See § 153. In the conjugation of the rest, the parts which are irregular are fully exhibited, but a synopsis only, of the other parts is, in general, given. Some parts of *volo* and of its compounds are wanting.

1. *Vŏlo* is irregular only in the present of the indicative and infinitive, and in the present and imperfect of the subjunctive.

REMARK. It is made irregular partly by syncope, and partly by a change in the vowel of the root. In the present infinitive also and in the imperfect subjunctive, after ĕ was dropped, r following l was changed into l; as, velĕre (velre) velle; velĕrem (velrem) vellem.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	
vŏ'-lŏ,	vel'-lĕ,	vŏl'-u-ī,	*to be willing, to wish.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. S. vŏ′-lŏ, vīs, vult;　　　　　　*Perf.*　　vŏl′-u-ī.
　　P. vŏl′-ŭ-mŭs, vul′-tĭs, vŏ′-lunt.　*Plup.*　　vŏ-lu′-ĕ-ram.
Imperf. vŏ-lē′-bam, vŏ-lē′-bās, *etc.*　*Fut. perf.* vŏ-lu′-ĕ-rŏ.
Fut.　vŏ′-lam, vŏ′-lēs, *etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.　S. vĕ′-lim, vĕ′-lĭs, vĕ′-lĭt;　　　*Perf.* vŏ-lu′-ĕ-rim.
　　　P. vĕ-lī′-mŭs, vĕ-lī′-tĭs, vĕ′-lint.　*Plup.* vŏl-u-is′-sem.
Imperf. S. vel′-lem, vel′-lēs, vel′-lĕt;
　　　P. vel-lē′-mŭs, vel-lē′-tĭs, vel′-lent.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. vel′-lĕ.	*Pres.* vŏ′-lens.
Perf. vŏl-u-is′-sĕ.	

NOTE. *Volt* and *voltis*, for *vult* and *vultis*, and *vin'*, for *visne* are found in Plautus and other ancient authors.

2. *Nōlo* is compounded of the obsolete *nē* (for *non*) and *vŏlo*. The v of *vŏlo* after *nē* is dropped, and the vowels (*ē ŏ*) are contracted into *ō*.

Pres. Indic.　　*Pres. Infin.*　　*Perf. Indic.*
nō′-lŏ,　　　　nol′-lĕ,　　　　nōl′-u-ī,　　*to be unwilling.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. S. nō′-lŏ, non′-vīs, non′-vult;　　*Perf.*　　nōl′-u-ī.
　　P. nōl′-ŭ-mŭs, non-vul′-tĭs, nō′-lunt.　*Plup.*　　nō-lu′-ĕ-ram.
Imperf. nō-lē′-bam, -bās, -băt, *etc.*　*Fut. perf.* nō-lu′-ĕ-rŏ.
Fut.　nō′-lam, -lēs, -lĕt, *etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.　S. nō′-lim, nō′-lĭs, nō′-lĭt;　　　*Perf.* nō-lu′-ĕ-rim.
　　　P. nō-lī′-mŭs, nō-lī′-tĭs, nō′-lint.　*Plup.* nōl-u-is′-sem.
Imperf. S. nol′-lem, nol′-lēs, nol′-lĕt;
　　　P. nol-lē′-mŭs, nol-lē′-tĭs, nol′-lent.

IMPERATIVE.

　　　Present.　　　　　　　*Future.*
Sing. 2. nō′-lī;　*Plur.* nō-lī-tĕ.　*Sing.* 2. nō-lī-tō′-tĕ,　*Plur.* nōl-ī-tō′-tĕ,
　　　　　　　　　　　　　3. nō-lī′-tŏ;　　　nō-lun′-tŏ.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. nol′-lĕ.	*Pres.* nō′-lens.
Perf. nōl-u-is′-sĕ.	

NOTE. In *non-vis, non-vult*, etc. of the present, *non* takes the place of *ne*, but *nĕvis* and *nĕvolt* also occur in Plautus.

3. *M ā́lo* is compounded of *mă̆gis* and *vŏlo.* In composition *mă̆gis* drops its final syllable, and *vŏlo* its *v.* The vowels (*ă̆ ŏ*) are then contracted into *ā.*

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*
mā́-lŏ,	mal'-lĕ,	māl'-u-ī, *to prefer.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. S.	mā́-lŏ, mā́-vīs, mā́-vult;		*Perf.*	māl'-u-ī.
P.	māl'-ŭ-mŭs, mā-vul'-tĭs, mā́-lunt.		*Plup.*	mā-lu'-ĕ-ram.
Imperf.	mā-lḗ-bam, -bās, *etc.*		*Fut. perf.*	mā-lu'-ĕ-rŏ.
Fut.	mā́-lam, -lēs, *etc.*			

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	*S.*	mā́-lim, mā́-līs, mā́-lĭt;	*Perf.*	mā-lu'-ĕ-rim.
	P.	mā-lī'-mŭs, mā-lī'-tĭs, mā́-lint.	*Plup.*	māl-u-is'-sem.
Imperf.	*S.*	mal'-lem, mal'-lēs, mal'-lĕt;		
	P.	mal-lḗ-mŭs, mal-lḗ-tĭs, mal'-lent.		

INFINITIVE.

Pres. mal'-lĕ.	*Perf.* māl-u-is'-sĕ.

NOTE. *Măvŏlo, măvŏlunt; măvŏlet; măvĕlim, măvĕlis, măvĕlit;* and *măvellem;* for *mălo, mălunt,* etc., occur in Plautus.

§ **179.**   *Fĕro* is irregular in two respects:—1. Its second and third roots are not derived from the first, but from otherwise obsolete verbs, viz. *tŭlo* for *tollo,* and *tlao,* sup. *tlātum,* by aphæresis, *lātum:*— 2. In the present infinitive active, in the imperfect subjunctive, and in certain parts of the present indicative and imperative, of both voices, the connecting vowel is omitted. In the present infinitive passive, *r* is doubled.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
Pres. Indic. fĕ́-rŏ, (*to bear.*)	*Pres. Indic.* fĕ́-rŏr, (*to be borne.*)
Pres. Infin. fer'-rĕ,	*Pres. Infin.* fer'-rī,
Perf. Indic. tŭ́-lī,	*Perf. Part.* lā́-tŭs.
Supine. lā́-tum.	

INDICATIVE.

Present.

S. fĕ́-rŏ, fers, fert;		fĕ́-rŏr, fer'-rīs *or* -rĕ, fer'-tŭr;
P. fĕr'-ĭ-mŭs, fer'-tĭs, fĕ́-runt.		fĕr'-ĭ-mŭr, fĕ-rĭm'-ĭ-nī, fĕ-run'-tŭr.

Imperf.	fĕ-rḗ-bam.		*Imperf.*	fĕ-rḗ-băr.
Fut.	fĕ́-ram, -rēs, *etc.*		*Fut.*	fĕ́-rār, -rḗ-rĭs *or* -rḗ-rĕ, *etc.*
Perf.	tŭ́-lī.		*Perf.*	lā́-tŭs sum *or* fu'-ī.
Plup.	tŭ́lĕ-ram.		*Plup.*	lā́-tŭs ĕ́-ram *or* fu'-ĕ-ram.
Fut. perf.	tŭ́-lĕ-rŏ		*Fut. perf.*	lā́-tŭs ĕ́-rŏ *or* fu'-ĕ-rŏ.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	fĕ'-ram, -rās, *etc.*	*Pres.*	fĕ'-răr, -rā'-rĭs *or* -rā'-rĕ, *etc.*
Imperf.	fer'-rem, -rēs, *etc.*	*Imperf.*	fer'-rĕr, -rē'-rĭs, *etc.*
Perf.	tŭ'-lĕ-rim.	*Perf.*	lā'-tŭs sim *or* fu'-ĕ-rim.
Plup.	tŭ-lis'-sem.	*Plup.*	lā'-tŭs es'-sem *or* fu-is'-sem.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. S.	fĕr,	*P.* fer'-tĕ.	*Pres.* S. fer'-rĕ,	*P.* fĕ-rĭm'-ĭ-nī.
Fut. S.	fer'-tŏ,	*P.* fer-tō'-tĕ,		
	fer'-tŏ;	fĕ-run'-tŏ.	*Fut.* S. fer'-tŏr,	*P.* (fĕ-rēm'-ĭ-nī.)
			fer'-tŏr.	fĕ-run'-tŏr.

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	fer'-rĕ.	*Pres.*	fer'-rī.
Perf.	tŭ-lis'-sĕ.	*Perf.*	lā'-tus es'-sĕ *or* fu-is'-sĕ.
Fut.	lā-tū'-rŭs es'-sĕ.	*Fut.*	lā'-tum ī'-rī.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	fĕ'-rens.	*Perf.*	lā'-tŭs.
Fut.	lā-tū'-rŭs.	*Fut.*	fĕ-ren'-dŭs.

GERUND.

fĕ-ren'-dī, *etc.*

SUPINES.

Former. lā'-tum.	*Latter.* lā'-tū.

NOTE. In the comic writers the following reduplicated forms are found in parts derived from the second root, viz. *tetŭli, tetulisti, tetŭlit, tetulērunt; tetulĕro, tetulĕrit; tetulissem,* and *tetulisse.*

§ **180.** *Fīo,* 'to become,' is properly a neuter verb of the third conjugation, having only the parts derived from the first root; but it is used also as a passive of *făcio,* from which it takes those parts of the passive which are derived from the third root, together with the participle in *dus.* The infinitive present has been changed from the regular form *fiĕrĕ* to *fiĕrĭ.*

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*	
fī'-ŏ,	fī'-ĕ-rī,	fac'-tŭs,	*to be made or to become.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. S. fī'-ŏ, fīs, fīt ;		*Perf.*	fac'-tŭs sum *or* fu'-ī.
P. fī-mŭs, fī'-tĭs, fī'-unt.		*Plup.*	fac'-tŭs ĕ'-ram *or* fu'-ĕ-ram.
Imperf. fī-ē'-bam, fī-ē'-bās, *etc.*		*Fut. perf.* fac'-tŭs ĕ'-rŏ *or* fu'-ĕ-rŏ.
Fut. fī'-am, fī'-ēs, *etc.*			

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. fī'-am, fī'-ās, *etc.*		*Perf.* fac'-tŭs sim *or* fu'-ĕ-rim.
Imp. fī'-ĕ-rem, -ĕ'-rēs, *etc.*		*Plup.* fac'-tŭs es'-sem *or* fu-is'-sem.

IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.

Pres. Sing. fī ;   *Plur.* fī'-tĕ.

Pres. fī'-ĕ-rī.
Perf. fac'-tŭs es'-sĕ *or* fu-is'-sĕ.
Fut. fac'-tum ĭ'-rī.

PARTICIPLES.	SUPINE.

Perf. fac'-tŭs.
Fut. fă-ci-en'-dŭs.

Latter. fac'-tū.

NOTE. The compounds of *făcio* which retain *a*, have also *fio* in the passive; as, *calefăcio*, to warm; passive, *calefīo* ; but those which change *a* into *i* form the passive regularly. (Cf. *fucio* in the list, § 172.) Yet *confit*, *dēfit*, and *infit*, occur. See § 183, 12, 13, 14.

§ **181.** *Edo*, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation ; but in the present of the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, and in the imperfect of the subjunctive, it has also forms similar to those of the corresponding tenses of *sum :—* Thus.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

S. ĕ'-dŏ,	ĕ'-dīs,	ĕ'-dĭt,
	(*or* ēs,	est) ;
P. ĕd'-ĭ-mŭs,	ĕd'-ĭ-tĭs,	ĕ'-dunt.
	(*or* es'-tĭs),	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

S. ĕd'-ĕ-rem,	ĕd'-ĕ-rēs,	ĕd'-ĕ-rĕt,
(*or* es'-sem,	es'-sēs,	es'-sĕt) ;
P. ĕd-ĕ-rē'-mŭs,	ĕd-ĕ-rē'-tĭs,	ĕd'-ĕ-rent,
(*or* es-sē'-mŭs,	es-sē'-tĭs,	es'-sent).

IMPERATIVE.

Pres, S. ĕ'-dĕ,	P. ĕd'-ĭ-tĕ,
(*or* ēs ;	es'-tĕ).
Fut. S. ĕd'-ĭ-tŏ,	P. ĕd-ĭ-tō'-tĕ, ĕ-dun'-tŏ.
(*or* es'-tŏ,	es-tō'-tĕ).

INFINITIVE.

Pres. ĕd'-ĕ-rĕ, (*or* es'-sĕ).

PASSIVE.

Pres.	ĕd'-ĭ-tŭr,	(*or* es'-tŭr).
Imperf.	ĕd-ĕ-rē'-tŭr,	(*or* es-sē'-tŭr).

NOTE. (*a*.) In the present subjunctive, *ĕdim*, *ĕdis*, etc., are found, for *ĕdam*, *ĕdās*, etc.

(*b*.) In the compounds of *ĕdo*, also, forms resembling those of *sum* occur. *Ambĕdo* has the participles *ambens* and *ambēsus* ; *comĕdo* has *comēsus*, *comesūrus*, and rarely *comestus* ; and *adĕdo* and *exĕdo* have *adēsus* and *exēsus*.

§ 182. *Eo* is irregular in the parts which, in other verbs are formed from the first root, except the imperfect subjunctive and the present infinitive. In these, and in the parts formed from the second and third roots, it is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

NOTE. *Eo* has no first root, and the parts usually derived from that root, consist, in this verb, of terminations only.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	*Perf. Part.*	
e′-ŏ,	ī′-rĕ,	ī′-vī,	ĭ′-tum,	*to go.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	S. e′-ŏ, īs, ĭt ;		*Fut.*	ī′-bŏ, ī′-bĭs, ī′-bĭt, *etc.*
	P. ī′-mŭs, ī′-tĭs, e′-unt.		*Perf.*	ī′-vī, ī-vis′-tī, ī′-vĭt, *etc.*
Imperf.	S. ī′-bam, ī′-bās, ī′-băt ;		*Plup.*	īv′-ĕ-ram, īv′-ĕ-rās, *etc.*
	P. ī-bā′-mŭs, *etc.*		*Fut. perf.*	īv′-ĕ-rŏ, īv′-ĕ-rĭs, *etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	e′-am, e′-ās, e′-ăt, *etc.*	*Perf.*	īv′-ĕ-rim, īv′-ĕ-rĭs, *etc.*
Imperf.	ī′-rem, ī′-rēs, ī′-rĕt, *etc.*	*Plup.*	ī-vis′-sem, ī-vis′-sēs, *etc.*

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.
Pres. S. ī, P. ī′-tē.		*Pres.* ī′-rĕ.
Fut. 2. ī′-tŏ, ī-tō′-tĕ,		*Perf.* ī-vis′-sĕ.
3. ī′-tŏ ; e-un′-tŏ.		*Fut.* ī-tū′-rŭs es′-sĕ.

PARTICIPLES.	GERUND.
Pres. ī′-ens, (*gen.* e-un′-tĭs.)	e-un′-dī,
Fut. ī-tū′-rŭs, a, um.	e-un′-dŏ, *etc.*

REMARK 1. In some of the compounds the forms *eam, ies, iet* occur, though rarely, in the future; as, *redeam, redies, abiet, exiet, prodient*. *Istis, issem,* and *isse,* are formed by contraction for *ivistis, ivissem,* and *ivisse*. See § 162, 7.

REM. 2. In the passive voice are found the infinitive *īri,* and the third persons singular *ĭtur, ĭbātur, ĭbitur, ĭtum est,* etc.; *eātur, irētur, eundum est,* etc., which are used impersonally. See § 184, 2, (*a.*)

REM. 3. The compounds of *eo,* including *vēneo,* are conjugated like the simple verb, but most of them have *ii* in the perfect rather than *īvi*. See under *eo* in § 176. *Adeo, anteeo, ineo, prætereo, sŭbeo,* and *transeo,* being used actively, are found in the passive voice. *Iniētur* occurs as a future passive of *ineo*. *Ambio* is regular, like *audio,* but has either *ambībat* or *ambiēbat*.

NOTE. *Queo,* I can, and *nequeo,* I cannot, are conjugated like *eo,* but they want the imperative mood and the gerund, and their participles rarely occur. They are sometimes found in the passive voice, before an infinitive passive.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 183. (1.) Defective verbs are those which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, or persons.

REMARK. There are many verbs which are not found in all the tenses, numbers, and persons, exhibited in the paradigms. Some, not originally defective, are accounted so, because they do not occur in the classics now extant. Others are in their nature defective. Thus, the first and second persons of the passive voice must be wanting in many verbs, from the nature of their signification.

(2.) The following list contains such verbs as are remarkable for wanting many of their parts:—

1. Odi, *I hate.*
2. Cœpi, *I have begun.*
3. Mĕmĭni, *I remember.*
4. Aio, } *I say.*
5. Inquam, }
6. Fāri, *to speak.*
7. Quæso, *I pray.*
8. Ave, } *hail,* or
9. Salve, } *farewell.*
10. Apăge, *begone.*
11. Cĕdo, *tell,* or *give me.*
12. Confit, *it is done.*
13. Dĕfit, *it is wanting.*
14. Infit, *he begins.*
15. Ovat, *he rejoices.*

1. *Odi, cœpi,* and *memĭni* are used chiefly in the perfect and in the other parts formed from the second root, and are thence called *preteritive* verbs. *Odi* has also a deponent form in the perfect:— Thus,

> IND. *perf.* ŏ′-di *or* ŏ′-sus sum; *plup.* ōd′-ĕ-ram; *fut. perf.* ōd′-ĕ-ro.
> SUBJ. *perf.* ōd′-ĕ-rim; *plup.* ō-dis′-sem.
> INF. *perf.* ō-dis′-se; *fut.* ō-sū′-rum es′-se.
> PART. *fut.* ō-sū′-rus; *perf.* ŏ′-sus.

NOTE 1. *Exōsus* and *pĕrōsus,* like *ōsus,* are used actively. *Odivit,* for *ōdit,* occurs, M. Anton. in Cic. Phil. 13, 19: and *odiendi* in Appuleius.

2. IND. *perf.* cœ′-pi; *plup.* cœp′-ĕ-ram; *fut. perf.* cœp′-ĕ-ro.
> SUBJ. *perf.* cœp′-ĕ-rim; *plup.* cœ-pis′-sem.
> INF. *perf.* cœ-pis′-se; *fut.* cœp-tū′-rum es′-se.
> PART. *fut.* cœp-tū′-rus; *perf.* cœp′-tus.

NOTE 2. In Plautus are found a present, *cœpio,* present subjunctive, *cœpiam,* and infinitive, *cœpĕre.* Before an infinitive passive, *cœptus est,* etc., rather than *cœpi,* etc., are commonly used.

3. IND. *perf.* mĕm′-ĭ-ni; *plup.* mĕ-mĭn′-ĕ-ram; *fut. perf.* mĕ-mĭn′-ĕ-ro.
> SUBJ. *perf.* mĕ-mĭn′-ĕ-rim; *plup.* mĕm-ĭ-nis′-sem.
> INF. *perf.* mĕm-ĭ-nis′-sĕ.
> IMPERAT. 2 *pers. S.* mĕ-men′-to; *P.* mĕm-en-tō′-tĕ.

NOTE 3. *Odi* and *memĭni* have, in the perfect, the sense of the present, and, in the pluperfect and future perfect, the sense of the imperfect and future; as, *fugiet atque odĕrit.* Cic. In this respect, *nōvi,* I know, the perfect of *nosco,* to learn, and *consuĕvi,* I am wont, the perfect of *consuesco,* I accustom myself, agree with *ōdi* and *memĭni.*

4. IND. *pres.* ai′-o,* a′-ĭs, a′-ĭt; ——, ——, ai′-unt.*
> —— *imp.* ai-ē′-bam, ai-ē′-bās, ai-ē′-băt; ai-ē-bā′-mŭs, ai-ē-bā′-tĭs, ai-ē′-bant.
> SUBJ. *pres.*——, ai′-ās, ai′-ăt; ——, ——, ai′-ant.
> IMPERAT. *pres.* a′-ī. PART. *pres.* ai′-ens.

NOTE 4. *Ais* with *ne* is contracted to *ain'* like *vĭden', ăbĭn':* for *vĭdesne, abisne.* The comic writers use the imperfect *aibas, aibat* and *aibant,* which are dissyllabic.

5. IND. *pres.* in′-quam, in′-quĭs, in′-quĭt; in′-quĭ-mŭs, in′-quĭ-tĭs, in′-quĭ-unt.
> ——*imp.*——, ——, in-qui-ē′-băt, *and* in-quī -băt; ——, ——, in-qui-ē′-bant.
> —— *fut.* ——, in′-qui-ēs, in′-qui-ĕt; ——, ——, ——.
> —— *perf.* ——, in-quis′-tī, in-quĭt; ——, ——, ——.
> SUBJ. *pres.* ——, in′-qui-ās, in′-qui-ăt; ——, in-qui-ā′-tĭs, in′-qui-ant.
> IMPERAT. in′-quĕ, in′-quĭ-to.

6. IND. *pres.* ——, ——, fã′-tŭr; *fut.* fã′-bŏr, ——, fãb′-ĭ-tŭr.
> —— *perf.* fãtus est; *plup.* fãtus ĕram.
> IMPERAT. fã′-rĕ. PART. *pres.* fans; *perf.* fã′-tŭs; *fut.* fan′-dŭs.
> INFIN. *pres.* fã′-rī *or* fã′-ri-ĕr. GERUND. *gen.* fan′-dī; *abl.* fan′-dō.
> SUPINE, fã′-tū.

———

* Pronounced *a′-yo, a′-yunt,* etc., wherever the diphthong *ai* is followed by a vowel. See § 9, 1.

Interf āri has the forms *interf ātur, interf āta est, interf āri, interfans*, and *interf ātus.*—*Eff āri* has *eff ābor, effabēre, eff ātus est, eff āti sunt*; imperat. *eff āre*; *eff āri, eff ātus, effandus, effando*; *eff ātu.*—*Præf āri* occurs in the following forms, *præf ātur, præf āmur*; *præfabuntur*; *præf ārer*; *præfarentur*; *præf āti sŭmus*; *præf ātus fuĕro*; imperat. *præf āto, præf ā-mino*; *præfans, præf ātus, præfandus*; *præfando.*—*Prōf āri* has *prof ātur, prof āta est, prof āta sunt, prof ātus* and *prōfans.*

7. IND. *pres.* quæ′-so, ——, quæ′-sīt; quæs′-ŭ-mŭs, ——, ——.
   INF. *pres.* quæs′-ĕ-rĕ.

8. IMPERAT. ă′-vē, ă-vē′-tĕ; ă-vē′-to.   INF. ă-vē′-rĕ.
   NOTE. *Avēre* and *salvēre* are often used with *jŭbeo*.

9. IND. *pres.* sal′-ve-o; *fut.* sal-vē′-bĭs.   INF. *pres.* sal-vē′-rĕ.
   IMPERAT. sal′-vē, sal-vē′-tĕ; sal-vē′-to.

10. IMPERAT. ăp′-ă-gĕ.   So *ăge* with a subject either singular or plural.

11. IMPERAT. *sing.* cĕ′-do; *pl.* cet′-tĕ *for* cĕd-ĭ-tĕ.   *Hence* cĕdodum.

12. IND. *pres.* con′-fīt; *fut.* con-fī′-et.
    SUBJ. *pres.* con-fī′-ăt; *imperf.* con-fī′-ĕ-rĕt.   INF. *pres.* con-fī′-ĕ-rī.

13. IND. *pres.* dē′-fīt; *pl.* dē-fī′-unt; *fut.* dē-fī′-ĕt.   SUBJ. *pres.* dē-fī′-ăt.
    INF. *pres.* dē-fī′-ĕ-rī.   *So* ef-fī′-ĕ-rī, *and* in-ter-fī′-ĕ-rī.   *Plaut.*; *and* in-ter-fī′-at.   *Lucr.*

14. IND. *pres.* in′-fīt; *pl.* in-fī′-unt.

15. IND. *pres.* ŏ′-văt.   SUBJ. *pres.* ŏ′-vĕt; *imperf.* ŏ-vā′-rĕt.
    PART. *pres.* ŏ′-vans; *perf.* ŏ-vā′-tŭs; *fut.* ŏv-ā-tū′-rŭs.   GERUND, ŏ-van′-dī.

REMARK 1. Among defective verbs are sometimes, also, included the follow-ing:—*Fŏrem, fŏres*, etc., *f rĕ*, (see § 154, R. 3.) *Ausim, ausīs, ausit*; *ausint.* *Faxo* and *faxim, faxīs, faxit*; *faxīmus, faxītis, faxint.* *Faxem.* The form in *o* is an old future perfect; that in *im* a perfect, and that in *em* a pluperfect sub-junctive. See § 162, 7, (*c.*), and 9.

REM. 2. In the present tense, the first person singular, *fŭro*, to be mad, and *dor* and *der*, from *do*, to give, are not used. So in the imperative *scī, cŭpe* and *polle*, from *scio, cŭpio*, and *polleo*, do not occur.

REM. 3. A few words, sometimes classed with defectives, are formed by contraction from a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *sīs* for *si vis, sultis* for *si vultis, sōdes* for *si audes* (for *audies.*)

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ **184.** (*a.*) Impersonal verbs are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a *personal* subject.

(*b.*) The subject of an impersonal verb in the active voice is, for the most part, either an infinitive, or an infinitive or subjunctive clause; but in English the neuter pronoun, *it*, commonly stands before the verb, and represents such clause; as, *me delectat* scribĕre, *it* delights me *to write.* Sometimes an accusa-tive depending on an impersonal verb takes, in English, the place of a sub-ject; as, *me misĕret tui*, I pity thee.

1. Impersonal verbs in the active voice are conjugated in the sev-eral conjugations like *delectat*, it delights; *dĕcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *evĕnit*, it happens; thus:—

		1st *Conj.*	2d *Conj.*	3d *Conj.*	4th *Conj.*
IND.	*Pres.*	delectat,	dĕcet,	contingit,	evĕnit,
	Imp.	delectābat,	decēbat,	contingēbat,	eveniēbat,
	Fut.	delectābit,	decēbit,	continget,	eveniet,
	Perf.	delectāvit,	decuit,	contĭgit,	evĕnit,
	Plup.	delectavĕrat,	decuĕrat,	contigĕrat,	evenĕrat,
	Fut. perf.	delectavĕrit.	decuĕrit.	contigĕrit.	evenĕrit.
SUB.	*Pres.*	delectet,	deceat,	contingat,	eveniat,
	Imp.	delectāret,	decēret,	contingĕret,	evenīret,
	Perf.	delectavĕrit,	decuĕrit,	contigĕrit,	evenĕrit,
	Plup.	delectavisset.	decuisset.	contigisset.	evenisset.
INF.	*Pres.*	delectāre,	decēre,	contingĕre,	evenīre,
	Perf.	delectavisse.	decuisse.	contigisse.	evenisse.

2. (*a.*) Most *neuter* and many *active* verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, by changing the personal subject of the active voice into an ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*; as,

Illi pugnant; or *pugnātur ab illis,* they fight. *Illi quœrunt,* or *quœritur ab illis,* they ask. Cf. § 141, Rem. 2.

(*b.*) In the passive form, the subject in English is, commonly, either the *agent*, expressed or understood, or an *abstract* noun formed from the verb; as,

Pugnātum est, we, they, etc. fought; or, the *battle* was fought. *Concurritur,* the *people* run together; or, there is a *concourse*.

(*c.*) Sometimes the English subject in the passive form is, in Latin, an oblique case dependent on the verb; as, *favētur tibi,* thou art favored.

The following are the forms of impersonal verbs in the several conjugations of the passive voice:—

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	pugnātur,	favētur,	currĭtur,	venītur,
Imp.	pugnabātur,	favebātur,	currebātur,	veniebātur,
Fut.	pugnabĭtur,	favebĭtur,	currētur,	veniētur,
Perf.	pugnātum est or fuit,	fautum est or fuit,	cursum est or fuit,	ventum est or fuit,
Plup.	pugnātum ĕrat or fuĕrat,	fautum ĕrat or fuĕrat,	cursum ĕrat or fuĕrat,	ventum ĕrat or fuĕrat,
Fut. p.	pugnātum ĕrit or fuĕrit.	fautum ĕrit or fuĕrit.	cursum ĕrit or fuĕrit.	ventum ĕrit or fuĕrit.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	pugnētur,	faveātur,	currātur,	veniātur,
Imp.	pugnarētur,	faverētur,	currerētur,	venirētur,
Perf.	pugnātum sit or fuĕrit,	fautum sit or fuĕrit,	cursum sit or fuĕrit,	ventum sit or fuĕrit,
Plup.	pugnātum esset or fuisset.	fautum esset or fuisset.	cursum esset or fuisset.	ventum esset or fuisset.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	pugnāri,	favēri,	curri,	venīri,
Perf.	pugnātum esse or fuisse,	fautum esse or fuisse,	cursum esse or fuisse,	ventum esse or fuisse,
Fut.	pugnātum īri.	fautum īri.	cursum īri.	ventum īri.

3. In like manner, in the periphrastic conjugation, the neuter gender of the participle in *dus*, both of active and neuter verbs, is used impersonally with *est*, etc., and the *dative* of the person ; as, *mihi scribendum fuit,* I have been obliged to write ; *moriendum est omnĭbus,* all must die. See § 162, 15, R. 5.

REMARK 1. Grammarians usually reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, all of which are of the second conjugation, viz. *dĕcet, libet, licet, liquet, misĕret, oportet, piget, pænĭtet, pŭdet,* and *tædet.* (See § 169.) Four of these, *dĕcet, libet, licet,* and *liquet* occur also in the third person plural, but without personal subjects. There seems, however, to be no good reason for distinguishing the verbs above enumerated from other impersonal verbs. The following are such other verbs as are most commonly used impersonally :—

(*a.*) In the first conjugation :—

Constat, *it is evident.*
Jŭvat, *it delights.*
Præstat, *it is better.*
Restat, *it remains.*
Stat, *it is resolved.*

Văcat, *there is leisure.*
Certātur, *there is a contention.*
Peccātur, *a fault is committed.*

Pugnātur, *a battle is fought.*
Stātur, *they stand firm.*

(*b.*) In the second conjugation :—

Appāret, *it appears.*
Attĭnet, *it belongs to.*
Displĭcet, *it displeases.*
Dŏlet, *it grieves.*
Miserētur, *it distresses.*
Pătet, *it is plain.*

Pertĭnet, *it pertains.*
Plăcet, *it pleases.*
Flētur, *we, etc. weep,* or, *there is weeping.*
Nocētur, *injury is inflicted.*

Persuadētur, *he, they, etc are persuaded.*
Pertæsum est, *he, they, etc. are disgusted with.*
Silētur, *silence is maintained.*

(*c.*) In the third conjugation :—

Accĭdit, *it happens.*
Condūcit, *it is useful.*
Contingit, *it happens.*
Fallit, *or* ⎱ *it escapes me ;*
Fŭgit me, ⎰ *I do not know.*

Miserescit, *it distresses.*
Sufficit, *it suffices.*
Credĭtur, *it is believed.*
Currĭtur, *people run.*

Desinĭtur, *there is an end.*
Scribĭtur, *it is written.*
Vivĭtur, *we, etc. live.*

(*d.*) In the fourth conjugation :—

Convēnit, *it is agreed upon ; it is fit.*
Evēnit, *it happens.*

Expĕdit, *it is expedient.*
Dormītur, *we, they, etc. sleep.*

Scītur, *it is known.*
Itur, *they, etc. go.*
Venītur, *they, etc. come.*

(*e.*) Among irregular verbs :—

Fit, *it happens.*
Intĕrest, *it concerns.*
Obest, *it is hurtful.*

Prætĕrit me, *it is unknown to me.*
Prōdest, *it avails.*

Rĕfert, *it concerns.*
Sŭbit, *it occurs.*
Supĕrest, *it remains.*

(*f.*) To these may be added verbs signifying the state of the weather, or the operations of nature. The subject of these may be *Jupĭter, deus,* or *cœlum,* which are sometimes expressed. Of this kind are the following :—

Fulget, ⎫
Fulgŭrat, ⎬ *it lightens.*
Fulmĭnat, ⎭
Gĕlat, *it freezes.*
Grandĭnat, *it hails.*

Lapĭdat, *it rains stones.*
Lucescit, ⎱ *it grows light.*
Illucescit, ⎰
Ningit, *it snows.*
Pluit, *it rains.*

Tŏnat, *it thunders.*
Vesperascit, ⎫ *evening*
Advesperascit, ⎬ *approaches.*
Invesperascit, ⎭

Lapĭdat, ningit, and *pluit* are also used impersonally in the passive voice.

13*

Rem. 2. Impersonal verbs, not being used in the imperative, take the subjunctive in its stead; as, *delectet*, let it delight. In the passive voice, their perfect participles are used only in the neuter.

Rem. 3. Most of the impersonal verbs want participles, gerunds, and supines; but *pœnitet* has a present participle, futures in *rus* and *dus*, and the gerund. *Pŭdet* and *pĭget* have also the gerund and future passive participle.

Rem. 4. Most of the above verbs are also used personally, but frequently in a somewhat different sense; as, *ut Tibĕris inter eos et pons interesset*, so that the Tiber and bridge were between them.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

§ **185.** Redundant verbs are those which have different forms to express the same meaning.

Verbs may be redundant in *termination;* as, *fabrĭco* and *fabrĭcor*, to frame ;—in *conjugation;* as, *lăvo, -āre,* and *lăvo, -ĕre,* to wash ;— or in *certain tenses;* as, *ōdi* and *ōsus sum,* I hate.

1. The following deponent verbs, besides their passive form, have an active form in *o*, of the same meaning, but which is, in general, rarely used. A few, however, which are marked r., occur more rarely than the corresponding forms in *o*.

Abomĭnor, *to abhor.*	Fabrĭcor, *to frame.*	Oscĭtor, *to gape.*
Adūlor, *to flatter.*	Fenĕror, *to lend on interest.*	Pacifĭcor, r. *to make a peace.*
Altercor, *to dispute.*		
Amplexor, *to embrace.*	Fluctuor, *to fluctuate.*	Palpor, *to caress.*
Arbĭtror, *to suppose.*	Frustror, *to disappoint.*	Partior, *to divide.*
Argūtor, *to prate.*	Frutĭcor, *to sprout.*	Popŭlor, *to lay waste.*
Assentior, *to assent.*	Impertior, r. *to impart.*	Pūnior, *to punish.*
Aucŭpor, *to hunt after.*	Jurgor, *to quarrel.*	Rumĭnor, *to ruminate.*
Augŭror, *to foretell.*	Lacrĭmor, r. *to weep.*	Sc-iscĭtor, *to inquire.*
Aurīgor, *to drive a chariot.*	Ludifĭcor, *to ridicule.*	Sortior, *to cast lots.*
Auspĭcor, *to take the auspices.*	Luxŭrior, r, *to be rank.*	Stabŭlor, *to stable.*
	Medĭcor, *to heal.*	Tueor, *to defend.*
Cachinnor, r. *to laugh aloud.*	Mĕreor, *to deserve.*	Tumultuor, *to be in confusion.*
	Mētor, *to measure.*	
Comĭtor, *to accompany.*	Misĕreor, r. *to commiserate.*	Tūtor, *to defend.*
Commentor, *to deliberate.*	Modĕror, *to moderate.*	Ūtor, *to use.*
Convīvor, *to feast together.*	Munĕror, r. *to bestow.*	Urīnor, *to dive.*
Cunctor, (cont.), *to delay.*	Nictor, r. *to wink.*	Velifĭcor, *to set sail.*
Dignor, *to deem worthy.*	Nūtrior, r. *to nourish.*	Venĕror, *to reverence.*
Depascor, *to feed upon.*	Obsōnor, *to cater.*	Vocifĕror, *to bawl.*
Elucubror, *to elaborate.*	Opīnor, *to suppose.*	

2. The following verbs are redundant in conjugation :—

Boo, -āre, Boo, -ĕre, r. } *to roar.*	Fulgeo, -ēre, Fulgo, -ĕre, r. } *to shine.*
Bullo, -āre, Bullio, -īre, } *to boil.*	Lăvo, -āre, Lăvo, -ĕre, r. } *to wash.*
Cieo, -ēre, Cio, -īre, r. } *to excite.*	Līno, -ĕre, Līnio, -īre, r. } *to anoint.*
Denso, -āre, Denseo, -ēre, } *to thicken.*	Nicto, -āre, Nicto, -ĕre, } *to wink.*
Ferveo, -ēre, Fervo, -ĕre, } *to boil.*	Sălo, -ĕre, Sălio, -īre, } *to salt.*
Fŏdio, -ĕre, Fŏdio, -īre, r. } *to dig.*	Scăteo, -ēre, Scăto, -ĕre, r. } *to abound.*

Sŏno, -āre, Sŏno, -ĕre, } *to sound.*	
Strīdeo, -ēre, Strīdo, -ĕre, } *to creak.*	
Tergeo, -ēre, Tergo, -ĕre, } *to wipe.*	
Tueor, -ēri, Tuor, -i, r. } *to protect.*	

Those marked r. are rarely used.

Mŏrior, ŏrior, and *pŏtior,* also, are redundant in conjugation in certain parts. See in lists §§ 174 and 177.

§ **186.** 1. Some verbs are spelled alike, or nearly alike, but differ in conjugation, quantity, pronunciation, or signification, or in two or more of these respects.

Such are the following :—

Abdīco, -āre, *to abdicate.*
Abdīco, -ĕre, *to refuse.*
Accīdo, -ĕre, *to fall upon.*
Accīdo, -ĕre, *to cut down.*
Addo, -ĕre, *to add.*
Adeo, -īre, *to go to.*
Aggĕro, -āre, *to heap up.*
Aggĕro, -ĕre, *to heap upon.*
Allĕgo, -āre, *to depute.*
Allĕgo, -ĕre, *to choose.*
Appello, -āre, *to call.*
Appello, -ĕre, *to drive to.*
Cădo, -ĕre, *to fall.*
Cædo, -ĕre, *to cut.*
Cēdo, -ĕre, *to yield.*
Căleo, -ēre, *to be hot.*
Calleo, -ēre, *to be hard.*
Căno, -ĕre, *to sing.*
Căneo, -ēre. *to be gray.*
Căreo, -ēre, *to want.*
Căro, -ĕre, *to card wool.*
Cēlo, -āre, *to conceal.*
Cælo, -āre, *to carve.*
Censeo, -ēre, *to think.*
Sentio, -īre, *to feel.*
Claudo, -ĕre, *to shut.*
Claudo, -ĕre, *to be lame.*
Collīgo, -āre, *to bind together.*
Collĭgo, -ĕre, *to collect.*
Cōlo, -āre, *to strain.*
Cŏlo, -ĕre, *to cultivate.*
Compello, āre, *to accost.*
Compello, -ĕre, *to force.*
Concīdo, -ĕre, *to cut to pieces.*
Concĭdo, -ĕre, *to fall.*
Conscendo, -ĕre, *to embark.*
Conscĭndo, -ĕre, *to tear to pieces.*
Consterno, -āre, *to terrify.*
Consterno, -ĕre, *to strew over.*
Decīdo, -ĕre, *to fall down.*
Decīdo, -ĕre, *to cut off.*
Decīpio, -ĕre, *to deceive.*
Desīpio, -ĕre, *to dote.*
Delĭgo, -āre, *to tie up.*
Delĭgo, -ĕre, *to choose.*
Dilĭgo, -ĕre, *to love.*
Dīco, -ĕre, *to say.*
Dīco, -āre, *to dedicate.*

Ědo, -ĕre, *to eat.*
Ēdo, -ĕre, *to publish.*
Edūco, -āre, *to educate.*
Edūco, -ĕre, *to draw out.*
Effĕro,-āre, *to make wild.*
Effĕro, -re, *to carry out.*
Excīdo, -ĕre, *to fall out.*
Excīdo, -ĕre, *to cut off.*
Fērio, -īre, *to strike.*
Fĕro, -re, *to bear.*
Fērior,-āri, *to keep holiday.*
Frīgeo, -ēre, *to be cold.*
Frīgo, -ĕre, *to fry.*
Fŭgo, -āre, *to put to flight.*
Fŭgio,-ĕre, *to fly.*
Fundo, -āre, *to found.*
Fundo, -ĕre, *to pour out.*
Incīdo, -ĕre, *to fall into.*
Incīdo, ĕre, *to cut into.*
Indīco, -āre, *to show.*
Indīco, ĕre, *to proclaim.*
Infīcio, -ĕre, *to stain.*
Infĭtior, -āri, *to deny.*
Intercīdo, -ĕre, *to happen.*
Intercīdo, -ĕre, *to cut asunder.*
Jáceo, -ēre, *to lie.*
Jăcio, -ĕre, *to throw.*
Lābo, -āre, *to totter.*
Lābor, -i, *to glide.*
Lacto, -āre, *to suckle.*
Lacto, -āre, *to deceive.*
Lēgo, -āre, *to depute.*
Lĕgo, -ĕre, *to read.*
Līceo, -ēre, *to be lawful.*
Līceor, -ēri, *to bid for.*
Līquo, -āre, *to melt.*
Līqueo, -ēre, *to be manifest.*
Līquor, -i, *to melt.* ·
Māno, -āre, *to flow.*
Măneo, -ēre, *to stay.*
Mando, -āre, *to command.*
Mando, -ĕre, *to eat.*
Mēto, -ĕre, *to reap.*
Mētor, -āri, *to measure.*
Mētior, -īri, *to measure.*
Mĕtuo, -ĕre, *to fear.*
Misĕror, -āri, *to pity.*
Misĕreor, -ēri, *to pity.*
Mŏror, -āri, *to delay.*
Mŏrior, -i, *to die.*
Nīteo, -ēre, *to glitter.*

Nītor, -i, *to strive.*
Obsēro, -āre, *to lock up.*
Obsĕro, -ĕre, *to sow.*
Occīdo, -ĕre, *to fall.*
Occīdo, -ĕre, *to kill.*
Opĕrio, -īre, *to cover.*
Opĕror, -āri, *to work.*
Oppĕrior, -īri, *to wait for*
Pando, -āre, *to bend.*
Pando, -ĕre, *to extend.*
Păro, -āre, *to prepare.*
Pāreo, -ēre, *to appear.*
Părio, -ĕre, *to bring forth.*
Părio, -āre, *to balance.*
Pendeo, -ēre, *to hang.*
Pendo, -ĕre, *to weigh.*
Percōlo, -āre, *to filter.*
Percŏlo, -ĕre, *to adorn.*
Permăneo, -ēre, *to remain.*
Permāno, -āre, *to flow through.*
Prædīco, -āre, *to publish.*
Prædīco, -ĕre, *to foretell.*
Prōdo, -ĕre, *to betray.*
Prōdeo, -īre, *to come forth.*
Recēdo, -ĕre, *to retire.*
Recīdo, -ĕre, *to fall back.*
Recīdo, -ĕre, *to cut off.*
Reddo, -ĕre, *to restore.*
Rĕdeo, -īre, *to return.*
Refĕro, -re, *to bring back.*
Refério, -īre, *to strike back.*
Relēgo, -āre, *to remove.*
Relĕgo, -ĕre, *to read over.*
Sēdo, -āre, *to allay.*
Sĕdeo, -ēre, *to sit.*
Sīdo, -ĕre, *to sink.*
Sēro, -ĕre, *to sow.*
Sĕro, -ĕre, *to entwine.*
Succēdo, -ĕre, *to fall under.*
Succīdo, -ĕre, *to cut down.*
Vādo, -ĕre, *to go.*
Vădor, -āri, *to bind over by bail.*
Vēneo, -īre, *to be sold.*
Vĕnio, -īre, *to come.*
Vēnor, -āri, *to hunt.*
Vincio, -īre, *to bind.*
Vinco, ĕre, *to conquer.*
Vŏlo, -āre, *to fly.*
Vŏlo, velle, *to be willing.*

2. Different verbs have sometimes the same perfect; as,

Aceo, acui, *to be sour.*	Fulcio, fulsi, *to prop.*	Păveo, pāvi, *to fear.*
Acuo, acui, *to sharpen.*	Lūceo, luxi, *to shine.*	Pasco, pāvi, *to feed.*
Cresco, crēvi, *to grow.*	Lūgeo, luxi, *to mourn.*	Pendeo, pĕpendi, *to hang.*
Cerno, crēvi, *to decree.*	Mulceo, mulsi, *to soothe.*	Pendo, pĕpendi, *to weigh.*
Fulgeo, fulsi, *to shine.*	Mulgeo, mulsi, *to milk.*	

To these add some of the compounds of *sto* and *sisto.*

3. Different verbs have sometimes, also, the same supine or perfect participle; as,

Frĭco, frictum, *to rub.*	Pango, pactum, *to drive in.*	Pătior, passus, *to suffer.*
Frīgo, frictum, *to roast.*		Tĕneo, tentum, *to hold.*
Măneo, mansum, *to remain.*	Paciscor, pactus, *to bargain.*	Tendo, tentum, *to stretch.*
Mando, mansum, *to chew.*	Pando, passum, *to extend.*	Verro, versum, *to brush.*
		Verto, versum, *to turn.*

DERIVATION OF VERBS.

§ 187.   Verbs are derived either from nouns, from adjectives, or from other verbs.

I.   Verbs derived from nouns or adjectives are called *denominatives.*

1. (*a.*) Active denominatives are generally of the first conjugation; those which are neuter, of the second. They are usually formed by adding respectively *o* and *eo* to the root; as,

FROM NOUNS.

Actives.	*Neuters.*
Armo, *to arm,* (arma.)	Flōreo, *to bloom,* (flos.)
Fraudo, *to defraud,* (fraus.)	Frondeo, *to produce leaves,* (frons.)
Nomĭno, *to name,* (nomen.)	Lūceo, *to shine,* (lux.)
Numĕro, *to number,* (numĕrus.)	Vĭreo, *to flourish,* (vis.)

FROM ADJECTIVES.

Albo, *to whiten,* (albus.)	Albeo, *to be white,* (albus.)
Celebro, *to frequent,* (celĕber.)	Calveo, *to be bald,* (calvus.)
Libĕro, *to free,* (līber.)	Flāveo, *to be yellow,* (flāvus.)

(*b.*) Sometimes a preposition is prefixed in forming the derivative; as,

Coacervo, *to heap together,* (acervus.)	Exstirpo, *to extirpate,* (stirps.)
Excăvo, *to excavate,* (căvus.)	Illăqueo, *to insnare,* (lăqueus.)

2. Many deponents of the first conjugation, derived from nouns, express the exercise of the character, office, etc., denoted by the primitive; as, *archĭtector,* to build; *comĭtor,* to accompany; *fūror,* to steal; from *architectus, cŏmes,* and *fūr.*

3. Such as denote resemblance or imitation are called *imitatives;* as, *cornĭcor,* to imitate a crow, from *cornix; Græcor,* to imitate the Greeks. Some of these end in *isso;* as, *patrisso,* to imitate a father.

II.   Verbs derived from other verbs are either *frequentatives, inceptives, desideratives, diminutives,* or *intensives.*

1. *Frequentatives* express a repetition, or an increase of the action expressed by the primitive.

(*a.*) They are all of the first conjugation, and are formed by adding *o* to the third root; as, *dŏmo*, (*dŏmĭt-*) *dŏmĭto.* So *adjŭvo*, *adjūto ; dīco*, *dicto ; gĕro*, *gesto.* In verbs of the first conjugation, *āt* of the root is often changed into *ĭt*; as, *clāmo*, to cry, (*clamāt-*) *clamĭto*, to cry frequently.

(*b.*) A few frequentatives are formed by adding *ĭto* to the first root of the primitive; as, *ăgo* (*ăg-*) *ăgĭto.* So *lăteo*, *lătĭto ; nosco*, *noscĭto ; quœro*, *quœrĭto.*

(*c.*) Frequentatives, from primitives of the second, third, and fourth conjugations, sometimes serve again as primitives, from which new frequentatives are formed; as, *dīco*, *dicto*, *dictĭto ; curro*, *curso*, *cursĭto ; vĕnio*, *vento*, *ventĭto.* Sometimes the second or intermediate form is not in use.

(*d.*) Some frequentatives are deponent; as, *mĭnĭtor*, from *mĭnor* (*mĭnāt-*); *versor*, from *verto* (*vers-*). So *amplexor*, *sector*, *lŏquĭtor*, from *amplector*, *sĕquor*, and *lŏquor.*

(*e.*) When verbs of this class express simply an *increase* of the action denoted by the primitive, they are, by some grammarians, called *intensives.*

2. *Inceptives*, or *inchoatives* mark the beginning of the action or state expressed by the primitive.

(*a.*) They all end in *sco*, and are formed by adding that termination to the root of the primitive, with its connecting vowel, which, in the third conjugation, is *i ;* as, *căleo*, to be hot; *călesco*, to grow hot.

So *lăbo*, (*āre*), *lăbasco : ingĕmo*, (*ĕre*), *ingĕmisco ; obdormio*, (*īre*), *obdormisco.* *Hisco* is contracted for *hiasco*, from *hio*, (*āre*).

(*b.*) Most inceptives are formed from verbs of the second conjugation.

(*c.*) Some inceptives are formed from nouns and adjectives by adding *asco* or *esco* to the root; as, *puĕrasco*, from *puer ; jŭvĕnĕsco*, from *jŭvĕnis.*

NOTE. Inceptives are all neuter, and of the third conjugation. See § 173.

Some verbs in *sco*, which are not inceptives, are active; as, *disco*, *posco.*

3. *Desideratives* express a desire of doing the act denoted by the primitive.

(*a.*) They are formed from the third root, by adding *ŭrio ;* as, *cœno*, to sup, (*cœnāt-*) *cœnātŭrio*, to desire to sup.

(*b.*) Desideratives are all of the fourth conjugation. See § 176, Note.

(*c.*) Verbs in *ūrio*, having *u* long, are not desideratives; as, *prūrio*, *lĭgūrio.*

4. *Diminutives* denote a feeble or trifling action. They are formed by adding *illo* to the root of the primitive ; as, *conscrībillo*, to scribble, from *conscrībo.*

They are few in number, and are all of the first conjugation.

5. *Intensives* denote eager action. They are usually formed by adding *so*, *esso*, or *isso* to the root of the primitive; as, *făcesso*, to act earnestly—from *făcio.*

So *căpesso*, *incesso*, from *căpio* and *incēdo.* *Concŭpisco*, to desire greatly, though in form an inceptive, is, in its signification, an intensive.

NOTE. Verbs of all these classes have sometimes simply the meaning of their primitives.

COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

§ 188.   Verbs are compounded variously :—

1. Of a noun and a verb; as, *ædĭfĭco, bellĭgĕro, lucrĭfăcio.* See § 103, R. 1.
2. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *amplĭfĭco, multĭplĭco.*
3. Of two verbs; as, *calĕfăcio, madĕfăcio, patĕfăcio.*

Rem. In verbs of this class, the first part, which is a verb of the second conjugation, loses its final *o;* the second part is always the verb *făcio.*

4. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *bĕnĕfăcio, mălĕdico, sătăgo, nōlo, neglĭgo.*
5. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *addūco, excōlo, prōdo, subrēpo, discerno, sĕjungo.*
6. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *pernocto, irrētio.*

§ 189.   In composition with particles, the vowels *a* and *e* and the diphthong *œ* in the radical syllable of the simple verb are often changed in the compound.

1. The following simple verbs in composition change *a* into *e* :—

Arceo,   Carpo,   Farcio,   Jacto,   Părio,   Patro,   Spargo,
Candeo,   Damno,   Fătiscor, Lacto,   Partio,   Sacro,   Tracto.
Capto,   Fallo,   Grădior,   Mando,   Pătior,   Scando,

Exc. *A* is retained in *amando, præmando, desacro,* and *retracto; prædamno,* and *pertracto* sometimes also occur. *A* is also changed into *e* in *occento* from *canto,* and *anhēlo* from *hālo; comperco* also is found.

2. The following, in the first root, change *ă* and *ĕ* into *ĭ; viz.*

ăgo, cădo, ĕgeo, ĕmo, frango, pango, prĕmo, rĕgo, sĕdeo, spĕcio, tango.

3. These change *ă* and *ĕ,* in the first and second roots, into *ĭ; viz.*

sălio, *to leap,* săpio, tăceo, *and* tĕneo.

4. These change *ă* into *ĭ,* and *œ* into *ī,* in all the roots; viz.

hăbeo, lăcio, lăteo, plăceo, stătuo; cædo, lædo, *and* quæro.

5. The following change *ă,* in the first root, into *ĭ,* and in the third root into *e; viz.*

căno, căpio, făteor, jăcio, răpio, *and* ăpiscor.

Exc. (a.) *A* is retained in *circŭmăgo, perăgo, sătăgo; antĕhăbeo, posthăbeo, dēpango, rĕpango, complăceo,* and *perplăceo. Occăno* and *rĕcăno* also sometimes occur. *E* is retained in *coēmo, circumsĕdeo,* and *sŭpersĕdeo. Antĕcăpio* and *antĭcipo* are both used; so also are *sŭperjăcio* and *sŭperjĭcio.*
(b.) *Cōgo* and *dēgo* are formed, by contraction, from *con, de,* and *ăgo; dēmo, prōmo* and *sūmo,* from *de, pro, sub,* and *ĕmo; præbeo,* and perhaps *dēbeo,* from *præ, de,* and *hăbeo; pergo* and *surgo,* from *per, sub,* and *rĕgo.*

Note 1. *Făcio,* compounded with a preposition, changes *ă* into *ĭ* in the first root, and into *e* in the third; as, *affĭcio, affēci, affectum.* Some compounds of *făcio* with nouns and adjectives, change *ă* into *i,* and also drop *i* before *o,* and are of the first conjugation; as, *signĭfĭco, lætĭfĭco, magnĭfĭco. Spĕcio* forms some compounds in the same manner; as, *conspĭcor* and *suspĭcor.*

Note 2. *Lĕgo,* compounded with *con, de, di, e, inter, nec,* and *se,* changes *ĕ* into *i,* in the first root; as, *collĭgo, neglĭgo,* etc.; but with *ad, præ, per, re, sub,* and *trans,* it retains *ĕ; as, allĕgo.*

Note 3. *Calco* and *salto,* in composition, change *a* into *u ;* as, *inculco, insulto. Plaudo* changes *au* into *ō; as, explōdo;* except *applaudo. Audio* changes *au* into *ē* in *obēdio. Causo, claudo,* and *quătio,* drop *a;* as, *accūso, rĕclūdo, percŭtio. Jūro* changes *ū* into *ē* in *dējĕro* and *pējĕro,* but *dējūro,* also, is in use.

NOTE 4. In the compounds of *căveo*, *măneo*, and *trăho*, *ă* remains unchanged, and so also does *œ* in the compounds of *hœreo*.

NOTE 5. The simple verbs with which the following are compounded are not used:—

Dēfendo,	Impĕdio,	Confūto,	Instīgo,	Connīveo,
Offendo,	Imbuo,	Rēfūto,	Impleo,	Percello,
Expĕrior,	Compello, (-āre,)	Ingruo,	Compleo,	Induo, and some
Expĕdio,	Appello, (-āre,)	Congruo,	Rĕnīdeo,	Exuo, others.

For the changes produced in prepositions by composition with verbs see § 196.

PARTICLES.

§ **190**. 1. *Particles* are those parts of speech which are neither declined nor conjugated. They are divided into four classes—*adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions,* and *interjections.*

NOTE. A word may sometimes belong to two or more of these classes, according to its connection.

ADVERBS.

2. An adverb is a particle used to modify or limit the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as,

Bĕne et sapienter *dixit*, he spoke *well* and *wisely; Cănis* ēgrĕgie *fidēlis,* a remarkably faithful dog; Nĭmis *valde laudāre,* to praise *too* much. Compare § 277, R. 1.

3. Adverbs, in regard to their *signification,* are divided into various classes; as, adverbs of *place, time, manner,* etc., and some belong to either class according to their connection.

4. In regard to their *etymology,* adverbs are either *primitive* or *derivative.*

REMARK. Among primitive adverbs are here classed not only such as cannot be traced to any more remote root, but also all which are not included in the regular classes of derivative adverbs hereafter mentioned.

PRIMITIVE ADVERBS.

§ **191**. The primitive adverbs are few in number, when compared with the derivatives, and most of them are contained in the following lists marked I, II, and III.

I. Adverbs of *Place* and *Order.*

ădeo, *so far, as far.*
ădhūc, *to this place.*
adversŭs, } *opposite,*
adversum, } *over against,*
exadversŭs,—um, } *toward.*
ăliā, *by another way.*
ăliās, *in another place.*
ălĭbī, *elsewhere.*

ălĭcŭbi, *somewhere.*
ălĭcundĕ, *from some place.*
ăliō, *to another place.*
ălĭquā, *in some way.*
ăliorsum, *toward another place.*
ălĭquō, *to some place.*

ălĭquōversum, *toward some place.*
ălĭundĕ, *from another place.*
circā, } *around.*
circum, }
circĭtĕr, *on every side.*
circumcircā, *all around.*

citrā, *on this side.*
citro, *hither.*
contrā, *over against.*
cōram, *before.*
dēhinc, *henceforth.*
deinceps, *successively.*
deindĕ, *after that.*
dēnĭquĕ, *finally.*
dēnuo, *again.*
deorsum, *downward.*
dextrorsum, *toward the right.*
eā, *this way.*
eādem, *the same way.*
eō, *to that place, thither.*
eōdem, *to the same place.*
exindĕ, *after that.*
extrā, *without.*
extrīnsĕcŭs, *from without.*
fŏrās, *out of doors.*
fŏrīs, *without.*
hāc, *this way.*
hactĕnŭs, *thus far.*
hīc, *here.*
hinc, *hence.*
hūc, *hither.*
hūcusquĕ, *thus far.*
horsum, *hitherward.*
ĭbi, *there.*
ĭbīdem, *in the same place.*
illāc, *that way.*
illīc, *there.*
illinc, *thence.*
illō, *thither.*
illorsum, *thitherward.*
illūc, *thither.*
indĕ, *thence.*
indĭdem, *from the same place.*

infrā, *below, beneath.*
ĭnĭbi, *in that place.*
intrĭnsĕcŭs, *from within.*
intrā, intro, introrsum, intŭs, } *within.*
istāc, *that way.*
istīc, *there.*
istinc, *thence.*
istō, istūc, *thither.*
juxtā, *near, alike.*
nēcŭbi, *lest any where.*
neutro, *to neither side.*
neutrŭbi, *to neither place, to neither side.*
nullĭbi, nusquam, } *no where.*
pēnĭtŭs, *within.*
pōnĕ, post, *behind, back.*
porro, *onward.*
prōcŭl, *far.*
prŏpĕ, prŏptĕr, *near.*
prorsum, *forward.*
prōtĭnŭs, *onward.*
quā? *in which way?*
quāquā, quācumque, } *what way soever.*
quāquĕ, *wheresoever.*
quālĭbĕt, quāvīs, } *in every way.*
quō? *whither?*
quŏăd, quousquĕ, } *how far.*
quōpiam, quōquam, } *to some place.*
quōquŏ, quōcumquĕ, } *whither- soever.*
quōquōversŭs, *toward every side.*

quorsum? *whitherward?*
quōvīs, quōlĭbĕt, } *to every place.*
retro, retrorsum, rursum, } *backward, back.*
sīcŭbi, *if any where.*
sīcundĕ, *if from any place.*
sīnistrorsum, *toward the left.*
subtĕr, *beneath.*
sŭpĕr, suprā, *above, on top.*
sursum, *upward.*
tum, *then, in the next place.*
ŭbi? *where?*
ŭbicumquĕ, ŭbĭŭbi, } *wherever, wheresoever.*
ŭbĭlĭbĕt, ŭbĭquĕ, } *any where, every where.*
ŭbīvīs, ultrā, ultro, *beyond.*
undĕ? *whence?*
undĕlĭbĕt, undĕvīs, undĭquĕ, } *from every where.*
undeundĕ, undĕcumquĕ, } *whence- soever.*
uspiam, *somewhere.*
usquam, *any where.*
usquĕ, *all the way.*
usquĕquāquĕ, *in all ways.*
utrimquĕ, *on both sides.*
utrō? *which way?*
utrōbi? *in which place?*
utrōbĭquĕ, *in both places.*
utrōquĕ, *to both sides.*
utrōquĕversum, *toward both sides.*

REMARK 1. (*a.*) The interrogative adverbs of place, *ŭbi?* where? *undĕ?* whence? *quō?* whither? and *quā?* in what way? have relation to other adverbs formed in a similar manner, thus constituting a system of *adverbial correlatives* similar to that of the pronominal adjectives. See § 139, 5, (3.)

(*b.*) As in the case of the pronominal correlatives, the *interrogative* and *relative* forms are alike, beginning with *u* or *qu.* The *demonstratives* are formed from *is,* which is strengthened by *dem,* and the *indefinite* from *ălĭquĭs.* The *general relatives* and the *general indefinites* or *universals,* like those of the pronominal adjectives, are made, the former by doubling the simple relatives or by appending to them the termination *cumquĕ,* 'soever,' and the latter by adding *quĕ, vīs,* or *lĭbĕt.* Thus:

Interrog.	Demonstr.	Relat.	Gen. Relat.	Indefin.	Gen. Indefin.
ŭbi?	ĭbi, ĭbīdem,	ŭbi,	ŭbĭŭbi, ŭbĭcumquĕ,	ălĭcŭbi,	ŭbĭquĕ, ŭbīvīs, ŭbĭlĭbĕt.
undĕ?	indĕ, indĭdem,	undĕ,	undeundĕ, undĕcumquĕ,	ălĭcundĕ,	undĭquĕ, undĕvīs, undĕlĭbĕt,
quō?	eō, eōdem,	quō,	quōquō, quōcumquĕ,	ălĭquō,	quōvīs, quōlĭbĕt,
quā?	eā, eādem.	quā.	quāquā, quācumquĕ.	ălĭquā.	quāvīs, quālĭbĕt.

(c.) To those answering to *ŭbi?* may be added *ălĭbi*, *nullĭbi*, and *intĭbi*, the latter being a strengthened form of *ĭbi*. In like manner *ălĭundĕ*, *utrimquĕ*, *intrinsĕcŭs*, and *extrinsĕcŭs* may be added to those answering to *undĕ?* and *ălĭo* to those answering to *quō?* So also to *utrō?* answer *utrōquĕ* and *neutro*.

(d.) The demonstratives *ĭbi*, *ĭndĕ*, and *eō* are used only in reference to relative sentences which precede; but more definite demonstratives are formed from the pronouns *hīc*, *istĕ*, and *illĕ*, answering in like manner to *ŭbi? undĕ?* and *quō?* These together with the preceding correlatives are, in the following table, arranged respectively under their several interrogatives *ŭbi? undĕ? quō? quā?* and *quorsum?*—Thus:

ŭbi?	undĕ?	quō?	quā?	quorsum?
hīc,	hinc,	hūc,	hāc,	horsum,
istīc,	istinc,	istūc,	istāc,	istorsum,
illīc,	illinc,	illūc,	illāc,	illorsum,
ĭbi,	indĕ,	eō,	eā,	———,
ĭbīdem,	indīdem,	eōdem,	eādem,	———,
ălĭbi,	ălĭundĕ,	ălĭō,	ălĭā,	ălĭorsum,
ălĭcŭbi.	ălĭcundĕ.	ălĭquō.	ălĭquā.	ălĭquōversum.

(e.) *Hīc*, *hinc*, *hūc*, refer to the place of the speaker; *istīc*, *istinc*, *istūc*, to the place of the second person or person addressed; and *illīc*, *illinc*, *illūc*, to that of the third person or the person or thing spoken of. Cf. § 207, R. 23, (a.) and (d.)

(f.) The interrogative adverbs *ŭbi*, *undĕ*, *quō*, *quā*, etc. are often used without a question, simply as adverbs of place; as, *In eam partem itūros, atque ĭbi futūros Helvetios*, ŭbi *eos Cæsar constituisset*.

(g.) In consequence of a transfer of their meaning, some of the adverbs of place, as, *hīc*, *ĭbi*, *ŭbi*, *hinc*, *indĕ*, *hactĕnŭs*, etc., become also adverbs of time, and some of them are used also as conjunctions.

II. Adverbs of *Time*.

actŭtum, *immediately.*
abhinc, *from this time.*
ădeō, *so long (as).*
ădhūc, *until now, still.*
ăliās, *at another time*
ălĭquamdiū, *for awhile.*
ălĭquandō, *at some time.*
ălĭquŏtĭes, *several times.*
antĕ, } *before,*
anteā, } *previously.*
antĕhāc, *formerly.*
bĭs, *twice.* (see § 119).
circĭtĕr, *about, near.*
crās, *tomorrow.*
cum *or* quum, *when.*
deinceps, *in succession.*
deindĕ *or* dein, } *thereupon,*
exindĕ *or* exin, } *afterward.*
dĕhinc, *from this time.*
dēmum, *at length.*
dēnīque, *lastly.*
diū, *long.*
dūdum, *previously.*
eousquĕ, *so long.*
hĕrē *or* hĕrī, *yesterday.*
hīc, *here, hereupon.*
hinc, *from this time, since.*
hŏdĭē, *to-day.*
ĭbi, *then, thereupon.*
ĭdentĭdem, *now and then, repeatedly.*

illĭcō, *immediately.*
indĕ, *after that, then.*
interdum, *sometimes.*
intĕrim, *meanwhile.*
ĭtĕrum, *again.*
jam, *now, already.*
jamdiū, } *long ago.*
jamdūdum, }
jamjam, *presently.*
jamprĭdem, *long since.*
mŏdo, *just now.*
mox, *soon after.*
nondum, *not yet.*
nonnumquam, *sometimes.*
nūdĭŭs tertĭŭs, *three days ago.*
nunc, *now.*
numquam, *never.*
nūpĕr, *lately.*
ōlim, *formerly.*
părumpĕr, } *for a short*
paulispĕr, } *time.*
pĕrendĭē, *two days hence.*
porro, *hereafter, in future.*
post, posteā, *afterwards.*
posthāc, *hereafter.*
postrīdĭē, *the day after.*
prĭdem, *long since.*
prĭdĭē, *the day before.*
prōtĭnŭs, *instantly.*

quamdiū? *how long?*
quandŏ? *when?*
quandōcumquĕ, *whenever.*
quandōquĕ, *at some time.*
quătĕr, *four times.*
quŏăd? } *how long?*
quousquĕ? }
quondam, *formerly.*
quŏtĭdĭē, *daily.*
quŏtĭes? *how often?*
quum *or* cum, *when.*
rursŭs, *again.*
sæpĕ, *often.*
sĕmĕl, *once.*
semper, *always.*
stătim, *immediately.*
sŭbindĕ, *immediately, now and then.*
tamdiū, *so long.*
tandem, *at length.*
tantispĕr, *for so long.*
tĕr, *thrice.*
tŏtĭes, *so often.*
tum, tunc, *then.*
ŭbi, *when, as soon as.*
umquam, *ever.*
usquĕ, *until, ever.*
ŭt *or* ŭti, *as, as soon as when.*

III. Adverbs of *Manner, Quality, Degree*, etc,

ădĕō, *so, to that degree.*
admŏdum, *very much.*
ălĭtĕr, *otherwise.*
ceu, *as, like as.*
cūr? *why?*
duntaxăt, *only, at least.*
ĕtĭam, *also, truly, yes.*
ĕtĭamnunc, ⎫
ĕtĭamtum, ⎬ *also, besides.*
fĕrē, ⎫ *almost, nearly.*
fermē, ⎭
fortassĕ, *perhaps.*
frustrā, *in vain.*
grātīs, *freely.*
haud, *not.*
haudquāquam, *by no means.*
hūcusquĕ, *so far.*
ĭdentĭdem, *constantly.*
immŏ, *nay, on the contrary.*
ĭtă, *so.*
ĭtem, *just so, also.*
ĭtĭdem, *in like manner.*
juxtā, *equally, alike.*
măgĭs, *more.*
mŏdŏ, *only.*
næ or nē, *truly, verily.*
nĕ, *not.*
nēdum, *much less.*
nempĕ, *truly, forsooth.*
nēquāquam, ⎫ *by no*
neutĭquam, ⎭ *means.*
nīmīrum, *certainly, to be sure.*

nĭmĭs, ⎫ *too much.*
nĭmĭum, ⎭
nōn, *not.*
omnīnō, *altogether, only.*
pænĕ, *almost.*
pălam, *openly.*
părĭtĕr, *equally.*
părum, *too little.*
paulātim, *by degrees.*
pĕnĭtŭs, *wholly.*
pĕrindĕ, ⎫ *just as,*
proindĕ, ⎭ *as though.*
perquam, *very much.*
plērumquĕ, *for the most part, commonly.*
pŏtĭŭs, *rather.*
porro, *moreover, then.*
prætĕr, *beyond, except.*
præsertim, *particularly.*
prŏfectō, *truly.*
prŏpĕ, *almost, near.*
prŏpĕmŏdum, *almost.*
prorsŭs, *wholly.*
quam, *how much, as.*
quamobrem, *wherefore.*
quārē? *why? wherefore?*
quăsĭ, *as if, as it were.*
quĕmadmŏdum, *as.*
quĭdem, ⎫ *indeed.*
ĕquĭdem, ⎭
quŏmŏdŏ? *how? in what manner?*
quŏquĕ, *also.*
rītĕ, *duly.*
saltem, *at least.*

sānē, *truly.*
săt, ⎫ *enough.*
sătĭs, ⎭
sătĭŭs, *rather.*
scīlĭcĕt, *truly, to wit.*
sĕcŭs, *otherwise.*
seorsum, ⎫ *separately.*
seorsŭs, ⎭
sīc, *so.*
sīcŭt, ⎫ *so as, as.*
sīcŭtī, ⎭
sĭmŭl, *together.*
singillātim, *one by one.*
sōlum, *only, alone.*
tam, *so, so much.*
tamquam, *like, as if.*
tantŏpĕrĕ, *so greatly.*
tantum, *so much, only.*
tantummŏdŏ, *only.*
tĕmĕrĕ, *at random.*
ūnā, *together.*
usquĕquāquĕ, *in all points, in all ways.*
ŭt, ⎫ *as.*
ŭtī, ⎭
ŭtĭquĕ, *at any rate, certainly.*
utpŏtĕ, *as, inasmuch as.*
valdē, *very much.*
vĕl, *even.*
vĕlŭt, ⎫ *as, like as, for*
vĕlŭtī, ⎭ *example.*
vĭcissim, *in turn, again.*
vĭdēlĭcet, *clearly, to wit.*
vix, *scarcely.*

Rem. 2. Adverbs denoting quality, manner, etc., are sometimes divided into those of, 1. Quality; as, *bĕnĕ, mălĕ.* 2. Certainty; as, *certĕ, plānĕ.* 3. Contingence; as, *fortĕ.* 4. Negation; as, *haud, nōn, nē, immŏ.* 5. Affirmation; as, *næ, quĭdem, ŭtĭquĕ, nempĕ.* 6. Swearing; as, *herclĕ.* 7. Explaining; as, *vĭdēlĭcĕt, utpŏtĕ.* 8. Separation; as, *seorsum.* 9. Joining together; as, *sĭmŭl, ūnā.* 10. Interrogation; as, *cūr? quārĕ?* 11. Quantity or degree; as, *sătĭs, ădĕō.* 12. Excess; as, *perquam, maxĭmē.* 13. Defect; as, *părum, pænĕ.* 14. Preference; as, *pŏtĭŭs, sătĭŭs.* 15. Likeness; as, *ĭtă, sīc.* 16. Unlikeness; as, *ălĭtĕr.* 17. Exclusion; as, *tantum, sōlum.*

Rem. 3. *Non* is the ordinary Latin negation. *Haud* signifies either 'not at all,' or 'not exactly.' It is used by the comic and later writers in all combinations, but in the authors of the best age its use is more especially limited to its connection with adjectives and adverbs denoting a measure; as, *haud multum, haud magnum, haud parvŭs, haud mediocris, haud paulo, haud prŏcul, haud longe,* especially *haud sāne* in connection with other words; as, *haud sāne făcĭle, res haud sāne diffĭcilis, haud sāne intellĭgo ;* also *haud quisquam, haud umquam, haud quāquam.* With verbs *haud* is scarcely used until Livy and Tacitus, except in the common phrase *haud scĭo an,* which is equivalent to *nescĭo an.*—*Nĕ,* (or *nĭ*) is the primitive Latin negative particle, signifying *no* or *not.* It is used in this sense and as an adverb, (*a*) with *quĭdem* to make an emphatic negation of the word standing between them; as, *nē in oppĭdis quĭdem.* not even in the towns; (*b*) in composition as in *nescĭo, nĕfas, neuter,* etc.; (*c*) with imperatives and

subjunctives used as imperatives; as, *Nē puĕri, nē tanta animis assuescite bella.*
Virg. So, also, in wishes and asseverations; as, *Nē id Jupiter sinĕret,* may Jupiter forbid it. Liv. *Ne vivam, si scio,* may I die, if I know. Cic.; and in concessive and restrictive clauses; as, *Ne fuĕrit,* suppose there was not. Cic.
Sint misericordes in furibus ærarii, ne illis sanguinem nostram largiantur, only let them not, etc. Cic. So *dum ne, dummŏdo ne, mŏdo ne, dum quidem ne ;* and in intentional clauses with *ut.*—*Immo,* as a negative, substitutes something stronger in the place of the preceding statement, which is denied; as, *Causa igitur non bona est? Immo optima, sed,* etc. Cic. It may often be translated by 'nay,' or 'nay even.'

Rem. 4. *Quĭdem* gives particular emphasis to a word or an idea, and then answers to our 'certainly' or 'indeed,' but frequently, especially with a pronoun, it merely adds emphasis. *Equĭdem,* which is considered as a compound of *ego* and *quidem,* is used exclusively in this sense by Cicero, Virgil, and Horace, but by other and particularly by later writers it is used like *quidem.*—*Nempe,* 'surely,' is often used ironically, when we refute a person by concessions which he is obliged to make, or by deductions. In other connections it may be translated 'namely.'

Rem. 5. *Sĭc, ĭtă, tam,* as also *tantŏpĕre,* and *ădeō* signify 'so.' *Sic* is more particularly the demonstrative 'so,' or 'thus'; as, *sĭc se res hăbet.*
Ita defines or limits more accurately, and is equivalent to our 'in such a manner,' or 'only in so far'; as, *ita defendito, ut neminem lædas.* Frequently, however, *ita* has the signification of *sic,* but *sic* has not the limiting sense of *ita.*—*Tam,* 'so much,' generally stands before adjectives and adverbs, and increases the degree; before vowels *tantopĕre* is generally used instead of *tam.*—*Adeo,* 'to that degree' or 'point,' increases the expression to a certain end or result. Hence it forms the transition to the conclusion of an argument or to the essential part of a thing; and Cicero employs it to introduce the proofs of what he has previously alleged; as, *Id adeo ex ipso senātus consulto cognoscite,* and always in such case puts *adeo* after a pronoun.

Rem. 6. *Umquam,* 'ever,' and *'usquam,* 'somewhere,' like *quisquam,* require a negation in the sentence, and thus become equivalent to *numquam* and *nusquam.* A negative question, however, may supply the place of a negative proposition; as, *num tu eum umquam vidisti?*—*Uspiam,* like *quispiam,* is not negative, but is the same as *ălĭcŭbi,* and strengthened, just as *quispiam* is the same as *aliquis.* So, also, *quŏpiam* is used affirmatively, and *quŏquam* negatively.—*Jam,* with a negative, answers to our 'longer'; as, *Nihil jam spĕro,* I no longer hope for any thing. When used to connect sentences it signifies 'further,' or 'now.'—*Usque* is commonly accompanied by the prepositions *ad, in, ab,* or *ex.* It rarely signifies 'ever and anon'; as, *Natūram expellas furcā, tămen usque recurret.* Hor.—*Nūper, mŏdo,* and *mox* are relative and indefinite.—*Dūdum,* 'previously,' or 'before,' in relation to a time which has just passed away, may often be translated 'just before.'—*Jamdūdum* signifies 'long before,' or 'long since.' With the poets *jamdūdum* contains the idea of impatience, and signifies 'without delay,' 'forthwith'; as, *Jamdūdum sumite pœnas.* Virg.—*Tandem,* 'at length,' also expresses the impatience with which a question is put.

Rem. 7. *Tunc* is 'then,' 'at that time,' in opposition to *nunc,* 'now': *Tum* is 'then,' as the correlative of *quum,* 'when ;' as, *quum omnes adessent, tum ille exorsus est dicĕre,* when all were present, then he began to speak. Without a relative sentence *tum* signifies 'hereupon,' or 'thereupon '; but a relative sentence may always be supplied. The same difference exists between *etiam nunc* and *etiam tum,* 'still,' or 'yet'; and between *nunc ipsum* and *tum ipsum ; quummaxĭme* and *tummaxĭme,* 'just,' or 'even then'; for *etiam nunc, nunc ipsum* and *quum maxĭme* refer to the present; but *etiamtum, tum ipsum,* and *tummaxĭme,* to the past.

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

§ **192.** Adverbs are derived from nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and participles.

I. From Nouns.

1. Of these a few end in *im* (generally *ātim*), and denote manner; as,

grĕgātim, in herds; *membrātim*, limb by limb; *vĭcissātim*, or more frequently, *vĭcissim*, by turns; from *grex, membrum,* and *vĭcis.*

2. Some end in *ĭtus*, and denote origin or manner; as,

cœlĭtus, from heaven; *fundĭtus*, from the bottom; *rādĭcĭtus*, by the roots; from *cœlum, fundus,* and *rādix.*

3. Some are merely the different cases of nouns used adverbially; as,

(*a.*) Some adverbs of time; as, *mānĕ, noctū, dĭū, tempŏrĕ* or *tempŏrī, inĭtĭō, prĭncĭpĭō, mŏdo.*—(*b.*) Adverbs of place; as, *fŏris, fŏrās.*—(*c.*) Adverbs of manner; as, *spontĕ, fortĕ, grātīs* or *grātĭīs, ingrātĭīs, vulgō, partim.*

II. From Adjectives and Participles.

By far the greater number of derivative adverbs come from adjectives and participles (present and perfect), and end in *ē* and *tĕr.*

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the second declension, are formed by adding *ē* to the root; as,

ægrē, scarcely; *altē*, high; *lĭbĕrē*, freely; *longē*, far; *mĭsĕrē*, miserably; *plēnē*, fully; *doctē*, learnedly; *ornātē*, elegantly; from *æger, altus, lĭber, longŭs, mĭser, plēnŭs, doctŭs,* and *ornātŭs.* *Bĕnĕ*, well, is from *bŏnŭs*, or an older form *bĕnŭs.*

REMARK. A few adverbs in *e* differ in meaning from their adjectives; as, *sānē*, certainly; *valdē*, very; from *sānŭs*, sound, well; and *vălĭdŭs*, strong.

Exc. 1. A few adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the second declension, add *ĭtĕr, ĭtŭs, im,* or *ātim* to the root; as,

nāvĭtĕr, actively; *antĭquĭtŭs*, anciently; *dīvīnĭtŭs*, divinely; *prīvātim*, privately; *tuātim*, after your manner; *sĭngŭlātim, sĭgillātim, sĭgillūtim,* or *sĭngŭltim*, severally; *cæsim, carptim, sensim, stātim,* etc. from *nāvŭs, antīquŭs, dīvīnŭs, prīvātŭs, tuŭs, sĭngŭlī, cæsŭs, carptŭs,* etc.

Exc. 2. Some adverbs are formed with two or more of the above terminations with the same meaning; as, *dūrē, dūrĭtĕr ; fīrmē, fīrmĭtĕr ; nāvē, nāvĭtĕr; largē, largĭtĕr ; lūcŭlentē, lūcŭlentĕr ; turbŭlentē, turbŭlenĭĕr :* so *cautē* and *cautim ; hūmānē, hūmānĭtĕr,* and *hūmānĭtŭs ; pūblĭcē* and *pūblĭcĭtŭs.*

2. Adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the third declension, are formed by adding *ĭtĕr* to the root, except when it ends in *t*, in which case *ĕr* only is added; as,

ācrĭtĕr, sharply; *fēlīcĭtĕr*, happily; *turpĭtĕr*, basely;—*ēlĕgantĕr*, elegantly; *prūdentĕr*, prudently; *ămantĕr*, lovingly; *prŏpĕrantĕr*, hastily; from *ācĕr, fēlix, turpis, ēlĕgans, prūdens, ămans,* and *prŏpĕrans.* So also from the obsolete *ălis* for *ălĭŭs*, and *prŏpis*, (neuter *prŏpĕ*), come *ălĭtĕr* and *proptĕr* for *prŏpĭtĕr.*

Exc. From *audax* comes by syncope *audactĕr :* from *fortis* comes *fortĭtĕr ;* from *omnis, omnīno ;* from *ūbĕr, ūbertim ;* and from *nēquam, nēquĭtĕr.*

3. From the cardinal numerals are formed numeral adverbs in *iēs*; as,

quinquiēs, dēciēs, from *quinquĕ* and *dĕcem.* So *tŏtiēs* and *quŏtiēs,* from *tŏt* and *quŏt.* See § 119.

4. Some adverbs are merely certain cases of adjectives. Such are,

(*a.*) Ablatives in *ō,* from adjectives and participles of the second declension; as, *citŏ,* quickly; *continuŏ,* immediately; *falsŏ,* falsely; *crēbrŏ,* frequently; *mĕritŏ,* deservedly; *nĕcŏpīnātŏ,* unexpectedly; *fortuitŏ,* by chance; *auspicātŏ,* auspiciously; *consultŏ,* designedly; and a few in *ā* from adjectives of the first declension; as, *rectā,* straight on; *ūnā,* together. In like manner, *rĕpĕntĕ,* suddenly, from *rĕpens;* and *pĕregre* or *pĕregrī,* from *pĕreger.*

(*b.*) Nominatives or accusatives of the third declension in the neuter singular; as, *fācilĕ, diffĭcĭlĕ, rĕcens, sublīmĕ,* and *impūnĕ;* and some also of the second declension; as, *cētĕrum, plērumquĕ, multum, plūrimum, pŏtissĭmum, paulum, nĭmium, pārum,* and the numeral adverbs, *prīmum, ĭtĕrum, tertium, quartum,* etc. which have also the termination in *ō,* and so also *postrēmum (ō),* and *ultĭmum (ō).* The neuter plural sometimes occurs also, especially in poetry; as, *multā gemĕre; tristiā ululāre; crēbrā ferīre.*

(*c.*) Accusatives of the first declension; as, *bĭfariam, trĭfariam, multĭfariam, omnĭfariam,* etc. scil. *partem.*

NOTE 1. The forms in *ē* and *ō* from adjectives of the second declension have generally the same meaning, but *vērē* and *vēro* have a somewhat different sense. *Vērē,* truly, is the regular adverb of *vērŭs,* true; but *vēro* is used in answers, in the sense of 'in truth,' or 'certainly.' In this use it is added to the verb used in the question; as, *adfuistĭnĕ hĕrī in convīvĭo?* The affirmative answer is *ego vēro adfui,* or without the verb, *ego vēro,* and negatively, *mĭnĭme vēro;* and as *vēro* thus merely indicates a reply, it is often untranslatable into English.— *Certŏ,* on the other hand, usually takes the meaning of the adjective *certus,* while *certē* often signifies 'at least'; as, *victī sŭmus, aut, si dignĭtas vinci non pŏtest, fractī certē;* but *certē* is frequently used in the sense of 'certainly,' especially in the phrase *certē scio.*

NOTE 2. Some adjectives, from the nature of their signification, have no corresponding adverbs. Of some others, also, none occur in the classics. Such are *āmens, dīrŭs, discors, gnārŭs, rūdis, trux, imbellis, immōbĭlis,* and similar compounds. In place of the adverbs formed from *vĕtŭs* and *fīdŭs, vĕtustē* and *antīquē* are used for the former, and *fīdēlĭtĕr* for the latter, from *vĕtustŭs, antīquŭs,* and *fīdēlĭs.*

III. From the adjective pronouns are derived adverbs of place, etc. (See § 191, Rem. 1.)

REMARK. The terminations *ō* and *ūc* denote the place *whither,* instead of the accusative of the pronoun with a preposition; as, *eŏ* for *ad eum lŏcum; hūc* for *ad hunc lŏcum;* the terminations *dĕ* and *inc* denote the place *from which;* *ĭ* and *īc,* the place *in which;* and *ā* and *āc,* the place *by* or *through which;* as, *eā; viā* or *parte* being understood.

IV. (*a.*) A few adverbs are derived from prepositions; as, *subtŭs,* beneath; from *sŭb; proptĕr,* near; from *prŏpĕ.* (*b.*) *Mordĭcŭs* and *versŭs* are derived from the verbs *mordeo* and *verto.*

REMARK. Diminutives are formed from a few adverbs; as, *clam, clanculum; prīmum, prīmŭlum; cĕlĕrĭŭs, cĕlĕrĭuscŭlē; sæpiŭs, sæpiuscŭlē; bĕnĕ, bellē, bellissĭmē.*

COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

§ **193.**   Adverbs are compounded variously :—

1. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *postrīdiē, quŏtīdiē, magnŏpĕrĕ, maxĭmŏpĕrĕ, summŏpĕrĕ, quantŏpĕrĕ, tantŏpĕrĕ, tantummŏdo, solummŏdo, multĭmŏdis, quŏtannis*—of *postĕrō diē, magnō ŏpĕre*, etc.

2. Of a pronoun and a noun; as, *hŏdiē, quārē, quōmŏdŏ*—of *hōc diē, quā rē*, etc.

3. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nūdĭŭs, sæpĕnŭmĕrō*—of *nunc dies*, etc.

4. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *commĭnŭs, ēmĭnŭs, illĭco, ŏbĭter, extemplō, obviam, postmŏdŏ, admŏdum, prŏpĕdiem*—of *con, e,* and *uānŭs ; in* and *lŏcŭs ;* etc.

5. Of an adjective and a pronoun; as, *ăliōquī* or *ăliōquīn, cētĕrōquī* or *cētĕrōquīn*—of *ăliŭs* and *quī,* i. e. *ăliō quō (mŏdo),* etc.

6. Of a pronoun and an adverb; as, *ăliquamdiū, ălĭcŭbi*—of *ăliquĭs, 'diū,* and *ŭbi ; nēquāquam* and *nēquicquam*—of *nē* and *quisquam.*

7. Of two verbs; as, *īlĭcĕt, scīlĭcĕt vĭdēlĭcĕt* of *īrĕ, scīre, vĭdēre,* and *lĭcĕt.*

8. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *quōlĭbĕt, ŭbīvīs, undēlĭbĕt.* So *deinceps*—from *dein* and *căpio ; duntaxat*—from *dum* and *taxo.*

9. Of a participle with various parts of speech; as, *deorsum, dextrorsum, horsum, retrorsum, sursum*—of *dē, dextĕr, hīc, retro, sŭpĕr,* and *vorsŭs* or *versŭs.*

10. Of two adverbs; as, *jamdūdum, quamdiū, tamdiū, cummaxĭmē, tummaxĭmē, quousquĕ, sĭcŭt.*

11. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *dēnuo, imprīmīs, cumprīmīs, apprīmē, incassum*—of *dē nŏvŏ, in prīmīs,* etc.

12. Of a preposition and a pronoun; as, *quaproptĕr, posteā, intĕreā, prætĕreā, hactĕnŭs, quātĕnŭs, ăliquātĕnŭs, eātĕnŭs*—of *proptĕr quæ, post ea* or *eam,* etc.

13. Of a preposition and an adverb; as, *ăbhinc, ădhūc, dĕrĕpentē, intĕribi, interdiū, interdum, persæpē.*

14. Of two or three prepositions; as, *insŭpĕr, prōtĭnŭs, indĕ, dein, deindĕ, pĕrindĕ.*

15. Of a conjunction and an adverb; as, *nēcŭbi, sīcŭbi*—of *nē, sī,* and *ălĭcŭbi.*

16. Of an adverb and a termination scarcely used except in composition; as, *ĭbīdem, părumpĕr, quandōcumquĕ, ŭbīquĕ, utcumquĕ.*

17. Of three different parts of speech; as, *forsĭtăn*—of *fors, sĭt, ăn, quemadmŏdum, quamobrem,* etc.

18. Of an adverb and an adjective; as, *nīmīrum, utpŏtĕ.*

19. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *quantumvīs, quantumlĭbĕt.*

Signification of certain Compound and Derivative Adverbs.

1. The adverbs *contĭnuo, prōtĭnus, stătim, confestim, sŭbĭto, rĕpente* and *dĕrĕpente, actūtum, illĭco, ĭlĭcet, extemplo,* signify in general 'directly' or 'immediately'; but, strictly, *contĭnuo* means, 'immediately after'; *stătim,* 'without delay'; *confestim,* 'directly'; *sŭbĭto,* 'suddenly, unexpectedly'; *prōtĭnus,* 'farther,' viz. in the same direction, and hence, 'without interruption'; *rĕpente* and *dĕrĕpente,* 'at once,' opposed to *sensim,* 'gradually,' (see Cic. Off. 1, 33); *actūtum,* 'instantaneously,' i. q. *eōdem actū ; illĭco,* and more rarely *ĭlĭcet,* 'forthwith, the instant,' (Virg. Æn. 2, 424, Cic. Mur. 10); so also *extemplo,* (Liv. 41, 1).

2. *Præsertim, præcĭpue, imprīmīs, cumprīmīs, apprīme,* are generally translated 'principally,' but, properly, *præsertim* is 'particularly,' and sets forth a particular circumstance with emphasis; *præcĭpue,* from *præcăpio,* has reference to privilege, and signifies 'especially'; *imprīmīs* and *cumprīmīs,* signify 'principally,' or 'in preference to others'; and *apprīme,* 'before all,' 'very,' is used

in pure Latin to qualify and strengthen only adjectives. *Admŏdum* properly signifies 'according to measure,' that is, 'in as great a measure as can be,' 'very, exceedingly.' With numerals it denotes approximation, 'about.' *Admŏdum nihil* and *admŏdum nullus* signify 'nothing at all' and 'no one at all.'

3. *Mŏdo* is the usual equivalent for 'only.' *Sōlum*, 'alone,' 'merely,' points to something higher or greater. *Tantum*, 'only,' 'merely,' intimates that something else was expected. The significations of *sōlum* and *tantum* are strengthened by *mŏdo*, forming *sōlummŏdo* and *tantummŏdo*. *Duntaxat*, 'only, solely,' is not joined with verbs. It also signifies 'at least,' denoting a limitation to a particular point. *Saltem* also signifies 'at least,' but denotes the reduction of a demand to a minimum; as, *Eripe mihi hunc dolōrem, aut minue saltem.*

4. *Frustrā* implies a disappointed expectation; as in *frustra suscipĕre labōres*. *Nēquicquam* denotes the absence of success, as in Hor. Carm. 1, 3, 21. *Incassum*, composed of *in* and *cassum*, 'hollow' or 'empty,' signifies 'to no purpose'; as, *tēla incassum jacĕre.*

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 194. 1. Adverbs derived from adjectives with the terminations *ē* and *tĕr*, and most of those in *o*, are compared like their primitives.

2. The comparative, like the neuter comparative of the adjective, ends in *iŭs;* the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing *ŭs* into *e ;* as,

dūrē, dūriŭs, dūrissĭmē; fācĭlē, fācĭliŭs, fācĭllĭmē; ācrĭtĕr, ācriŭs, ācerrĭmĕ; rārō, rāriŭs, rārissĭmē; mātūrē, mātūriŭs, mātūrissĭmē or *mātūrrĭme.*

3. Some adverbs have superlatives in *ō* or *um*; as, *mĕrĭtissĭmō, plūrĭmum, prīmō* or *prīmum, pŏtissĭmum.*

4. If the comparison of the adjective is irregular or defective, (see §§ 125, 126), that of the adverb is so likewise; as,

bĕnē, mĕliŭs, optĭmē; mălĕ, pĕjŭs, pessĭmē; părum, mĭnŭs, mĭnĭmē; multum, plūs, plūrĭmum; —, priŭs, prīmō or *prīmum; —, ŏciŭs, ōcissĭmē; —, dētĕriŭs, dētĕrrĭmē; —, pŏtiŭs, pŏtissĭme* or *pŏtissĭmum; mĕrĭtō, —, mĕrĭtissĭmo; sătis, sătiŭs, —. Măgĭs, maxĭmē,* (from *magnŭs,*) has no positive; *nūpĕr, nūperrĭme,* has no comparative. *Prŏpē, prŏpiŭs, proxĭme :* the adjective *prŏpiŏr* has no positive in use. The regular adverb in the positive degree from *ūbĕr* is wanting, its place being supplied by *ūbertim,* but *ūbĕriŭs* and *ūberrĭmē* are used. So instead of *tristĭtĕr, tristĕ,* the neuter of *tristis,* is used, but the comparative *tristiŭs* is regular; and from *sōcors* only *sōcordiŭs,* the comparative, is in use.

5. *Diū* and *sæpē,* though not derived from adjectives, are yet compared;— *diū, diūtiŭs, diūtissĭme ; sæpē, sæpiŭs, sæpissĭme.* A comparative *tempĕriŭs,* from *tempĕrī* or *tempŏrī,* also sometimes occurs. So *sĕcŭs, sēciŭs.*

6. Adverbs, like adjectives, are sometimes compared by prefixing *măgĭs* and *maxĭmē ;* as, *măgĭs ăpertē, maxĭmē accommŏdātē.*

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 195. 1. A preposition is a particle which expresses the relation between a noun or pronoun and some preceding word.

2. Prepositions express the relations of persons or things, either to one another, or to actions and conditions; as, *ămor meus erga te,* my love toward thee; *eo ad te,* I go to thee.

3. Some prepositions have the noun or pronoun which follows them in the accusative, some, in the ablative, and some, in either the accusative or the ablative.

4. Twenty-six prepositions have an accusative after them:—

ăd, *to, towards, at, for.*
adversŭs, } *against,*
adversum, } *towards.*
antĕ, *before.*
ăpŭd, *at, with, near, before, in presence of.*
circā, } *around, about.*
circum, } *around, about.*
circĭtĕr, *about, near.*
cĭs, } *on this side, within.*
citrā, } *on this side, within.*
contrā, *against, opposite.*
ergā, *towards, opposite.*

extrā, *without, beyond.*
infrā, *under, beneath.*
intĕr, *between, among, during.*
intrā, *within.*
juxtā, *near to, next to.*
ŏb, *for, on account of, before.*
pĕnĕs, *in the power of, with.*
pĕr, *through, throughout, by, during.*
pōnĕ, *behind.*

post, *after, since, behind.*
prætĕr, *past, before, against, beyond, besides.*
prŏpĕ, *near by, nigh.*
proptĕr, *near, on account of.*
sĕcundum, *after, behind, along, next to, according to.*
suprā, *above, over.*
trans, *over, beyond.*
ultrā, *beyond.*

5. Eleven prepositions have after them an ablative:—

ā, }
ăb, } *from, after, by.*
abs, }
absquĕ, *without, but for.*
cōram, *before, in presence of.*
cum, *with.*

dē, *from, down from, after, of, concerning.*
ē, } *out of, from, of, by,*
ex, } *after.*
pălam, *before, in presence of.*

præ, *before, for, on account of, in comparison with.*
prō, *before, for, instead of, according to.*
sĭnĕ, *without.*
tĕnŭs, *as far as, up to.*

6. Five prepositions take after them sometimes an accusative, and sometimes an ablative:—

clam, *without the knowledge of.*
ĭn, *in, on; to, into, against.*
sŭb, *under, about, near.*
subtĕr, *under, beneath.*
sŭpĕr, *above, over; upon, concerning.*

REMARK 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally *placed before* the noun or pronoun whose relation they express. They sometimes, however, stand after it. Cf. § 279, 10.

REM. 2. *A* is used only before consonants; *ăb* before vowels, and frequently before consonants, though rarely before labials: *abs* is obsolete, except in the phrase *abs te.*
E is used only before consonants, *ex* before both vowels and consonants.

REM. 3. *Versŭs*, which follows its noun, (cf. § 235, R. 3), *usquĕ*, and *exadversŭs* (*-um*), sometimes take an accusative, *sĭmŭl* and *prŏcŭl*, an ablative, and are then by some called prepositions. *Sēcŭs*, with an accusative, occurs in Pliny and Cato.

REM. 4. Many of the prepositions, especially those which denote place, are also used as adverbs. Cf. § 191.

Signification and Use of certain Prepositions.

REM. 5. (a.) *A d* denotes direction, and answers to the questions Whither? and Till when? as, *Venio ăd te. Sophocles ăd summam senectŭtem tragœdĭas fēcĭt.* Cic. It also denotes a fixed time; as, *ăd hōram,* at the hour; *ăd tempus ălĭquĭd facĕre,*—at the right time. But sometimes *ăd tempus* denotes 'for a time.' Sometimes, also, *ăd* denotes the approach of time; as, *ăd lūcem, ăd vespĕram, ăd extrēmum,* towards day-break, etc.; and also the actual arrival of a time; as, *ăd prĭma sĭgna vēris profĕctus,* at the first sign of Spring.

(*b.*) In answer to the question Where? *ăd* signifies 'near' a place; as, *ăd urbem esse; ăd portas urbis; pugna navalis ăd Tenĕdum*. It is used like *in*, 'at,' in such phrases as *ăd œdem Bellōnæ*, or, without *œdem*, *ăd Opis*, *negotium habēre ăd portum*.—With numerals it may be rendered 'to the amount of' or 'nearly'; as, *ăd ducentos*. It is also used like *circĭtĕr* without any case; as, *Occīsis ăd homĭnum millĭbus quatuor*.—The phrase *omnes ăd ūnum* signifies, 'all without exception,' 'every one.'

(*c.*) *Ad* often denotes an object or purpose, and hence comes its signification of 'in respect to'; as, *hŏmo ăd labōres belli impĭger*. It is also used in figurative relations to denote a model, standard, or object of comparison, where we say 'according to,' or 'in comparison with'; as, *ăd mŏdum, ăd effĭgiem, ăd similĭtudĭnem, ăd speciem alicūjus rei; ăd normam, ăd voluntātem alicūjus facĕre alĭquid*. *Ad verbum* signifies, 'word for word'; *nihil ăd hanc rem*, 'nothing in comparison with this thing.'

REM. 6. *Ăpŭd* expresses nearness to, and was primarily used of persons as *ăd* was applied to things. *Apŭd* also denotes rest, and *ăd* direction, motion, etc. Hence it signifies 'with,' both literally and figuratively. With names of places it signifies 'near,' like *ăd*; as, *Măle pugnātum est ăpŭd Caudium*. But in early writers, *ăpŭd* is used for *in*; as, *Augustus ăpŭd urbem Nŏlam extinctus est*,—at Nola.—With *me, te, se*, or the name of a person, it signifies 'at the house' or 'dwelling of'; as, *Fuisti ăpŭd Læcam illā nocte*.—Before appellatives of persons having authority in regard to any matter, it is translated 'before,' 'in the presence of'; as, *ăpŭd judĭces, ăpŭd prætōrem, ăpŭd pŏpŭlum*.—It is also used with names of authors, instead of *in* with the name of their works; as, *Apŭd Xenŏphontem*, but we cannot say *in Xenophonte*.

REM. 7. *Adversŭs, contrā*, and *ergā* signify 'opposite to.' *Contrā* denotes hostility, like our 'against'; *ergā*, a friendly disposition, 'towards'; and *adversŭs* is used in either sense. But *ergā* sometimes occurs in a hostile sense.

REM. 8. *Intrā* signifies 'within,' in regard both to time and place. In regard to place it is used in answer to both questions Where? and Whither? It denotes time either as an entire period, when it is equivalent to 'during,' or as 'unfinished,' when it corresponds with 'under,' or 'before the expiration of.'

REM. 9. *Pĕr*, denoting place, signifies, 'through,' and also 'in,' in the sense of 'throughout.'—With the accusative of persons it signifies 'through,' 'by the instrumentality of.' It often expresses the manner; as, *pĕr litĕras*, by letter; *pĕr injuriam, pĕr scĕlus*, with injustice, criminally; *pĕr ĭram*, from or in anger; *pĕr simulatiōnem, pĕr speciem, pĕr causam*, under the pretext; *pĕr occasiōnem*, on the occasion; *pĕr rĭdĭcŭlum*, in a ridiculous manner.—It sometimes signifies 'on account of'; as, *pĕr valetudĭnem*, on account of illness.—*Pĕr me lĭcet*,—so far as I am concerned.

REM. 10. *A* or *ăb*, denoting time, is used with nouns, both abstract and concrete, with the same general meaning; as, *ā prīmā œtāte, ăb ineunte œtāte, ăb initio œtātis, ăb infantiā, ā puerĭtiā, ăb adolescentiā*; and, *ā puĕro, ā puĕris, ăb adolescentŭlo, ăb infante*, all of which signify 'from an early age.' So also, *ā parvis, ā parvŭlo, ā tenĕro, ā tenĕris unguĭcŭlis*, which expressions are of Greek origin.—*Ab initio, ā principio, ā prīmo*, properly denote the space of time from the beginning down to a certain point; as, *Urbem Rōmam ā principio rēges habuēre*, i. e. for a certain period after its foundation. But frequently *ăb initio* is equivalent to *initio*, in the beginning.—The adherents or followers of a school are often named from its head; as, *ā Platōne, ăb Aristotĕle*, etc.—In comic writers *ăb* is sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, *ancilla ăb Andrĭā*.—In a figurative sense it signifies 'with regard to'; as, *ăb equĭtātu firmus*.—With names of persons it also denotes relationship, and signifies 'on the side of'; as, *Augustus ā matre Măgnum Pompeium artissĭmo contingēbat grădu*,—on his mother's side.—*Stătim, confestim, rĕcens ăb alĭquā re*, 'immediately after.'—*Ab itĭnĕre alĭquid facĕre*, to do a thing while on a journey.

REM. 11. *Cum* is used not only to designate accompanying persons but also accompanying circumstances; as, *cum alĭquo īre; hostes cum detrimento sunt*

depulsi. It signifies also ‘in,’ i. e. ‘dressed in’; as, *cum tunĭcā pullā sedēre.* With verbs implying hostility, it signifies ‘with,’ in the sense of ‘against’; as, *cum alĭquo bellum gerĕre; cum alĭquo quĕri,* to complain of or against.

REM. 12. *Dē* commonly signifies ‘concerning,’ ‘about.’ Hence *tradĭtur dē Homēro* is very different from *tradĭtur ăb Homēro;* in the former, Homer is the object, in the latter the agent.—In the epistolary style, when a new subject is touched upon, *dē* signifies ‘in regard to,’ ‘as respects’; as, *dē frātre, confīdo ĭta esse, ut semper volui.*—It often signifies ‘down from’; and also ‘of,’ in a partitive sense; as, *hŏmo dē plēbe, ūnus dē popŭlo.*—From its partitive significa-tion arises its use in denoting time; as, *in comitĭum dē nocte venīre,* i. e. even by night, or spending a part of the night in coming; hence *multā dē nocte, mediā dē nocte,* ‘in the depth of night,’ ‘in the middle of the night.’—In other cases, also, it is used for *ex* or *ăb;* as, *Audīvi hoc dē parente meo puer.* Cic.; especially in connection with *emĕre, mercāri, conducĕre.* *Triumphum agĕre dē Gallis* and *ex Gallis* are used indiscriminately—Sometimes, like *secundum,* it signifies ‘in accordance with,’ ‘after’; as, *dē consilĭo meo:*—sometimes it denotes the man-ner of an action; as, *dēnŭo, dē intĕgro,* afresh; *dē improvīso,* unexpectedly; *dē industrĭā,* purposely:—*quā dē re, quā dē causā, quĭbus dē causis,* for which reason or reasons.

REM. 13. *Ex,* ‘from,’ ‘out of.’ *Ex ĕquo pugnāre,* to fight on horseback; so *ex itinĕre scribĕre: ex adverso, ē regiōne,* opposite; *ex omni parte,* in or from all parts.—*Ex vīno* or *ex ăquā coquĕre* or *bibĕre,* i. e. ‘with wine,’ etc. are medi-cal expressions.—It sometimes denotes manner; as, *ex anĭmo laudāre,* to praise heartily; *ex sententĭā* and *ex voluntāte,* according to one’s wish.—It is also, like *dē,* used in a partitive sense; as, *ūnus ē plēbe, ūnus ē multis.*

REM. 14. *In,* with the accusative, signifying ‘to’ or ‘into,’ denotes the point towards which motion proceeds; as, *in œdem īre;* or the direction in which a thing extends; as, *dĕcem pĕdes in altitudĭnem,* in height; so, also, it denotes figuratively the object towards which an action is directed, either with a friendly or a hostile design; as, *ămor in patrĭam, odĭum in malos cīves, in milĭtes liberālis; oratĭo in alĭquem,* a speech against some one.—It also de-notes a purpose; as, *pecunĭa dăta est in rem militārem. Pax dăta Philippo in has lēges est,* on these conditions.—With words denoting time, it expresses a predetermination of that time, like ‘for’; as, *invitāre alĭquem in postĕrum diem,* for the following day. *In diem vivĕre,* to live only for the day; *in futūrum, in postĕrum, in relĭquum,* for the future; *in œternum, in perpetuum,* forever; *in prœsens,* for the present: with all these adjectives *tempus* may be supplied. *In* with *singŭli,* expressed or understood, denotes a distribution, and may be translated ‘to,’ ‘for,’ ‘on,’ ‘over.’—*In singŭlos dies,* or simply *in dies,* with comparatives and verbs denoting increase, signifies ‘from day to day.’—In some phrases it denotes the manner of an action; as, *servīlem in mŏdum, mīrum in mŏdum;* so *in universum,* in general; *in commūne,* in common; *in vĭcem,* alternately, or, instead of; *in alicūjus lŏcum alĭquid petĕre,* in the place, or, instead of.

REM. 15. *In,* with the ablative, signifies ‘in,’ ‘on,’ ‘upon,’ and answers to the question, Where? When a number or quantity is indicated, it signifies ‘among,’ and is equivalent to *intĕr.* It may sometimes be translated ‘with,’ or ‘notwithstanding’; as, *In summā copĭā oratōrum, nēmo tămen Cicerōnis laudem œquāvit.*—With nouns which by themselves denote time, such as *secŭlum, annus, mensis, dies, nox, vesper,* etc., the time, in answer to the ques-tion When? is expressed by the simple ablative; but *in* is used with words which acquire the signification of time only by such connection; as, *in con-sulātu, in princĭpĭo, in bello;* but even with these *in* is sometimes omitted, but is usually retained in connection with the gerund or gerundive; as, *in legendo, in legendis libris. In prœsenti,* or *in prœsentĭā,* signifies ‘at the present mo-ment,’ ‘for the present.’—*Est in eo, ut alĭquid fiat* signifies that something is on the point of happening.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

§ **196.**   Most of the prepositions are used also in forming compound words. In composition, they may be considered either in reference to their form, or their force.

I. (*a.*) Prepositions in composition sometimes retain their final consonants, and sometimes change them, to adapt them to the sounds of the initial consonants of the words with which they are compounded. In some words, both forms are in use; in others, the final consonant or consonants are omitted.

1. *A*, in composition, is used before *m* and *v*; as, *ămŏveo, ăvello*, and sometimes before *f* in *āfui* and *āfŏre*, for *abfui* and *abfŏre*. *Ab* is used before vowels, and before *d, f, h, j, l, n, r,* and *s*; as, *abjūro, abrŏgo*, etc. *Abs* occurs only before *c, q,* and *t*; as, *abscondo, absque, abstineo.* In *aspello, aspernor,* and *asporto*, the *b* of *abs* is dropped; in *aufĕro* and *aufugio*, it is changed into *u*.

2. *Ad* remains unchanged before vowels and before *b, d, h, m, v.* It often changes *d* into *c, f, g, l, n, p, r, s, t,* before those letters respectively; as, *accēdo, affĕro, aggrĕdior, allĕgo, annitor, appōno, arrĭgo, assĕquor, attollo.* Its *d* is usually omitted before *s* followed by a consonant, and before *gn*; as, *aspergo, aspĭcio, agnosco, agnātus.* Before *q*, the *d* is changed into *c*; as, *acquīro.*

3. *Ante* remains unchanged, except in *antĭcĭpo* and *antisto*, where it changes *e* into *i*; but *antesto* also occurs.

4. *Circum* in composition remains unchanged, only in *circŭmeo* and its derivatives the *m* is often dropped; as, *circueo, circuĭtus*, etc.

5. *Cum* (in composition, *com*), retains *m* before *b, m, p*; as, *combĭbo, committo, compōno:* before *l, n, r,* its *m* is changed into those letters respectively; as, *collĭgo, connītor, corrĭpio:* before other consonants, it becomes *n*; as, *condūco, conjungo.* Before a vowel, *gn* or *h, m* is commonly omitted; as, *coĕo, coopto, cognosco, cohăbĭto;* but it is sometimes retained; as, *comĕdo, cŏmes, cŏmĭtor.* In *cōgo* and *cōgĭto* a contraction also takes place; as, *cŏăgo, cōgo*, etc. In *combūro, b* is inserted.

6. *Ex* is prefixed to vowels, and to *c, h, p, q, s, t*; as, *exeo, exĭgo, excurro, exhĭbeo, expĕdio.* Before *f, x* is assimilated, and also rarely becomes *ec*; as, *effĕro*, or *ecfĕro. S* after *x* is often omitted; as, *exĕquor*, for *exsĕquor*; in *excidium* (from *exscindo*), *s* is regularly dropped. *E* is prefixed to the other consonants; as, *ēbĭbo, ēdĭco*, except in *eclex.* Before these however, with the exception of *n* and *r, ex* is sometimes used; as, *exmŏveo. E* is sometimes used before *p*; as, *ēpōto.*

7. *In* remains unchanged before a vowel. Before *b, m, p,* it changes *n* into *m*; as, *imbuo, immitto, impōno:* before *l* and *r, n* is assimilated; as, *illĭgo, irrētio:* before *gn, n* is omitted; as, *ignārus.* Before the other consonants *in* is unchanged. In some compounds, *in* retains *d* before a vowel, from an ancient form *indu;* as, *indĭgĕna, indĭgeo, indolesco.* So anciently *indŭperātor*, for *imperātor.*

8. *Inter* remains unchanged, except in *intellĭgo* and its derivatives, in which *r* before *l* is assimilated.

9. *Ob* remains unchanged before vowels and generally before consonants. Its *b* is assimilated before *c, f, g, p*; as, *occurro, officio, oggannio, oppĕto.* In *ŏmitto, b* is dropped. An ancient form *obs*, analogous to *abs* for *ab*, is implied in *obsolesco*, from the simple verb *oleo*, and in *ostendo*, for *obstendo.*

10. *Per* is unchanged in composition, except in *pellĭcio* and sometimes in *pellŭceo*, in which *r* is assimilated before *l.* In *pējĕro, r* is dropped.

11. *Post* remains unchanged, except in *pōmœrium* and *pōmĕrīdĭānus*, in which *st* is dropped.

12. *Præ* and *præter* in composition remain unchanged, except that *præ* is shortened before a vowel. Cf. § 283, II. Exc. 1.

13. *Prō* has sometimes its vowel shortened, (cf. § 285, 2, Exc. 5) and, to avoid hiatus, it sometimes takes *d* before a vowel; as, *prōdeo, prōdesse, prōdigo.* Before verbs beginning with *r* and *l*, *pro* sometimes becomes *por* and *pol;* as, *porrigo, polliceor.*

14. *Sŭb* in composition remains unchanged before a vowel and before *b, d, j, l, n, s, t, v.* Before *c, f, g, m, p, r,* its *b* is regularly assimilated; as, *succēdo, sufféro, suggĕro, summŏveo, supplico, surrĭpio.* Before *c, p,* and *t,* it sometimes takes the form *sus* from *subs,* analogous to *abs* and *obs;* as, *suscĭpio, suspendo, sustollo: b* is omitted before *s,* followed by a consonant; as, *suspĭcio.*

15. *Subter* and *sŭper* in composition remain unchanged.

16. *Trans* remains unchanged before a vowel. It omits *s* before *s;* as, *transcendo:* in *trādo, trādūco, trājĭcio,* and *trāno, ns* is commonly omitted.

(*b.*) The following words are called *inseparable prepositions,* because they are found only in composition :—

Ambĭ or amb, (Greek ἀμφί), *around, about.*   Rĕd or rĕ, *again, back.*   Vē, *not.*
Dĭs or dī, *asunder.*   Sē, *apart, aside.*

1. *Amb* is always used before a vowel; as, *ambāges, ambarvālis, ambēdo, ambĭgo, ambio, ambūro:* except *ampulla, ămĭcio,* and *ănhēlo.* Before consonants it has the forms *ambi;* as, *ambɩdens, ambĭfāriam, ambĭvium: am;* as, *amplector, ampūto:* or *an;* as, *anceps, anfractus, anquĭro.*

2. *Dĭs* is prefixed to words beginning with *c, p, q, s* before a vowel, *t,* and *h;* as, *discŭtio, dispōno, disquīro, distendo, dishiasco:* but *disertus* is formed from *dissēro;* before *f, s* is changed into *f;* as, *diffĕro:* in *dĭrimo,* and *dĭribeo* (from *dĭs hăbeo), s* becomes *r.* *Dī* is prefixed to the other consonants, and to *s* when followed by a consonant; as, *dĭdūco, dĭmitto, distinguo, dispĭcio.* But both *dĭs* and *dī* are used before *j;* as, *disjungo, dĭjūdico,* and before *r* in *rumpo.*

3. *Rĕd* is used before a vowel or *h; rĕ* before a consonant; as, *rĕdămo, rĕdeo, rĕdhibeo, rĕdĭgo, rĕdŏleo, rĕdundo;—rĕjĭcio, rĕpōno, rĕvertor.* But *rĕd* is used before *do;* as, *reddo.* The connecting vowel *ĭ* is found in *rĕdĭvīvus;* and in the poetical forms *rellĭgio, rellĭquiæ,* and sometimes in *reccĭdo* the *d* is assimilated. In later writers *re* is sometimes found before a vowel or *h.*

4. *Sē* and *vē* are prefixed without change; as, *sēcēdo, sēcūrus; vēgrandis, vēcors.*

§ **197.**   II. Prepositions in composition usually add their own signification to that of the word with which they are united; but sometimes they give to the compound a meaning different from that of its simples. The following are their most common significations :—

1. *A,* or *ab, away, from, down; entirely; un-.* With verbs it denotes removal, disappearance, absence; as, *auffĕro, abūtor, absum.* With adjectives it denotes absence, privation; as, *ămens, absŏnus.*

2. *Ad, to, toward; at; by.* In composition with verbs *ăd* denotes (*a*) *motion to,* (not *into*), as, accēdo; (*b*) *addition,* as, ascrībo; (*c*) *nearness,* as, assīdeo; (*d*) *assent, favor,* as, annuo, arrīdeo; (*e*) *repetition* and hence *intensity,* as, accīdo; (*f*) *at, in consequence of,* as, arrigo. It is sometimes augmentative, rarely inchoative.

3. *Ambĭ, around, about, on both sides.*

4. *Circum, around, about, on all sides.*

5. *Cŏm* or *cŏn, together, entirely.* In composition with verbs it denotes (*a*) *union,* as, concurro, consŭlo; (*b*) *completeness,* as, combūro, confĭcio; (*c*) *with effort,* as, conjĭcio, conclāmo; (*d*) *in harmony,* as, consŏno, consentio; (*e*) *on* or *over,* like the English *be-,* as, collīno, to besmear.

6. *Contra*, against, opposite.

7. *Dō*, off, away, through, over, down; entirely; very, extremely. With verbs *dē* denotes (*a*) *down;* as, dēmitto; (*b*) *removal;* as, dētondeo; (*c*) *absence;* as, dēsum, dēlăbeo; (*d*) *prevention;* as, dēhortor; (*e*) *unfriendly feeling;* as, despicio, dērideo.—With adjectives *dē* denotes (*a*) *down;* as, dēclīvis; (*b*) *without;* as, dēmens.

8. *Dīs*, asunder, apart, in pieces, in two; dis-, un-; very greatly. With verbs *dis* denotes (*a*) *division;* as, dīvĭdo, dīlābor; (*b*) *difference;* as, discrĕpo, dissentio; (*c*) *the reverse of the simple notion;* as, displiceo, diffīdo; (*d*) *intensity;* as, dīlaudo.—With adjectives *dis* denotes *difference;* as, discŏlor, discors.

9. *E*, or *ex*, out, forth, away, upward, without, -less, un-; utterly, completely, very. With verbs it denotes (*a*) *out;* as, exeo, exĭmo, ēlăbōro; (*b*) *removal of something;* as, ēdormio; (*c*) *publicity;* as, ēdīco; (*d*) *ascent;* as, exsisto; (*e*) *completeness;* as, ēdisco, exūro; (*f*) with denominative verbs, *change of character;* as, expio, effĕro (āre); (*g*) *removal of what is expressed by the noun whence the verb is derived;* as ēnūdo; (*h*) *the reversal of the fundamental idea;* as, explĭco; (*i*) *distance;* as, exaudio.—With adjectives formed from substantives it denotes *absence;* as, exsomnis.

10. *In*, with verbs, signifies in, on, at; into, against; as, ĭnhăbĭto, induo, ingĕmo, ĭneo, *illīdo*. With adjectives, un-, in-, im-, il-, ir-, not; as, ignōtus, ĭnhospĭtālis, immortālis. Some of its compounds have contrary significations, according as they are participles or adjectives; as, *intectus, part.*, covered, *adj.*, uncovered.

11. *Inter*, between, among, at intervals.

12. *Ob*, with verbs, signifies to, towards; as, ŏbeo, ostendo; against; as, obluctor, obnuntio; at, before; as, ŏbambŭlo, obversor; upon; as, occulco; over; as, obdūco.

13. *Per*, with verbs, denotes, through, thoroughly, perfectly, quite; as, perdūco, perfĭcio, perdo: with adjectives, through, very; as, pernox, perlēvis.

14. *Post*, after, behind.

15. *Præ* in composition with verbs denotes (*a*) *before* in place; as, præmitto; (*b*) *by* or *past;* as, præfluo; (*c*) *in command;* as, præsum, præfĭcio; (*d*) *superiority;* as, præsto; (*e*) *before* in time; as, prædico, præcerpo; *at the extremity;* as, præūro.—With adjectives, (*a*) *before* in place or time; as, præceps, præscius; (*b*) *very;* as, præaltus, præclārus.

16. *Præter*, past, by, beyond, besides.

17. *Prō*, before, forward, forth, away, down; for; openly; as, prōlūdo, porrĭgo, prōterreo, prōtĕro, prōcūro, prōfĭteor.

18. *Rĕ*, again, against, back, re-, un-, away; greatly; as, rĕflōresco, rĕpendo, rĕfĕrio, rĕfĭgo, rĕcondo.

19. *Sē*, without, aside, apart; as, sēcūro, sēpōno, sēcēdo, sēcūrus.

20. *Sŭb*, up, from below upwards, under. With verbs *sŭb* also signifies (*a*) *assistance;* as, subvenio; (*b*) *succession;* as, succīno; (*c*) *in place of;* as, suffĭcio; (*d*) *near;* as, subsum; (*e*) *secretly, clandestinely;* as, surrĭpio, subdūco; (*f*) *somewhat, a little;* as, subrīdeo, sŭbaccūso.—With adjectives it signifies, *slightly, rather;* as, sŭbobscūrus, sŭbabsurdus, sŭbăcĭdus.

21. *Subter*, beneath, under, from under, secretly, privately.

22. *Sŭper*, above, over, left over, remaining, super-; as, sŭpersĕdeo, sŭpersum, sŭperstes, sŭpervăcāneus.

23. *Trans*, over, across, through; beyond; as, trādo, transeo, transfĭgo, transalpīnus.

24. *Vē*, not, without; very; as, vēgrandis, vēcors; vēpallĭdus.

REMARK. In composition the preposition seems often to add nothing to the signification of the word with which it is compounded.

15

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 198. A conjunction is a particle which connects words or propositions.

The most usual conjunctions are,

ātque, ǎc, } *and, as; than.*
āc si, *as if.*
ădeo, *so that, so.*
ǎn, anne, } *whether.*
annon, *whether or not.*
antĕquam, *before.*
ăt, ast, *but.*
ăt ĕnim, *but indeed.*
atquī, *but.*
attǎmĕn, *but yet.*
aut, *either, or.*
aut...aut, *either...or.*
autem, *but.*
cētĕrum, *but, however.*
ceu, *as, like as, as if.*
cum *or* quum, *since.*
dōnĕc, *as long as, until.*
dum, *provided, while, as long as, until.*
dumǐnŏdo, *if but, if only.*
ĕnimvēro, *in very deed.*
ĕnim, ĕtĕnim, } *for.*
eō, *therefore.*
ĕquǐdem, *indeed.*
ergo, *therefore.*
ět, *and.*
ět...ět } *both...and;*
ět...quĕ, } *as well...as.*
ět...nĕque *or* nĕc, *on the one hand, but not the other.*
ĕtiam, *also.*
ĕtiamsi, etsī, } *although, though.*
iccirco, īdeo, īgĭtur, ītǎque, } *therefore.*
lǐcĕt, *though, although.*
mŏdo, *provided.*
nam, namquĕ, *for.*

nē, *lest, that not.*
-nĕ, *whether.*
nĕque *or* nĕc, *neither, nor.*
nĕque...nĕque, nĕc...nĕc, nĕque...nĕc, nĕc...nĕque, } *neither, ...nor.*
necnĕ, *or not.*
nĕque, *neither, nor.*
nĕque *or* nĕc...ĕt, nĕquĕ *or* nĕc...quĕ, } *not on the one hand, but on the other.*
nēve *or* neu, *nor, and not.*
nēve...nēve, neu...neu, } *neither... nor.*
nī, nǐsī, *unless.*
num, *whether.*
præūt, *in comparison with.*
proūt, *according as, just as, as.*
proinde, *hence, therefore.*
proptĕreā, *therefore, for that reason.*
postquam, *after, since.*
priusquam, *before.*
quam, *as, than.*
quamvīs, *although.*
quando, quandōquǐdem, *whereas, since.*
quamquam, *although.*
quāpropter, quārē, quamobrem, quōcircā, } *wherefore.*
quantumvīs, quamlĭbet, } *although, however.*
quǎsi, *as if, just as.*
-quĕ, *and.*
-quĕ...ĕt, } *both...and;*
-quĕ...-quĕ, } *as well...as.*
quiā, *because.*
quin, *but that, that not.*
quippĕ, *because.*

quŏ, *in order that.*
quoǎd, *as long as, until.*
quŏd, *because, but.*
quodsī, *but if.*
quōmĭnus, *that not.*
quŏniam, *since, because.*
quŏquĕ, *also.*
quum *or* cum, *when, since, because.*
quum...tum, *both...and.*
sĕd, *but.*
sīcŭt, sīcŭtī, } *so as, just as, as.*
sī, *if.*
sī mŏdo, *if only.*
sīmŭl, sīmŭlǎc (-ǎtquĕ) } *as soon as.*
sīn, *but if, if however.*
sīvĕ *or* seu, *or if.*
sīvĕ...sīvĕ, seu...seu, } *whether...or.*
sīquǐdem, *if indeed, since.*
tǎmĕn, *however, still.*
tǎmetsī, *although.*
tamquam, *as if.*
tum...tum, *both...and.*
undĕ, *whence.*
ŭt, ŭtī, } *that, as that, so that, to the end that.*
ŭt sī, *as if.*
utrum, *whether.*
-vĕ, vĕl, } *either, or.*
vĕl...vĕl, *either...or.*
vĕlŭt, vĕlŭtī, } *even as, just as, like as.*
vēro, *truly, but indeed.*
vērum, *but.*
vēruntǎmĕn, *yet, notwithstanding.*
vērum-ĕnim vēro, *but indeed.*

Conjunctions, according to their different uses, are divided into two general classes,—coördinate and subordinate.

I. Coördinate conjunctions, are such as join coördinate or similar constructions; as,

Luna et *stellæ fulgēbant,* The moon *and* the stars were shining. *Concǐdunt venti, fugiunt*que *nubes,* The winds subside, *and* the clouds disperse. *Difficile factu est,* sed *conābor tamen,* It is difficult to accomplish, *but still* I will try.

Coördinate conjunctions include the following subdivisions, viz. *copulative, disjunctive, adversative, illative,* and most of the *causal* conjunctions.

II. Subordinate conjunctions are such as join dissimilar constructions; as,

Edo, *ut vivam,* I eat that I may live. Pyrrhus rex in itinĕre incĭdit in canem, *qui interfecti homĭnis corpus custodiēbat. Mergi pullos in aquam jussit,* ut bibĕrent, quoniam *esse nollent.*

Subordinate conjunctions include all those connectives which unite subordinate or dependent clauses. These are the *concessive, illative, final, conditional, interrogative,* and *temporal* conjunctions, and the *causals quod, quum, quoniam,* etc. To these may be added also the relatives whether pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs.

The following paragraphs contain a specification of the several conjunctions comprised in each of the preceding subdivisions, and remarks respecting their particular import and use as connectives.

1. COPULATIVE conjunctions connect things that are to be considered jointly; as, *ĕt, āc, atquĕ,* the enclitic *quĕ,* which, combined with the negation belonging to the verb, becomes *nĕquĕ* or *nĕc,* and, the negation being doubled, *nĕc nōn* or *nĕquĕ nōn,* it becomes again affirmative and equivalent to *ĕt.* To these are to be added *ĕtiam* and *quŏquĕ,* with the adverbials *ĭtem* and *ĭtĭdem.*

REMARK. (*a.*) *Et* and *quĕ* differ in this, *ĕt* connects things which are conceived as different, and *quĕ* adds what belongs to, or naturally flows from them. *Et,* therefore, is copulative and *quĕ* adjunctive. Hence, in an enumeration of words, *quĕ* frequently connects the last of the series, and by its means the preceding idea is extended without the addition of any thing which is generically different. In connecting propositions *quĕ* denotes a consequence, and is equivalent to 'and therefore.'

(*b.*) *Ac* never stands before vowels, *atquĕ* chiefly before vowels, but also before consonants.—*Atquĕ,* being formed of *ăd* and *quĕ,* properly signifies 'and also,' 'and in addition,' thus putting things on an equality, but giving emphasis to the latter. In the beginning of a proposition, which is explanatory of that which precedes, *atquĕ* or *āc* introduces a thing with great weight, and may be rendered 'now'; and in answers; as, *Cognostine hos versus?* Ac *memoriter,* it is rendered 'yes, and that.' *Ac* being an abridged form of *atquĕ* loses somewhat of its power in connecting single words, and its use alternates with that of *ĕt;* it is preferred in subdivisions, whereas the main propositions are connected by *ĕt.*

(*c.*) *Nĕquĕ,* compounded of the ancient *nē* for *nōn* and *quĕ,* is used for *ĕt nōn. Et nōn* itself is used, when only one idea or one word of a proposition is to be negatived; as, *patior* et non moleste *fero;* and also when our 'and not' is used for 'and not rather' to correct an improper supposition; as, *Si quam Rubrius injuriam suo nomĭne* ac non *impulsu tuo fecisset.* Cic. *Et nōn* is commonly found also in the second clause of a sentence when *ĕt* precedes, but *nĕquĕ,* also, is often used in this case. *Nĕc nōn* or *nĕquĕ nōn,* in classical prose, is not used like *ĕt* to connect nouns, but only to join propositions, and the two words are separated. In later writers, however, they are not separated and are equivalent to *ĕt.*

(*d.*) *Etiam* has a wider extent than *quŏquĕ,* for it contains the idea of our 'even,' and it also adds a new circumstance, whereas *quŏquĕ* denotes the addition of a thing of a similar kind. Hence *ĕtiam* is properly used to connect sentences, while *quŏquĕ* refers to a single word. *Etiam* signifies 'and further,' *quŏquĕ,* 'and so,' 'also.' *Quŏquĕ* always follows the word to which it refers, *ĕtiam* in similar cases is usually placed before it, but when it connects propositions its place is arbitrary. *Et,* too, in classical prose, is sometimes used in the sense of 'also.' So often is *nōn mŏdo—sĕd ĕt,* 'not only—but also,' or 'but even.'

(*e.*) Copulative conjunctions are often repeated in the sense of 'both—and,' 'as well—as,' 'not only—but also' *Et—ĕt* is of common occurrence; so, in later writers, but rarely in Cicero, *ĕt—quĕ*; *quē—ĕt* connect single words, but not in Cicero; *quĕ—quĕ*, occur for the most part only in poetry, or in connection with the relative.—Negative propositions are connected in English by 'neither—nor,' and in Latin by *nĕquĕ—nĕquĕ*, *nĕc—nĕc*, *nĕquĕ—nĕc*, and rarely by *nĕc—nĕquĕ*. Propositions, one of which is negative and the other affirmative 'on the one hand—but not on the other,' or, 'not on the one hand—but on the other,' are connected by *ĕt—nĕquĕ* or *nĕc*, *nĕquĕ* or *nĕc—ĕt*, and occasionally by *nĕc* or *nĕquĕ—quĕ*.

2. DISJUNCTIVE conjunctions connect things that are to be considered separately; as, *aut*, *vĕl*, the enclitic *vĕ*, and *sīvĕ* or *seu*.

REMARK. (*a.*) *Aut* and *vĕl* differ in this; *aut* indicates a difference of the object, *vĕl*, a difference of expression, i. e. *aut* is objective, *vĕl*, subjective. *Vĕl* is connected with the verb *velle*, and is generally repeated, *vĕl—vĕl*, 'choose this or choose this,' and the single *vĕl* is used by Cicero only to correct a preceding expression, and commonly combined with *dicam*, *pŏtius*, or *ĕtiam*.—Hence by ellipsis *vĕl* has acquired the signification of the adverb, 'even,' and so enhances the signification of the word modified by it; as, *Quum Sophŏcles* vel *optime scripsĕrit Electram*, where *bĕnĕ* is to be supplied before *vel*, and the latter is used for the purpose of correcting the preceding expression. Cf. § 127, 4. By means of its derivation from *velle* it has, also, the signification of 'for example' or 'to take a case,' for which *vĕlŭt* is more frequently used.—(*b.*) *Vĕ*, the apocopated *vĕl*, leaves the choice free between two or more things, and in later but good prose *vĕl* is used in the same manner.

(*c.*) *Sīvĕ* commonly retains the meaning of *sĭ*, and is then the same as *vĕl sĭ*, but sometimes loses it, and is then equivalent to *vĕl*, denoting a difference of name; as, *Vocabŭlum* sīve *appellatio*. Quint. The form *seu* is rarely used by Cicero except in the combination *seu pŏtius*.—(*d.*) *Aut* and *vĕ* serve to continue the negation in negative sentences, where we use 'nor'; as, *nōn—aut*, where *nōn—nĕquĕ* also may be used. They are used also in negative questions; as, *Num leges nostras moresvĕ nōrit?* Cic.; and after comparatives; as, *Doctrīna pauto aspĕrior*, *quam veritas* aut *natūra patiātur*. Cic. It is only when both ideas are to be united into one that a copulative is used instead of *aut* and *vĕ*.—(*e.*) 'Either—or' is expressed in Latin by *aut—aut*, denoting an opposition between two things, one of which excludes the other, or by *vĕl—vĕl*, denoting that the opposition is immaterial in respect to the result, so that the one need not exclude the other; as, Vĕi *imperatōre* vel *milite. me utimĭni*. Sall.—*Sīvĕ—sīvĕ* is the same as *vĕl sĭ—vĕl sĭ*, and retains the meaning of *vĕl—vĕl*. If nouns only are opposed to each other, an uncertainty is expressed as to how a thing is to be called; as, *Crētum lēges*, *quas* sīve *Jupiter* sīve *Mīnos sanxit;* i. e. I do not know whether I am to say Jupiter or Minos.

3. COMPARATIVE conjunctions express a comparison. These are, *ŭt* or *ŭtĭ*, *sīcŭt*, *vĕlŭt*, *prŏŭt*, *prœ̆ŭt*, the poetical *ceu*, *quam*, *tamquam*, (with and without *sĭ*), *quăsĭ*, *ŭt sĭ*, *āc sĭ*, with *āc* and *atquĕ*, when they signify 'as.'

REMARK. *Ac* and *atquĕ* signify 'as' or 'than' after adverbs and adjectives which denote similarity or dissimilarity; as, *æquĕ*, *juxtā*, *pār* and *părĭtĕr*, *pĕrindĕ* and *proindĕ*, *prŏ eō*, *sĭmĭlis* and *sĭmĭlĭter*, *dissĭmĭlis*, *tālis*, *tŏtĭdem*, *ălius* and *ălĭtĕr*, *contrā*, *sēcŭs*, *contrārius*.— *Quam* is rarely used after these words, except when a negative particle is joined with *alius;* as, *Virtus* nihil *aliud est*, quam, etc.; and *ĕt* and *quĕ* do not occur in this connection.—*Ac* is used for *quam*, after comparatives, in poetry and occasionally by late prose writers; as, *Artius* atque *hedĕra*. Hor. *Insānius* ac *sĭ*. Id.

4. CONCESSIVE conjunctions express a concession, with the general signification 'although.' These are *etsī*, *ĕtiamsī*, *tămetsī*, or *tămĕnetsī*, *quamquam*, *quamvīs*, *quantumvīs*, *quamlĭbĕt*, *lĭcĕt*, *ŭt* in the sense of 'even if' or 'although,' and *quum* when it signifies 'although.'

REMARK. *Tămĕn* and other particles signifying 'yet,' 'still,' are the correlatives of the concessive conjunctions; as, Ut *desint vires*, tämen *est laudanda*

voluntas. Cvid.   The adverb *quĭdem* becomes a concessive conjunction, when it is used to connect propositions and is followed by *sĕd.*— *Quamquam,* in absolute sentences, sometimes refers to something preceding, which it limits and partly nullifies; as, Quamquam *quid loquor ?* Yet why do I speak ?

5. CONDITIONAL conjunctions express a condition, their fundamental signification being 'if.' These are *sī*, *sīn*, *nĭsī* or *nī*, *sī mŏdo*, *dummŏdŏ*, 'if only,' 'if but,' (for which *dum* and *mŏdo* are also used alone), *dummŏdŏ nē*, or simply *mŏdo nē* or *dumnē.*

REMARK. (*a.*) In order to indicate the connection with a preceding proposition, the relative *quŏd*, which in such case loses its signification as a pronoun, and may be rendered, 'nay,' 'now,' 'and,' or 'then,' is frequently put before *sī* and sometimes before *nĭsī* and *etsī*, so that *quodsī* may be regarded as one word, signifying 'now if,' 'but if,' or 'if then.' It serves especially to introduce something assumed as true, from which further inferences may be drawn. It sometimes signifies 'although.' *Quodnĭsī* signifies 'if then—not,' and *quod-etsī*, 'nay, even if.' *Quŏd* is found also before *quum, ŭbĭ, quĭă, quŏnĭam, nē, ŭtĭnam*, and even before the relative pronoun.

(*b.*) *Nī* and *nĭsī* limit a statement by introducing an exception, and thus differ from *sī nōn*, which introduces a negative case. It is often immaterial whether *nĭsī* or *sī nōn* is used, but the difference is still essential. *Sī nōn* is used when single words are opposed to one another, and in this case *sī mĭnŭs* may be used instead of *sī nōn.*—If after an affirmative proposition its negative opposite is added without a verb, our 'but if not' is commonly expressed in prose by *sī mĭnŭs* or *sīn mĭnŭs* or *sīn ălĭter ;* as, *Educ tecum etiam omnes tuos ;* si mĭnus, quam plurĭmos. Cic.; rarely by *sī nōn.*

6. ILLATIVE conjunctions express an inference or conclusion, with the general signification of 'therefore,' 'consequently.' These are *ergŏ, igĭtŭr, ĭtăquĕ, eō, ĭdeo, iccirco, proindĕ, proptĕreā*, and the relative conjunctions, *quaproptĕr, quārĕ, quamobrem, quōcirca, undĕ*, 'wherefore.'

REMARK. *Ergo* and *igĭtŭr* denote a logical inference.—*Ităquĕ*, 'and thus,' expresses the relation of cause in facts.—*Ideo, iccirco*, and *proptĕreā*, 'on this account,' express the agreement between intention and action.—*Eō*, 'on this account,' or 'for this purpose,' is more frequently an adverb of place.—*Proindĕ*, 'consequently,' implies an exhortation.—*Undĕ*, 'whence,' is properly an adverb of place.—*Adeo*, 'so that,' or simply 'so,' is also properly an adverb. *Hinc*, 'hence,' and *indĕ*, 'thence,' continue to be adverbs.

7. CAUSAL conjunctions express a cause or reason, with the general signification of 'for' and 'because.' These are *nam, namquĕ, ĕnim, ĕtĕnim, quĭă, quŏd, quŏnĭam, quippĕ, quum, quando, quandŏquĭdem, sĭquĭdem ;* and the adverbs *nīmīrum, nempĕ, scĭlĭcĕt*, and *vĭdēlĭcĕt.*

REMARK. (*a.*) *Nam* is used at the beginning of a proposition, *ĕnim*, after the first or second word. *Nam* introduces an objective reason, and *ĕnim* merely a subjective one. There is the same difference between *namquĕ* and *ĕtĕnim.* *Namquĕ*, however, though constantly standing at the beginning of a proposition in Cicero, Cæsar, and Nepos, is in later writers often put after the beginning. *Enim* in the sense of *ăt ĕnim* or *sĕd ĕnim* is sometimes, by comic writers, put at the beginning of a proposition.—*Nam, ĕnim*, and *ĕtĕnim* are often used in the sense of 'namely,' or 'to wit,' to introduce an explanation of something going before. *Nīmīrum, vĭdēlĭcĕt*, and *scĭlĭcĕt* likewise answer to our 'namely' or 'viz.' *Nīmīrum*, compounded of *nī* and *mīrum*, and signifying 'a wonder if not,' is used as a connective in the sense of 'undoubtedly' or 'surely,' and implies strong confidence in the truth of the proposition with which it is connected.—*Vĭdēlĭcet* and *scĭlĭcet* introduce an explanation, with this difference that *vĭdēlĭcet* generally indicates the true, and *scĭlĭcet* a wrong explanation. Sometimes, however, *nam, ĕnim, ĕtĕnim, nīmīrum*, and *vĭdēlĭcĕt* are used in an ironical sense, and *scĭlĭcĕt* introduces a true reason.—*Nempĕ*, 'surely,' often assumes a sarcastic meaning when another person's concession is taken for the purpose of refuting him.—(*b.*) *Quĭă* and *quŏd* indicate a defi-

nite and conclusive reason, *quŏniam*, (i. e. *quum jam*), a motive.—*Ideo, iccirco, proptĕreā quŏd*, and *quiă*, are used without any essential difference, except that *quiă* introduces a more strict and logical reason, whereas *quŏniam*, signifying 'now as,' introduces important circumstances.— *Quando, quandŏquĭdem*, and *sĭquĭdem* approach nearer to *quŏniam* than to *quiă*, as they introduce only subjective reasons. *Quandŏquĭdem* denotes a reason implied in a circumstance previously mentioned; *sĭquĭdem*, a reason implied in a concession. In *sĭquĭdem* the meaning of *si* is generally dropped, but it sometimes remains, and then *sī* and *quĭdem* should be written as separate words; as, *O fortunātam rempublĭcam*, si quĭdem *hanc sentīnam ejecĕrit*. Cic.— *Quippĕ*, with the relative pronoun or with *quum*, introduces a subjective reason. When used elliptically without a verb it signifies 'forsooth' or 'indeed.' Sometimes it is followed by a sentence with *ĕnim*, and in this way gradually acquires the signification of *nam*.

8. FINAL conjunctions express a purpose, object, or result, with the signification of ' in order that,' or ' in order that not.' These are *ŭt* or *ŭtī*, *quŏ*, *nē* or *ŭt nē*, *nēvĕ* or *neu*, *quīn* and *quŏmĭnŭs*.

REMARK. *Ŭt*, as a conjunction, indicates either a result or a purpose, 'so that,' and 'in order that.' When indicating a result, if a negative is added to it, it becomes *nē nōn*; when indicating a purpose, if the negative is added, it, becomes *nē* or *ŭt nē*, but *ŭt nōn* also is very rarely used for *nē*.—*Nēvĕ* (i. e. *vĕl nē*) signifies either ' or in order that not,' or ' and in order that not.' *Ŭt nē* is a pleonasm, not differing perceptibly from *nē*. It is used more frequently by Cicero than by other writers. *Quŏ nē* for *nē* occurs once in Horace.

9. ADVERSATIVE conjunctions, express opposition, with the signification of 'but.' These are *sĕd, autem, vērum, vēro, ăt* (poetical *ast*), *ăt ĕnim, atquī, tămen, attămen, sedtămen, vēruntămen, ăt vēro, (ĕnimvēro), vērumĕnim, vērum, vēro, cētĕrum*.

REMARK. (*a*.) *Sĕd* denotes a direct opposition, and interrupts the narrative or argument; *autem* marks a transition, and denotes at once a connection and an opposition. *Porro*, 'further,' denotes progression and transition but not opposition, except in later authors.—*Vērum* has a similar relation to *vēro* as *sĕd* to *autem*. *Vērum*, while it denotes opposition, contains also an explanation. *Vēro* connects things which are different, but denotes the point in favor of which the decision should be. It thus forms the transition to something more important, as in the phrase, *Illud vero plane non est ferendum*, i. e. that which I am about to mention. In affirmative answers *vēro* is often added to the verb; as, *Dasne ? Do vēro*. Hence, when the protasis supplies the place of a question, it is sometimes introduced into the apodosis merely to show that it contains an answer. Hence also *vēro* alone signifies 'yes,' like *sānē, ĭtă*, and *ĕtiam*.—*Enimvēro*, 'yes, truly,' 'in truth,' does not denote opposition. It sometimes, like *vēro*, forms the transition to that which is most important. The compound *vērum ĕnimvēro* denotes the most emphatic opposition.

(*b*.) *At* denotes that that which is opposed is equivalent to that which precedes. It frequently follows *sī*, in the sense of ' yet,' or 'at least'; as, *etsi non sapientissĭmus, at amīcissĭmus*. It is especially used to denote objections whether of the speaker himself or of others. *At ĕnim* introduces a reason for the objection implied in *at*.—By *atquī*, 'but still,' 'but yet,' or 'nevertheless,' we admit what precedes, but oppose something else to it; as, *Magnum narras, vix credĭbile*. Atqui *sic habet*. Hor. So, also, when that which is admitted, is made use of to prove the contrary. Finally, *atquī* is used in syllogisms, when a thing is assumed which had before been left undecided; in this case it does not denote a direct opposition of facts, and may be translated by ' now,' ' but,' ' but now.'— *Cētĕrum*, properly ' as for the rest,' is often used by later writers for *sĕd*.— *Contra ea*, in the sense of ' on the other hand,' is used as a conjunction. So *ădeo* with a pronoun, when it may be translated ' just,' ' precisely,' ' even,' ' indeed,' or an intensive ' and.'

10. TEMPORAL conjunctions, express time. These are *quum, quum prĭmum, ŭt,, ŭt prīmum, ŭbī, postquam, antĕquam*, and *priusquam, quando, sĭmŭlāc* or *sĭmŭlatque*, or *sĭmŭl* alone, *dum, usquĕ dŭm, dōnĕc, quoad*.

REMARK. *Ut* and *ŭbĭ*, as particles of time, signify 'when.' *Dum*, *dōnĕc*, and *quoad* signify either 'as long as,' or 'until.' *Dum* often precedes *intĕreā* or *intĕrim*, and both *dum* and *donĕc* are often preceded by the adverbs *usquĕ*, *usquĕ eō* or *usquĕ ădeo*.

11. INTERROGATIVE conjunctions indicate a question. These are, *num*, *utrum*, *ăn*, and the enclitic *nĕ*. This, when attached to the three preceding particles, forming *numnĕ*, *utrumnĕ*, and *annĕ*, does not affect their meaning. With *nōn* it forms a special interrogative particle *nonnĕ*. To these add *ec* and *ēn*, as they appear in *ecquis*, *ecquando*, and *ēnumquam*, and *numquid* and *ecquid*, when used simply as interrogative particles.

REMARK. (*a.*) The interrogative particles have no distinct meaning by themselves in direct questions, but only serve to give to a proposition the form of a question. In direct speech the interrogative particles are sometimes omitted, but in indirect questions they are indispensable, except in the case of a double question, where the first particle is sometimes omitted.—*Ecquid* and *numquid*, as interrogative particles, have the meaning of *num*, *quid* in this case having no meaning, but they must be carefully distinguished from the interrogative pronouns *ecquid* and *numquid*. *En*, or when followed by a *q*, *ec* is, like *num*, *nĕ*, and *ăn*, an interrogative particle, but is always prefixed to some other interrogative word.

(*b.*) In direct questions, *num* and its compounds *numnĕ*, *numnam*, *numquĭd*, *numquidnam*, and the compounds with *ēn* or *ec* suppose that the answer will be 'no'; as, *Num putas me tam dementem fuisse?* But *ecquĭd* is sometimes used in an affirmative sense. In general the negative sense of these particles does not appear in indirect questions.

(*c.*) *Nĕ* properly denotes simply a question, but it is used sometimes affirmatively and sometimes negatively. When *nĕ* is attached, not to the principal verb but to some other word, a negative sense is produced; as, *mene istud potuisse facĕre putas?* Do you believe that I would have done that? The answer expected is 'no.' When attached to the principal verb *nĕ* often gives the affirmative meaning, and the answer expected is 'yes.'—*Nonnĕ* is the sign of an affirmative question; as, *Canis nonne lupo simĭlis est?*—*Utrum*, in accordance with its derivation from *ūter*, which of two, is used only in double questions whether consisting of two or more. It is sometimes accompanied by *nĕ*, which is usually separated from it by one or more words; as, *Utrum*, *iaceamne an praedicem?* In later writers, however, *utrumnĕ* is united into one word. *Nĕ* is rarely appended to interrogative adjectives, but examples of such use are sometimes found in poetry; as, *uternĕ; quōnĕ malo; quantanĕ*. In a few passages it is even attached to the relative pronoun.

(*d.*) *An* is not used as a sign of an indirect question before the silver age; when so used it answers to 'whether.' It is used by Cicero exclusively in a second or opposite question, where we use 'or'; as, *Si sitis, nihil intĕrest* utrum *aqua sit*, an *vinum; nec refert*, utrum *sit aureum pocŭlum*, an *vitreum*, an *manus concāva*. Sen. In direct interrogations, when no interrogative clause precedes, *ăn*, *annĕ*, *ăn vēro* are likewise used in the sense of 'or,' that is in such a manner that a preceding interrogation is supplied by the mind; as, *Invitus te offendi*, an *putas me delectāri laedendis hominibus?* Here we may supply before an *putas*, etc. the sentence, 'Do you believe this?'—*An*, after a preceding question, is rendered by 'not,' and it then indicates that the answer cannot be doubtful; as, *A rebus gerendis senectus abstrăhit. Quibus? An his, quae geruntur juventūte ac viribus?* Is it not from those kinds of business, which? etc. Here we may suppose *aliisne?* to be supplied before an *his?* Is it from other kinds of business, or from those? etc. Such questions may be introduced by *nonnĕ*, but without allusion to an opposite question, which is implied in *ăn*.

(*e.*) To the rule that *ăn*, in indirect questions, is used exclusively to indicate a second or opposite question, there is one great exception, for it is employed in single indirect questions after such expressions as *dubĭto*, *dubĭum est*, *incertum est; delibᵇro, haesĭto*, and especially after *nescio* or *haud scio*, all of which denote uncertainty, but with an inclination to the affirmative; as, *Si per se virtus sine*

fortūna ponderanda sit, dubĭto an hunc primum omnium ponam, If virtue is to
be estimated without reference to its success, I am not certain whether I should
not prefer this man to all others. Nep. It is not Latin to say *dubĭto annon* for
dubĭto an.—*Nescio an*, or *haud scio an* are used quite in the sense of 'perhaps,'
so that they are followed by the negatives *nullus, nēmo, numquam*, instead of
ullus, quisquam and *umquam.* When the principal verb is omitted, *ăn* is often
used in the sense of *aut*; as, *Themistocles, quum ei Simonides, an quis alius,
artem memoriæ polliceretur*, etc. In such cases *incertum est* is understood, and
in Tacitus is often supplied.—The conjunction *sī* is sometimes used in indirect
interrogations instead of *num*, like the Greek *εἰ*, and it is so used by Cicero
after the verb *expĕrior.*

NOTE 1. The conjunctions *-ne, -que, -ve*, are not used alone, but are always
affixed to some other word, and are hence called *enclitics.*

NOTE 2. Some words here classed with conjunctions are also used as ad-
verbs, and many classed as adverbs are likewise conjunctions; that is, they at
the same time qualify verbs, etc., and connect propositions; as, *Cetĕris in rebus,*
quum *venit calamitas*, tum *detrimentum accipĭtur*, In other concerns, *when* mis-
fortune comes, *then* damage is received.

NOTE 3. Conjunctions, like adverbs, are variously compounded with other
parts of speech, and with each other; as, *atque*, (i. e. *adque*), *iccirco* or *idcirco*,
(i. e. *id-circa*), *ideo, namque*, etc. In some, compounded of an adverb and a
conjunction, each of the simple words retains its meaning, and properly belongs
to its own class; as, *etiam (et jam)* and now; *ităque*, and so; *neque* or *nec*, and
not.

INTERJECTIONS.

§ **199.** An interjection is a particle used in exclamation,
and expressing some emotion of the mind.

The most usual interjections are,

āh! *ah! alas!*
ăha! *aha! ah! haha!*
ăpăgĕ! *away! begone!*
ătăt! *or* atatte! *oh! ah! alas! lo!*
au! *or* hau! *ch! ah!*
eccĕ! *lo! see! behold!*
ĕhem! *ha! what!*
ēheu! *ah! alas!*
ĕho! ehodum! *ho! soho!*
eiă! *or* heiă! *ah! ah ha! indeed!*
ēn! *lo! see! behold!*
eu! *well done! bravo!*
eugĕ! *well done! good!*
euax! } *huzzah! hurrah!*
euœ! }
ha! *hold! ho!*
ha! ha! he! *ha! ha!*
hei! *ah! wo! alas!*

hem! *oho! indeed! well! hah! alas! alack!*
heu! *oh! ah! alas!*
heus! *ho! ho there! hark! halloa!*
hui! *hah! ho! oh!*
iō! *ho! hurrah! huzzah!*
ō! *o! oh! ah!*
ōh! *oh! o! ah!*
ŏhē! *ho! halloa! ho there!*
ŏho! *oho! aha!*
oi! *hoy! alas!*
păpæ! *strange! wonderful!*
phui! *foh! fugh!*
phy! *pish! tush!*
prō! *or* prōh! *oh! ah!*
st! *hist! whist! hush!*
tatæ! *so! strange!*
væ! *ah! alas! woe!*
vah! vaha! *ah! alas! oh!*

REMARK 1. An interjection sometimes denotes several different emotions.
Thus *vah* is used to express wonder, grief, joy, and anger.

REM. 2. Other parts of speech may sometimes be regarded as interjections;
as, *pax!* be still! So *indignum, infandum, mălum, misĕrum, miserabile, nĕfas*,
when used as expressions of astonishment, grief, or horror; and *macte* and
macti, as expressions of approbation. In like manner the adverbs *næ, profecto,*
cito, bĕne, belle; the verbs *quæso, prĕcor, ōro, obsecro, amābo, ăge, ăgĭte, cĕdo,*
sōdes, (for *si audes), sīs, sultis*, (for *si vis* and *si vultis), ăgĕsis, ăgĕdum*, and *ăgĭte*
dum, and the interrogative *quid?* what? used as exclamations.

REM. 3. With the interjections may also be classed the following invocations of the gods : *hercŭles, hercŭle, hercle ;* or *mehercŭles, mehercŭle, mehercle ; medius fidius, mecastor, ecastor, ecĕre, pol, edepol, equirine, per deum, per deum immortālem, per deos, per Jŏvem, prŏ* (or *prŏh*) *Jŭpĭter, prŏ dii immortāles, prŏ deum fidem, prŏ deum atque homĭnum fidem, prŏ deum immortālium* (scil. *fidem*), etc.

SYNTAX.

§ **200.**   1. Syntax treats of the construction of sentences.

2. A sentence is a thought expressed in words ; as, *Cănes latrant,* The dogs bark.

3. All sentences are either

(1.) DECLARATIVE ; as, *Venti spīrant,* The winds blow :—

(2.) INTERROGATIVE ; as, *Spīrantne venti?* Do the winds blow?—

(3.) EXCLAMATORY ; as, *Quam vehĕmenter spīrant venti!* How fiercely the winds blow!—or

(4.) IMPERATIVE ; as, *Venti, spīrāte,* Blow, winds.

4. The mood of the verb in the first three classes of sentences is either the indicative or the subjunctive; in imperative sentences it is either the imperative or the subjunctive.

5. A sentence may consist either of one proposition or of two or more propositions connected together.

PROPOSITIONS.

§ **201.**   1. A proposition consists of a *subject* and a *predicate.*

2. The subject of a proposition is that of which something is affirmed.

3. The predicate is that which is affirmed of the subject.

Thus, in the proposition, *Equus currit,* The horse runs, *ĕquus* is the subject and *currit* is the predicate.

NOTE. The word *affirm,* as here used, includes all the various significations of the verb, as expressed in the several moods.

4. Propositions are either *principal* or *subordinate.*

5. A principal proposition is one which makes complete sense by itself; as,

Phōcion fuit perpĕtuo pauper, *quum ditissĭmus esse posset, Phocion was always poor,* though he might have been very rich.

6. A subordinate proposition is one which, by means of a subordinate conjunction, is made to depend upon or limit some part of another proposition; as,

Phōcion fuit perpētuo pauper, quum ditissĭmus esse posset, Phocion was always poor, *though he might have been very rich.*

7. Subordinate propositions are used either as *substantives, adjectives,* or *adverbs,* and are accordingly called *substantive, adjective* or *adverbial propositions* or *clauses.*

8. Substantive clauses are connected with the propositions on which they depend by means of the final conjunctions *ut, ne, quo, quin,* etc., sometimes by *quod,* and, in clauses containing an indirect question, by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, adverbs and conjunctions. See §§ 262 and 265.

REMARK. A dependent substantive clause often takes the form of the accusative with the infinitive, and in that case has no connective; as, *Gaudeo* te valēre.

9. Adjective clauses are connected by means of relatives, both pronouns and pronominal adjectives; as, *qui, quālis, quantus,* etc. Adverbial clauses are connected either by relative adverbs of place and time, (§ 191, R. 1, (*b.*), or by temporal, conditional, concessive, comparative, and sometimes by causal conjunctions.

10. A sentence consisting of one proposition is called a *simple* sentence; as,

Cădunt fŏlia, The leaves fall. *Semirămis Babylōnem condĭdit.*

11. A sentence consisting of a principal and one or more subordinate propositions is called a *complex* sentence; as,

Qui fit, ut nēmo contentus vīvat ? How happens it, that no one lives content? *Quis ego sim, me rogĭtas,* You ask me, who I am.

12. A sentence consisting of two or more principal propositions, either alone or in connection with one or more subordinate propositions, is called a *compound* sentence; as,

Spīrant venti et cădunt fŏlia, The winds blow, and the leaves fall.

13. The propositions composing a complex or a compound sentence are called its *members* or *clauses;* the principal proposition is called the *leading clause,* its subject, the *leading subject,* and its verb, the *leading verb.*

SUBJECT.

§ **202.** 1. The subject also is either *simple, complex,* or *compound.*

2. The simple subject, which is also called the *grammatical* subject, is either a noun or some word standing for a noun; as,

Aves vŏlant, *Birds* fly. Tu lĕgis, *Thou* readest. A est vōcālis, *A* is a vowel. Mentīri *est turpe, To lie* is base.

3. The complex subject, called also the *logical* subject, consists of the simple subject with its modifications; as,

Conscientia bĕne actæ vītæ *est jūcundissĭma, The consciousness of a well spent life* is very pleasant. Here *conscientia* is the grammatical, and *conscientia bĕne actæ vītæ* the complex, subject.

4. The compound subject consists of two or more simple or complex subjects to which a single predicate belongs; as,

Lūna *et* stellæ *fulgēbant, The moon* and *stars* were shining.   Grammătĭce mūsĭcæ *junctæ fuērunt, Grammar* and *music* were united.   Semper hŏnos menque tuum laudesque mănēbunt.

REMARK. Words are said to *modify* or *limit* other words, when they serve to explain, describe, define, enlarge, restrict, or otherwise qualify their meaning.

5. Every sentence must contain a subject and a predicate, called its *principal* or *essential* parts: any sentence may also receive additions to these, called its *subordinate* parts.

Complex or Modified Subject.

6. The complex subject is formed by adding other words to the simple subject. All additions to the subject, like the subject itself, are either *simple, complex,* or *compound.*

I. *Simple additions.* The subject may be modified by adding :—

1. A *single word :*—

(1.) A noun in the same case; as,

Nos consūles *dēsŭmus,* We *consuls* are remiss. *Mūcius* augur *multa narrāvit,* Mucius *the augur* related many things.

(2.) A noun or pronoun in an oblique case, modifying or limiting the subject; as,

Amor multitūdĭnis *commŏvētur,* The love *of the multitude* is excited. *Cura* mei, Care *for me.* Virĭbus *usus,* Need *of strength.*

(3.) An adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle; as,

Fŭgit invĭda *ætas, Envious* time flies. Mea *māter est bĕnigna.* Dūcit agmĭna Penthĕsilēa fŭrens. Litĕra *scripta mănet.*

2. A *phrase* consisting of a preposition and its case; as,

Sŏpor in grāmĭne. *Oppĭda* sīne præsĭdio. *Receptio* ad te.

3. A dependent adjective *clause* introduced by *qui, quālis, quantus,* etc.; as,

Lĕve fit, quod bĕne fertur, *ŏnus,* The burden, *which is borne well,* becomes light. *Litĕræ,* quas scripsisti, *acceptæ sunt.* Ut, quālis (ille) hăbēri vellet, *tālis esset.* Tanta est inter eos, quanta maxĭma esse pŏtest, *mōrum distantia.*

II. *Complex additions.* The subject may be modified :—

1. By a *word* to which other words are added.

(1.) When the word to which other words are added is a noun or pronoun, it may be modified in any of the ways above mentioned.

(2.) When it is an adjective it may be modified :—

(*a.*) By an adverb either simple or modified; as,

Erat exspectātio valde *magna.* *Præsĭdium* non nĭmis *firmum.*

(*b.*) By a noun in an oblique case; as,

Major pĭĕtāte, Superior *in piety.* Contentiōnis *cŭpĭdus,* Fond *of contention.* Patri similis, Like his father. *Nūdus* membra. *Jŭvĕnes* patre *digni.*

(*c.*) By an infinitive, a gerund, or a supine; as,

Insuĕtus vinci, Not accustomed *to be conquered.* Vēnandi *stŭdĭōsus*, Fond *of hunting.* *Mīrăbĭle* dictu, Wonderful *to tell.*

(*d.*) By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case; as,

Rŭdis in rēpublĭcā, Unskilled *in civil affairs.* Ab ĕquĭtātu *firmus.* *Cĕler* in pugnam. *Prōnus* ad fĭdem.

(*e.*) By a subordinate clause; as,

Mĕlior est certa pax, quam spērāta victōria, A certain peace is better *than an expected victory.* *Dŭbius sum,* quid făciam.

(3.) When it is a participle, it may be modified like a verb. See § 203.

2. By a *phrase* consisting of a preposition and its case to which other words are added; as,

De victōria Cæsăris *făma perfertur,* A report *concerning Cæsar's victory* is brought.

REMARK 1. As the case following the preposition is that of a noun or pronoun, it may be modified like the subject in any of the foregoing ways.

REM. 2. The preposition itself may be modified by an adverb, or by a noun or adjective in an oblique case; as,

Longe *ultra,* Far beyond. Multo *ante noctem, Long* before night. Sexennio *post Vēios captos,* Six years after the capture of Veii.

3. By a *subordinate clause,* to whose subject or predicate other words are added.

REMARK. These additions may be of the same form as those added to the principal subject or predicate of the sentence.

III. *Compound additions.* The subject may be modified:—

1. By two or more nouns in the same case as the subject, connected by a coördinate conjunction; as,

Consŭles, Brūtus *et* Collatīnus, The consuls, *Brutus* and *Collatīnus.*

2. By two or more oblique cases of a noun or pronoun connected coördinately; as,

Vītæque nĕcisque *pŏtestas.* Pērīcŭlōrum *et* lăbōrum *incĭtāmentum.*

3. By two or more adjectives, adjective pronouns, or participles, connected coördinately; as,

Grăve *bellum* perdiŭturnumque. Anĭmi tĕnĕri *atque* molles.

4. By two or more adjective clauses connected coördinately; as,

Et qui fēcēre, *et* qui facta ăliōrum scripsēre, *multi laudantur.* Sall.

5. By two or more of the preceding modifications connected coördinately; as,

Genus homĭnum agreste, sine legĭbus, sine imperio, libĕrum, *atque* solūtum.

REM. 1. A modified grammatical subject, considered as one complex idea, may itself be modified; as,

Omnia *tua consĭlia, All* thy counsels. Here *omnia* modifies, not *consĭlia,* but the complex idea expressed by *tua consĭlia.* So Trĭginta *nāves longæ.* Præpŏtens *finĭtimus rex.*

REM. 2. An infinitive, with the words connected with it, may be the logical subject of a proposition; as,

Virtus est vĭtium fŭgĕre, *To shun vice is a virtue.*

REM. 3. A clause, or any member consisting of two or more clauses, may be the logical subject of a proposition; as,

E cœlo descendit 'Nosce te ipsum.' *Æquum est,* ut hoc făcias.

REM. 4. The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a proposition is put in the nominative, when the verb of the predicate is a finite verb; but when the verb is in the infinitive, the subject is put in the accusative.

NOTE 1. A verb in any mood, except the infinitive, is called a *finite* verb.

NOTE 2. In the following pages, when the term *subject* or *predicate* is used alone, the grammatical subject or predicate is intended.

PREDICATE.

§ **203.** 1. The predicate, like the subject, is either *simple, complex,* or *compound.*

2. The simple predicate, which is also called the *grammatical* predicate, is either a single finite verb, or the copula *sum* with a noun, adjective, and rarely with an adverb; as,

Sol lŭcet, The sun *shines.*   *Multa ănĭmālia* rēpunt, Many animals *creep.* Brĕvis est *vŏluptas,* Pleasure *is brief.*   *Eurōpa* est pēnĭnsŭla, Europe *is a peninsŭla.*   Rectissĭme sunt *apud te omnia.*

3. The complex predicate, called also the *logical* predicate, consists of the simple predicate with its modifications; as,

Scĭpio fūdit Annĭbălis cōpias, Scipio *routed the forces of Hannibal.* Here *fūdit* is the grammatical, and *fūdit Annĭbălis cōpias* the logical predicate.—So, *Rōmŭlus* Rōmānæ conditor urbis fuit.

4. The compound predicate consists of two or more simple or complex predicates belonging to the same subject; as,

Prŏbĭtas laudātur *et* alget, Honesty *is praised* and *neglected.* Lēti vis răpuit, răpietque gentes. *Lucius Catilīna* fūit magnā vi et anĭmi et corpŏris, *sed* ingenio malo pravŏque.

Complex or Modified Predicate.

5. The complex predicate is formed by adding other words to the simple predicate. All additions to the predicate, like the predicate itself, are either simple, complex, or compound.

I. *Simple additions.* The predicate may be modified by adding:—

1. A *single word;*—

(1.) A noun or adjective in the same case as the subject. This occurs after certain neuter verbs and passive verbs of naming, calling, etc. (See § 210, R. 3.); as,

Servus fit libertīnus, The slave becomes a *freedman.* *Servius Tullius* rex es dēclārātus. *Aristīdes* justus *est appellātus.* *Incēdo* regīna.

(2.) A noun or pronoun in an oblique case; as,

Spe *vīvĭmus,* We live *by hope.* *Deus rĕgit* mundum, God rules *the world.*

16

(3.) An adverb either simple or modified; as,

Sæpe *vēnit,* He came *often.* *Festīna* lente, Hasten *slowly.* *Lītĕræ* făcĭle *discuntur.* *Chrĕmes* nĭmis grăvĭter *crŭciat ădŏlĕscentŭlum.*

(4.) An infinitive mood; as,

Cŭpit discere, He desires *to learn.* *Audeo* dīcĕre. *Ver* esse *cœpĕrat.*

2. A *phrase* consisting of a preposition and its case; as, *Vēnit* ad urbem, He came *to the city.*

3. A dependent substantive or adverbial *clause*; as,

Vĕreor ne reprĕhendar, I fear *that I shall be blamed.* *Zēnōnem,* quum Athēnis essem, *audiēbam frĕquenter.* *Făc* cōgĭtes.

II. *Complex additions.* The predicate may be modified :—

1. By a *word* to which other words are added.

REMARK. These words are the same as in the corresponding cases of complex additions to the subject. See § 202, II.

2. By a *phrase* consisting of a preposition and its case, to which other words are added. See complex additions to the subject, § 202.

3. By a subordinate *clause,* to whose subject or predicate other words are added. See complex subject, § 202, II, 3.

REM. 2. Each of the words constituting a proposition may be modified by two or more additions not dependent on, nor connected with each other, and consisting either of single words, phrases, or dependent clauses; as, Agamemnōnis belli *glōria.* Pāternum *ŏdium* erga Rōmānos. *Mens* sibi *conscia* recti. Mea maxĭme *intĕrest, te vălēre.* *Ago* tibi grātias. Meipsum *inertiæ condemno.* Eos hoc *mŏneo.* In quo te *accūso.* *Mŏnet* eum, ut suspĭciōnes vītet.

III. *Compound additions.* 1. The predicate may be modified by two or more words, phrases, or clauses, joined together by a coördinate conjunction. See Compound additions to the subject, § 202, III.

2. The leading verb is usually either in the indicative or imperative mood, but sometimes in the subjunctive or the historical infinitive.

3. The members of a compound sentence are connected by coördinate conjunctions; those of a complex sentence by some relative word, or by a subordinate conjunction.

4. Instead of a dependent clause connected by a conjunction, a noun and participle, or two nouns, sometimes stand as an abridged proposition; as,

Bello confecto *discessit,* i. e. *quum bellum confectum esset, discessit,* The war being finished, or when the war was finished, he departed. *Nil despērandum,* Teucro dūce.

5. An infinitive may be modified like the verb of a predicate.

6. *Agreement* is the correspondence of one word with another in gender, number, case, or person.

7. A word is said to *govern* another, when it requires it to be put in a certain case or mood.

8. A word is said to *depend* on another, when its case, gender, number, mood, tense, or person, is determined by that word.

9. A word is said to *follow* another, when it depends upon it in construction, whatever may be its position in the sentence.

APPOSITION.

§ **204.** A noun, annexed to another noun or to a pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case; as,

Urbs Rōma, The city *Rome.* *Nos* consŭles, We *consuls.* So *Apud Herodŏtum,* patrem *histŏriæ, sunt innumerabĭles fabŭlæ,* In Herodotus, the *father* of history, etc. Cic. *Lapides* silĭces, *flint* stones. Liv. *Ante me* consŭlem, Before I was *consul. Fons cui nōmen* Arethūsa *est.* Cic.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) A noun, thus annexed to another, is said to be in *apposition* to it. It is generally added for the sake of explanation, identification, or description; sometimes it denotes character or purpose; as, *Ejus fūgæ* comĭtem *me adjunxi,* I added myself, *as a companion* of his flight; and sometimes the time, cause, reason, etc., of an action; as, *Alexander* puer, Alexander *when a boy. Cāto* sĕnex *scrībĕre histŏriam instĭtuit.* Suet.

(*b.*) A noun in apposition, like an adjective used as an epithet, (§ 205, N. 2,) *assumes* the attribute denoted by it as belonging to the noun which it limits, while the predicate-nominative *affirms* it. Hence both nouns belong to the same part of the sentence, whether subject or predicate. In cases of apposition, there seems to be an ellipsis of the ancient participle *ens,* being; *qui est,* who is; *qui vocātur,* who is called; or the like.

REM. 2. If the annexed noun has a form of the same gender as the other noun, it takes that form; as, *Usus* magister *egrĕgius.* Plin. *Philosŏphia* magistra *vītæ.* Cic. If the annexed noun is of the common gender, the adjective qualifying it takes the gender of the preceding noun; as, *Laurus* fidissĭma custos.

REM. 3. The annexed noun sometimes differs from the other in gender or in number; as, *Duo* fulmĭna *belli, Scipiădas,* clādem *Libyæ.* Virg. *Mitylēnæ,* urbs *nobilis.* Cic. *Tulliŏla,* delĭciæ *nostræ.* Id.;—and sometimes in both; as, *Nāte, meæ* vīres. Virg. *Nos,* anĭmæ *viles, inhumāta infletāque* turba. Id.

REM. 4. The substantive pronoun is sometimes omitted before the word in apposition to it; as, Consul *dixi,* scil. *ĕgo;* (I) the consul said. And instead of the substantive pronoun, a possessive adjective pronoun is sometimes used; as, Tua *dŏmus, tālis viri.* Cic. See § 211, R. 3, (*b.*)

REM. 5. A noun may be in apposition to two or more nouns, and, in such case, is usually put in the plural; as, *M. Antonius, C. Cassius,* tribūni *plēbis,* M. Antonius, C. Cassius, tribunes of the people. Cæs. *Publius et Servius* Sullæ, *Servi fīlii.* Sall. *Tib. et Gaius* Gracchi. Cic. *Oratiōnes L. et C.* Aureliōrum Orestārum. Id. But sometimes in the singular; as, Cn. et L. Domitius. Cic.

(1.) So when the nouns are connected by *cum,* the annexed noun taking the case of the former; as, *Dicæarchum vēro cum Aristoxĕno, doctos sāne* homĭnes, *omittāmus.* Cic.

(2.) If the nouns are proper names of different genders, a masculine noun is annexed rather than a feminine, when both forms exist; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque* rēges *legāti missi sunt.* Liv.

REM. 6. The annexed noun is sometimes in the genitive; as, *Urbem* Patāvi *locāvit,* The city of Patavium. Virg. *Plurĭmus* Eridāni *amnis.* Id. *Arbŏrem* fīci *numquam vidĕrat.* Cic. *In oppĭdo* Antiochīæ. Id. Rupĭli *et* Persī *par.* Hor.

REM. 7. The name of a town in the genitive sometimes occurs with an ablative in apposition to it; as, *Corinthi Achaiæ* urbe; At Corinth, a city of Achaia. Tac. *Antiochīæ, celĕbri* urbe. Cic. See § 221, Note, and § 254, Rem. 3.

REM. 8. (*a.*) A proper name, after *nōmen* or *cognōmen,* with a verb followed by a dative, is put in apposition either to *nōmen,* etc., or to the dative, the latter by a species of attraction; as, *Fons, cui nōmen* Arethūsa *est.* Cic. *Stirps virīlis, cui* Ascanium *parentes dixēre nōmen.* Liv. *Nōmen* Arctūro *est mihi,* I have the

name Arcturus. Plaut. *Cui nunc cognōmen* Iūlo *addĭtur.* Virg. *Cui* Egerio *indĭtum nōmen.* Liv.—(*b.*) The name may also be put in the genitive; as, *Nōmen* Mercūrii *est mĭhi.* Plaut. *Q. Metellus, cui* Macedonĭci *nōmen indĭtum ĕrat.* Vell. Cf. R. 6.—(*c.*) In *Illa ætas, cui fecĭmus* Aurea *nōmen,* Ov. Met. 15, 96, *Aurea* is used as an indeclinable noun, instead of *Auream* (scil. *ætātem*); or *Aureæ,* dat. (scil. *ætāti.*)

Rem. 9. A *clause* may supply the place of one of the nouns; as, *Cogĭtet* orātōrem institui—*rem arduam,* Let him reflect that an orator is training—a difficult thing. Quint.—So also a neuter adjective used substantively; as, Triste *lŭpus stabŭlis,* The wolf, a sad thing to the folds. Virg. Vărium *et* mutabĭle *semper femĭna.* Id.

Rem. 10. Sometimes the former noun denotes a whole, and its parts are expressed by nouns in apposition to it; as, *Onerāriæ,* pars *maxĭma ad Ægimūrum,* —aliæ *adversus urbem ipsam delātæ sunt,* The ships of burden were carried, the greatest part, to Ægimurus,—others opposite to the city itself. Liv. *Pictōres et poētæ suum* quisque *ŏpus a vulgo consĭderāri vult.* Cic. In the construction of the ablative absolute, *quisque* remains in the nominative, though the word to which it is in apposition is in the ablative; as, *Multis sibi* quisque *impĕrium petentĭbus.* Sall. J. 18. So also, in Liv. 26, 29, *quisque* remains in the nominative although the word to which it is in apposition is in the accusative with the infinitive.

To this rule may be subjoined that which relates to the agreement of interrogative and responsive words.

Rem. 11. The principal noun or pronoun in the answer to a question, must be in the same case as the corresponding interrogative word; as,

Quis *hĕrus est tĭbi?* Amphitruo, scil. *est.* Who is your master? Amphitruo (is.) Plaut. Quid *quæris?* Librum, scil. *quæro.* What are you looking for? A book. Quŏtā *hōrā venisti?* Sextā. At what hour did you come? At the sixth.

Note 1. Instead of the genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding possessive pronoun is often used, agreeing with its noun; as, Cūjus *est liber?* Meus, (not *Mei.*) (See § 211, Rem. 3, (*b.*)) So *cūjum* for genitive *cūjus?* Cūjum *pĕcus? an* Melibœi? Non *; vērum Ægōnis.* Virg.

Note 2. Sometimes the rules of syntax require the responsive to be in a different case from that of the interrogative; as, Quanti *emisti? Vigĭnti* mĭnis. *Damnatusne ĕs* furti? *Imo ălio crimĭne.* See §§ 214, R. 1, and 217, R. 2.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 205. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, agree with their nouns, in gender, number, and case; as,

Bŏnus vir, A good man.	*Bŏnos vĭros,* Good men.
Benigna māter, A kind mother.	*Vānæ lēges,* Useless laws.
Triste bellum, A sad war.	*Minācia verba,* Threatening words.
Spe amissā, Hope being lost.	*Hæc res,* This thing.

So, *Mea māter est benigna.*
Hæc lēges vānæ sunt.

Note 1. Adjectives, according to their meaning, (§ 104) are divided into two classes—*qualifying* and *limiting*—the former denoting some *property* or *quality* of a noun; as, a *wise* man, lead is *heavy;* the latter *defining* or *restricting* its meaning; as, *this* man, *ten* cities. To the former class belong such adjectives as denote a property or quality, including all participles and participial adjectives; to the latter, the adjective pronouns, pronominal adjectives, and numerals.

Note 2. An adjective, participle, or pronoun, may either be used as an epithet to modify a noun, or, with the copula *sum*, may constitute a predicate. In the former case the quality is *assumed*, in the latter it is *asserted*. In both cases, the rule for their agreement is, in general, the same. See § 210, R. 1.

Note 3. Any word or combination of words added to a noun to modify or limit its meaning is of the nature of an adjective.

Note 4. In the following remarks, the word *adjective* is to be considered as including participles, either alone or combined with the auxiliary *sum*, and also adjective pronouns, unless the contrary is intimated.

Remark 1. An adjective agrees also with a substantive pronoun, taking its gender from that of the noun for which the pronoun stands; as, *Ipse capellas æger ăgo*, scil. *ĕgo*, *Melibœus*; Virg. *Fortunāte puer, tu nunc eris* alter *ab illo.* Id. *Ut se* tŏtum *ei trādĕret.* Nep. *O me misĕrum* (spoken by a man), *misĕram me* (spoken by a woman). So *salvi sŭmus, salvæ sŭmus*, scil. *nos*, masculine or feminine.—In general propositions which include both sexes, the pronouns are considered masculine; as, *Nos frūges consūmĕre* nāti. Hor.

Rem. 2. An adjective may belong to each of two or more nouns, and in such case is put in the plural. If the nouns are of the same gender, the adjective agrees with them in gender, as well as in number; as,

Lŭpus et agnus sĭti compulsi, A wolf and a lamb, constrained by thirst. Phæd. *Sicilia Sardiniāque amissæ.* Liv.

When the nouns are of different genders,

(1.) If they denote living things, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine; as,

Păter mihi et māter mortui sunt, My father and mother are dead. Ter. So also *uterque* in the singular. *Procumbit* uterque, scil. *Deucălion et Pyrrha.* Ovid.

(2.) If they denote things without life, the adjective is generally neuter; as,

His gĕnus, ætas, eloquentia prŏpe æquālia *fuēre*, Their family, age, and eloquence, were nearly equal. Sall. *Regna, impĕria, nobilitātes, honōres, divitiæ in cāsu* sĭta sunt. Cic. *Huic bella, rapīnæ, discordia civīlis*, grāta *fuēre.* Sall. *Anima atque ănimus, quamvīs integra rĕcens in corpus eunt.* Lucr.

Note. When nouns denoting things without life are of the *same* gender (either masculine or feminine), but of different numbers, the adjective is sometimes neuter; as, *Crœso et vita et patrimōnii partes, et urbs Barce* concessa *sunt.* Just.; sometimes also when both nouns are in the singular number; as, *Plerosque velocĭtas et rĕgio hostĭbus ignāra* tutāta *sunt.* Sall. *Nox atque præda* remorāta *sunt.* Id.

(3.) If one of the nouns denotes an animate, and another an inanimate thing, the adjective is sometimes neuter, and sometimes takes the gender of that which has life; as,

Numīdæ atque signa militāria obscurāti *sunt*, The Numidians and the military standards were concealed. Sall. *Romāni rēgem regnumque Macedŏniæ* sua futūra *sciunt.* Liv. *Jāne, făc* æternos *pācem pacisque ministros.* Ovid.

Exc. to Rem. 2. The adjective often agrees with the nearest noun, and is understood with the rest; as,

Sŏciis et rēge rĕcepto, Our companions and king having been recovered. Virg. *Agri* omnes *et mŭria.* Cic. *Cognĭtum est sălūtem, libĕros, fāmam, fortūnas esse* cārissĭmas. Cic.

16*

Note. A noun in the singular, followed by an ablative with *cum*, has some-
times a plural adjective, the gender being the same as if the nouns were con-
nected by *et*; as, *Filiam cum filio* accītos. Liv.   *Ilia cum Lauso de Numitōre*
sāti. Ovid.   *Filium Alexandri cum matre in arcem* custōdiendos *mittit.* Just.

Rem. 3. (1.) An adjective qualifying a collective noun is often
put in the plural, taking the gender of the individuals which the noun
denotes; as,

Pars certāre părāti, A part, prepared to contend. Virg.   *Pars per agros*
dilapsi. .... *suam quisque spem* exsĕquentes. Liv.   *Supplex turba ĕrant sĭne jūdice*
tūti. Ovid.   This construction always occurs when the collective noun is the
subject of a plural verb. See § 209, R. 11.

(2.) Sometimes, though rarely, an adjective in the *singular* takes the gender
of the individuals; as, *Pars arduus altis* pulvĕrŭlentus *ĕquis fŭrit.* Virg.   *Pars*
ūna dŭcum—fractus *morbo.* Ovid.

(3.) Sometimes other nouns, which only in a figurative sense denote human
beings, have by *synĕsis* an adjective of a different gender from their own, refer-
ring to the words which they include; as, *Lătĭum Căpuāque agro* mulctāti,
Latium and Capua were deprived of their land. Liv.   *Căpĭta conjūrātiōnis vir-*
gis cæsi *ac sĕcūri* percussi *sunt.* Id.   *Auxĭlia* irāti. Id.   So after *millia;* as,
Duo millia Tyriōrum, crŭcĭbus affixi. Curt.   Cf. § 223, 3, (4.)

Rem. 4. Two adjectives in the singular are sometimes joined to a plural
noun; as, *Măria Tyrrhēnum atque* Adriātĭcum, The Tuscan and Adriatic seas.
Liv.   *Cum lĕgiōnĭbus* sĕcundā *et* tertiā. Liv.   *Circa portas* Collīnam Esquĭlī-
namque. Id.   But sometimes the noun is in the singular; as, *Inter Esquĭlīnam*
Collīnamque portam. Id.   Lĕgio *Martia et quarta.*   In comic writers, an adjec-
tive or participle in the singular is sometimes used with a plural pronoun; as,
Nōbis prœsente. Plaut.   *Absente nōbis.* Ter.

Rem. 5. A participle which should regularly agree with the subject of a
proposition, when placed after the noun of the predicate, (*a*) sometimes takes
the gender and number of the latter; as, *Non omnis error stultĭtia est* dīcenda,
Not every error is to be called folly. Cic.   *Gens universa Vĕnĕti* appellāti. Liv.
(*b*.) Sometimes also it agrees with a noun following the subject and in apposi-
tion to it; as, *Cŏrinthum, patres vestri, tōtius Grœciœ* lūmen, exstinctum *esse*
vŏluĕrunt. Cic.; or (*c*) with the noun of a subordinate sentence; as, *Illōrum*
urbem ut prōpugnācŭlum oppŏsītum *esse barbăris.* Nep.

Rem. 6. When the subject of an infinitive is omitted after a dative of the
same signification, (§ 239, R. 1,) an adjective in the predicate, belonging to
that subject, is sometimes put in the dative; as, *Mĭhi* neglĭgenti *esse non lĭcuit*,
i. e. *me neglĭgentem esse mihi non lĭcuit.* Cic.   *Da mihi justo sanctōque vidēri.*
Hor.   A noun is sometimes expressed with the adjective; as, *Vōbis nĕcesse est*
fortĭbus *esse* vīris. Liv.   But the adjective often agrees with the omitted sub-
ject; as, *Expĕdit* bŏnas *esse vōbis*, scil. *vos.* Ter.   *Si cīvi Rōmāno licet esse*
Gādĭtānum. Cic.

Rem. 7. (1.) An adjective is often used alone, especially in the
plural, the noun, with which it agrees, being understood; as,

Bŏni sunt rāri, scil. *hŏmĭnes*, Good (men) are rare.   *Cæsar suos mīsit*, scil.
mĭlites, Cæsar sent his (soldiers).   *Dextra*, scil. *mănus*, The right (hand).   *Im-*
plentur pinguis fĕrīnæ, scil. *carnis.* Virg.   *Hiberna*, scil. *castra.* Virg.   *Altum*, scil.
măre.   Quartāna, scil. *febris.   Immortāles*, scil. *Dii.* Lucr.   *Amantium*, scil. *hŏmĭ-*
num. Ter.   *Illum* indignanti *sĭmĭlem, sĭmĭlemque* mĭnanti *aspĭcĕres*, scil. *hŏmĭni.*
Virg.   *Tĭbi* prīmas *dĕfĕro*, scil. *partes.* Cic.   *Respĭce* prætĕritum, scil. *tempus*,
which is often omitted, as in *ex quo, ex eo*, and *ex illo*, scil. *tempŏre.   Cognōvi*
ex meōrum *omnium lĭtĕris*, scil. *ămīcōrum.* Cic.   So patrial adjectives; as,
Missi ad Parthum Armĕniumque *lĕgāti*, scil. *rēgem.   In Tuscŭlāno*, scil.
prœdio.

Note 1. The noun to be supplied with masculine adjectives is commonly *hŏmĭnes*, but when they are posessives, it is oftener *ămīci*, *mĭlĭtes*, *cīves*, or *prŏpinqui.*

Note 2. The noun to be supplied is often contained in a preceding clause.

(2.) An adjective in the neuter gender, without a noun, is often used substantively, where, in English, the word *thing* or *things* is to be supplied; as,

Bŏnum, a good thing; *mălum*, a bad thing, or, an evil. So *hŏnestum*, *vērum*, *turpe;* and in the plural, *bŏna*, *măla*, *turpĭa*, *lēvia*, *cælestia*, etc. *Lăbor* omnia *vincĭt*, Labor overcomes all things. Virg.

Note 1. The Latins generally preferred adding *res* to an adjective, to using its neuter as a substantive. But sometimes, when *res* is used, an adjective or pronoun referring to it is put in the neuter instead of the feminine; as, *Eārum rērum* utrumque. Cic. *Hūmānārum rērum fortūna* plērăque *rĕgĭt*. Sall. *Illud te rŏgo, sumptui ne parcas ullā in re*, quod *ad vălĕtūdĭnem ŏpus sit*. Cic. *Omnium rērum mors est* extrēmum. Cic.

Note 2. Instead of *thing* or *things*, other words may sometimes be supplied, as the sense requires. With a preposition, neuter adjectives form adverbial phrases; as, *A prīmo*, At first. Plaut. *Per mūtua*, Mutually. Virg. *In prīmis*, In the first place. *Ad hoc*, or *Ad hæc*, Moreover, besides.

(3.) Adjectives used substantively often have other adjectives agreeing with them; as, *Alia* omnia, All other (things.) Plin. *Inīquissĭmi* mei, My greatest enemies. *Fămĭliāris* meus. Cic. *Inīquus* noster. Id. Justa *fūnebria*. Liv. *Jŏvis omnia* plēna. scil. sunt. Virg.

Rem. 8. (*a.*) Imperatives, infinitives, adverbs, clauses, and words considered merely as such, may be used substantively, and take a neuter adjective in the singular number; as, Suprēmum *văle dixit*, He pronounced a last farewell. Ovid. Dulce *et dĕcōrum est* pro patriā mŏri. Hor. Velle suum *cuĭque est*. Pers. Cras istud *quando vēnit?* Mart. J. *Rĕdĭbo actūtum*. A. Id actūtum *diu est*. Plaut. Excepto quod non sĭmul esses, *cētĕra lætus*. Hor. (*b.*) In the poets and later prose writers the adjective, as in Greek, is sometimes in the neuter plural; as, *Ut Æneas pĕlăgo jactĕtur*—nōta *tĭbi*. Virg.

Rem. 9. (*a.*) Adjectives and adjective pronouns, instead of agreeing with their nouns, are sometimes put in the neuter gender, with a partitive signification, and their nouns in the genitive; as, Multum *tempŏris*, for *multum tempus ;* much time. Id *rei*, for *ea res;* that thing. So, plus *ēlŏquentiæ*, the other form not being admissible with *plus*. (See § 110, (*b.*) Neuter adjectives are used in like manner in the plural; as, Vāna *rērum*, for *vānæ res*. Hor. Plērăque *hūmānārum rērum*. Sall. Cf. § 212, R. 3, N. 4. But in some such examples, the adjective seems to be used substantively, according to Rem. 7, (2); as, Acūta *belli*. Hor. *Tellūris* ŏperta. Virg. Summa *pectŏris.*

Note. The adjectives thus used partitively in the singular, for the most part, signify quantity. See § 212, Rem. 3, Note 1.

Rem. 10. A neuter adjective is sometimes used adverbially in the nominative or accusative, both singular and plural; as, Dulce *rīdentem Lălăgen ămābo*, dulce *lŏquentem*. Hor. Magnum *strīdens*. Virg. *Arma* horrendum *sŏnuēre*. Id. Multa *deos vĕnĕrāti* sunt. Cic. *Hŏdie aut* summum *cras*. Id. See § 192, II. 4, (*b*.)

Rem. 11. (*a*.) A noun is sometimes used as an adjective; as, Nēmo *mĭles Rōmānus*, No Roman soldier. Liv. Nēmo *fĕre ădŏlescens*. Cic. *Vir* nēmo *bŏnus*. Id. Cf. § 207, R. 31, (*c*.) *Tĭbĕrim* accŏlis *flŭvĭis orbātum*. Tac. Incŏla *turba*. Ovid. The poets use in this manner the Greek patronymics in *as* and *is;* as, *Pĕlias hasta*. Ovid. *Laurus Parnāsis*. Id. *Ursa Lĭbystis*. Virg. Cf. also § 129, 8.

(*b*.) An adverb is also sometimes used as an adjective; as, *Nĕque ĕnim ignāri sŭmus* ante *mălōrum;* i. e. *antīquōrum* or *prætĕritōrum*. Virg. Nunc *hŏmĭnum mōres*. Plaut.

REM. 12. (a.) An adjective or adjective pronoun, used partitively, stands alone, and commonly takes the gender of the genitive plural, which depends upon it; but when it is preceded by a noun of a different gender, to which it refers, it usually takes that gender, but sometimes that of the genitive; as, *Elephanto belluārum* nulla *est prūdentior*, No beast is wiser than the elephant. Cic. *Indus, qui est omnium flūmĭnum* maxĭmus. Cic. Vēlōcissĭmum *omnium ănĭmālium est delphīnus*. Plin. See § 212, Rem. 2.—(b.) So also with *de, ex, in, ăpud, inter*, etc., with the ablative or accusative instead of the partitive genitive. See § 212, R. 2, N. 4.

(c.) When a *collective* noun follows in the genitive singular, (§ 212, R. 2.) the adjective takes the gender of the individuals which compose it; as, *Vir* fortissĭmus *nostræ cĭvĭtātis*, The bravest man of our state. Cic. Maxĭmus *stirpis*. Liv.

REM. 13. (a.) When a possessive pronoun or adjective is used instead of the genitive of its primitive or of its corresponding noun (see § 211, R. 3, (b.) and (c.) and R. 4), an adjective agreeing with that genitive is sometimes joined with such possessive; as, Sōlius meum *peccātum corrigi non pŏtest*, The fault of me alone cannot be corrected. Cic. Noster duōrum *ēventus*. Liv. Tuum ipsius *stŭdium*. Cic. *Pugna* Rōmāna *stăbilis suo pondĕre* incumbentium *in hostem*. Liv.

(b.) Sometimes a noun in the genitive is expressed, in apposition to the substantive pronoun for which the possessive stands; as, *Pectus tuum*, hŏmĭnis *simplīcis*. Cic.

REM. 14. An adjective, properly belonging to the genitive, is sometimes made to agree with the noun on which the genitive depends, and *vice versâ;* as, *Ædĭfĭcātiōnis* tuæ *consĭlium* for *tuum*, Your design of building. Cic. *Accūsantes* vĭŏlāti *hospitii fœdus*, for *vĭŏlātum*. Liv. Ad majōra *inĭtia rērum* dūcentĭbus *fātis*, for *majōrum*. Id. Iis *nōmĭnĭbus cĭvĭtātum, quĭbus ex cĭvĭtātĭbus*, etc., for *eārum cĭvĭtātum*. Cæs.

REM. 15. (a.) An adjective agreeing with a noun is sometimes used, instead of an adverb qualifying a verb, especially in poetry; as, *Ecce vēnit Tēlămon* prŏpĕrus*, Lo, Telamon comes in haste. Ovid. Læti *pācem ăgĭtābāmus*, for *lete*. Sall. *Ænēas se* mātūtīnus *ăgēbat*, for *māne*. Virg. *Nec lŭpus grĕgĭbus* nocturnus *ŏbambŭlat*, i. e. by night. Id.

(b.) So *nullus* is used for *non*; as, *Mĕmĭni tĭmetsi* nullus *mŏneas*. Though you do not suggest it. Ter. *Sextus ab armis* nullus *dĭscēdit*. Cic. *Prĭor, prĭmus, princeps, prŏpĭor, proxĭmus, sōlus, ūnus, ultĭmus, nullus, tōtus*, and some others, are used instead of their neuters, adverbially; as, Priōri *Rēmo augŭrium vēnisse fertur*. Liv. *Hispānia* postrēma *omnium prŏvinciārum perdŏmĭta est*. Liv. *Scævŏla* sōlos *nŏvem menses Asiæ præfuit*, Only nine months. Cic. Unum *hoc dīco*, This only I say. Id. This is sometimes done, for want of an adverb of appropriate meaning; as, Prōnus *cĕcĭdit*. Ovid. Frĕquentes *convēnĕrant*. Sall.

(c.) In such expressions, *tu*, in the nominative, sometimes takes an adjective in the vocative, and *vice versâ;* as, *Sic vēnias* hŏdiernĕ. Tibull. *Salve,* prīmus *omnium părens patriæ* appellāte. Plin.

REM. 16. (a.) A noun is often qualified by two or more adjectives; and sometimes the complex idea, formed by a noun with one or more adjectives, is itself qualified by other adjectives, which agree in gender, etc. with the noun.

(b.) When several adjectives, each independently of the other, qualify a noun, if they precede it, they are almost always connected by one or more conjunctions; as, *Multā* et *văriā* et *cōpiōsā ōrātiōne*. Cic. If they follow it, the conjunction is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted; as, *Vir altus* et *excellens*. Cic. *Actio, văria, vĕhĕmens, plēna vēritātis*. Id.

(c.) But when one of the adjectives qualifies the noun, and another the complex idea formed by the first with the noun, the conjunction is always omitted; as, Pĕrĭcŭlōsissĭmum *cīvĭle bellum*, A most dangerous civil war. Cic. Mălam *dŏmestĭcam disciplīnam*. Id. So with three or more adjectives; as, Externos multos *clāros vĭros nōmĭnārem*. Cic. Cf. § 202, III., R. 1.

REM. 17. The first part, last part, middle part, etc., of any place or time are generally expressed in Latin by the adjectives *prīmus, mĕdius, ultĭmus, extrēmus, intĭmus, infĭmus, īmus, summus, suprēmus, rĕlĭquus,* and *cētĕra ;* as,

Mĕdia nox, The middle of the night. *Summa arbor,* The top of a tree. *Suprēmos montes,* The summits of the mountains. But these adjectives frequently occur without this signification; as, *Ab extrēmo complexu,* From the last embrace. Cic. *Infĭmo lŏco nātus,* Of the lowest rank. Id.

REM. 18. The participle of the compound tenses of verbs, used impersonally in the passive voice, is neuter; as, Ventum *est.* Cic. Itum *est in viscĕra terræ.* Ovid. Scrībendum *est mĭhi.* See § 184, 2 and 3.

RELATIVES.

§ **206.**   REM. 19. (*a.*) Relatives agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person, but their case depends on the construction of the clause to which they belong; as,

Puer qui *lĕgit,* The boy who reads. *Ædĭfĭcium* quod *exstruxit,* The house which he built. *Lĭtĕræ* quas *dĕdi,* The letter which I gave. *Non sum* quālis *ĕram,* I am not such as I was. Hor. So *Deus* cūjus *mūnĕre vivĭmus,* cui *nullus est simĭlis,* quem *cōlĭmus, a* quo *facta sunt omnĭa, est æternus. Addictus Hermippo, et ab* hoc *ductus est. Aquĭlo,* quantus *frangĭt ilĭces.* Hor.

NOTE 1. This rule includes all adjectives and adjective pronouns which relate to a noun in a preceding clause. Its more common application, however, is to the construction of the demonstrative pronouns and the relative *qui.*

NOTE 2. When a pronoun refers to the mere words of a sentence, it is said to be used *logically. Qui* and *is* are so used, and sometimes also *hic* and *ille.*

(*b.*) The relative may be considered as placed between two cases of the same noun, either expressed or understood, with the former of which it agrees in gender, number, and person, and with the latter in gender, number, and case.

(1.) Sometimes both nouns are expressed; as,

Erant omnīno duo ĭtĭnĕra, quĭbus ĭtĭnĕrĭbus *dŏmo exīre possent,* There were only two *routes,* by which *routes* they could leave home. Cæs. *Crūdēlissĭmc bello,* quāle bellum *nulla umquam barbărĭa gessit.* Cic. But it is most frequent with the word *dĭes ;* as, *Fŏre in armis certo dĭe,* qui *dĭes fŭtūrus ĕrat,* etc. Cic. The repetition of the substantive is necessary, when, for any reason, it becomes doubtful to which of two or more preceding substantives the relative refers.

(2.) Usually the antecedent noun only is expressed; as,

Anĭmum rĕge, qui, *nĭsi pāret, impĕrat,* Govern your passions, which rule, unless they obey. Hor. *Tantæ* multĭtūdĭnis, quantam *căpĭt urbs nostra, concursus est ad me factus.* Cic. Quot *căpĭtum vivunt, tŏtĭdem stŭdĭōrum* millia. Hor.

(3.) Sometimes the *latter* noun only is expressed, especially when the relative clause, as is frequently the case, precedes that of the antecedent; as,

Quĭbus *de rēbus ad me scripsisti, cōram vĭdēbĭmus ;* scil. *de rēbus,* In regard to the things of which you wrote to me, we will consider when we meet. Cic. *In* quem *prīmum ēgressi sunt* lŏcum, *Trŏja vŏcātur ;* scil. *lŏcus.* Liv. Quantā vi *expĕtunt, tantā dēfendunt. Quālesque visus ĕram vĭdisse* vĭros, *ex ordine tāles aspĭcio.* Ovid.

(*a.*) The place of the antecedent is sometimes supplied by a demonstrative pronoun; as, *Ad* quas res *aptissimi ĕrĭmus, in* iis *potissĭmum ĕlābŏrābĭmus.* Cic. But the demonstrative is often omitted when its case is the same as that of the relative, and not unfrequently, also, when the cases are different. When the relative clause precedes that of the antecedent, *is* is expressed only for the sake of emphasis. Hence we find such sentences as, *Maxĭmum ornāmentum ămīcĭtiæ tollit, qui ex eā tollit vĕrēcundĭam.* Cic. *Terra quod accēpit, numquam sine ūsūrā reddit.* Id.—The demonstrative adjectives and adverbs are in like manner often omitted before their corresponding relatives; *tālis* before *quālis, tantus* before *quantus, inde* before *unde, ĭbi* before *ŭbi,* etc.

(*b.*) Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed, even when the relative clause does not precede; as, *Quis non mălārum* quas *ămor* cūras *hăbet, hæc inter oblīvīscĭtur ?* Hor.

(4.) Sometimes neither noun is expressed; this happens especially when the antecedent is designedly left indefinite, or when it is a substantive pronoun; as,

Qui *bĕne lătuit, bĕne vixit,* scil. *hŏmo,* (He) who has well escaped notice, has lived well. Ovid. *Sunt* quos *currĭcŭlo pulvĕrem Olympĭcum collēgisse jŭvat,* scil. *hŏmĭnes,* There are whom it delights, i. e. Some delight. Hor. *Non hăbeo* quod *te accūsem,* scil. *id propter quod.* Cic. *Non sōlum săpiens vĭdēris,* qui *hinc absis, sed ĕtiam beātus,* scil. *tu.* Cic.

(5.) The relative is sometimes either entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antīqua fuit; Tўrii tĕnuēre cŏlōni,* scil. *quam* or *eam,* There was an ancient city (which) Tyrian colonists possessed, Virg.; or, if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, even when, if supplied, its case would be different; as, *Bocchus* cum *pĕdĭtĭbus,* quos *fīlius ējus adduxĕrat, nĕque in priŏre pugnā adfŭĕrant, Rōmānos invādunt,* for *et qui non in priŏre,* etc. Sall.

(6.) (*a.*) The relative sometimes takes the case of the antecedent, instead of its own proper case; as, *Quum scrĭbas et ălĭquid ăgas eōrum,* quōrum *consuesti,* for *quæ.* Cic. *Raptim* quĭbus *quisque pŏtĕrat ēlātis, exĭbant,* for *iis, quæ quisque effĕrre pŏtĕrat, ēlātis.* Liv.

(*b.*) The antecedent likewise sometimes takes the case of the relative, the substantive either preceding or following the pronoun; as, Urbem quam *stătuo vestra est,* for *urbs.* Virg. Eunūchum quem *dĕdisti nōbis, quas turbas dĕdit!* for *Eunūchus.* Ter. Naucrātem quem *convĕnīre vŏlui, in nāvi non ĕrat.* Plaut. *Atque ălii,* quōrum *cōmœdia prisca* vīrōrum *est,* for *atque ălii vĭri, quōrum est.* Hor. *Illi, scripta* quĭbus *cōmœdia prisca* vīris *est,* for *illi vĭri, quĭbus.* Id. Quos puĕros mĭsĕram, ĕpĭstŏlam mĭhi attŭlērunt. Cic.

These constructions are said to occur by *attraction.*

(7.) (*a.*) An adjective, which properly belongs to the antecedent, is sometimes placed in the relative clause, and agrees with the relative; as, *Inter jŏcos,* quos incondĭtos *jăciunt,* for *jŏcos incondĭtos, quos,* etc. Amidst the rude jests which they utter. Liv. *Verbis,* quæ magna *vŏlant.* Virg. *Călōre,* quem multum *hăbet.* Cic.

(*b.*) This is the common position of the adjective, when it is a *numeral,* a *comparative,* or a *superlative;* as, *Nocte* quam *in terris* ultimam *ēgit,* The last night which he spent upon earth. *Æscŭlāpius,* qui prīmus *vulnus oblĭgāvisse dĭcĭtur.* Cic. *Consĭliis* pāre, quæ nunc pulcherrĭma *Nautes dat sĕnior,* Listen to the excellent advice, which, etc. Virg. Some instances occur in which an adjective belonging to the relative clause, is placed in that of the antecedent; as, *Quum vēnissent ad văda* Volaterrāna, quæ *nōmĭnantur,* Which are called Volaterran. Cic.

(8.) When to the relative or demonstrative is joined a noun explanatory of its antecedent, but of a different gender or number, the relative or demonstrative usually agrees with that noun; as,

Santŏnes non longe a Tŏlōsātium finĭbus absunt, quæ cīvĭtas *est in prŏvincĭā,*
The Santones are not far distant from the borders of the Tolosates, which
state is in the province. Cæs. *Ante comĭtĭa*, quod tempus *haud longe ăbĕrat.*
Sall. *Rōmæ fānum Diānæ pŏpŭli Lătini cum pŏpŭlo Rōmāno fēcērunt:* ea *ĕrat*
confessio *căput rērum Rōmam esse;* i. e. that thing or that act. Liv. *Si omnia*
făcĭenda sunt, quæ ămīci vĕlint, non ănăcĭtĭæ tāles, *sed* conjūrātiōnes *pŭtandæ*
sunt; i. e. such things or such connections. Cic. So, Ista *quĭdem* vis, Surely
this is force. Ea *ipsa* causa *belli fuit*, for *id ipsum.* Hither also may be refer-
red such explanatory sentences as, Qui *meus* ămor *in te est*, Such is my love
for you. Cic.

(9.) If the relative refers to one of two nouns, denoting the same
object, but of different genders, it agrees with either; as,

Flūmen est Arar quod *in Rhŏdănum influit.* Cæs. *Ad flūmen Oxum perventum*
est, qui *turbĭdus semper est.* Curt.

(10.) When, in a relative clause containing the verb *sum* or a verb
of naming, esteeming, etc., a predicate-noun occurs of a different
gender from the antecedent, the relative commonly agrees with the
latter; but when the preceding noun is to be explained and distin-
guished from another, the relative agrees with the former; as,

Nātūræ vultus quem *dīxēre Chaos*, The appearance of nature which they
called chaos. Ovid. Gĕnus *hŏmĭnum* quod *Hēlōtes vŏcātur.* Nep. *Animal,*
quem *vŏcānus* hŏmĭnem, The animal whom we call man. Cic. *Lŏcus in car-*
cĕre, quod Tullĭānum *appellātur.* Sall. *Pĕcūnĭārum conquīsītĭo;* eos *esse belli*
cīvīlis nervos *dictĭtans Mucĭānus.* Tac.

(11.) The relative sometimes agrees with a noun, either equiva-
lent in sense to the antecedent, or only implied in the preceding
clause; as,

Abundantĭa eārum rērum, quæ mortāles prīma pŭtant, An abundance of those
things, which mortals esteem most important. Sall. Cf. § 205, R. 7, (2.) N. 1.
But sometimes when a neuter adjective substantively has preceded, *res*
with a relative follows; as, Permulta *sunt, quæ dīci possunt,* quā re *intellĭgātur.*
Cic. *Fātāle monstrum*, quæ, etc., scil. *Cleŏpātra.* Hor. Cf. § 323, 3, (4.)

(*a.*) A relative or demonstrative pronoun, referring to a collective noun, or
to a noun which only in a figurative sense denotes a human being, sometimes
takes the gender and number of the individuals which the noun implies; as,
Equĭtātum, quos. Sall. Gĕnus, qui *prĕmuntur.* Cic. *Sĕnātus*—ii. Sall.

(*b.*) A pronoun in the plural often follows a noun in the singular, referring
not only to the noun but to the class of persons or things to which it belongs;
as, *Dēmŏcrĭtum ōmittāmus; nĭhil est ĕnim ăpud* istos, *quod*, etc. i. e. with Demo-
critus and his followers. Cic. *Diŏnysĭus nĕgāvit se jūre illo nĭgro quod cœna*
căput ĕrat, dēlectātum. Tum is, qui illa *coxĕrat,* etc. Id.

(12.) The antecedent is sometimes implied in a possessive pronoun; as,
Omnes laudāre fortūnas meas, qui *nātum tāli ingĕnio prædĭtum hăbērem;* scil.
mei, All were extolling *my* fortune, *who*, etc. Ter. *Id* mea *mĭnime rĕfert*, qui
sum nātu maxĭmus. Id. Nostrum *consĭlium laudandum est*, qui *nŏluĕrim*, etc. Cic.;
or in a possessive adjective; as, *Servīli tŭmultu*, quos, etc. Cæs.

(13.) (*a.*) Sometimes the antecedent is a proposition; the relative then is
commonly neuter; as, *Postrēmo*, quod *diffĭcillĭmum inter mortāles, glōrĭā in-*
vĭdĭam vīcisti, Finally, you have overcome envy with glory, *which*, among men,
is most difficult. Sall. *Equĭdem exspectābam jam tuas lĭtĕras, idque cum multis.*
Cic.

(*b.*) In such instances, *id* is generally placed before the relative pronoun,
referring to the idea in the antecedent clause; as, Sive, id *quod constat, Plătōnis*
stŭdĭōsus audiendi fuit. Cic. *Dĭem consūmi vŏlēbant*, id *quod fēcērunt.* Id.

(*c.*) Sometimes *is*, referring to a clause, agrees with a noun following; as,
Idem velle atque idem nolle, ea *dēmum firma ămĭcĭtĭa est.* Sall.

(14.) *Quod*, relating to a preceding statement, and serving the purpose of transition, is often placed at the beginning of a sentence after a period, where it may be translated by 'nay,' 'now,' or 'and.' It is thus used especially before *si*, *etsi*, and *nisi*; as, Quodsi *illinc inānis prŏfūgisses, tămen ista tua fŭga nĕfāria jūdicārētur*, i. e. and even if you had fled without taking any thing with you, still, etc. Cic. Verr. 1, 14. *Quodsi*, 'if then,' is especially used in introducing something assumed as true, from which further inferences may be drawn. Sometimes also it is equivalent to 'although.' *Quodnisi* signifies 'if then—not'; as, Quodnisi *ĕgo meo adventu illīus cōnātus ăliquantŭlum repressissem, tam multos*, etc. *Quŏdetsi* is 'nay, even if'; as, *Quŏdetsi ingĕnĭis magnis prædĭti quidam dīcendi cōpiam sīne rătĭōne consĕquentur, ars tămen est dux certĭor.— Quod* is found also before *quum, ŭbi, quia, quŏniam, nē* and *ŭtīnam*, where the conjunction alone would seem to be sufficient; as, Quod *ŭtīnam illum, cūjus impio făcinŏre in has mĭsĕrias prōjectus sum, eādem hæc sĭmŭlantem vĭdeam*. Sall. It is so used even before a relative in Cic. Phil. 10, 4, *fin.— Quod*, in such examples, seems to be an accusative, with *propter* or *ad* understood.

(15.) (*a.*) A relative is always plural, when referring to two or more nouns in the singular. If the nouns are of different genders, the gender of the relative is determined by Rem. 2, page 185; as, *Nīnus et Sĕmĭrămis*, qui *Băbўlōna condĭdērant*, Ninus and Semiramis, who had founded Babylon. Vell. *Crēbro fŭnāli et tībĭcĭne*, quæ *sĭbi sumpsĕrat*. Cic. *Ex summā lætĭtĭā atque lascīvĭā*, quæ *dĭŭturna quies pĕpĕrĕrat*. Sall. *Nāves et captīvos* quæ *ad Chĭum capta ĕrant*. Liv.

(*b.*) If the antecedents are of different persons, the relative follows the first person rather than the second or third, and the second rather than the third; as, *Tu et păter*, qui *in convīvio ĕrātis*. *Ego et tu*, qui *ĕrāmus*. Cf. § 209, R. 12, (7.)

(16.) The relative adjectives *quŏt, quantus, quālĭs*, are construed like the relative *qui*. They have generally, in the antecedent clause, the corresponding demonstrative words, *tŏt, tantus, tālĭs*; but these are also often omitted. Frequently also the order of the clauses is reversed, so that the relative clause precedes the demonstrative.

(17.) *Qui*, at the beginning of a sentence, is often translated like a demonstrative; as, Quæ *quum ita sint*, Since *these* (things) are so. Cic.

(18.) The relative *qui* with *sum* and either a nominative or the ablative of quality, is used in explanatory clauses, instead of *pro*, 'in accordance with,' or 'according to'; thus, instead of *Tū*, pro *tuā prūdentĭā, quid optĭmum factu sit, vĭdēbis*. Cic., we may say, *quæ tua est prūdentĭa*, or, *quā prūdentĭā ĕs*. So, *Vĕlĭs tantummŏdo*, quæ *tua virtus, expugnābis*. Hor. Quā prūdentĭā es, *nihil te fŭgiet*. Cic.

(19.) A relative clause is sometimes used for the purpose of denoting by circumlocution the person of the agent in a definite but not permanent condition; as, *Ii*, qui *audĭunt*, or *qui adsunt*, i. e. the hearers, the persons present. So, also, a relative clause is used for the English expression 'above mentioned'; as, *Ex librīs quos dixi* or *quos ante* (*supra*) *laudāvi*: and the English 'so called,' or 'what is called,' is expressed by *quem, quam, quod vŏcant*, or by *qui, quæ, quod vŏcātur, dīcitur*, etc. as, *Nec Hermas hos, quos vŏcant, impōni* (*Athēnis*) *licēbat*. Cic. *Vestra, quæ dīcitur, vīta, mors est*. Id.

(20.) Relative and demonstrative adverbs (see § 191, R. 1), are frequently used instead of relative and demonstrative pronouns with prepositions; as, *Is*, unde *te audīsse dīcis*, i. e. *a quo*. Cic. *Dīvĭtiæ ăpud illos sunt, aut* ūbi *illi vŏlunt*, i. e. *ăpud quos*. Sall. *Huic ab ădŏlescentĭā bella intestīna, cædes, răpīnæ, discordĭa cīvĭlis, grāta fuēre*, ībique *jŭventūtem exercuit*, i. e. *in ĭis*, in these things. Sall.

(21.) With *quam qui* and the superlative after *tam* the verb of the relative clause is sometimes omitted; as, *Tam mihi grātum id ĕrit, quam quod grātissĭmum*. Cic. *Tam ĕnim sum ămīcus reipūblĭcæ, quam qui maxĭme*. Id. *Tam sum mītis, quam qui lēnissĭmus*. Id. So also with *ut qui* without *tam;* as, *Te semper sic cŏlam et tuēbor, ut quem dīligentissĭme*. Id.

DEMONSTRATIVES.

§ **207.** REM. 20. The oblique cases of the personal pronoun of the third person (*him, her*, etc.) are commonly expressed in prose by the oblique cases of *is, ea, id*. *Hic* and *ille*, however, being more emphatic, take the place of *is, ea, id*, in lyric poetry, and occasionally in prose also, when particular emphasis is intended. The cases of *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, also, are employed for this purpose, when the individuality of the person is to be distinctly expressed. In reflexive sentences, the oblique cases of the pronoun of the third person, are regularly supplied by *sui, sibi, se;* and it is only when the person of the leading subject is to be referred to with particular emphasis, that *ipse* is used instead of *sui*.

REM. 21. The demonstrative pronouns, *is* and *ille*, are sometimes used, especially with *quidem*, where a corresponding word in English is unnecessary; as, *Săpientiæ stŭdium vĕtus* id quidem *in nostris, sed tămen*, etc. Cic. *O hŏmĭnem semper* illum quĭdem *mĭhi aptum, nunc vēro ĕtĭam suāvem*. Id. *Quem nĕque fĭdes, nĕque jusjūrandum, nĕque* illum *mĭsĕrĭcordia, rĕpressit*, Whom neither fidelity, nor an oath, nor pity, has restrained. Ter. *Is* when used for the sake of emphasis seems sometimes in English to be superfluous; as, *Mălĕ se res hăbet, quum, quod virtūte effīcĭ dēbet*, id *tentātur pĕcūniā*. Cic.

REM. 22. *Sīc, ĭtă, ĭd, hŏc, illŭd*, are often used redundantly as a preliminary announcement of a subsequent proposition, and are added to the verb on which this proposition depends; as, Sīc *a mājōrĭbus suis accēpĕrant, tanta pŏpŭli Rōmīnī esse bĕnĕfĭcia, ut*, etc. Cic. *Te* illud *almŏneo, ut quŏtĭdie mĕdĭtēre, rĕsistendum esse irācundiæ*. Id. Hoc *tĭbi persuādeas vĕlim, me nĭhil ŏmīsisse*, I wish you to be persuaded of this—that I have omitted nothing. These pleonastic additions have generally no influence on the construction of propositions, but in a few instances they are followed by *ut ;* as, *De cūjus dīcendi cōpiā* sīc *accēpĭmus, ut*, etc. Cic. Ita *ĕnim dēfīnit, ut perturbātio sit*, etc. Id. In the phrase *hoc, illud*, or *id ăgĕre ut*, the pronoun is established by custom and is necessary. See § 273, 1, (*a.*)

REM. 23. (*a.*) *Hĭc* 'this' refers to what is near to the speaker either in place or time, *illĕ* 'that' to what is more remote. Hence *hĭc* sometimes refers to the speaker himself, and *hĭc hŏmo* is then the same as *ĕgo*. On this account *hĭc* is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. When reference is made to two things previously mentioned, *hĭc* commonly refers to the latter, *illĕ* to the former, and the pronouns are arranged in the same order, as the objects to which they relate; as, *Ignāvia corpus hĕbĕtat, lăbor firmat;* illa *mātūram sĕnectūtem*, hic *longam ădŏlescentiam reddit*, Sloth enervates the body, labor strengthens it; the former produces premature old age, the latter protracted youth. Cels.

(*b.*) But the order is often reversed, so that *hĭc* refers to the object first mentioned, and *illĕ* to the one mentioned last; as, *Sīc deus et virgo est;* hic *spe cĕler*, illa *tĭmōre*. Ovid. So when *alter...alter*, 'the one...the other,' refer to two things mentioned before, the previous order is sometimes observed and sometimes reversed; but wherever there is ambiguity the order is reversed, so that the first *alter* refers to the last object. Sometimes *hĭc...hĭc* are used instead of *hĭc...illĕ*. So *illĕ...illĕ* sometimes denote 'the one...the other.'

(*c.*) *Hĭc* and *illĕ* have the same relation to time present and past as *nunc* and *tunc*, see § 277; and hence whatever, in speaking of present time, is expressed by *hĭc* and its derivative adverbs, *hic, hinc, huc*, and *adhuc*, is expressed by *illĕ* and its derivatives, when it is spoken of as belonging to past time.

REM. 24. *Ille*, when not in opposition to *hic*, is often used to denote that which is of general notoriety; as, *Magno* illi *Alexandro sĭmillĭmus*, Very like Alexander *the* Great. Vell. *Mēdēa illă*, The celebrated Medea. Cic. Hence *ille* is sometimes added to other pronouns, to refer to something discussed before; as, *Avēbant vĭsēre, quis ille tot per annos ŏpes nostras sprēvisset*. Tac. *Ille* is sometimes translated *this ;* as, *Unum illud dico*, This only I say. Cic. *Ille*

sometimes marks a change of persons, and may then be translated 'the other'; as, *Vercingetŏrix obviam Cæsări prŏfĭciscĭtur.* Ille (scil. *Cæsar*) *oppĭdum Noviodūnum oppugnāre institŭĕrat.* Cæs.

REM. 25. *Ist e* properly refers to the person addressed, and for this reason is called the demonstrative of the second person.—*Ille* refers to the person spoken of, and is hence called the demonstrative of the third person. Thus *iste liber* is thy book, but *ille liber* is the book of which we are speaking. Hence, in letters, *hic* and its derivatives are used of the writer; *iste* and its derivatives of the person addressed; *ille*, etc., of some other person or thing. See § 191, R. 1, (e.) *Iste* from its frequent forensic use, and its application to the opponent, often denotes contempt.

REM. 26. (a.) *Is* does not, like *hic, ille,* and *iste,* denote the place or order of the object to which it relates, but either refers without particular emphasis to something already mentioned or to something which is to be defined by the relative *qui. Hic, is,* or *ille,* may be used in this way before the relative, but only *hic* or *is* after it; as, *Qui dŏcet, is discit,* or *hic discit,* but not *ille discit,* unless some individual is referred to.

(b.) *Is* before a relative or *ut* has sometimes the sense of *tālis,* such, denoting a class; as, *Nĕque ĕnim tu is es, qui quid sis nescĭas,* Nor are you such a person, as not to know what you are. Cic.; sometimes it has the force of *īdem; as, vos —ii.* Cic. Manil. 12.

(c.) If the noun to which *is* refers is to receive some additional predicate, we must use *et is, atque is, isque, et is quĭdem,* and with a negative *nec is;* as, *Vincŭla vēro, et ea sempĭterna,* etc. Cic. *Unā in dŏmo,* et ea quĭdem *angusta,* etc. Id. *Adŏlescentes alĭquot,* nec ii *tĕnui lŏco orti,* etc. Liv. *Sed is* is used when the additional predicate is opposed to the preceding; as, *Sēvērĭtātem in sĕnectūte prŏbo,* sed eam, *sĭcut alĭa, mŏdĭcam.* Cic. The neuter *et id,* or *idque,* serves to introduce an addition to the preceding proposition; as, *Quamquam te, Marce fĭli, annum jam audientem Crătippum,* idque *Athēnis,* etc.

(d.) *Is* is not expressed when it would be in the same oblique case as the preceding noun to which it refers; as, *Păter ămat lĭbĕros et tămen castīgat. Multos illustrat fortūna, dum vexat.*

(e.) When in English 'that' or 'those' is used instead of the repetition of the preceding substantive, *is* is never used in Latin, and *ille* only in later authors. In such cases the noun is commonly not repeated in Latin, and no pronoun is used in its place; as, *Phĭlippus hostium mănus sæpe vītāvit, suōrum effŭgĕre non văluit,* those of his own subjects. Curt. Sometimes the substantive is repeated; as, *Jūdĭcia cīvĭtātis cum jūdĭciis princĭpis certant.* Vell. Sometimes a possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive depending on the omitted substantive; as, *Tĕrentii fābŭlas stŭdĭōse lĕgo,* Plautīnis *minus dēlector:* and sometimes instead of the genitive or a possessive adjective the name of the person itself is put in the case which the verb governs; as, *Si cum* Lycurgo *et* Drăcōne *et* Sŏlōne *nostras lĕges conferre vŏluĕritis.* Cic.—In Cicero *hic* and *ille,* when the preceding substantive is understood, retain their demonstrative signification, and therefore do not merely supply the place of the omitted substantive; as, *Nullam ĕnim virtus alĭam mercēdem dēsīdĕrat, præter* hanc, i. e. the one of which I am speaking. Cic.

REM. 27. (a.) *Id e m*, as denoting a subject which stands in equal relations to two different predicates, often supplies the place of *item* or *ĕtiam,* 'also,' 'at the same time,' or of *tămen,* 'yet,' if the things are apparently inconsistent; as, *Mūsĭci, qui ĕrant quondam* iīdem *poētæ,* Musicians, who formerly were poets also. Cic. *Euphrātes et Tigris magno ăquārum dīvortio iter percurrunt;* iīdem (and yet) *paulātim in arctius coēunt.*

(b.) *Et ipse,* on the other hand, denotes that the same predicate belongs to two subjects. It is rendered by 'too' or 'also'; as, *Antōnīnus Commŏdus nĭhil păternum hăbuit, nisi quod contra Germānos fēlĭcĭter* et ipse *pugnāvit,* for *item* or *ipse quŏque.* Eutr.—So, also, *nec ipse* is used in the sense of 'neither'; as, *Prīmis rĕpulsis Maharbal cum mājōre rŏbŏre virōrum missus* nec ipse *ēruptiōnum cŏhortium sustĭnuit.* Liv.

(c.) *Idem* is sometimes repeated in the sense of 'at once,' denoting the union of qualities which might be thought incompatible; as, *Fuēre quīdam qui īdem ornāte iīdem versūte dīcěrent,* There have been some who could speak at once elegantly and artfully. Cic.

(d.) 'The same as' is variously expressed in Latin, by *īdem* with *qui, ac* or *atque, quam, quăsi, ut* or *cum ;* as, *Verres* īdem *est* qui *fuit semper,* Verres is the same as he has always been. Cic. *Vīta est* eādem ac *fuit.* Liv. *Dispūtātiōnem expōnīmus* iisdem *fěre* verbis ut *actum est.* Cic. Eandem *constituit pŏtestātem* quam *si,* etc. Cic. Eōdem *lŏco es est,* quăsi *ea pěcūnia lēgāta non esset.* Id. *Hunc ěgo* eōdem *mēcum patre gěnitum,* etc. So also poetically with the *dative ;* as, Eādem ăliis *sōpitu' quiēte est.* Lucr. Cf. § 222, R. 7.

IPSE, INTENSIVE OR ADJUNCTIVE.

REM. 28. (a.) *Ip s e,* when used with a substantive pronoun taken reflexively, agrees either with such pronoun or with the subject of the proposition, according as either is emphatic; as, *Agam per me* ipse, I will do it myself. Cic. *Non ěgeo mědīcīnā* (i. e. *ut ălii me consōlentur*); *me* ipse *consōlor.* Cic. *Accūsando eum, a cūjus crūdēlitāte vosmet* ipsi *armis vindicastis.* Liv.—*Cn. Pompeium omnibus, Lentūlum* mihi ipsi antěpōno. Cic. *Fac ut te* ipsum *custōdias.* Id. *Dēforme est de se* ipsum *prædicāre.* Id.—But Cicero often construes *ipse* as the subject, even where the emphasis belongs to the object; as, *Quid est něgōtii continēre eos, quibus præsis, si te* ipse *contineas?*

(b.) When *ipse* is joined with a possessive pronoun used reflexively, it usually takes the case of the subject; as, *Meam* ipse *lēgem něglīgo ;* not *meam ipsius,* according to § 211, R. 3, (a.). So, *Si ex scriptis cognosci* ipsi *suis pŏtuissent.* Cic. *Eam fraudem vestrā* ipsi *virtūte vītastis.* Liv. But the genitive is necessary when the possessive does not refer to the subject; as, *Tuā* ipsius *causā hoc fēci.* And it is sometimes found where the case of the subject should be used; as, *Conjectūram de tuo* ipsius *stūdio cēpěris,* instead of *ipse.*—(c.) *Ipse* is sometimes used as reflexive without *sui ;* as, *Omnes bŏni, quantum in* ipsis *fuit, Cæsărem occīdērunt.* Cic.

(d.) *Ipse,* with nouns denoting time or number, expresses exactness, and may be rendered, 'just,' 'precisely'; or 'very,' 'only'; as, *Dyrrhăchio sum prŏfectus* ipso illo *die, quo lex est dāta de nōbis,* on the very day. Cic. *Trīginta dies ĕrant* ipsi, *quum has dăbam lităras, per quos nullas a vōbis accēpěram,* just thirty days. Id. *Et quisquam dŭbĭtābit—quam făcĭle impěrio atque exercĭtu sŏcios et vectĭgālia conservātūrus sit, qui* ipso *nōmĭne ac rūmōre dēfendĕrit,* by his very name, or, by his name only. Id.

GENERAL RELATIVES.

REM. 29. *Qu ī cumque, q u i s q u i s,* and the other general relatives (see § 139, 5, R.), are, in classical prose, always connected with a verb, and form the protasis. *Quīcumque* is commonly used as an adjective, and *quisquis* as a substantive; but the neuter *quodcumque* is used as a substantive with a following genitive; as, *Quodcumque mīlitum ;* and, on the other hand, *quisquis* is rarely an adjective; as, *Quisquis ĕrit vitæ cŏlor.* Hor.; and even the neuter *quidquid* is used in the same manner; as, *Quisquis hŏnos tŭmūli, quidquid sōlāmen hŭmandi est.* Virg. *Quīcumque* seems sometimes even in Cicero equivalent to *omnis* or *quīvis ;* as, *Quæ sānāri pŏtĕrunt,* quācumque *rătiōne sānābo,* What can be cured, I will cure by every possible means. Cic. Yet *possum* is rather to be supplied;—' in whatever way I can.' But in later writers *quīcumque* is frequently used in the absolute sense for *quīvis* or *quĭlibet ;* as, *Cicěrōnem cuicumque eōrum fortiter oppŏsuěrim.* Quint. *Quālĭscumque* and *quantuscumque* are likewise used in an absolute sense by ellipsis; as, *Tu non concūpisces quantĭcumque ad lībertātem pervēnīre?* At any price, be it ever so high. Sen. So *quisquis* is occasionally used, not as a relative, but as an indefinite pronoun.—*Sīquis* often seems to stand as a relative, like the Greek εἴτις for ὅστις, 'whoever'; but it always contains the idea of 'perhaps'; as, *Nūda fěre Alpium căcūmĭna sunt, et si quid est pābŭli, obruunt nĭves.* Liv.

Indefinite Pronouns.

Rem. 30. (*a.*) *Ălĭquĭs* and *quĭspĭam* are particular and affirmative, corresponding to the English *some one*; as, *Hērēdĭtas est pĕcūnĭa, quæ morte* ălĭcūjus *ad* quempiam *pervēnĭt jūre,* An inheritance is property which, at the death of some one, falls to some (other) one by law. Cic. *Multi sĭne doctrīnā* ălĭquĭd *omnĭum gĕnĕrum et artĭum consĕquuntur.* Id.

(*b.*) *Ălĭquĭs* is more emphatic than the indefinite pronoun *quĭs.* (See § 137, (3.) Hence *ălĭquĭs* stands by itself, but *quĭs* is commonly connected with certain conjunctions or relative words, but these are sometimes separated from it by one or more words. Sometimes, however, *quĭs* is used without such conjunctions or relatives; as, *Morbus aut ĕgestas aut* quid *ejusmŏdi.* Cic. *Dētrăhĕre* quid *de ălĭquo.* Id. *Injūrĭam* cui *făcĕre.* Id. So, *Dīxĕrĭt* quis, Some one might say. But even after those conjunctions which usually require *quĭs,* *ălĭquĭs* is used when employed antithetically and of course emphatically; as, *Tĭmēbat Pompeius omnĭa,* ne ălĭquid *vos tĭmērētis.* Cic. In English the emphasis of *ălĭquĭs* is sometimes expressed by 'really'; as, *Sensus mŏrĭendi,* si ălĭquĭs *esse pŏtest, is ad exĭguum tempus dūrat.* Cic.— *Quĭspĭam,* also, is sometimes used like *quĭs* after *si,* etc., and sometimes stands alone; as, *Quæret fortasse quĭspĭam.*

Rem. 31. (*a.*) *Quĭsquăm,* 'any one,' and *ullŭs,* 'any,' are universal. Like *umquăm* and *usquam* they are used in propositions which involve a universal negative, or which express an interrogation with a negative force, or a condition (usually with *si* or *quasi*); also, after comparatives, after the adverb *vix,* and the preposition *sĭne; as, Nĕque ex castrīs Cătĭlīnæ* quisquam *omnĭum discessĕrat,* Nor had any one departed from the camp of Catiline. Sall. *Nec ullo cāsu pŏtest contingĕre, ut* ulla *intermissĭo fĭat offĭcĭi.* Cic. *An* quisquam *pŏtest sĭne perturbātĭōne mentis īrasci?* Id. *Tĕtrĭor hĭc tўrannus Sўrācūsānis fŭit, quam* quisquam *sŭpĕrĭōrum.* Id. *Vix* quidquam *spei est.* Sen. But after the dependent negative particles *ne, nĕve,* and the negative interrogative particle *num, quĭs* and not *quisquam* is used.

(*b.*) But *quisquam* and *ullus* after *si* are often used not in a negative sense, but instead of *ălĭquĭs* or *quĭs,* serving only to increase the indefiniteness which would be implied in the latter pronouns; as, *Aut ĕnĭm nēmo, quod quĭdem măgĭs crēdo, aut,* si quisquam, *ille săpĭens fŭit,* if any man. Cic. Hence, ultimately, even without *si,* where the indefiniteness is to be made emphatic, *quisquam, ullus, umquam* and *usquam* were used; as, *Quamdĭu* quisquam *ĕrĭt, qui te dēfendĕre audeat, vīves.* Cic. *Bellum maxĭme omnĭum mĕmŏrābĭle, quæ* umquam *gesta sunt, scrīptūrus sum.* Tac.

(*c.*) *Ullus* is properly an adjective, but *quisquam* is commonly used without a noun, except it is a word denoting a person; as, *Cuiquam cīvi,* To any citizen. *Cūjusquam ōrātōris ēlŏquentĭam.* Hence *quisquam* corresponds to the substantive *nēmo* and *ullus* to the adjective *nullus. Nēmo* is often used with other substantives denoting male persons so as to become equivalent to the adjective *nullus;* as, *nēmo pictor, nēmo ădŏlescens,* and even *hŏmo nēmo.* Cic. *Quisquam* is sometimes used in a similar manner; as, *quisquam hŏmo, quisquam cīvis.* On the other hand *nullus* and *ullus* are used as substantives instead of *nēmo* and *quisquam,* especially the genitive *nullīus* and the ablative *nullo.*

Rem. 32. (*a.*) *Alĭŭs,* like *ullus,* though properly an adjective, is sometimes used like a pronoun. It is often repeated, or joined with an adverb derived from it, in the same proposition, which may be translated by two separate propositions, commencing respectively with 'one...another'; as, Aliud ăliis *vidētur optĭmum,* One thing seems best to one, another to another. Cic. Aliis ălĭunde *pĕrīcŭlum est,* Danger threatens one from one source, another from another; *or,* Danger threatens different persons from different sources. Ter. *Dĭŏnўsĭum* ălĭter *cum* ăliis *de nōbĭs lŏcūtum audĭēbam.* Cic.— *Alter* is used in the same manner when only *two* persons are spoken of, but there are no adverbs derived from it; as, Alter *in* altĕrum *causam confĕrunt,* They accuse each other.

(*b.*) *Alĭus,* repeated in *dĭffĕrent* propositions, is also translated 'one...another'; as, Aliud *ăgĭtur,* aliud *sĭmŭlātur,* One thing is done, another pretended. Cic. Alĭter *lŏquĭtur,* ălĭter *scrĭbĭt,* like *ălĭter ac* or *atque,* He speaks otherwise than he writes. So *Aliud lŏquĭtur, ălĭud scrĭbĭt.*

(c.) *Uterque*, 'each of two,' is always used by Cicero in the singular number, when only two individuals are spoken of. Its plural, *utrīque*, is used only when each of two parties consists of several individuals; as, *Macĕdŏnes—Tўrĭi, utrīque.* But in other good prose writers the plural *utrīque* is occasionally used in speaking of only two; as, *Utrīque Diŏnȳsii.* Nep. Cf. § 209, R. 11, (4.)

REM. 33. (a.) *Quīdam* differs from *ălĭquis* by implying that a person or thing, though indefinitely described, is definitely known; as, Quīdam *de collēgis nostris*, A certain one of our colleagues. Cic. *Scis me* quōdam *tempŏre Mĕtăpontum vēnisse tēcum.* Id.

(b.) Quīdam is sometimes used for *some,* as opposed to *the whole,* or to *others;* as, *Excessĕrunt urbe* quīdam, ălĭi *mortem sĭbi conscīvērunt,* Some departed from the city, others destroyed themselves. Liv. Hence it is used to soften an expression, where in English we say 'so to speak,' etc.; as, *Milvo est* quoddam *bellum nātūrāle cum corvo,* A kind of natural warfare. Cic. *Fŭit ĕnim illud* quoddam *cæcum tempus servĭtūtis.* Id. *Etĕnim omnes artes quæ ad hūmānĭtātem pertĭnent,* hăbent quoddam *commūne vincŭlum et quăsi cognātiōne* quădam *inter se contĭnentur.* Id.—*Tamquam* is used for the same purpose, and also *ut ĭta dīcam.*

REM. 34. *Quīvis* and *quĭlĭbet,* 'any one,' and *ūnusquisque,* 'each,' are universal and absolute; as, *Omnia sunt ejusmŏdi* quīvis *ut perspĭcĕre possit,* All are of such a nature that any one can perceive. Cic. *Hic ăpud mājōres nostros adhĭbēbātur pērĭtus, nunc* quĭlĭbet. Id. *Nātūra* ūnumquemque *trăhit ad discendum.* A negative joined with them denies only the universality which they imply; as, *Non* cuĭvis *hŏmĭni contĭngit ădīre Cŏrinthum,* i. c. not to every man without distinction. Hor. *Cuĭquam* would have made the negation universal.

REM. 35. (a.) *Quisque* signifies *each, every one,* distributively or relatively, and generally stands without a noun; as, *Quod* cuĭque *obtĭgit, id* quisque *tĕneat,* Let each one keep what has fallen to each. Cic. Hence it is used particularly after relative and interrogative pronouns and adverbs; as, *Scĭpio pollĭcētur sĭbi magnæ cūræ fŏre, ut omnia cīvĭtātĭbus,* quæ cūjusque *fŭissent, restĭtuĕrentur.* Cic. *Ut prædĭci posset,* quid cuĭque *ēventūrum, et* quo quisque *fāto nātus esset.* Id. *Cur fīat* quĭdque *quæris: recte omnīno.* Id. *Quo* quisque *est sollertior, hoc dŏcet lābōriōsius.* Id. *Ut* quisque *optĭme dīcit, ĭta maxĭme dīcendi diffĭcultātem tĭmet.* Id. And hence the expression *quŏtusquisque* in the sense of 'how few among all.' It is also used distributively after numerals; as, *Dĕcĭmus* quisque *sorte lectus,* Every tenth man. *Quinto* quŏque *anno,* In every fifth year. So also after *suus;* as, *Sui* cuĭque *lĭbĕri cārissĭmi:* suum cuĭque *plăcet.* (Respecting the order of the words, cf. § 279, 14: and respecting *quisque* in the nominative in apposition to a noun or pronoun in the ablative absolute or in the accusative with the infinitive, see § 204, R. 10.)

(b.) *Quisque* with a superlative, either in the singular or the plural, denotes universality, and is generally equivalent to *omnes* with the positive; as, *doctissĭmus* quisque, Every learned man, i. e. all the learned; but often, also, in connection with the verb, it retains the idea of a reciprocal comparison, and is to be rendered by the superlative; as, *In omni arte* optĭmum quidque *rārissĭmum,* The best is the rarest. Cic. *Altissĭma* quæque *flūmĭna mĭnĭmo sŏno lābuntur,* The deepest rivers flow with the least sound. Curt. With *primus,* it denotes the *first possible;* as, *Prīmo* quŏque *tempŏre,* As soon as possible. Cic.

POSSESSIVES.

REM. 36. (a.) The possessive pronouns *meus, tuus, suus, noster,* and *vester,* are joined to nouns, to indicate an action or possession of the persons denoted by their primitives; as, *Tūtus ămor* meus *est tĭbi,* My love is secure to you. Ovid. Tuam *vĭcem dŏlēre sŏleo.* Cic.—These pronouns, as in English, when belonging to two substantives, are generally expressed but once, even when the substantives are of different genders; as, *ămor* tuus *ac jūdĭcium de me.*

(b.) But these pronouns are sometimes used when the persons to which they refer are the *objects* of an action, feeling, etc.; as, *Nam nĕque* tuā *nĕglĭgentiā, nĕque ŏdio id fēcit* tuo, For he did it neither through neglect nor hatred *of you.* Ter. See § 211, R. 3.

(*c.*) The possessive pronouns, especially when used as reflexives, are often omitted; as, *Quo rĕvertar? in patriam?* scil. *meam*, Whither shall I return? to (my) country? Ovid. *Dextrā mūnĕra porrexit*, scil. *suā.* Id. But they are expressed when emphasis or contrast is intended, where in English 'own' might be added to the pronoun; as, *Ego non dīcam, tămen id pŏtĕrĭtis cum ănĭmis vestris cōgĭtāre.* Cic.

(*d.*) When besides the person of the subject, that of a remote object also occurs in the proposition, the possessive pronoun will refer to the latter; as, *Patris ănĭmum mihi rēconcĭlĭasti*, i. e. *patris mei ănĭmum* rather than *tui.*

(*e.*) As reflexives, *meus*, etc., are translated my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their; or my own, thy own, his own, etc.

THE REFLEXIVES *SUI* AND *SUUS.*

§ **208.** REM. 37. (*a.*) *Sui* and *suus* properly refer to the subject of the proposition in which they stand; as,

Oppĭdāni *făcĭnus in se ac* suos *fœdum consciscunt*, The citizens decide on a foul crime against themselves and their friends. Liv.

(*b.*) They continue to be used in successive clauses, if the subject remains the same; as,

Ipse se *quisque dīlĭgit, non ut ălĭquam a* se *ipse mercēdĕm exĭgat cārĭtātis* suæ, *sed quod per* se *sibi quisque cārus est.* Cic.

(1.) In dependent clauses, in which the subject does not remain the same, the reflexives are commonly used in references to the leading subject, when the thoughts, language, purposes, etc., of that subject are stated; as,

Ariŏvistus prædĭcāvit, non sēse *Gallis, sed Gallos* sĭbi *bellum intŭlisse*, Ariovistus declared that he had not made war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon him. Cæs. *Hŏmērum Cŏlŏphōnii cīvem esse dīcunt* suum, The Colophonians say that Homer is their citizen. Cic. *Tўrannus pĕtīvit ut* se *ad ămīcĭtĭam tertium ascrĭbĕrent.* Id. But sometimes, to avoid ambiguity, the cases of *is* or *ille* are used in such clauses in references to the leading subject; as, *Helvētii* sēse *Allobrŏges vi coactūros existĭmābant, ut per* suos *fīnes* eos *īre pătĕrentur.* Cæs. Here *suos* refers to the subject of the dependent clause, and *eos* to *Helvētii*, the subject of the leading clause. And sometimes, even in the same dependent clause, two reflexive pronouns are used, referring to different persons; as, *Scŷthæ pĕtēbant, ut rēgis* sui *fīliam mātrĭmōnio* sĭbi *jungĕret.* Curt.

(2.) If, however, the leading subject, whose thoughts, etc., are expressed, is indefinite, the reflexives relate to the subject of a dependent clause; as,

Mēdēam prædĭcant (scil. *hŏmĭnes*) *in fŭgā frātris* sui *membra in iis lŏcis, quā* se *părens persĕquĕrētur, dissĭpāvisse.* Cic. *Ipsum* rēgem *trādunt ŏpĕrātum his sacris* se *abdĭdisse.* Liv.

(3.) (*a.*) When the leading verb is in the passive voice, the reflexive often refers not to its subject, but to that which would be its subject in the active voice; as,

A Cæsăre invītor ut sim sĭbi *lēgātus*, i. e. *Cæsar me invītat*, I am invited by Cæsar to become his lieutenant. Cic.

(*b.*) So when the subject is a thing without life, the reflexive may relate to some other word in the sentence, which denotes a thing having life; as,

Cănum tam fĭda custōdĭa quid signĭfĭcat ălĭud, nĭsi se *ad hŏmĭnum commŏdĭtātes esse gĕnĕrātos?* Cic.

(4.) Instead of *sui* and *suus*, whether referring to a leading or a subordinate subject, *ipse* is sometimes used, to avoid ambiguity from the similarity of both numbers of *sui*, and also to mark more emphatically than *suus*, the person to whom it relates; as,

Jugurtha lēgātos mīsit, qui ipsi *līberisque vītam pĕtĕrent*, Jugurtha sent ambassadors to ask life for himself and his children. Sall. *Ea mŏlestissime ferre hŏmĭnes dēbent, quæ* ipsōrum *culpā contracta sunt.*

(5.) In the plural number, with *inter*, *se* only is used, if the person or thing referred to is in the nominative or accusative; *se* or *ipse*, if in any other case; as,

Frātres inter se *quum formā, tum mōrĭbus sĭmĭles*, Brothers resembling each other both in person and character. Cic. *Fĕras* inter sēse *concĭlĭat nātūra*. Cic. *Incĭdunt ălĭqua a doctis ĕtĭam* inter ipsos *mūtuo reprehensa*. Quint.

(6.) (*a.*) When reference is made not to the subject of the proposition, but to some other person or thing, *hic*, *is*, or *ille*, is generally used, except in the cases above specified; as,

Thĕmistŏcles servum ad Xerxem mīsit, ut ei nuntiāret, suis verbis, adversārios ējus *in fŭgā esse*, Themistocles sent his servant to Xerxes, to inform him (Xerxes), in his (Themistocles') name, that his (Xerxes') enemies were upon the point of flight. Nep.

(*b.*) But when no ambiguity would arise, and especially when the verb is of the first or second person, *sui* and *suus* sometimes take the place of the demonstrative pronouns; as,

Suam rem sĭbi *salvam sistam*, I will restore his property entire to him. Plaut.

(*c.*) On the contrary, the demonstratives are sometimes used for the reflexives; as,

Helvetii persuādent Raurăcis, ut ūnā cum iis *prŏfĭciscantur*, The Helvetii persuade the Rauraci to go with them. Cæs.—In some instances, a reflexive and a demonstrative are used in reference to the same person; as, *Ita se gessit* (scil. *Lĭgārius*) *ut* ei *pācem esse expĕdiret*. Cic. *C. Claudii ōrantis per* sui *frātris părentisque ējus mānes*. Liv.—Sometimes the reflexives refer to different subjects in the same sentence; as, *Ariŏvistus respondit, nēmĭnem* sēcum *sĭne* suā *pernĭcie contendisse* (Cæs.); where *se* refers to Ariovistus, and *suā* to *nēmĭnem*.

(7.) (*a.*) *Suus* often refers to a word in the predicate of a sentence, and is then usually placed after it; as,

Hunc cīves sui *ex urbe ējēcērunt*, Him his fellow-citizens banished from the city. Cic. *Tĭtūrius quum prŏcul* Ambiŏrĭgem, suos *cŏhortantem, conspexisset*. Cæs.

(*b.*) *Suus*, and not *hūjus*, is used when a noun is omitted; as,

Octāvius quem sui *(scil.* ămīci) *Cæsărem sălūtābant*, Octavius, whom his followers saluted as Cæsar.

(*c.*) *Suus* is also commonly used when two nouns are coupled by *cum* but not when they are connected by a conjunction; as,

Ptŏlĕmæus ămīcos Demetrii cum suis *rēbus dīmīsit*, Ptolemy dismissed the friends of Demetrius with their effects. Just.

(8.) *Suus* sometimes denotes *fit, favorable ;* as,

Sunt et sua *dōna părenti*, There are likewise for my father suitable presents. Virg. *Ut lĭbĕrātor ille pŏpŭli Rōmāni oppĕrīrētur tempŏra* sua. Liv. *Alphēnus ūtēbātur pŏpŭlo sāne* suo. Cic. Sometimes it signifies *peculiar ;* as, *Molles* sua *tūra Săbæi*, scil. *mittunt*, i. e. the frankincense for which their country was famous. Virg. *Fessosque sŏpor* suus *occŭpat artus*. Id.

NOMINATIVE.

SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE AND VERB.

§ **209.** (*a.*) The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative.

NOTE 1. (*a.*) A verb in any mood except the infinitive is called a finite verb. (*b.*) In historical writing the nominative is sometimes joined with the present infinitive instead of the imperfect indicative. Cf. R. 5.

(*b.*) A verb agrees with its subject-nominative, in number and person ; as,

Ego lĕgo, I read.	*Nos lĕgĭmus,* We read.
Tu scrībis, Thou writest.	*Vos scrībĭtis,* You write.
Equus currit, The horse runs.	*Equi currunt,* Horses run.

NOTE 2. The imperative singular is sometimes used in addressing several persons; as, *Huc nātas* adjĭce *septem,* scil. *vos, Thēbaïdes.* Ovid. Met. 6, 182. So Adde *dēfectiōnem Ităliæ,* scil. *vos, mĭlites.* Liv. 26, 41.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) The nominatives *ĕgo, tu, nos, vos,* are seldom expressed, the termination of the verb sufficiently marking the person ; as,

Cŭpio, I desire; *vīvis,* thou livest; *hăbēmus,* we have. See § 147, 3.

(*b.*) But when emphasis or opposition is intended, the nominatives of the first and second persons are expressed; as, Ego *rēges ējēci,* vos *tyrannos intrōdūcĭtis,* I banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Auct. ad Her. Nos, nos, *dīco ăperte, cōnsŭles dēsŭmus.* Cic. Tu *es pătrōnus,* tu *păter.* Ter. In indignant questions and addresses *tu* is expressed; as, Tu *in fŏrum prōdīre,* tu *lūcem conspĭcĕre,* tu *in hōrum conspectum vĕnīre cōnāris?* Auct. ad Her.

REM. 2. The nominative of the third person is often omitted :—
(1.) When it has been expressed in a preceding proposition :—

(*a.*) As nominative; as, *Mŏsa prōfluit ex monte Vŏsĕgo, et in Ocĕānum influit.* Cæs.; or (*b*) in an oblique case; as, *Cursōrem mīsērunt, ut id nuntiāret,* scil. *cursor.* Nep.: or (*c*) in a possessive adjective; as, *Et vĕreor quo se Jūnōnia vertant Hospĭtia;* haud tanto cessābit *cardĭne rērum,* scil. *illa,* i. e. *Jūnō.* Virg Æn. I. 672.

(2.) When it is a general word for *person* or *thing* :—

Thus *hŏmĭnes* is often omitted before *aiunt, dīcunt,* etc.; as, *Ut aiunt,* As they say. Cic. *Maxĭme* admīrantur *eum, qui pĕcūniā non mŏvētur.* Id.— So *bĕne* est, *bĕne* hăbet or *bĕne* ăgĭtur, It is well; as, *Si vales, bĕne* est, *ego valeo.* Cic. *Quum* mēlius est, *grātŭlor* dīs. Afran. Optŭme hăbet, Nothing can be better. Plaut. *Bĕne* hăbet: *jacta sunt fundāmenta dēfensiōnis.* Cic. *Bĕne* ăgĭtur *pro noxia.* Plaut.

NOTE 3. This omission of the nominative is common in the clause preceding a relative; as, *Qui Bāvium non ōdit, ămet tua carmĭna, Mævi,* scil. *hŏmo,* Let him who hates not Bavius, love your verses, Mævius. Virg. *Vastātur agri quod inter urbem ac Fĭdēnas est,* scil. *id spătium.* Liv. *Sunt quos jŭvat...*scil. *hŏmĭnes,* There are (those) whom it delights. Hor. *Est qui nec vĕtĕris pōcŭla Massĭci spernit,* scil. *hŏmo.* Hor. Here *sunt quos* and *est qui* are equivalent to *quīdam, ălĭquis,* or *ălĭqui.* So, *Est quod gaudeas,* There is (reason) why you should rejoice. Cic. *Nĕque ĕrat cur fallĕre vellent.* Ovid. *Est ubi id văleat.* Cic. *Est, quum non est sătius,* etc. Auct. ad Her. In the latter cases, the adverbs are equivalent to *in quo,* scil. *lŏco, tempŏre.*

REM. 3. (1.) The nominative is *wanting* before verbs denoting the state of the weather, or the operations of nature ; as,

Fulgŭrat, It lightens. Plin. *Ningit*, It snows. Virg. *Lŭcescēbat*, It was growing light. Liv. *Jam advesperascit.* Cic.

(2.) The nominative is also wanting before the third person singular of the passive of neuter verbs, and of active verbs used impersonally ; as,

Făvētur tibi a me, Thou art favored by me. *Ejus ōrātiōni vĕhĕmenter ab omnĭbus* reclāmātum est. Cic. Proinde ut bĕne *vivĭtur*, diu *vīvĭtur.* Plaut. *Ad exĭtum* ventum est. Sen. *Actum est de impĕrio.* See § 184, 2: and cf. § 229, R. 5, (*b.*)

NOTE 4. A nominative, however, is expressed before the passive of some neuter verbs, which, in the active voice, are followed by an accusative ; as, *Pugna pugnāta est.* Cic. See § 232, (1.)

(3.) It is wanting also before the neuter of the future passive participle with *est ;* as,

Si vis me flēre dōlendum est *prīmum ipsi tibi*, If you wish me to weep, you yourself must first grieve. Hor. Orandum est, *ut sit mens sāna in corpŏre sāno.* Juv. *Ad villam* revertendum est. Cic.

(4.) The nominative is also wanting before the impersonal verbs *mĭsĕret, pœnĭtet, pŭdet, tœdet*, and *pĭget ;* as,

Eos ineptiārum pœnĭtet, They repent of their follies. Cic. *Mĭsĕret te ăliōrum, tui te nec mĭsĕret nec pŭdet.* Plaut. *Me civĭtātis mōrum pĭget tœdetque.* Sall.— In such examples, the sense will sometimes permit us to supply *fortūna, condĭtio, mĕmŏria*, etc. So in the expression, *Vēnit in mentem*, It came into mind; as, *In mentem vēnit de spĕcŭlo*, scil. *cōgĭtātio*, etc. Plaut.—An infinitive or a subjunctive clause sometimes forms the subject of these verbs ; as, *Te id nullo mŏdo pŭduit* făcĕre, To do that by no means shamed you. Ter. *Non pœnĭtet me*, quantum prōfēcĕrim. Cic.

(5.) The subject of the verb is sometimes an infinitive or a neuter participle (either alone or with other words), one or more propositions, or an adverb. (Cf. § 202, R. 2 and 3: and § 274, R. 5, (*b.*) The verb is then in the third person singular ; as,

Văcāre culpā magnum est sōlātium, To be free from fault is a great consolation. *Nĕque est* te fallĕre *quidquam*, To deceive you in any thing is not (possible.) Virg. *Mentīri non est meum.* Plaut. Te non istud audīvisse *mīrum est*, That you have not heard that is wonderful. Cic. 'Summum jus, summa injūria,' *factum est jam trītum sermōne prōverbium.* Id. *Ni* dēgĕnĕrātum in ăliis *huic quŏque dĕcŏri* offēcisset. Liv. (Cf. § 274, R. 5, (*b.*) *Sin est* ut vĕlis mănēre illam apud te. Ter. *Nec prōfuit Hȳdrœ* crescĕre per damnum, gĕmīnasque rĕsūmĕre vīres. Hor. *Dic mihi*, cras *istud*, Postŭme, *quando vēnit?* Tell me, Postumus, when does that to-morrow come? Mart. *Pārumne campis atque Neptūno sŭper fūsum est Lătīni sanguĭnis ?* Hor.

(*a.*) This construction is especially common with impersonal verbs ; as, Orā-tōrem īrasci *non decet*, That an orator should be angry, is not becoming. Cic. Hoc fiĕri *et ŏportet et ŏpus est.* Id. *Me* pĕdibus *delectat* claudĕre verba, Hor. *Intĕrest omnium* recte făcĕre. Cic. *Cāsu accĭdit*, ut, id quod Rōmœ audiĕrat, prīmus nuntiāret. Id. Sometimes a neuter pronoun is interposed between a proposition and its verb ; as, *Impūne făcĕre quœ libet*, id *est rēgem esse.* Sall. Cf. § 206, (13,) (*a.*)

(6.) The nominative is also wanting before *pŏtest, cœpit* or *cœptum est, incĭpit, dēsĭnit, dēbet, sŏlet*, and *vĭdētur*, when followed by the infinitive of an impersonal verb ; as,

Pĭgēre eum facti cœpit, It began to repent him (i. e. he began to repent) of his conduct. Just. *Săpientia est ūna, quā prœceptrīce, in tranquillitāte vivi pŏtest.* Cic. *Tædēre sŏlet ăvāros impendii.* Quint.

REM. 4. The *verb* is sometimes omitted; as,

Di mĕliōra piis, scil. *dent* or *vĕlint,* May the gods grant better things to the pious. Virg. *Vērum hœc hactĕnus,* scil. *dicĭmus.* Cic. *Pertineo* is understood in such expressions as *nĭhil ad me, nĭhil ad rem; Quid hoc ad Epĭcūrum?* What does this concern Epicurus? *Quorsus hœc?* i. e. *quorsus hœc pertĭnent?* What is that for?—*Părăbo* is to be supplied, in *Quo mĭhi hanc rem?* Of what use is this to me? and, *Unde mĭhi ălĭquam rem?* Whence am I to get any thing? as, *Quo mĭhi bĭblĭŏthēcas?* Sen. *Unde mĭhi lăpĭdem?* Hor. A tense of *făcio* is often to be supplied, as in *Recte ille, mĕlius hi; Bĕne Chrŷsippus, qui dŏcet.* Cic. *Nĭhil per vim umquam Clōdius, omnia per vim Milo.* Id. *Quœ quum dixisset, Cotta fīnem.* Id. So, also in the phrases *nĭhil ălĭud quam; quid ălĭud quam; nĭhil prœterquam,* which signify ‘merely’; as, *Tisaphernes nĭhil ălĭud quam bellum compărāvit.* Nep. This verb is in like manner omitted with *nĭhil amplius quam; nĭhil mĭnus quam,* and in the phrase *si nĭhil ălĭud.—Ait* or *inquit* is sometimes omitted in introducing the direct words of another, and more frequently in relating a connected conversation; as, *Tum ille; hic ĕgo; huic ĕgo.* *Dīcit* is sometimes omitted in quoting a person's words; as, *Scīte Chrŷsippus: ut glădii causā văgīnam, sic prœter nundum cētĕra omnia ălĭōrum causā esse gĕnĕrāta.* Cic. —After *per* in adjurations *ōro, rŏgo* or *prĕcor* is often omitted; as, *Per ĕgo vos deos patrios, vindĭcāte ab ultĭmo dedĕcōre nōmen gentemque Persārum;* i. e. *per deos patrios vos* ōro, *vindĭcāte.* Curt. This omission is most common with the copula *sum;* as, *Nam Pŏlўdŏrus ĕgo,* scil. *sum,* For I am Polydorus. Virg. And so *est* and *sunt* are often omitted with predicate adjectives, and especially in proverbial phrases; as, *Quot hŏmĭnes tot sententĭœ.* Ter. *Omnia prœclāra rāra,* scil. *sunt.* Cic. So also *est* and *sunt* are often omitted in the compound tenses of the passive voice; as, *Agro mulctāti,* scil. *sunt.* Liv. Cf. § 270, R. 3.

NOTE 5. In Latin, as in English, a verb is often joined to one of two connected nominatives and understood with the other, and that even when the persons are different; as, *măgis ĕgo te ămo, quam tu me,* scil. *ămas.* After a negative verb a corresponding positive verb is sometimes to be supplied; as, after *nĕgo, dīco,* after *vēto, jŭbeo,* and in this case *et* takes the signification of *sed.* Cf. § 323, 1, (2.), (b.)

NOTE 6. Sometimes, when the verb of an appended proposition is omitted, its subject is attracted to the case of a noun in the leading proposition with which is joined a participle of the omitted verb; as, *Hannĭbal Mĭnŭcium, măgistrum ĕquitum, pări ac* dictātōrem *dŏlo* prōductum *in prœlium, făgăvit,* i. e. *pări ac* dictātor *dŏlo* prōductus fuĕrat. Nep. Hann. 5. So Liv. 34, 32.

REM. 5. In the historic style the nominative is sometimes found with the present infinitive; as,

Intĕrim quŏtĭdie Cæsar Æduos frūmentum flāgĭtāre, Meanwhile Cæsar was daily demanding corn of the Ædui. Cæs. *Nos păvĭdi* trĕpĭdāre mĕtu. Virg. *Id horrendum* ferri. Id.

NOTE 7. The infinitive in this construction is called the *historical infinitive,* and is used instead of the imperfect indicative to express in a lively manner a continued or repeated action or condition.

REM. 6. The relative *qui* may refer to an antecedent either of the first, second, or third person; and its verb takes the person of the antecedent; as,

Ego qui lĕgo, I who *read.* *Tu qui* scrībis, Thou who *writest.* *Equus qui* currit, The horse which *runs.* *Vos qui* quærĭtis, You who *ask.*

REM. 7. (a.). Verbs in the first person plural, and the second person singular, are sometimes used to express general truths; as,

Quam multa făcĭmus causā ămīcōrum ! How many things we do (i. e. men do) for the sake of friends ! Cic. *Si vis me flēre, dŏlendum est prīmum ipsi tĭbi,* Whoever wishes me, etc. Hor.

(*b.*) *Nos* is often used for *ĕgo*, and *noster* for *meus ;* and even when the pronoun is not expressed, the verb is frequently put in the first person plural instead of the first person singular. The genitive *nostri* is used for *mei*, but *nostrûm* always expresses a real plurality.

REM. 8. The accusative is sometimes used for the nominative by attraction. See § 206, (6.) (*b.*)

REM. 9. The verb sometimes agrees with the *predicate-nominative*, especially if it precedes the verb ; as, *Amantium īræ ămōris* integrātio est, The quarrels of lovers are a renewal of love. Ter. *Lŏca, quæ proxĭma Carthāgĭnem,* Nūmĭdia appellātur. Sall. And sometimes it agrees with the nearest subject of a subordinate sentence ; as, *Sed ei cārĭōra semper omnĭa, quam dĕcus atque pŭdĭcĭtĭa fuit.* Sall. Cat. 25.

REM. 10. In cases of apposition, the verb commonly agrees with the noun which is to be explained ; as, *Tulliŏla*, dēlĭcĭæ nostræ, *flăgĭtat.* Cic. But sometimes the verb agrees, not with the principal nominative, but with a nearer noun in apposition to it ; as, *Tungri,* cīvĭtas *Gallĭæ, fontem* hăbet *insĭgnem,* The Tungri, a state of Gaul, has a remarkable fountain. Plin. *Cŏriŏli* oppĭdum captum (est). Liv.

REM. 11. A collective noun has sometimes, especially in poetry, a plural verb ; as,

Pars ĕpŭlis ŏnĕrant mensas, Part load the tables with food. Virg.   *Turba* ruunt. Ovid. *Atrĭa turba* tēnent ; *vĕnĭunt lēve vulgus* euntque. Id.

(1.) (*a.*) A plural verb, joined to a collective noun, usually expresses the action, etc., of the *indĭvĭdŭals* which that noun denotes. In Cicero, Sallust, and Cæsar, this construction scarcely occurs in simple sentences ; but it is often used, when the subject of the verb is expressed not in its own, but in a preceding clause ; as, *Hoc idem gĕnĕri hūmāno ēvĕnit, quŏd in terrā* collŏcāti sint, because they (scil. *hŏmĭnes*) live on earth. Cic. In Livy it occurs more frequently ; as, *Locros omnis multĭtūdo* ābeunt.

(*b.*) Abstract nouns are sometimes used collectively, instead of their concretes ; as, *nōbĭlĭtas* for *nōbĭles, jŭventus* for *jŭvĕnes, vīcīnĭa* for *vīcīni, servĭtĭum* for *servi, lĕvis armātūra* for *lĕvĭter armāti,* etc. (*c.*) *Mīles, ĕques, pĕdes,* and similar words are sometimes used collectively for the soldiery, the cavalry, etc.

(2.) When two or more clauses have the same collective noun as their subject, the verb is frequently singular in the former, and plural in the latter ; as, *Jam ne nocte quĭdem turba ex eo lŏco* dīlābēbātur, refractūrosque carcĕrem mĭnābantur. Liv. *Gens eădem, quæ te crūdēli Daunĭa bello* insĕquĭtur, nos *si pellant, nĭhĭl abfŏre* crēdunt. Virg.

(3.) *Tantum,* followed by a genitive plural, has sometimes a plural verb, like a collective noun ; as, *Quĭd huc* tantum *hŏmĭnum incēdunt ?* Why are so many men coming hither? Plaut.

(4.) A plural verb is sometimes used, though not by Cicero, after *ŭterque* and *quisque, pars...pars, ălĭus...ălĭum,* and *alter...altĕrum,* on account of the idea of plurality which they involve ; as, *Uterque eōrum ex castris exercĭtum ēdūcunt,* Each of them leads his army from the camp. Cæs. *Intĭmus quisque lĭbertōrum* vincti abreptīque (sunt). Tac. *Alĭus ălĭum, ut prœlĭum* incĭpĭant, circumspectant. Liv. Cf. § 207, R. 32, (4.)

NOTE 8. This construction may be explained by passages like the following, in which the plural is placed first, and then the singular, denoting its parts ; *Cētĕri, suo quisque tempŏre,* ădĕrunt. Liv. *Dĕcemvĭri perturbāti ălĭus in ălĭam partem castrōrum* discurrunt. Id. See § 204, R. 10.

REM. 12. Two or more nominatives singular, not in apposition, generally have a plural verb; as,

Fŭror īrăque mentem præcĭpĭtant, Fury and rage hurry on (my) mind. Virg. *Dum ætas, mĕtus, măgister,* prohĭbēbant. Ter.

(1.) If the predicate belongs to the several nominatives jointly, the verb is always plural; as, Grammătĭce *quondam ac* mūsĭce junctæ fŭērunt. Quint.

(2.) A verb in the singular is often used after several nominatives singular, especially if they denote things without life; as,

Mens ĕnim, et rătio et consĭlium in sĕnĭbus est. Cic. *Bĕnĕfĭcentia, lībĕrālĭtas, bŏnĭtas, justĭtia fundĭtus* tollĭtur. Id.

NOTE 9. This construction is most common when the several nominatives, as in the preceding examples, constitute, as it were, but one idea. So also the compound subject *Sĕnātus pŏpŭlusque Rŏmānus* has always a predicate in the singular. The same construction sometimes, especially in the poets, occurs with names of persons; as, *Gorgias, Thrăsўmăchus, Prōlăgŏras, Prŏdĭcus, Hippias in hŏnōre* fuit. Cic. *Quin et Prŏmētheus et Pēlŏpis părens dulci lăbōrum* dēcĭpĭtur *sŏno.* Hor. When the nominatives denote both persons and things, the verb is commonly plural; as, *Cŏitio consŭlum et Pompeius* obsunt. Liv.

(3.) When one of the nouns is plural, the verb is generally so; but sometimes it is singular, when the plural noun does not immediately precede it; as, Dii *te pĕnātes patrĭĭque, et patris* īmāgo, *et dŏmus rēgia, et in dŏmo rēgāle* sŏlium, *et* nōmen *Tarquĭnium* creat vŏcatque *rēgem.* Liv.

(4.) When each of the nominatives is preceded by *et* or *tum,* the verb agrees with the last; as, *Hoc et* rătio *doctis, et* nĕcessĭtas *barbăris,* et mos *gentĭbus, et fĕris* nātūra *ipsa* præscripsit, This, reason has dictated to the learned, and necessity to barbarians, and custom to nations, and nature itself to wild beasts. Cic. *Et* ĕgo, *et* Cĭcĕro *meus* flăgĭtābit. Id. *Tum* ætas vīresque, *tum* ăvīta glōria *ănimum* stĭmŭlābat. Liv. So when the subject consists of two infinitives; as, *Et* făcĕre, *et* păti *fortia,* Rŏmānum est. Cic. *Unus et alter* always takes a singular verb; as, Dīcit ūnus et alter brĕvĭter. Cic. *Unus et alter* assuĭtur *pannus.* Hor.

(5.) When the nominatives are connected by *aut,* sometimes the plural, but commonly the singular, is used; as,

Si Sŏcrătes *aut* Antisthĕnes dīcĕret, If Socrates or Antisthenes should say. Cic. *Ut quosque stŭdium prīvātim aut grātia* occŭpāvērunt. Liv.

(a.) The plural is *necessary* with disjunctives, if the subject includes the first or second person; as, *Quod in Dĕcemvīris nĕque ĕgo nĕque Cæsar* hăbĭti essēmus. Cic.—(b.) With *aut...aut* and *nec...nec* the singular is preferred, but with *seu...seu* and *tam...quam* the verb is in the plural.

(6.) A nominative singular, joined to an ablative by the preposition *cum,* sometimes has a singular but more frequently a plural verb; as, Dŏmĭtius *cum* Messālā *certus esse* vĭdēbātur. Cic. Bocchus, *cum* pĕdĭtĭbus, *postrēmam* Rŏmānōrum ăciem invādunt, Bocchus, with his foot-soldiers, attacks the rear of the Roman army. Sall. *Ipse* dux, *cum ălĭquot* princĭpĭbus, căpiuntur. Liv.

(7.) If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb is of the first person rather than the second or third, and of the second rather than the third; as,

Si tu et Tullia vălētis, *ĕgo et* Cĭcĕro vălēmus, If you and Tullia *are well,* Cicero and I *are well.* Cic. *Hæc nĕque ĕgo nĕque tu* fēcĭmus. Ter. *Ego* pŏpŭlusque Rŏmānus *bellum* jūdĭco făcioque. Liv.

(a.) Yet sometimes the verb agrees in number and person with the nearest nominative, and is understood with the other; as, *Vos ipsi et* sĕnātus *frĕquens* restĭtit. This is always the case when the action of the verb is qualified with reference to each nominative separately; as, Ego *misĕre* tu *fēlĭcĭter vīvis.*

REM. 13. The interjections *en, ecce,* and *O,* are sometimes followed by the nominative; as,

En Priămus! Lo Priam! Virg.   *En ĕgo, vester Ascănius.* Id.   *Ecce hŏmo Catiēnus!* Cic.   *Ecce tuæ litĕræ.* Id.   *O vir fortis atque ămīcus!* Ter.

PREDICATE-NOMINATIVE.

§ **210.**   A noun in the predicate, after a verb neuter or passive, is put in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; as,

(*a.*) When the subject is in the nominative; *Ira f ŭror brĕvis est,* Anger is a short madness. Hor.   *Ego vŏcor* Lyconīdes, I am called Lyconides. Plaut.   *Ego incēdo* regīna, I walk a queen. Virg.   *Caius et Lūcius* frātres *fuērunt.* Cic.— So (*b.*) when the subject is in the accusative with the infinitive; *Jūdĭcem me esse vŏlo.* Cic.

(*c.*) Sometimes also a *dative,* denoting the same object, both precedes and follows a verb neuter or passive.   See § 227, N.—And (*d.*) a predicate ablative sometimes follows passive participles of *choosing, naming,* etc.; as, *Consŭlĭbus* certiōrĭbus *factis.* Liv. See § 257, R. 11.

(*e.*) If the predicate noun has a form of the same gender as the subject, it takes that form; as, *Licentia* corruptrix *est mōrum.* Cf. § 204, R. 2.—(*f.*) But if the subject is neuter, the noun of the predicate, if it has both a masculine and a feminine form, takes the former; as, *Tempus vitæ* măgister *est.*

(*g.*) An infinitive may supply the place of a predicate nominative. See § 269, R. 4.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, standing in the predicate, after verbs neuter or passive, and relating to the subject, agree with it in gender, number, and case.

(*b.*) When the subject consists of two or more nouns, the gender and number of such predicate adjectives are determined by § 205, R. 2.

REM. 2. (*a.*) The noun in the predicate sometimes differs in gender and number from the subject; as, Sanguis *ĕrant lăcrĭmæ,* Her tears were blood. Ovid.   *Captīvi mīlĭtum* præda *fuērunt.* Liv.

(*b.*) So when a subject in the singular is followed by an ablative with *cum,* the predicate is plural; as, Exsŭles *esse jŭbet* L. *Tarquĭnium cum conjŭge et lībĕris.* Liv.

REM. 3. The verbs which most frequently have a noun, etc., in the predicate agreeing in case, etc., with their subject, are :—

(1.) The *copula sum;* as, *Ego Jŏvis sum* filius. Plaut.   *Disce esse* păter. Ter.   The predicate with *sum* may be an adverb of place, manner, etc.; as, *Quod est* longe ălĭter. Cic.   Rectissĭme *sunt ăpud te omnia,* Every thing with you is in a very good condition. Id.; or a noun in an oblique case; as, *Nūmen* sine tūre *est.* Ovid.   *Sunt* nōbis *mītia pōma.* Virg.

(2.) Certain neuter verbs denoting *existence, position, motion,* etc.; as, *vīvo, exsisto, appāreo, cădo, eo, evādo, fŭgio, incēdo, jăceo, măneo, sĕdeo, sto, vēnio,* etc.   Thus, *Rex circŭibat* pĕdes, The king went round on foot. Plin.   *Quos jūdĭcābat non posse* ōrātōres *evādĕre.* Cic.   *Ego huic causæ* patrōnus *exstĭti.* Cic.   *Qui fit, ut nēmo* contentus *vīvat?*

(3.) The passive of verbs denoting,

(*a.*) To *name* or *call;* as, *appellor, dīcor, nōmĭnor, nuncŭpor, perhĭbeor, sălūtor, scrībor, inscrībor, vŏcor.*   Thus, *Cognōmĭne* Justus *est appellātus,* He was called by the surname Just. Nep.   *Aristæus ŏlīvæ dīcĭtur* inventor. Cic.

(b.) To *choose, render, appoint,* or *constitute;* as, *constituor, creor, dēclāror, dēsignor, ēlĭgor, fīo, reddor, rĕnuncior.* Thus, Dux *a Rōmānis ēlectus est* Q. *Fābius. Postquam* ĕphēbus *factus est.* Nep. *Certior factus sum.*

(c.) To *esteem* or *reckon;* as, *censeor, cognoscor, crēdor, dēprĕhendor, existĭmor, dūcor, f ĕror, hăbeor, jūdĭcor, mĕmŏror, nŭmĕror, pŭtor, rĕpĕrior, vĭdeor.* Thus, *Crēdēbar sanguĭnis* auctor *ĕgo.* Ovid. *Mālim vĭdēri* tĭmĭdus *quam părum* prūdens. Cic.

Note 1. With several passives of the last class, when followed by a predicate-nominative, etc., an infinitive of *sum* is expressed or understood; as, *Amens mĭhi* fuisse *vĭdeor,* I think I was beside myself. Cic. But the dative of the first person is sometimes omitted after *vĭdeor ;* as, *Sătis dŏcuisse vĭdeor.* Id.—*Atīlius* prūdens esse *pŭtābātur.* Id. So with *dīcor* (to be said), and *perhĭbeor ;* as, *Vērus patrĭæ dīcĕris* esse *păter.* Mart. *Hoc ne* lŏcūtus *sĭne mercēde existĭmer.* Phæd.

Note 2. *Audio* is sometimes used by the poets like *appellor ;* as, *Tu* rexque păterque audisti cōram. Hor.

Rem. 4. A predicate-nominative is used after many other verbs to denote a *purpose, time,* or *circumstance* of the action; as, Cōmes *addĭtus Æŏlĭdes,* Æolides was added as a companion. Virg. *Lŭpus ŏbambŭlat* nocturnus. Id. *Appāret liquĭdo* sublīmis *in æthĕre Nīsus.* Id. So with an active verb; *Audīvi hoc* puer. Cic. *Săpiens nil f ăcit* invītus. Id. *Rempūblĭcam dēfendi* ădŏlescens. Id. Cf. § 204, R. 1.

Note 3. Instead of the predicate-nominative, a dative of the end or purpose sometimes occurs (see § 227); sometimes an ablative with *pro;* as, *audācĭa* pro mūro *est ;* and sometimes the ablatives *lŏco* or *in nŭmĕro* with a genitive; as, *ille est mĭhi* părentis lŏco; *in* hostium nŭmĕro *hăbētur.*

Rem. 5. The noun *ŏpus,* signifying 'need,' is often used as a predicate after *sum.* It is, in such cases, translated by the adjectives *needful, necessary,* etc.; as, *Dux nōbis et auctor* ŏpus *est.* Cic. *Multi* ŏpus *sunt bŏves.* Varr. *(Dixit) aurum et ancillas* ŏpus esse. Ter. *Ūsus* also is occasionally so construed.

Rem. 6. When the pronoun, which is the subject of an infinitive, is omitted, the case of the predicate is sometimes, in the poets, *attracted* into that of the subject of the verb on which the infinitive depends; as, Uxor *invicti Jŏvis esse* nescis, i. e. *te esse* uxōrem. Hor. *Rĕtŭlit Ajax* esse *Jŏvis* prōnĕpos. Ovid.

GENITIVE.

GENITIVE AFTER NOUNS.

§ **211.** A noun which limits the meaning of another noun, denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive; as,

Amor glŏrĭæ, Love of glory; *Arma Achillis,* The arms of Achilles; *Păter patrĭæ,* The father of the country; *Vĭtĭum īræ,* The vice of anger; *Nĕmŏrum custos,* The guardian of the groves; *Amor hăbendi,* Love of possessing.

Note 1. In the first example, *ămor* denotes love in general; *glŏrĭæ* limits the affection to the particular object, glory. Such universally is the effect of the genitive, depending upon a noun. Hence the limitation of a noun by a genitive resembles that which is effected by an adjective. In each the noun limited constitutes with its limitation only a single idea.

Remark 1. The genitive denotes various relations, the most common of which are those of *Source;* as, *Rădĭi sōlis,* The rays of the sun;—*Cause;* as, *Dŏlor pŏdāgræ,* The pain of the gout;—*Effect;* as, *Artĭfex mundi,* The Creator of the world;—*Connection:* as, *Păter consŭlis,* The father of the consul;—*Possession;* as, *Dŏmus Cæsăris,* The house of Cæsar;—*Object;* as, *Cŏgĭtātĭo ălĭcūjus rei,* A thought of something;—*Purpose;* as, *Appărātus triumphi,* Preparation for a triumph;—A *whole;* as, *Pars hŏmĭnum,* A part

of men; this is called the *partitive* genitive;—*C h a r a c t e r* or *Q u a l i t y;* as, *Adŏlescens summæ audāciæ,* A youth of the greatest boldness;—*M a t e r i a l* or *C o m p o n e n t P a r t s;* as, *Montes auri,* Mountains of gold; *Acervus scūtōrum,* A heap of shields;—*T i m e;* as, *Frūmentum diērum dĕcem,* Corn for ten days. Sall.

REM. 2. The genitive is called *subjective* or *active,* when it denotes either that *to which a thing belongs,* or the *subject* of the action, feeling, etc., implied in the noun which it limits. It is called *objective* or *passive,* when it denotes the *object* affected by such action, or towards which such feeling is directed; as,

Subjective.	*Objective.*
Facta virōrum, Deeds of men.	*Odium vĭtii,* Hatred of vice.
Dŏlor ănĭmi, Grief of mind.	*Amor virtūtis,* Love of virtue.
Jūnōnis īra, The anger of Juno.	*Dēsĭdĕrium ōtii,* Desire of leisure.

(*a.*) Whether a genitive is subjective or objective, is to be determined by the meaning of the words, and by their connection. Thus, *prŏvĭdentia Dei* signifies God's providence, or that exercised by him; *tĭmor Dei,* the fear of God, or that exercised towards him. The same or similar words, in different connections, may express both significations. Thus, *mĕtus hostium,* fear of the enemy, may mean, either the fear felt by the enemy, or that felt by their opponents. So *vulnus Ulixis* (Virg. Æn. 2, 436.) denotes the wound which Ulysses had given; *vulnus Ænēæ,* (Id. Æn. 12, 323.) that which Æneas had received.

(*b.*) The relation expressed by the English *possessive case* is subjective, while that denoted by *of* with its case is either subjective or objective.

(*c.*) The objective genitive is of very extensive use in Latin in the limitation of verbal nouns and adjectives, whatever may be the construction of the verbs from which such nouns and adjectives are derived, whether they take an accusative or some other case or even a preposition.

(*d.*) When ambiguity would arise from the use of the objective genitive, a preposition with an accusative or ablative is commonly used; as, *Amor in rempūblĭcam,* for *reipūblĭcæ,* Love to the state. Cic. *Odium erga Rōmānos,* for *Rōmānōrum.* Nep. *Cūra de sălūte patriæ,* for *sălūtis.* Cic. *Prædātor ex sŏciis,* for *sŏciōrum.* Sall. Sometimes both constructions are combined; as, *Rĕvĕrentia adversus hŏmĭnes et optĭmi cūjusque et rĕlĭquōrum.* Cic. Off. 1, 28.

NOTE. A limiting genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition, especially with *vox, nōmen, verbum,* etc.; as, *vox vŏluptātis,* the word pleasure; *nōmen ămīcĭtiæ,* the word *ămīcĭtia;* dŏmĭni appellātio. This is usual when the genus is defined by the species; as, *arbor fīcī,* a fig-tree; *flos viŏlæ,* a violet; *virtus* contĭnentiæ, the virtue of abstinence: and in geographical names; as, *oppĭdum* Antiŏchīæ. Cf. § 204, R. 6.—Cicero frequently uses a genitive in this manner with *gĕnus* and *causa;* as, *Unum gĕnus est* eōrum, *qui,* etc. *Duæ sunt causæ, ūna* pŭdōris, *altĕra* scĕlĕris.—So, also, the genitive of gerunds; as, *Triste est nōmen ipsum* cărendi, The very word *to want* is sad. Cic.

REM. 3. (*a.*) A substantive pronoun in the genitive, limiting the meaning of a noun, is commonly objective; as,

Cūra mei, Care for me. Ovid. *Pars tui,* Part of thee. Id. Vestri *cūram ăgĭte.* Curt. This genitive is used especially with verbal substantives in *or, ix* and *io;* as, *Accūsātor mei.* Cic. *Nĭmia æstĭmātio sui.* Id. *Rătiōnem et sui et ăliōrum hăbēre.* Id.

(*b.*) Instead of the *subjective* or *possessive* genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding adjective pronoun is commonly used; as,

Lĭber meus, not *lĭber mei,* my book. *Cūra mea,* My care, *i. e.* the care exercised by me. Cic. *Tuas lĭtĕras exspecto.* Id. Yet the subjective genitive of a substantive pronoun sometimes occurs; as, *Tui ūnīus stŭdio,* By the zeal of yourself alone. Cic.

(c.) And not unfrequently, also, an adjective pronoun occurs instead of the *objective* genitive; as, *Mea injūria*, Injury to me. Sall. So, *Invĭdia tua*, Envy of thee. *Fīdūcia tua*, Confidence in thee. Plaut. *Spes mea*, The hope placed in me. With *causā* the adjective pronoun, and never the genitive, is used; as, *Meā causā*, For my sake. Plaut.

Rem. 4. (a.) Instead, also, of the subjective genitive of a *noun*, a possessive adjective is often used; as, *Causa* rēgia, for *causa rēgis*. Cic. Hĕrīlis *fīlius*, for *hĕri fīlius*. Id. Evandrius *ensis*, for *Evandri*. Virg. Hercŭleus *lăbor*, for *Hercŭlis*. Hor. Cīvīlis *fŭror*, for *cĭvium*. Hor. So, also, for the *objective* genitive, *Mĕtus* hostīlis, Fear of the enemy. Sall.

(b.) The genitive of the person implied in the adjective pronoun or possessive adjective, or an adjective agreeing with such genitive, is sometimes added as an apposition; as, *Vestrā* ipsōrum *causā hoc fēci*. In the poets and later prose writers a participle also is found agreeing with such implied genitive; as, *Mea scripta vulgo recĭtāre* tīmentis. Hor. Cf. § 204, R. 4, and § 205, R. 13.

Rem. 5. In the predicate after *sum*, and sometimes after other verbs, the dative is used like the objective genitive; as,

Idem ămor exĭtium pĕcŏri (est), *pĕcŏrisque* măgistro. Virg. *Vītis ut arbŏrĭbus dĕcŏri est, ut vītĭbus ūvæ—Tu dĕcus omne* tuis. Virg. In this passage the dative *dĕcŏri* and the nominative *dĕcus* are used with no difference of meaning. Cf. § 227, R. 4. *Auctor fŭi* sĕnātui. Cic. *Murǣna lēgātus* Lūcullo *fuit*. Id. *Erit ille* mĭhi semper deus. Virg. *Huic* causæ *patrŏnus exstĭti*. Cic. *Huic ĕgo me* bello *dŭcem prŏfĭteor*. Id. *Se tertium (esse) cui fātum fŏret urbis pŏtīri*. Id.—*Cum P. Africāno sĕnātus ĕgit, ut lēgātus* frātri prŏfĭcisc̆erētur. Id. *Cæsar tĕgĭmenta* găleis *mīlĭtes ex vīmĭnibus* făcĕre *jŭbet*. Cæs. *Trinŏbantĭbus Cæsar* impĕrat—*frūmentum* exercĭtui. Id. *Quod nĕque insĭdiæ* consŭli prŏcēdēbant. Sall. *Quem exĭtum* tantis mălis spērārent? Id. *Sanctus vir et ex sententiâ ambŏbus*, scil. *qui fuit*. Id. See § 227, R. 4.

Note. The dative in the preceding examples has been thought by some grammarians to depend on the nouns connected with it; as, *exĭtium, dĕcus, auctor, lēgātus, deus, patrōnus*, etc.; by others it has been held to depend on these nouns in connection with the verbs, and not upon either separately; but the better opinion seems to be that, which makes such datives grammatically dependent upon the verbs only, though logically connected also with the nouns.

(1.) Instead, also, of the *possessive* genitive, a dative of the person may follow a verb, when its act has relation to the body or possessions of such person; as,

Sēse omnes flentes Cæsări *ad pĕdes prōjēcērunt*, They all, weeping, cast themselves at the feet of Cæsar. Cæs. *Cui corpus porrĭgĭtur*, For whom the body, *i. e.* whose body, is extended. Virg. *Tum vēro exarsit* jŭvĕni *dŏlor ossĭbus ingens*. Id. *Transfīgĭtur scūtum* Pulfiōni. Cæs.

Rem. 6. When the limiting noun denotes a *property*, *character*, or *quality*, it has an adjective agreeing with it, and is put either in the genitive or the ablative; as,

Vir exempli recti, A man of correct example. Liv. *Adŏlescens summæ audāciæ*, A youth of the greatest boldness. Sall. *Fossa pĕdum vīgĭnti*, A ditch of twenty feet, (i. e. in width). Cæs. *Hamilcar sēcum duxit fīlium Hannĭbălem* annōrum nŏvem. Nep. *Athēnienses dīligunt Pĕrĭclem*, spectātæ virtūtis vĭrum. Just. *Quinquāginta annōrum impĕrium*. Id. *Iter unĭus dĭĕi*. Cic. Pulchritūdĭne exĭmiā *fēmĭna*, A woman of exquisite beauty. Cic. Maxĭmo nātu *fīlius*, The eldest son. Nep. *L. Cătilīna fŭit* magnā vi *et ănĭmi et corpŏris, sed* ingĕnio mălo prāvŏque. Sall. *Spēlunca* infīnītā altĭtūdĭne. Cic.—Sometimes both constructions occur in the same proposition; as, *Lentŭlum nostrum*, exĭmiā spe, summæ virtūtis *ădŏlescentem*. Cic.

(1.) A genitive sometimes supplies the place of the adjective; and the noun denoting the property, etc., is then always put in the ablative; as, *Est bos cervi figūrā,*...of the form of a stag. Cæs. *Uri speciē et cŏlōre tauri.* Id. *Frŭtex* palmi *altitŭdĭne.* Plin. *Clāvi* digĭti pollĭcis *crassitŭdĭne.* Cæs.

(2.) All the qualities and attributes of persons and things, whether inherent or accidental, may be thus expressed by the genitive and ablative of quality, provided the substantives are *immediately* connected; as, *fossa quindĕcim pĕdum; hŏmo antīquā virtūte.* It hence follows that such genitives and ablatives, when used to express duration of time or extent of space, are distinguished from the cases in which the accusative is required, since the latter case always follows adjectives or verbs; as, *fossa quindĕcim pĕdes* lāta: *puer dĕcem annos* nātus. Cf. § 236.

(3.) Whether the genitive or the ablative of quality is preferable in particular cases, can frequently be determined only by reference to classical authority; but, in general, the genitive is used more frequently to express inherent qualities than such as are merely accidental, while the ablative is used indifferently for either purpose. In speaking of transitory qualities or conditions the ablative is always used; as, *Magno timōre sum,* I am in great fear. Cic. *Bŏno ănĭmo sum.* Id. *Quanto fuĕrim dŏlōre mĕmĭnisti.* Id. *Maxĭmo hŏnōre Servius Tullius ĕrat.* Liv. With plural substantives the genitive is rare; while in expressions of measure it is used rather than the ablative.

(4.) An accusative instead of a genitive of quality is used with *sĕcus* (sex), *gĕnus* and *pondo*; as, *Lībĕrōrum căpĭtum* vīrĭle sĕcus *ad dĕcem millia capta,* i. e. of the male sex, instead of *sexūs virīlis.* Liv. So *gĕnus,* when joined with a pronoun, as *hoc, id, illud, quod,* or with *omne,* is used for *hūjus, ējus, omnis,* etc., *gĕnĕris; as, Orātiōnes aut ălĭquid* id *gĕnus scrĭbĕre,*—of that kind. Cic. *Concrēdĕre nūgas* hoc *gĕnus.* Hor. So *pondo* is joined as an indeclinable word to the accusatives *libram* and *libras; as, Dictātor cŏrōnam auream* libram pondo *in Căpĭtŏlĭo Jŏvi dōnum pŏsuit,*...a pound in weight. Liv. Cf. § 236, R. 7.

(5.) The genitive *mŏdi* with an adjective pronoun supplies the place of a pronoun of quality; as, *cūjusmŏdi libri,* the same as *quāles libri,* what kind of books; *hūjusmŏdi libri,* i. e. *tāles libri,* such books. So, also, *gĕnĕris* is used, but less frequently.

(6.) With the genitive of measure are often connected such ablatives as *longitŭdĭne, lātitŭdĭne,* etc., or *in longitŭdĭnem,* etc.; as, *fossa dĕcem pĕdum lātitŭdĭne;* but the genitive does not depend on these words.

(7.) *Sum* may be followed by either the genitive or the ablative of quality with an ellipsis of the word limited, which, with the genitive, is *hŏmo, res, nĕgŏtium, prŏprium* or *prŏprius,* etc., and with the ablative, *prædĭtus, instructus, ornātus,* etc. Cf. Rem. 8, and §§ 244, and 249, I..

REM. 7. (1.) The limited noun is sometimes omitted; as, *O mĭsĕræ sortis!* scil. *hŏmĭnes;* O (men) of wretched fortune! Lucan. *Ad Diānæ,* scil. *ædem.* Ter. *Hectōris Andrŏmăche,* scil. *uxor.* Virg. *Suspĭciōnis vītandæ,* scil. *causā.* Tac. So *fīlius* or *fīlia; as, Hannĭbal Gisgōnis.*

(2.) The omitted noun may sometimes be supplied from the preceding words; as, *Cūjum pĕcus? an Mĕlĭbœi? Non; vērum Ægōnis,* scil. *pĕcus.* Virg. An adjective is often expressed referring to the noun omitted; as, *Nullam virtus ălĭam mercēdem dēsīdĕrat, præter* hanc (scil. *mercēdem*) *laudis.* Cic.

REM. 8. The limited noun is often wanting in the predicate of a sentence after *sum.* This usually happens,

(1.) When it has been previously expressed; as,

Hæc dŏmus est Cæsăris, This house is Cæsar's. *Nōmen auræ tam sæpe vŏcātum esse pŭtans Nymphæ.* Ovid. *Nāves ŏnĕrārias, quārum mĭnor nulla ĕrat duum millium amphŏrum,* i. e. *quārum mĭnor nulla ĕrat quam* nāvis *duum,* etc. Cic.

(2.) When it is a general word denoting a person, an animal, etc.; as,

Thūcўdĭdes, qui ejusdem ætātis fŭit, scil. *hŏmo*, Thucydides, who was of the same age. Nep. *Multum ei dētraxit, quod ălĭēnæ ĕrat cĭvĭtātis*, scil. *hŏmo* or *cīvis*. Id. *Prīmum stĭpendium mĕruit annōrum dĕcem septemque*, scil. *ădŏlescens*. Id. *Summi ut sint lăbōris effĭcĭunt*, scil. *ănĭmālĭa*. Cæs. *(Claudĭus) somnī brĕvissĭmi ĕrat*. Suet. *Mīrā sum ălăcrĭtāte*. Cic. *Vulgus ingĕnĭo mōbĭli ĕrat*. Sall. *Non est jūris sui*, He is not his own master. Lucan. *Pŏtestātis suæ esse*. Liv. *Suārumque rērum ĕrant*. Id. Cf. Rem. 6, (7.)

(3.) When it is a general word denoting *thing*, for which, in English, the words *part*, *property*, *duty*, *office*, *business*, *characteristic*, etc., are commonly supplied; as,

Tĕmĕrĭtas est flōrentis ætātis, prūdentĭa sĕnectūtis, Rashness is (the characteristic) of youth, prudence of old age. Cic. *Est hoc Gallĭcæ consuĕtūdĭnis*. Cæs. So, *stultĭtĭæ est ; est lēvĭtātis*, etc., which are equivalent to *stultĭtĭa est, lĕvĭtas est*. *Omnia hostium ĕrant*. *A paucis ĕmi, quod multōrum esset*. Sall.

(*a.*) This happens especially when the subject of the verb is an infinitive, or an entire clause, in which case, instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, *mei, tui*, etc., the neuters of the possessives, *meum, tuum*, etc., are used; as, *Ădŏlescentis est mājōres nātu rĕvĕrēri*, It is (the duty) of a youth to reverence the aged. Ovid. *Cūjusvis hŏmĭnis est errāre, nullĭus nĭsi insĭpientis in errōre persĕvĕrāre*. Cic. *Paupĕris est nŭmĕrāre pĕcus*. Ovid. So especially *mŏris est ;* as, *Nĕgāvit mōris esse Græcōrum, ut in convivĭo vĭrōrum accumbĕrent mŭlĭĕres*, the same as *mōrem esse Græcōrum*. Cic. *Nĭhil tam æquandæ lĭbertātis esse*. Liv. So when the verb is omitted; *Tămen offĭcĭi duxit, exōrāre patrem*, scil. *esse*. Suet. *Non est mentīri* meum. Ter. *Tuum est, M. Căto, vĭdēre quĭd ăgātur.*

(*b.*) Instead of the genitive of a substantive, also, the neuter of a possessive adjective derived from it is sometimes used; as, *Hūmānum est errāre*, To err is human. Ter. *Et făcĕre et păti fortia* Rōmānum *est*. Liv.

(4.) The same construction sometimes occurs after *făcĭo*, and some other verbs mentioned in § 230, *esse* being understood; as, *Asĭa Rōmānōrum facta est*, Asia became (a possession) of the Romans. Just. *Agrum suæ dĭtĭōnis fēcisse.* Liv.

(5.) The limited noun is sometimes wanting, when it is a general word, though not in the predicate after *sum ;* as, *Magni formīca lăbōris*, scil. *ănĭmal*, The ant (an animal) of great labor. Hor. So *Ei vēnit in mentem pŏtestātis tuæ*, scil. *mĕmŏrĭa*, or the like. Cic.

Note. When the noun which is wanting denotes a *thing*, grammarians sometimes supply *nĕgŏtium, offĭcĭum, mūnus, ŏpus, res, causa*, etc. It is an instance of a construction common in Latin, to omit a noun when a general idea is intended. See § 205, Rem. 7, (2.)

REM. 9. The *limiting* noun also is sometimes omitted; as,

Tria millĭa, scil. *passuum*. In most cases of this kind, an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, is expressed in the genitive.

REM. 10. Two genitives sometimes limit the same noun, one of which is commonly subjective, and the other objective; as,

Agămemnŏnis belli glōrĭa, Agamemnon's glory in war. Nep. *Illius admĭnistrātĭo prŏvincĭæ*. Cic. *Eōrum dĭērum consuĕtūdĭne ĭtĭnĕris nostri exercĭtās perspectā*. Cæs. *Orbĭtas* reīpūblĭcæ *tālĭum vĭrōrum*. Cic. *Pro vĕtĕrĭbus* Helvĕtĭōrum *injŭrĭis* pŏpŭli Rōmāni. Cæs.

REM. 11. *Opus* and *ūsus* are rarely limited by a genitive or accusative, but generally by an ablative, of the thing needed; as,

Argenti ŏpus fŭit, There was need of money. Liv. *Ad consĭlium pensandum* tempŏris *ŏpus esse*. Id. *Prŏœmii non semper ūsus est*. Quint. *Si quo ŏpĕræ eōrum ūsus est*. Liv. *Puĕro ŏpus est cĭbum*. Plaut. *Usus est hŏmĭnem astūtum.* Id. See § 243.

REM. 12. The relation denoted by the genitive in Latin, is generally expressed, in English, by *of*, or by the possessive case. Cf. R. 2, (*b*.) The objective genitive may often be rendered by some other preposition ; as,

Rĕmĕdium dŏlōris, A remedy for pain. *Injūria patris,* Injury to a father. *Descensus Averni,* The descent to Avernus. *Ira belli,* Anger on account of the war. *Pŏtestas rei,* Power in or over a thing.

NOTE. Certain limitations of nouns are made by the accusative with a preposition, and by the ablative, either with or without a preposition. Cf. § 202, 6, I. and II.

GENITIVE AFTER PARTITIVES.

§ **212.** Nouns, adjectives, adjective pronouns, and adverbs, denoting a part, are followed by a genitive denoting the whole ; as,

Pars cīvĭtātis, A part of the state. *Nulla sŏrōrum,* No one of the sisters. *Alĭquis phĭlŏsŏphōrum,* Some one of the philosophers. *Quis mortālium ?* Who of mortals ? *Mājor jŭvĕnum,* The elder of the youths. *Doctissĭmus Rōmānōrum,* The most learned of the Romans. *Multum pĕcūnĭæ,* Much (of) money. *Sătis ēlŏquentiæ,* Enough of eloquence. *Ubīnam gentium sŭmus ?* Where on earth are we ?

NOTE. The genitive thus governed denotes either a *number*, of which the partitive designates one or more individuals ; or a *whole*, of which the partitive designates a portion. In the latter sense, the genitive of common and abstract nouns commonly follows either the neuter of adjectives and adjective pronouns, or adverbs ; and that of material nouns depends on substantives signifying quantity, weight or measure ; as, *mĕdimnum trītĭci,* a bushel of wheat ; *lĭbra farris ; jūgĕrum agri ; magna vis auri.*

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting a part are *pars, nēmo, nĭhil,* etc., and also nouns denoting measure, weight, etc. ; as, *mŏdius, mĕdimnum,* and *lĭbra ;* as,

Nēmo nostrum, No one of us. *Maxĭma pars hŏmĭnum. Nĭhil hūmānārum rērum.* Cic. *Dĭmĭdium mīlĭtum.* Liv. *Mĕdimnum trītĭci.* Cic.

REM. 2. Adjectives and adjective pronouns, denoting a part of a number, including partitives and words used partitively, comparatives, superlatives, and numerals, are followed by the genitive plural, or by the genitive singular of a collective noun.

(1.) Partitives (§104, 9,) ; as, *ullus, nullus, sōlus, ălius, ūter, ūterque, ūtercumque, ūtervis, ūterlibet, neuter, alter, altĕrūter, ălĭquis, quīdam, quispĭam, quisquis, quisque, quisquam, quīcumque, ūnusquisque, quis ? qui ? quŏt ? quŏtus ? quŏtusquisque ? tŏt, ălĭquŏt, nonnulli, plērīque, multi, pauci, mĕdius.* Thus, *Quisquis deōrum,* Whoever of the gods. Ovid. *Consŭlum alter,* One of the consuls. Liv. *Multi hŏmĭnum,* Many men. Plin. *Et mĕdius jŭvĕnum ĭbat ;* i. e. between. Ovid. For the gender of adjectives used partitively, see § 205, R. 12.

(2.) Words used partitively ; as, *Expĕdīti mīlĭtum,* The light-armed (of the) soldiers. Liv. *Dēlecti ĕquĭtum .* Id. *Vĕtĕres Rōmānōrum dŭcum.* Vell. *Sŭpĕri deōrum,* The gods above. Hor. *Sancte deōrum.* Virg. *Dēgĕnĕres cănum.* Plin. *Piscium fēmĭnæ.* Id.

(3.) Comparatives and superlatives ; as, *Doctior jŭvĕnum. Orātōrum præstantissĭmus. Elŏquentissĭmus Rōmānōrum. Optĭmus omnium.*

(4.) Numerals, both cardinal and ordinal ; also the distributive *singŭli ;* as, *Equĭtum centum quinquāginta interfecti,* A hundred and fifty of the horsemen were killed. Curt. *Săpientum octāvus.* Hor. *Singŭlos vestrum.* Curt.

(5.) The meaning is often nearly the same, whether the partitive adjective agrees in case and number with a noun, or takes such noun after it in the genitive; as, *Doctissĭmus Rōmānōrum*, or, *doctissĭmus Rōmānus : Alter consŭlum*, or *alter consul*. But the genitive cannot be used, when the adjective includes the same number of things as that of which the whole consists; as, *Vĕniāmus ad vīvos*, qui duo *sŭpersunt*; not *quōrum duo*, since these are all, though we say in English, 'of whom two survive.'

NOTE 1. (*a*.) The comparative with the genitive denotes one of *two* individuals or classes; the superlative denotes a part of a number greater than two; as, *Mājor frātrum*, The elder of two brothers. *Maxĭmus frātrum*, The eldest of three or more.

(*b*.) In like manner, *ŭter*, *alter*, and *neuter*, generally refer to two; *quis*, *ălius*, and *nullus*, to a whole consisting of more than two; as, *Uter nostrum ?* Which of us (two?)   *Quis vestrum ?* Which of you (three or more?)

NOTE 2. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as partitive genitives, in preference to *nostri* and *vestri*, and are always joined with *omnium* even when the genitive is a subjective one; as, *Patria, quæ commūnis est* omnium nostrum *pārens*. Cic. But *vestrum* sometimes occurs in other connections also without a partitive meaning; as, *Quis ĕrit tam cŭpĭdus vestrum*. Cic.

NOTE 3. The partitive word is sometimes omitted; as, *Fīes nōbĭlium tu quŏque fontium*, scil. *ūnus*. Hor. *Centies sestertium*, scil. *centēna millia*.

NOTE 4. The noun denoting the whole, after a partitive word, is often put in the ablative, with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*, or in the accusative, with *ăpŭd* or *intĕr ; as*, *Nēmo* de iis. *Alter* ex censōrĭbus. *Unus* ex multis. Cic. *Acerrĭmus* ex sensĭbus. Id.   *Thăles, qui săpientissĭmus* in septem *fuit*. Id. *Prīmus* inter omnes. Virg   *Crœsus* inter rēges *ŏpŭlentissĭmus*. Sen.   Apud Helvētios *nōbĭlissĭmus*.

NOTE 5. The whole and its parts are frequently placed in apposition, distributively; as, Interfectōres, pars in *fŏrum*, pars *Sÿrācūsas pergunt*. Liv. See § 204, R. 10.

NOTE 6. *Cuncti* and *omnes*, like partitives, are sometimes followed by a genitive plural; as, *Attălus* Măcĕdōnum *fĕre omnĭbus persuāsit*, Attălus persuaded almost all the Macedonians. Liv. *Cunctos* hōmĭnum. Ovid. *Cunctas* prōvinciārum. Plin.

NOTE 7. In the following passage, the genitive singular seems to be used like that of a collective noun: *Tōtius autem* injustĭtiæ *nulla căpĭtālior est*, etc. Cic. Off. 1, 13.   The phrase *Rem nullo mŏdo prŏbābĭlem omnium* (Cic. Nat. Deor. 1, 27,) seems to be used for *Rem nullo omnium mŏdōrum prŏbābĭlem*.

REM. 3. The genitive denoting a whole, may depend on a neuter adjective or adjective pronoun. With these the genitive singular is commonly used; as,

Plus ĕlŏquentiæ, More (of) eloquence.   *Tantum fĭdei*, So much fidelity.   *Id tempŏris*, That time.   *Ad hoc ætātis*. Sometimes the genitive plural; as, *Id mĭsĕriārum*. Ter.   *Armōrum quantum*. Cæs.

NOTE 1. (*a*.) Most neuter adjectives used partitively denote quantity; as, *tantum, quantum, ălĭquantum, plūs, mĭnus, mĭnĭmum, dĭmĭdium, multum, nĭmium, paulum, plūrĭmum, rĕlĭquum*; with the compounds and diminutives, *tantŭlum, tantundem, quantŭlum, quantŭlumcumque*, etc.; to which add *mĕdium, summum, ultĭmum, ălĭud*, etc.   The pronouns thus used are *hoc, id, illud, istud, idem, quod*, and *quid*, with their compounds, *ălĭquid, quidquid, quippĭam, quidquam, quodcumque*.

(*b*.) Most of these adjectives and pronouns may either agree with their nouns, or take a genitive; but the latter is more common.   *Tantum, quantum, ălĭquantum*, and *plūs*, when they denote quantity, are used with a genitive only, as are also *quid* and its compounds, when they denote a part, sort, etc., and *quŏd* in the sense of *quantum*.   Thus, *Quantum crēvit Nīlus, tantum* spei *in annum est*. Sen.   *Quid* mŭlĭĕris *uxōrem hăbes ?* What kind of a woman... Ter.

Alĭquid formæ. Cic. *Quid hoc* rei *est?* What does this mean? Ter. *Quod* auri, *quod* argenti, *quod* ornāmentōrum *fuit, id Verres abstŭlit.*

Note 2. Neuter adjectives and pronouns, when followed by a genitive, are to be accounted substantives, and in this construction are found only in the nominative and accusative.

Note 3. Sometimes the genitive after these adjectives and pronouns is a neuter adjective, of the second declension, without a noun; as, *Tantum bŏni*, So much good. *Si quid hăbes* nŏvi, If you have any thing new. Cic. *Quid rĕliqui est?* Ter. *Nihil* is also used with such a genitive; as, *Nĭhil sincēri*, No sincerity. Cic. This construction occurs very rarely with neuter adjectives in *ĕ* of the third declension, and only in connection with neuters of the second declension; as, *Si quidquam non dīco* cīvīlis *sed hūmāni esset*. Liv.

Note 4. In the poets and in the prose writers later than Cicero, neuter adjectives in the *plural* number are sometimes followed by a genitive, either singular or plural, with a partitive signification; as, *Extrēma impĕrii*, The frontiers of the empire. Tac. *Pontes et* viārum *angusta*, The bridges and the narrow parts of the roads. Id. *Opāca lŏcōrum.* Virg. *Antīqua fœdĕrum.* Liv. *Cuncta campōrum.* Tac. *Exercent colles, atque hōrum asperrĭma pascunt.* Virg. Cf. § 205, R. 9.

Rem. 4. The adverbs *săt, sătis, părum, nĭmis, ăbunde, largĭter, affătim,* and *partim,* used partitively, are often followed by a genitive; as,

Sat rātiōnis, Enough of reason. Virg. *Sătis ēlŏquentĭæ, părum săpientĭæ,* Enough of eloquence, (yet) but little wisdom. Sall. *Nĭmis insĭdiārum.* Cic. *Terrōris et fraudis ăbunde est.* Virg. *Auri et argenti largĭter.* Plaut. *Cōpiārum affătim.* Liv. *Quum partim illōrum mĭhi fāmiliārissĭmi essent.* Cic.

Note 1. The above words, though generally adverbs, seem, in this use, rather to be nouns or adjectives.

Note 2. (*a.*) The genitives *gentium, terrārum, lŏci,* and *lŏcōrum,* with certain adverbs of place, strengthen their meaning; as, *Usquam terrārun.* Just. *Usquam gentium,* Any where whatever. Plaut. *Ubi terrārum sŭmus?* Where in the world are we? Cic. *Abĭre quo terrārum possent.* Liv. *Ubi sit lŏci.* Plin. *Eo lŏci,* equivalent to *eo lŏco,* In that place. Tac. *Eōdem lŏci res est.* Cic. *Nescīre quo* lŏci *esset.* Id. But the last three examples might perhaps more properly be referred to Rem. 3.

(*b.*) The adverbs of place thus used are *ŭbi, ŭbĭnam, ŭbicumque, ŭbĭŭbi, ŭbĭvis, ŭbīque, unde, usquam, nusquam, quo, quōcumque, quŏcis, quōquo, ălĭquo, hīc, hūc, eo, eōdem. Lŏci* also occurs after *ĭbi* and *ĭbīdem; gentium* after *longe;* as, *Ĭbi lŏci,* In that place. Plin. *Abes longe gentium.* Cic. So, *mĭnĭme gentium,* By no means. Ter. *Vīcīnĭæ* in the genitive is used by the comic writers after *hic* and *huc;* as, *Hic proxĭmæ vīcīnĭæ.* Plaut. *Huc vīcīnĭæ.* Ter. Cf. § 221, R. 3, (4.)

Note 3. *Huc, eo, quo,* when used figuratively to express a degree, are joined also with other genitives; as, *Eo* insŏlentĭæ *fŭrōrisque prōcessit,* He advanced to such a degree of insolence and madness. Plin. *Huc ĕnim* mălōrum *ventum est.* Curt. *Huccĭne* rērum *vēnĭmus?* Have we come to this? Pers. *Eo* mĭsĕriārum *vēnīre,* To such a pitch of misery. Sall. *Quo* āmentĭæ *prōgressi sĭtis.* Liv.

Note 4. The genitives *lŏci, lŏcōrum,* and *tempŏris,* appear to be redundant after the adverbs *adhuc, inde, intĕreă, postea, tum,* and *tunc,* in expressions denoting time; as, *Adhuc lŏcōrum,* Till now. Plaut. *Inde lŏci,* After that. Lucr. *Intĕrea lŏci,* In the mean time. Ter. *Postea lŏci,* Afterwards. Sall. *Tum tempŏris,* and *tunc tempŏris,* At that time. Just. *Lŏcōrum* also occurs after *id,* denoting time; as, *Ad id locōrum,* Up to that time. Sall. Cf. R. 3.

Note 5. When the genitive *ējus* occurs after *quoad,* in such connections as the following: *Quoad ējus făcĕre pŏtĕris.* Cic.; or passively, *Quoad ējus fĭĕri possit,* As far as may be. Cic.; the *ējus* refers to the preceding clause; literally as much of it as possible.

Note 6. *Prĭdie* and *postrĭdie*, though reckoned adverbs, are followed by a genitive, depending on the noun *dies* contained in them; as, *Prĭdie ējus diēi*, lit. On the day before that day, i. e. The day before. Cic.   *Prĭdie insidiārum*, The day before the ambush. Tac.   *Postrĭdie ējus diēi*, The next day. Cæs. When they are followed by an accusative, *ante* or *post* is understood.   Cf. § 238, 1, (*b.*)

Note 7. Adverbs in the superlative degree, like their adjectives, are followed by a genitive; as, *Optĭme omnium*, Best of all. Cic.

GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ **213.**   A noun, limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the objective genitive, to denote the relation expressed in English by *of*, *in*, or *in respect to ;* as,

Avĭdus laudis, Desirous *of praise.*   *Plēna* tĭmōris, Full *of fear.*
Appĕtens glŏriæ, Eager *for glory.*   *Egēnus* ăquæ, Destitute *of water.*
Mĕmor virtūtis, Mindful *of virtue.*   *Doctus* fandi, Skilful *in speaking.*

So, *Nescia mens* fāti, The mind ignorant *in regard to fate.* Virg.   *Impŏtens* īræ, lit. Powerless *in respect to anger,* i. e. unable to control it. Liv.   *Hŏmĭnes expertes* vērĭtātis, Men destitute *of truth.* Cic.   Lactis *ăbundans,* Abounding *in milk.* Virg.   Terra *fĕrax* arbŏrum, Land productive *of trees.* Plin.   *Tĕnax* prōpŏsĭti *vir,* A man tenacious *of his purpose.* Hor.   *Æger* ănĭmi, Sick *in mind.* Liv.   *Lŏcus mĕdius* jŭgŭli summŏque lăcerti, i. e. between. Ovid.   *Mŏrum dĭversus.* Tac.   *Opĕrum sŏlūtus.* Hor.   *Lĭber lĭbōrum.* Id.   *Intĕger* vītæ scĕlĕrisque *pūrus,* Upright *in life,* and free *from wickedness.* Hor.   Vīni *pollens Lĭber.* Plaut.

From the above examples, it will be seen that the genitive after an adjective is sometimes translated by other words besides *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*, though the relation which it denotes remains the same. Cf. 211, R. 12.

Remark 1. The following classes of adjectives, which, as denoting a relation to a thing, are called *relative adjectives* (§ 104, 13), are frequently limited by a genitive; viz. (1.) *V e r b a l s* in *ax*; as, *căpax, ĕdax, fĕrax, fŭgax, pervĭcax, tĕnax,* etc.—(2.) *P a r t i c i p i a l s* in *ns,* and a few in *tus,* with their compounds; as, *ămans, appĕtens, cŭpiens, effĭciens, pătiens, impătiens, sĭtiens :—consultus, doctus, sŏlūtus.*—(3.) Adjectives denoting *d e s i r e* or *a v e r s i o n;* as, *ăvārus, ăvĭdus, cŭpĭdus, stŭdiōsus ; fastĭdiōsus :—p a r t i c i p a t i o n;* as, *partĭceps, affĭnis, consors, exsors, expers, ĭnops :—k n o w l e d g e, e x p e r i e n c e, c a p a c-i t y,* and their contraries; as, *callĭdus, compos, conscius, gnārus, ignārus, pērĭtus, impĕrītus, impos, pŏtens, impŏtens, prūdens, imprūdens, expertus, inexpertus, conscius, inscius, nescius, insŏlens, insŏlĭtus, insuētus, rŭdis, sollers :—m e m o r y* and *f o r g e t f u l n e s s;* as, *mĕmor, immĕmor,* etc.:—*c e r t a i n t y* and *d o u b t;* as, *certus, incertus, ambĭguus, dŭbius, suspensus :—c a r e* and *n e g l i g e n c e;* as, *anxius, sollĭcĭtus, prōvĭdus, imprōvĭdus, secūrus :—f e a r* and *c o n f i d e n c e;* as, *păvĭdus, tĭmĭdus, trĕpĭdus, impăvĭdus, fīdens, interrĭtus :—g u i l t* and *i n n o-c e n c e;* as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus, mănĭfestus, innoxius, innŏcens, insons :—p l e n t y* and *w a n t;* as, *ăbundans, plēnus, dīves, sătus, largus, ĭnops, ĕgēnus, ĭnānis, pauper, parcus, sŏlūtus, văcuus.*

(*a.*) In the poets and later prose writers, many other adjectives, particularly those which express mental emotions, are in like manner limited by a genitive, especially by *ănĭmi, ingĕnii, mentis, īræ, mīlĭtiæ, belli, lăbōris, rērum, ævi, fŭtūri, mŏrum,* and *fĭdei.*

Rem. 2. The limiting genitive, by a Greek construction, sometimes denotes a *cause* or *source,* especially in the poets; as, *Lassus* māris, *et* viārum, mīlĭtiæque. Hor. *Fessus viæ.* Stat. *Fessus māris.* Hor. *Attŏnitus* serpentis. Sil. *Mens interrĭta* lēti. Ovid.

Rem. 3. Participles in *ns, when used as such,* take after them the same case as the verbs from which they are derived; as, Se *ămans,* Loving himself. Cic. *Māre* terram *appĕtens.* Id.

REM. 4. Instead of the genitive, denoting *of, in,* or *in respect to,* a different construction is sometimes used after many of these adjectives; as,

(1.) An infinitive or a subjunctive clause; as, *Certus* īre, Determined *to go.* Ovid. Cantāre *pĕrīti.* Virg. *Fēlicior* unguĕre *tēla.* Id. *Anxius* quid facto ŏpus sit. Sall. *Vīve mĕmor* quam sis ævi brĕvis. Hor.—So *ăliēnus, ăvĭdus, callĭdus, cŭpĭdus, fīrmus, frĕquens, gnārus, impŏtens, inops, lætus, largus, līber, pollens, mĕmor, dūbius,* etc.

(2.) An accusative with a preposition; as, Ad rem *ăvĭdior.* Ter. *Avĭdus* in dīreptiōnes. Liv. *Anĭmus căpax* ad præcepta. Ovid. Ad cāsum fortūnam*que fēlix.* Cic. Ad fraudem *callĭdus.* Id. *Dīlĭgens* ad custōdiendum. Id. *Neglĭgentior* in patrem. Just. *Vir* ad disciplīnam *pĕrītus.* Cic. Ad bella *rŭdis.* Liv. *Pŏtens* in res bellīcas. Id. *Alăcer* ad mălĕfĭcia. Cic. Inter bellum *et* pācem *nihil nĕdium est.* Id.—So with *ad, cŭpĭdus, fīrmus, infīrmus, pŏtens, stĕrĭlis,* etc.— with *in, cŭpĭdus, parcus, pŏtens, prōdĭgus,* etc.

(3.) An accusative without a preposition, chiefly in the poets; as, *Nūdus* membra, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. Os, hūmĕros*que deo sĭmĭlis* Id. Cētĕra *fulvus.* Hor. Cuncta *pollens.* Sen. Ag. See § 234, II.

(4.) An ablative with a preposition; as, *Avĭdus* in pĕcūniis, Eager in regard to money. Cic. *Anxius* de fāmā. Quint. *Rŭdis* in jūre cīvīli. Cic. *Pĕrītus* de agrīcultūrā Varr. *Prūdens* in jūre cīvīli. Cic. *Reus* de vi. Id. *Pūrus* ab cultu hūmāno. Liv. *Certior factus* de re. Cic. *Sollicĭtus* de re. Id. *Sŭper* scĕlĕre *suspectus.* Sall. *Inops* ab ămīcis. Cic. *Pauper* in ære. Hor. *Mŏdĭcus* in cultu. Plin. Ab ăquis *stĕrĭlis.* Apul. *Cōpiōsus* a frūmento. Cic. Ab ĕquĭtātu *fīrmus.* Id. So with *in, immŏdĭcus, parcus, ūber:*—with *ab, ăliēnus, beātus, extorris, immūnis, inops, līber, nūdus, orbus, văcuus.*

(5.) An ablative without a preposition; as, Arte *rŭdis,* Rude in art. Ovid. *Regni* crīmĭne *insons.* Liv. *Compos* mente. Virg. *Prūdens* consĭlio. Just. *Æger* pĕdĭbus. Sall. *Præstans* ingĕnio. Cic. *Mŏdĭcus* sĕvĕrĭtāte. Tac. *Nihil* insĭdiis *văcuum.* Cic. *Amor* et melle *et* felle *est fēcundissĭmus.* Plaut. *Mĕdius* Pollūce et Castŏre. Ovid. Cf. Rem. 5.

In many instances, the signification of the accusative and ablative after adjectives differs, in a greater or less degree, from that of the genitive.

REM. 5. As many of the adjectives, which are followed by a genitive, admit of other constructions, the most common use of each, with particular nouns, can, in general, be determined only by recourse to the dictionary, or to the classics. Some have,

(1.) The genitive only; as, *bĕnignus, căpax, exsors, impos, impŏtens, insătiābĭlis, irrĭtus, lībĕrālis, mŏdĭcus, mūnifĭcus, prælargus,* and many others.

(2.) The genitive more frequently; as, *compos, consors, ĕgēnus, exhēres, expers, fertĭlis, indĭgus, inops, parcus, partĭceps, pauper, prōdĭgus, prosper, stĕrĭlis.*

(3.) The genitive or ablative indifferently; as, *dīves, fēcundus, fĕrax, immūnis, ĭnānis, immŏdĭcus, jējūnus, largus, nĭmius, ŏpŭlentus, pĕrītus, plēnus, pŏtens, pūrus, rĕfertus, sătur, ūber, văcuus.*

(4.) The ablative more frequently; as, *ăbundans, ăliēnus, cassus, cōpiōsus, extorris, firmus, fētus, frĕquens, grăvĭdus, grăvis, infīrmus, līber, lōcuples, lætus, mactus, nūdus, ŏnustus, orbus, pollens, sătiātus, truncus, vălĭdus, vĭduus.*

(5.) The ablative only; as, *beātus, crēber, densus, mŭtĭlus, tŭmĭdus, turgĭdus.*

For the ablative after many of the preceding adjectives, see § 250.

REM. 6. Some adjectives usually limited by a dative, sometimes take a genitive instead of the dative; as, *sĭmĭlis, dissĭmĭlis,* etc. See § 222, R. 2.

REM. 7. Many adjectives in addition to the genitive or ablative denoting *of* or *in respect to,* take also another case to express a different relation; as, *Mens* sĭbi *conscĭa* recti. Cf. § 222, R. 3. *Conscius* has also sometimes the dative instead of the genitive of the *thing;* as, *conscius* huic făcĭnŏri. Cic.

GENITIVE AFTER VERBS

§ 214. *Sum,* and verbs of *valuing,* are followed by a genitive, denoting *degree of estimation ;* as,

A me argentum, quanti *est, sūmito,* Take of me so much money as (he) is worth. Ter. *Magni æstimābat pecūniam,* He valued money greatly. Cic. *Ager nunc* plūris *est, quam tunc fuit.* Id. *Tanti est,* It is worth so much; and, absolutely, It is worth while. Cic. *Hūjus non fẵcio,* I don't care *that* for it.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) Verbs of valuing are joined with the genitive, when the value is expressed in *a general* or *indefinite* manner by :—

(1.) A neuter adjective of quantity; as, *tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris, magni, permagni, plūrimi, maximi, minimi, parvi, tantīdem, quantīcumque, quantivis, quantilibet,* but only very rarely *multi* and *mājōris.*

(2.) The nouns *assis, flocci, nauci, nihili, pili, tĕruncii,* and also *pensi* and *hūjus.*

(*b.*) But if the price or value of a thing is a *definite* sum, or is expressed by a *substantive,* other than *assis, flocci,* etc., it is put in the ablative. Cf. § 252.

REM. 2. The verbs of valuing are *æstĭmo, existĭmo, dūco, fẵcio, fĭo, hăbeo, pendo, pŭto, depŭto, taxo.* Thus, *Ut quanti quisque se ipse fẵciat,* tanti *fĭat ab ămīcis,* That as much as each one values himself, so much he should be valued by his friends. Cic. *Sed quia parvi id dūcĕret.* Id. *Hónōres si magni non pŭtēmus.* Id. *Non assis fẵcis?* Catull. *Nĕque quod dixi,* flocci *existĭmat.* Plaut.

NOTE 1. (*a.*) The phrase *æqui bóni,* or *æqui bonĭque fẵcio,* or *consŭlo,* I take a thing in good part, am satisfied with it, may be classed with genitives of value; as, *Nos* æqui bonĭque *fẵcimus.* Liv. So, Bóni *consŭluit* Plin.—(*b.*) A genitive of price is joined also to *cæno, hăbĭto, dŏceo,* etc.; as, *quanti hăbĭtas?* what rent do you pay for your house or lodging? *quanti dŏcet?* what are his terms in teaching?

NOTE 2. After *æstĭmo,* the ablatives *magno, permagno, parvo, nihĭlo,* are sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, *Dăta* magno *æstĭmas, accepta* parvo. Sen. *Pro nihĭlo,* also, occurs after *dūco, hăbeo,* and *pŭto ;* and *nihil* with *æstĭmo* and *mŏror.* Cf. § 231, R. 5.

NOTE 3. The neuter adjectives above enumerated, and *hūjus,* may be referred to a noun understood, as *prĕtii, æris, pondĕris, mōmenti ;* and may be considered as limiting a preceding noun, also understood, and denoting some person or thing; as, *Æstĭmo te magni,* i. e. *hŏmĭnem magni prĕtii. Scio ējus ordĭnis auctōrĭtātem semper ăpud te magni fuisse,* i. e. *rem magni mōmenti.* The words *assis,* etc., may also be considered as depending on an omitted noun; as, *prĕtio, rem,* etc.

REM. 3. Statements of *price,* also, *when general* or *indefinite,* are put in the genitive after verbs of *buying, selling, letting,* and *hiring ;* as,

Mercātōres non tantīdem *vendunt,* quanti *ēmērunt.* Cic. *Nulla pestis hūmāno gĕnĕri* plūris *stĕtit, quam īra.* Sen.

NOTE 1. Verbs of buying, selling, etc., are *ĕmo, vendo,* the neutral passive, *vēneo, consto, prōsto,* and *liceo,* to be exposed for sale.

NOTE 2. With verbs of buying, selling, etc., the ablatives *magno, permagno, plūrimo, parvo, minĭmo,* and *nihĭlo* are often used instead of the genitive; as, *Non pŏtest parvo res magna constāre.* Sen. *Quanti ēmĕre possum* minĭmo? What is the lowest price I can buy at? Plaut. Sometimes also the adverbs *cāre, bĕne,* and *mâle* take the place of the genitive or ablative of price.

§ **215.** (1.) *Mĭsĕreor, mĭsĕresco*, and the impersonals *mĭsĕret, pœnĭtet, pŭdet, tædet*, and *pĭget*, are followed by a genitive of the object in respect to which the feeling is exercised; as,

Mĭsĕrēmĭni sŏcĭōrum, Pity the allies. Cic.   *Mĭsĕrescĭte rēgĭs*, Pity the king. Virg.   *Mea māter*, tui *me mĭsĕret*, mei *pĭget*, I pity you, and am dissatisfied with myself. Acc.   *Eos* ineptiārum *pœnĭtet*. Cic.   Frātris *me pŭdet pĭgetque*. Ter.   *Me cīvĭtātis* mōrum *pĭget tædetque*. Sall.   So the compound *distædet; Haud quod* tui *me, nĕque* dōmi *distædeat*. Plaut.; and the passive; *Numquam suscepti* nēgōtii *eum pertæsum est*. Nep.   Lentĭtūdĭnis *eōrum pertæsa*. Tac.   *Mĭsĕrĭtum est me tuārum* fortūnārum. Ter.   *Cāve te* frātrum *mĭsĕreātur*. Cic.   *Pŭdet* (*me*) deōrum hŏmĭnumque, I am filled with shame in reference both to gods and men. Liv.

NOTE 1. *Mĭsĕrescit* is sometimes used in the same manner as *mĭsĕret;* as, *Nunc te mĭsĕrescat* mei. Ter.   *Mĭsĕreo*, as a personal verb, also, occurs with a genitive; as, *Ipse* sui *mĭsĕret*. Lucr.

REMARK. The genitive after the above impersonals seems to depend on some general word constituting the grammatical subject of such verbs, and signifying, *matter, business, fact, case, circumstances, conduct, character*, etc., cf § 211, R. 8, (3); and § 209, R. 3, (4.)   Instead of the genitive with its omitted noun, an infinitive or clause with *quod* or with an interrogative particle is sometimes used as a subject; as, *Non me jam* dīcĕre *pŭdēbit*. Cic.   *Non pœnĭtet me* quantum prōf ēcĕrĭn, I am not dissatisfied with my progress. Id.   These verbs have also sometimes a nominative; as, *Me quĭdem hœc* condĭtio *non pœnĭtet.* Plaut.   *Non te* hæc *pŭdent?* Ter.

NOTE 2. *Mĭsĕret* occurs with an accusative of the object, instead of a genitive; as, *Mĕnēdēmi* vīcem *mĭsĕret me*. Ter.   So, also, *Pertæsus* ignāviam *suam*. Suet.

NOTE 3. (*a.*) These impersonals, as active verbs, take also an accusative of the person exercising the feeling which they express. See § 229, R. 6.— (*b.*) And sometimes also the accusative of the *neuter pronouns* and of *nĭhil*, denoting *to what degree* the feelings are exercised; as, *Sĕquĭtur ut* nĭhil (*săpientem,*) *pœnĭteat*. Cic. Cf. § 232, (3.)

(2.) *Sătăgo* is sometimes followed by a genitive denoting *in what respect ;* as,

Is sătăgit rērum *suārum*, He is busily occupied with his own affairs. Ter. This compound is often written separately, and in either case the genitive seems to depend upon *sat*. See § 212, R. 4.   *Agĭto*, with *săt*, in like manner, is followed by a genitive; as, *Nunc ăgĭtas sat tūte tuārum* rērum. Plaut.

§ **216.** *Rĕcordor, mĕmĭni, rĕmĭniscor*, and *oblĭviscor*, are followed by a genitive or accusative of the object remembered or forgotten ; as,

Flāgĭtiōrum suōrum rĕcordābĭtur. Cic.   *Omnes* grădus *ætātis rĕcordor tuæ*, I call to mind all the periods of your life. Id.   *Mĕmĭni* vīvōrum, I am mindful of the living. Id.   *Nŭmĕros mĕmĭni*, I remember the measure. Virg.   *Rĕmĭnisci vĕtĕris* fāmæ. Nep.   *Dulces mŏrĭens rĕmĭniscĭtur* Argos. Virg.   *Rĕmĭnisci* ămīcos. Ovid.   *Oblĭtus* sui. Virg.   Injūriārum *oblĭviscĭtur*. Nep.   *Oblĭviscor* injūrias. Cic.   *Oblĭviscĕre* Graios. Virg.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) When the thing remembered or forgotten is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective, it is always put in the accusative.   An accusative of the *person* with these verbs is unusual, except that *mĕmĭni*, when referring to a contemporary, always takes an accusative of the person; as, Cinnam *mĕmĭni*. Cic.

(*b.*) An infinitive or a dependent clause sometimes follows these verbs; as, *Mĕmento mihi suppĕtias ferre.* Plaut. Esse *quŏque in fātis rĕmĭniscĭtur,* affŏre tempus, *quo mărĕ,* etc. Ovid. *Oblĭti* quid *dĕceat.* Hor. *Mĕmĭni* te scrībĕre. Cic. Quæ sum passūra *rĕcordor.* Ovid.

Rem. 2. *Rĕcordor* and *mĕmĭni, to remember,* are sometimes followed by an ablative with *de*; as, *Pĕtĭmus ut de suis* lībĕris *rĕcordentur.* Cic. De pallā *mĕmento.* Plaut.

Rem. 3. *Mĕmĭni,* signifying *to make mention of,* has a genitive, or an ablative with *de*; as, *Nĕque hūjus* rei *mĕmĭnit.poēta.* Quint. *Mĕmĭnisti* de exsŭlĭbus. Cic. With *vĕnit mĭhi in mentem,* the person or thing may be made the subject of *vĕnit*; as, *Mĭsĕræ ŭbi vĕnit in mentem mortis* mĕtus. Plaut. *Vĕnit* hoc *mĭhi in mentem*; or an infinitive or subjunctive clause may supply the place of the subject:—for the genitive with this phrase, as in *Sŏlet mĭhi in mentem vĕnīre illīus tempŏris,* see § 211, R. 8, (5.) The genitive with *rĕcordor* is very rare.

§ **217.** Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning,* and *acquitting,* with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive denoting the *crime*; as,

Arguit me furti, He charges me *with theft. Altĕrum accūsat* probri, He accuses another *of villany. Meipsum* inertiæ *condemno.* Cic.

Remark 1. (*a.*) To this rule belong the verbs of

A c c u s i n g; *accūso, ăgo,* arcesso, arguo, *cĭto, dēfĕro, incrĕpo, incūso, insĭmŭlo, postŭlo,* and more rarely *allĭgo, anquīro, astringo, capto, incrĕpĭto, urgeo, interrŏgo, reum ăgo* or *făcio, ălĭcui diem dīco,* cum *ălĭquo ăgo.*—C o n v i c t i n g; *convinco, coarguo, prĕhendo, tĕneor, obstringo, oblĭgo.*—C o n d e m n i n g; *damno, condemno, infāmo,* and more rarely *jūdĭco, nŏto, plector.*—A c q u i t t i n g; *absolvo, lībĕro, purgo,* and rarely *solvo.* To the verbs of accusing, etc., may be added the adjectives denoting *guilt* and *innocence,* which likewise take a genitive. Cf. § 213, R. 1, (3.)

(*b.*) The genitives which follow these verbs are, *audācĭæ, ăvārĭtĭæ, cædis, falsi, furti, ignāvĭæ, impĭĕtātis, injūrĭārum, lĕvĭtātis, mājĕstātis, mălĕfĭcĭi, mendācĭi, parrĭcīdĭi, peccāti, pĕcūlātūs, probri, prōdĭtĭōnis, rei căpĭtālis, rĕpĕtundārum, scĕlĕris, stultĭtĭæ, tĕmĕrĭtātis, tĭmōris, vānĭtātis, vĕnĕfĭcĭi,* etc.

Rem. 2. (*a.*) Instead of the genitive, an ablative with *de* is often used after *accūso, dēfĕro, anquīro, arguo, postŭlo, damno, condemno, absolvo,* and *purgo*; as, *Accūsāre* de negligentiā. Cic. De vi *condemnāti* sunt. Id. De rĕpĕtundis *est postŭlātus.* Id. Sometimes with *in,* after *accūso, coarguo, convinco, tĕneor,* and *dēprĕhendor*; as, In quo *te accūso* (Cic.); and after *lībĕro,* with *a* or *ab*; as, A scĕlĕre *lībĕrāti sŭmus.* Cic. *Accūso* and *damno* with *inter* occur in the phrases *inter sĭcārĭos accŭsāre,* etc., to charge with assassination.

(*b.*) With some of the above verbs, an ablative without a preposition is often used; as, *Lībĕrāre* culpā. Cic. *Crīmen* quo *argui posset.* Nep. *Prōconsŭlem postŭlāvĕrat* rĕpĕtundis. Tac. This happens especially with general words denoting crime; as, *scĕlus, mălĕfĭcĭum, peccātum,* etc.; as, *Me* peccāto *solvo.* Liv. The ablatives *crīmĭne* and *nōmĭne,* without a preposition, are often inserted before the genitive; as, *Arcessĕre ălĭquem* crīmĭne *ambĭtūs.* Liv. Nōmĭne *scĕlĕris conjūrātĭōnisque damnāti.* Cic.; and when not so inserted they are to be understood.

(*c.*) Sometimes a clause takes the place of the genitive; as, *Eum accŭsābant* quod sŏcĭĕtātem fēcisset. Nep. So the infinitive with the accusative. *Quid? quod me—arguit sĕrun accessisse?* Ovid.

Rem. 3. (*a.*) The *punishment* is commonly expressed by the genitive; as, *căpĭtis, mortis, multæ, pĕcūnĭæ, quadruplĭ, octuplĭ*; but sometimes by the ablative; as, *căpĭte, morte, multā, pĕcūnĭā*: and always by this case when a definite sum is mentioned; as, *quindĕcim millĭbus æris*: or the accusative with *ad* or *in*;

as, *ad pœnam, ad bestias, ad metalla, in metallum, in expensas;*—sometimes, though rarely, in the poets, by the dative; as, *Damnatus* morti. Lucr.— (*b.*) *Vōti* or *vōtōrum*, and less frequently *vōto* or *vōtis damnāri*, signifies 'to be condemned to fulfil one's vow,' and is consequently equivalent to 'to obtain what one wishes.' So also in the active voice, *Damnābis tu quōque* vōtis. Virg. *Perdo* is used by Plautus as a verb of accusing, with *căpĭtis; Quem ĕgo căpĭtis perdam,* will charge with a capital offence. So *căpite* or *căpĭtis* pĕrīclĭtāri, Plaut., signifies 'to be in peril of one's life.' With *plecto* and *plector, căput* is used in the ablative only.—(*c.*) *Damni infecti* is put in the genitive (depending upon *nōmine* understood) after *sătisdo, prōmitto, stĭpŭlāri, rĕprōmitto,* and *căveo;* as, *Si quis in părĭĕte dēmōliendo* damni infecti *prōmīsĕrit.* Cic.

REM. 4. *Accūso, incūso,* and *insĭmŭlo,* instead of the genitive, sometimes take the accusative, especially of a neuter pronoun; as, *Si* id *me non accūsas.* Plaut. Quæ *me* incūsāvĕras. Ter. *Sic me insĭmŭlāre falsum* făcĭnus. Plaut. See § 231, Rem. 5.

REM. 5. (*a.*) The following verbs of accusing, etc., are not followed by a genitive of the crime, but, as active verbs, by an accusative:—*călumnior, carpo, corrĭpio, crimĭnor, culpo, excūso, multo, pūnĭo, rĕprĕhendo, sŭgillo, taxo, trādūco, vĭtŭpĕro;* as, *Culpāre infēcundĭtātem agrōrum.* Colum. *Excūsāre errōrem et ădŏlescentiam.* Liv.

(*b.*) This construction also sometimes occurs with *accūso, incūso, arguo,* and *inarguo;* as, *Ejus ăvārĭtiam perfĭdiamque accūsārat.* Nep. *Culpam arguo.* Liv. With *multo,* the punishment is put in the ablative only, without a preposition; as, *Exsiliis, morte multantur.* Cic.

§ 218. Verbs of admonishing, with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive of the person or thing respecting which the admonition is given; as,

Mĭlĭtes tempŏris *mŏnet,* He admonishes the soldiers of the occasion. Tac. *Admŏnēbat ălium* ĕgestātis, *ălium* cŭpĭdĭtātis *suæ.* Sall.

NOTE. The verbs of admonishing are *mŏneo, admŏneo, commŏneo,* and *commŏnĕfăcio.*

REMARK 1. Instead of the genitive, verbs of admonishing sometimes have an ablative with *de;* as, *De æde Tellūris me admŏnes.* Cic.—sometimes an accusative of a pronoun or adjective in the neuter gender; as, *Eos hoc mŏneo* Cic. Illud *me admŏneo.* Id.; and in the passive, Multa *admŏnēmur.* Id.—rarely also a noun in the accusative; as, *Eam rem nos lŏcus admŏnuit.* Sall.

REM. 2. Instead of the genitive, verbs of admonishing are also often followed by an infinitive or clause; as, *Sŏror alma mŏnet* succēdĕre Lauso Turnum, His sister admonishes Turnus to take the place of Lausus. Virg. *Mŏnet,* ut suspĭc-iōnes vītet. Cæs. *Sed eos hoc mŏneo,* dĕsīnant fŭrĕre. Cic. *Mŏnet* rātiōnem frū-menti esse hăbendam. Hirt. Immortālia ne spēres *mŏnet* annus. Hor. *Discĭpŭlos* id ūnum *mŏneo,* ut, etc. Quint. *Mŏneo* quid facto ŏpus sit. Ter. See § 273, 2.

§ 219. *Rēfert* and *intĕrest* are followed by a genitive of the person or thing whose concern or interest they denote; as,

Hūmānĭtātis rēfert, It concerns human nature. Plin. *Rēfert* omnium *ănĭmadverti in mălos.* Tac. *Intĕrest* omnium *recte făcĕre,* It concerns all to do right. Cic.

REMARK 1. Instead of the genitive of the substantive pronouns, the adjective pronouns *mea, tua, sua, nostra,* and *vestra,* are used; as,

Mea *nĭhil rēfert,* It does not concern me. Ter. *Illud* mea *magni intĕrest,* That greatly concerns me. Cic. Tua *et* mea *maxĭme intĕrest, te vălēre.* Cic. *Măgis* reipūblicæ *intĕrest* quam mea. Id. *Magni intĕrest* Cĭcĕrōnis, *vel* mea *pŏtius, vel mehercŭle* utriusque, *me intervĕnīre dicenti.* Id.

Note. *Rĕfert* rarely occurs with the genitive, but often with the pronouns *mea, tua,* etc., and most frequently without either such pronoun or a genitive; as, *quid rĕfert? magni* or *magnŏpĕre rēfert.*

Rem. 2. In regard to the case of these adjective pronouns, grammarians differ. Some suppose that they are in the accusative plural neuter, agreeing with *commŏda* or the like understood; as, *Intĕrest mea,* i. e. *est inter mea,* It is among my concerns. *Rĕfert tua,* i. e. *rˉfert se ad tua,* It refers itself to your concerns. Others think that they are in the ablative singular feminine, agreeing with *re, causā,* etc., understood, or in the dative. The better opinion seems to be, that they are in the accusative feminine for *meam, tuam, suam,* etc., that *rēfert* was originally *rem fert,* and that hence the *e* of *rĕfert* is long.

Rem. 3. Instead of the genitive, an accusative with *ad* is sometimes used; as, *Ad hŏnōrem meum intĕrest quam primum urbem me vĕnīre.* Cic. *Quid id* ad me *aut* ad *meam* rem *rĕfert.* Plaut.—sometimes, though rarely, an accusative without a preposition; as, *Quid* te *igitur rĕtŭlit?* Plaut—or a dative; as, *Dic quid rĕfĕrat intra nātūræ fines* vīventi. Hor.

Rem. 4. The subject of these verbs, or the thing which is of interest or importance, is sometimes expressed by a neuter pronoun; as, *Id mea mĭnĭme rˉfert.* Ter. *Hoc vĕhĕmenter intĕrest reipŭblĭcæ.* Cic.; and sometimes by an infinitive with its accusative, or *ut,* or an interrogative particle with a subjunctive clause; as, *multum mea intĕrest te esse dĭlĭgentem,* or *ut dĭligens sis,* or *utrum dĭligens sis nec ne.* When the infinitive alone is used with *rĕferi* or *intĕrest,* the preceding subject is understood; as, *omnium intĕrest recte fă- cĕre,* scil. *se.*

Rem. 5. The degree of interest or importance is expressed by adverbs or by neuter adjectives, etc., in the accusative or genitive; as, *măgis, magnŏpĕre, vĕ- hĕmenter, părum, mĭnĭme,* etc.; *multum, plūs, plūrĭmum, nĭhil, ălĭquid,* etc.; *tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, plūris.* But mĭnĭmo discrīmĭne *rĕfert* is found in Juv. 5, 123.

§ 220. Many verbs which are usually otherwise construed, are sometimes followed by a genitive. This rule includes

1. Certain verbs denoting an affection of the mind; *ango, discrŭcior, excrŭ- cio, fallo, pendeo,* which are followed by *ănĭmi; dĕcĭpior, dēsĭpio, fallor, fastīdio, invĭdeo, mĭror, vĕreor;* as, *Absurde făcis, qui angas te* ănĭmi. Plaut. *Me* ănĭmi *fallit.* Lucr. *Dĕcĭpitur* lăbōrum. Hor. *Dēsĭpiēbam* mentis. Plaut. *Justĭtiæne prius mīrer belline* lăbōrum. Virg.

2. The following, in imitation of the Greek idiom; *abstĭneo, dēsĭno, purgo.* Hor.; *dēsisto.* Virg.; *laudo, prŏhĭbeo.* Sil.; *lĕvo, partĭcĭpo.* Plaut.; *lībĕro.* Liv.; *dissolvo.* Tibull.: compare *liber* lăbōrum; *ŏpĕrum văcuus; pūrus scĕlĕris.* § 213.

3. Some verbs denoting *to fill, to abound, to want* or *need, to free,* which are commonly followed by an ablative. Such are *ăbundo, căreo, compleo, expleo, impleo, ĕgeo, indĭgeo, sătūro, obsătūro, scăteo;* as, *Adōlescentem suæ tĕmĕrĭtātis implet,* He fills the youth with his own rashness. Liv. *Animum explesse* flammæ. Virg. *Egeo* consĭlii. Cic. *Non tam artis indĭgent quam* lăbōris. Id. See §§ 249 and 250, (2.)

4. *Pŏtior,* which also is usually followed by an ablative; as, *Urbis pŏtīri,* To make oneself master of the city. Sall. *Pŏtīri regni* (Cic.), *hostium* (Sall.), *rerum,* To make oneself master of the world. Cic. *Pŏtio* (active) occurs in Plautus; as, *Eum nunc pŏtīvit* servītūtis, He has made him partaker of slavery. In the same writer, *pŏtītus est hostium* signifies, 'he fell into the hands of the enemy.' So, also, *Aliquem compŏtīre* prædæ or vōti. App. So, Rērum *ădeptus est.* Tac. *Dŏmĭnātiōnis ăpisci.* Id. *Regnāvit* pŏpŭlōrum. Hor.

GENITIVE OF PLACE.

§ **221.**　1. The name of a town *in which* any thing is said *to be*, or *to be done*, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; as,

Hăbitat Mīlēti, He lives at Miletus. Ter. *Quid Rōmæ făciam?* What can I do at Rome? Juv. *Hercŭles* Tўri *maxĭme cŏlĭtur.* Cic.

Note. For the construction of nouns of the third declension or plural number, see § 254. The following appears to be the best explanation that has been given of this diversity of construction, depending solely on the number or declension of the noun. The name of the town 'where' or 'in which' is probably neither in the genitive nor the ablative, but always, as in Greek, in the dative. Since the genitive and dative are alike in the singular of the first declension and the dative and ablative plural are the same in all declensions, such examples as *Rōmæ* and *Athēnis* present no difficulty. In the third declension the dative and ablative singular were anciently alike, and in such ablatives as *Anxŭri, Carthāgĭni, Lăcĕdæmŏni*, the old form remains, see § 82, Exc. 5, (*c.*) In the second declension there was an old dative in *oi*, as in Greek, which was commonly changed to *o*, but sometimes to *i*: and the latter is still found in *nulli, uni*, etc., see § 107, and in the adjective pronouns; as, *illi*, etc.

Remark 1. Names of islands and countries are sometimes put in the genitive, like names of towns; as, *Ithăcæ vīvĕre*, To live in Ithaca. Cic. *Corcȳræ fŭimus*. Id. *Cŏnon plūrĭmum* Cypri *vixit*, *Tīmŏtheus* Lesbi. Nep. *Quum Milliădes dŏmum* Chersŏnēsi *hăbuit.* Id. *Crētæ jussit consĭdĕre Apollo.* Virg. *Rōmæ Nŭmĭdiæque făcĭnŏra ĕjus mĕmŏrat.* Sall.

Rem. 2. (*a.*) Instead of the genitive, the ablative of names of towns of the first and second declension and singular number, is sometimes, though rarely, used; as, *Rex* Tўro *dēcēdĭt*, The king dies at Tyre. Just. *Et Cŏrintho et Athēnis et Lăcĕdæmŏne nunciāta est victōrĭa.* Id. *Pons quem ille* Abȳdo *fēcĕrat.* Id. *Hujus exemplar* Rōmā *nullum hăbēmus.* Vitruv. *Non Libȳæ*, non *ante* Tўro. Virg. For the explanation of this apparent anomaly, see the preceding note; in accordance with which it may be remarked, that the adverbs of place, *ŭbi, ibi, ibĭdem, ălĭbi, ălĭcŭbi, hic, illĭc, istĭc*, etc., appear from their form to be ancient datives.—(*b.*) When the noun is qualified by an adjective, it is put, not in the genitive, but in the ablative with *in*; as, *In ipsā Alexandrĭā.* Cic. And poetically without *in*, *Gĕnus Longā nostrum dŏmĭnābĭtur* Albā. Virg.—(*c.*) When *urbs, oppĭdum, lŏcus*, follow the genitive of place as appositions, they are put in the ablative either with, or, more rarely, without, *in*; as, *Archias Antĭŏchĭæ nātus est*, cĕlebri *quondam* urbe. Cic. *Cīves Rŏmānos Neăpŏli*, in cĕlĕberrĭmo oppĭdo *sæpe vīdimus.* Id. But when *in* urbe, etc., precede the name of a town, the latter also is put in the ablative; as, *In oppĭdo* Citio. Nep.; and but very rarely in the genitive; as, Cassius *in oppĭdo* Antĭochĭæ *est*,—in the town of Antioch. Cic., where the genitive depends on *oppĭdo*.

Rem. 3. The genitives *dŏmi, mīlĭtiæ, belli*, and *hŭmi*, are construed like names of towns; as,

Tĕnuit se dŏmi, He staid at home. Cic. *Vir* dŏmi *clārus.* Liv. *Spargit* hŭmi *jussos dentes*,—on the ground. Ovid. *Mīlĭtiæ* and *belli* are thus used, especially when opposed to *dŏmi*; as, *Una semper* mīlĭtiæ *et* dŏmi *fŭimus*,—both at home and in the camp. Ter. So *Dŏmi* mīlĭtiæque. Cic. *Et dŏmi et mīlĭtiæ.* Id. *Mīlĭtiæ dŏmĭque.* Liv. *Mīlĭtiæ et dŏmi.* Ter. *Belli dŏmĭque*, in war and in peace. Hor.

(1.) *Dŏmi* is thus used with the possessives *meæ, tuæ, suæ, nostræ, restræ*, and *ălĭēnæ*; as, Dŏmi nostræ *vixit*, He lived at my house. Cic. *Apud eum sic fui tamquam* meæ dŏmi. Id. *Sacrĭfĭcĭum, quod* ălĭēnæ dŏmi *fĭēret invīsĕre.* Id. But with other adjectives, an ablative, generally with a preposition, is used; as, *In vĭduā dŏmo.* Ovid. *Pāternā dŏmo.* Id. Sometimes also with the possessives; as, *Meā in dōmo.* Hor. *In dŏmo suā.* Nep. So, instead of *hŭmi*, 'upon the ground,'

hŭmo is sometimes used, with or without a preposition; as, *In hŭmo ărēnōsā.* Ovid.   *Sēdēre hŭmo nūdā.* Id.

(2.) When a genitive denoting the possessor follows, either *dŏmi* or *in dŏmo* is used; as, *Dēprĕhensus* dŏmi *Cæsăris.* Cic.   Dŏmi *illius fuisti.* Id.   In dŏmo *Cæsăris.* Id.   In dŏmo *ejus.* Nep.

(3.) The ablative *dŏmo* for *dŏmi* also occurs, but not in Cicero; as, *Ego id nunc expĕrior* dŏmo. Plaut.   Dŏmo *se tĕnēre.* Nep.   Dŏmo *abditus.* Suet.   *Bello* for *belli* is found in Livy—Dŏmi *bellōque.* So, also, *hŭmo* for *hŭmi ; Strātus hŭmo.* Stat.   *Fīgit* hŭmo *plantas.* Virg.: and in hŭmo *lūmen fīgit.* Ovid.

(4.) *Terræ* is sometimes used like *hŭmi ;* as, *Sacra* terræ *cēlāvimus.* Liv.   *Prōjectus* terræ. Virg.   *Ignes* terræ *condit.* Luc.   So, also, *ărēnæ ; Truncum rĕlĭquit* ărēnæ. Virg.: and *vīcīnīæ ; Proxĭmæ* vīcīnīæ *hăbĭtat.* Plaut.

(5.) The genitive of names of towns, *dŏmi, mīlitiæ,* etc., is supposed by some to depend on a noun understood; as, *urbe, oppĭdo, ædibus, sŏlo, lŏco, tempŏre,* etc., but see a different explanation above in Note.

GENITIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

II. Certain adverbs are followed by the genitive. See § 212, R. 4.

III. The genitive plural sometimes depends on the preposition *tĕnus ;* as,

Cūmārum tĕnus, As far as Cumæ. Cœl.   *Crūrum tĕnus.* Virg.   *Lătĕrum tĕnus.* Id.   *Urbium Corcȳræ tĕnus.* Liv.—For the ablative after *tĕnus,* and for the place of the preposition, see § 241, and R. 1.

DATIVE.

§ **222.** 1. The dative is the case of reference, as it denotes the object with reference to which the subject acts, or in reference to which it possesses any specified quality ; or, in other words, the object *for* which, to the *benefit* or *loss* of which, any thing *is* or *is done.* Hence, in distinction from the dative of the *end* (§ 227) the dative of reference is called *datīvus commŏdi et incommŏdi,* the dative of advantage and disadvantage ; as,

Scrībo vōbis *hunc lĭbrum,* I write this book *for you. Prōsum* tĭbi, or Tĭbi *ūtilis sum,* I am useful *to you.*

2. Hence the dative of advantage and disadvantage may be used (*a*) with adjectives and particles whose meaning is incomplete unless the object is mentioned in reference to which the quality exists. (*b*) With verbs both transitive and intransitive. If transitive they take an accusative of the nearer and a dative of the remoter object, if intransitive they take a dative only. (*c*) With certain verbs compounded with prepositions, after which the dative is used instead of the case which the preposition, if separate, would govern. (*d*) After a few verbal substantives derived from verbs which govern a dative.

DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

3. A noun limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the dative, to denote the *object* to which the quality is directed ; as,

Utĭlis agris, Useful to the fields Juv. *Jūcundus ămīcis*, Agreeable to his friends. Mart. *Inĭmīcus quiēti*, Unfriendly to rest. Id. *Charta inūtĭlis scrĭbendo*, Paper not useful for writing. Plin.

NOTE. The dative is commonly translated by the prepositions *to* or *for;* but sometimes by other prepositions, or without a preposition.

REMARK 1. Adjectives signifying *useful, pleasant, friendly, fit, like, inclined, ready, easy, clear, equal,* and their opposites, also those signifying *near,* many compounded with *con,* and verbals in *bĭlis,* are followed by the dative; as,

Fēlix tuis, Propitious *to your friends.* Virg. *Orātio ingrāta* Gallis, A speech displeasing *to the Gauls.* Cæs. *Amīcus* tyrannĭdi, Friendly *to tyranny.* Nep. Lābōri *inhăbĭlis,* Unsuited *to labor.* Colum. Patri *sĭmĭlis,* Like *his father.* Cic. *Nihil tam est* Lȳsiæ *dīversum, quam Isocrătes. Aptum* tempŏri. Id. Mălo *prō-nus.* Sen. *Promptus* sēdĭtiōni. Tac. Cuivis *făcĭle est.* Ter. Mihi *certum est.* Cic. *Par* frātri *tuo.* Id. *Falsa* vēris *finĭtĭma sunt.* Id. Ocŭli *concŏlōres* corpŏri. Colum. Multis bŏnis *flēbĭlis.* Hor. *Mors est terrĭbĭlis* iis, *quōrum,* etc. Cic.

(*a.*) The following are some of the adjectives included in Rem. 1, viz. *grātus, accĕptus, dulcis, jūcundus, lætus, suāvis; ingrātus, insuāvis, injūcundus, mŏlestus, grăvis, ăcerbus, ŏdiōsus, tristis ;—ūtĭlis, inūtĭlis, bŏnus, sălūber, sălūtāris, fructuōsus; călămĭtōsus, damnōsus, funestus, noxius, pestĭfer, pernĭciōsus, exĭtiōsus:—ămīcus, bĕnĕvŏlus, cārus, fămĭliāris, æquus, fīdus, fĭdēlis, prŏpĭtius, sĕcundus; inĭmīcus, adversus, æmŭlus, ăliēnus, contrārius, infestus, infĭdus, inīquus, īrātus;—aptus, accommŏdātus, appŏsĭtus, hăbĭlis, ĭdōneus, opportūnus; ineptus, inhăbĭlis, impor-tūnus, inconvĕniens;—æquālis, par, impar, dispar, sĭmĭlis, dissĭmĭlis, absĭmĭlis, disсŏlor:—prōnus, prōclīvis, prŏpensus, promptus, părātus:—făcĭlis, diffĭcĭlis:— ăpertus, conspĭcuus, mănĭfestus, perspĭcuus, obscūrus, certus, compertus, nōtus, ambĭguus, dŭbius, ignōtus, incertus, insŏlĭtus:—vīcīnus, finĭtĭmus, confīnis, con-termĭnus, prŏpior, proxĭmus, cognātus, concŏlor, concors, congruus, consanguĭneus, consentāneus, consŏnus, convĕniens, contĭguus, continuus, continens.*

(*b.*) Many adjectives of other significations, including some compounds of *ob, sub,* and *sŭper,* as *obnoxius, obvius, subjectus, supplex,* and *sŭperstes,* are also followed by a dative of the object.

(*c.*) After verbals in *bĭlis,* the dative is usually rendered by the preposition *by;* as, *Tĭbi crēdĭbĭlis sermo,* A speech credible to you, *i. e.* worthy to be believed by you. Ovid.

(*d.*) The expression *dicto audiens,* signifying obedient, is followed by the dative; as, *Sȳrācūsāni* nōbis *dicto audientes sunt.* Cic. *Audiens dicto fŭit* jussis *măgistrātuum.* Nep. In this phrase, *dicto* is a dative limiting *audiens,* and the words *dicto audiens* seem to form a compound equivalent to *ŏbēdiens,* and, like that, followed by a dative; thus, *Nec plebs* nōbis *dicto audiens atque ŏbēdiens sit.* Liv. So *dicto ŏbēdiens;* as, *Fŭtūra es dicto ŏbēdiens, annon,* patri? Plaut.

REM. 2. (*a.*) The adjectives *æquālis, affīnis, ăliēnus, cognōmĭnis, commūnis, contrārius, fīdus, insuētus, par, dispar, pĕcūliāris, proprius, prŏpinquus, săcer, sĭmĭlis, assĭmĭlis, consĭmĭlis, dissĭmĭlis, sŏcius, vīcīnus, sŭperstes, supplex,* and some others, instead of a dative of the object, are sometimes followed by a genitive; as, *Par hujus,* Equal to him. Lucan. Proprium *est* ōrātōris *ornāte dĭcĕre.* Cic. But most of these words, when thus used, seem rather to be taken substantively; as, *Æquālis ejus,* His contemporary. Cic.

(*b.*) *Sĭmĭlis, assĭmĭlis, consĭmĭlis, dissĭmĭlis, par* and *dispar,* take the genitive, when an internal resemblance, or a resemblance in character or disposition, is to be expressed, and hence we always find *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, sĭmĭlis;* as, *Plūres rēges* Rōmŭli *quam* Nŭmæ *sĭmĭles.* Liv.

(*c.*) *Amīcus, inĭmīcus,* and *fămĭliāris,* owing to their character as substantives, take a genitive even in the superlative; as, *Hŏmo ămīcissĭmus nostrōrum hŏmĭnum,*—very friendly to our countrymen. Cic. On the other hand, *hostis,* though a substantive, is sometimes used like an adjective, being modified by

an adverb, and taking an object in the dative; as, *Exspectantibus omnibus quisnam esset tam impius, tam dēmens,* tam diis hŏmĭnĭbus*que* hostis, *qui,* etc. Cf. § 277, R. 1.

REM. 3. Some adjectives with the dative are followed by another case denoting a different relation; as, *Mens sĭbi conscia* recti, A mind conscious to itself of rectitude. Virg. See § 213, R. 7.

REM. 4. Many adjectives, instead of the dative of the object, are often followed by an accusative with a preposition.

(1.) Adjectives signifying useful, fit, and the opposite, take an accusative of the thing with *ad,* but only a dative of the person; as, *Hŏmo* ad *nullam* rem *ūtĭlis.* Cic. *Lŏcus aptus* ad insĭdias. Id.

(2.) Adjectives denoting motion or tendency, take an accusative with *ad* more frequently than a dative; as, *Pĭger* ad pœnas, ad præmia *vēlox,* Ovid; Ad *ălĭquem* morbum *prōclīvior,* Cic.; Ad *omne* făcīnus *părātus,* Id.; *Prōnus* ad fĭdem, Liv.;—sometimes with *in;* as, *Cĕler* in pugnam. Sil.

(3.) Many adjectives, signifying an affection of the mind, may have an accusative of the object with *in, erga,* or *adversus,* instead of the dative; as, *Fĭdēlis* in fĭlios. Just. *Māter ăcerba* in *suos* partus. Ovid. *Grātus* erga me. Cic. *Grātum* adversus te. Id. So *Dissĭmĭlis* in dŏmĭnum. Tac.

(4.) Adjectives signifying like, equal, common, etc., when plural, are often followed by the accusative with *inter;* as, Inter se *sĭmĭles.* Cic. Hæc sunt inter eos *commūnia.* Id. Inter se *dīversi.* Id.

REM. 5. *Prŏpior* and *proxĭmus,* instead of the dative, have sometimes, like their primitive *prŏpe,* an accusative; as, *Quod vĭtium prŏpius* virtūtem *ĕrat.* Sall. *P. Crassus proxĭmus* māre Oceănum *hĭĕmārat.* Cæs. *Ager, qui proxĭmus* fīnem *Mĕgălŏpŏlĭtārum est.* Liv. Cf. § 238, 1.

REM. 6. (*a.*) Some adjectives, instead of the dative, have at times an ablative with a preposition. Thus, *par, commūnis, consentāneus, discors,* with *cum;* as, *Quem părem* cum lĭbĕris *fēcisti.* Sall. *Consentāneum* cum *iis* lĭtĕris. Cic. *Cīvitas* sēcum *discors.* Liv. So *ălĭēnus* and *dīversus* with *a* or *ab;* as, *Ălĭēnus* a me, Ter.; A rătĭōne *dīversus,* Cic.; or without a preposition; as, *Ălĭēnum nostrā* ămīcĭtĭā. Id.—(*b.*) *Frētus,* which regularly takes the ablative, is in Livy construed with the dative; as, fortūnæ *frētus;* nulli rei *frētus,* etc. Cf. § 244.— (*c.*) The participial adjectives *junctus* and *conjunctus,* instead of the dative, take sometimes the ablative eithei with or without *cum.*

REM. 7. *Idem* is sometimes followed by the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Jūpĭter* omnĭbus *īdem.* Virg. *Invītum qui servat, idem făcit* occĭdenti. Hor. In the first example, *omnĭbus* is a dative of the object; in the second, the dative follows *īdem,* in imitation of the Greek construction with αὐτός, and is equivalent to *quod occĭdens,* or *quod făcit is, qui occīdit. Sĭmĭlis* is construed in the same manner in Hor. Sat. 1, 3, 122. *Idem* is generally followed not by a case, but by *qui, ac, atque, ut, quăsi,* or *quam;* sometimes by the preposition *cum.* Cf. § 207, R. 27, (*d.*) *Sĭmĭlis* and *par* are sometimes, like *īdem,* followed by *ac* and *atque.*

REM. 8. Some verbal substantives are followed by the dative, when derived from verbs governing the dative; as, *Justĭtia est obtempĕrātio* scriptis lēgĭbus instĭtūtisque *pŏpŭlōrum.* Cic. *Trādĭtio ălĭcūjus rei* altĕri. Id. *Exprobrātio* cuiquam *vĕtĕris fortūnæ.* Liv.

NOTE. A dative of the object often follows *esse* and other verbs, in connection with a predicate nominative or accusative, but such dative is dependent, not on the noun, but on the verb. Cf. § 227, R. 4.

DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 223. A noun limiting the meaning of a verb, is put in the dative, to denote the *object to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done; as,

Mea dŏmus tĭbi *pătet,* My house is open *to you.* Cic. *Pars optāre lŏcum tecto,* A part choose a site *for a building.* Virg. Tĭbi *sĕris,* tĭbi *mĕtis,* You sow *for yourself,* you reap *for yourself.* Plaut. *Licet* nēmĭni *contra patriam dūcĕre exercĭtum,* It is not lawful *for any one* to lead an army against his country. Cic. *Hoc* tĭbi *prōmitto,* I promise *you* this. Id. *Hæret* lătĕri *lētālis ărundo.* Virg. Surdo *fābulam narras.* Hor. *Mihi responsum dĕdit.* Virg. *Sic vos non vōbis fertis ărātra, bŏves.* Id. *Omnĭbus bŏnis expĕdit salvam esse rempūblĭcam.* Cic. *Aptat* hăbendo *ensem.* Virg.

NOTE. The dative is thus used after all verbs, whether transitive or intransitive, personal or impersonal, and in both voices, provided their signification admits a reference to a remoter object, for whom or to whose benefit or injury any thing is done. In the passive voice, from their nature, neuter verbs can only be so construed impersonally. Cf. § 142, 1, and § 222, 2.

REMARK 1. The dative after many verbs is rendered not by *to* or *for,* but by other prepositions, or without a preposition. Many intransitive Latin verbs are translated into English by verbs transitive, and the dative after them is usually rendered like the object of a transitive verb.—Most verbs after which the signs *to* and *for* are not used with the dative, are enumerated in this and the following sections.

REM. 2. Many verbs signifying to favor, please, trust, assist, and their contraries, also to command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, and be angry, take a dative of the object.

NOTE. The neuter verbs comprehended in this rule generally express in the verbal form the meaning of those adjectives, which are followed by the dative, (cf. § 222, R. 1,) Thus, (*a.*) *Illa* tĭbi *făvet,* She favors *you,* or is favorable *to you.* Ovid. *Mihi plăcēbat Pompōnius, mĭnĭme displĭcēbat.* Cic. *Qui* sĭbi *fĭdit.* Hor. *Non licet sui commŏdi causa nŏcēre* altĕri. Cic. *Non invĭdētur illi* ætāti *sed etiam făvētur.* Id. *Despĕrat* salūti suæ. Id. *Nĕque* mĭhi *vestra decrēta auxĭliantur.* Sall. *Impĕrat aut servit collecta pecūnia* cuique. Hor. *Obēdire et pārēre* vŏluntāti. Cic. *Quŏniam factiōni inimĭcōrum resistĕre nĕquivĕrit.* Sall. Mĭhi *mĭnābātur.* Cic. *Irasci* inĭmīcis. Cæs.

(*b.*) So *Adūlor, assentior, blandior, commŏdo, făveo, grātĭfĭcor, grātor, grātŭlor,* and its verbal *grātŭlābundus, ignosco, indulgeo, lēnōcĭnor, palpor, parco, plaudo, respondeo, stŭdeo, suppārāsĭtor; æmŭlor, incommŏdo, invĭdeo, nŏceo, obsum, offĭcio;—arrīdeo, plăceo; displĭceo;—crēdo, fīdo, confīdo; despēro, diffīdo;—admĭnicŭlor, auxĭlior, mĕdeor, mĕdĭcor, ŏpĭtŭlor, patrōcĭnor, prōsum, subvĕnio, succurro; dēsum, insĭdior;—impĕro, mando, mŏdĕror, præcĭpio, tempĕro; auscŭlto, morĭgĕror, ŏbēdio, obsĕcundo, obsĕquor, obtempĕro, pāreo, dicto audiens sum;—ancillor, famŭlor, mĭnistro, servio, inservio, præstŏlor;—adversor, refrāgor, obsto, obtrecto, rĕluctor, rĕnītor, rĕpugno, rĕsisto,* and, chiefly in the poets, *bello, certo, luctor, pugno;—mĭnor, commĭnor, intermĭnor;—īrascor, succenseo, stŏmăchor.*—To these may be added *æquo, ădæquo, convīcior, dēgĕnĕro, excello, nūbo, suppĕdĭto, prævārĭcor, rĕcĭpio* (to promise), *rēnuncio, suādeo, persuādeo, dissuādeo, supplĭco, vaco, vĭdeor,* and sometimes *misceo* and *lăteo:*—also the impersonals *accĭdit, convĕnit, condūcit, contingit, dĕcet, dŏlet, expĕdit, lĭbet, lĭbet,* or *lŭbet, lĭquet, plăcet,* etc.—(*c.*) Intransitive verbs governing a dative are often used impersonally in the passive with the same case; as, *mĭhi invĭdētur,* I am envied. *Mĭhi malĕdīcĭtur,* I am reviled. *Mĭhi parcĭtur,* I am spared. Hor. *Hoc persuādētur mĭhi,* I am persuaded of this.

(1,) (*a.*) Many of the above verbs, which, as intransitive, take the dative, sometimes become transitive and are followed by an accusative; as, *adūlor, auscŭlto, blandior, dēgĕnĕro, despēro, indulgeo, lăteo, mĕdeor, mĕdĭcor, mŏdĕror, obtrecto, præstŏlor, prōvideo,* etc.; as, *Adūlāri* aliquem. Cic. Hanc *căve dēgĕnĕres.* Ovid. *Indulgeo* me. Ter. *Hujus* adventum *præstŏlans.* Cæs. *Prōvidēre* rem *frūmentāriam.* Id.—Sometimes also by a preposition and the ablative or accusative; as, A Stōĭcis *dēgĕnĕrāvit Pănætius.* Cic. De rēpūblĭcā *despērāre.* Id. *Obtrectārunt* inter se. Nep.—or by a dependent clause; as, Quæ *despērat tractāta* nĭtescĕre posse, *rĕlinquit.* Hor.

(*b.*) Others, as transitive verbs, have, with the dative, an accusative, expressed or understood; as, *impĕro, mando, mĭnistro, mĭnor, commĭnor, intermĭnor, præcĭpio, rĕcĭpio, rĕnuncio,* etc.; as, Equĭtes *impĕrat cīvĭtātĭbus;* where *cōgendos* is perhaps to be supplied, He enjoins upon the states the providing of cavalry. Cæs. See § 274, R. 5. *Mĭnistrāre* victum *ălĭcui.* Varr. Dēflagrātiōnem *urbi et Ītălĭæ tōti mĭnābātur.* Cic.

(*c.*) Æquo and *ădæquo* are construed with the accusative and either the dative or *cum* with the ablative.—*Invĭdeo* takes either a single dative of the person or thing, a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing; as, *Hŏnōrem mĭhi invĭdent.* Hor.; or, when *invĭdēre* is used in the sense of *prīvāre*, a dative of the person and an ablative of the thing; as, *Non invĭdērunt laude suā mŭlĭĕrĭbus.* Liv. In Horace, by a Greek construction, the genitive is once used instead of the accusative or ablative of the thing; as, *Nĕque ille sēpŏsĭti cĭcĕris nec longæ invĭdet ăvēnæ.*

(*d.*) *Cēdo,* used transitively, takes a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing; but sometimes the thing is expressed by the ablative; as, *cēdĕre ălĭcui possessiōne hortōrum.* So, also, *concēdo tĭbi lŏcum,* or *concēdo tĭbi lŏco.*

(2.) Many verbs which, from their significations, might be included in the above classes, are, as transitive verbs, only followed by an accusative; as, *dēlecto, jŭvo, adjŭvo, adjŭto, lædo, offendo,* etc.—*Jŭbeo* is followed by the accusative with an infinitive, and sometimes by the accusative alone, or the dative with the infinitive or subjunctive; as, *Jŭbeo te bĕne spērāre.* Cic. *Lex jŭbet ea quæ făcienda sunt.* Id. *Ubi* Brĭtannĭco *jussit exsurgĕre.* Tac. Quĭbus *jussĕrat, ut instantĭbus rĕsistĕrent.* Id.—*Fīdo* and *confīdo* are often followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition; as, *Fīdĕre* cursu. Ovid. Cf. § 245.

§ **224.** Many verbs compounded with these eleven prepositions, *ăd, antĕ, cŏn, ĭn, intĕr, ŏb, post, præ, prō, sŭb,* and *sŭpĕr,* are followed by the dative; as,

Annue cœptis, Be favorable to our *undertakings.* Virg. Rōmānis ĕquĭtĭbus *lĭtĕræ affĕruntur,* Letters are brought *to the Roman knights.* Cic. *Antĕcellĕre* omnĭbus, To excel *all.* Id. *Antĕtŭlit* īræ rĕlĭgiōnem. Nep. *Audetque* vīris *concurrĕre* virgo. Virg. *Exercĭtum* exercĭtui, *dūces* dūcĭbus *compărāre.* Liv. *Immĭnet* his *aër.* Ovid. Pĕcŏri *signum impressit.* Virg. *Nox* prælio *intervēnit.* Liv. *Interdixit* histriōnĭbus *scēnam.* Suet. Meis commŏdis *offĭcis et obstas.* Cic. *Cum* se hostium tēlis *objēcissent.* Id. *Posthăbui mea sēria* lūdo. Virg. *Certămĭni* præsēdit. Suet. Hībernis *Labiēnum* præpŏsuit. Cæs. Gĕnĭbus *prōcumbĕre.* Ovid. Mĭsĕris *succurrĕre* disco. Virg. Iis *subsĭdia submittēbat.* Cæs. Tĭmĭdis *supervēnit* Ægle. Virg.

NOTE 1. This rule implies that the compound retains the meaning of the preposition; and the dative following such compound is then used instead of the case governed by the preposition. When such compounds are transitive they have with the dative an accusative also, like other transitive verbs.

1. *Accēdo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, ădĕquĭto, adhæreo, adjăceo, adno, adnăto, adsto, adstĭpŭlor, adsum, adversor, affulgeo, allābor, allūdo, annuo, appāreo, applaudo, apprŏpinquo, arrēpo, arrīdeo, aspīro, assentior, assĭdeo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo;—aldo, adhĭbeo, adjĭcio, adjungo, admŏveo, adverto, advolvo, affĕro, affīgo, allĭgo, appōno, applĭco, aspergo.*

2. *Antĕcēdo, antĕcello, anteeo, antesto, antĕvĕnio, antĕverto;—antĕfĕro, antĕhăbeo, antĕpōno.*

3. *Cŏhæreo, collūdo, concĭno, congruo, consentio, consŏno, consuesco, convĭvo,* and, chiefly in the poets, *coĕo, concumbo, concurro, contendo;—confĕro, conjungo, compăro, compōno.*

4. *Incĭdo, incŭbo, incumbo, indormio, ingĕmisco, ĭnhæreo, ĭnhio, innascor, innĭtor, insĭdeo, insisto, insto, insūdo, insulto, invādo, invĭgilo, illacrĭmo, illūdo, immĭneo, immŏrior, immŏror, impendeo, insum;—immisceo, impertio, impōno, imprĭmo, incĭdo, inclūdo, induo, infĕro, ingĕro, injĭcio, insĕro, inspergo, insuesco, ĭnŭro.*

5. *Intercēdo, intercĭdo, interclūdo, interjăceo, intermĭco, intersum, intervĕnio;—interdīco, interjĭcio, interpōno.*

6. *Obambŭlo, ŏberro, ŏbĕquĭto, obluctor, obmurmŭro, obrēpo, obsto, obsisto, obstrĕpo, obsum, obtrecto, obvĕnio, obversor, occumbo, occurro, occurso, offĭcio;—obdūco, objĭcio, offĕro, offundo, oppōno.*

7 *Postfĕro, posthăbeo, postpōno, postpŭto, postscrībo.*

8. *Præcēdo, præcurro, præo, prælūceo, præmĭneo, prænĭteo, præsĭdeo, præsum, prævăleo, prævertor;—præfĕro, præfĭcio, præpōno.*

9. *Prŏcumbo, prŏfĭcio, prŏpugno, prospĭcio, prōvĭdeo.*

10. *Succēdo, succresco, succumbo, succurro, suffĭcio, suffrăgor, sŭbŏleo, subjăceo, subrēpo, subsum, subvĕnio;—subdo, subjĭcio, subjŭgo, submitto, suppōno, substerno.*

11. *Sŭpercurro, sŭpersto, sŭpersum, sŭpervĕnio, sŭpervīvo.*

NOTE 2. In some verbs compounded with prepositions the meaning of the preposition is lost. Such compounds are either not followed by a dative, or the case depends, not on the preposition, but on the signification of the verb, according to § 223.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) Some verbs, compounded with *ăb, dē, ex, circum,* and *contrā,* are occasionally followed by the dative; as, *absum, dēsum, dēlābor, despēro, excĭdo, circumdo, circumfundo, circumjĭceo, circumjĭcio, contrādĭco, contrăvo;* as, *Serta* căpĭti *dēlapsa,* The garlands having fallen from his head. Virg. *Numquĭ nummi excĭdērunt* tĭbi? Plaut. *Tigris* urbi *circumfundĭtur.* Plin. Sibi *despērans.* Cæs.—(*b.*) *Circumdo* and *circumfundo* take either an accusative of the thing with a dative of the person, or an ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person; as, *circumdo ălĭcui custōdias,* or *circumdo ălĭquem custōdiis. Aspergo, inspergo, dōno, impertio, exuo,* and *induo,* are construed in the same manner. Cf. § 251, R. 2.

REM. 2. Some verbs of repelling and taking away (most of which are compounds of *ăb, dē,* or *ex*), are sometimes followed by the dative, though more commonly by the ablative; as, *ăbĭgo, abrŏgo, abscindo, aufĕro, ădĭmo, arceo, dēfendo, dēmo, dēpello, dērŏgo, dētrăho, ērĭpio, ēruo, excŭtio, exĭmo, extorqueo, extrăho, exuo, prŏhĭbeo, surrĭpio.* Thus, *Nec* mĭhi *te ērĭpient,* Nor shall they take you from me. Ovid. *Solstĭtium* pĕcŏri *dēfendĭte.* Virg. *Hunc arcēbis* pĕcŏri. Id. So rarely *abrumpo, ălĭeno, fŭror,* and *răpio.*

REM. 3. Some verbs of differing (compounds of *dī* or *dĭs*) likewise occur with the dative, instead of the ablative with the preposition *ăb,* or poetically with the ablative alone; as, *diffĕro, discrĕpo, discordo, dissentio, dissĭdeo, disto;* as, *Quantum simplex hĭlārisque* nĕpōti *discrĕpet, et quantum discordet, parcus* ăvāro. Hor. *Distăbit* infĭdo scurræ *ămīcus.* Hor. Græcis *Tuscănĭcæ* stătuæ *diffĕrunt.* Quint. *Cōmœdia diffĕrt* sermōni. Hor. So likewise *misceo;* as, *Mista* mŏdestiæ *grăvĭtas.* Cic.

REM. 4. Many verbs compounded with prepositions, especially with *ad, con,* and *in,* instead of the dative, either constantly or occasionally take the case of the preposition, which is frequently repeated. Sometimes, also, a preposition of similar signification is used; as, *Ad* prīmam vōcem *tĭmĭdas advertĭtis* aures. Ovid. *Nēmo* eum antĕcessit. Nep. *Saxa vādes* sōlā *coălescĕre* calce. Lucr. *Infĕrant* omnia in ignem. Cæs. *Silex incumbĕbat* ad amnem. Virg. *Innīxus* mŏdĕrāmĭne nāvīs. Ovid. In Pansam *frātrem innīxus.* Plin. *Conferte hanc* pācem cum illo bello. Cic. In this substitution of one preposition for another, *ăd* is used for *in,* and *in* for *ăd; ăb* for *ex; ăd, antĕ, contrā,* and *in,* for *ŏb; ăd* and *antĕ,* for *prō.*

REM. 5. Neuter verbs of motion or of rest in a place, when compounded with the prepositions, *ăd, antĕ, cŏn, in,* etc., either take the dative, or, acquiring an active signification, are followed by the accusative; as, *Helvētii rĕlĭquos* Gallos *virtūte præcēdunt,* The Helvetii surpass the other Gauls in valor. Cæs. *Utèrque,* Isocrătem *ætāte præcurrit.* Cic. So *præo, præsto, prævertro, præcello.* See § 233, (3.)

§ **225.** I. Verbs compounded with *sătis, bĕne,* and *măle,* are followed by the dative; as,

Et nātūræ *et* lēgĭbus *sătisfēcit*, He satisfied both nature and the laws. Cic. Tĭbi *dii bĕnĕfăciunt omnes*, May all the gods bless you. Plaut. But also, Amīcum erga *bĕne fēci*. Id. *Mălĕdīcit utrīque.* Hor. So *sătisdo*, *bĕnĕdīco*, *mălĕfăcio*.

NOTE.   These compounds are often written separately; and the dative always depends not on *sătis*, *bĕne*, and *male*, but on the simple verb. So, also, *bĕne* and *male alĭcui vŏlo*; as, Tĭbi *bĕne ex ănĭmo* vŏlo. Ter. Illi *ĕgo ex omnĭbus* optime vŏlo. Plaut. *Non* sĭbi mále vult. Petron. In like manner *valēre dīco*, and *vale dīco;* as, *Augustus discē-dens* (e *cūriā*) *sĕdentĭbus singŭlis vălēre dīcēbat.* Suet. Tĭbi *vălēdīcĕre non licet grātis.* Sen.—In late writers *bĕnĕdīco* and *mălĕdīco* sometimes take the accusative.

II. Verbs in the passive voice are sometimes followed by a dative of the agent, chiefly in the poets and the later prose writers; as, *Quidquid in hac causā* mĭhi *susceptum est.* Cic. *Nĕque cernĭtur* ulli, Nor is he seen by any one. Virg. *Nulla tuārum audīta* mĭhi *nĕque vīsa sorōrum.* Id. *Barbărus hīc ĕgo sum, quia non intellĭgor* ulli. Ovid. But the agent after passives is usually in the ablative with *a* or *ab*. See § 248, I.

III. The participle in *dus* is followed by a dative of the agent; as,

Unda omnĭbus *ēnāvĭganda*, The wave over which (we) all must pass. Hor. Nōbis, *cum sĕmel occĭdit brĕvis lux*, *Nox est perpĕtua ūna dormienda.* Catull. *Adhĭbenda est* nōbis *dilĭgentia*, We must use diligence. Cic. *Vestĭgia summōrum hŏmĭnum* sĭbi *tuenda esse dīcit.* Id. *Si vis me flēre*, *dŏlendum est prīmum* ipsi tĭbi. Hor. *Făciendum* mĭhi *pŭtāvi*, *ut respondērem.* Id.

REMARK 1. The dative is sometimes wanting when the agent is indefinite; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sāna in corpŏre sāno.* Juv. *Hic vincendum aut mŏriendum*, mīlites, est. Liv. In such examples, *tĭbi*, *vōbis*, *nōbis*, *hŏmĭnĭbus*, etc., may be supplied. Cf. § 141, R. 2.

REM. 2. The participle in *dus* sometimes, though rarely, has, instead of the dative of the agent, an ablative with *ā* or *ăb*; as, *Non eos in deōrum immortālium nŭmĕro vĕnĕrandos* a vōbis *et cŏlendos pŭtātos?* Cic. *Hæc a me in dīcendo præ-tĕreunda non sunt.* Id.—The dative after participles in *dus* is by some referred to § 226.

IV. Verbs signifying *motion* or *tendency* are followed by an accusative with *ăd* or *ĭn;* as,

Ad templum Pallădis ībant. Virg. *Ad prætōrem hŏmĭnem traxit.* Cic. *Vergit ad septemtriōnes.* Cæs. In conspectum *vĕnīre.* Nep.
So *curro*, *dūco*, *fĕro*, *festīno*, *fŭgio*, *inclīno*, *lĕgo*, *mitto*, *pergo*, *porto*, *præcĭpĭto*, *prŏpĕro*, *tendo*, *tollo*, *vădo*, *verto*.

REMARK 1. So likewise verbs of *calling*, *exciting*, etc.; as, *Eurum ad se vŏcat.* Virg. *Prŏvŏcasse ad pugnam.* Cic. So *ănĭmo*, *hortor*, *incĭto*, *invīto*, *lăcesso*, *stĭmŭlo*, *suscĭto;* to which may be added *attĭneo*, *conformo*, *pertĭneo*, and *specto*.

REM. 2. But the dative is sometimes used after these verbs; as, *Clāmor it* cœlo. Virg. *Dum* tĭbi *lĭtĕræ meæ vĕniant.* Cic. *Grĕgem vĭrĭdi compellĕre* hĭbisco. Virg. *Sēdĭbus hunc rĕfer ante suis.* Id. After *vĕnio*·both constructions are used at the same time; as, *Vĕnit* mĭhi in mentem. Cic. *Vĕnit* mĭhi in suspĭciōnem. Nep. *Eum vēnisse* Germānis in ămīcĭtiam *cognŏvĕrat.* Cæs. *Prŏpinquo* (to approach) takes the dative only.

REM. 3. Sometimes also verbs signifying motion are followed by an accusative of place without a preposition, a supine in *um*, an infinitive, or an adverb of place; as, *Rōmam prŏfĕctus est. Ite* dŏmum. Rus *ībam.* *Lāvīnia vĕnit* lĭtōra. Virg. *Nĕque ĕgo te* derīsum *vĕnio.* Plaut. *Non nos Libŷcos* pŏpŭlāre *pĕnātes vĕnīmus.* Virg. Huc *vĕnit.* Plaut. See §§ 237, 276, II. 271, N. 2.

REM. 4. After *do*, *scrībo*, or *mitto lĭtĕras*, the person for whom they are written or to whom they are sent, is put either in the dative or in the accusative with *ad;* as, *Ex eo lŏco* tĭbi *lĭtĕras ante dĕdĕrāmus.* Cic. *Vulturcius lĭtĕras sĭbi*

ad Catilīnam *dătas esse, dīcēbat.* Id. *Cæsar scribit* Labiēno *cum,* etc. Cæs.   Ad me *Cŭrius de te scripsit.* Cic.   But to give one a letter to deliver is also expressed by *dăre lĭtĕras ălĭcui,* and also the delivery of the letter by the bearer.

§ **226.** *Est* is followed by a dative denoting a *possessor ;—* the thing possessed being the subject of the verb.

Est thus used may generally be translated by the verb *to have* with the dative as its subject; as, *Est* mĭhi *dŏmi păter,* I have a father at home. Virg. *Sunt* nōbis *mītia pōma,* We have mellow apples. Id. *Grātiā* nōbis *ŏpus est tuā,* We have need of your favor. Cic. Innŏcentiæ *plus pĕrīcŭli quam hŏnōris est.* Sall.   *An nescis longas* rēgĭbus *esse mănus ?* Ovid.   So with an infinitive as the subject, *Nec* tĭbi *sit dūros ăcuisse in prælia dentes.* Tib. 4, 3, 3.   The first and second persons of *sum* are not thus construed.

REMARK 1. Hence *mĭhi est nōmen* signifies, I have the name, my name is, or I am called.   The proper name is put either in the nominative, the dative, or the genitive.   See § 204, R. 8.   So also *cognōmen, cognōmentum,* and, in Tacitus, *vŏcābŭlum, est mĭhi.*—Sometimes, also, a possessive adjective agreeing with *nōmen,* etc., supplies the place of the proper name ; as, *Est mĭhi nōmen* Tarquĭnĭum. Gell.   Mercŭriāle *impŏsuĕre mĭhi cognōmen.* Hor.

REM. 2. The dative is used with a similar signification after *fŏre, suppĕtit, ăbest, deest,* and *dēfit* ; as, *Pauper ĕnim non est,* cui *rērum suppĕtit ūsus.* Hor. *Si* mĭhi *cauda fŏret, cercōpĭthēcus ĕram.* Mart.   *Dēfuit ars* vōbis. Ovid. *Non dēfŏre* Arsăcĭdis *virtūtem.* Tac.   *Lac* mĭhi *non dēfit.* Virg.   *Hoc ūnum illi ab- fuit.* Cic.

REM. 3. With the dative of the person after *est* Sallust and Tacitus sometimes join, by a Greek idiom, *vŏlens, cŭpiens,* and *invītus;* as, *Quia nĕque plēbi mīlitia vŏlenti* (esse) *pŭtābātur,* Because the common people were not thought to like the war. Sall.   *Ut quĭbusque bellum invītis aut cŭpientĭbus ĕrat,* According as each liked or disliked the war. Tac.

DATIVE OF THE END OR PURPOSE.

§ **227.** *Sum,* and several other verbs, are followed by two datives, one of which denotes the *object to which,* the other the *end for which,* any thing is, or is done ; as,

Mĭhi *maxĭmæ est* cūræ, It is a very great care to me. Cic.   *Spēro* nōbis *hanc conjunctĭōnem* vŏluptāti *fŏre,* I hope this union will afford us pleasure. Id. Mātri *puellam* dōno *dĕdit.* Ter.   *Fābio laudi dătum est.* Cic.   Vĭtio *id* tĭbi *ver- tunt.* Plaut.   *Id* tĭbi hŏnōri *hăbētur.* Cic.   *Mātūrāvit* collēgæ vĕnīre auxĭlio. Liv. Cui *bŏno fuit ?* To whom was it an advantage ? Cic.

REMARK 1.   The verbs after which two datives occur, are *sum, fŏre, fīo, do, dōno, dūco, habeo, rĕlinquo, trĭbuo, verto ;* also *curro, eo, mitto, prŏfĭciscor, vĕnio, appŏno, as- signo, cēdo, comparo, păteo, suppĕdĭto, ĕmo,* and some others.

REM. 2.   The dative of the *end* or *purpose* is often used after these verbs, without the dative of the object ; as,

Exemplo *est formīca,* The ant is (serves for) an example. Hor.   *Absentium bŏna* dīvīsui *fuĕre.* Liv.   *Rĕliquit* pignōri *pŭtāmĭna.* Plaut.   *Quæ* ēsui *et* pōtui *sunt.* Gell.   *Esse dērīsui,* To be a subject of ridicule. Tac.   *Rĕceptui cănĕre,* To sound a retreat. Cæs.   *Alĭquid* dōti *dīcăre,* To set out as dowry. Cic.

REM. 3. (*a.*) The verb *sum,* with a dative of the end, may be variously rendered ; as by the words *brings, affords, serves, does,* etc. The sign *for* is often omitted with this dative, especially after *sum;* instead of it, *as,* or some other particle, may at times be used ; as,

Ignāvia ĕrit tibi *magno* dēdĕcŏri, Cowardice will bring great disgrace to you. Cic. *Hæc res est* argūmento, This thing is an argument, or serves as an argument. Id. *Hoc* vītio *mĭhi dant,* This they set down as a fault in me. *Ūniversos* cūræ *hăbuit.* Suet. *Una res ĕrat magno* ūsui. .... was of great use. Lucil. *Quod* tĭbi *magnŏpĕre* cordi est, *mĭhi vĕhĕmenter displĭcet,* What is a great pleasure, an object of peculiar interest to you, etc. Id.

(*b.*) Sometimes the words *fĭt, able, ready,* etc., must be supplied, especially before a gerund or a gerundive; as, *Quum* solvendo *cīvĭtātes non essent,* .... not able to pay. Cic. *Dīvĭtes, qui ŏnĕri* fĕrendo *essent.* Liv. *Quæ* restinguendo igni *fŏrent.* Liv. *Rādix ejus est* vescendo. Plin.

Rem. 4. Instead of the dative of the end, a predicate nominative or accusative is sometimes used; as, *Nātūrā tu illi* pāter *es,* By nature you are his father. *Amor est* exītium *pĕcŏri* : or the purpose is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*; as, *Alĭcui cŏmes est* ad bellum. Cic. *Se Rēmis* in clientēlam *dīcābant.* Cæs.: or by the ablative with *pro*; as, *Innŏcentia* pro mălĭvŏlentiā *dūci cœpit.* Sall. *Alcĭbus sunt arbŏres* pro cūbĭlĭbus. Cæs.

Rem. 5. Instead, also, of the dative of the end or purpose, *quo ?* to what end? for what purpose? why? sometimes occurs, with an accusative, which generally depends on a verb understood, or with an infinitive or a clause; as, *Quo mĭhi* fortūnam, *si non concēdĭtur ūti ?* Hor. *Quo* tĭbi, *Pasĭphaë, prĕtiōsas sūmĕre* vestes ? Ovid.

Rem. 6. After *do* and other similar active verbs an accusative of the purpose is found in apposition; as, *Lătīni cŏrōnam auream Jŏvi in Căpĭtōlium mittunt.* Liv. *Alĭcui* cŏmĭtem *esse dătum.* Cic. Cf. § 204, R. 1; and § 230, R. 2.

Note. The dative, instead of the accusative, is sometimes used after the infinitive, when a dative precedes, and the subject of the infinitive is omitted; as, *Vōbis nĕcesse est fortĭbus esse* vīris. Liv. *Maxĭmo tĭbi et* cīvi *et* dūci *ēvādĕre contĭgit.* Val. Max. See §§ 205, R. 6, and 239, R. 1.

DATIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

§ **228.** Some particles are followed by the dative of the object; as,

1. Some adverbs derived from adjectives; as,

Prŏpius Tĭbĕri *quam* Thermŏpўlis. Nep. *Proxĭme* castris, Very near to the camp. Cæs. *Prŏpius* stăbŭlis *armenta tĕnērent.* Virg. *Congruenter* nātūræ, *convĕnienterque vīvĕre,* Agreeably to nature. Cic. *Epĭcūrus quam* sĭbi *constanter convĕnienterque dīcat, non lăbōrat.* Id. Nēmĭni *nĭmĭum bĕne est.* Afran. Mĭhi *numquam in vītā fuit mĕlius.* Hor. *Vīvĕre* vītæ *hŏmĭnum amīce.* Cic. *Bĕne* mĭhi, *bĕne* vōbis. Plaut. So, Mĭhi *obviam vĕnisti.* Cic. *In certāmĭna sævo communus īre* vĭro. Sil. *Quæstōres prōvinciæ* mĭhi *præsto fuērunt.* Cic. *Sămos est exadversum* Mĭlēto. App.

Remark. *Prŏpius* and *proxĭme,* like their primitive *prŏpe,* are sometimes construed with *a* and the ablative; as, *Prŏpe a* meis ædibus. Cic. *Stellæ errantes* prŏpius *a* terris. Id. A Surā proxĭme *est Philiscum, oppĭdum Parthō-rum.* Plin.

2. Certain prepositions, especially in comic writers; as, *Mĭhi clam est,* It is unknown to me. Plaut. *Contra nōbis.* Id. But in such instances they seem rather to be used like adjectives.

3. Certain interjections; as, *Hei mĭhi !* Ah me ! Virg. *Væ mĭhi !* Wo is me ! Ter. *Væ vĭctis esse !* Liv. *Væ mĭsĕro mĭhi.* Plaut. *Hem tĭbi.* Id. *Ecce tĭbi.* Cic.

Note. (*a.*) The dative of the substantive pronouns seems sometimes nearly redundant, but it always conveys the expression of a lively feeling, and is therefore termed *dătīvus ēthĭcus;* as,

Fur mĭhi *es*, ... in my opinion. Plaut. *An ille* mĭhi *lĭber, cui mŭlier impĕrat?*
Cic. *Tongilium* mĭhi *ēduxit.* Id. *Ubi nunc* nōbis *deus ille mắgister?* Virg.
Ecce tĭbi *Sebōsus!* Cic. *Hem* tĭbi *tắlentum argenti! Philippĭcum est.* Plaut. *Sĭbi*
is sometimes subjoined quite pleonastically to *suus;* as, Suo sĭbi *glădio hunc*
jŭgŭlo. Plaut. *Ignōrans* suo sĭbi *servit patri.* Id. Sĭbi suo *tempŏre.*

  (*b.*) The following phrases also occur with *vŏlo* and a reflexive pronoun:
quid tĭbi vis? what do you want? *quid sĭbi iste vult?* what does he want? *quid*
vult sĭbi hæc ōrātio? what does this speech mean? *quid hæc sĭbi dōna vŏlunt?*
what is the meaning of these presents? or, what is their object?

ACCUSATIVE.

ACCUSATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ **229.**   The object of a transitive verb is put in the accusa-
tive; as,

  Lēgātos *mittunt,* They send ambassadors. Cæs. *Anĭmus mŏvet corpus,* The
mind moves the body. Cic. *Da* vĕniam hanc, Grant this favor. Ter. *Eum*
ĭmĭtāti sunt, They imitated him. Cic. Piscem *Sўri vĕnĕrantur.* Id.

  REMARK 1. A transitive verb, with the accusative, often takes a
genitive, dative, or ablative, to express some additional relation; as,

  Te convinco āmentĭæ, I convict you of madness. Cic. *Da* lŏcum mĕliōrĭbus,
Give place to your betters. Ter. *Solvit se Teucria* luctu, Troy frees herself
from grief. Virg. See those cases respectively.

  REM. 2. Such is the difference of idiom between the Latin and English languages, that
many verbs considered transitive in one, are used as intransitive in the other. Hence,
in translating transitive Latin verbs, a preposition must often be supplied in English;
as, *Ut me căvēret,* That he should beware of me. Cic. On the other hand, many verbs,
which in Latin are intransitive, and do not take an accusative, are rendered into English
by transitive verbs; as, *Ille mĭhi făvet,* He favors me: and many verbs originally in-
transitive acquire a transitive signification.

  REM. 3. The verb is sometimes omitted:—

  1. To avoid its repetition; as, *Eventum sĕnātus, quem* (scil. *dăre*) *vĭdēbĭtur,*
dăbit. Liv.

  2. The interrogative interjection *quid?* what? depends on *ais* or *censes.* So
also *quid vēro? quid ĭgĭtur? quid ergo? quid ĕnim?* which are always followed
by another question, and both questions may be united into one proposition,
the first serving merely to introduce the interrogation. With *quid postea?*
quid tum? supply *sĕquĭtur.* With *quid quod,* occurring in transitions, *dĭcam de*
eo is omitted, but it may be rendered 'nay,' 'nay even,' 'but now,' 'more-
over,' etc., without an interrogation.—*Dĭcam* is also to be supplied with *quid*
multa? quid plūra? ne multa; ne multis; ne plūra. The infinitive *dĭcĕre* is also
sometimes omitted; as, *Nĭmis multa vĭdeor de me.* Cic. *Perge rĕlĭqua.* Id.

  REM. 4. The accusative is often omitted:—

  1. When it is a reflexive pronoun; as, *Nox præcĭpĭtat,* scil. *se.* Virg. *Tum*
prōra āvertit. Id. *Eo lăvātum,* scil. *me.* Hor.

  The reflexives are usually wanting after *ăbŏleo, abstĭneo, accingo, ădæquo, æquo, ag-*
glŏmĕro, augeo, cĕlĕro, congĕmĭno, contĭnuo, dēclīno, dēcŏquo, dēsĭno, diffĕro, dūro,
ērumpo, flecto, dēflecto, făcesso, incĭpio, inclīno, insĭnuo, irrumpo, jungo, lăvo, laxo,
lēnio, mātūro, mollio, mŏveo, mūto, pŏno, præcĭpĭ'o, prōrumpo, quatio, rĕmitto, retracto,
sēdo, sisto, stăbĭlo, suppĕdĭto, tardo, tĕneo, tendo, trājĭcio, transmitto, turbo, vario, vergo,
verto, dēverto, rĕverto, vestio, vibro; and more rarely after many others.

  2. When it is something indefinite, has been previously expressed in any
case, or is easily supplied; as, *Ego, ad quos scrĭbam, nescĭo,* scil. *lĭtĕras.* Cic.
De quo et tēcum ēgi dĭlĭgenter, et scripsi ad te. Id. *Bĕne fēcit Silius.* Id. *Dūcit*
in hostem, scil. *exercĭtum.* Liv.

Rem. 5. An infinitive, or one or more substantive clauses, may supply the place of the accusative after an active verb; as,

Da mĭhi fallĕre. Hor. *Reddes* dulce lŏqui, *reddes* rīdēre dĕcōrum. Id. *Cŭpio* me esse clēmentem. Cic. *Athēnienses stătuērunt* ut nāves conscendĕrent. Id. *Vĕreor* ne a doctis rĕprĕhendar. Id.Euœ, Bacche, *sŏnat.* Ovid. Sometimes both constructions are united; as, *Di* īram *mĭsĕrantur ĭnānem ambōrum, et* tantos mortālĭbus esse lābōres. Virg.—Respecting the infinitive with and without a subject-accusative after an active verb, see § 270–273; and for the subjunctive after such verbs, see § 273.

(*a.*) In such constructions, the *subject* of the dependent clause is sometimes put in the accusative as the *object* of the leading verb; as, *Nosti* Marcellum, *quam tardus sit,* for *Nosti quam tardus sit* Marcellus. Cic. Illum, *ut vīvat,* optant. Ter. At te *ĕgo făciam, ut mĭnus văleas.* Plaut.

(*b.*) An ablative with *de* may also supply the place of the accusative, by the ellipsis of some general word denoting *things, facts,* etc., modified by such ablative; as, *De rēpublĭcā vestrā paucis accĭpe.* Sall. Compare a similar omission of a *subject* modified by *de* and the ablative, § 209, R. 3, (2.)

Rem. 6. The impersonal verbs of feeling, *mĭsĕret, pœnĭtet, pŭdet, tœdet, pĭget, mĭsĕrescit, mĭsĕrētur,* and *pertœsum est,* are followed by an accusative of the person exercising the feeling, and a genitive of the object in respect to which it is exercised. Cf. § 215, (1.); as,

Eōrum nos *mĭsĕret,* We pity them. Cic. The impersonal *Vĕrĭtum est* also occurs with such an accusative; *Quos non est vĕrĭtum pōnĕre,* etc. Cic.

Rem. 7. *Jŭvat, dēlectat, fallit, fŭgit, prœtĕrit,* and *dĕcet,* with their compounds, take an accusative of the person; as,

Te hĭlări ănĭmo esse valde me *jŭvat,* That you are in good spirits greatly delights me. Cic. *Fŭgit* me *ad te scrĭbĕre.* Cic. *Illud altĕrum quam sit diffĭcĭle,* te *non fŭgit.* Id. *Nec vero* Cæsărem *fĕfellit.* Cæs. *Făcis, ut te dĕcet.* Ter. So also when used personally; as, *Parvum parva dĕcent.* Hor.; but *dĕcet* often takes the accusative of the person with the infinitive; as, *Hanc măcŭlam* nos *dĕcet* effŭgĕre. Ter.; and in comic writers a dative; as, *Vōbis dĕcet.* Ter.

For *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra,* after *rēfert* and *intĕrest,* see § 219, R. 1: and for the accusative by attraction, instead of the nominative, see § 206, (6,) (*b.*)

§ 230.

Verbs signifying to name or call; to choose, render or constitute; to esteem or reckon, which in the passive voice have two nominatives, are followed in the active voice by two accusatives, one of the *object* and the other of the *predicate.* Cf. § 210, R. 3, (3.); as,

Urbem *ex Antĭŏchi patris nōmĭne* Antiŏchīam *vŏcāvit,* He called the city Antioch, etc. Just. Lūdos *făcis* me, You make game of me. Plaut. Me consŭlem *fēcistis.* Cic. Iram *bĕne Ennius* initium *dixit insānĭæ.* Id. Ancum Marcium rēgem *pŏpŭlus creāvit.* Liv. Sulpĭcium accūsātōrem *suum nŭmĕrābat, non* compĕtītōrem. Cic. *Quum* vos testes *hăbeam.* Nep.

Note 1. The following are among the verbs included in this rule, viz. *appello, dīco, nōmĭno, nuncŭpo, pĕrhĭbeo, salūto, scrībo* and *inscrībo, vŏco; cápio, constĭtuo, creo, dēclāro, dēlĭgo, dēsigno, dĭco, ēlĭgo, făcio, effĭcio, instĭtuo, lĕgo, prōdo, rĕnuncio; dūco, dignor, existĭmo, habeo, jūdĭco, nŭmĕro, pŭto, rĕpĕrio, intellĭgo, invĕnio, se præbēre* or *præstāre,* etc.

Note 2. An ablative with *ex* occurs, though rarely, instead of the accusative of the object; as, *Fortūna me, qui lĭber fŭĕram, servum fēcit,* e summo *infĭmum.* Plaut. Cf. *Qui recta prāva făciunt.* Ter.

Note 3. An infinitive may supply the place of the objective accusative; as, *Si* sĭmŭlasse *vŏcat crīmen.* Ovid.:—and sometimes of the predicate accusative

also; as, *Si rĕpĕrīre vŏcas* āmittĕre certius; *aut si* scīre ŭbi sit rĕpĕrīre *vŏcas.* Id. So also an adjective may supply the place of the predicate accusative; as, *Præbuit* se dignum *suis mājōrĭbus.* Cic. *Cæsărem* certiōrem *făciunt.* Cæs.

REMARK 1. After verbs signifying to esteem or reckon, one of the accusatives is often the subject, and the other the predicate, of *esse* expressed or understood; as,

Eum ăvārum *possŭmus existĭmāre.* Cic. *Tālem* se impĕrātōrem *præbuit.* Nep. *Præsta* te eum, *qui mihi es cognĭtus.* Cic. Mercŭrium *omnium* inventōrem *artium fĕrunt;* hunc *viārum atque itĭnĕrum* dūcem *arbitrantur.* Cæs.; or an adjective supplies the place of the predicate accusative; as, *Ne* me *existĭmāris ad mănen-dum* esse prōpensiōrem. Cic.

NOTE 4. Instead of the predicate accusative, (1) *pro* with the ablative some-times follows *pūto, dūco,* and *hăbeo,* but denotes only an approximation; as, *Alĭquid* pro certo *hăbēre* or *pŭtāre.* Sall. *Alĭquem* pro hoste *hăbēre.* Cæs.—So also *in* with the ablative; as, *Nihil præter virtūtem* in bŏnis *hăbēre.* Cic. *Alĭquem* in nŭmĕro *hostium dŭcĕre.* Cic.—and the ablative with-out *in;* as, *Uti vos aff'inium* lŏco *dūcĕrem.* Sall.—So also *e* or *ex* with the abla-tive; as, *(Ut) făcĕret quod* e rēpūblĭcā fĭdēque suā *dūcĕret.* Liv.—Sometimes (2) the genitive; as, Offĭcii *duxit exōrāre fĭliæ patrem.* Suet. (See § 211, R. 8, (3.) So with a genitive or an ablative of price or value; as, *Pŭtāre alĭquem* nĭhĭlo. Cic. *Non hăbeo* nauci *Marsum augŭrem.* Enn—and sometimes (3) a dative; as, *Quando tu me hăbes* despĭcātui. Plaut.:—or an adverb; as, Ægre *hăbuit, f'ilium id pro părente* ausum. Liv. And (4) *ad* or *in* with the accusative; as, *Lŏca* ad hibernācŭla *lĕgĕre.* Liv. Alĭquem in Patres *lĕgĕre.* Id.: or (5) the genitive depending on the ablative of cause, manner, etc.; as, *Qui servĭtūtem* dēdĭtiōnis nōmĭne *appellant.* Cæs.

REM. 2. Many other verbs, besides their proper accusative, take a second, denoting a purpose, time, character, etc.

Such are *do, tribuo, sūmo, pĕto, pōno, adjungo, ascribo, cognosco, accio, fingo, signif'ĭco,* etc.; as,

Quāre ējus f'ūgæ cōmĭtem *me adjungĕrem.* Cic. *Hŏmĭnum ŏpĭnio* sŏcium *me ascrībit tuis laudĭbus.* Id. *Quos ĕgo sim tŏties jam dēdĭgnāta* marītos. Virg. *Hunc ĭgĭtur* rēgem agnosc'ĭmus, *qui Phĭlippum dēdĭgnātur* patrem? Curt. *Filiam tuam mihi* uxōrem *posco.* Plaut. *Pĕtit hanc Sāturnia* mūnus. Ovid. Such constructions may often be referred to apposition, or to an ellipsis of *esse.*

§ **231.** Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, and *cēlo* (to conceal), are followed by two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing; as,

Hoc te *vĕhĕmenter rŏgo.* Cic. Illud te *ōro, ut,* etc. Id. *Rŏgo* te nummos, I ask you for money. Mart. *Posce* deos vĕniam, Ask favor of the gods. Virg. *Quum lĕgent quis* mūsĭcam *dŏcuĕrit* Epămīnondam, When they shall read who taught Epaminondas music. Nep. *Antĭgŏnus* ĭter omnes *cēlat,* Antigonus con-ceals his route from all. Id. *Dēprĕcāri* deos măla. Sen. *Quŏtĭdie Cæsar* Æduos frūmentum *flăgĭtāre.* Cæs. Multa deos *ōrans.* Virg.

REMARK 1. This rule includes the verbs of asking and demanding, *flăgĭto, efflăgĭto, obsecro, ōro, exōro, contendo, percontor, posco, rĕposco, consŭlo, prĕcor, dēprĕcor, rŏgo,* and *interrŏgo,* which, with the accusative of the person, take the accusative of the neuter pronouns *hoc, id, illud, quod, quid,* more frequently than that of a substantive; of teach-ing, *dŏceo, ēdŭceo, dēdŭceo,* and *ērŭdio,* which last has two accusatives only in the poets. *Admŏneo* and *consŭlo* are rarely found with two accusatives; as, *Consŭlam hanc rem ămīcos.* Plaut. *Eam rem nos lŏcus admŏnuit.* Sall.

REM. 2. Instead of the accusative of the person, verbs of asking and de-manding often take the ablative with *ab* or *ex;* as, *Non dēbēbam* abs te has lĭtĕ-ras *poscĕre.* Cic. *Vĕniam ōrēmus* ab ipso, Virg. *Istud vŏlēbam* ex te *percontāri.* Plaut.

REM. 3. (*a.*) Instead of the accusative of the thing, the ablative with *de* is sometimes used; as, *Sic ego te eisdem* de *rēbus interrŏgem.* Cic. De ītīnēre *hostium sēnātum ēdŏcet.* Sall. *Bassus noster* me de *hoc libro cēlāvit.* Cic. Cf. § 229, R. 5, (*b.*)—(*b.*) Sometimes also instead of the accusative of the thing an infinitive, or an infinitive or subjunctive clause is used; as, *Deos prĕcāri dēbētis*, ut urbem dēfendant. Cic. *Ut dŏceam Rullum posthac* tācēre. Id. *Dŏcui* id non fĭĕri posse. Id. *Dŏceant eum* qui vir Sex. Roscius fuĕrit. Id.—(*c.*) With verbs of teaching, the instrument by means of which the art is practised is put in the ablative; as, *Aliquem fidibus dŏcēre.* Cic. Dŏcēre *aliquem armis.* Liv. *Litĕrœ* may be used either in the accusative or in the ablative; as, *Te litĕras dŏceo.* Cic. *Doctus Grœcis litĕris.* Id.

REM. 4. Some verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, are not followed by two accusatives; as, *exĭgo*, *pĕto*, *postŭlo*, *quœro*, *scītor*, *sciscītor*, which, with the accusative of the thing, take an ablative of the person with the preposition *ab*, *de*, or *ex*; *imbuo*, *instituo*, *instruo*, etc., which are sometimes used with the ablative of the thing, generally without a preposition, and are sometimes otherwise construed; as, *Instĭtuĕre aliquem* ad dicendum. Cic.

REM. 5. (*a.*) Many active verbs with the accusative of the person, take also an accusative denoting *in what respect* or *to what degree* the action of the verb is exerted.

(*b.*) The accusative of degree, etc., is commonly *nihil*, a neuter pronoun, or a neuter adjective of quantity; as, *Non quo me* ăliquid *jŭvāre posses.* Cic. Pauca *pro tempŏre milites hortātus.* Sall. Id *adjūta me.* Ter. *Nĕque est te fal-lĕre* quidquam. Virg. Cf. § 232, (3.)

REM. 6. By a similar construction, *gĕnus* and *sĕcus*, 'sex,' are sometimes used in the accusative, instead of the genitive of quality; as, *Nullas hoc* gĕnus *vigĭlias vigĭlārunt.* Gell. So, *Omnes mŭliebre* sĕcus. Suet. Cf. 211, R. 6, (4.)

§ 232.   (1.) Some *neuter* verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred signification to their own ; as,

Vĭtam *jūcundam vīvĕre*, To live a pleasant *life.* Plaut. *Mīrum somnĭāvi somnium*, I have dreamed a wonderful *dream.* Id. *Fŭrēre hunc fŭrōrem.* Virg. *Istam* pugnam *pugnābo.* Plaut. *Pugnāre dīcenda Mūsis* prœlia. Hor. Lūsum *insŏlentem lūdĕre.* Id. *Si non* servĭtūtem *serviat.* Plaut. *Quĕror haud făciles* quæstus. Stat. *Jūrāvi vērissĭmum* jusjūrandum. Cic. *Ignōtas jŭbet īre* vias. Val. Flacc. So, also, *Ire* exsĕquias, To go to a funeral. Ter. *Ire* suppĕtias, To go to one's assistance. *Ire* infĭtias, To deny. This expression is equivalent to *infĭtior*, and may like that take an accusative; as, *Si hoc ūnum adjunxĕro*, quod *nēmo eat* infĭtias. Nep.: or the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Nĕque infĭtias īmus* Sīcĭliam nostram prŏvinciam esse. Liv. *Ut suum* gau-dium *gaudērēmus.* Cœl. ad Cic. *Prŏficisci magnum* īter. Cic. *Pollux itque rĕditque* viam. Virg. This accusative is usually qualified by an adjective.

(2.) Verbs commonly neuter are sometimes used transitively, and are then followed by an accusative.

Accusatives are thus used with *ŏleo* and *săpio*, and their compounds, *rĕdŏleo*, *rĕsĭpio*; as, *Olet* unguenta, He smells of perfumes. Ter. *Olēre* pĕrēgrīnum, To have a foreign smell. Cic. *Orātiōnes rĕdŏlentes* antīquĭtātem. Id. *Mella* herbam *eam săpiunt*, The honey tastes of that herb. Plin. *Uva* pĭcem *rĕsĭpiens.* Id. So, *Sĭtio* hŏnōres. Cic. Carnem *pluit.* Liv. *Claudius* āleam *stŭdiōsissĭme lūsit.* Suet. *Erumpĕre diu coercĭtam* īram *in hostes.* Liv. Libros *ēvĭgĭlāre.* Ovid. *Prœīre* verba. Liv. *Nec vox hŏmĭnem sŏnat.* Virg. *Sūdāre* mella. Id. Mŏrien-tem *nŏmĭne clāmat.* Id. *Quis post vīna grăvem* mīlitiam *aut* paupĕriem *crēpat?* Hor. Omnes *ūna mănet nox.* Id. *Ingrāti ănĭmi* crīmen *horreo.* Cic. *Ego meas quĕror* fortūnas. Plaut. *Vīvĕre* Bacchānālia. Juv. *Pastōrem saltāret ūti* Cy-clōpa, *rŏgābat.* Hor. So the passive; *Nunc agrestem* Cyclōpa *mŏvētur.* Id. *Xerxes quum* măre *ambŭlāvisset*, terram *nāvigasset.* Cic. *Qui* stădium *currit.* Id. *Commūnia* jūra *migrāre.* Id. *Te vŏlo collŏqui.* Plaut. Ea *dissĕrĕre mălui.* Cic.

Cŏrȳdon ardēbat Alexin. Virg. *Stȳgias jūrāvĭmus* undas. Ovid. *Nāvĭgat* æquor.
Virg. *Currĭmus* æquor. Id. *Pascuntur* sylvas. Id.

NOTE 1. Accusatives are found in like manner after *ambŭlo, calleo, dŏleo, ĕquĭto, fleo,
gaudeo, gĕmo, glōrior, horreo, lætor, lātro, nāto, palleo, păveo, pĕreo, dēpĕreo, prŏcēdo,
quĕror, rīdeo, sĭleo, sĭbĭlo, tăceo, trĕmo, trĕpĭdo, vādo, vĕnio,* etc.

(3.) Neuter verbs and sometimes adjectives also may be fol-
lowed by an accusative denoting *in what respect,* or *to what de-
gree,* the feeling, condition, etc., is manifested ; as,

Nĭhil lābōro. Cic. *Num id lacrĭmat virgo?* Does the maid weep on that ac-
count? Ter. *Multa* ălia *peccat.* Cic. Quicquid *dēlīrant rēges,* plectuntur
Achīvi. Hor. *Nec tu* id *indignāri* posses. Liv. Illud *mĭhi lætandum vĭdeo.* Cic.
Illud *valde tĭbi* assentior. Id. Idem *glōriāri.* Id. Hæc *glōrians.* Liv. Hoc
stŭdet ūnum. Hor.—So, Id *ŏpĕram do,* I strive for this. Ter. *Consĭlium pĕtis,*
quid *tĭbi* sim auctor. Cic. Quod *quĭdam auctōres sunt,* Which is attested by
some authors. Liv. Nil *nostri mĭsĕrēre?* Virg.—Nĭhil *Rōmānæ plēbis* sĭmĭlis.
Liv. *Sēnātus* nĭhil *sāne* intentus. Sall. These limiting accusatives have com-
monly the force of adverbs, particularly *nĭhil,* which is used like an emphatic
non in the sense of ' in no way,' ' in no respect.' So *non nĭhil,* ' to some extent,'
' in some measure.'

NOTE 2. In the above and similar examples. the prepositions *ob, propter, per, ad,* etc.,
may often be supplied. This construction of neuter verbs is most common with the
neuter accusatives *id, quid, quidquam, ălĭquid, quicquid, quod, nĭhil, nonnĭhil, ĭdem,
illud, tantum, quantum, ūnum, multa, pauca, ălia, cētĕra, omnia,* etc. Cf. § 256, R. 16, N.

§ **233.** Many verbs are followed by an accusative depend-
ing upon a preposition with which they are compounded.

(1.) Active verbs compounded with *trans, ad,* and *circum,* have
sometimes two accusatives, one depending upon the verb, the other
upon the preposition ; as,

Omnem ĕquĭtātum pontem *transdūcit,* He leads all the cavalry over the bridge.
Cæs. Agēsĭlāus Hellespontum *cōpias trājēcit.* Nep. *Petrēius* jusjūrandum *ăd-
ĭgit* Afrānium. Cæs. Roscillum *Pompēius omnia sua* præsĭdia *circumdūxit.* Id.
So, *Pontus* scŏpŭlos *sŭperjăcit* undam. Virg. So, also, *adverto* and *indūco* with
ănĭmum; as, Id *ănĭmum advertit.* Cæs. *Id quod* ănĭmum indūxĕrat paulisper
non tĕnuit. Cic. So, also, *injĭcio* in Plautus—*Ego te* mănum *injĭciam.*

(2.) Some other active verbs take an accusative in the passive
voice depending upon their prepositions ; as,

Măgĭcas accingĭer artes, To prepare oneself for magic arts. Virg. In prose
writers the *ad* is in such cases repeated ; as, *accingi ad* consŭlātum. Liv.
Classis circumvĕhĭtur arcem. Cic. *Quod anguis* dŏmi vectem *circumjectus fuisset.*
Cic. Lŏcum *prætervectus sum.* Id.

(3.) Many neuter verbs, especially verbs of motion, or of rest in a
place, when compounded with prepositions which govern an accusa-
tive, become transitive, and accordingly take an accusative ; as,

Gentes quæ măre *illud adjăcent,* The nations which border upon that sea. Nep
Obĕquĭtāre agmen. Curt. *Incēdunt* mæstos lŏcos. Tac. *Transĭlui* flammas. Ovid.
Succēdĕre tecta. Cic. *Lūdōrum dĭēbus, qui* cognĭtiōnem *intervĕnĕrant.* Tac.
Adīre prōvinciam. Suet. *Căveat ne* prœlium *ĭneat.* Cic. *Ingrĕdi* iter *pĕdĭbus.*
Cic. *Epĭcūri horti* quos *mŏdo prætĕrĭbāmus.* Id.

NOTE. To this rule belong many of the compounds of *ambŭlo, cēdo, curro, eo, ĕquĭto
fluo, grădior, lābor, no* and *nāto, rēpo, sălio, scando, vādo, vĕhor, vĕnio, vŏlo ;—cŭbo,
jăceo, sĕdeo, sisto, sto,* etc., with the prepositions included in § 224, and with *ex.*

REMARK 1. Some neuter verbs compounded with prepositions which govern an ablative, in like manner become transitive, and are followed by an accusative; as,

Nēmĭnem *convēni*, I met with no one. Cic. *Qui sŏcĭĕtātem coĭĕris.* Id. *Aversāri* hŏnōres. Ovid. *Ursi* arbŏrem *āversi dērēpunt.* Plin. *Edormi* crāpŭlam. Cic. *Egressus* exsĭlium. Tac. *Evādĭtque cĕler* rīpam. Virg. *Excēdĕre* nŭmĕrum. Tac. *Exĭre* līmen. Ter. *Tibur ăquæ fertĭle præfluunt.* Hor.

REM. 2. After verbs both active and neuter, compounded with prepositions which take an accusative, the preposition is often repeated, or one of similar signification is used; as,

Cæsar se ad nēmĭnem *adjunxit.* Cic. *Multĭtūdĭnem* trans Rhēnum *in Galliam transdūcĕre.* Cæs.—In Galliam *invāsit Antōnius.* Cic. Ad me *ădīre quosdam mĕmĭni.* Id. *Orātor pĕragrat* per ănĭmos hŏmĭnum. Id. *Ne* in sĕnātum *accēdĕrem.* Id. *Rēgĭna* ad templum *incessit.* Virg. Juxta gĕnĭtōrem *adstat Lāvĭnia.* Id. *Fīnes* extra quos *ēgrĕdi non possim.* Cic. A dative instead of the accusative often follows such compounds, according to § 224. *Circum* is not repeated.

NOTE. Some verbal nouns and verbal adjectives in *bundus* are followed by an accusative, like the transitive verbs from which they are derived; as,

Quid tĭbi huc rĕceptio *ad te est meum* vĭrum? Wherefore do you receive my husband hither to you? Plaut. *Quid tĭbi, mălum,* me, *aut quid ĕgo ăgam, cūrātio* 'st? Id. *Quid tĭbi* hanc *ădĭtio est?* Id. *Quid tĭbi* hanc *nōtio est, inquam,* ămīcam meam? *Quid tĭbi* hanc *dĭgĭto tactio* 'st? Id. *Hanno vītābundus* castra *hostĭum* consŭlesque. Liv. *Mĭthrĭdātes* Rōmānum *mĕdĭtābundus* bellum. Just. *Mīrābundi* vānam spĕciem. Liv. *Pŏpŭlābundus* agros. Sisenn. Carnĭfĭcem *īmāgĭnābundus.* App.

§ 234. A verb in the passive voice has the same government as in the active, except that the accusative of the active voice becomes the nominative of the passive.

NOTE 1. The accusative of the person with the infinitive, after verbs of *saying* and *commanding*, may become the subject of the passive voice; as, Active, *Dico* rēgem *esse justum :*—Passive, Rex *dicĭtur justus esse.* Act. *Jŭbeo* te *rĕdīre ;*—Pass. *Jŭbēris rĕdīre :* the construction in the passive being the same as though *rēgem* and *te* had depended immediately upon *dico* and *jŭbeo.*—So, also, when the accusative of the person is the object of the verb and the infinitive stands as the accusative of the thing. Cf. § 270, N.

I. When a verb, which in the active voice takes an accusative both of the person and of the thing, is changed to the passive form, the accusative of the person becomes the nominative, and the accusative of the thing is retained; as,

Rŏgātus est sententiam, He was asked his opinion. Liv. *Interrŏgātus* causam. Tac. Sĕgĕtes ălĭmentă*que dēbĭta dĭves* poscĕbātur hŭmus. Ovid. Mōtus dŏcēri gaudet Iŏnĭcos mātūra virgo. Hor. Omnes belli artes ēdoctus. Liv. Nosne hoc cēlātos tam diu? Ter. Multa in extis mŏnēmur. Cic.

NOTE 2. The accusative of the thing after *doctus* and *ēdoctus* is rare; and after *cēlāri* it is generally a neuter pronoun; as *hoc* or *id* cēlābar; of this I was kept in ignorance; but it is found also with the person in the dative; as, Id Alcĭbĭădi *diūtius cēlāri non pŏtuit.* Nep. Alcib. 5. *Cēlo,* and especially its passive, generally takes *de* with the ablative.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) *Induo* and *exuo,* though they do not take two accusatives in the active voice, are sometimes followed by an accusative of the thing in

the passive; as, *Induĭtur ātras* vestes, She puts on sable garments. Ovid. *Thōrāca indūtus.* Virg. *Exūta est Rōma* sĕnectam. Mart. So *indūcor* and *cingor*; as, Ferrum *cingĭtur.* Virg. So *rĕcingĭtur* anguem. Ovid.

(*b.*) When two accusatives follow an active verb compounded with *trans*, the passive retains that which depends upon the preposition; as, *Belgæ* Rhēnum *antīquĭtus transducti.* Cæs.

REM. 2. The future passive participle in the neuter gender with *est*, is sometimes, though rarely, followed by an accusative; as, Multa *nŏvis rēbus quum sit ăgendum.* Lucr. Quam (viam) *nōbis ingrĕdiendum est.* Cic.

II. Adjectives, verbs, and perfect participles, are sometimes followed by an accusative denoting the *part* to which their signification relates; as,

Nūdus membra, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. Os *hŭmĕrosque deo sĭmĭlis.* Id. *Clāri* gĕnus. Tac. *Trĕbāni* suam vĭcem *anxii.* Liv. *Trĕmĭt* artus. Virg. Cētĕra *parce puer bello.* Id. *Sĭbĭla* colla *tŭmentem.* Id. *Explēri* mentem *nĕquit.* Id. *Grȳneus ēruĭtur* ŏcŭlos. Ovid. *Pictĭ* scūta *Lăbīci.* Virg. *Collis* frontem *lēnĭter fastĭgātas.* Cæs. Anĭmum *incensus.* Liv. *Oblītus* făciem *suo cruōre.* Tac.

REMARK 1. In this construction an ablative is often joined with the perfect participle; as, *Mĭles fractus* membra lăbōre. Hor. Dextĕrum gĕnu lăpĭde *ictus.* Suet. Adversum fĕmur trāgŭlā *grăvĭter ictus.* Liv.

REM. 2. This is a Greek construction, and is usually called the *limiting* or *Greek accusative.* It is used instead of an ablative of limitation, (§ 250,) and occurs most frequently in poetry.

REM. 3. A limiting accusative instead of the ablative is found also in a few ordinary expressions, as in *partim* (for *partem*), *vĭcem, magnam* and *maxĭmam partem,* instead of *magnā* or *maxĭmā ex parte,* or the adverb *fĕre;* as, *Maxĭmam partem lacte vīvunt.* Cæs. *Magnam partem ex iambis nostra constat ōrātio.* Cic. Livy has *magna pars,* viz. Nŭmĭdæ, magna pars agrestes.—So *cētĕra* and *rēlĭqua* are joined to adjectives in the sense of *cētĕris,* 'for the rest,' 'in other respects'; as, *Proxĭmum regnum,* cētĕra *ēgrĕgĭum, ab ūnā parte haud sătis prospĕrum fuit.* Just. So cētĕra *sĭmĭlis,* cētĕra *bŏnus. A te bis terve* summum *lĭtĕras accēpi.* Cic.—So, also, in the expressions *id tempŏris; id, hoc* or *ĭdem ætātis, illud hōræ,* for *eo tempŏre, eā ætāte,* etc.; *id gĕnus, omne gĕnus, quod gĕnus.*

III. Some neuter verbs which are followed by an accusative, are used in the passive voice, the accusative becoming the subject, according to the general rule of active verbs; as,

Tertia vīvĭtur ætas. Ovid. *Bellum mīlĭtābĭtur.* Hor. *Dormītur hiems.* Mart. *Multa peccantur.* Cic. *Adĭtur Gnossius Mīnos.* Sen. *Ne ab omnibus circumsistĕrētur.* Cæs. *Hostes invādi posse.* Sall. *Campus ōbĭtur ăquā.* Ovid. *Plūres ĭneuntur grātiæ.* Cic. *Ea res silētur.* Id.

ACCUSATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ 235.   (1.) Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative.

These are *ăd, adversus* or *adversum, antĕ, ăpŭd, circā* or *circum, circĭter, cĭs* or *citrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, infrā, intĕr, intrā, juxtā, ŏb, pĕnĕs, pĕr, post, pōnĕ, prætĕr, prŏpĕ, proptĕr, sĕcundum, suprā, trans, ultrā;* as,

Ad templum non æquæ Pallădis ibant,—to the temple. Virg. *Adversus hostes,* Against the enemy. Liv. *Germāni qui cis Rhēnum incŏlunt,*—this side the Rhine. Cæs. *Quum tantum rĕsĭdeat intra mūros măli.* Cic. *Prīncĭpio rērum impĕrĭum pĕnes rēges ĕrat.* Just. *Templum pōnam propter ăquam.* Virg. *Inter ăgendum.* Id. *Ante dŏmandum.* Id. Respecting the signification of some of the preceding prepositions see § 195, R. 5, etc.

REMARK 1. *Cis* is generally used with names of places; *citra* with other words also; as, *Cis Taurum.* Cic. *Cis Pădum.* Liv. *Paucos cis menses.* Plaut. *Citra Vēliam.* Cic. *Citra sătiĕtātem,* Not to satiety. Col. *Citra fătīgātiōnem.* Cels. *Citra Trŏjāna tempŏra.* Ovid.

REM. 2. *Inter,* signifying *between,* applies to two accusatives jointly, and sometimes to a single plural accusative; as, *Inter me et Scīpiōnem.* Cic. *Inter nātos et părentes.* Id. *Inter nos,* Among ourselves. Id. *Inter fulcārios,* Among the scythe-makers. Cic. When it denotes time it signifies *during,* and more rarely *at;* as, *Inter ipsum pugnœ tempus.* Liv. *Inter cœnam.* Cic.

REM. 3. *Ante* and *post* are commonly joined with concrete official titles, when used to indicate time, rather than with the corresponding abstract nouns; as, *ante* or *post Cĭcĕrōnem* consŭlem, rather than *ante* or *post* consūlātum *Cĭcĕrōnis.*

(2.) *In* and *sub,* denoting *motion* or *tendency,* are followed by the accusative; denoting *situation,* they are followed by the ablative; as,

Via dūcit in urbem, The way conducts into the city. Virg. *Noster in te ămor.* Cic. *Callĭmăchi ĕpĭgramma in* Cleombrŏtum *est*—on or concerning Cleombrotus. Id. *Exercĭtus sub* jŭgum *missus est,* The army was sent under the yoke. Cæs. *Magna mei sub* terras *ībit īmāgo.* Virg. *Mĕdiā in* urbe, In the midst of the city. Ovid. *In* his *fuit Ariovistus.* Cæs. *Bella sub Ilĭăcis* mœnĭbus *gĕrĕre,* To wage war under the Trojan walls. Ovid. *Sub* nocte *sĭlenti.* Virg.

REM. 4. The most common significations of *in,* with the accusative, are, *into, to, towards, until, for, against, about, concerning,*—with the ablative, *in, on, upon, among.* In some instances, *in* and *sub,* denoting tendency, are followed by the ablative, and, denoting situation, by the accusative; as, *In* conspectu *meo audet vĕnīre.* Phæd. *Nātiōnes quæ in* ămīcĭtiam *pŏpŭli Rōmāni,* dĭtiōnem-*que essent.* Id. *Sub* jŭgo *dictātor hostes mīsit.* Liv. *Hostes sub* montem *consē-disse.* Cæs.

REM. 5. *In* and *sub,* in different significations, denoting neither tendency nor situation, are followed sometimes by the accusative, and sometimes by the ablative; as, *Amor crescit in* hōras. Ovid. *Hostīlem in* mŏdum. Cic. *Quod in bŏno* servo *dici posset.* Id. *Sub eā* condĭtiōne. Ter. *Sub* pœnā *mortis.* Suet.

REM. 6. In expressions relating to time, *sub,* denoting *at* or *in,* usually takes the ablative; as, *Sub adventu Rōmānōrum.* Liv. *Sub* lūce. Ovid. *Sub tempŏre.* Lucan. Denoting *near, about, just before* or *just after,* it takes the accusative; as, *Sub* lūcem. Virg. *Sub* lūmĭna prīma. Hor. *Sub* hoc *hĕrus inquit.* Id.

REM. 7. *In* is used with neuter adjectives in the accusative in forming adverbial phrases; as, *In ūnĭversum,* In general. *In tōtum,* Wholly. So, *in plēnum; in incertum; in tantum; in quantum; in majus; in mĕlius; in omnia,* in all respects, etc.

(3.) *Sŭpĕr,* when denoting place or time, is followed by the accusative, and sometimes poetically by the ablative; but when it signifies *on, about,* or *concerning,* it takes the ablative. With the accusative *sŭper* signifies *over, above, besides* or *in addition to;* with numerals, *more than;* as,

Sŭper lābentem culmĭna *tecti,* Gliding over the top of the house. Virg. *Sŭper tres mŏdios.* Liv. *Sŭper morbum etiam fames affēcit exercĭtum.* Id. *Sŭper tĕnĕro prosternit* grāmĭne *corpus,* He stretches his body on the tender grass. Virg. *Multa sŭper* Priămo *rŏgĭtans sŭper* Hectŏre *multa,* .... concerning Priam, etc. Id.

REM. 8. The compound *dēsŭper* is found with the accusative, and *insŭper* with the accusative and the ablative.

(4.) *Subter* generally takes the accusative, but sometimes, in poetry, the ablative; as,

Subter terras, Under the earth. Liv. *Subter densā* testūdĭne. Virg.

(5.) *Clam* is followed by either the accusative or the ablative ; as,

Clam vos, Without your knowledge. Cic. *Clam* patrem. Ter. *Clam* matrem suam. Plaut. *Clam* vobis. Cæs. *Neque potest clam* me *esse.* Plaut. *Clam* uxore meā. Id. Its diminutive *clanculum* is once followed by the accusative, *clanculum* patres. Ter.

REM. 9. The adverbs *versus* or *versum* and *usque* are sometimes annexed to an accusative, principally of place, which depends on *ad* or *in,* and sometimes the preposition is omitted ; as, Ad Oceānum *versus prófĭcĭscī.* Cæs. *Fŭgam* ad se *versum.* Sall. In Galliam *versus castra mŏvēre.* Id.—*Usque* ad Nŭman-tiam. Cic. *Usque* in Pamphȳliam. Id. Ad noctem *usque.* Plaut.—Brundŭsium *versus.* Cic. Termĭnos *usque Libȳæ.* Just. *Usque* Ennam *profĕcti.* Cic. *Versus* is always placed after the accusative.—*Usque* occurs more rarely with *sub* and *trans* with the accusative ; as, Trans Alpes *usque transfertur.* Cic. *Usque* sub extrēmum *brūmæ* imbrem.—*Versus* also rarely follows *ab,* and *usque* either *ab* or *ex* with the ablative ; as, Ab septemtriōne *versus.* Varr. A fundā-mento *usque mŏvistī māre.* Plaut. *Usque* ex ultimā *Sȳriā.* Cic. *Usque* a puĕrĭtiā. Ter. *Usque* a Rōmŭlo. Cic. *Usque* a māne ad vespĕrum. Plaut.

REM. 10. Prepositions are often used without a noun depending upon them, but such noun may usually be supplied by the mind ; as, *Multis* post *annis,* i. e. *post id tempus.* Cic. Circum *Concordiæ,* scil. *ædem.* Sall.

REM. 11. The accusative, in many constructions, is supposed to depend on a preposition understood ; as, Quid *ŏpus est plūrā?* i. e. *propter quid?* why ? i. q. *cur?* or *quāre?* Cic. So, Quid me *ostentem?* Id. But it is not easy, in every case, to say what preposition should be supplied. For the accusative without a preposition after neuter verbs, see § 232. For the accusative of limitation, see § 234, II.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

§ **236.**   Nouns denoting duration of time, or extent of space, are put, after adjectives and verbs, in the accusative, and some-times after verbs in the ablative ; as,

Acc. *Appius cæcus* multos annos *fuit,* Appius was blind *many years.* Cic. Bīduum *Lāŏdĭcēæ fui.* Id. Dies tōtos *de virtūte dissĕrunt.* Id. *Te jam* annum *audientem Crātippum.* Id.—*Dēcrēvērunt intercălārium* quinque *et* quādrāginta dies *longum.* Id.— *Quum ăbessem ab Amāno* iter ūnĭus dĭci. Id. Tres *păteat cæli spătium non amplius* ulnas. Virg. (Cf. § 256, R. 6.) *A portu* stădia centum *et* vīginti *prōcessĭmus.* Cic.—*Duas fossas* quindĕcim pĕdes *lātas perduxit,*—two ditches fifteen feet broad. Cæs. *Fossæ* quīnos pĕdes *altæ.* Id. *Fŏrāmĭna longa* pĕdes tres sēmis. Cato. *Orbem ŏleārium crassum* dĭgĭtos sex *făcĭto.* Id.—Abl. *Vixit* annis undētrīginta. Suet. Quātuordĕcim annis *exsĭlium tŏlĕrāvit.* Tac. Trīginta annis *vixit Panœtius.* Cic.—*Exercĭtus Rōmānus trīdui* itĭnĕre *ab-fuit ab anne Tănai.* Tac. *Æscŭlāpii templum* quinque millĭbus *passuum dis-tans.* Liv.

NOTE 1. The ablative denoting extent of time and space is rarely used by Cicero, and less frequently than the accusative by other writers.

NOTE 2. The accusative denoting extent of space sometimes follows the ad-verbs *longe, alte,* etc. ; as, *Campestris lŏcus alte* duos pĕdes et sēmissem *infŏ-diendus est.* Colum. *Vercingĕtŏrix lŏcum castris dēligit ab Avarico longe* millia *passuum* sēdĕcim. Cæs.

NOTE 3. (*a.*) *Old,* in reference to the time which a person *has lived,* is expressed in Latin by *nātus,* with an accusative of the time ; as, *Dēcessit Alexander mensem ūnam, annos tres et trīginta nātus.* Just. (*b.*) A person's age may also be expressed without *nātus* by a genitive of the time closely connected with his name, according to § 211, R. 6 ; as, *Alexander annōrum trium et trīginta dēcessit.* (*c.*) *Older* or *younger* than a certain age is ex-pressed by prefixing to the accusative or genitive of the definite age the ad-

verbs *plus* or *mĭnus*, or the adjectives *mājor* or *mĭnor*, either with or without *quam.* See § 256, R. 6 and 7.—Sometimes, also, the ablative depends on the comparative; as, *Mĭnor vĭgintī quinque* annis *nātus.* Nep. *Mĭnor* trĭginta annis *nātu.* Cic. Biennio *quam nos mājor.* Id. Cf. § 256, R. 16. (1.)

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting time or space, used to limit *other nouns,* are put in the genitive or ablative. See § 211, R. 6.

REM. 2. A term of time not yet completed may be expressed by an ordinal number; as, *Nos* vīcēsĭmum *jam* diem *pătimur hĕbescĕre ăciem hōrum auctōrĭtātis.* Cic. *Pūnīco* bello duodĕcĭmum annum *Itălĭa ūrēbātur.* Liv. Hence in the passive, *Nunc* tertia *vīvĭtur* ætas. Ovid.

REM. 3. The accusative or ablative of space is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending on it remains; as, *Castra quæ ăbĕrant* bīduī, scil. *spătium* or *spătio.*

REM. 4. To denote a place by its distance from another, the ablative is commonly used; as, Millĭbus *passuum sex a Cæsăris castris consēdit.* Cæs.; but sometimes the accusative; as, Tria *passuum* millia *ab ipsā urbe castra pŏsuit.* Liv. The only words used for this purpose in the ablative alone are *spătio* and *intervallo;* as, *Quindĕcim ferme millium* spătio *castra ab Tărento pŏsuit.* Id.

NOTE 4. For *abhinc* and a cardinal number, with the accusative or ablative of past time, see § 253, R. 2. For the ablative denoting difference of time or space, see § 256, R. 16.

REM. 5. A preposition is sometimes expressed before an accusative of time or space, but it generally modifies the meaning; as, *Quem* per *dĕcem* annos *ăluĭmus,* .... during ten years. Cic.

REM. 6. When the place from which the distance is reckoned is not mentioned, *ab* is sometimes placed before the ablative of distance, as if this depended on the preposition, or, Two miles off; as, *A millĭbus passuum duŏbus castra pŏsuērunt,* Two miles from the place, or, Two miles off. Cæs.

REM. 7. An *accusative of weight* also occurs when expressed by *libram* or *libras* in connection with *pondo.* Cf. § 211, R. 6. (4.)

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE.

§ **237.** After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of the town *in which the motion ends* is put in the accusative without a preposition; as,

Rĕgŭlus Carthāgĭnem *rĕdiĭt,* Regulus returned *to Carthage.* Cic. *Căpuam flectĭt ĭter,* He turns his course *to Capua.* Liv. *Calpurnius* Rōmam *prŏfĭciscĭtur.* Sall. Rōmam *ĕrat nunciātum.* Cic.

REMARK 1. The accusative, in like manner, is used after *ĭter* with *sum, hăbeo,* etc.; as, *Iter est mĭhi* Lānŭvium. Cic. *Cæsărem iter hăbēre* Căpuam. Id. And even after *sum* alone; as, *Omnia illa mūnĭcĭpia, quæ* sunt *a Vibōne* Brundĭsium. Cic. So with a verbal noun; as, *Adventus* Rōmam. Liv. *Rĕdĭtus* Rōmam. Cic.

REM. 2. (*a.*) The preposition to be supplied is *in,* denoting *to* or *into,* which is sometimes expressed; as, In Ephĕsum *ăbiĭ.* Plaut. *Ad,* before the name of a town, denotes direction towards it; as, *Iter dīrĭgĕre ad Mŭtĭnam.* Cic.; and also its vicinity; as, *Adŏlescentŭlus mīles prŏfectus sum ad Căpuam;* i. e. *in castra ad Căpuam.* Sall. So, *Lælius cum classe ad Brundĭsium vēnit.* Cæs. *Cæsar* ad Gĕnēvam *pervēnit.* Id. *Quum ĕgo* ad Hērāclēam *accēdĕrem.* Cic.

(*b.*) When *urbs, oppĭdum, lŏcus,* etc., follow the names of towns as appositions, they generally take a preposition; as, *Dēmărātus se contŭlit Tarquĭnios,* in *urbem Etrūrĭæ flōrentissĭmam.* Cic. Ad Cirtam oppĭdum *iter constĭtuunt.* Sall.— So also when the name of the town is qualified by an adjective; as, *Magnum*

tter ad doctas *prŏfĭcisci cōgor* Athēnas. Prop.   But the poets and later prose writers sometimes omit the preposition; as, Ovid, Her. 2, 83.

REM. 3. Instead of the accusative, a dative is sometimes, though rarely, used; as, Carthāgĭni *nuncios mittam.* Hor. Cf. § 225, IV. and R. 2.

REM. 4. *Dŏmus* in both numbers, and *rus* in the singular, are put in the accusative, like names of towns; as,

Ite dŏmum, Go *home.* Virg. *Galli* dŏmos *ăbĭĕrant,*—had gone home. Liv. Rus *ĭbo,* I will go into the country. Ter.

NOTE. (*a.*) When *dŏmus* is limited by a genitive or a possessive adjective pronoun, it sometimes takes a preposition: with other adjectives, the preposition is generally expressed; as, *Non introĕo* in nostram dŏmum. Plaut. *Vēnisse* in dŏmum Leccæ. Cic. Ad eam dŏmum *prŏfecti sunt.* Id. In dŏmos sŭpĕras *scandĕre cūra fuit.* Ovid. Rarely, also, when not limited; as, *Sŏcrătes phĭlŏsŏphĭam* in dŏmos *intrōduxit.* Cic. So, *lărem suum.* App., or *ad lărem suum.* Cic. *Cŭricas* in Albense rus *inferre.* Plin. Quum in sua rūra *vēnērunt.* Cic. With the possessor's name in the genitive, either *dŏmum* or *in dŏmum* is used; as, *Pompōnii dŏmum vĕnisse.* Cic. *In dŏmum Mælii tēla infĕruntur.* Liv.

(*b.*) *Dŏmus* is sometimes used in the accusative after a verbal noun; as, *Dŏmum* rĕditiōnis *spe sublātā.* Cæs. So, Itio *dŏmum.* Cic. Concursus *dŏmum.* Cæs. Cf. R. 1.

REM. 5. (*a.*) Before the names of countries and of all other places in which the motion ends, except those of towns, and *dŏmus* and *rus,* the preposition is commonly used; as, *Ex Asĭā transis* in Eurōpam. Curt. *Te* in Epīrum *vēnisse gaudeo.* Cic. But it is sometimes omitted; as, *Dēvĕniunt* spēluncam. Virg. *Dēvĕnēre* lŏcos. Id. Tŭmŭlum *antīquæ Cĕrĕris* sēdemque *sacrātam vēnĭmus.* Id. *Ibis Cĕcrŏpĭos* portus. Ovid. So, also, before names of countries, especially those ending in *us*; as, *Ægyptus, Bospŏrus, Chersŏnēsus, Epīrus, Pĕlŏponnēsus,* etc. So, also, Illyrĭcum *prŏfectus.* Cæs. Măcĕdŏniam *pervēnit.* Liv. Afrĭcam *transĭtūrus.* Id. So, Tacitus construes even names of nations, when used, as they often are, for those of countries; as, *Ductus inde* Cangos *exercĭtus.* Ibēros *ad patrium regnum pervādit.* So, Virgil, *Nos ĭbĭmus* Afros.—Pliny has, Insŭlas *Rubri Māris nāvĭgant.*

(*b.*) Before the names of small islands the preposition is frequently omitted; as, *Pausāniam cum classe* Cyprum *mĭsērunt.* Nep.: but rarely before the names of the larger islands; as, *Sardĭnia, Brĭtannia, Crēta, Eubœa, Sĭcĭlia.*

(*c.*) Before accusatives of any words denoting locality after verbs of motion, the poets omit the preposition; as, Ităliam—*Lārvĭnĭăque vēnĭt* lītŏra. Virg.—The old accusative *fŏras* is used, like names of towns, to denote the place *whither,* while *fŏris* denotes the place *where*; as, *Văde* fŏras. Mart. *Exit* fŏras. Plaut.

ACCUSATIVE   AFTER   ADJECTIVES,   ADVERBS, AND   INTERJECTIONS.

§ **238.** 1. (*a.*) The adjectives *prŏpior* and *proxĭmus,* with their adverbs *prŏpius* and *proxĭme,* like their primitive *prŏpe,* are often joined with the accusative; as,

Ipse prŏpior montem *suos collŏcat.* Sall. *Crassus* proxĭmus măre Oceănum *hĭĕmārat.* Cæs.—*Libyes* prŏpius măre Afrĭcum *ăgĭtābant.* Sall. Proxĭme Hispāniam *Mauri sunt.* Id.

(*b.*) The adverbs *prīdie* and *postrīdie* are also often followed by the accusative; as, *Prīdie eum diem.* Cic. *Prīdie* īdus. Id. *Postrīdie* lūdos. Id.—(*c.*) An accusative sometimes follows *intus* and *cŏmĭnus*; as, *Intus* dŏmum. Plaut. *Agrestes cŏmĭnus ĭre* sues, scil. *in.* Prop.

REMARK 1. The accusative with *prĭdie* and *postrĭdie* is by some referred to *ante* and *post* understood. For the genitive after these words, see § 212, R. 4, N. 6.—Respecting *versus, usque, exadversus (-um)* and *sĕcus* with the accusative, see § 195, R. 3: and § 235, R. 3.

REM. 2. The adverb *bĕne*, by the elipsis of *vălēre jŭbeo*, is sometimes followed by the accusative in forms of drinking health; as, *Bĕne vos, bĕne nos, bĕne te, bĕne me, bĕne nostram etiam* Stĕphănĭum! Plaut. *Bĕne* Messālam, a health to Messala. Tibull. It is also construed with the dative. See § 228, 1.

2. In exclamations, the noun or pronoun which marks the *object of the feeling* is put in the accusative either with or without the interjections, *O! ah! heu! eheu! ecce! en! hem! pro!* or *væ!*as,

En quătuor ăras! ecce duas tĭbi Daphni! Behold four altars! lo, two for thee, Daphnis! Virg. *Eccum! eccos! eccillum!* for *ecce eum! ecce eos! ecce illum!* Plaut. *O præclārum custōdem!* Cic. *Heu me infēlicem!* Ter. *Pro Deûm hŏmĭnumque* fĭdem! Cic. *Ah me, me!* Catull. *Eheu me misĕrum!* Ter. *Hem astūtias!* Id. *Væ te!* Plaut. *Væ me!* Sen. *Misĕram me!* Ter. *Hŏmĭnem grăvem et cĭvem ēgrĕgium!* Cic. Cf. § 228, 3.

NOTE. The accusative after interjections is supposed to depend on some verb of emotion to be supplied.

SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ **239.** The subject of the infinitive mood is put in the accusative; as,

Mŏleste Pompeium *id ferre constābat*, That Pompey took that ill, was evident. Cic. *Eos hoc nōmĭne appellāri fas est.* Id. *Mīror te ad me nĭhil scrībĕre*, I wonder that you do not write to me. Cn. Mag. in Cic. *Campos jŭbet esse pătentes.* Virg.

NOTE 1. In historical writing the present infinitive has sometimes its subject in the nominative. Cf. § 209, R. 5.

REMARK 1. The subject of the infinitive is omitted when it precedes in the genitive or dative case; as, *Est ădŏlescentis mājōres nātu verēri*, scil. *eum.* Cic. *Expĕdit bŏnas esse vōbis*, scil. *vos.* Ter.; and rarely when it precedes in the accusative; as, *Ea pŏpŭlus lætāri et mĕrito dīcĕre fiĕri ;* and also when its place is supplied by a possessive pronoun expressed or understood; as, *Non fuit consilium* (meum)—*servīlibus offĭciis* intentum *ætātem ăgĕre* (scil. me). Sall.

REM. 2. A substantive pronoun is also sometimes omitted before the infinitive, when it is the subject of the preceding verb; as, *Pollĭcĭtus sum susceptūrum* (*esse*), scil. *me,* I promised (that I) would undertake. Ter. *Sed reddĕre posse nĕgābat*, scil. *se.* Virg.

REM. 3. The subject of the infinitive is often omitted, when it is a general word for person or thing; as, *Est ăliud īrācundum esse, ăliud īrātum*, scil. *hŏmĭnem.* Cic. See § 269, R. 1.

REM. 4. The subject-accusative, like the nominative, is often *wanting.* See § 209, R. 3. The subject of the infinitive may be an infinitive or a clause. See § 269, R. 3.

NOTE 2. For the verbs after which the subject-accusative with the infinitive is used, see § 272. For the accusative in the predicate after infinitives neuter and passive, see § 210.

VOCATIVE.

§ **240.**   The vocative is used, either with or without an interjection, in addressing a person or thing.

REMARK 1. The interjections *O, heu,* and *pro (proh),* also *ah, au (hau), ĕhem, ĕho, ehodum, eia (heia), hem, heus, hui, io,* and *ohe,* are followed by the vocative ; as,

O formōse puer ! O beautiful boy ! Virg. *Heu virgo !* Id. *Pro sancte Jŭpĭter !* Cic. *Ah stulte !* Ter. *Heus Sȳre !* Id. *Ohe libelle !* Mart. *Ehodum bŏne vir.* Ter.—*Urbem,* mi Rūfe, *cŏle.* Cic. Quinctĭli Vare, *lĕgiōnes redde.* Suet. *Quo mŏrĭtūre ruis ?* Hor.   Macte *virtūte esto.* Cic.

REM. 2. The vocative is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending upon it remains ; as, *O mĭsĕræ sortis !* scil. *hŏmĭnes.* Lucan.

NOTE. The vocative forms no part of a proposition, but serves to designate the person to whom the proposition is addressed.

ABLATIVE.

The ablative denotes certain relations of nouns and pronouns, all of which are expressed in English by means of prepositions. In Latin this case is sometimes accompanied by a preposition, and sometimes stands alone. Cf. § 37, 6.

ABLATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ **241.**   Eleven prepositions are followed by the ablative.

These are *ā,* (or *ăb, abs*), *absquĕ, dē ; cōram, pălam, cum, ex, (ē); sĭnĕ, tĕnŭs, prō,* and *præ ;* as,

Ab illo tempŏre, From that time. Liv. *A scrībendo,* From writing. Cic. *Cum exercĭtu,* With the army. Sall. *Certis de causis,* For certain reasons. Cic. *Ex fŭgā,* From flight. Id. *Pălam pŏpŭlo.* Liv. *Sĭne lăbōre.* Cic. *Căpŭlo tĕnus.* Virg. *Cantābit văcuus cōram lătrōne viātor.* Juv. cf. § 195, 5.

NOTE. Of the prepositions followed by the ablative, five signify removal or separation, viz. *ā* (*ăb* or *abs*), *dē, ē* (or *ex*), *absquĕ* and *sĭnĕ.*

REMARK 1. *Tĕnus* is always placed after its case. It sometimes takes the genitive plural. See § 221, III.—*Cum* is always appended to the ablative of the personal pronouns *me, te, se, nōbis,* and *vōbis,* and commonly to the ablatives of the relative pronoun, *quo, quā, quĭbus,* and *qui.* Cf. § 133, 4, and § 136, R. 1.

REM. 2. The adverbs *prŏcul* and *sĭmul* are sometimes used with an ablative, which depends on the prepositions *a* or *ab,* and *cum* understood ; as, *Prŏcul mări,* Far from the sea. Liv. *Sĭmul* nōbis *hăbĭtat.* Ovid. *Prŏcul* dŭbio. Suet. The prepositions are frequently expressed ; as, *Prŏcul a terrā.* Cic. *Prŏcul a patriā.* Virg. *Tēcum sĭmul.* Plaut. *Vōbiscum sĭmul.* Cic.—So, rarely, *æque. Qui* me *in terrā æque fortūnātus ĕrit.* Plaut. Cf. *Nŏvi æque omnia* tēcum. Id.

REM. 3. Some of the above prepositions, like those followed by the accusative, are occasionally used without a noun expressed ; as, *Quum* cōram *sŭmus.* Cic. *Cum frātre an* sĭne. Id. Cf. § 235, R. 10.

REM. 4. The ablative follows also the prepositions *in* and *sub,* when they answer to the question ' where ? ' *super,* when it signifies ' on ' or ' concerning '; and sometimes *clam* and *subter.* Cf. § 235, (2.)—(5.)

REM. 5. *In* is generally joined with the ablative after verbs of *placing,* as, *pōno, lŏco, collŏco, stătuo, constĭtuo,* and *consĭdo ;* as, *Et săle tābentes artus* in lītŏre *pōnunt.* Virg.—So, also, after verbs signifying to *have, hold,* or *regard,*

as, *hăbeo, dūco, nŭmĕro,* etc.—After verbs of *assembling, concealing,* and *including, in* is followed by either the accusative or the ablative.—After *dēfīgo, inscrībo, insculpo, incīdo,* and *insĕro, in* is usually joined with the ablative.

§ **242.** Many verbs compounded with *ăb, dē, ex,* and *sŭper,* are followed by an ablative depending upon the preposition; as,

Abesse urbe, To be absent from the city. Cic. *Abīre sēdĭbus,* To depart from their habitations. Tac. *Ut se mălēdictis non abstĭneant.* Cic. *Dētrŭdǔnt nāves scŏpŭlo,* They push the ships from the rock. Virg. *Nāvi ēgressus est.* Nep. *Excēdĕre fīnĭbus.* Liv. *Cæsar prœlio sŭpersēdēre stătuit.* Cæs. *Trĭbūto ac dēlectu sŭpersessum est.* Cic. So the adjective *extorris;* as, *Extorris patriā, dŏmo.* Sall. And so the verbal *ēruptio;* as, *Mŭtĭnā ēruptio.* Cic.

REMARK 1. The preposition is often repeated, or one of similar signification is used; as, *Dētrăhĕre de tuā fāmā numquam cōgĭtāvi.* Cic. *Ex ŏcŭlis ăbiērunt.* Liv. *Exīre a patriā.* Cic. *Exīre de vītā.* Id. Cf. § 224, R. 4.

REM. 2. These compound verbs are often used without a noun; but, in many cases, it may be supplied by the mind; as, *Equĭtes dēgressi ad pĕdes,* scil. *ĕquis.* Liv. *Abīre ad Deos,* scil. *vītā.* Cic.

REM. 3. Some verbs compounded with *ab, de,* and *ex,* instead of the ablative, are sometimes followed by the dative. See § 224, R. 1 and 2. Some compounds, also, of neuter verbs, occur with the accusative. See § 233, R. 1.

ABLATIVE AFTER CERTAIN NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS.

§ **243.** *Opus* and *ūsus,* signifying *need,* usually take the ablative of the thing needed; as,

Auctōrĭtāte tuā nōbis ŏpus est, We need your authority. Cic. *Nunc ănĭmis ŏpus, nunc pectŏre firmo.* Virg. *Nāves, quĭbus consŭli ūsus non esset,* Ships, for which the consul had no occasion. Liv. *Nunc vīrĭbus ūsus, nunc mănĭbus răpĭdis.* Virg.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) *Opus* and *ūsus* are sometimes followed by the ablative of a perfect participle; as, Mātūrāto *ŏpus est,* There is need of haste. Liv. *Usus* facto *est mĭhi.* Ter. *Ubi summus impĕrātor non ădest ad exercĭtum, cĭtius, quod non facto esi ūsus, fit, quam quod* facto *est ŏpus.* Plaut. After *ŏpus,* a noun is sometimes expressed with the participle; as, *Opus fuit* Hirtio convento,—of meeting, or, to meet, § 274, R. 5. Cic. *Opus sĭbi esse dŏmĭno ējus* invento. Liv.—or a supine is used; as, *Ita* dictu *ŏpus est,* It is necessary to say, I must say. Ter.—Instead of the ablative with *ŏpus est,* an infinitive, either alone or with a subject accusative, or *ut* with a subjunctive clause, sometimes occurs; as, *Opus est* te ănĭmo vălēre. Cic. *Mĭhi ŏpus est,* ut lăvem. Id.

(*b.*) *Opus* and *ūsus,* though nouns, are seldom limited by the genitive. In a few passages they are construed with the accusative. See § 211, R. 11.

REM. 2. *Opus* is sometimes the subject and sometimes the predicate of *est; ūsus,* which seldom occurs except in ante-classic poets, is, with only rare exceptions, the subject only. The person to whom the thing is needful is put in the dative; (§ 226.) With *opus* the thing needed may either be the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative, or follow it in the ablative; as, Dux *nōbis ŏpus est.* Cic. *Verres* multa *sĭbi ŏpus esse* aiĕbat. Id.; or, Dūce *nōbis ŏpus est.* The former construction is most common with neuter adjectives and pronouns; as, Quod *non* ŏpus *est, asse cārum est.* Cato apud Sen.—In the predicate *ŏpus* and *ūsus* are commonly translated 'needful' or 'necessary.' Cf. § 210, R. 5.

NOTE. For the ablative of character, quality, etc., limiting a noun, see § 211, R. 6

§ **244.** *Dignus, indignus, contentus, præd̆itus,* and *frētus,* are followed by the ablative of the object; as,

Dignus laude, Worthy of praise. Hor. *Vox p̆op̆uli* mājestāte *indigna,* A speech unbecoming the dignity of the people. Cæs. *Bestiæ* eo *contentæ non quærunt amplius.* Cic. *Hŏmo* scĕlĕre *præd̆itus.* Id. *Plērĭque* ingĕnio *frēti.* Id.—So, *Æquum est* me *atque* illo. Plaut.

REMARK 1. The adverb *digne,* in one passage, takes the ablative; *Peccat ŭter nostrum* crŭce *dignius.* Hor.—*Dignor,* also, both as the passive of the obsolete *digno,* and as a deponent verb, is followed by an ablative of the thing. As a deponent it takes also an accusative of the person; as, *Haud ĕquĭdem* tāli me hŏnōre *dignor.* Virg.—Pass. *Qui* tāli hŏnōre *dignāti sunt.* Cic. Conjŭgio, *Anchīsa, Vĕnĕris dignāte* sŭperbo. Virg.—Sometimes as a deponent, instead of the ablative of the thing, it is followed by an infinitive clause; as, *Non ĕgo grammăticas* ambīre *tribus et pulpĭta dignor.* Hor. And both *dignor* and *dēdignor* are followed by two accusatives, one of the object the other of the predicate. See § 230, R. 2.

REM. 2. (*a.*) *Dignus* and *indignus* are sometimes followed by the genitive; as, *Suscipe cōgĭtātiōnem dignissĭmam tuæ* virtūtis. Cic. *Indignus* āvōrum. Virg.; and *dignus* sometimes takes a neuter pronoun or adjective in the accusative; as, *Non me censes scīre quid dignus siem?* Plaut. *Frētus* is in Livy construed with the dative. Cf. § 222, R. 6, (*b.*)

(*b.*) Instead of an ablative, *dignus* and *indignus* often take an infinitive, especially in the passive; as, *Erat dignus* āmāri. Virg.; or a subjunctive clause, with *qui* or *ut*; as, *Dignus* qui impĕret. Cic. *Non sum dignus,* ut fīgam pālum in părĭĕtem. Plaut.; or the supine in *u*; as, *Digna atque indigna rĕlātu vōcĭf̆erans.* Virg. *Contentus* is likewise joined with the infinitive; as, *Non hæc artes contenta păternas* ēdĭdĭcisse *fuit.* Ovid.—So, *Nāves pontum* irrumpĕre *frētæ.* Stat.

§ **245.** I. *Utor, fruor, fungor, p̆otior, vescor,* and their compounds, are followed by the ablative; as,

Ad quem tum Jūno supplex his vōcĭbus *ūsa est,*—addressed these words. Virg. *Frui* vŏluptāte, To enjoy pleasure. Cic. *Fungĭtur* offĭcio, He performs his duty. Id. Oppĭdo *p̆otīti sunt.* Liv. *Vescĭtur* aurā. Virg. His rēbus *perfruor.* Cic. Lēgĭbus *ăbūti.* Id. *Dēfuncti* impĕrio. Liv. Grăvi ŏpĕre *perfungĭmur.* Cic. *O tandem* magnis *pĕlăgi dēfuncte* pĕrīclis. Virg.

The compounds are *abūtor, deūtor, perfruor, dēfungor,* and *perfungor.*

NOTE. *Utor* may take a second ablative, as an apposition or a predicate, like the predicate accusative, (§ 230, R. 2), and may then be translated by the verb *to have;* as, *Ille f̆acĭli* me *ūtētur* patre, He shall have in me an indulgent father. Ter.

REMARK. In early writers these verbs sometimes take an accusative; as, *Quam rem mĕdĭci ūtuntur.* Varr. Ingĕnium *frui.* Ter. *Datămes mĭlĭtāre* mūnus *fungens.* Nep. *Gentem ălĭquam* urbem *nostram p̆otītūram p̆utem.* Cic. *Sacras lauros vescar.* Tibull. *In prŏlŏgis scrībendis* ŏpĕram *ăbūtĭtur.* Ter.—*Pŏtior* is, also, found with the genitive. See § 220, 4.

II. 1. *Nītor, innītor, f̆īdo* and *conf̆īdo,* may be followed by the ablative without a preposition; as, Hastā *innīxus.* Liv. *Fĭdĕre* cursu. Ovid. Nātūrā lŏci *confīdēbant.* Cæs.

2. *Misceo* with its compounds takes, with the accusative of the object, the ablative of the thing mingled with; as, *Miscēre pābŭla* sāle. Coll. *Aquas* nectāre. Ovid. *Aër* multo cālōre *admixtus.* Cic.

3. *Assuesco, assuēf̆acio, consuesco, insuesco,* and sometimes *acquiesco,* take either the dative or the ablative of the thing; as, *Aves* sanguĭne *et* prædā *assuētæ.* Hor. Nullo offĭcio *aut* disciplīnā *assuēfactus.* Cæs. Cf. § 224.

4. *Vīvo* and *ĕpŭlor*, ' to live or feast upon,' are followed by the ablative; as, Dăpĭbus *ĕpŭlāmur ŏpĭmis.* Virg. Lacte *atque pĕcŏre vīvunt.* Cæs.

5. *Sto* signifying 'to be filled or covered with,' and also when signifying 'to cost,' is followed by the ablative without a preposition; when signifying 'to persevere in, stick to, abide by,' ' to rest or be fixed on,' it is followed by the ablative either with or without *in*; as, Jam pulvĕre *cœlum stāre vĭdent.* Virg.— *Multo* sanguĭne *ac* vulnĕrĭbus *ea Pœnĭs victōria stĕtit.* Liv. *Stāre* conditiōnĭbus. Cic. *Omnis* in Ascānio *stat cūra părentis.* Virg.— *Consto,* ' to consist of' or 'to rest upon,' is followed by the ablative either alone or with *ex, de,* or *in*; as, *Constat mătēries* sŏlĭdo corpŏre. Lucr. *Hŏmo* ex ănĭmo *constat et* corpŏre. Cic.

REMARK 1. *Fīdo, confīdo, misceo, admisceo, permisceo,* and *assuesco* often take the dative.

REM. 2. When a preposition is expressed after the above verbs, *sto, fīdo, confīdo, nītor, innītor,* and *assuesco* take *in* or *ad; acquiesco, in;* and *misceo* with its compounds, *cum.*

§ **246.** Perfect participles denoting *origin* are often followed by the ablative of the *source,* without a preposition.

Such are *nātus, prōgnātus, sātus, creātus, crētus, ēdĭtus, gĕnĭtus, gĕnĕrātus, ortus;* to which may be added *ŏriundus,* descended from.

Thus, *Nāte deā !* O son of a goddess! Virg. *Tantălo prōgnātus,* Descended from Tantalus. Cic. *Sātus Nēreĭde,* Sprung from a Nereid. Ovid. *Creātus rēge.* Id. *Alcănŏre crēti.* Virg. *Edĭte rēgĭbus.* Hor. *Dūs gĕnĭte.* Virg. *Argŏlĭco gĕnĕrātus Alēmŏne.* Ovid. *Ortus nullis mājōrĭbus.* Hor. *Cœlesti sēmĭne ŏriundi.* Lucr.

REMARK 1. The preposition is also rarely omitted after the verbs *creo, gĕnĕro,* and *nascor;* as, *Ut* patre *certo nascĕrēre.* Cic. *Fortes creantur* fortĭbus. Hor.

REM. 2. After participles denoting origin, the preposition *ex* or *de* is usually joined to the name of the mother; and in a few passages *ex* or *ab* is joined to the name of the father; as, *Prōgnāti ab Dīte patre.* Cæs. In speaking of one's ancestors *ab* is frequently used; as, *Plērosque Belgas esse ortos* a Germānis. Id.

REM. 3. Origin from a place or country is generally expressed by a patrial adjective; as, *Thrăsўbŭlus* Athēniensis, Thrasybulus *of Athens.* Livy often uses *ab*; as, *Turnus Herdōnius* ab Arīciā. Cæsar prefers the ablative alone; as, *Cn. Magius* Crĕmōnā; and in this manner is expressed the tribe to which a person belongs; as, *Q. Verres* Rōmĭliā,—*of the Romilian tribe.*

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, ETC.

§ **247.** Nouns denoting the *cause, manner, means,* and *instrument,* after adjectives and verbs, are put in the ablative without a preposition.

NOTE. The English prepositions with the ablative of cause, manner, means, and instrument are *by, with, in,* etc.

1. The *c a u s e.* (1.) Adjectives which have a passive signification, as denoting a state or condition produced by some external cause, may take such cause in the ablative ; as,

Campāni fuērunt sŭperbi bŏnĭtāte *agrōrum.* Cic. *Anĭmal* pābŭlo *lætum.* Sen. *Prælio fessi lassīque,* Weary and faint with the battle. Sall. *Hŏmĭnes ægri* grăvi morbo. Cic.

(2.) Neuter verbs expressing an action, state or feeling of the subject originating in some external cause, may take that cause in the ablative ; as,

Intĕriit fāme, He perished with hunger. *Laude ălĭcnā dŏlet.* Cic. *Lætor* tuā dignĭtāte. Id. *Gaude* tuo bŏno. Id. *Suā* victōriā *glŏriāri.* Cæs. Aquĭlōnĭbus *lăbōrant* quercēta. Hor.—So with *bĕne est* and the dative; as, *Mĭhi bĕne ĕrat non* piscĭbus *urbe pĕtītis,* sed pullo *atque* hædo. Hor. *Ubi illi bĕne sit* ligno, ăquā călĭdā, cĭbo, vestīmentis, etc. Plaut.

NOTE 1. After such adjectives and neuter verbs, a preposition with its case often supplies the place of the simple ablative.

NOTE 2. In exclamations of encouragement or approbation, the defective adjective *macte, macti,* either with or without the imperative of *esse (esto, este, estōte,*) is joined with an ablative of cause, especially with *virtūte.*

NOTE 3. After neuter verbs and adjectives denoting emotions, especially those of *care, grief,* and *sorrow,* the accusative *vĭcem,* with a genitive or a possessive pronoun, is used, instead of the ablative *vĭce,* to signify ' for ' or ' on account of '; as, *Rĕmittĭmus hoc tĭbi, ne* nostram vĭcem *īrascāris,* That you may not be angry on our account. Liv. Tuam vĭcem *sæpe dŏleo, quod,* etc. Cic. Suam vĭcem *măgis anxius, quam* ejus, *cui auxĭlium ab se pĕtēbātur.* Liv.

REMARK 1. When the *cause* is a voluntary agent, it is put in the accusative with the preposition *ob, propter,* or *per;* as, *Non est œquum me* propter vos *dēcĭpi.* Ter. These prepositions, and *a,* or *ab, de, e* or *ex,* and *præ,* are also sometimes used when the cause is not a voluntary agent; as, Ob ădultĕrium *cœsi.* Virg. *Nec lŏqui* præ mœrōre *pŏtuit.* Cic.

REM. 2. (*a.*) After active verbs, the *cause,* unless expressed by an ablative in *u* from substantives having no other case; as, *Jussu, rŏgātu* and *admŏnĭtu,* is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by a preposition, or by *causā, gratiā, ergo,* etc., with a genitive; as, *Lēgĭbus* propter mĕtum *pāret.* Cic. *Ne* ob eam rem *ipsos dēspicĕret.* Id. *Dōnāri* virtūtis ergo. Id. *Si hoc* hŏnōris mei causā *suscēpĕris.* Id. But with *causā,* etc., the adjective pronoun is commonly used for the corresponding substantive pronoun; as, *Te ăbesse* meā causā, *mŏleste fĕro.* Cic. Cf. § 211, R. 3, (*b.*)

(*b.*) When the cause is a state of feeling, a circumlocution is often used with a perfect participle of some verb signifying 'to induce '; as, *Cŭpidĭtāte ductus, inductus, incĭtātus, incensus, inflammātus, impulsus, mōtus, captus,* etc. *Mĭhi bĕnĕvŏlentiā* ductus *trĭbuĕbat omnia.* Cic. Livy frequently uses *ab* in this sense; as, *Ab īrā, a spe, ab ŏdio,* from anger, hope, hatred.

2. The *m a n n e r. Cum* is regularly joined with the ablative of manner, when expressed simply by a noun, not modified by any other word; and also when an adjective is joined with the noun, provided *an additional circumstance,* and not merely an essential character of the action, is to be expressed. Thus:

Cum vŏluptāte *ălĭquem audīre. Verres Lampsăcum vēnit* cum magnā călămĭtāte *cīvĭtātis.* Cic. Hence also when the connection between the subject and the noun denoting the attribute is only external; as, *Prŏcēdĕre* cum veste purpūreā: in distinction from Nūdis pĕdĭbus *incēdĕre;* Aperto căpĭte *sĕdēre,* etc., which express circumstances or attributes essential to the subject.

But *mŏdus, rātio, mos, rĭtus,* etc., signifying manner, never take *cum,* and it is omitted in some expressions with other substantives; as, Hoc mŏdo *scrĭpsi;* Constĭtuērunt quā rātĭone *ăgĕrētur;* Mōre bestiārum *văgāri;* Latrōnum rītu *vivĕre;* Æquo ănĭmo *fĕro;* Maxĭmā fĭde *ămīcĭtias cŏluit.* Summā æquĭtāte *res constĭtuit;* Viam incrēdĭbĭli cĕlĕrĭtāte *confēcit;* Librum magnā cūrā dīlĭgentiāque *scrĭpsit;* the action of the verb being intimately connected with the circumstance expressed by the ablative. So in some expressions with substantives alone; as, Silentio *prætĕrīre* or *făcĕre ălĭquid;* Lēge *ăgĕre;* Jūre and injūriā *făcĕre;* Măgĭstrātus vĭtio *creātus;* Recte et ordĭne *fit.*

REM. 3. The *manner* is also sometimes denoted by *de* or *ex* with the ablative; as, *De* or *ex industriā,* On purpose. Liv. *Ex integro,* Anew. Quint.

3. The *means* and *instrument*. An ablative is joined with verbs of every kind, and also with adjectives of a passive signification, to express the means or instrument; as,

Amīcos observantiā, *rem* parsimōniā *rĕtĭnuĭt,* He retained his friends by attention, his property by frugality. Cic. Auro ostrŏque *dĕcŏri.* Virg. *Ægrescit* mĕdendo. Id. Cornĭbus *tauri, apri* dentĭbus, morsu *leōnes se tŭlantur.* Cic. *Cæsus est* virgis. Id. *Trabs saucia* sĕcūri. Ovid. For the ablative of the means after verbs of *filling,* etc., see § 249, I.

Rem. 4. When the means is a person, it is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by *per,* or by the ablative *ŏpĕrā* with a genitive or a possessive pronoun; as, *meā,* tuā, suā, ŏpĕrā, which are equivalent to *per me, per te, per se,* and denote both good and bad services. *Bĕnĕfĭcio meo,* etc., is used of good results only; as, *Bĕnĕfĭcio meo patres sunt.* Sall. But persons are sometimes considered as involuntary agents, and as such expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, Servos, quibus *silvas publĭcas dĕpŏpŭlātus ĕrat.* Cic.— When *per* is used to express the means, it is connected with external concurring circumstances, rather than with the real means or instrument. Hence we always say *vi oppĭdum cēpit,* but *per vim ei bŏna ērīpuit.*

Rem. 5. The material instrument is always expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Cŏnfĭcĕre cervum sāgĭttis ; glădio ălĭquem vulnĕrāre ; trăjĭcĕre pectus ferro.*

§ 248.

The ablative is used with passive verbs to denote the *means* or *agent* by which any thing is effected, and which in the active voice is expressed by the nominative. This ablative is used either with *ab* or without it, according as it is a person or a thing.

I. The *voluntary* agent of a verb in the passive voice is put in the ablative with *a* or *ab ;* as,

(In the active voice,) *Clōdius me dilĭgit,* Clodius loves me (Cic.); (in the passive,) A Clōdio *dilĭgor,* I am loved by Clodius. *Laudātur* ab his, *culpātur* ab illis. Hor.

Remark 1. (1.) The general word for persons, after verbs in the passive voice, is often understood; as, *Prŏbĭtas laudātur,* scil. *ab hŏmĭnĭbus.* Juv. So after the passive of neuter verbs; as, *Discurrĭtur.* Virg. *Tōto certātum est corpŏre regni.* Id. Cf. § 141, R. 2.

(2.) The agent is likewise often understood, when it is the same as the subject of the verb, and the expression is then equivalent to the active voice with a reflexive pronoun, or to the middle voice in Greek; as, *Quum omnes in omni gĕnĕre scĕlĕrum vŏlŭtentur,* scil. *a se.* Cic.

Rem. 2. *Neuter* verbs, also, are sometimes followed by an ablative of the voluntary agent with *a* or *ab ;* as,

M. Marcellus pĕriit ab Annĭbăle, M. Marcellus was killed by Hannibal. Plin. *Ne vir* ab hoste *cădat.* Ovid.

Rem. 3. The preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Nec* conjŭge *captus.* Ovid. *Cōlĭtur linĭgĕrā* turbā. Id. *Pĕreat meis excīsus* Argīvis. Hor.

For the dative of the agent after verbs in the passive voice, and participles in *dus,* see § 225, II. and III.

II. The *involuntary* agent of a verb in the passive voice, or of a neuter verb, is put in the ablative without a preposition, as the cause, means, or instrument; as, *Maxĭmo* dŏlōre *confĭcior.* Cic. *Frangi* cŭpĭdĭtāte. Id. *Æăcĭdæ* telo *jăcet Hector.* Virg.

NOTE. The involuntary agent is sometimes personified, and takes *a* or *ab*; as, A vŏluptātĭbus *dĕsĕri.* Cic. A nātūrā *dătum hŏmĭnĭ vīvendī currĭcŭlum.* Id. *Vinci* a vŏluptāte. Id. *Victus* a lăbōre. Id.

§ 249.

I. A noun denoting the means, by which the action of a verb is performed, is put in the ablative after verbs signifying to *affect* in any way, to *fill, furnish, load, array, equip, endow, adorn, reward, enrich,* and many others.

REMARK 1. This rule includes such verbs as *affĭcĭo, aspergo, conspergo, inspergo, respergo, compleo, expleo, impleo, oppleo, repleo, suppleo, cŭmŭlo, farcio, rĕfercio, sătio, exsătio, sătūro, stīpo, constīpo, ŏbruo, ŏnĕro, augeo, induo, vestio, armo, orno, circumdo, circumfundo, macto, lŏcuplēto, instruo, imbuo, dōno, impertio, rĕmūnĕror, honesto, hŏnōro,* etc.; as,

Terrŏre *implētur Afrĭca,* Africa is filled with terror. Sil. *Instruxēre* ĕpŭlis *mensas,* They furnished the tables with food. Ovid. *Ut ĕjus ănĭmum his* ŏpĭnĭōnĭbus *imbuas,* That you should imbue his mind with these sentiments. Cic. *Nāves ŏnĕrant* auro, They load the ships with gold. Virg. *Cŭmŭlat altārĭa* dōnis, He heaps the altars with gifts. Id. *Terra se* grāmĭne *vestit,* The earth clothes itself with grass. Id. *Mollĭbus* ornābat cornua sertis. Id. *Multo* cĭbo *et* pōtiōne complēti. Cic. *Lĭbros puĕrīlĭbus* fābŭlis *rĕfercīre.* Id. *Sătĭāri* dēlectātiōne *non possum.* Id. *Hŏmĭnes sătŭrāti* hŏnōrĭbus. Id. *Senectus stīpāta* stŭdiis *jŭventūtis.* Id. *Me tanto* hŏnōre *hŏnestas.* Plaut. Equis *Afrĭcam* lŏcuplētāvit. Colum. *Stŭdĭum tuum nullā me nŏvā* vŏluptāte *affēcit.* Cic. *Terram nox obruit* umbris. Lucr.

REM. 2. Several verbs denoting to fill, instead of the ablative, sometimes take a genitive. See § 220, 3.

REM. 3. The active verbs *induo, dōno, impertio, aspergo, inspergo, circumdo,* and *circumfundo,* instead of the ablative of the thing with the accusative of the person, sometimes take an accusative of the thing, and a dative of the person; as, Cui *quum Dēiănāra* tŭnĭcam *indusset.* Cic. *Dōnāre* mūnĕra cīvĭbus. In the earliest writers *dōno,* like *condōno,* has sometimes two accusatives or an accusative of the person with the infinitive.

II. A noun denoting that in *accordance* with which any thing is, or is done, is often put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

Nostro mōre, According to our custom. Cic. Instĭtūto *suo Cæsar cōpĭas suas ēduxit,* According to his practice. Cæs. *Id factum* consĭlio meo,—by my advice. Ter. *Pācem fēcit his* condĭtiōnĭbus,—on these conditions. Nep.

NOTE. The prepositions *de, ex, pro,* and *secundum* are often expressed with such nouns; as, *Nĕque est factūrus quidquam nĭsi* de meo consĭlio. Cic. Ex consuētūdĭne *ălĭquid făcĕre.* Plin. Ep. *Dĕcet quidquid ăgas, ăgĕre* pro vīrĭbus. Cic. Sĕcundum nātūram *vīvĕre.* Id.

III. The ablative denoting *accompaniment,* is usually joined with *cum;* as,

Văgāmur ĕgentes cum conjŭgĭbus *et* lĭbĕris, Needy, we wander with our wives and children. Cic. *Sæpe admīrāri* sŏleo cum *hoc* C. Lælio. Id. *Jūlium* cum *his ad te* lĭtĕris *mīsi.* Id. *Ingressus est* cum glădio. Id. *Rōmam vēni* cum febri. Cum occāsu *sōlis cōpĭas rĕdūcĕre,*—as soon as the sun set.

REMARK. But *cum* is sometimes omitted before words denoting military and naval forces, when limited by an adjective; as, *Ad castra Cæsăris omnĭbus* cōpiis *contendērunt.* Cæs. *Inde tōto* exercĭtu *prŏfectus.* Liv. *Eōdem dĕcem* nāvĭbus *C. Fŭrĭus vēnit.* Liv. And sometimes in military language *cum* is omitted, when accompanying circumstances are mentioned, and not persons; as, *Castra* clāmōre *invădunt.*

§ 250.

1. A noun, adjective, or verb, may be followed by the ablative, denoting *in what respect* their signification is taken; as,

Piĕtāte fīlius, consĭliis părens, In affection a son, in counsel a parent. Cic. *Rēges nōmĭne măgis quam impĕrĭo,* Kings in name rather than in authority. Nep. *Oppĭdum nōmĭne Bibrax.* Cæs.—*Jūre pĕrītus,* Skilled in law. Cic. *Anxĭus ănĭmo,* Anxious in mind. Tac. *Pĕdĭbus æger,* Lame in his feet. Sall. *Crīne rŭber, nĭger ōre.* Mart. *Fronte lætus.* Tac. *Mājor nātu.* Cic. *Prūdentĭā non infĕrĭor, ūsu vēro ĕtĭam sŭpĕrĭor.* Id. *Maxĭmus nātu.* Liv.—*Anĭmo angi,* To be troubled in mind. Cic. *Contrĕmisco tōtā mente et omnĭbus artŭbus,* I am agitated in my whole mind and in every limb. Id. *Captus mente,* Affected in mind, *i. e.* deprived of reason. Id. *Altĕro ŏcŭlo căpĭtur.* Liv. *Ingĕnĭi laude flōruit.* Cic. *Pollēre nōbĭlĭtāte.* Tac. *Anĭmōque et corpŏre torpet.* Hor.

REMARK. This may be called the *ablatīve of limitation,* and denotes the relation expressed in English by 'in respect of,' 'in regard to,' 'as to,' or 'in.'—Respecting the genitive of limitation after adjectives, see § 213:—after verbs, § 220, 1: and respecting the accusative of limitation, see § 231, R. 5; § 232, (3.); and § 234, II.

2. (1.) Adjectives of plenty or want are sometimes limited by the ablative; as,

Dŏmus plēna servis, A house full of servants. Juv. *Dīves agris,* Rich in land. Hor. *Fĕrax sæcŭlum bŏnis artĭbus.* Plin.—*Inops verbis,* Deficient in words. Cic. *Orba frātrĭbus,* Destitute of brothers. Ovid. *Vĭduum arbŏrĭbus sōlum.* Colum. *Nūdus agris.* Hor. For the genitive after adjectives of plenty and want, see § 213, R. 3–5.

(2.) Verbs signifying to abound, and to be destitute, are followed by the ablative; as,

Scătentem belluis pontum, The sea abounding in monsters. Hor. *Urbs rĕdundat mĭlĭtĭbus,* The city is full of soldiers. Auct. ad Her. *Villa ăbundat porco, hædo, agno, gallīnā, lacte, cāseo, melle.* Cic.—*Virum qui pĕcūnĭā ĕgeat,* A man who is in want of money. Id. *Cărēre culpā,* To be free from fault. Id. *Mea ădŏlescentĭa indĭget illōrum bŏnā* existĭmātĭōne. Id. *Abundat audācĭā, consĭlĭo et rătĭōne dēfĭcĭtur.* Id.

REMARK 1. To this rule belong *ăbundo, exŭbĕro, rĕdundo, scătĕo, affluo, circumfluo, diffluo, sŭperfluo, suppĕdĭto, văleo, vĭgeo;—cărĕo, ĕgeo, indĭgeo, văco, dēfĭcĭor, dēstĭtuor,* etc.

REM. 2. The *genitīve,* instead of the ablative, sometimes follows certain verbs signifying to abound or to want. See § 220, 3.

REM. 3. To do any thing with a person or thing, is expressed in Latin by *făcĕre* with *de*; as, *Quid de Tulliŏlā meā fīet?* Cic.; and more frequently by the simple ablative, or the dative; as, *Quid hoc hŏmĭne* or *huic hŏmĭni făcĭātis?* What can you do with this man? Cic. *Nescit quid făcĭat* auro,—what he shall do with the gold. Plaut. *Quid me fīat parvi pendis,* You care little what becomes of me. Ter.—*Sum* is occasionally used in the same manner; as, *Mĕtum cēpērunt quidnam se fŭtūrum esset,*—what would become of them. Liv.

§ 251.

A noun denoting that of which any thing is deprived, or from which it is freed, removed, or separated, is often put in the ablative without a preposition.

This construction occurs after verbs signifying to *deprive, free, debar, drive away, remove, depart,* and others which imply *separation.*

Note. The principal verbs of this class are *arceo, pello, dēpello, expello, ab-dico, interdīco, dēfendo, dēturbo, dējicio, ējicio, absterreo, dēterreo, mŏveo, āmŏveo, dēmŏveo, rĕmŏveo, sēcerno, prŏhibeo, sēpăro, exclŭdo, interclŭdo, ăbeo, exeo, cēdo, dēcēdo, discēdo, dēsisto, ēvādo, abstĭneo, spŏlio, prīvo, orbo, lībĕro, expĕdio, laxo, nūdo, solvo, exsolvo, exŏnero, lĕvo, purgo,* to which may be added the adjectives *lĭber, immūnis, pūrus, văcuus,* and *ălĭenus;* as,

Nūdantur arbŏres fŏliis, The trees are stripped of leaves. Plin. *Hoc me lībĕra mĕtu,* Free me from this fear. Ter. *Tūne eam phĭlŏsŏphiam sĕquĕre, quæ spŏliat nos* jūdicio, *prīvat* apprŏbātiōne, orbat sensĭbus? Cic. *Solvĭt se Teucria* luctu. Virg. *Te illis* sēdĭbus *arcēbit.* Cic. *Q. Varium pellĕre* possessiōnĭbus *cōnātus est.* Id. *Omnes trĭbu* rĕmōti. Liv. *Lĕvāre se* ære ălĭeno. Cic. *Me lĕves chŏri sēcernunt* pŏpŭlo. Hor. *Ănĭmus omni lĭber* cūrā *et* angōre. Cic. *Ŭtrumque* hŏmĭne *ălĭenissĭmum.* Id. When *ălĭenus* signifies 'averse' or 'hostile to,' it takes the ablative with *ab,* or rarely the dative; as, *Id dīcit, quod* illi causæ *maxĭme est ălĭenum.* Id. In the sense of 'unsuited,' it may also be joined with the genitive; as, *Quis ălĭenum pŭtet ējus esse* dignĭtātis? Id.—*Alius* too, in analogy with adjectives and verbs of separation, sometimes takes an ablative; as, *Nēve pŭtes ălium* săpiente bŏnōque *beātum.* Hor.; but this may also be referred to the ablative after comparatives. Cf. § 256, R. 14.

REMARK 1. Most verbs of depriving and separating are more or less frequently followed by *ab, de,* or *ex,* with the ablative *of the thing,* and always by *ab* with the ablative *of the person;* as, *Tu Jŭpiter, hunc a tuis* ārĭs *arcēbis.* Cic. *Præsĭdium* ex arce *pĕpŭlērunt.* Nep. *Aquam* de agro *pellĕre.* Plin. *Ex ingrātā* cīvĭtāte *cēdĕre.* Cic. *Arcem* ab incendio *lībĕrāvit.* Id. *Solvĕre belluam* ex că-tēnis. Auct. ad Her.—*Sēdes rĕmōtas* a Germānis. Cæs. *Se ab* Etruscis *sēcer-nĕre.* Liv.

REM. 2. *Arceo,* in the poets, sometimes takes the dative, see § 224, R. 2., and sometimes an infinitive; as, *Plăgamque* sĕdēre *cēdendo arcēbat.* Ovid.—*Prŏhibeo* and *dēfendo* take either the accusative of the person or thing to be defended, with the ablative of the thing to be warded off—or the reverse—*ălĭquem* or *ălĭquid a pĕrīcŭlo,* or *pĕrīcŭlum ab ălĭquo.* They are also sometimes construed with the dative, see § 224, R. 2, and sometimes with infinitive or subjunctive clauses. *Prŏhibeo* has rarely two accusatives; as, Id te *Jŭpiter prŏhibessit.* Plaut.; or poetically the accusative and genitive; as, *Captæ prŏhĭ-bēre Pænos* ăquĭlæ. Sil.—*Interdīco* takes the person either in the accusative or the dative, and the thing in the ablative, *ălĭquem* or *ălĭcuĭ* ălĭquā re; as, *Quĭbus quum* āquā *et* igni *interdixissent.* Cæs.—Instead of the ablative, a subjunctive clause with *ne,* and more rarely with *ut,* sometimes follows *interdīco.*—*Absum,* in like manner, takes the ablative with *ab,* and sometimes the dative; as, *Curtæ nescio quid semper abest* rei. Hor. Cf. § 224, R. 1.—*Abdĭco* takes sometimes an ablative, and sometimes an accusative of the thing renounced; as, *Abdĭcāre se* măgistrātu. Cic. *Abdĭcāre* măgistrātum. Sall. In Plautus, *cir-cumdŭco,* to cheat, takes the ablative of the thing. *Interclŭdo,* instead of an ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person, sometimes takes an accusative of the thing and a dative of the person; as, *Ĭtĭnĕrum angustĭæ* mul-tĭtūdĭni fŭgam *interclŭsērunt.* Cæs.: and, instead of the ablative of the thing, a subjunctive clause with *quōmĭnus* occurs: *Interclŭdor dŏlōre, quōmĭnus ad te plūra scrĭbam.* Cic.

REM. 3. Verbs which signify to *distinguish,* to *differ,* and to *disagree,* are generally construed with *ab,* but sometimes, especially in the poets, with the ablative alone.

Note. Verbs signifying to distinguish, etc., are *distinguo, discerno, sēcerno, diffĕro, discrĕpo, dissĭdeo, disto, dissentio, discordo, ăbhorreo, ălĭeno,* and *ăbălĭeno.*—*Dissentio, dissĭdeo, discrĕpo,* and *discordo* are construed also with *cum.*—The verbs which signify to *differ* are sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Distat* infĭdo scurræ ămīcus. Hor., and in like manner the adjective *dĭversus;* as, *Nĭhil est tam* Lȳsiæ *dĭversum, quam Isocrătes.* Quint.

ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

§ **252.** The *price* or *value* of a thing is put in the ablative, when it is a definite sum, or is expressed by a substantive ; as,

Quum te trĕcentis tălentis *rĕgi Cotto vendĭdisses,* When you had sold yourself to king Cottus for three hundred talents. Cic. *Vendĭdit hīc auro patriam,* This one sold his country for gold. Virg. *Cĭbus ūno asse vēnālis.* Plin. *Constĭtit quād-ringentis* millĭbus. Varr. *Dēnis in dĭem* assĭbus *ănĭmum et corpus (mĭlĭtum) æstĭmāri.* Tac. *Lēvi* mōmento *æstĭmāre.* Cæs. *Istuc verbum vīle est vīgĭnti* mĭ-nis. Plaut.   Asse *cārum est.* Sen. Ep.

REMARK 1. The verbs which take an ablative of price or value are (1) *æstĭ-mo, dūco, făcio, fˀio, hăbeo, pendo, pŭto, dēpŭto, taxo :* (2) *ĕmo, mercor, vendo, do, vēneo, sto, consto, prosto, condūco, lŏco, vāleo, luo,* and *lĭceo.*—To these must be added others, which express some act or enjoyment for which a certain price is paid ; as, *Lăvor quādrante.* Trĭginta millĭbus *Cælius hăbĭtat.* Cic. *Vix* drachmis *est obsōnātus* dĕcem. Ter. *Dŏceo* tălento, etc. So *esse* in the sense 'to be worth' ; as, Sextante *sal in Ītălĭā ĕrat.*

REM. 2. Respecting the genitive of price or value, when expressed in *a gen-eral* or *indefinite* manner, see § 214.

REM. 3. The price of a thing, contrary to the general rule, is often expressed indefinitely by a neuter adjective ; as, *magno, permagno, parvo, tantŭlo, plūre, mĭnĭmo, plūrĭmo, vīli, vĭlĭōri, vĭlissĭmo, nĭmio,* etc. ; as, Plūre *vēnit.* Cic. *Condūxit non* magno *dŏmum.* Id.   These adjectives refer to some noun understood, as *prĕtio, ære,* and the like, which are sometimes expressed ; as, *Parvo* prĕtio *ea vendĭdisse.* Cic.—The adverbs *bĕne, pulchre, recte, măle, căre,* etc., sometimes take the place of the genitive or ablative of price ; as, *Bĕne ĕmĕre ; recte ven-dĕre ; optĭme vendĕre,* etc.

REM. 4. Varro has used *văleo* with the accusative ; as, *Dēnārii dĭcti, quod* dēnos *æris vălēbant.*

REM. 5. *Mūto* and its compounds, *commūto* and *permūto,* are commonly con-strued like verbs of selling, the thing parted with being put in the accusative, and the thing received in exchange for it, in the ablative ; as, *Chăōniam glan-dem pingui mūtāvit ăristā.* Virg. But these cases are often reversed, so that the thing received is put in the accusative and the thing given for it in the abla-tive ; as, *Cur valle permūtem Săbīnā dīvĭtias ŏpĕrōsiōres ?* Why should I ex-change my Sabine valley for more wearisome riches ? Hor.—Sometimes in this construction *cum* is joined with the ablative.

ABLATIVE OF TIME.

§ **253.** A noun denoting the *time at* or *within* which any thing is said to be, or to be done, is put in the ablative without a preposition ; as,

Die quinto dēcessit, He died on the fifth day. Nep. *Hoc* tempŏre, At this time. Cic. *Tertiā* vĭgĭliā *ēruptĭōnem fēcērunt,* They made a sally at the third watch. Cæs. *Ut* hĭĕme *nāvĭges,* That you should sail in the winter. Cic. *Prox-ĭmo* triennio *omnes gentes sŭbēgit.* Nep. *Agămemnon cum ūnĭversā Græciā vix* dĕcem annis ūnam *cēpit urbem.* Nep.

NOTE 1. The English expression 'by day' is rendered in Latin either by *interdiu* or *die ;* 'by night,' by *noctu* or *nocte ;* and 'in the evening,' by *vespĕre* or *vespĕri ;* see § 82, Exc. 5, (*a.*) *Lūdis* is used for *in tempŏre lūdōrum ;* and *Sāturnālĭbus, Lātīnis, glădĭātōrĭbus,* for *lūdis Sāturnālĭbus,* etc. Other nouns not properly expressing time are used in that sense in the ablative either with or without *in,* as *initio, princĭpio, adventu* and *discessu ălĭcūjus, cŏmĭtiis, tŭmultu, bello, pāce,* etc. ; or *in initio,* etc. But *bello* is more common without *in,* if it is

joined with an adjective or a genitive; as, *Bello Pūnĭco sĕcundo, bello Lătīnŏrum;* and so, also, *pugnā Cannensi.* So we say *in pŭĕritiā,* but omit *in* with an adjective; as, *extrēmā pŭĕritiā. In* is very rarely used with nouns expressing a certain space of time; as, *annus, dies, hōra,* etc., for the purpose of denoting the time of an event. *In tempŏre* signifies either 'in distress,' or 'in time,' i. e. 'at the right time'; but in both cases *tempŏre* alone is used, and *tempŏre* in the sense of 'early' has even become an adverb, an earlier form of which was *tempŏri* or *tempĕri,* whose comparative is *tempĕrius.*

REMARK 1. When a period is marked by its distance before or after another fixed time, it may be expressed by *ante* or *post* with either the accusative or the ablative.—(*a*) The preposition is regularly placed before the accusative, but after the ablative. If an adjective is used, the preposition is often placed between the adjective and the noun. In this connection the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers may be used. Hence the English phrase 'after three years,' or 'three years after,' may be expressed in these eight ways; *post tres annos, tribus annis post; post tertium annum, tertio anno post; tres post annos, tribus post annis; tertium post annum, tertio post anno.*

(*b.*) When *ante* or *post* stands last, an accusative may be added to denote the time before or after which any thing took place; as, *Multis annis* post dĕcemviros. Cic. So *Consul factus est annis* post Rōmam condĭtam *trĕcentis duŏdēnōnāginta.*

NOTE 2. *Post* and *ante* sometimes precede the ablatives, as *ante annis octo; post paucis diēbus;* and also before such ablatives as are used adverbially, as *post ălĭquanto; ante paulo.*

NOTE 3. *Quam* and a verb are sometimes added to *post* and *ante* in all the forms above specified; e. g. *tribus annis postquam vēnĕrat; post tres annos quam vēnĕrat; tertio anno postquam vēnĕrat; post annum tertium quam vēnĕrat,* etc.; all of which expressions signify 'three years after he had come.' Sometimes *post* is omitted; as, *tertio anno quam vēnĕrat.*

NOTE 4. Instead of *postquam,* 'after,' we may use *ex'quo, quum,* or a relative agreeing with the preceding ablative; as, *Ipse octo diēbus,* quĭbus *has lĭtĕras dăbam, cum Lĕpĭdi cōpias me conjungam;* i. e. in eight days *after* the date of this letter. Planc. in Cic. Fam. *Mors Sex. Roscii quatrĭduo,* quo *is occīsus est, Chrȳsŏgŏno nuntiātur,*—four days *after* he had been killed. Cic. *Quem trĭduo, quum has dăbam lĭtĕras, exspectābam,*—three days *after* the date of this letter. Planc. in Cic. In such cases *in* is sometimes joined with the ablative; as, *In diēbus paucis,* quĭbus *hæc acta sunt, mŏrĭtur.* Ter.

REM. 2. The length of time before the present moment may be expressed by *ăbhinc* with the accusative, and, less frequently, the ablative; as, *Quæstor fuisti* ăbhinc annos *quātuordĕcim.* Cic. *Cŏmĭtiis jam* ăbhinc *trīginta* diēbus *hăbĭtis.* Id. The same is also expressed by *ante* with the pronoun *hic;* as, ante hos *sex menses mălēdixisti mihi,*—six months ago. Phæd. *Ante* is sometimes used instead of *ăbhinc:* and the length of time before is sometimes expressed by the ablative joined with *hic* or *ille;* as, *Paucis his diēbus,* or *paucis illis diēbus,*—a few days ago.

REM. 3. The time at which any thing is done, is sometimes expressed by the neuter accusative *id,* with a genitive; as, *Vēnit id tempŏris.* Cic. So with a preposition; *Ad id diēi.* Gell. See § 212, R. 3.

REM. 4. (*a.*) The time *at* or *within* which any thing is done, is sometimes, with personal subjects, expressed by *de,* with the ablative; as, De *tertiā* vĭgĭliā *ad hostes contendit,*—in the third watch. Cæs. *Ut jŭgŭlent hŏmĭnes surgunt* de nocte latrōnes. Hor. So, also, with *sub:* as, *Ne sub ipsā prŏfectiōne mīlites oppĭdum irrumpĕrent,*—at the very time of his departure. Cæs. *Sub adventu Rōmānōrum,* While the Romans were arriving. Id.

(*b.*) The time *within* which any thing occurs, is also sometimes expressed by *intra* with the accusative; as, *Dīmĭdiam partem nātiōnum sŭbēgit* intra *vīginti* dies. Plaut. Intra *dĕcimum* diem, quam *Phĕras vēnĕrat,* In less than ten days after... Liv.

REM. 5. The time within which a thing happens, is often expressed by the ablative with *in*; especially (*a*) in connection with numerals; as, *Bis* in die *sāturum fiĕri*; *vix ter* in anno *nuntium audīre*; and (*b*), as in the use of *intra*, to denote that the event happened before the time specified had fully expired.

REM. 6. Instead of *in puerĭtiā*, *ădŏlescentiā*, *jŭventūte*, *sĕnectūte*, etc., in stating the age at which a person performed any action, the concretes *puer*, *ădŏlescens*, *jŭvĕnis*, *sĕnex*, etc., are commonly joined to the verb; as, *Cn. Pompeius*, *ădŏlescens se et patrem consĭlio servāvit*.—So, also, adjectives ending in *ēnārius* are sometimes used in stating the number of years a person has lived; as, *Cicĕro sexāgēnārius*.

For the ablative denoting duration of time, see § 236.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

§ **254.** The name of a town *in which* any thing is said *to be*, or *to be done*, if of the third declension or plural number, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

Alexander Băbȳlōne *est mortuus*, Alexander died at Babylon. Cic. *Intĕrĕrit multum*—Thēbis *nūtrĭtus an* Argis,—whether brought up at Thebes or at Argos. Hor. *Nātus* Tībŭre *vel* Gābiis. Id.

REMARK 1. 'In the country' is expressed by *rūre*, or more commonly by *rūri*, without a preposition; as, *Pater fīlium* rūri *hăbitāre jussit*. Cic. With an adjective only *rūre* is used; as, *Interdum nūgāris rūre păterno*. Hor. Cf. § 221, N.

REM. 2. (*a*.) The preposition *in* is sometimes expressed with names of towns; as, In Phĭlippis *quĭdam nunciārit*. Suet.

(*b*.) Names of towns of the first and second declension, and singular number, and also *dŏmus* and *hŭmus*, are in like manner sometimes put in the ablative without *in*. See § 221, R. 2 and R. 3.—So, also, *terrā mărīque*, by land and by sea. *In* is also frequently omitted with *lŏco* and *lŏcis*, especially when joined with an adjective and having the meaning of 'occasion'; as, *Hoc lŏco*, *multis lŏcis*, etc.—*Libro* joined with an adjective, as *hoc*, *prīmo*, etc., is used without *in* when the whole book is meant, and with *in* when only a portion is referred to. An ablative of place joined with *tōto*, *tōtā*, *tōtis*, is generally used without *in*; as, *Urbe tōtā gĕmitus fit*. Cic. *Tōtā Asiā văgātur*. Id. *Tōto mări*. Id. But in such cases *in* is sometimes used. So *cunctā Asiā*. Liv.

REM. 3. Before the names of countries, of nations used for those of countries, and of all other places in which any thing is said to be or to be done, except those of towns, and excepting also the phrases specified in the first and second remarks, the preposition *in* is commonly used; as, *Iphicrătes* in Thrāciā *vixit*, *Chares* in Sīgēo. Nep. *Rūre ĕgo vīventem*, *tu dīcis* in urbe *beātum*. Hor. *Aio hoc fĭĕri* in Graeciā. Plaut. In Bactriānis Sogdiānis*que urbes condĭdit*. Virg. *Lūcus* in urbe *fuit*. Virg. But it is sometimes omitted by writers of every class and period; as, *Mīlites stătīvis* castris *hăbēbat*. Sall. *Magnis in laudĭbus fuit tōtā* Graeciā. Nep. *Pŏpŭli sensus maxĭme* theātro *et* spectācŭlis *perspectus est*. Cic. *Pompeius se* oppĭdo *tĕnet*. Id. In the poets and later prose writers this omission is of very frequent occurrence not only with names of towns but with ablatives of all nouns answering to the question, where? as, *Nāvĭta* puppe *sĕdens*. Ovid. *Ibam forte* Viā Sacrā. Ovid. *Silvisque agrisque viisᵈ ̣ne corpŏra fœda jăcent*. Ovid. *Mĕdio* alveo *concursum est*. Liv.—*Fŏris*, out at the door, abroad, is properly an ablative of place; as, *Fŏris cœnat*. Cic. Cf. § 237, R. 5, (*c*.)

§ **255.** 1. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of a town *whence* the motion proceeds, is put in the ablative, without a preposition; as,

Brundĭsio *prŏfecti sŭmus,* We departed from Brundisium. Cic.   *Diŏnȳsius tȳrannus* Sȳracūsis *expulsus Cŏrinthi pŭĕros dŏcēbat.* Id.   *Dēmărātus Tarquĭnios* Cŏrintho *fūgit.* Id.   *Accēpi tuas litĕras dătas* Plăcentiā. Id.   *Intĕrim* Rōmā *per litĕras certĭor fit;* scil. *dătas* or *missas.* Sall. J. 82. So, also, after a verbal noun; as, Narbōne *rĕdĭtus.* Cic.

REMARK 1. The ablatives *dŏmo, hŭmo,* and *rūre* or *rūri,* are used, like names of towns, to denote the place whence motion proceeds; as,

Dŏmo prŏfectus, Having set out from home. Nep.   *Surgit* hŭmo *jŭvĕnis,* The youth rises from the ground. Ovid.   *Rūre huc advēnit.* Ter.   *Si rūri vĕniet.* Id.   Virgil uses *dŏmo* with *unde;* as, *Qui gĕnus? unde dŏmo?* and Livy, instead of *dŏmo ăbesse,* has *esse ab dŏmo.* With an adjective, *rūre,* and not *rūri,* must be used.

REM. 2. With names of towns and *dŏmus* and *hămus,* when answering the question 'whence?' *ab, ex,* or *de,* is sometimes used; as, *Ab Alexandrĭā prŏfectus.* Cic.   *Ex dŏmo.* Id.   *De vitĭfĕrā vēnisse Viennā.* Mart.   *Ab hŭmo.* Virg.

REM. 3. (*a.*) With other names of places whence motion proceeds, *ab, ex,* or *de,* is commonly expressed; as, *Me a portu prœmīsit.* Plaut.   *Ex Asĭā transis in Eurōpam.* Curt.   *Ex castris prŏficiscuntur.* Cæs.   *De Pomptīno,* scil. prædio. Cic.—So, also, before names of nations used for those of countries; as, *Ex Mēdis ad adversāriōrum hibernācŭla pervēnit.* Nep.

(*b.*) But the preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Litĕræ* Măcĕdŏniā *allātæ.* Liv.   *Classis* Cypro *advēnit.* Curt.   *Cessissent* lŏco. Liv.   *Ni cite vīcis et castellis prŏximis subventum fŏret.* Id.   *Ite* sacris, *prŏpĕrāte* sacris, *laurumque* căpillis *pōnite.* Ovid.   *Fīnĭbus omnes prōsĭluēre suis.* Virg.   *Advolvunt ingentes* montĭbus *ornos.* Id.   This omission of the preposition is most common in the poets and later prose writers.

2. The place *by, through,* or *over* which, after verbs of motion, commonly follows *per;* but frequently also it is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

Per Thēbas *iter fēcit.* Nep.   *Exercĭtum* vădo *transdūcit.* Cæs.   His pontĭbus *păbŭlātum mittēbat.* Id.   *Tribūni mĭlitum* portā Collīnā *urbem intrāvēre sub signis,* mēdiāque urbe *agmĭne in Aventīnum pergunt.* Liv.   *Lĕgiōnes* Penninis Cottiānisque Alpĭbus, *pars* monte Graio, *trādūcuntur.* Tac.   *Equĭtes* viā brĕviōre *prœmīsi.* Cic.

ABLATIVE AFTER COMPARATIVES.

§ **256.**   1. When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, a conjunction, as *quam, atque,* etc., is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted.

2. The comparative degree, when *quam* is omitted, is followed by the ablative of that with which the comparison is made; as,

Nĭhil est virtūte *formōsius,* Nothing is more beautiful than virtue. Cic.   *Quis C. Lælio* cōmĭor? Who is more courteous than C. Lælius? Id.

REMARK 1. The person or thing with which the *subject* of a proposition is compared, is usually put in the ablative; as,

Sīdĕre pulchrior ille est, tu lĕvĭor cortĭce. Hor.   *Vilĭus argentum est* auro, *virtū'tibus* aurum. Id.   *Tullus Hostilius fĕrōcior* Rōmŭlo *fuit.* Liv.   Lacrĭmā *nĭhil citius ārescit.* Cic.   *Quid măgis est dūrum* saxo, *quid mollius* undā? Ovid.   *Hoc nēmo fuit mĭnus ĭneptus.* Ter.   *Albānum, Mæcēnas, sīve Fălernum te măgis* appŏsītis delectat. Hor.

REM. 2. An object with which a person or thing addressed is compared, is also put in the ablative; as, *O fons Bandūsiæ splendīdior* vitro! Hor.

REM. 3. Sometimes the person or thing with which the subject of a proposition is compared, instead of following it in the ablative, is connected with it by *quam*, and it is then put in the same case as the subject, whether in the nominative or the accusative; as, *Orātio* quam *hăbĭtus fŭit mĭsĕrăbĭlior.* Cic. *Affirmo nullam esse laudem ampliōrem* quam eam. Id. So, also, when an ablative in the case absolute takes the place of the subject; as, *Eōdem* (scil. *dŭce*) *plūra,* quam *grēgārĭo mīlĭte, tŏlĕrante.* Tac.

REM. 4. If the person or thing which is compared with any object is neither the subject of the sentence nor the person addressed, *quam* is commonly used, and the object which follows it is then put in the nominative with *sum,* and sometimes in an oblique case to agree with the object with which it is compared; as, *Mĕliōrem,* quam ego sum, *suppōno tĭbi.* Plaut. *Ego hŏmĭnem callĭdiōrem vĭdi nēmĭnem* quam Phormiōnem. Ter. *Adventus hostĭum fŭit* agris, quam urbi *terrĭbĭlior.* Liv. *Omnes fontes* æstāte, quam hiĕme, *sunt gĕlĭdiōres.* Plin.˙ Thĕmistŏclis *nōnen,* quam Sŏlōnis, *est illustrius.* Cic.—The following example illustrates both the preceding constructions:—*Ut tĭbi multo mājŏri,* quam Afrĭcānus fuit, *me non multo mĭnōrem* quam Lælium *făcĭle et in rēpublĭcā et in ămĭcĭtĭā adjunctum esse pătĭāre.* Cic.

REM. 5. (*a.*) The person or thing with which the *object* of an active verb is compared, though usually connected with it by *quam,* (R. 4,) is sometimes put in the ablative, especially in the poets, and frequently also even in prose, if the object is a pronoun, particularly a relative pronoun; as, *Attălo,* quo *grăviōrem ĭnĭmīcum non hăbŭi, sŏrōrem dĕdĭt,* He gave his sister to Attalus, *than whom,* etc. Curt. *Hoc nĭhil grātĭus făcĕre pŏtes.* Cic. *Causam ĕnim suscēpisti antĭquiōrem mĕmŏrĭā tŭā.* Id. *Exĕqĭ mŏnūmentum ære pĕrennĭus.* Hor. *Cur ŏlīvum* sanguĭne vīpĕrīno *cautĭus vītat?* Id. *Quid prĭus dĭcam* sŏlĭtis *părentis* laudĭbus? Id. *Mājŏra* vīrĭbus *audes.* Virg. *Nullam sacrā* vīte *prĭus sĕvērĭs arbŏrem.* Hor. *Nullos* his *mallem lūdos spectasse.* Id. § 178, 3.

(*b.*) The ablative instead of *quam* is never used with any other oblique case except the accusative, but *quam* is sometimes found, even where the ablative might have been used; as, *Mĕlior tūtiorque est certa pax* quam *spĕrāta victōria.* Liv. After *quam,* if the verb cannot be supplied from the preceding sentence, *est, fuit,* etc., must be added; as, *Hæc verba sunt M. Varrōnis,* quam fuit *Claudĭus, doctiōris.* Gell. *Drūsum Germānĭcum mĭnōrem nātu,* quam *ĭpse* ĕrat, *frātrem āmīsit.* Sen.

REM. 6. (*a.*) *Mĭnus, plus,* and *amplius* with numerals, and with other words denoting a certain measure or a certain portion of a thing, are used either with or without *quam,* generally as indeclinable words, without influence upon the construction, but merely to modify the number; as, *Non plus quam quătuor millĭa effūgērunt,* not *effūgit.* Liv. *Pictōres antīqui non sunt ūsi plus quam quătuor cōlōrĭbus,* not *plūrĭbus.* Cic.

(*b.*) *Quam* is frequently omitted with all cases; as, *Mĭnus duo millĭa hŏmĭnum ex tanto exercĭtu effūgērunt.* Liv. *Mīlĭtes Rōmāni sæpe plus dīmĭdĭāti mensis cĭbārĭa fĕrēbant.* Cic. *Quum plus annum æger fuisset.* Liv. *Sēdĕcim non amplĭus eo anno lĕgĭōnĭbus dēfensum impĕrĭum est.* Id.

(*c.*) These comparatives, as in the preceding example, are sometimes inserted between the numeral and its substantive, and sometimes, when joined with a negative, they follow both, as a sort of apposition; as, *Quinque millĭa armātōrum, non amplĭus, rĕlictum ĕrat præsidĭum,*—a garrison of five thousand soldiers, not more. Liv. So, also, *longĭus; Cæsar certĭor est factus, magnas Gallōrum cōpĭas non* longĭus millĭa passuum octo *ab hībernis suis abfuisse.* Cæs. See § 236.

(*d.*) The ablative is sometimes used with these as with other comparatives; as, *Dĭes trīginta aut plus* eo *in nāvi fui.* Ter. *Triennĭo amplĭus.* Cic. *Hŏrā amplĭus mōliēbantur.* Id. *Ne longĭus* trīduo *ab castrĭs absit.* Cæs. *Apud Suēvos non longĭus* anno *rĕmănēre ūno in lōco incŏlendi causā lĭcet.* Id. *Quum inĭtĭo non amplĭus* duŏbus millĭbus *hăbuisset.* Sall.

REM. 7.   *Quam* is in like manner sometimes omitted, without a change of case, after *major*, *minor*, and some other comparatives; as, *Obsides ne minores octonum denum annorum neu majores* quinum quadragenum,.... of not less than eighteen, nor more than forty-five years of age. Liv.   *Ex urbano exercitu, qui minores quinque et triginta annis erant, in naves impositi sunt.*   The genitive and ablative, in these and similar examples, are to be referred to § 211, R. 6. *Longius ab urbe* mille *passuum.* Liv.   Annos *natas magis quadraginta.* Cic.

REM. 8.   When the second member of a comparison is an infinitive or a clause, *quam* is always expressed; as, *Nihil est in dicendo majus* quam ut faveat oratori auditor. Cic.

REM. 9.   Certain nouns, participles, and adjectives,—as *opinione*, *spe*, *expectatione*, *fide*,—*dicto*, *solito*,—*æquo*, *credibili*, *necessario*, *vero*, and *justo*,—are used in a peculiar manner in the ablative after comparatives; as, Opinione *celerius venturus esse dicitur*,—sooner than is expected. Cæs.   Dicto *citius tumida æquora placat*, Quicker than the word was spoken. Virg.   *Injurias gravius* æquo *habere.* Sall.

(*a.*) These ablatives supply the place of a clause; thus, *gravius æquo* is equivalent to *gravius quam quod æquum est.* They are often omitted; as, *Themistocles* liberius *vivebat*, scil. *æquo.* Nep.   In such cases, the comparative may be translated by the positive degree, with *too*, *quite*, or *rather*, as in the above example—'He lived too freely,' or 'rather freely.' *Voluptas quum* major *est atque* longior, *omne animi lumen exstinguit*,—when it is too great, and of too long continuance. Cic.   So *tristior*, scil. *solito*, rather sad.

(*b.*) The English word 'still,' joined with comparatives, is expressed by *etiam* or *vel*, and only in later prose writers by *adhuc*; as, *Ut in corporibus magnæ dissimilitudines sunt, sic in animis exsistunt majores* etiam *varietates.* Cic.

REM. 10. (*a.*) With *inferior*, the dative is sometimes used, instead of the ablative; as, *Vir nulla arte* cuiquam *inferior.* Sall. The ablative is also found; as, *Ut humanos casus virtute inferiores putes.* Cic. But usually *inferior* is followed by *quam*; as, *Timotheus belli laude non inferior fuit*, quam pater. Cic. *Gratia non inferior*, quam qui umquam fuerunt amplissimi. Id.

(*b.*) *Qualis*, 'such as,' with a comparative, occurs poetically instead of the relative pronoun in the ablative; as, *Nardo perunctum*, quale *non perfectius meæ laborarint manus*; instead of *quo.* Hor. Epod. 5, 59. *Animæ* quales *neque candidiores terra tulit*; for *quibus.* Id. Sat. 1, 5, 41.

REM. 11.   *Quam pro* is used after comparatives, to express disproportion; as, *Prælium atrocius* quam pro numero *pugnantium*, The battle was more severe than was proportionate to the number of the combatants. Liv.   *Minor*, quam pro tumultu, *cædes.* Tac.

REM. 12.   When two adjectives or adverbs are compared with each other, both are put in the comparative; as, *Triumphus* clarior quam gratior, A triumph more famous than acceptable. Liv.   Fortius quam felicius *bellum gesserunt.* So, also, when the comparative is formed by means of *magis*; as, Magis audacter quam parate *ad dicendum veniebat.* Cic.—Tacitus uses the positive in one part of the proposition; as, *Speciem excelsæ gloriæ* vehementius quam caute *appetebat*; or even in both; as, Claris *majoribus quam* vetustis.

REM. 13. (*a.*) *Potius* and *magis* are sometimes joined pleonastically with *malle* and *præstare*, and also with comparatives; as, *Ab omnibus se desertos* potius *quam abs te defensos esse* malunt. Cic. Qui magis *vere vincere quam diu imperare* malit. Liv. Ut emori potius quam servire *præstaret.* Cic. *Mihi quæris* fuga potius *quam ulla provincia esse* optatior. Id. Quis magis queat esse beatior? Virg.

(*b.*) So, also, the prepositions *præ*, *ante*, *præter*, and *supra*, are sometimes used with a comparative; as, *Unus* præ ceteris *fortior exsurgit*, Apul. *Scelere* ante alios *immanior omnes.* Virg. They also occur with a superlative; as, Ante alios *carissimus.* Nep. As these prepositions, when joined with the positive, denote comparison, they seem in such examples to be redundant. See § 127.

REM. 14. *Alius* is sometimes in poetry treated as a comparative, and construed with the ablative instead of *atque* with the nominative or accusative; as, *Nēve pŭtes ălium săpiente bŏnōque beātum.* Hor. *Alius Lÿsippo.* Id. But compare § 251, N.

REM. 15. By the poets *ac* and *atque* are sometimes used instead of *quam* after comparatives; as, *Quanto constantior ĭdem in vĭtiis, tanto lērius mĭser ac prior ille, qui,* etc. Hor. *Arctius* atque *hĕdĕrā prōcēra adstringĭtur ĭlex.* Id.

REM. 16. The *degree of difference* between objects compared is expressed by the ablative :—

(1.) Of substantives; as, *Mĭnor ūno* mense, Younger by one month. Hor. *Sesquĭpĕde quam tu longior,* Taller than you by a foot and a half. Plaut. *Hibernia* dĭmĭdio *minor quam Brĭtannia.* Cæs. *Dĭmĭdio mĭnōris constābit,* It will cost less by half. Cic. *Quam mŏlestum est ūno* dĭgĭto *plus hăbēre !....*to have one finger more, i. e. than we have, to have six fingers. Id.—but the expression is ambiguous, as it might mean 'to have more than one finger.' *Sŭpĕrat* căpĭte *et* cervīcĭbus *altis.* Virg.

(2.) Of neuter adjectives of quantity and neuter pronouns, in the singular number. Such are *tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, parvo, paulo, nimio, ălĭquanto, tantŭlo, allĕro tanto* (twice as much); as, Multo *doctior es patre,* Thou art (by) much more learned than thy father. The relative and demonstrative words, *quanto—tanto, quo—eo,* or *quo—hoc,* signifying 'by how much—by so much,' are often to be translated by an emphatic *the ;* as, Quanto *sŭmus sŭpĕriōres,* tanto *nos submissius gĕrāmus,* The more eminent we are, the more humbly let us conduct ourselves: lit. by how much—by so much—. Cic. Eo *grăvior est dŏlor,* quo *culpa est mājor.* Id. But the relative word generally precedes the demonstrative; as, Quo *diffĭcĭlius,* hoc *præclārius.* Id. Poetically, also, *quam măgis—tam măgis* are used instead of *quanto măgis—tanto măgis.* Virg. Æn. 7, 787: and *quam măgis—tanto măgis.* Lucr. 6, 459.—*Iter* multo *făcĭlius,—*much easier. Cæs. Parvo *brĕvius,* A little shorter. Plin. Eo *măgis,* The more. Cic. Eo *mĭnus.* Id. Istoc *măgis vĭpŭlābis,* So much the more. Plaut. *Via* altĕro tanto *longior,—*as long again. Nep. Multo *id maxĭmum fuit.* Liv.

(3.) The ablative of degree is joined not only with comparatives but with verbs which contain the idea of comparison; as, *mălo, præsto, sŭpĕro, excello, antĕcello, antĕcēdo,* and others compounded with *ante ;* and also with *ante* and *post,* in the sense of 'earlier' and 'later'; as, *Multo præstat.* Sall. *Post paulo,* A little after. Id. *Multo ante lūcis adventum,* Long before—. Id. *Multis partĭbus* is equivalent to *multo ; as, Nŭmĕro multis partĭbus esset infĕrior.* Cæs.

NOTE. The accusatives *multum, tantum, quantum,* and *ălĭquantum,* are sometimes used instead of the corresponding ablatives; as, Alĭquantum *est ad rem ăvidior.* Ter. Multum *imprŏbiōres sunt.* Plaut. Quantum *dōmo infĕrior,* tantum *glōriā sŭpĕrior ēvāsit.* Val. Max. Cf. § 232, (3.)—So *longe,* 'far,' is frequently used for *multo ;* as, Longe *mĕlior.* Virg. Longe *et multum antĕcellĕre.* Cic. So, *pars pĕdis* sesqui *mājor,*—longer by one half. Id.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

§ **257.** A noun and a participle are put in the ablative, called *absolute,* to denote the time, cause, means, or concomitant of an action, or the condition on which it depends; as,

Pÿthăgŏras, Tarquĭnio regnante, *in Ĭtăliam vēnit,* Pythagoras came into Italy, in the reign of Tarquin. Cic. *Lŭpus,* stĭmŭlante făme, *captat ŏvīle,* Hunger inciting, the wolf seeks the fold. Ovid. *Mīlĭtes,* pĕcŏre e longinquiōribus vīcis ădacto, *extrēmam fămem sustentābant.* Cæs. Hac ōrātiōne hăbĭtā, *concĭlium dĭmīsit.* Id. *Galli,* re cognĭtā, *obsĭdiōnem rĕlinquunt.* Id. Virtūte exceptā, *nihil ămīcĭtiā præstăbĭlius pŭtētis.* Cic.

NOTE 1. The Latin ablative absolute may be expressed in English by a similar construction, but it is commonly better to translate it by a clause connected by *when, since, while, although, after, as,* etc., or by a verbal substantive; as, *Te adjŭvante,* With thy assistance. *Non—nĭsi te adjŭvante,* Only with thy assistance, or not without thy assistance. *Te non adjŭvante,* Without thy assistance. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (*c.*)

REMARK 1. This construction is an abridged form of expression, equivalent to a dependent clause connected by *quum, si, etsi, quamquam, quamvis,* etc.

Thus, for *Tarquĭnio regnante,* the expression *dum Tarquĭnius regnābat* might be used; for *hac ōrātiōne hăbĭtā ;—quum hanc ōrātiōnem hăbuisset,* or *quum hæc ōrātio hăbĭta esset,—concĭlium dīmīsit.* The ablative absolute may always be resolved into a proposition, by making the noun or pronoun the subject, and the participle the predicate.

REM. 2. This construction is common only with present and perfect participles. Instances of its use with participles in *rus* and *dus* are comparatively rare; as,

Cæsăre ventūro, *Phosphŏre, redde diem.* Mart. Irruptūris *tam infestis* nātiōnĭbus. Liv. *Quum concio plausum, meo nōmĭne rĕcĭtando, dēdisset,*—when my name was pronounced. Cic. *Quum* immŏlandā Iphĭgĕniā *tristis Calchas esset.* Id. *Quis est ĕnim, qui, nullis offĭcĭi præceptis trādendis, phĭlŏsŏphum se audeat dīcĕre*—without propounding any rules of duty. Cic. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (*c.*) and R. 9.

REM. 3. (*a.*) A noun is put in the ablative absolute, only when it denotes a different person or thing from any in the leading clause. Cf. § 274, 3, (*a.*)

(*b.*) Yet a few examples occur of a deviation from this principle, especially with a substantive pronoun referring to some word in the leading clause; as, Se audiente, *scrībit Thŭcўdĭdes.* Cic. *Lĕgio ex castris Varrōnis,* adstante *et* inspectante ipso, *signa sustŭlit.* Cæs. Me dūce, *ad hunc vōti fīnem,* me mīlĭte, *vēni.* Ovid. So *M. Porcius Căto,* vīvo *quŏque* Scīpiōne, *allātrāre ējus magnĭtūdĭnem sŏlĭtus ĕrat.* Liv.

NOTE 2. Two participles must not be put together in the ablative absolute agreeing with the same noun. Thus, we may say *Porcia sæpe marītum cogĭtantem invenĕrat,* but not, *Porcia marīto cōgĭtante invento.*

NOTE 3. Instead of the ablative absolute denoting *a cause,* an accusative with *ŏb* or *propter* occurs in Livy and in later writers; as, *Cănōpum condidēre Spartăni,* ob sepultum *illic* rectōrem *năvis* Cănōpum. Tac. *Dĕcemvĭri libros Sĭbyllīnos inspĭcĕre jussi sunt* propter terrĭtos hŏmĭnes *nŏvis prōdĭgĭis.* Liv.

REM. 4. The ablative absolute serves to mark the time of an action, by reference to that of another action. If the present participle is used, the time of the action expressed by the participle, is the same as that of the principal verb. The perfect participle and the future in *rus,* denote respectively an action as prior or subsequent to that expressed by the principal verb.

Thus in the preceding examples—*Pȳthăgŏras,* Tarquĭnio regnante, *in Ităliam vēnit,* Pythagoras came into Italy *during the reign of Tarquinius. Galli,* re cognĭtā, *obsĭdiōnem rĕlinquunt,* The Gauls, *having learned the fact,* abandon the siege. So, *Rex ăpum non nĭsi* migrātūro exāmĭne *fŏras prōcēdit,* The king-bee does not go abroad, except *when a swarm is about to emigrate.* Plin.

NOTE 4. *Non prius quam, non nĭsi, ut, vĕlut,* and *tamquam,* are sometimes joined with the participle; as. *Tĭbērius excessum Augusti* non prius *pălam fēcit,* quam *Agrippā jŭvĕne intĕrempto,* —not until. Suet. *Galli læti,* ut *explōrāta victōrĭā, ad castra Rōmānōrum pergunt.* Cæs. *Antĭŏchus,* tamquam *non transĭtūris in Asiam Rōmānis,* etc. Liv.

REM. 5. (*a.*) The construction of the ablative absolute with the perfect passive participle, arises frequently from the want of a participle of that tense in the active voice.

Thus, for Cæsar, having sent forward the cavalry, was following with all his forces,' we find, ' *Cæsar,* ĕquĭtātu præmisso, *subsĕquēbātur omnibus cōpĭis.*'

(*b.*) As the perfect participle in Latin may be used for both the perfect active and the perfect passive participles in English, its meaning can, in many instances, be determined only by the connection, since the agent with *a* or *ab* is generally not expressed with this participle in the ablative absolute, as it is with other parts of the passive voice. Thus, *Cæsar,* his dictis, *concĭlium dĭmĭsit,* might be rendered, ' Cæsar, *having said this,* or *this having been said* (by some other person), dismissed the assembly.'

(*c.*) As the perfect participles of deponent verbs correspond to perfect active participles in English, no such necessity exists for the use of the ablative absolute with them; as, *Cæsar,* hæc lŏcūtus, *concĭlium dĭmĭsit.* In the following example, both constructions are united: *Ităque....agros Remōrum* dēpŏpŭlāti, *omnibus vīcis, ædĭfĭcĭisque* incensis. Cæs.

REM. 6. The perfect participles of neuter deponent verbs, and some also of active deponents, which admit of both an active and a passive sense, are used in the ablative absolute; as, *Ortā lūce.* Cæs. *Vel exstincto vel* ēlapso ănĭmo, *nullum rēsĭdēre sensum.* Cic. *Tam* multis glōriam *ējus* ădeptis. Plin. *Lĭtĕras ad exercĭtus, tamquam* ădepto prĭncĭpātu, *mĭsit.* Tac.

REM. 7. (*a.*) As the verb *sum* has no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, which might be the subject and predicate of a dependent clause, are put in the ablative absolute without a participle; as,

Quid, ădŏlescentŭlo dūce, *effĭcĕre possent,* What they could do under the guidance of a youth. Cæs. Me suāsōre *atque* impulsōre, *hoc factum,* By my advice and instigation. Plaut. *Hannĭbăle vīvo,* While Hannibal was living. Nep. *Invĭtā Minervā,* in opposition to one's genius. Cic. *Cælo sĕrēno,* when the weather is clear. Virg. *Me ignāro,* without my knowledge. Cic.   With names of office, the concrete noun is commonly used in the ablative absolute, rather than the corresponding abstract with *in* to denote the time of an event; as, *Rōmam vēnit* Mărio consŭle, He came to Rome in the consulship of Marius. Cic.

(*b.*) The nouns so used as predicates are by some grammarians considered as supplying the place of participles by expressing in themselves the action of a verb.   Such are *dux, cōmes, adjūtor* and *adjūtrix, auctor, testis, jūdex, interpres, măgister* and *măgistra, præceptor* and *præceptrix ;* as, *dūce nātūrā,* in the sense of *dūcente nātūrā,* under the guidance of nature; *jūdice Pŏlўbĭo,* according to the judgment of Polybius.

REM. 8. A clause sometimes supplies the place of the noun; as, *Nondum comperto* quam in rĕgĭōnem vēnisset rex. Liv. *Audĭto* vēnisse nuncium. Tac. Vāle *dicto.* Ovid. This construction, however, is confined to a few participles; as, *audĭto, cognĭto, comperto, explōrāto, despērāto, nuncĭāto, dĭcto, ēdicto.* But the place of such participle is sometimes supplied by a neuter adjective in the ablative; as, Incerto *præ tĕnebris quid pĕtĕrent.* Liv. Cf. R. 7, (*a.*) *Haud cuiquam dŭbio* quin hostium essent. Id. *Juxta pĕrĭcŭlōso* vēra an ficta prōmĕret. Tac.

REM. 9. (1.) The noun in the ablative, like the subject nominative, is sometimes wanting; (*a*) when it is contained in a preceding clause; as, *Attĭcus Servĭlium, Brūti mātrem, non mĭnus post mortem ējus, quam* flōrente, *cŏluit,* scil. eo,

i. e. *Brūto.* Nep. (*b*) When it is the general word for person or persons followed by a descriptive relative clause; as, *Hannibal Ibērum cōpias trājēcit, præmissis, qui Alpium transĭtus spĕcŭlārentur.* Liv. (*c*) When the participle in the neuter singular corresponds to the impersonal construction of neuter verbs in the passive voice; as, *In amnis transgressu, multum certāto, Bardesănes vīcit.* Tac. *Mĭhi,* errāto, *nulla vĕnia, recte* facto, *exĭgua laus prōpōnĭtur.* Cic. *Quum, nondum pălam* facto, *vīvi mortuīque prōmiscue complōrārentur.* Liv. *Nam jam ætāte eā* sum, *ut non siet,* peccāto, *mi ignosci æquum;* i. e. *si peccātum fŭĕrit.* Ter. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (*b.*)

(2.) So in descriptions of the weather; as, *Tranquillo,* scil. *mări,* the sea being tranquil. Liv. *Sĕrēno,* scil. *cœlo,* the sky being clear. Id. *Arānei sĕrēno texunt, nūbĭlo texunt,*—in clear and in cloudy weather. Plin. Substantives when used thus are to be considered as ablatives of time; as, *Cŏmĭtiis, lūdis, Circensĭbus.* Suetonius has used *proscriptiōne* in the sense of 'during the proscription.' So *păce et Principe.* Tac. Impĕrio *pŏpŭli Rōmāni.* Cæs.

REM. 10. This ablative is sometimes connected to the preceding clause by a conjunction; as, *Cæsar,* quamquam obsīdiōne *Massīliæ* rĕtardante, *brĕvi tămen omnia sŭbēgit.* Suet. *Dĕcemvĭri non* ante, quam perlātis lēgĭbus, *dĕpŏsĭtūros impĕrium esse aiēbant.* Liv.

REM. 11. A predicate ablative is sometimes added to passive participles of *naming, choosing,* etc. § 210, (3.); as, *Hasdrŭbăle* impĕrātōre *suffecto.* Liv.

CONNECTION OF TENSES.

§ **258.** Tenses, in regard to their connection, are divided into two classes—*principal* and *historical.*

A. The principal tenses are, the *present,* the *perfect definite,* and the *two futures.*

B. The historical, which are likewise called the *preterite* tenses (§ 145, N. 2.), are the *imperfect,* the *historical perfect,* and the *pluperfect.*

I. In the connection of leading and dependent clauses, only tenses of the same class can, in general, be united with each other. Hence :—

1. A *principal* tense is followed by the *present* and *perfect definite,* and by the periphrastic form with *sim.* And :—

2. A *preterite* tense is followed by the *imperfect* and *pluperfect,* and by the periphrastic form with *essem.*

NOTE. The periphrastic forms in each class supply the want of subjunctive futures in the regular conjugation.

The following examples will illustrate the preceding rules:—

(*a.*) In the first class. *Scio quid ăgas. Scio quid ēgĕris. Scio quid actūrus sis.*—*Audīvi quid ăgas,* I have heard what you are doing. *Audīvi quid ēgĕris. Audīvi quid actūrus sis.*—*Audĭam quid ăgas,* etc.—*Audīvĕro quid ăgas,* etc.

(*b.*) In the second class. *Sciēbam quid ăgĕres. Sciēbam quid ēgisses. Sciēbam quid actūrus esses.*—*Audīvi quid ăgĕrĕs,* I heard what you were doing. *Audīvi quid ēgisses. Audīvi quid actūrus esses.*—*Audīvĕram quid ăgĕres,* etc.

The following may serve as additional examples in the first class; viz. of *principal tenses* depending on,

(1.) The PRESENT; as, *Non* sum *ĭta hĕbes, ut istuc* dīcam. Cic. *Quantum dŏlōrem* accēpĕrim, *tu existĭmāre* pŏtes. Id. *Nec* dŭbĭto quin *rĕdĭtus ējus reīpŭblĭcæ sălūtāris* fŭtūrus sit. Id.

(2.) The PERFECT DEFINITE; as, *Sătis prōvīsum est, ut ne quid ăgĕre possint.* Id. *Quis mūsĭcis, quis huic stŭdio lĭtĕrārum se dēdĭdit, quin omnem illārum artium vim comprēhendĕrit.* Id. *Dēfectĭōnes sōlis prædictæ sunt, quæ, quantæ, quando fŭtūræ sint.* Id.

(3.) The FUTURES; as, *Sic făcillĭme, quanta ōrātōrum sit, semperque fuĕrit paucĭtas, jūdĭcābit.* Id. *Ad quos dies rĕdĭtūrus sim, scrībam ad te.* Id. *Si sciĕris aspĭdem lătēre uspĭam, et velle ălĭquem imprūdentem sŭper eam assĭdēre, cūjus mors tibi ēmŏlŭmentum factūra sit, imprŏbe fēcĕris, nĭsi mŏnuĕris, ne assĭdeat.* Id.

The following, also, are additional examples in the second class, viz. of *preterite tenses* depending on,

(1.) The IMPERFECT; as, *Unum illud extĭmescēbam, ne quid turpĭter făcĕrem, vel jam effēcissem.* Cic. *Non ĕnim dŭbĭtābam, quin eas libenter lectūrus esses.* Id.

(2.) The HISTORICAL PERFECT; as, *Vēni in ĕjus villam ut libros inde prōmĕrem.* Id. *Hæc quum essent nuntiāta, Vălĕrius classem extemplo ad ostium flūmĭnis duxit.* Liv.

(3.) The PLUPERFECT; as, *Păvor cēpĕrat mīlĭtes, ne mortĭfĕrum esset vulnus.* Liv. *Ego ex ipso audĭĕram, quam a te lĭbĕrālĭter esset tractātus.* Cic. *Non sătis mihi constĭtĕrat, cum ălĭquāne ănĭmi mei mŏlestiā, an pŏtius lĭbenter te Athēnis vīsūrus essem.* Id.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) When the present is used in narration for the historical perfect, it may, like the latter, be followed by the imperfect; as, *Lēgātos* mittunt, *ut pācem* impetrārent. Cæs.

(*b.*) The present is also sometimes followed by the perfect subjunctive in its historical sense; as, *Pandĭte nunc Hĕlĭcōna, deæ, cantusque mŏvēte, Qui bĕllo excĭti rēges, quæ quemque sĕcūtæ* Complērint *campos acies.* Virg.

REM. 2. The perfect definite is often followed by the imperfect, even when a present action or state is spoken of, if it is possible to conceive of it in its progress, and not merely in its conclusion or result; and especially when the agent had an intention accompanying him from the beginning to the end of the action; as, *Fēci hoc,* ut intellĭgĕres, I have done this that you might understand; i. e. such was my intention from the beginning. Sunt *phĭlŏsŏphi et* fuĕrunt, *qui omnĭno nullam hăbēre* censērent *hūmānārum rerum prŏcŭrātiōnem deos.* Cic.

REM. 3. (*a.*) The historical perfect is not regularly followed by the perfect subjunctive, as the latter is not, in general, used in reference to past action indefinite.

(*b.*) These tenses are, however, sometimes used in connection, in the narrative of a past event, especially in Livy and Cornelius Nepos; as, Factum est, *ut plus quam collēgæ Mĭltĭădes* văluĕrit. Nep.

(*c.*) The imperfect and perfect are even found together after the historical perfect, when one action is represented as permanent or repeated, and the other simply as a fact; as, Adeo nihil mĭsĕrĭti sunt, *ut incursĭōnes* făcĕrent *et Vēios in ănĭmo* hăbuĕrint *oppugnāre.* Liv.

(*d.*) The historical perfect may even be followed by the present, when a general truth is to be expressed, and not merely one which is valid for the time indicated by the leading verb; as, *Antĭŏcho păcem pĕtenti ad priōres condĭtiōnes nĭhil addĭtum, Afrĭcāno prædĭcante, nĕque Rōmānis, si* vincantur, *ănĭmos mĭnui, nĕque, si* vincant, *sĕcundis rebus insŏlescĕre.* Just.

REM. 4. (*a.*) As present infinitives and present participles depend for their time upon the verbs with which they are connected, they are followed by such tenses as those verbs may require; as, *Apelles pictōres quŏque eos* peccāre dīcēbat, *qui non* sentīrent, *quid esset sătis.* Cic. *Ad te* scripsi, *te lĕvĭter* accūsans *in eo, quod de me cito* crēdĭdisses. Id.

(*b.*) In like manner the tense of the subjunctive following the infinitive future is determined by the verb on which such infinitive depends; as, *Sol Phaëthonti fīlio* factūrum *se* esse dixit *quicquid* optasset. Cic.

REM. 5. (*a.*) The perfect infinitive follows the general rule, and takes after it a principal or a preterite tense, according as it is used in the definite or in the historical sense; as, *Arbitrāmur nos ea* præstĭtisse, *quæ rātio et doctrīna* præscripsĕrit. Cic. *Est quod gaudeas te in ista lŏca* vēnisse, *ŭbi ălĭquid săpĕre* vīdērēre. Id.

(*b.*) But it may sometimes take a different tense, according to Rem. 2; as, *Ita mihi videor et esse Deos, et quāles* essent *sătis* ostendisse. Cic.

II. Tenses belonging to different classes may be made dependent on each other, when the sense requires it.

(*a.*) Hence a present or perfect definite may follow a preterite, when the result of a past action extends to the present time; as, *Ardēbat autem Hortensius cŭpĭdĭtāte dīcendi sic, ut in nullo umquam flagrantius stŭdium* vīderim; i. e. that up to this time I have never seen. Cic. And, on the other hand, a preterite may follow a present to express a continuing action in the past; as, *Scītōte oppĭdum esse in Sĭcĭliā nullum, quo in oppĭdo non isti dēlecta mŭlier ad lĭbīdĭnem* esset: (*esset* here alludes to the whole period of Verres' prætorship.) Cic.

(*b.*) But without violating the rule which requires similar tenses to depend upon each other, the *hypothetical* imperfect subjunctive, may be followed by the present or perfect subjunctive, since the imperfect subjunctive refers to the present time; as, *Mĕmŏrāre* possem *quibus in lŏcis maximas hostium cōpias pŏpŭlus Rōmānus parvā mănu* fūderit. Sall. *Possem* here differs from *possum* only by the hypothetical form of the expression.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ **259.**   The indicative is used in every proposition in which the thing asserted is represented as a reality.

NOTE. Hence it is used even in the expression of conditions and suppositions with *si, nĭsi, etsi,* and *ĕtiamsi,* when the writer, without intimating his own opinion, supposes a thing as actual, or, with *nĭsi,* makes an exception, which, only for the sake of the inference, he regards as actual; as, *Mors aut plāne neglĭgenda est, si omnīno* exstinguit *ănĭmum, aut ĕtiam optanda,* si *ălĭquo eum* dēdūcit, *ŭbi sit fŭtūrus æternus.* Cic. *Adhuc certe, nĭsi ĕgo* insānio, *stulte omnia et incaute fĭunt.* Id.—It is likewise used in interrogations.

REMARK 1. The several tenses have already been defined, and their usual significations have been given in the paradigms. They are, however, sometimes otherwise rendered, one tense being apparently used with the meaning of another, either in the same or in a different mood. Thus,

(1.) (*a.*) The present is often used for the historical perfect in narration, see § 145, I. 3.—(*b.*) It is sometimes used also for the future to denote the certainty of an event, or to indicate passionate emotion. So, also, when the leading sentence contains the present imperative, *si* is often joined with the present instead of the future; as, *dēfende si pŏtes.*—(*c.*) The present is also used for the imperfect or perfect, when it is joined with *dum* 'while'; as, *Dum ĕgo in Sĭcĭliā* sum, *nulla stătua dējecta est.* Cic. It is even so used by Livy in transitions from one event to another; as, *Dum in Asiā bellum* gĕrĭtur, *ne in Ætōlis quĭdem quiētæ res fuērant.* But the preterites are sometimes used with *dum* 'while'; and *dum* 'as long as' is regularly joined with the imperfect.

(2.) (*a.*) The perfect, in its proper signification, i. e. as a perfect *definite,* denotes an act or state terminated at the present time. Thus Horace, at the close of a work, says, Exēgi *mŏnŭmentum ære pĕrennius*; and Ovid, in like circumstances, *Jamque ŏpus* exēgi. So, also, Panthus in Virgil, in order to de-

note the utter ruin of Troy, exclaims, Fuĭmus *Trões*, fuit *Ilium*, i. e. we are no longer Trojans, Ilium is no more.—(*b.*) The perfect *indefinite* or *historical* perfect is used in relating past events, when no reference is to be made to the time of other events; as, *Cæsar Rŭbĭcōnem* transiit, Cæsar crossed the Rubicon. (*c.*) As in the epistolary style the imperfect is used instead of the present, when an incomplete action is spoken of (§ 145, II. 3), so the historical perfect is in like circumstances employed instead of the present, when speaking of a completed action. With both the imperfect and perfect, when so used, however, the adverbs *nunc* and *ĕtiamnunc* may be used instead of *tunc* and *ĕtiamtum.*

(*d.*) The historical perfect is sometimes used for the pluperfect in narration; as, *Sed postquam* aspexi, *illĭco cognōvi*, But after I (had) looked at it, I recognized it immediately. Ter.—This is the usual construction after *postquam* or *posteāquam, ŭbi, ŭbĭ prīmum, ut, ut prīmum, quum prīmum, simul, simul ut, simul ac,* or *simul atque,* all of which have the signification of 'as soon as,' and sometimes after *priusquam.* But when several conditions are to be expressed in past time, the pluperfect is retained after these particles; as, *Idem sĭmŭlac se rĕmīsĕrat, nĕque causa subĕrat, quāre ănĭmi lăbōrem perferret, luxŭriōsus rĕpĕriēbātur.* Nep. So, also, *postquam* is joined with the pluperfect, when a definite time intervenes between events, so that there is no connection between them; as, *Hannibal anno tertio, postquam dŏmo prōfūgĕrat, cum quinque nāvĭbus Africam accessit.* Id.—In a very few passages the imperfect and pluperfect *subjunctive* are joined with *postquam.*

(3.) The pluperfect sometimes occurs, where in English we use the historical perfect; as, Dixĕrat, *et spissis noctis se condĭdit umbris*, She (had) said, and hid herself in the thick shades of night. Virg. Sometimes, also, it is used for the historical perfect to express the rapidity with which events succeed each other; so, also, for the imperfect, to denote what had been and still was.

(4.) The future indicative is sometimes used for the imperative; as, *Vălēbis*, Farewell. Cic. And:—

(5.) The future perfect for the future; as, *Alĭo lŏco de ōrātōrum ănĭmo et injūriis* vīdĕro, I shall see (have seen).... Cic. This use seems to result from viewing a future action as if already done, and intimates the rapidity with which it will be completed.

REM. 2. When a future action is spoken of either in the future, or in the imperative, or the subjunctive used imperatively, and another future action is connected with it, the latter is expressed by the *future* tense, if the actions relate to the same time; as, *Nātūram si* sĕquēmur *dūcem, numquam* ăberrābĭmus. Cic.; but by the future perfect, if the one must be completed before the other is performed; as, *De Carthāgine vĕrēri non ante* dēsĭnam, *quam illam excīsam esse* cognōvĕro. Cic. In English the present is often used instead of the future perfect; as, *Făciam si* pŏtĕro, I will do it, if I can. *Ut sēmentem* fēcĕris, *ita mĕtes,* As you sow, so you will reap. Cic.

REM. 3. In expressions denoting the propriety, practicability or advantage of an action not performed, the indicative of the preterites (§ 145, N. 2.) is used, where the English idiom would have led us to expect the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

(*a.*) This construction occurs with the verbs *ŏportet, nĕcesse est, dēbeo, convĕnit, possum, dĕcet, licet, reor, pŭto;* and with *par, fas, cōpia, æquum, justum, consentāneum, sătis, sătius, æquius, mĕlius, ūtilius, optābilius,* and *optĭmum—est, ĕrat,* etc.

(*b.*) In this connection the imperfect indicative expresses things which are not, but the time for which is not yet past; the historical perfect and the pluperfect indicative, things which have not been, but the time for which is past; as, *Ad mortem te dūci jam prīdem* ŏportēbat, i. e. thy execution was necessary and is still so; hence it ought to take place. Cic.—*Longe* ūtĭlius fuit *angustias ădĭtūs occŭpāre,* It would have been much better to occupy the pass. Curt. *Cătĭlīna* ērăpit e sēnātu triumphans gaudĭo, *quem omnīno vivum illinc exīre non* ŏportuĕrat. Cic.

(*c.*) In both the periphrastic conjugations, also, the preterites of the indicative have frequently the meaning of the subjunctive; as, *Tam bŏna constanter prœda* tĕnenda fuit,—ought to have been kept. Ovid. This is more common in hypothetical sentences than in such as are independent.

(*d.*) The indicative in such connections is retained, even when a hypothetical clause with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is added, and it is here in particular that the indicative preterites of the periphrastic conjugations are employed; as, *Quæ si dŭbia aut prŏcul essent, tămen omnes reĭpŭblĭcæ consŭlĕre* dēcēbat. Sall. *Quodsi Cn. Pompeius prīvātus esset hoc tempŏre, tămen* ĕrat mittendus. Cic.—*Dēlēri tōtus exercĭtus pŏtuit, si fŭgientes persĕcūti victōres essent.* Liv. *Quas nisi mănūmīsisset, tormentis ĕtiam* dedendi fuērunt. Cic. *Si te non invēnissem,* pĕrĭtūrus *per præcĭpĭtia* fui. Petr. But the subjunctive also is admissible in such cases in the periphrastic conjugations.

REM. 4. (1.) The preterites of the indicative are often used for the pluperfect subjunctive, in the conclusion of a conditional clause, in order to render a description more animated. They are so used,

(*a.*) When the inference has already partly come to pass, and would have been completely realized, if something else had or had not occurred, whence the adverb *jam* is frequently added; as, *Jam fămes quam pestilentia tristior* ĕrat; *ni annōnæ fŏret subventum,*—would have been worse. Liv. The same is expressed by the verb *cœpi* instead of *jam*; as, *Brĭtanni circumīre terga vincentium* cœpĕrant, *ni,* etc. Tac. And without *jam*; *Effĭgies Pĭsōnis traxĕrant in Gĕmōnias ac* dīvellēbant (would have entirely destroyed them) *ni,* etc. Id.

(*b.*) The perfect and pluperfect are likewise used in this sense, and a thing which was never accomplished is thus, in a lively manner, described as completed; as, *Et* pĕractum ĕrat *bellum sĭne sanguĭne, si Pompeium opprĭmĕre Brundĭsii* (Cæsar) *pŏtuisset.* Hor.—The imperfect indicative is rarely used, also, for the imperfect subjunctive, when this tense is found in the hypothetical clause; as, *Stultum* ĕrat mŏnēre, *nisi* fĭĕret. Quint.—Sometimes, also, the preterites of the indicative are thus used in the *condition;* as, *At fuĕrat mĕlius, si te puer iste* tĕnēbat. Ovid. See § 261, R. 1.

(2.) 'I ought' or 'I should,' is expressed by the indicative of *dēbeo,* and *possum* is in like manner often used for *possem;* as, *Possum persĕqui multa oblectāmenta rērum rustĭcārum, sed,* etc., I might speak of the many pleasures of husbandry, but, etc.; and it is usual in like manner to say, *diffĭcĭle est, longum est, infīnītum est,* e. g. *narrāre,* etc., for, 'it would be difficult,' 'it would lead too far,' 'there would be no end,' etc.

(3.) The indicative is used in like manner after many general and relative expressions, especially after the pronouns and relative adverbs which are either doubled or have the suffix *cumque;* as, *quisquis, quotquot, quīcumque, ŭtut, utcumque,* etc., see §§ 139, 5, (3.) and 191, I. R. 1, (*b.*); as, *Quidquid id est, timeo Dănaos et dōna fĕrentes.* Virg. *Quem sors cumque dăbit, lucro appōne.* Hor. *Sed quŏquo mŏdo sĕse illud hăbet,* But however that may be. Cic.—In like manner sentences connected by *sīve—sīve* commonly have the verb in the indicative, unless there is a special reason for using the subjunctive; as, *Sīve vērum est, sīve falsum, mĭhi quĭdem ita rēnunciātum est.* Later writers however use the subjunctive both with general relatives, etc., and with *sīve—sīve.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ **260.** The subjunctive mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind.

NOTE. The subjunctive character of a proposition depends, not upon its substance, but upon its form. 'I believe,' 'I suppose,' are only conceptions, but my believing and supposing are stated as facts, and, of course, are expressed by means of the indicative. When, on the other hand, I say, 'I should be-

lieve,' 'I should suppose,' the acts of believing and supposing are represented not as facts, but as mere conceptions. Hence the verb that expresses the purpose or intention for which another act is performed, is put in the subjunctive, since it expresses only a conception; as, *Ēdo ut vīvam,* I eat that I may live. This mood takes its name from its being commonly used in *subjoined* or dependent clauses attached to the main clause of a sentence by a subordinate connective. In some cases, however, it is found in independent clauses, or in such, at least, as have no obvious dependence.

I. The subjunctive, in some of its connections, is to be translated by the indicative, particularly in *indirect questions,* in clauses expressing a *result,* and after *adverbs of time;* as,

Rŏgas me quid tristis sim,—why I am sad. Tac. *Stellārum tanta est multĭtūdo, ut nŭmĕrāri non* possint,—that they cannot be counted. *Quum Cæsar* esset *in Galliā,* When Cæsar was in Gaul. Cæs.

II. The subjunctive is used to express what is contingent or hypothetical, including *possibility, power, liberty, will, duty,* and *desire.*

REMARK 1. The tenses of the subjunctive, thus used, have the significations which have been given in the paradigms, and are, in general, not limited, in regard to time, like the corresponding tenses of the indicative. Thus,

(1.) The present may refer either to present or future time; as, *Mĕdiōcrĭbus et quīs ignoscas vĭtiis tĕneor,* I am subject to moderate faults, and such as you may excuse. Hor. *Orat a Cæsăre ut det sibi vĕniam,* He begs of Cæsar that he would give him leave. Cæs.

(2.) The imperfect may relate either to past, present, or future time; as, *Si fāta fuissent ut cădĕrem,* If it had been my fate that I should fall. Virg. *Si possem, sānior* essem, I would be wiser, if I could. Ovid. *Cĕtĕros* răpĕrem *et* prosternĕrem, The rest I would seize and prostrate. Ter.

(3.) The perfect subjunctive has always a reference to present time, and is equivalent to the indicative present or perfect definite; as, *Errārim fortasse,* Perhaps I may have erred. Plin.—When it hás a future signification it is not to be accounted a perfect, but the subjunctive of the future perfect. See Rem. 4 and 7, (1.) But compare § 258, R. 1, (b.) and R. 3, (b.)

(4.) The pluperfect subjunctive relates to past time, expressing a contingency, which is usually future with respect to some past time mentioned in connection with it; as, *Id respondĕrunt se factūros esse, quum ille vento Aquĭlōne* vēnisset *Lemnum....* when he should have come.... Nep.

REM. 2. The imperfects *vellem, nollem,* and *mallem,* in the first person, express a wish, the non-reality and impossibility of which are known; as, *vellem,* I should have wished.—In the second person, where it implies an indefinite person, and also in the third when the subject is an indefinite person, the imperfect subjunctive is used in the sense of the pluperfect, and the condition is to be supplied by the mind. This is the case especially with the verbs, *dīco, pŭto, arbĭtror, crēdo;* also with *vĭdeo, cerno,* and *discerno;* as, *Mæstique* (*crēdĕres victos*) *rĕdeunt in castra,*—one might have thought that they were defeated. Liv. *Pĕcūniae an fāmae mĭnus parcĕret, haud făcile* discernĕres. Sall. *Qui* vidēret *ĕquum Trŏjānum intrōductum, urbem captam* dīcĕret. Cic. *Quis umquam* crēdĕret? Id. *Quis* pŭtāret? Id.—The imperfect subjunctive is frequently used, also, for the pluperfect in interrogative expressions; as, *Socrătes quum* rŏgārētur *cūjātem se esse dīcĕret, Mundānum, inquit.* Id. *Quod si quis deus* dīcĕret, *numquam* pŭtārem *me in Acădēmiā tamquam phĭlŏsŏphum dispŭtātūrum,* If any god had said....I never should have supposed. Cic.

REM. 3. The subjunctive in all its tenses may denote a supposition or concession; as, Vendat *ædes vir bŏnus,* Suppose an honest man is selling a house. Cic. Dixĕrit *Epĭcūrus,* Grant that Epicurus could have said. Id. *Vērum anceps pugnæ fuĕrat fortūna.*—Fuisset, Grant that it might have been. Virg. *Mălus cīvis Cn. Carbo* fuit. Fuĕrit *ăliis,* He may have been to others. Cic.—This concessive subjunctive is equivalent to *esto ut.*

REM. 4. The present and perfect subjunctive are used in independent propositions to soften an assertion. When so used, they do not differ essentially from the present and future indicative; as, *Forsĭtan* quærātis, You may perhaps ask. *Vĕlim sic existĭmes*, I would wish you to think so. *Nēmo istud tĭbi* concēdat, or concessĕrit, No one will grant you that. *Hoc sine ullā dŭbĭtātiōne* confirmāvĕrim, *ēlŏquentiam rem esse omnium diffĭcillĭmam*, This I will unhesitatingly affirm. Cic. *Nil ĕgo* contŭlĕrim *jūcundo sānus ămīco*. Hor. The form which is called the perfect subjunctive, when thus used for the future, seems to be rather the subjunctive of the future perfect: see Rem. 7, (1.) *Vŏlo* and its compounds are often so used in the present; as, Vĕlim *obvĭas mĭhi lĭtĕras crēbro mittas*, I wish that you would frequently send, etc. Cic. The perfect subjunctive is also rarely used in the sense of a softened perfect indicative; as, *Forsĭtan tĕmĕre* fēcĕrim, I may have acted inconsiderately.

REM. 5. The subjunctive is used in all its tenses, in independent sentences, to express a doubtful question implying a negative answer; as, *Quo eam?* Whither shall I go? *Quo ĭrem?* Whither should I go? *Quo ĭvĕrim?* Whither was I to have gone? *Quo ĭvissem?* Whither should I have gone? The answer implied in all these cases is, 'nowhere.' So, *Quis* dŭbĭtet *quin in virtūte dĭvĭtiæ sint?* Who can doubt that riches consist in virtue? Cic. *Quisquam nūmen Jūnō̆nis* ādōret *prætĕrea?* Virg. *Quidni, inquit*, mĕmĭnĕrim? Cic. *Quis* vellet *tanti nuntĭus esse mȃli?* Ovid.

REM. 6. The present subjunctive is often used to express a wish, an exhortation, asseveration, request, command, or permission; as,

Mŏriar, *si*, etc. May I die, if, etc. Cic. Pĕream, *si non*, etc. May I perish, if, etc. Ovid. So, *Ne* sim *salvus*. Cic. *In mĕdia arma* ruāmus, Let us rush.... Virg. *Ne me* attingas, *scĕleste l* Do not touch me, villain! Ter. Făciat *quod lŭbet*, Let him do what he pleases. Id. The perfect is often so used; as, *Ipse* vīdĕrit, Let him see to it himself. Cic. *Quam id recte făciam*, vīdĕrint *săpientes*. Id. Mĕmĭnĕrīmus, *ĕtiam adversus infĭmos justitĭam esse servandam*. Id. *Nihil incommŏdo vălētūdĭnis tuæ* fēcĕris. Id. Emas, *non quod ŏpus est, sed quod nĕcesse est*. Sen. *Dōnis impĭi ne plăcāre* audeant *deos; Plătōnem* audiant. Cic. *Nātūram* expellas *furca, tămen usque rĕcurret*. Hor.

(*a*.) The examples show that the present subjunctive, in the first person singular, is used in asseverations; in the first person plural, in requests and exhortations; in the second and third persons of the present and sometimes of the perfect, in commands and permissions, thus supplying the place of the imperative, especially when the person is indefinite.

(*b*.) With these subjunctives, as with the imperative, the negative is usually not *non* but *ne; as, ne dĭcas; ne dĭcat; ne dixĕris*. So, also, *ne fŭĕrit*, for *lĭcet ne fŭĕrit*.

(*c*.) The subjunctive for the imperative occurs most frequently in the third person. In the second person it is used principally with *ne;* as, *ne dĭcas*. In the latter case the perfect very frequently takes the place of the present; as, *ne dixĕris*. The subjunctive is also used in the second person, instead of the imperative, when the person is indefinite.

(*d*.) In precepts relating to past time, the imperfect and pluperfect, also, are used for the imperative; as, *Forsĭtan non nēmo vir fortis dixĕrit*, restītisses, *mortem pugnans* oppĕtisses,—you should have resisted. Cic.

REM. 7. In the regular paradigms of the verb, no future subjunctive was exhibited either in the active or passive voice.

(1.) When the expression of futurity is contained in another part of the sentence, the future of the subjunctive is supplied by the other tenses of that mood, viz. the future subjunctive by the present and imperfect, and the future perfect by the perfect and pluperfect. Which of these four tenses is to be used depends on the leading verb and on the completeness or incompleteness of the action to be expressed. The perfect subjunctive appears to be also the subjunctive of the future perfect, and might not improperly be so called; as,

Tantum mŏneo, hoc tempus si āmīsĕris, *te esse nullum umquam măgis ĭdōneum* rĕpertūrum, I only warn you, that, if you should lose this opportunity, you will never find one more convenient. Cic.

(2.) If no other future is contained in the sentence, the place of the future subjunctive active is supplied by the participle in *rus*, with *sim* and *essem;* as, *Non dŭbitat quin brĕvi Trōja* sit pĕrītūra, He does not doubt that Troy will soon be destroyed. Cic. In hypothetical sentences the form with *fuĕrim* takes the place of a pluperfect subjunctive; as, *Quis ēnim dŭbitat, quin, si Săguntīnis impĭgre tŭlissēmus ŏpem, tōtum in Hispāniam* āversūri *bellum* fuĕrīmus. Liv. The form in *fuissem* occurs also, but more rarely; as, *Appāruit, quantam ex-cītātūra mōlem vēra* fuisset *clādes, quum,* etc. See *Periphrastic Conjugation,* § 162, 14.

(3.) The future subjunctive passive is supplied, not by the participle in *dus,* but by *fŭtūrum sit* or *esset,* with *ut* and the present or imperfect of the subjunctive; as, *Non dŭbito quin* fūtūrum sit, *ut laudētur,* I do not doubt that he will be praised.

PROTASIS AND APODOSIS.

§ **261.** In a sentence containing a *condition* and a *conclu-sion,* the former is called the *protăsis,* the latter the *apodŏsis.*

1. In the *protasis* of conditional clauses with *si* and its compounds, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive imply the *non-existence* of the action or state supposed, the imperfect, as in English, implying present time. In the *apodosis* the same tenses of the subjunctive denote what the result would be, or would have been, had the suppo-sition in the protasis been a valid one; as,

Nisi te sătis incitātum esse confīdĕrem, scrībĕrem *plūra,* Did I not believe that you have been sufficiently incited, I would write more (Cic.); which im-plies that he *does believe,* and therefore *will not write. Si Neptūnus, quod Thēseo prōmīsĕrat, non* fēcisset, *Thēseus filio Hippŏlȳto non* esset orbātus. Id.

2. The present and perfect subjunctive in the *protasis,* imply the *real* or *possible existence* of the action or state supposed; as,

Si vĕlit, if he wishes, or, should wish, implying that he either does wish, or, at least, may wish. In the apodosis the present or perfect either of the sub-junctive or of the indicative may be used.

REMARK 1. The tenses of the *indicative* may also be used in the *protasis* of a conditional sentence with *si,* etc.; as, *Si* vāles, *bĕne est.* Cic. *Si quis antea* mīrābātur *quid esset, ex hoc tempŏre mīrētur pŏtius....* Id.—The conjunction *si* in the protasis is often omitted; as, *Lĭbet agros ĕmi. Prīmum quæro quos agros?* If you will buy lands, I will first ask, etc. But the protasis may be rendered without *if,* and either with or without an interrogation, as, You will buy lands, or, Will you buy lands? The future perfect often occurs in the protasis of such sentences; as, *Cāsus mĕdĭcusve lĕvārit ægrum ex præcĭpiti, māter dēlīra nĕ-căbit,* (Hor.) Should chance or the physician have saved him, the silly mother will destroy him. *Si* is in like manner omitted with the imperfect and pluper-fect subjunctive, in supposing a case which is known not to be a real one; as, *Absque te esset, hŏdie numquam ad sōlem occāsum vīvĕrem.* Plaut.

REM. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive differ but slightly from the in-dicative, the latter giving to a sentence the form of reality, while the subjunc-tive represents it as a conception, which, however, may at the same time be a reality. The second person singular of the present and perfect subjunctive often occurs in addressing an indefinite person, where, if the person were defi-nite, the indicative would be used; as, *Mĕmŏria minuĭtur, nisi eam* exerceas. Cic. When the imperfect or pluperfect is required to denote a past action,

the indicative must be used, if its existence is uncertain, as those tenses in the subjunctive would imply its non-existence. In the *ōrātio oblīqua*, when the leading verb is a present or a future, the same difference is observed between the tenses of the subjunctive as in hypothetical sentences; but when the leading verb is a preterite the difference between possibility and impossibility is not expressed.

REM. 3. The present and perfect subjunctive are sometimes used, both in the *protasis* and *apodosis* of a conditional sentence, in the sense of the imperfect and pluperfect; as, *Tu, si hic sis, ăliter sentias*, If you were here, you would think otherwise. Ter. *Quos, ni mea cūra rĕsistat, jam flammæ tŭlĕrint.* Virg.

REM. 4. The *protasis* of a conditional sentence is frequently not expressed, but implied; as, *Magno mercentur Atrīdæ*, i. e. *si possint.* Virg.; or is contained in a participial clause; as, *Agis*, etsi a multĭtūdĭne victus, *glōriā tămen omnes vīcit.* Just. So, also, when the participle is in the ablative absolute; as, *Dōnā-rem trĭpŏdas*—dīvĭte me scīlĭcet artium, quas aut Parrhăsĭus prŏtŭlit, aut Scŏpas.* Hor. *C. Mūcĭus Porsĕnam interfĭcĕre*, prōpŏsĭtā sibi morte, *cōnātus est.* Cic. It is only in later writers that the concessive conjunctions *etsi, quamquam*, and *quamvis* are expressed with the participle, but *tămen* is often found in the *apodosis*, even in the classic period, when a participial clause precedes as a *protasis*.

REM. 5. In hypothetical sentences relating to past time, the actions seem often to be transferred in a measure to the present by using the imperfect, either in the protasis or the apodosis, instead of the pluperfect; as, *Quod certe non fĕcisset, si suum nŭmĕrum (nautārum) nāves hăbērent.* Cic. *Cimbri si stătim infesto agmĭne urbem pĕtissent, grande discrīmen esset.* Flor. Sometimes the imperfect, although the actions are completed, appears both in the protasis and the apodosis.

REM. 6. *Nĭsi, nĭsi vēro*, and *nĭsi forte* are joined with the indicative, when they introduce a correction. *Nĭsi* then signifies 'except'; as, *Nescĭo; nĭsi hoc vĭdeo.* Cic. *Nĭsi vēro*, and *nĭsi forte*, 'unless perhaps,' introduce an exception, and imply its improbability; as, *Nēmo fĕre saltat sōbrĭus*, nĭsi forte *insānit.* Cic. *Nĭsi forte* in the sense of 'unless you suppose,' is commonly used ironically to introduce a case which is in reality inadmissible.

SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

A. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

§ **262.** A clause denoting the purpose, object, or result of a preceding proposition, takes the subjunctive after *ut, ne, quo, quin*, and *quŏmĭnus ;* as,

Ea non, ut *te* instĭtŭerem, *scripsi*, I did not write that in order to instruct you. Cic. *Irrĭtant ad pugnandum*, quo fiant *acrĭōres*, They stimulate them to fight, that they may become fiercer. Varr.

REMARK 1. *Ut* or *ŭti*, signifying 'that,' 'in order that,' or simply 'to' with the infinitive, relates either to a purpose or to a result. In the latter case it often refers to *sic, ĭta, ădeo, tam, tālis, tantus, is, ējusmŏdi*, etc., in the preceding clause; as,

Id mĭhi sic ĕrit grātum, ut *grātĭus esse nĭhil possit*, That will be so agreeable to me, that nothing can be more so. Cic. *Non sum* ĭta *hĕbes*, ut *istuc dīcam.* Id. *Nĕque* tam *ĕrāmus āmentes*, ut *explōrāta nōbis esset victōria.* Id. Tantum *indulsit dŏlōri*, ut *eum pĭĕtas vincĕret.* Nep. *Ita* and *tam* are sometimes omitted; as, *Epămīnondas fuit ĕtĭam dĭsertus*, ut *nēmo Thēbānus ei par esset ēlŏquentĭā*, instead of *tam dĭsertus.* Id. *Esse ŏportet* ut *vīvas, non vīvĕre* ut *ĕdas.* Auct. ad Her. *Sol effĭcit* ut *omnia* flŏreant. Cic.

REM. 2. *Ut*, signifying 'even if' or 'although,' expresses a supposition merely as a conception, and accordingly takes the subjunctive; as,

Ut dēsint vīres, *tămen* est laudanda *vŏluntas*, Though strength be wanting, yet the will is to be praised. Ovid. *Ut*, in this sense, takes the negative *non*; as, *Exercĭtus si pācis nōmen audiĕrit*, ut non rēfĕrat *pĕdem* (even if it does not withdraw) *insistet certe*. Cic.

REM. 3. *Ut*, with the subjunctive denoting a result, is used with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, it remains, it follows*, etc.; as,

Quī fit, ut *nēmo contentus* vīvat? How does it happen that no one lives contented? Hor. *Huic* contĭgit, ut *patriam ex servĭtūte in lībertātem* vindĭcāret. Nep. *Sĕquĭtur igĭtur*, ut *ĕtiam vitia* sint parca. Cic. Rēlĭquum est, ut *ĕgŏmet mĭhi* consŭlam. Nep. Restat *igĭtur*, ut *mōtus astrōrum* sit *vŏluntārius*. Cic. Extrēmum *illud* est, ut *te* ōrem *et* obsecrem. Id.

NOTE 1. To this principle may be referred the following verbs and phrases signifying 'it happens,' viz. *fit, fĭĕri non pŏtest, accĭdit, incĭdit, contingit, ēvĕnit, ūsu vĕnit, occurrit* and *est* (it is the case, or it happens, and hence *esto*, be it that):—and the following, signifying 'it remains,' or 'it follows,' viz. *fŭtūrum, extrēmum, prŏpe, proxĭmum,* and *rēliquum—est, rēlinquitur, sĕquitur, restat,* and *sŭpĕrest:* and sometimes *accēdit*.

NOTE 2. *Contingit* with the dative of the person is often joined with the infinitive, instead of the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Non cuĭvis hŏmĭni contingit ădīre Cŏrinthum*. Hor. And with *esse* also and other verbs of similar meaning, the predicate (as in the case of *licet*) is often found in the dative.—*Sĕquĭtur* and *effĭcitur*, 'it follows,' have sometimes the accusative with the infinitive and sometimes the subjunctive; and *nascĭtur*, in the same sense, the subjunctive only.

NOTE 3. *Mos* or *mōris est, consuētūdo* or *consuētūdĭnis est,* and *nātūra* or *consuētūdo fert,* are often followed by *ut* instead of the infinitive.— *Ut* also occurs occasionally after many such phrases as *nŏvum est, rārum, nātūrāle, nĕcesse, ūsĭtātum, mīrum, singŭlāre—est,* etc., and after *æquum, rectum, vērum, ătĭle, vērĭsĭmile,* and *integrum—est*.

For other uses of *ut*, with the subjunctive, see § 273.

REM. 4. *Ut* is often omitted before the subjunctive, after verbs denoting *willingness* and *permission;* also after verbs of *asking, advising, reminding,* etc., and the imperatives *dic* and *fac;* as,

Quid vis făciam? What do you wish (that) I should do? Ter. *Insāni fĕriant sine litŏra fluctus*. Virg. *Tenĕs dissĭmŭlāre rŏgat*. Ovid. *Id sĭnas ōro*. Id. *Se suādēre, dixit, Pharnăbāzo id nĕgŏtii dāret*. Nep. *Accēdat ŏportet actio vāria*. Cic. *Fac cōgĭtes*. Sall. So, *Vĭde ex nāvi* efferantur, *quæ*, etc. Plaut.

Verbs of willingness, etc., are *vŏlo, mālo, permitto, concēdo, pătior, sĭno, lĭcet, vĕto,* etc.; those of asking, etc., are *rŏgo, ōro, quæso, mŏneo, admŏneo, jŭbeo, mando, pĕto, prĕcor, censeo, suādeo, ŏportet, nĕcesse est, postŭlo, hortor, cūro, dēcerno, opto, impĕro*.

REM. 5. *Nē*, 'that not,' 'in order that not,' or 'lest,' expresses a purpose negatively; as,

Cūra ne *quid ei dēsit*, Take care that nothing be wanting to him. Cic. *Nēmo prūdens pūnit*, ut ait *Plăto, quia peccātum est, sed* ne *peccētur*. Id. *Ut* ne is frequently used for *ne*, especially in solemn discourse, and hence in laws; as, *Opĕra dētur*, ut *jūdicia* ne *fĭant*. Id. *Quo* ne is used in the same manner in one passage of Horace. *Missus ad hoc*—quo ne *per văcuum Rōmāno* incurrĕret hostis.—On the other hand *ut non* is used when a simple result or consequence is to be expressed, in which case *ita, sic, tam* are either expressed or understood; as, *Tum forte ægrŏtābam*, ut *ad nuptias tuas vĕnīre* non possem. In a few cases, however, *ut non* is used for *ne.*— *Ut non* is further used, when the negation re-

fers to a particular word or to a part only of the sentence, as in similar cases *si non* must be used, and not *nĭsi;* as, *Confer te ad Manlium,* ut *a me* non *ējectus ad ălĭēnos, sed invītātus ad tuos isse* vīdeāris. Cic.

REM. 6. *Nē* is often omitted after *căve ;* as,

Căve pŭtes, Take care not to suppose. Cic. Compare § 267, R. 3.

REM. 7. After *mĕtuo, tĭmeo, vĕreor,* and other expressions denoting fear or caution, *nē* must be rendered by *that* or *lest,* and *ut* by *that not.*

NOTE 3. To the verbs *mĕtuo, tĭmeo,* and *vĕreor* are to be added the substantives expressing fear, apprehension or danger, and the verbs *terreo, conterreo, dēterreo, căveo,* to be on one's guard, *vĭdeo* and *observo* in requests (as, *vĭde, vĭdēte* and *vĭdendum est*), in the sense of 'to consider'; as,

Milo mĕtuēbat, ne *a servis* indĭcārētur, Milo feared that he should be betrayed by his servants. Cic. Vĕreor, ne, *dum mĭnuĕre vĕlim lăbōrem,* augeam. Id. *Păvor ĕrat,* ne *castra hostis* aggrĕdĕrētur. Liv. *Illa duo* vĕreor, ut *tĭbi* possim concēdĕre, I fear that I cannot grant.... Cic. *Căvendum est* ne *assentātōribus* pătĕfăciāmus *aures,* neu *ădŭlāri nos* sĭnāmus. Cic. *Vĭde* ne *hoc tĭbi* obsit. *Terruit gentes, grăve* ne rĕdīret *sēculum Pyrrhæ. Multĭtūdĭnem dēterrent,* ne *frūmentum* confĕrant. Cæs. *Me mĭsĕrum!* ne *prōna* cădas. Ovid.

NOTE 4. *Nēve* or *neu* is used as a continuative after *ut* and *ne.* It is properly equivalent to *aut ne,* but is also used for *et ne* after a preceding *ut ;* as, on the other hand, *et ne* is used after a negation instead of *aut ne ;* as, *Lēgem tŭlit,* ne *quis ante actārum rērum accūsārētur,* nēve multārētur. Nep. *Cæsar mĭlites non longiōre ōrātiōne cŏhortātus, quam ŭti suæ prĭstĭnæ vĭrtūtis mĕmŏriam rĕtĭnērent,* neu perturbārentur *ănĭmo—prælii committendi signum dĕdit.* Cæs. *Nēque,* also, is sometimes used for *et ne* after *ut* and *ne ;* as, *Ut ea prætermittam,* nĕque *eos appellem.* Cic. *Cur non sancītis* ne *vīcĭnus patrĭcio sit plēbeius,* nec *ĕōdem itĭnĕre eat.* Liv.—*Ne non* is sometimes used for *ut* after verbs of fearing; as, *Tĭmeo* ne non *impĕtrem,* I fear I shall not obtain it.

REM. 8. The proposition on which the subjunctive with *ut* and *nē* depends, is sometimes omitted; as, *Ut ĭta dīcam.* Cic. *Ne sĭngŭlos nōmĭnem.* Liv.

NOTE 5. *Nēdum,* like *ne,* takes the subjunctive; as, *Optĭmis tempŏrĭbus clārissĭmi vĭri vim tribŭnĭciam sustĭnēre non pŏtuērunt:* nēdum *his tempŏrĭbus sine jūdĭciōrum rĕmĕdiis salvi esse* possīmus,—still less, etc. Cic. *Ne* is sometimes used in the sense of *nēdum ;* as, *Nŏvam eam pŏtestātem* (scil. *trĭbūnōrum plēbis*) *ērĭpĕre patrĭbus nostris,* ne *nunc dulcēdĭne sĕmel capti* ferant dēsīdĕrium. Liv.— *Nēdum* without a verb has the meaning of an adverb, and commonly follows a negative; as, *Ægre ĭnermis tanta multĭtūdo,* nēdum *armāta, sustĭnēri pŏtest.* Liv. *Ne,* also, is used in the same manner in Cic. Fam. 9, 26.

REM. 9. *Quō,* 'that,' 'in order that,' or, 'that by this means,' especially with a comparative; *non quō,* or *non quod,* 'not that,' 'not as if;' *non quin,* 'not as if not'; which are followed in the apodŏsis by *sed quod, sed quia,* or *sed* alone; and *quōmĭnus,* 'that not,' after clauses denoting hinderance, take the subjunctive; as,

Adjūta me, quo *id* fīat făcĭlius, Aid me, that that may be done more easily. Ter. Non quo *rēpublĭcā* sit *mĭhi quicquam cārius, sed despērātis ĕtiam Hippŏcrātes vĕtat ădhĭbēre mĕdĭcĭnam.* Cic. Non quod *sōla* ornent, *sed* quod *excellant.* Id. *Nēque rĕcūsāvit,* quo mĭnus *lēgis pænam* sŭbīret. Nep. *Ego me dŭcem in cĭvīli bello* nĕgāvi *esse, non rectum esse, sed quia,* etc. Cic. And instead of *non quin* we may say *non quo non, non quod non,* or *non quia non ;* and for *non quod, non eo quod,* or *non ĭdeo quod.*

REM. 10. *Quin,* after negative propositions and questions with *quis* and *quid* implying a negative, takes the subjunctive. *Quin* is used,

1. For a relative with *non*, after *nēmo, nullus, nihil....est, rĕpĕrītur, invĕnītur,* etc.; *vix est, ægre rĕpĕrītur,* etc.; as, *Messānam nēmo vēnit,* quin vīdĕrit, i. e. *qui non vīdĕrit,* No one came to Messana who did not see. Cic. *Nēgo ullam pic-tūram fuisse....*quin conquīsiĕrit, i. e. *quam non,* etc. Id. *Nĭhil est,* quin *măle narrando* possit *dēprăvāri.* Ter. *Quis est,* quin cernat, *quanta vis sit in sensĭbus?* Cic.

NOTE 6. When *quin* is used for the relative it is commonly equivalent to the nominative *qui, quæ, quod,* but it is sometimes used in prose instead of the accusative, and sometimes after *dies* for *quo,* as the ablative of time; as, *Dies fēre nullus est,* quin *hic Satrius dŏmum meam* ventĭtet, i. e. *quo—non* ventĭtet. Cic.— *Qui non* is often used for *quin;* as, *Quis ĕnim ĕrat,* qui non scīret. Id.; and when *quin* stands for *qui non* or *quod non,* is and *id* are sometimes added for the sake of emphasis; as, *Cleanthes nĕgat ullum cibum esse tam grăvem,* quin is *die et nocte concŏquātur.* Cic. *Nĭhil est quod sensum hăbeat,* quin id intĕreat. Id.—So, also, the place of *quin* is supplied by *ut non;* as, *Augustus numquam filios suos pŏpŭlo commendāvit* ut non *adjĭcēret* (without adding) *si mĕrēbuntur.* Suet. And if no negation precedes, or if *non* belongs to a particular word, and not to the verb, *qui non* and *ut non* must of course be used and not *quin.*

2. For *ut non,* 'that not,' or 'without' with a participle, especially after *făcĕre non possum, fiĕri non pŏtest, nulla causa est, quid causæ est? nihil causæ est;* as, *Făcĕre non possum* quin *ad te* mittam, i. e. *ut non,* etc. Cic. *Numquam tam măle est Sicŭlis,* quin *ălĭquid făcēte et commŏde* dīcant. Cic. *Numquam ac-cēdo,* quin *abs te* ăbeam *doctior,*—without going from you wiser. Ter.

NOTE 7. *Quin* takes the subjunctive also after the negative expressions *non dŭbito, non est dŭbium, non ambĭgo,* I doubt not; *non ăbest; nihil, paulum, non procul, haud multum ăbest; non, vix, ægre* alstĭneo *; tĕnēre me,* or *tempĕrāre mihi non possum; non impĕdio, non rĕcūso, nihil prætermitto,* and the like. In these cases, however, the negation in *quin* is superfluous, and it is generally translated into English by 'that,' 'but that,' or 'to' with an infinitive; as, *Non dŭbito* quin *dŏmi sit,* that he is at home. *Non multum ăbest,* quin *miserrĭmus sim,* Not much is wanting to make me most wretched. Cic. Hence, as *quin* is not in such cases regarded as a negative, *non* is superadded when a negative sense is required; as, *In quĭbus non dŭbito* quin *ĕffensiōnem negligentiæ vītāre atque effŭgĕre* non *possum.* Cic. *Dŭbĭtandum non est* quin numquam possit *ūtilĭtas cum hŏnestāte contendĕre.* Id.

NOTE 8. In Nepos, *non dŭbito,* in the sense of 'I do not doubt,' is always followed by the infinitive with the accusative, and the same construction often occurs in later writers but not in Cicero: in the sense of to scruple or hesitate, when the verb following has the same subject, *dŭbito* and *non dŭbito* are generally followed by the infinitive; as, *Cĭcĕro* non dŭbĭtābat *conjūrātos supplĭcio* af-fĭcĕre.—It may be added that 'I doubt whether' is expressed in Latin by *dŭbito sitne, dŭbito utrum—an, dŭbito sitne—an,* or *dŭbito num, numquid,* for *dŭbito an,* and *dŭbium est an* are used, like *nescio an* with an affirmative meaning.

NOTE 9. *Quin* signifies also 'why not?' being compounded of the old ablative *quī* and *nē,* i. e. *non,* and in this sense is joined with the indicative in questions implying an exhortation; as, Quin *conscendĭmus ĕquos?* Why not mount our horses? In this sense it is also joined with the imperative; as, Quin dic *stătim,* Well, tell me: or with the first person of the subjunctive. Hence without being joined to any verb it signifies 'even' or 'rather.'

REM. 11. The principal verbs of hinderance, after which *quōmĭnus* occurs, and after which *ne,* and, if a negative precedes, *quin* also may be used, are *dē-terreo, impĕdio, intercēdo, obsisto, obsto, offĭcio, prŏhibeo, rĕcūso,* and *rĕpugno.* It occurs also after *stat* or *fit per me,* I am the cause, *non pugno, nihil mŏror, non contĭneo me,* etc.

NOTE. *Impĕdio, dēterreo,* and *rĕcūso* are sometimes, and *prŏhĭbeo* frequently followed by the infinitive. Instead of *quōmĭnus, quo sĕcius* is sometimes used.

§ **263.**   The particles specified in this section always introduce a sentence containing only a conception of the mind, and are hence joined with the subjunctive.

1. The subjunctive is used after particles of wishing, as *ŭtĭnam, ŭti, O!* and *O! si;* as,

Ŭtĭnam mĭnus vītæ cŭpĭdi fuissēmus! O that we had been less attached to life! Cic. *O si sōlĭtæ quicquam virtūtis* ădesset! Virg.

REMARK. The present and perfect tenses, after these particles, are used in reference to those wishes which are conceived as possible; the imperfect and pluperfect are employed in expressing those wishes which are conceived as wanting in reality. Cf. § 261, 1 and 2.—' Would that not ' is expressed in Latin both by *ŭtĭnam ne* and *ŭtĭnam non*. *Ŭtĭnam* is sometimes omitted; as, *Tēcum lūdĕre sīcut ipsa possem!* Catull.

B. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

2. (1.) *Quamvis*, however; *lĭcet*, although; *tamquam, tamquam si, quāsi, ac si, ut si, vĕlut, vĕlut si, vĕlŭti, sīcŭti*, and *ceu*, as if'; *mŏdo, dum*, and *dummŏdo*, provided,—take the subjunctive; as,

Quamvis ille fēlix sit, *tămen*, etc. However happy he may be, still, etc. Cic. *Vēritas* licet *nullum dēfensōrem* obtĭneat, Though truth should obtain no defender. Id. Tamquam clausa sit *Asia, sic nihil perfertur ad nos*. Id. *Sed quid ĕgo his testĭbus ūtor*, quāsi *res dŭbia aut obscūra* sit? Id. *Me omnĭbus rēbus, juxta* ac si *meus frāter* esset, *sustentāvit*, He supported me in every thing, just as though he were my brother. Id. *Sĭmĭlĭter făcĕre eos*,—ut si *nautæ* cĕrtārent, *ŭter*, etc. Id. *Absentis Ariŏvisti crūdēlĭtātem*, vĕlut si *cōram ădesset, horrērent.* Cæs. *Inque sĭnus cāros*, vĕlŭti cognoscĕret, *ībat*. Ovid. Sīcŭti *jurgio* lăcessī-tus fŏret, *in sĕnātum vēnit*. Sall. *Hic vēro ingentem pugnam*, ceu *cētĕra nusquam bella* fŏrent. Virg. *Odĕrint* dum *mĕtuant*. Att. in Cic. *Mănent ingĕnia sĕnĭbus*, mŏdo permăneat *stŭdium et industrĭa*. Cic. *Omnia hŏnesta neglĭgunt* dummŏdo *pŏtentiam* consĕquantur, They disregard every honorable principle, provided they can obtain power. Id.

NOTE. *Mŏdo, dum*, and *dummŏdo*, when joined with a negation, become *mŏdo ne, dum ne*, and *dummŏdo ne*.

(2.) *Quamvis* (although) is in Cicero joined with a principal tense of the subjunctive; as, Quamvis *non fŭeris suāsor, apprŏbātor certe fuisti*. Cic. In later writers it is often used with the indicative; as, *Fēlĭcem Niŏben*, quamvis *tot fūnĕra* vīdit. Ovid. So also once in Cicero, Quamvis *patrem suum numquam* vīdĕrat. Rab. Post. 2.

(3.) *Quamvis*, as a conjunction, in the sense of ' however much,' is joined with the subjunctive. So also when its component parts are separated; as, *C. Gracchus dixit, sibi in somnis Ti. frātrem vīsum esse dīcĕre*, quam vellet cunc-tārētur, *tămen*, etc.— *Quamvis* ' however much,' as an adverb, governs no particular mood.

(4.) *Etsi, tămetsi*, even if, although, and *quamquam*, although, commonly introduce an indicative clause:—*ĕtiamsi* is more frequently followed by the subjunctive. In later prose writers, and sometimes in Cicero and Sallust as well as in the poets, *quamquam* is joined with the subjunctive; as, Quamquam *præ-sente Lūcullo* lŏquar. Cic. *Vi rĕgĕre pătriam quamquam* possis. Sall. Jug. 3. *Fīlius* quamquam *Thĕtidos mărīnæ Dardănas turres* quătĕret. Hor.

REMARK. The imperfect subjunctive with *ac si*, etc., is used after the present, to denote that in reality the thing is not so, but in that case a hypothetical subjunctive must be supplied; as, *Egnātii rem ut tueāre æque a te pĕto*, ac si *mea nĕgōtia* essent, i. e. *ac pĕtĕrem, si mea nĕgōtia essent*, as I would pray if, etc. Cic.

3. After *antĕquam* and *priusquam*, the imperfect and pluperfect tenses are usually in the subjunctive; the present and perfect may be either in the indicative or subjunctive. The present indicative is commonly used when the action is to be represented as certain, near at hand, or already begun; the subjunctive is used when the thing is still doubtful, and also in general propositions; as,

Ea causa ante *mortua est*, quam *tu* nātus esses, That cause was dead before you were born. Cic. *Avertit ĕquos*, priusquam *pābŭla* gustassent *Trōjœ, Xanthumque* bĭbissent. Virg. Priusquam incĭpias, *consulto ŏpus est*, Before you begin there is need of counsel. Sall.

4. (1.) *Dum, dōnec*, and *quoad*, signifying *until*, are followed by the subjunctive, if they refer to the attainment of an object; as,

Dum *hic* vĕnīret, *lŏcum rĕlinquĕre nōluit*, He was unwilling to leave the place until he (Milo) should come. Cic. *Nĭhil pŭto tibi esse ūtilius quam oppĕrīri* quoad *scīre* possis, *quid tibi ăgendum sit*. Id. *Cornu tĕtendit, et duxit longe*, dōnec *curvā-ta* cŏīrent *inter se cápita*. Virg.—In the sense of 'as long as,' these particles take the indicative, but Tacitus joins *dōnec* with the subjunctive even when a simple fact is to be expressed.

(2.) *Dum*, while, is commonly used with the indicative present, whatever may be the tense of the principal sentence. Cf. § 259, R. 1, (1.), (*a*.)

5. *Quum (cum)*, when it signifies a *relation of time*, takes the indicative; when it denotes a *connection of thought*, the subjunctive; as,

Qui non dēfendit injūriam, nĕque rĕpulsat a suis, quum pŏtest, *injuste făcit*. Cic. Quum *recte nāvĭgāri* pŏtĕrit, *tum nāvĭges*. Id. *Crēdo tum*, quum *Sicĭlia* flōrēbat *ŏpĭbus et cōpiis, magna artĭficia fuisse in eā insŭlā*. Id. Quum *tot* sustineas *et tanta nĕgōtia, peccem, si mŏrer tua tempŏra*, Since you are burdened with so many and so important affairs, I should do wrong, if I should occupy your time. Hor. Quum *vīta sĭne ămīcis mĕtus plēna* sit, *rātio ipsa mŏnet ămĭcĭtĭas compărāre*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (*a*.) The rule for the use of *quum* may be thus expressed: *Quum temporal* takes the indicative, *quum causal* the subjunctive. Hence, when *quum* is *merely* a particle of time, with no reference to cause and effect, and not occurring in a historical narrative (see Rem. 2), it may be joined with any tense of the indicative. But when it is employed to express the relation of cause and effect, or has the meaning of 'though' or 'although,' it is joined with the subjunctive (*b*.) *Quum*, relating to time, is commonly translated *when, while*, or *after;* referring to a train of thought, it signifies *as, since, though* or *although, because;* but may often be translated *when*.

REM. 2. In narration, *quum*, even when it relates to time, is joined with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, when a historical perfect stands in the principal clause; as,

Gracchus, quum *rem illam in rēlĭgiōnem pŏpŭlo vēnisse* sentīret, *ad sĕnātum rĕtŭlit*. Cic. *Alexander*, quum intĕrēmisset *Clitum, vix mănus a se abstĭnuit*. Id.

NOTE. *Quum* temporal, when it expresses an action frequently repeated, may be joined with the pluperfect indicative, and the apodosis then contains the imperfect; as, Quum *autem vir esse cœpĕrat*, dăbat *se labōri*. Cic. Quum *rōsam* vĭderat, *tum incĭpĕre ver* arbitrābātur. Id. Cf. § 264, 12.

REM. 3. *Quum* in the sense of 'while' is joined with the perfect and imperfect indicative, often with the addition of *intĕrea* or *intĕrim*, to express simultaneous occurrences; as, *Cătŭlus cēpit magnum suœ virtūtis fructum*, quum *omnes prŏpe ūnā vōce, in eo ipso vos spem hăbĭtūros esse*, dixistis. Cic. *Cœdēbātur virgĭs*

in médio fŏro Messānœ cīvis Rŏmānus, jūdĭces, quum intĕrea *nulla vox ălia istius mĭsĕri* audiēbātur, *nĭsi hœc: cīvis Rŏmānus sum.* Id.

REM. 4. *Quum,* for the most part preceded by an adverb, as, *jam, nondum, vix, œgre,* or joined with *rĕpente* or *sŭbĭto* is followed by the indicative, especially by the present indicative, to express the beginning of an action. In the cases mentioned in this and the preceding remark, the historians also use *quum* with the historical infinitive.

For the subjunctive after *si* and its compounds, see § 261.

C. ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER *QUI.*

§ **264.** Relatives require the subjunctive, when the clauses connected by them express merely a conception; as, for example, a *consequence,* an *innate quality,* a *cause, motive,* or *purpose.*

1. (*a.*) When the relative *qui,* in a clause denoting a *result* of the character or quality of something specified in the antecedent clause, follows a demonstrative, and is equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, it takes the subjunctive.

NOTE. The demonstratives after which *qui* takes the subjunctive, are *tam* with an adjective, *tantus, tālis, ējusmŏdi, hūjusmŏdi,* and *is, ille, iste,* and *hic* in the sense of *tālis;* as,

Quis est tam Lyncēus, qui *in tantis tĕnebris nĭhil* offendat? i. e. *ut ille in tantis,* etc., Who is so quick-sighted, that he would not stumble, (or, as not to stumble,) in such darkness. Cic. *Tălem te esse ŏportet,* qui *ab impĭōrum civium sŏciĕtāte* sējungas; i. e. *ut tu,* etc. Id. *At ea fuit lĕgātio Octāvii,* in quā pĕrīcŭli *suspīcio non sŭbesset,* i. e. *ut in eā.* Id. *Nec tămen ego sum* ille *ferreus,* qui *frā-tris cārissĭmi mœrōre non* mōvear, i. e. *ut ego non mōvear.* Id. *Non sŭmus* ii, quĭbus *nĭhil vērum esse* vĭdeātur, i. e. *ut nōbis nĭhil,* etc. Id. *Nulla gens* tam *fĕra est,* cūjus *mentem non* imbuĕrit *deōrum ŏpīnio,* i. e. *ut ējus mentem,* etc. Id.

(*b.*) Sometimes the demonstrative word is only implied; as,

Res parva dictu, sed quæ *stŭdiis in magnum certāmen* excessĕrit, i. e. *tālis quæ....*of such a kind that it issued in a violent contest. Cic. *Nunc dĭcis ălĭquid,* quod *ad rem* pertĭneat, i. e. *tāle ut* id, etc. Id. So *quis sum,* for *num tālis sum;* as, *Quis sum, cūjus aures lædi nĕfas* sit? Sen.—In like manner, also, a demonstrative denoting a character or quality, is implied in the examples included in the following rule :—

2. When the relative is equivalent to *quamquam is, etsi is,* or *dum-mŏdo is,* it takes the subjunctive; as,

Laco, consĭlii quamvis ĕgrĕgii, quod *non ipse* afferret, *inĭmīcus,* Laco, an opponent of any measure, however excellent, provided he did not himself propose it. Tac. *Tu ăquam ĕ pūmĭce postŭlas,* qui *ipsus* sītiat. Plaut. *Nĭhil mŏlestum,* quod *non* dēsīdĕres, i. e. *dummŏdo id.* Cic.

3. *Quod,* in restrictive clauses, takes the subjunctive; as,

Quod sciam, as far as I know; *quod mĕmĭnĕrim,* as far as I recollect; *quod ĕgo intellĭgam; quod intellĭgi possit; quod conjectūrā prōvĭdēri possit; quod salvā fĭde possim; quod commŏdo tuo fīat,* etc.— *Quĭdem* is sometimes added to the relative in such sentences. *Quod sine mŏlestiā tuā* fīat, So far as it can be done without troubling you. Cic. In the phrases *quantum possum, quantum ĕgo per-spĭcio,* on the other hand, the indicative is used.

4. A relative clause, after the comparative followed by *quam*, takes the subjunctive; as,

Mājor sum, quam cui possit *fortūna nŏcēre*, i. e. *quam ut mĭhi*, etc., I am too great for fortune to be able to injure me. Ovid. *Audītā vōce præcōnis mājus gaudium fuit, quam* quod *ūnīversum hŏmĭnes* căpĕrent, Upon the herald's voice being heard, the joy was too great for the people to contain. Liv.

REMARK 1. The clause annexed by *quam qui* implies an inherent quality, or a consequence; so that *quam qui* is equivalent to *quam ut*, which also sometimes occurs. Sometimes the subjunctive follows *quam* even without a relative pronoun; as, *In his lĭtĕris longior fui*, quam *aut* vellem, aut quam *me pŭtāvi fŏre:*—and so frequently with the verbs *velle* and *posse*.

5. A relative clause expressing a *purpose, aim*, or *motive*, and equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, takes the subjunctive; as,

Lăcĕdæmŏnii lēgātos Athēnas mīsērunt, qui *eum absentem* accūsārent: i. e. *ut illi eum accūsārent*, The Lacedæmonians sent ambassadors to Athens to accuse him in his absence. Nep. *Cæsar ĕquĭtātum omnem præmittit*, qui vĭdeant, *quas in pȳrtes ĭter făcĭunt*. Cæs. *Sunt autem multi, qui ērĭpiunt ălĭis*, quod *ălĭis* largiantur. Cic. *Assĭdue rĕpĕtant*, quas perdant, *Bēlĭdes undas*. Ovid.

REM. 2. So also with relative adverbs; as, *Lampsăcum ei (Thĕmistŏcli) rex dōnārat*, unde *vīnum* sūmĕret, i. e. *ex quā* or *ut inde*, etc. Nep. *Sŭper tăbernāc-ŭlum rēgis*, unde *ab omnĭbus conspĭci* posset, *imāgo sōlis crystallo inclūsa fulgē-bat*. Curt.

6. A relative clause with the subjunctive after certain indefinite general expressions, specifies the circumstances which characterize the individual or class indefinitely referred to in the leading clause; as,

Fuērunt eā tempestāte, qui dīcĕrent, There were at that time some who said. Sall. *Erant, quibus appĕtentior fāmæ*, vĭdērētur, There were those to whom he appeared too desirous of fame. Tac. *Sunt*, qui censeant, *ūna ănĭmum et corpus occĭdĕre*. Cic. *Erunt, qui existĭmāri* vĕlint. Id. *Si quis* ĕrit, qui *perpĕtuam ōrātiōnem* dēsīdĕret, *altĕrā actiōne audiet*. Id. *Vĕnient lēgiōnes*, quæ *nĕque me ĭnultum nĕque te impūnītum* pătiantur. Tac. So after *est* followed by *quod*, in the sense of ' there is reason why'; as, *Est* quod gaudeas, You have cause to rejoice. Plaut. *Est* quod vīsam *dŏmum*. Id. *Si est* quod dēsit, *ne beātus quidem est*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The expressions included in the rule are *est, sunt, ădest, præsto sunt, exsistunt, exŏriuntur, invĕniuntur, rĕpĕriuntur*, (scil. *hŏmĭnes*); *si quis est, tempus fuit, tempus vĕniet*, etc.

REM. 3. The same construction occurs with relative particles used indefinitely; as, *Est* unde *hæc* fĭant. *Si est culpam* ut *Antĭpho in se* admīsĕrit, If it chance that, etc. Ter. *Est* ŭbi *id isto mŏdo* văleat. Cic. So *est cur* and *est ut* in the sense of *est cur*; as, *Ille* ĕrat, ut ōdisset *dēfensōrem sălūtis meæ*, i. e. he had reason to hate. Cic. *Non est ĭgitur* ut mīrandum sit, There is no occasion for wondering. Id.

REM. 4. The above and similar expressions are followed by the subjunctive only when they are indefinite. Hence, after *sunt quĭdam, sunt nonnulli, sunt multi*, etc., when referring to definite persons, the relative takes the indicative; as, *Sunt ōrātiōnes quædam, quas Menocrĭto* dăbo. Cic.

REM. 5. The indicative is sometimes, though rarely, used after *sunt qui*, even when taken indefinitely, especially in the poets; as, *Sunt, quos* jūvat. Hor. *Sunt* qui ĭta dīcunt. Sall.

7. A relative clause after a general negative, or an interrogative expression implying a negative, takes the subjunctive; as,

Nēmo est, qui haud intelligat, There is no one who does not understand. Cic. *Nulla res est,* quæ *perferre* possit *contīnuum lăbōrem,* There is nothing which can endure perpetual labor. Quint. *Nulla pars est corpŏris,* quæ *non* sit *mĭnor.* Id. *Nĭhil est,* quod *tam mĭsĕros* făciat, *quam impĭĕtas et scĕlus.* Cic. *In fŏro vix dĕcīmus quisque est,* qui *ipsus sēse* noscat. Plaut. *Quis est,* qui *ūtĭlia* fŭgiat? Who is there that shuns what is useful? Cic. *Quæ lătebra est, in* quam *non* intret *mĕtus mortis?* Sen. *Quid dulcius quam hăbēre,* quīcum *omnia* audeas *sic lŏqui ut tēcum?* Cic. (See respecting this use of the indefinite *quīcum* rather than the definite *quōcum,* § 136, R. 1.) *An est quisquam,* qui *hoc* ignōret? Is there any one who is ignorant of this? Id. *Numquid est măli,* quod *non* dīxĕris? Ter.

NOTE 2. General negatives are *nēmo, nullus, nĭhil, ūnus non, ălius non, non quisquam, vix ullus, nec ullus,* etc., with *est;* *vix* with an ordinal and *quisque;* *nĕgo esse quemquam,* etc. Interrogative expressions implying a negative, are *quis, quid; qui, quæ, quod; quantus, ūter, ecquis, numquis, an quisquam, an ăliquis, quŏtus quisque, quŏtus,* etc., with *est? quot, quam multi,* etc., with *sunt?*

NOTE 3. The same construction is used after *non est, nĭhil est, quid est, numquid est,* etc., followed by *quod, cur, quăre,* or *quamobrem,* and denoting ‘there is no reason why,’ ‘what cause is there?’ ‘is there any reason?’ as, *Quod* tĭmeas, *non est,* There is no reason why you should fear. Ovid. *Nĭhil est,* quod *adventum nostrum* pertĭmescas. Cic. *Quid est,* quod *de ĕjus cīvĭtāte* dŭbĭtes? Id. *Quæris a me, quid ĕgo Cătĭlīnam mĕtuam. Nĭhil, et cūrāvi ne quis mĕtuĕret. Quid est,* cur *virtus ipsa per se non* effĭciat *beātos?* Id.—So after *non hăbeo,* or *nĭhil hăbeo;* as, *Non hăbeo,* quod *te* accūsem. Cic. *Nĭl hŏbeo,* quod ăgam, I have nothing to do. Hor. *Nĭhil hăbeo,* quod ad te scrībam. Cic. So without a negative, *De quĭbus* hăbeo *ipse,* quid sentiam. Id. *Causa* or, with *quid* and *nĭhil, causæ,* is sometimes added; as, *Non fuit causa,* cur *postŭlāres.* Id. *Quid ĕrat causæ,* cur *mĕtuĕret.* Id.

NOTE 4. (*a.*) The relative clause takes the subjunctive after the expressions included in this and the last rule, only when it expresses the character or quality of the subject of the antecedent clause; and the relative, as in the preceding cases of the relative with the subjunctive, is equivalent to a personal or demonstrative pronoun with *ut;* as, *Nēmo est, qui nesciat,* There is no one who is ignorant, *i. e.* no one is ignorant. Cic. So, *Sunt, qui hoc carpant,* There are some who blame this, *i. e.* some blame this. Vell.

(*b.*) If the relative clause is to be construed as a *part of the logical subject* it does not require the subjunctive; as, *Nĭhil stăbile est,* quod *infĭdum* est Nothing which is faithless is firm. Cic.

8. (1.) A relative clause expressing the *reason* of what goes before, takes the subjunctive; as,

Peccāvisse mĭhi vĭdeor, qui *a te* discessĕrim, I think I did wrong in leaving you. Cic. *Inertiam accūsas ădŏlescentium,* qui *istam artem non* ēdiscant, You blame the idleness of the young men, because they do not learn that art. Id. *O fortūnāte ădŏlescens,* qui *tuæ virtūtis Hŏmērum præcōnem* invēnĕris!—in having found. Id. *Cănīnius fuit mīrĭfĭcā vĭgĭlantiā,* qui *suo tōto consŭlātu somnum non* vīdĕrit,—since, etc. Id.

(2.) Sometimes, instead of *qui* alone, *ut qui,* *quippe qui,* or *utpŏte qui,* is used, generally with the subjunctive; as,

Convīvia cum patre non ĭnībat, quippe qui *ne in oppĭdum quĭdem nĭsi perrāro* vēnisset. Cic. *Nĕque Antōnius prŏcul ăbĕrat,* utpŏte qui *magno exercĭtu* sĕquĕrētur. Sall. But sometimes with the indicative in Sallust and Livy; as, Quippe qui *omnia* vīcĕrat. Sall.

9. After *dignus, indignus, aptus,* and *ĭdōneus,* a relative clause takes the subjunctive; as,

Vĭdētur, qui *ăliquando* impĕret, dignus *esse,* He seems to be worthy at some time to command. Cic. *Rustĭci nostri quum fĭdem ălĭcūjus bŏnĭtātemque laudant, dignum esse dīcunt,* quīcum *in tĕnebris* mĭces. Id. *Nulla vĭdēbātur aptior per-*

sŏna, quæ *de ætāte* lŏquĕrētur. Id.   *Pompeius* ĭdōneus *non est*, qui impetret. Id.
Et rem ĭdōneam, *de* quā quærātur, *et hŏmines* dignos, quĭbus*cum* disscrātur, *pŭ-
tant*. Id.

NOTE 5. If the relative clause does not express that of which the person or
thing denoted by the antecedent is worthy, its construction is not influenced
by this rule.   Thus, *Quis servus* lībertāte dignus *fuit*, cui *nostra sălus cāra non
esset?*   The subjunctive is here used according to No. 7 of this section.

NOTE 6. The infinitive frequently follows these adjectives in poetry, though
rarely in prose; as, *Et puer ipse fuit* cantāri dignus. Virg.:—and sometimes
ut; as, *Eras* dignus, ut hăbēres *integram mănum.* Quint.

10. A relative clause, after *ūnus, sōlus, prīmus,* etc., restricting
the affirmation to a particular subject, takes the subjunctive; as,

Hæc est ūna *contentio*, quæ *ădhuc* permānsĕrit, This is the only dispute which
has remained till this time. Cic.   *Vŏluptas est* sōla, quæ *nos* vŏcet *ad se, et* allĭ-
ceat *suapte natūrā*, Pleasure is the only thing that, by its own nature, invites
and allures us to itself. Id.

11. When the relative refers to a *dependent clause*, it often takes
the subjunctive. See § 266.

12. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in narra-
tion after relative pronouns and adverbs, when a repeated action is
spoken of; as,

Semper hăbiti sunt fortissĭmi, qui *summam impĕrii* pŏtīrentur, Those were al-
ways accounted the bravest, who obtained the supreme dominion. Nep.
Quemcumque lictor jussu consŭlis prĕhendisset, *tribūnus mitti jŭbēbat.* Liv.
Ut quisque maxĭme labōrāret *lŏcus, aut ipse occurrēbat, aut ăliquos mittēbat.*   So
after *si quis* or *qui;* as, *Si qui rem mălitiōsius* gessisset, *dēdĕcus* existĭmābant.
Cic.   *Quōtiens sŭper tāli nĕgōtio* consultārct, *ĕdĭtā dŏmūs parte* ūtēbātur. Tac.
Nec quisquam Pyrrhum, quā tūlisset *inpĕtum, sustinēre văluit.*—It is sometimes
found in like manner after *quum, ŭbi, ut,* and *si* when used in the sense of
quum, when repeated actions are spoken of; as, *Id* ŭbi dīxisset, *hastam in fīnes
eōrum ēmittēbat.* Liv.   Sin *Nŭmĭdæ prŏpius* accessissent, *ibi vēro virtūtem osten-
dĕre.* Sall.   Sometimes even the present subjunctive is so used when em-
ployed as an aorist to express things which have happened repeatedly, and
still happen (see § 145, I. 2.); as, Ubi *de magnā virtūte et glōriā bŏnōrum* mĕmŏ-
res, *quæ sĭbi quisque*, etc. Sall.

NOTE 7. This is called the *indefinite subjunctive*, or *subjunctive of generality*, inasmuch
as the action is not referred to a distinct, individual case.   The indicative, however, is
used in such cases more frequently than the subjunctive.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

§ **265.** Dependent clauses, containing an indirect question,
take the subjunctive.

NOTE 1. A question is indirect when its substance is stated in a dependent
clause without the interrogative form.   Indirect questions generally depend
upon those verbs and expressions which commonly take after them the accusa-
tive with the infinitive.   Cf. § 272.   Thus:—
Quālis sit ănĭmus, ipse ănĭmus nescit, The mind itself knows not what the
mind is. Cic.   *Crĕdĭbile non est*, quantum scrībam, It is incredible how much I
write. Id.   *Quis ego* sim, *me rŏgĭtas?* Do you ask me who I am? Plaut.   *Ad te*
quid scrībam *nescio.* Cic.   *Nec* quid scrībam *hăbeo*, Nor have I any thing to
write. Id.   *Dŏce me*, ŭbi sint *dii*, Inform me where the gods are. Id.   *Incertum
est*, quo te lŏco *mors* exspectet. Sen. Ep.   *Quam prīdem sĭbi hērēdĭtas* vēnisset,
dŏcet. Id.   *Nunc accĭpe*, quāre dēsĭpiant *omnes.* Hor.   *Id* utrum *illi* sentiant, an

vēro sĭmŭlent, *tu intellĭges.* Cic. *Quæro,* num *tu sĕnātui causam tuam* permittas.
Id. *Vĭdes,* ut *altā* stet *nĭve candĭdum Sōracte.* Hor. *Nescit, vītā*ne fruātur, an
sit *apud mānes.* Ovid.

NOTE 2. All interrogatives whether adjectives, pronouns, or par-
ticles, may serve as connectives of clauses containing indirect ques-
tions; as,

*Quantus, quālis, quŏt, quŏtus, quŏtuplex, ŭter ; quis, qui, cūjas ; ŭbi, quō, unde, quā,
quorsum, quamdĭu, quamdūdum, quamprīdem, quŏties, cur, quāre, quamobrem, quemad-
mŏdum, quōmŏdo, ut, quam, quantŏpĕre, an, ne, num, utrum, anne, annon.*

REMARK 1. The indicative is frequently used in dependent questions,
especially in Terence and Plautus and occasionally in later poets; as, *Vĭde
ăvārĭtia* quid fácit. Ter. So Virg. Ecl. 5, 7. In the best prose writers the in-
dicative generally indicates that the question is direct, or that the sentence is
not a question; as, *Quærāmus ŭbi mălĕfĭcium* est, Let us seek there, where the
crime actually is. Cic. *Nĭhil est admīrabĭlius, quam quōmŏdo ille mortem fīlii
tŭlit.*

REM. 2. In double questions, 'whether—or,' the first may be introduced by
utrum, or the enclitic *ne,* or without an interrogative particle. Hence there are
four forms of double questions,—1. *utrum* (or *utrum ne*),—*an.* 2. *utrum,* —*an*
(*anne*). 3. *-ne,* —— *an.* 4. *-ne,* —— *-ne ;* as, *Multum intĕrest,* utrum *laus*
immĭnuātur, an *sălus* dēsĕrātur. Cic. The interrogative particle *utrum* is not
used in a single question; and *num—an* is used only in direct questions. The
English 'or not' in the second part, which is used without a verb, is expressed
in Latin by *annon* or *necne,* either with or without a verb; but *necne* occurs
only in indirect questions; as, *Dii utrum sint,* necne *sint, quæritur.* Cic.—*Ne—
ne, an—an,* or *num—num* scarcely occur except in poetical or unclassical lan-
guage.

REM. 3. *Dŭbĭto, dŭbium est,* or *incertum est an, dēlĭbĕro* or *hæsĭto an,* and
especially *haud scio an, nescio an,* though implying some doubt, have generally
a sense almost affirmative. Compare § 198, 11, R. (*e.*)

REM. 4. *Nescio quis,* used nearly in the sense of *ălĭquis,* does not influence
the mood of the following verb; as, *Sed cāsu* nescio quo *in ea tempŏra ætas nos-
tra* incĭdit. Cic. *Lūcus,* nescio quo *cāsu, nocturno tempŏre* incensus est. Nep.
So, also, *nescio quōmŏdo,* 'somehow' or 'in some way'; as, *Sed* nescio quōmŏ-
do, *inhæret in mentĭbus quāsi augūrium.* Cic. In like manner *mīrum quam, mī-
rum quantum, nĭmium quantum,* and the like, when united to express only one
idea, do not affect the mood of the verb; as, *Sāles in dīcendo nĭmium quantum
vălent,*—very much. Cic.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INSERTED CLAUSES.

§ **266.** 1. When a dependent proposition containing either
an accusative with the infinitive, or a verb in the subjunctive, has
a clause connected with it, as an *essential part,* either by a rela-
tive, a relative adverb, or a conjunction, the verb of the latter
clause is put in the subjunctive; as,

*Quid enim pŏtest esse tam perspĭcuum, quam esse ălĭquod nūmen, quo hæc rĕ-
gantur?* For what can be so clear as, that there is some divinity by whom
these things are governed? Cic. Here the thing which is stated to be clear is,
not merely *esse ălĭquod nūmen,* that there is a god, but also that the world is
governed by him. Hence the latter clause, *quo hæc rĕgantur* is an essential part
of the general proposition. *Illud sic fĕre dēfīnīri sŏlet, dĕcōrum id esse, quod
consentāneum* sit *hŏmĭnis excellentiæ.* Id. *Audiam quid sit, quod Epĭcūrum non
prŏbes,* I shall hear why it is that you do not approve of Epicurus. Id. *Jussit
ut, quæ vēnissent, nāves Eubœam pĕtĕrent.* Liv.

REMARK 1. Hence the subjunctive is used in general sentences, in which the class of things mentioned exists only as a conception or idea, while the individual thing has a real existence; as, *Est ĕnim ulciscendi et pūniendi mŏdus, atque haud scio ăn sătis sit eum* qui lăcessiĕrit *injūriæ suæ pœnītēre*, i. e. each individual offender of the class.

REM. 2. When the principal proposition contains a subjunctive denoting a *result*, after *ĭta, tam, tālis*, etc., the inserted clause has the indicative; as, *Asia vēro tam ŏpīma est et fertilis*, ut—*multĭtūdĭne eārum rērum*, quæ exportantur, *făcile omnĭbus terris antĕcellat*. Cic. The same is the case in definitions; as, *Vĭdēre ĭgĭtur ŏportet, quæ sint convĕnientia cum ipso nĕgōtio, hoc est*, quæ *ab re sēpărāre non* possunt. Cic.—So also explanatory clauses, especially circumlocutions introduced by a relative pronoun, are sometimes found with the indicative; as, *Ităque ille Mārius ĭtem exīmie L. Plōtium dīlexit, cūjus ingĕnio pŭtābat ea*, quæ gessĕrat, *posse cĕlebrāri*. Cic.

NOTE. To this rule belongs the construction of the *ōrātio oblīqua*, 'indirect discourse,' or 'reported speech,' in which the language of another is presented, not as it was conceived or expressed by him, but in the third person. Thus, Cæsar said, 'I came, I saw, I conquered,' is direct,—Cæsar said, that 'he came, saw, and conquered,' is indirect discourse.

2. In the *ōrātio oblīqua*, the main proposition is expressed by the accusative with the infinitive; and dependent clauses connected with it by relatives and particles, take the subjunctive.

Thus, Cicero and Quintilian, in quoting the language of Marcus Antonius, make use, the former of the *ōrātio dīrecta*, the latter of the *ōrātio oblīqua;—Antōnius inquit, 'Ars eārum rērum est*, quæ sciuntur', Antonius says, 'Art belongs to those things which are known.' Cic. *Antōnius inquit*, artem *eārum rērum* esse, quæ sciantur, Antonius says, that 'art belongs to those things which are known.' Quint.

So, *Sŏcrătes dīcĕre sŏlēbat, omnes, in eo quod* scīrent, *sătis esse ēlŏquentes*, Socrates was accustomed to say, that 'all were sufficiently eloquent in that which they understood?' Cic. *Ctto mīrāri se aiēbat, quod non* rīdēret *hăruspex, hăruspĭcem quum* vīdisset. Id. *Nĕgat jus esse, qui mīles non* sit, *pugnāre cum hoste*. Id. *Indignābantur ĭbi esse impĕrium, ŭbi non* esset *lībertas*. Liv. *Ităque Athēniænses, quod hŏnestum non* esset, *id ne ūtile quĭdem* (esse) *pŭtāvērunt*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (*a*.) When the subjunctive would be necessary in the *ōrātio dīrecta*, to denote liberty, power, etc., the same remains in the *ōrātio oblīqua*, and is not changed into the infinitive with an accusative; as, *Ad hæc Ariŏvistus respondit, quum vellet*, congrĕdĕrētur, To this Ariovistus replied, that 'he might meet him when he pleased.' Cæs. In the *ōrātio dīrecta*, this would be *congrĕdiāris*.

(*b*.) The imperative in the *ōrātio dīrecta* is, in the *ōrātio oblīqua*, changed into the subjunctive; as, *hoc mihi dīcĭte*, which in the *ōrātio oblīqua* is, *hoc sĭbi dīcant*, or *hoc sĭbi dīcĕrent*, according to the tense of the leading verb.

(*c*.) So also direct questions addressed to the second person, when changed from direct to indirect speech, become subjunctives. Liv. 6, 37.—But such questions when not addressed to the second person are expressed in the *ōrātio oblīqua* by the accusative with the infinitive; as when in direct speech we say, *Etiamsi vĕtĕris contŭmēliæ oblivisci vĕlim, num possum ĕtiam rĕcentium injūriārum mĕmŏriam dēpōnĕre?* The *ōrātio oblīqua* will be, *Cæsar respondit* (histor. perf.)—*si vĕtĕris contŭmēliæ oblivisci vellet, num ĕtiam rĕcentium injūriārum—mĕmŏriam dēpōnĕre* posse? Cæs. Very rarely the accusative with the infinitive is found in a question of the second person, as in Liv. 6, 17: but the subjunctive in questions of the third person is less uncommon in Cæsar; as, *Quis păti posset?* for *quem păti posse? Quis hoc sĭbi persuādēret?* for *quem sĭbi persuāsūrum?* See § 273, 3.

REM. 2. A writer may state his own past words or thoughts in *ōrātio oblīqua*, either preserving the first person, or adopting the third.

REM. 3. When the inserted clause contains the words or sentiments of the subject of the leading clause, all references to him are regularly expressed by the reflexives *sui* and *suus*; as, *Hac nĕcessĭtāte coactus dŏmino nāvis qui sit ăpĕrŭt, multa pollicens, si se conservasset.* Nep. And this is equally true when the word to which the pronoun refers is not in reality the grammatical subject, provided it may still be conceived as such; as, *Quum ei in suspīciōnem vēnisset, ălĭquid in ĕpistŏlā de se esse scriptum.* Nep.; for the words, *quum ei in suspĭciō-nem vēnisset,* are equivalent to *quum suspĭcārētur.* See § 208, (1.)

REM. 4. The tenses to be used in changing the *ōrātio dīrecta* into the *oblĭqua,* depend on the tense of the verb which introduces the quotation, according to the rule, § 258. But when the future perfect would be used in the direct, the pluperfect is necessary in the oblique form; but the perfect is used after the present, perfect definite, or future.

REM. 5. When the connected clause contains merely a descriptive circumstance, or expresses what is independent of the sentiment of the preceding clause, it takes the indicative; as, *Impĕrāvit Alexander Lȳsippo, ut eōrum ĕqui-tum, qui ăpud Grānīcum cĕcĭdĕrant, făcĕret stătuas,* Alexander ordered Lysippus to make statues of those horsemen who had fallen at the Granicus. Sometimes, in other cases, when it is evident from the sense, that the connected clause is an essential part of the proposition, the indicative is used, to avoid giving the appearance of contingency to the sentence.

3. A clause connected to another by a relative or causal conjunction, takes the subjunctive, (whatever be the mood of the preceding verb,) when it contains not the sentiment or allegation of the writer, but that of some other person alluded to; as,

Sōcrătes accūsātus est, quod corrumpĕret *jŭventūtem,* Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth, lit., because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth. *Deum invŏcābant,* cujus *ad sŏlenne* vēnissent, They invoked the god, to whose solemnities they had come. Liv. *Quos vīcĕris ămīcos tibi esse cāve crēdas,* Do not believe that those whom you have conquered are your friends. Here, in the first example, the charge of corrupting the youth is not made by the writer, but by the accusers of Socrates. So, in the second example, the worshippers allege that they have come to attend upon the solemnities of the god. In the last, it is implied by the use of the subjunctive mood, that the belief spoken of is that of the person addressed:—*quos vīcisti* would have been merely an addition of the speaker, by means of which he would have designated the persons whose friendship he was speaking of; and, in general, the *indicative,* in such sentences, is employed in those statements which are independent of the sentiments of the person, to whose thoughts or words allusion is made. Cf. supra, 2, R. 5.

REMARK. In the preceding cases, it is not directly said that the sentiments are those of another than the writer. In Cicero, however, the words *dīco, pŭto, arbĭtror,* and the like, are often construed in a similar manner, although, properly speaking, not these verbs, but those in the clauses dependent on them, should be in the subjunctive; as, *Quum ĕnim, Hannĭbălis permissu, exisset de castris, rĕdiĭt paulo post, quod se oblītum nescio quod* dīcĕret,...because (as) he said, he had forgotten something. Cic. *Ab Athēniensĭbus, lŏcum sĕpultūræ intra urbem ut dărent, impĕtrāre non pŏtui, quod rēligiōne se impĕdīri dīcĕrent.* Id.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ **267.** The imperative mood is used to express a *command, wish, advice,* or *exhortation ;* as,

Nosce te, Know thyself. Cic. *Æquam* mĕmento *servāre mentem,* Remember to preserve an unruffled mind. Hor. *Huc* ădes, Come hither. Virg. *Pasce că-pellas, et pōtum pastas** lege, et inter ăgendum occursāre capro* căvēto. Id.

(1.) The imperative *present* denotes that an action is to be performed directly or at once; as, *lĕge*, read; *mŏrĕre*, die; or that a state or condition is to continue; as, *vīve*, live.

(2.) The imperative *future* denotes that something is to be done, as soon as something else has taken place; as, *Quum vălētūdĭni tuæ consŭlŭĕris*, *tum* consŭlīto *nāvĭgātĭōni*. Cic. *Prius audīte paucis ; quod quum dīxĕro, si plăcuĕrit*, făcĭtōte. Ter. The precedent event is often to be supplied by the mind. Sometimes, especially in poetry, the imperative present is used for the imperative future, and, on the other hand, *scīto* and *scītōte*, from *scio*, are used instead of the imperative present, which is wanting.

(3.) Hence the imperative future is properly used in *contracts*, *laws*, and *wills ;* and also in *precepts* and *rules of conduct ;* as, *Rēgio impĕrio duo* sunto, *tīque consŭles* appellantor, *mĭlĭtiæ summum jus* hăbento, *nēmĭni* părento, *illis sălus pŏpŭli suprēma lex* esto. Cic. *Non sătis est pulchra esse poēmăta, dulcia* sunto. Hor. Ignoscīto *sæpe altĕri, numquam tibi.* Syr.

REMARK 1. With the imperative, *not* is expressed by *nē*, and *nor* by *nēve ;* as,

Ne *tanta ănĭmis* assuescĭte *bella.* Virg. Ne crēde *cŏlōri.* Id. *Hŏmĭnem mortuum in urbe* ne sĕpĕlīto, nēve ūrīto. Cic.

NOTE. *Non* and *nĕque* occur, though rarely, with the imperative; as, *Vos quŏque* non *cāris aures ŏnĕrāte lăpillis*, nec *prŏdĭte grăves insūto vestĭbus auro.* Ovid. But with the subjunctive used for the imperative *non* and especially *nĕque* are found more frequently. Cf. § 260, R. 6, (*b.*)—In Plautus and Terence *ne* is of common occurrence both with the imperative and with the present subjunctive, and with no difference of meaning; but later poets chiefly use *ne* with the present subjunctive, and *ne* with the imperative only when they speak emphatically. In classical prose writers the periphrastic *nōli* with the infinitive is preferred.

REM. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive are often used instead of both tenses of the imperative, to express a command in a milder form, an exhortation, or an entreaty; as, *Qui ădipisci vēram glōrium vŏlet, justĭtiæ* fungātur *officiis.* Cic. *Quod dŭbĭtas,* ne fēcĕris. Plin. Ep. See § 260, II., R. 6. An imperative of the perfect passive is very rarely found; as, *At vos* admŏnĭti *nostris quŏque cāsĭbus* este. Ovid. Jucta *ālea* esto. Cæs. in Suet. But the subjunctive is more common; as, Jacta sit *ālea.* Sometimes also the future indicative; as, *Sed* vălēbis, *meăque nĕgōtia* vĭdēbis, *mēque diis jŭvantĭbus ante brūmam* exspectābis, instead of *văle, vide, exspecta.* Cic. *Ubi sententiam meam vōbis pĕrēgĕro, tum quibus eădem plăcēbunt, in dextram partem tăcĭti* transībītis, instead of *transĭtōte.* Liv. With the future the negative is *non.* See § 259, R. 1, (4.)

REM. 3. Sometimes, for the simple affirmative imperative, *cūra* or *cūrāto ut, fac ut,* or *fac* alone is used with the subjunctive; as, Cūra ut *quam prīmum* vĕnias, *Come* as soon as possible. *Fac ērŭdias,* Instruct, or Take care to instruct. Cic. For the negative imperative *fac ne, căve ne* or *căve* alone, with the present or perfect subjunctive is used; but especially *nōli* with the infinitive; as, *Nōli pŭtāre,* Do not suppose. Cic. *Căve existĭmes,* Do not think. Id. Nōlīte *id* velle *quod non fĭĕri pŏtest, et* căvēte ne *spe præsentis păcis perpĕtuam păcem* ŏmittātis. Id.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

OF THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

§ 268. 1. The infinitive partakes of the properties of the noun and verb, just as the participle combines the properties of the adjective and verb. It expresses simply the action or state implied in the verb in an abstract manner, without specifying either person, number, or time, and thus merely indicates whether an action is in progress or completed.

2. The tenses of the infinitive denote respectively an action as present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verbs with which they are connected; as,

Hoc făcĕre possum, I am able to do this. Cic. Vīdi *nostros inĭmīcos* cŭpĕre *bellum*, I saw that our enemies were desiring war. Id. *Nec* gĕmĕre aĕriā cessābit *turtur ab ulmo*, Nor shall the turtle dove cease to coo from the lofty elm. Virg.— *Victōrem victæ* succŭbuisse quĕror, I complain that the victor has yielded to the vanquished. Ovid. *Se a sĕnĭbus* audisse dīcēbant, They said that they had heard (it) from the old men. Cic. Audiet *cīves* ăcuisse *ferrum jŭventus*, The youth will hear that the citizens have whetted the sword. Hor.— Nĕgat *sēse verbum* esse factūrum, He declares that he is not about to speak. Cic. *Postquam* audiĕrat *non* dătum īri *fīlio uxōrem suo*, After he had heard that a wife would not be given to his son. Ter. *Semper* existĭmābĭtis *nĭhil hōrum vos* vīsūros fŏre, You will always suppose that you are to see none of these things. Cic.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) The present and perfect infinitives are sometimes called respectively the infinitives of *incomplete* and of *completed* action. The present infinitive, however, is sometimes used to denote a completed action. This is the usual construction with *mĕmĭni ;* but in such case the speaker transfers himself to the past, and the expression denotes rather a recollection of the progress than of the completion of the action; as, *Hoc me mĕmĭni* dīcĕre, I remember *my saying* this. Cic. *Teucrum mĕmĭni Sīdōna* vĕnīre, I remember Teucer's coming to Sidon. Virg. So with *mĕmŏriā tĕneo.* Cic. Phil. 8, 10. *Scrĭbit* also is construed like *mĕmĭnit ;* as, Cic. Off. 3, 2. and after the same analogy, and for the sake of vivid expression Cicero says, *M. Maxĭmum* accēpĭmus *făcĭle* cēlāre, tăcēre, dissĭmŭlāre, etc., though speaking of things which he had not witnessed himself. So, also, with *rĕcordor ;—Rĕcordor longe omnĭbus ūnum* antĕferre *Dēmosthĕnem.* Cic. When the action is spoken of simply as a fact, the perfect infinitive is used with *mĕmĭni ;* as, *Mĕmĭnistis me ĭta* distrĭbuisse *causam.* Cic.

(*b.*) The passive voice having no simple form for expressing the completed state of suffering makes use of the combination of the perfect participle with *esse ;* as, *ămātus esse,* to have been loved. When thus combined *esse* loses its own signification of a continued state, and when this state is to be expressed, another infinitive must be chosen; as, Constrictam *jam hōrum conscientiā* tĕnēri *conjūrātiōnem tuam non vĭdes ?* Cic. Sometimes, however, when no ambiguity can arise, *esse* in the usual combination retains its original meaning; as, *Apud Plătōnem est, omnem mōrem Lăcĕdæmŏniōrum* inflammātum esse *cŭpĭditāte vincendi.* Id. Here *inflammātum esse* expresses a continued or habitual state.— *Fuisse* with the perfect participle denotes a state completed previous to a certain past time; as, *Jŭbet bŏno ănĭmo esse ;* sōpītum fuisse *rēgem sŭbĭto ictu.* Liv.

REM. 2. To express the result of an action rather than its progress, the perfect infinitive is sometimes used instead of the present, especially after *sătis hăbeo, sătis mĭhi est, pŭdet, contentus sum, mēlius ĕrit, vŏlo* or a verb of equivalent meaning; as, *Bacchātur vātes, magnum sī pectōre possit* excussisse *deum.* Virg. *Quum illam nēmo vĕlit* attĭgisse. Plin. The poets use the infinitive perfect where we should expect a present; as, *Tendentes Pēlion impŏsuisse Olympo.* Hor.

REM. 3. The present infinitive is also sometimes used for the future, especially when the verb has no future; as, *Dēsĭne fāta deûm* flecti *spērāre,* Cease to hope that the fates of the gods will be changed. Virg. *Prōgĕniem Trōjāno a sanguĭne* dūci audiĕrat. Id. *Cras mĭhi argentum* dăre *dixit,* i. e. *se dătūrum esse.* Ter. *Căto* affirmat se *vīvo illum non* triumphāre. Cic.

REM. 4. (*a.*) The infinitive future active is formed by a combination of the participle future active with *esse ;* as, *ămātūrus esse ;* the infinitive future passive by a combination of the supine in *um* with *īri ;* as, *ămātum īri.* These future infinitives denote an action or state as continuing. The participle in *rus,* which properly expresses intention (see § 162, 14), takes also the infinitive *fuisse* to express a past intention; as, Scio te *scrĭptūrum fuisse,* I know that

you have had the intention to write, whence it was an easy transition to the sense, 'you would have written,' in conditional sentences, when the condition is not fulfilled. This infinitive is used especially in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences, where in direct speech the pluperfect subjunctive would be used (cf. § 162, 14, R. 3.); as, *Etiamsi obtempĕrasset auspĭciis, ĭdem* ēventūrum fuisse *pŭto.* Cic. In like manner the infinitive future with *esse* is used in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences instead of the imperfect subjunctive; as, *Libertus, nĭsi jūrasset, scĕlus se* factūrum (esse) *arbitrābātur.* Id.

(*b.*) Instead of the future infinitive, in both voices, *fŭtūrum esse* or *fŏre,* followed by *ut* and the subjunctive, is often used; the present and imperfect subjunctive, in such cases, denoting an unfinished, the perfect and pluperfect a finished, future action; as, *Numquam pŭtāvi* fŏre, ut *supplex ad te* vēnīrem, I never supposed (that it would happen) that I should come a suppliant to you. Cic. *Suspĭcor* fŏre, ut infringātur *hŏmĭnum imprŏbĭtas.* Id. *Crēdēbam* fŏre, ut *ĕpistŏlam* scripsisses.—So, also, in the passive for a continued state of future suffering the present and imperfect are used; as, *Crēdo* fŏre, ut *ĕpistŏlam* scrī̆bātur, and, *Crēdēbam* fŏre, ut *ĕpistŏla* scrī̆bĕrētur. But to express a completed state in future time the perfect participle is employed; as, *Quos* spēro *brĕvi* tempŏre tēcum cōpŭlātos fŏre. Cic. *Quod vidēret nōmĭne pācis bellum* invŏlūtum fŏre. Id. This construction is necessarily used, when the verb has either no future active participle, or no supine; as, in such case, the regular future infinitive cannot be formed; as, *Spēro fŏre ut săpias.*—Fŏre is found in two passages pleonastically joined with the future participle active, viz. *Te ad me* fŏre ventūrum. Cic. Att. 5, 21: and *Quum sĕnātus censēret—lībenter* factūros fŏre. Liv. 6, 42.

REM. 5. (*a.*) The periphrastic infinitive formed by the future active participle with *fuisse,* denotes a future action contingent upon a condition which was not fulfilled; and, in the *apodosis* of a conditional sentence, corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *An censes me tantos lăbōres* susceptūrum fuisse, *sī iisdem fĭnibus glōriam meăm quĭbus vītam essem termĭnātūrus?* Do you think that I should have undertaken so great labors if, etc. Cic. *Ut perspĭcuum sit omnĭbus, nĭsi tanta ăcerbĭtas injūriæ fuisset, numquam illos in eum lŏcum* prōgressūros fuisse,....that they never would have come into that place. Id.

(*b.*) *Fŭtūrum fuisse* with *ut* and the imperfect subjunctive passive, corresponds to the infinitive *fuisse* with the future participle active in a conditional proposition; as, *Nĭsi nuncii essent allāti, existĭmābant plērĭque* fŭtūrum fuisse, ut *oppĭdum* ămittĕrētur,...that the town would have been lost. Cæs.

(*c.*) The participle future passive cannot be used to form an infinitive future passive, since it always retains the meaning of necessity, and in this sense has three regular infinitives, *ămandum esse, ămandum fuisse,* and *ămandum fŏre;* as, *Instāre hiĕmem, aut sub pellĭbus* hăbendos *mĭlĭtes fŏre, aut* diff'erendum esse *in æstātem bellum.* Liv.

REM. 6. In the apodosis of a conditional sentence, the perfect infinitive, like the past tenses of the indicative, (see § 259, R. 4.), sometimes corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, (*Dixit*) *sibi vītam fĭliæ suī cārĭŏrem* fuisse, *si lībĕræ ac pŭdĭcæ vivĕre lĭcitum fuisset,* (He said) that the life of his daughter had been dearer to him than his own, if it had been permitted.... Liv. This use of the perfect infinitive is necessary, when the verb has no future participle; as, *Equĭdem Plătōnem existĭmo, si gĕnus fŏrense dicendi tractāre vŏluisset, grăvissĭme et cōpiōsissĭme* pŏtuisse *dicĕre,*—would have been able to speak. Cic.

§ **269.**   The infinitive may be regarded either as a verb or as an abstract noun. (*a.*) As a verb it is used either indefinitely (§ 143, 4), or with a subject of its own, which is put in the accusative, (§ 239). But the infinitive *passive* of neuter and sometimes of active verbs, like the third person singular of that voice, may be used impersonally or without a subject; as, *Vides tōto* prŏperāri *lītŏre,* You see a stir is made all along the shore. Virg. See §§ 209, R. 3, (2.), and 239, R. 4. The present infinitive has sometimes, in narration, a subject in the nominative. See § 209, R. 5.

(*b.*) As a noun, the infinitive, either alone or with a subject-accusative, has two cases, the nominative and the accusative, and is accordingly used either as the subject or the object of a verb.

THE INFINITIVE AS THE *SUBJECT* OF A VERB.

The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *subject* of a verb; as,

Ad rempūblĭcam pertĭnet me conservāri, It concerns the state that I should be preserved. Cic. *Numquam est ūtile* peccāre, To do wrong is never useful. Id. *Mājus dēdĕcus est parta* āmittĕre *quam omnīno non* parāvisse. Sall. In the first example *conservāri* with its subject accusative *me* is the subject of *pertĭnet*, and is equivalent to 'my preservation': in the second, *peccāre* is the subject of *est ūtile*. See § 202, 2, and III. R. 2.

REMARK 1. A general truth may be expressed by the infinitive without a subject; as, *Făcĭnus est* vincīre *cīvem Rōmānum*, To bind a Roman citizen, or, that one should bind a Roman citizen, is a crime. But in such case the verb *esse* and verbs denoting *to appear, to be considered* or *called* (§ 210, R. 3.), require the noun or adjective of the predicate to agree with the implied subject in the accusative; as, *Æquum* est *peccātis vĕniam* poscentem *reddĕre rursus.* Hor. *Attĭcus maximum æstĭmāvit* quæstum, mĕmōrem grātum*que* cognosci. Nep.

NOTE. The indefinite pronoun *alĭquem* or *alĭquos* may in such cases be supplied, and the same indefiniteness may be expressed by *te* or *nos*, cf. § 209, R. 7; but it is still more frequently expressed by the infinitive passive. Hence the sentence *Făcĭnus est vincīre cīvem Rōmānum*, may also be expressed by *Făcĭnus est* vincīri *cīvem Rōmānum.* So, *Quum vidērent de eōrum virtūte non* despērāri. Nep.—The impersonal verbs *licet, dĕcet, ŏportet, ŏpus est*, and *nĕcesse est*, when there is no definite subject, are joined with the infinitive active alone; but when there is a subject-accusative, they are connected with the passive construction; as, a c t. *licet hoc făcĕre; dĕcet spĕcĭmen căpĕre ex hac re; *　p a s s. *licet hoc fĭĕri; dĕcet spĕcĭmen căpi.*

REM. 2. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, is often the subject of a proposition, when the substantive verb with a noun, a neuter adjective, or an impersonal verb forms the predicate. Of this kind are *justum, æquum, vērisĭmile, consentāneum, ăpertum—est, ĕrat*, etc., *nĕcesse est, ŏpus est;—appārēt, constat, convĕnit, dĕcet, licet, ŏportet; intellĭgĭtur, perspĭcĭtur*, etc.; as, Cui verba dăre *diffĭcile est.* Ter. Mendācem mĕmōrem esse *ŏportet.* Quint. Lēgem brĕvem esse *ŏportet.* Sen. *Constat prŏfecto ad sălūtem cīvium* inventas esse lēges. Cic. *Non ĕnim me* hoc jam dīcĕre *pŭdēbit.* Id. See § 209, R. 3, (5.), (*a*.)

REM. 3. The infinitive may itself be the subject of an infinitive; as, *Audĭo non licēre cuĭquam in nāre căpillos* dēpōnĕre. Ter.

REM. 4. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may also be the predicate nominative; as, *Impūne quælibet* făcĕre *id est* rēgem esse. Sall. In this sentence *făcĕre* is the subject, and *rēgem esse* is the predicate; for *id*, which only represents by a kind of apposition the clause *impūne quælibet făcĕre*, can be omitted.

REM. 5. When the infinitive *esse*, (or others of similar meaning, as, *fĭĕri, vīvĕre, vītam dĕgĕre, cēdĕre, ăbīre*, etc.), with a predicate adjective (or noun), is joined with *licet*, such predicate is put in the accusative, if the subject-accusative of the infinitive is expressed, and sometimes, also, when it is omitted, but more frequently, in the latter case, the predicate adjective or noun is attracted to the dative following *licet*; as, *Ut eum liceat ante tempus* consŭlem fĭĕri. Auct. ad Her. Mĕdios esse *jam non licĭbit.* Cic. *Si cīvi Rōmāno licet* esse Gādītānum. Id.—*Licuit ĕnim* esse ōtiōso *Thĕmistoclī.* Id. *Mihi* nēglĭgenti esse *non licet.* Id. *Sibi vītam fĭlĭæ suā cārĭōrem fuisse, si lībĕræ ac* pŭdĭcæ vīvĕre *licĭtum fuisset* (scil. ei). Liv. So also *nĕcesse* with the predicate in the

dative. *Vōbis nĕcesse est* fortibus vīris esse. Liv.—But *lĭcet*, *ŏportet*, and *nĕcesse est* are also joined with the subjunctive mood, and hence is derived the construction of *lĭcet* as a conjunction. See § 263, 2.

THE INFINITIVE AS THE *OBJECT* OF A VERB.

§ **270.** The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *object* of a verb; as,

Hæc vītāre *cŭpĭmus*, We desire to avoid this. Cic. *Poētas omnīno non cōnor* attingĕre, I do not at all attempt to read the poets. Id. Sententiam vălēre *cŭpĭērunt*, They desired that the opinion should prevail. Id. *Spēro* te vălēre, I hope that you are well. Id.

NOTE.—The infinitive as the object of a verb supplies the place of the accusative of the *thing*, and hence many active verbs besides the infinitive take in the active voice an accusative of the *person*, cf. § 231, R. 3, (*b*.), and in the passive retain the infinitive; as, Consŭles jŭbentur scrībĕre exercĭtum. Mūros ădīre vĕtĭti sunt. Cf. § 234, I.

REMARK 1. The infinitive alone may also depend upon an adjective, and sometimes upon a noun.

(*a.*) It may depend upon *relative adjectives*, (see § 213, R. 1), which, by the poets, are joined with the infinitive instead of their usual construction with the genitive of the gerund, etc.; as, *Cēdĕre* nescius. Hor. Avīdi *committĕre pugnam*. Ovid. Cŭpĭdus *mŏrīri*. Id. *Cantāre* pĕrīti *Arcădes*. Virg. Callĭdus *condĕre furto*. Hor. *Quĭdlibet* impŏtens *spērāre*. Id. *Sutrīnas făcĕre* inscius. Varr. Insuētus *vēra audīre*. Liv. *Certa mŏri*. Virg. Fēlīcior *unguĕre tēla*. Virg. So, Audax *omnia perpĕti*, Resolute to endure every thing. Hor. Sollers *ornāre Cÿpassis*, Skilful to adorn. Ovid. Segnes *solvĕre nōdum*. Hor. Indŏcĭlis *paupĕriem pŭti*. Id. *Non* lēnis *fāta rĕclūdĕre*. Id. See § 213, R. 4, (1.)

(*b.*) It may also depend upon adjectives signifying *usefulness*, *fitness*, etc., which are sometimes by the poets construed with the infinitive instead of the dative; as, (*Tĭbia*) aspīrāre *et* ădesse *chŏris* ĕrat ūtĭlis. Hor. *Ætas mollis et* apta rēgi. Ovid. *Fons ĕtiam rīvo* dăre *nōmen* ĭdōneus. Hor. *Frūges* consūmĕre nāti. Id. And after *dignus* and *contentus;* as, Dignus *ămāri*. Virg. Cf. § 244, R. 2, (*b.*)

(*c.*) Upon a noun; as, Tempus *est hūjus libri* făcĕre *finem*, It is time to finish this book. Nep. *Inĭit* consĭlia *rēges* tollĕre, He devised a plan to destroy the kings. Id. *Ea* ĕrat confessio *căput rērum Rōmam* esse. Liv. Cŭpīdo *incessĕrat Æthĭōpiam* invīsĕre. Curt. *Quĭbus in ōtio* vīvĕre *cōpia* ĕrat. Sall. So, *Nec mihi sunt* vīres inĭmīcos pellĕre *tectis*, instead of *pellendis inĭmīcis*, or *ad pellendos inĭmīcos*. Ovid.

(*d.*) If for the infinitives depending on nouns or adjectives other nouns were substituted, these last would be put in the genitive, dative, or ablative; and hence such infinitives may perhaps be properly regarded as exceptions to the rule, that the infinitive has but two cases, the nominative and the accusative.

REM. 2. (*a.*) The infinitive with the accusative sometimes stands unconnected, especially in exclamations and indignant interrogations, where *crēdĭbile est?* or *vērumne est?* may be supplied; as, *Mēne incepto* dēsistĕre *victam?* That I, vanquished, should desist from my undertaking? Virg. *Me mĭsĕrum! te in tantas ærumnas propter me* incĭdisse*!* Cic.—But *ut*, also, with the subjunctive, either with or without an interrogative particle, may be used to express a question with indignation; as, *Eīne* (scil. *patri*) *ĕgo* ut adverser? Liv. *Tu ut umquam te* corrĭgas? Cic. *Jūdicio* ut *ărātor dĕcŭmānum* persĕquātur? Id.; where *fĭĕri pŏtest?* may be supplied.

(*b.*) So, in the *ōrātio oblīqua*, the words signifying *said*, *saying*, etc., are often omitted, or implied in a preceding verb or phrase; as, *Id făcile effĭci* posse, scil. *dixit*. Nep. *Quem signum* dătūrum *fŭgientĭbus?* Curt.

Rem. 3. The infinitive is sometimes to be supplied; and *esse* and *fuisse* with a predicate adjective, and also in the compound forms of the infinitive, both active and passive, are commonly omitted, especially after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing,* and *perceiving ;* as, *Vos cognōvi fortes.* Sall. *Quem pulsum mĕmŏrāvi.* Tac.—So, also, with the infinitive perfect passive when depending on *vŏlo, nōlo, cŭpio,* and *ŏportet ;* as, *Adŏlescenti mōrem gestum ŏportuit.* Ter. *Quod jam prīdem factum ŏportuit.* Cic.—Sometimes in a relative clause an infinitive is to be supplied from the finite verb of the main proposition ; as, *Quos vŏluit omnes interf ēcit,* scil. *interf ĭcĕre. Ne illam quĭdem consĕquuntur, quam pŭtant, grātiam ;* i. e. *quam se consĕcūtūros pŭtant.* Cic.

THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ **271.** The infinitive, without a subject-accusative, is used after verbs denoting *ability, obligation, intention* or *endeavor ;* after verbs signifying *to begin, continue, cease, abstain, dare, fear, hesitate,* or *be wont ;* and after the passive of verbs of *saying, believing, reckoning,* etc.

Note 1. To these classes belong *possum, queo, nĕqueo, văleo, dēbeo ; cūro, cōgĭto, dēcerno, stătuo, constĭtuo, instĭtuo, pāro ; cōnor, nītor, tendo, contendo, tento, mātūro, prŏpĕro, aggrĕdior, persēvĕro ;—cœpi, incĭpio, pergo, dēsĭno, dēsisto, intermitto, parco, rĕcūso ; sŏleo, assuesco, consuesco, insuesco ; audeo, vĕreor, mĕtuo, rĕformīdo, tĭmeo, horreo, dŭbĭto ;—audĭor, crēdor, existĭmor, f ĕror, nĕgor, nuntĭor, pĕrhĭbeor, pŭtor, trādor, jŭbeor, vĭdeor,* and *cōgor.*

Note 2. When the preceding verbs are joined with *esse, hăbēri, jūdĭcāri, vĭdēri,* etc., the predicate noun or adjective is put in the nominative ; as, *Sŏlet tristis vĭdēri ; aude săpiens esse ; cœpĭt mĭhi mŏlestus esse ; dēbes esse dīligens ; pŏtest līber esse :* and so also *mĕrētur, scit, dĭdĭcit līber esse.*

Note 3. The poets, in imitation of the Greeks, use the infinitive after *f ŭge, aufer, căve, parce, mĕmento ; păveo, rĕf ūgio, quæro, urgeo, lăbōro, ămo, gaudeo, f ŭro, calleo, sūmo, mitto, rĕmitto, pătior, jŭro, conjŭro, pugno, nātus,* and some other verbs, especially to denote a *wish* or *purpose ;* as, *Intrŏĭt vĭdēre.* Ter. *Non te frangĕre persĕquor.* Hor. *Non pŏpŭlāre pĕnātes vēnĭmus.* Virg. In this construction, the poets are sometimes imitated by the later prose writers.

Remark 1. Many of the verbs above enumerated, instead of the infinitive, may be followed by the subjunctive with *ut, ne,* etc.; and with some of them this is the regular construction ; as, *Sententiam ne dīcĕret, rĕcūsāvit.* Cic.

Rem. 2. The passives *dīcor, trādor, f ĕror, narror, rĕpĕrior, existĭmor, vĭdeor,* etc., may either be used personally, with the infinitive alone, or impersonally, followed by the accusative with the infinitive. Thus we may say, *Māter Pausănĭæ eo tempŏre vixisse dīcĭtur,* or, *Dīcĭtur eo tempŏre mātrem Pausănĭæ vixisse,* The mother of Pausanias is said to have been living....or, It is said that the mother of Pausanias was living.... Nep. The former construction is more common especially with *vĭdeor,* see § 272, R. 6; but the latter is frequent with *nuntĭātur,* and very common with the compound tenses, *trādĭtum est, prōdĭtum est,* etc., and with the participle future passive ; as, *crēdendum est, intelligendum est,* etc.; as, *Quōrum nēmĭnem tălem fuisse* crēdendum, etc. Cic.

Rem. 3. The infinitive without a subject is used after a verb, only when it denotes an action or state of the subject of that verb.

Rem. 4. The verbs to *wish* or *desire, vŏlo, nōlo, mālo ; cŭpio, opto, stŭdeo,* have a twofold construction :—the infinitive without a subject-accusative is used after them, when the subject remains the same ; and when followed by *esse, hăbēri,* etc., the predicate-noun or adjective is in the nominative ;—but the accusative with the infinitive is used when the subject is changed, or when a reflexive pronoun of the same person follows. We say, therefore, *vŏlo ĕrŭdītus fĭĕri,* and on the other hand, *vŏlo te ĕrŭdītum fĭĕri,* and *vŏlo me ĕrŭdītum fĭĕri.* So, *Vŏlo is esse, quem tu* me *esse vŏluisti.* Cic. *Cŭpio me esse clēmentem, cŭpio—*

me *non dissŏlūtum* vĭdēri. Id.; or, omitting the pronoun, *cŭpio* esse clēmens *nec
dissŏlūtus vĭdēri.*— *Omnis hŏmines qui* sese *stŭdent præstāre cētēris ănĭmālĭbus,*
etc. Sall.

NOTE 4. *Vŏlo* is used with the present infinitive passive; as, *Me ămāri vŏlo,*
I wish to be beloved; *hoc vĕlim intellĭgi,* I wish this to be understood; and also
with the infinitive perfect passive to denote the eager desire that something
should be instantly accomplished; as, *Lēgāti quod ĕrant appellāti sŭperbius,
Cŏrinthum patres vestri*—extinctum esse *vŏluērunt.* Cic.; but it occurs most
frequently with the omission of *esse;* as, *hoc* factum *vŏlo; nunc illos* commŏnĭ-
tos *vĕlim:* so, *patriam* exstinctam *cŭpit.*

NOTE 5. The nominative with the infinitive after verbs of saying, perceiv-
ing, etc. (§ 272), is rare even in poetry, and is an imitation of the Greek idiom,
which requires the nominative with the infinitive when the same subject re-
mains; as, *Phăsēlus ille, quem vĭdētis, hospites, ait* fuisse *nāvium* cĕlerrĭmus.
Catull. *Quia rĕtŭlit Ajax* esse *Jŏvis* nĕpos, instead of *se esse Jŏvis nĕpōtem.*
Ovid. *Sensit mĕdios* dēlapsus *in hostes,* instead of *se dēlapsum esse.* Virg.

THE INFINITIVE WITH A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 272. The infinitive with a subject-accusative follows verbs
of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving,* and the like; as,

Vĭdēbat, *id non posse fĭĕri,* He saw that that could not be done. Nep. Sentit
ănĭmus, se suā vi, non ălĭēnā, mŏvēri. Cic. Audīvi *te vĕnīre. Me in ējus pŏtes-
tāte* dixi *fŏre.* Id. Affirmant *mīlitum jăcēre ănĭmos.* Liv. *Sæpe* vēnit ad aures
meas, *te istud nimis* crēbro dicĕre. Cic. *Eam pugnam ad Pĕrūsiam pugnātam*
(*esse*), *quidam* auctōres sunt. Liv.

NOTE 1. This rule includes all such verbs and phrases as denote the exercise of the
external senses and intellectual faculties, or the communication of thought to others;
as, *audio, vĭdeo, sentio, ănĭmadverto, cognosco, intellĭgo, percĭpio, disco, scio, nescio,
censeo, spēro, despēro, cōgĭto, jūdĭco, crēdo, arbĭtror, pŭto, ŏpīnor, dūco, stătuo, mĕmĭni,
rĕcordor, oblĭviscor, ŏpīnio est, spes est,* etc.;—*dīco, trādo, prōdo, scrībo, rēfĕro, narro,
nuntio, confirmo, nĕgo, ostendo, indĭco, dŏceo, certiōrem făcio, dēmonstro, pĕrhĭbeo,
prōmitto, pollĭceor, spondeo,* etc.; but with most of these a different construction often
occurs. See § 273.

NOTE 2. The propositions, whose subjects are thus put in the accusative and their
verbs in the infinitive, are those which are *directly* dependent on the verbs of saying
and perceiving. Respecting the clauses inserted in such dependent propositions, see
§ 266, 1.

NOTE 3. (*a.*) When a relative clause inserted in a proposition containing
the accusative with the infinitive, has the same verb as the proposition in
which it is inserted, but such verb is not repeated, the noun which is the sub-
ject of the relative clause is also put by attraction in the accusative; as, *Te
suspĭcor eisdem rēbus, quĭbus* me ipsum, *commŏvēri.* If the verb is expressed
we must say, *eisdem rēbus commŏvēri, quĭbus* (*ĕgo*) ipse commŏveor. So, also,
in inserted relative clauses where the verb, if expressed, would be in the sub-
junctive, (see § 266, 2.); as, (*Verres*) *aiĕbat se tantĭdem æstĭmasse, quanti* Săcer-
dōtem, for *quanti Săcerdos æstĭmasset.* Cic. *Confĭtētur se in eā parte fuisse quā
te, quā* vīrum *omni laude dignum* patrem *tuum.* Id.

(*b.*) The same is the case with the particle *quam* after a comparative, see
§ 256, R. 5, (*a.*) But sometimes when *quam* connects a clause to a preceding
proposition containing the accusative with the infinitive, the same construction
follows that precedes *quam,* even when the verb of the latter clause is express-
ed; as, *Nonne tĭbi affirmāvi quidvis me pŏtius perpessūrum,* quam *ex Ĭtăliā ad
bellum cīvīle* me exĭtūrum; instead of *quam exīrem* or *quam ut exīrem.* Cic.

(*c.*) In long speeches in the *ōrātio oblīqua,* relative clauses, having a verb
of their own which should properly be in the subjunctive, are put in the ac-
cusative with the infinitive, if the relative clause is not subordinate to the one
with the infinitive, and which is governed by a verb of saying or perceiving,

but is rather coördinate with it; in which case the relative is equivalent to the demonstrative with *et*; as, *Nam illōrum urbem ut prōpugnācŭlum oppŏsĭtum esse barbăris, ăpud* quam *jam bis classes rēgias fēcisse naufrăgium*; for *et ăpud eam jam bis*, etc.—In Livy and Tacitus the same construction sometimes occurs even after conjunctions; as after *quum* in the sense of ' while,' see § 263, 5, R. 3; after *quamquam* on account of its absolute signification, see § 198, 4, and after *quia.*

Note 4. The personal pronouns, which, with the other moods, are expressed only when they are emphatic, must be always expressed in the accusative with the infinitive. The verbs ' to promise' and ' to hope' are in English usually joined with the infinitive present without a pronoun, but in Latin not only is the pronoun expressed, but the infinitive which follows is in the future; as, ' He promised to come,' is in Latin, *Prōmīsit se ventūrum* (scil. *esse*, see § 270, R. 3). But the infinitive present sometimes occurs after these verbs; as, *Pollicentur obsĭdes dăre*, Cæs. B. G. 4, 21; and the pronoun is occasionally omitted, see § 239, R. 2 and 3.

Remark 1. When ambiguity would arise from the subject and the object of the verb being both in the accusative, the passive infinitive is substituted for the active, by which means the subject is put in the ablative, or in the accusative with *per*; as, *Ne fando quĭdem audītum est, crŏcŏdīlum vĭŏlātum esse ab* Ægyptio; instead of Ægyptium *crŏcŏdīlum vĭŏlasse.* Cic.

Rem. 2. After verbs of saying, thinking, etc., the conjunction *that* is omitted in translating from English into Latin, and the subject of the dependent clause is put in the accusative, and its verb in the infinitive.

Rem. 3. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes rendered into English by a similar form; as, *Si vis* me flēre, If you wish *me to weep.* Hor.; but the dependent clause is more frequently connected to the verb of saying, etc., by the conjunction *that*, and the infinitive translated by the indicative or potential mood; as, *Sentīmus nĭvem* esse *albam*, We perceive *that snow is white.* Cic. Sometimes the dependent clause is annexed to the other without the conjunction; as, *Crēdunt* se neglĭgi, They think *they are neglected.* Ter.

Rem. 4. A present infinitive corresponds to the imperfect indicative, when with an accusative it follows a preterite tense; as, *Dixit Cæsărem* vĕnīre, He said that Cæsar *was coming.* Cæs. In like manner the perfect infinitive with an accusative after a preterite tense corresponds to the pluperfect indicative; as, *Dixit Cæsărem* vĕnisse, He said that Cæsar *had come.* See § 268, 2.

Rem. 5. The present infinitive, after verbs of sense, is often equivalent to the present participle; as, *Surgĕre vĭdet lūnam*, He sees the moon (to rise) rising. Virg. *Arma* rŭtĭlāre *vĭdent.* Id. *Vĭdēbis* collūcēre *făces.* Id. *Nec Zĕphȳros audis* spīrāre? Do you not hear the zephyrs blowing? Id. *Sæpe hoc mājōres nătu* dīcĕre *audīvi.* Cic. The two constructions are sometimes united; as, *Mĕdium video* discēdĕre *cœlum*, pālantes*que pŏlo stellas.* Virg.

Rem. 6. The subject-accusative after verbs of *saying, showing,* and *believing*; as, *dīco, nĕgo, trādo, fĕro, mĕmŏro, narro, nuntio, pĕrhĭbeo, prōdo, scrībo, dē-monstro, ostendo, arguo, crēdo, pŭto, existīmo*, and the like, and also after *jŭbeo, vĕto*, and *prŏhĭbeo*, is regarded also as the accusative of the *object* after these verbs; and hence such verbs are used also in the passive, the accusative of the active voice becoming, as usual, the nominative of the passive. This is especially the case when their subject is indefinite; as, *Dīcunt* (they or people say) *me vĭrum prŏbum esse*, or *dīcor vir prŏbus esse.* So, *Vĕtāmur hoc făcĕre*, instead of, *Nos hoc făcĕre vĕtant.* Instead also of the impersonal *vĭdĕtur* (it appears) followed by the infinitive with its subject-accusative, it is common to say personally, *vĭdeor, vĭdēris*, etc., with the infinitive; as, *vĭdeor errasse*, it appears that I have erred.

25

INFINITIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES.

§ 273. When the particle *that*, in English, introduces a clause denoting a *purpose*, *object*, or *result*, it is a sign of the subjunctive in Latin, and is to be expressed by *ut*, etc.; but otherwise it is usually the sign of the accusative with the infinitive. Cf. §§ 262 and 272.

1. (*a.*) Verbs of *endeavoring* and *resolving* take after them the infinitive and more rarely the subjunctive, when the subject remains the same; but when the subject is changed, they take the subjunctive only.

NOTE 1. Such are *stătuo, constĭtuo, dēcerno, tento, lăbōro, păro, mĕdĭtor, cūro, nītor, contendo, consĭlium căpio, ănĭmum* or *in ănĭmum indūco.* Cf. § 271, N. 1. After *ŏpĕram do,* I exert myself, *id, hoc,* or *illud ăgo,* I endeavor, *nĭhil antīquius hăbeo* or *dūco quam,* nothing is of more importance to me, and *video* for *cūro,* the subjunctive is almost exclusively used.

(*b.*) Verbs of *effecting* are construed with *ut* or *ne* and the subjunctive.

NOTE 2. Such are *făcio, effĭcio, perfĭcio, ēvinco, pervinco, impĕtro, assĕquor, consĕquor,* etc. But *făcĕre* 'to effect' occurs in Cic. Brut. 38, in connection with the accusative and infinitive passive.

NOTE 3. Făcio with *ut* is also used as a periphrasis for the indicative; as, *Invītus quĭdem* fēci, ut *L. Flāmĭnium e sĕnātu ējĭcĕrem,* for *invītus ējēci.* Cic.—*Fac,* 'suppose' or 'granting,' and *effĭcĕre,* 'to prove,' take the accusative with the infinitive; but the passive *effĭcitur,* 'it follows,' takes also the subjunctive. —*Făcĕre,* 'to introduce' or 'represent,' is joined with a present or perfect participle; as, *Lælium et Scĭpiōnem* făcĭmus admīrantes. Cic. In the passive the accusative also with the infinitive is found, there being no present participle; as, Isocrătem *Plăto* laudāri făcit *a Sŏcrăte.* Cic.

2. Verbs signifying *to request, to demand, to admonish, to advise, to encourage, to command,* and the like, both when the subject remains the same and when it is changed, are followed by the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne,* and only rarely by the infinitive.

NOTE 4. (*a.*) Such are *rŏgo, ōro, prĕcor, pĕto; posco, postŭlo, flāgĭto; mŏneo, admŏneo, commŏneo, hortor, cŏhortor, exhortor, suādeo, persuādeo, instĭtuo,* (I instruct), *impello, cōgo, mando, præscrībo, ēdīco, dēcerno, lēgem do, censeo, perpello, excĭto, incĭto, impĕro,* etc.; as, *Te non hortor sōlum, sed ĕtiam ōro,* ut *tōta mente in rempūblĭcam* incumbas. Cic.

(*b.*) In the poets and later prose writers the infinitive more frequently follows those verbs without any difference of meaning. The poets even use the infinitive to express a purpose; as, *Prōteus pĕcus ēgit altos* vīscĕre *montes.* Hor.

(*c.*) *Nuntio, scrībo, mitto,* and even *dīco,* are followed by the subjunctive, when they imply an injunction or intention that something should be done; as, *Hæc* ut făcias, scrībo. Cic.

(*d.*) *Jŭbeo* and *vĕto* commonly take the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive with or rarely without *ut.* Sometimes, with the infinitive, the person to whom the command is given is omitted, especially when it is either obvious from the nature of the command or indefinite; as, *Castra mūnīre jŭbet,* scil. *mīlites.* Cæs. *Lex recte făcĕre jŭbet,* scil. *hŏmines.* Cic. With the subjunctive the dative of the person sometimes follows *jŭbeo;* as, *Brĭtannĭco jussit, exsurgĕret.* Tac.—*Impĕro* is sometimes followed by the accusative with the infinitive passive; and so also is *censeo,* I vote, or, I ordain. The latter is often construed with the participle in *dus* with *esse* expressed or understood; as, *Carthāgĭnem dēlendam censeo.*

(e.) *Mŏneo* and *admŏneo,* 'I remind,' and *persuădeo,* 'I convince,' take the accusative with the infinitive.

3. (a.) In the *oratio oblīqua,* the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, is exchanged for that of the subjunctive, to denote possibility, liberty, duty, etc.; as,

Virginius ūnum Ap. Claudium lēgum expertem esse aiēbat: respĭcĕrent *tribūnal hŏmĭnes castellum omnium scĕlĕrum.* Liv.

(b.) On the contrary, when the subjunctive has been used after a verb of requesting, commanding, etc., the construction often passes into that of the accusative with the infinitive; the verb of saying being considered as implied in the verb of requesting, etc.; as, *Orābat ne sē ut parrĭcīdam lĭbĕrûm* āversārentur: *sĭbi* vītam *fĭlĭæ suâ cārĭōrem* fuisse, *si....* Liv. Cf. § 270, R. 2, (b.)

4. (a.) Verbs which denote *willingness, unwillingness, permission,* and *necessity,* commonly take the infinitive, or the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive.

NOTE 5. Such are *vŏlo, nōlo, mālo, opto, permitto, pătior, sĭno, concēdo, lĭcet, prŏhĭbeo, ŏportet,* and *nĕcesse est.* Cf. § 271, R. 4. *Vŏlo ut* is used to express a strong emphasis. *Nōlo* is not construed with the subjunctive.

(b.) An infinitive passive without a subject is sometimes used with *ŏportet;* as, *Non ŏportuit* rĕlictas, scil. *esse ancillas.* Ter. *Ut ut ĕrat,* mansum *tămen ŏportuit,* scil. *esse.* Id. *Non pŭtābant de tāli vĭro suspĭciōnĭbus ŏportēre* jūdĭcāri. Nep.

(c.) Some other verbs which regularly take the accusative with the infinitive after them, are occasionally followed by the subjunctive.

5. *Quod,* 'that,' commonly with the indicative, introduces a substantive clause containing the explanation or ground of the predicate or of some other word in the principal clause.

REMARK. The subjunctive follows *quod* in those cases only in which the clause expresses the view or sentiment of some other person than the writer or speaker. Cf. § 266, 3.

Quod is used:—

(1.) After such expressions as *bĕne, măle, prūdenter făcio; bĕne, măle fit; ĕvĕnit, accĭdit,* and the like; *prætĕreo, mitto;* and generally *adde, accēdit,* etc.; as, *Bĕne făcis,* quod *me adjŭvas.*

(2.) To introduce the explanation of a noun, pronoun, or pronominal adverb in the principal clause; as, *Magnum bĕnĕfĭcium est nātūræ,* quod *nĕcesse est mŏri.*

(3.) After verbs signifying *an affection of the mind,* and the *outward expression of such feeling;* and also after verbs of *praising, censuring, accusing,* and *thanking.*

NOTE 6. Such are *gaudeo, dēlector, grātum,* or *jūcundum est mĭhi, angor, dŏleo, ægre, mŏleste,* or *grăvĭter fĕro, succenseo, pænĭtet, mĭror, admīror, glŏrior, grātŭlor, grātias ăgo, quĕror, indignor,* and others of similar meaning; as, *Scīpio sæpe* quĕrēbātur, quod *omnĭbus in rēbus hŏmĭnes dīlĭgentĭōres essent, ut,* etc. Cic. *Gaudeo* quod *te* interpellāvi. Id. *Quod* spīrātis, quod *vōcem mittĭtis,* quod *formas hŏmĭnum habētis,* indignantur. Liv. *Cato* mīrāri *se* aiēbat, quod *non rīdēret hăruspex, hăruspĭcem quum vĭdēret.* Cic.

NOTE 7. After those verbs which express the feeling of joy, grief, etc.; as, *gaudeo, dŏleo, mĭror,* the accusative with the infinitive is more commonly found, but those which denote the outward expression of such feeling are more commonly construed with *quod;* but sometimes this distinction is reversed. *Grātŭlor* is commonly joined with *quod.*

NOTE 8. A purely objective proposition is expressed by *quod* only when it depends upon *addo*, (generally in the imperative *adde*), or upon *făcio* joined with an adverb; as, Adde quod *pŭbes tibi crescit omnes.* Hor. Adde huc quod *mercem sine făcis gestat.* Id. Fēcit hūmānĭter *Licĭnius,* quod *ad me vespĕri vēnit.* Cic. In all other cases the infinitive is employed in purely objective propositions.

6. By the infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, a proposition is expressed as a *thought,* so that it resembles an abstract noun ; by *quod,* with the indicative or the subjunctive, it is represented simply as a *fact.* To the latter is frequently joined *hoc, id, illud, istud,* or *huc,* etc.; as, Illud *quŏque nōbis accēdit incommŏdum,* quod *M. Jūnius ăbest.* Cic. Huc *accēdēbat,* quod, etc. Sall. *Quod* generally refers to past time, and hence it is preferable to say, *Grātissĭmum mĭhi est,* quod *ad me tua mănu scripsisti;* but with the infinitive, *Grātissĭmum mĭhi est* te *bĕne* vălēre.

(*a.*) *Quod,* with the indicative, in the sense of *as to,* or *with regard to,* is used at the beginning of a sentence, especially in letters, in repeating an expression of a person for the purpose of answering it; as, *Quod autem me Agămemnŏnem æmŭlāri pŭtas, fallĕris.* Nep. *Quod scrībis te velle scīre, qui sit reipŭblĭcæ stătus : summa dissensio est.* Cic. Sentences thus introduced by *quod* are in no grammatical connection with the verb that follows them. See § 206, (14.)

(*b.*) *Quod* is used in explanatory or periphrastic propositions which refer to a preceding demostrative pronoun, as *hoc, id,* etc., unless such pronoun be added pleonastically, in the nominative or accusative, to verbs governing the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Mĭhi quĭdem videntur hŏmĭnes* hac *re maxĭme belluis præstāre,* quod *lŏqui possunt.* Cic.

NOTE 9. The construction of the infinitive resembles, in the following particulars, that of a noun in the singular number and neuter gender :—

(*a.*) Like a noun, it may have an adjective or pronoun agreeing with it; as, Tōtum hoc phĭlŏsŏphāri *displicet.* Cic. *Quum* vivĕre ipsum *turpe sit nōbis.* Id. *Me* hoc ipsum nĭhil ăgĕre *dēlectat.* Id. Meum intellĭgĕre *nullā pecuniā vendo.* Petr. See § 205, R. 8.

(*b.*) It may be followed by a limiting genitive; as, Cūjus *non* dīmĭcāre *fuit* vincĕre. Val. Max.

(*c.*) It may be either the subject or object of a verb. See §§ 209, R. 3, (5,) and 229, R. 5. It may also be used after neuter verbs, like an accusative, depending on a preposition understood; as, *Te* accēpisse *meas lĭtĕras gaudeo.* Ter. See §§ 232, (2,) and 273, 5.

(*d.*) It is also used like a predicate-nominative; as, *Vidēre est* perspĭcĕre *alĭquid.* Cic. See § 210.

(*e.*) It may, like a genitive, limit the signification of an adjective or noun. See § 270, R. 1.

(*f.*) It may, like an accusative, depend on a preposition; as, *Aristo et Pyrrho* inter *optĭme* vălēre *et grăvissĭme* ægrōtāre, *nĭhil prorsus dīcēbant intĕresse.* Cic. *Quod crīmen dīcis* præter ămasse *meum?* Ovid. *Invĕniet nil sĭbi lēgātum,* præter plōrāre. Hor.

(*g.*) It is used also like an ablative; as, *Audĭto rēgem in Sicĭliam* tendĕre. Sall.

(*h.*) Sometimes, also, especially in the poets, it denotes a purpose, like a participle in *dus,* (see § 274, R. 7.); as, *Lōrīcam dōnat* hăbēre *viro.* Virg.; or like a dative of the end, (see § 227.)

PARTICIPLES.

§ **274.** 1. Participles are followed by the same cases and constructions as their verbs ; as,

Quīdam, poëta *nōminātus*, A certain one, called a poet. Cic. *Cătŭlōrum oblīta leœna*, The lioness forgetful of her whelps. Virg. *Făventes rēbus Carthāginiensium*, Favoring the interests of the Carthaginians. Liv. *Tendens ad sīdĕra palmas.* Virg. *Accūsātus rei căpītālis.* Cic. *Prīmā dicte* mīhi *summā dīcende Cămēnā.* Hor. Omĭna *doctus.* Stat. Cāsus *ăbies vīsūra mărīnos.* Id. *Cărĭtūri* ardōre *montes.* Ovid. *Parcendum est* tĕnĕris. Juv. *Utendum est* ætāte. Ovid. L. *Brūtus* arcens rĕdĭtu tўrannum, *in prœlio concĭdĭt.* Cic.

2. The present, perfect, and future active participles, denote respectively an action which is present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verb with which they are connected; as,

Sĭmul hoc dīcens *attollit se.* Virg.   *Tum ad Thraseam in hortis* ăgentem *mĭssus est.* Tac. *Turnum* fŭgientem *hæc terra* vĭdēbĭt? Virg. *Qui* missus *ăb Argis Ĭtălā* consēdĕrat *urbe.* Id. *Lămia mūnĕre œdīlĭtātis* perfunctus, *pĕtĭt prœtūram.* Cic. *Jussus cum fĭde pœnas luam.* Hor. *Jŭvĕnis mĕdios* mŏrĭtūrus *in hostes irruit.* Virg. *Pĕrĭtūrus injēcit sēse in agmen.* Id. *Illa tibi* ventūra *bella expēdiet.* Id.

NOTE. The participle expresses the action or state of the verb, and also marks its complete or incomplete state or condition. Cf. § 144, 1–3. Except, however, in deponent verbs, the Latin language has no active participle denoting a completed action, equivalent to the English ' having written,' nor any passive participle denoting a state of suffering still going on, equivalent to the English present participle ' being loved.'

REMARK 1. The present participle, particularly that of the verb *eo*, sometimes denotes that which is about to be done; as, *Interclūsit hiems, et terruit Auster* euntes, ... as they were on the point of going. Virg. *Nec nos via fallit* euntes. Id.

REM. 2. (*a.*) The present participle, also, sometimes denotes a purpose; as, *Ibant*, ōrantes *vĕniam*,....to sue for favor.... Virg. *Eurўpŷlum* scītantem *ōrācŭla Phœbi mittĭmus.* Id.   (*b.*) It is also used to express a state or condition, where, in English, a substantive is employed with a preposition; as, *ignōrans*, from ignorance; *mĕtuens*, from fear; *consŭlātum pĕtens*, in his suit for the consulship; *omne mălum nascens fŭcile opprĭmĭtur*,—in its origin.

REM. 3. (*a.*) The perfect participle passive, especially in the poets, often denotes the result of a past action, and thus supplies the place of a present participle passive; as, *Nŏtus ĕvŏlat pĭceā* tectus *cālīgĭne*....covered with pitchy darkness. Ovid. Cf. Virg. Æn. 1, 480; 2, 277; 4, 72, 589; 5, 113, 708; 6, 335; Georg. 1, 204. It is often to be translated by a present active participle; as, *Mănu pectus* percussa *dĕcōrum, flāventesque* abscissa *cŏmas*, i. e. *percŭtiens, abscindens.* Virg. Tunsæ *pectŏra palmis.* Id. So, also, *sŏlĭtus, ausus, fīsus*, and the perfect participles of deponent verbs; as, *Longum* canĕns sŏlāta *lăbōrem.* Id. *Vox auditur fractos sŏnĭtus* īmĭtāta *tŭbārum.* Id. *Dīvĭtĭācus Cæsărem* complexus, *obsĕcrāre cœpit.* Cæs. Concrētos *sanguĭne crīnes gĕrens.* Virg. Tonsis *in vallĭbus*, i. e. quæ tondentur. Id.

(*b.*) The perfect participle of a preceding verb is often used in a succeeding clause, to express the completion of an action; as, *Exercĭtum* fundit *fŭgatque*, fūsum *persĕquĭtur.* Liv.   This idiom frequently occurs in Ovid.

REM. 4. *Hăbeo*, with perfect participles denoting *knowledge* and *determination*; as, *cognĭtum, perspectum, perceptum, comprēhensum, explōrātum, stătūtum, constĭtūtum, dēlĭbĕrātum, persuāsum* mĭhi *hăbeo*, etc., forms a periphrasis, like the passive verb in English, and equivalent to *cognōvi, perspexi, percēpi*, etc., instead of the verb of the participle; as, *Clōdii ănĭmum* perspectum or cognĭtum *hăbeo* ; for *perspexi*, etc., I perceive, know. *Persuāsum mĭhi hăbeo* and *persuāsissĭmum hăbeo* are used only in the neuter gender and with an accusative with the infinitive in the sense of *mĭhi persuāsi* or *persuāsum mĭhi est.* When *hăbeo* with any other participle than those above indicated is used, it expresses more than the ordinary perfect active; as, *Quod me hortāris ut absolvam;* hăbeo absŏlūtam *suāve ĕpos ad Cæsărem;* i. e. I have it ready. Cic. *Do, reddo, cūro,*

těneo, possǐdeo, and *missum fǎcio,* are sometimes so construed with participles; as, Missam *iram fǎciet,* for *mittet.* Ter. *Hostes* victos *dǎre,* for *vincěre.* Sall.

REM. 5. (*a.*) The passive participles may supply the place of a verbal noun in *io* or *us,* the perfect being employed to represent an action as completed, and the future when it is conceived as still incomplete; as, *Ante Rōmam* condǐtam, Before the building of Rome. Cic. *Consǐlia urbis* dēlendæ, Plans for the destruction of the city. Id. See § 275, II. With the limitations about to be made in regard to the nominative, this construction is used in all the cases, and even when they are governed by the prepositions, *ad, ante, ob, post, propter; ab* and *ex;* as, *Hæ lǐtěræ* rěcǐtātæ *magnum luctum fēcērunt,* The reading of this letter. Liv. *Tǎrentum* captum, The taking of Tarentum. *Ob* rěceptum *Hannǐbǎlem,* On account of the reception of Hannibal. *Sibi quisque* cæsi *rēgis expětēbat dēcus,* The glory of killing, or, of having killed the king. *Propter Africam* dǒmǐtam. Eutrop. *Ante Epǎmǐnondam* nātum. Nep. *Post Christum* nātum. *Ab* condǐtā *urbe ad* lǐběrātam. Liv. The oblique cases only of participles in *dus* are used in this manner as the nominative denotes necessity, (see Rem. 8,) and even the perfect participle is not thus used in the nominative by Cicero.

(*b.*) The neuter of the perfect passive participle without a noun is used by Livy, as the subject of a proposition; as, Tentātum *per dictātōrem, ut ambo pǎtricǐi consǔles creārentur, rem ad interregnum perduxit:* i. e. the attempt, or the fact of the attempt being made by the dictator. Compare a similar use of this participle in the ablative, § 257, R. 9, (1.) (*c.*)

(*c.*) The English ' without ' with a verbal substantive; as, ' without writing, without having waited,' etc., is expressed in Latin by means of a negative noun, adjective or participle connected with a participle; as, *Cæsar exercǐtum numquam per insidǐōsa itǐněra duxit,* nǐsi perspěcǔlātus *lǒcōrum sǐtus,* without having examined the localities. This form occurs often with the ablative absolute; as, *Athēnienses* non exspectāto *auxǐlio adversus ingentem Persārum exercǐtum in prœlium egrědiuntur,* without waiting for assistance. So, nullā præstǐtūtā *die,* Without fixing any time. Cic. *Misěrum est* nǐhil perfǐcientem *angi.* Id.

REM. 6. (*a.*) The participle in *rus,* especially with verbs of motion, often denotes intention or purpose; as, *Ad Jǒvem Ammōnem pergit* consultūrus *de ǒrīgǐne suā,* He goes to Jupiter Ammon, to consult respecting his origin. Just.

(*b.*) It is also used where in English a clause connected by *since, when, although,* etc., is employed; as, *Plūra* lǒcūtūros *ǎbīre nos jussit,* When or although we intended to say more. *Hercǔlem Germāni, ǐtūri in prœlium cǎnunt.* Tac. Hence it is sometimes used, though not by Cicero, to express the inference from a hypothetical proposition; as, *Egrědǐtur castris Rōmānus, vallum* invāsūrus, *ni cǒpǐa pugnæ fǐěret.* And with the repetition of the preceding verb; as, *Dědit mǐhi quantum maxǐme pǒtuǐt,* dātūrus *amplǐus, si pǒtuisset,* i. e. ac *dědisset amplǐus.* Plin. Ep.

REM. 7. (*a.*) The participle in *dus,* also, denotes a purpose passively, when joined with verbs signifying *to give, to deliver, to agree for, to have, to receive, to undertake,* etc. Such are *do, trādo, tribuo, attrǐbuo, mando, mitto, permitto, concēdo, redǐmo, condūco, lǒco, hǎbeo, accǐpio, suscǐpio, rělinquo, cūro, dēposco, rǒgo;* as, *Testāmentum tibi trādǐt* lěgendum, He delivers his will to you to read. Hor. *Attrǐbuit nos* trǔcīdandos *Cěthēgo.* Cic. *Quod* ūtendum *accēpěris, reddǐto.* Id. *Cōnon mūros dǐrǔtos a Lўsandro* rěfǐciendos *cūrāvit,*—ordered them to be restored. Nep.

(*b.*) But the same meaning may be expressed actively by means of *ad* and the gerund; as, *Cæsar oppǐdum* ad dǐrǐpiendum *mǐlǐtǐbus concessit.*—The poets sometimes use the infinitive active for the same purpose; as, *Trīstǐtiam et mětus trādam prǒtervis in mǎre Caspǐum* portāre *ventis.* Hor. In prose such use of the infinitive is of exceedingly rare occurrence; as, *Biběre dǎre.* Cic.

REM. 8. (*a.*) The participle in *dus*, when agreeing with the subject of a sentence, has the signification of *necessity* or *propriety;* sometimes, though rarely, except in later writers, that of *possibility;* as,

Is věněrandus *a nōbis et* cōlendus *est,* He should be worshipped and honored by us. Cic. Dēlenda *est Carthāgo,* Carthage must be destroyed. Cato. *Hæc* spēranda *fuěrunt.* Virg. So with *est* used impersonally; as, *Utrum pāce nōbis an bello esset* ūtendum. Cic.

(*b.*) Sometimes, also, when not agreeing with the subject of a sentence, it has this signification; as, *Facta narrābas* dissīmūlanda *tĭbi,* You were relating facts which you should have concealed. Ovid. *A. L. Brūto princĭpe hūjus maxĭme* conservandi *gěněris et nōmĭnis.* Cic.

REM. 9. The participle in *dus,* in its oblique cases, supplies the place of a present participle of the passive voice, to denote a continued or incomplete action; as, *Occŭpātus sum in lĭtěris scrībendis,* in writing letters; literally, in letters which are being written. See § 275, II.—So, also, in the poets both in the nominative and oblique cases; as, *Trīginta magnos* volvendis *mensĭbus orbes impěrio explēbit.* Virg. Volvenda *dies.* Id. Cf. Volventĭbus *annīs.* Id.

REM. 10. After participles in *dus,* the person by whom a thing must be done, is put in the dative, but in a few passages even of Cicero it is found in the ablative with *ab.* See § 225, III.

REM. 11. The neuter of the participle in *dus,* joined with a tense of *esse* in the periphrastic conjugation (see § 184, 3,) retains the signification of necessity; as, *Audendum est,* We must venture. In early writers and sometimes also in the poets, an accusative of the object is joined with this neuter, if the verb is transitive; as, *Nunc* pācem *ōrandum, nunc*—arma *rěpōnendum, et* bellum *exĭtiāle căvendum.* Sil. But in classical Latin such accusative is generally changed to the nominative, and the participle is made to agree with it in gender and number. Thus, instead of *virtūtem laudandum est,* we usually find *virtus laudanda est.* The accusative in this connection is used by Cicero in only two passages. *Utendum est* with the ablative occurs more than once in Cicero; as, *Quum suo cuĭque* jūdĭcio *sit ūtendum.*

. REM. 12. In classical prose the participle in *dus* never has the signification of *possibility,* except when joined with *vix;* as, *Vix optandum nōbis vidēbātur.* Cic. *Vix ěrat crēdendum,* i. e. *vix crēdi pŏtěrat.* Later writers use it in this sense with negative particles, and at a later period it was used with still more frequency in the sense of possibility as well as in that of necessity.

3. (*a.*) A participle is often employed, instead of a verb, in a conditional, explanatory, adversative, relative, or other dependent clause; as,

Cūrio, ad fŏcum sĕdenti (as he was sitting) *magnum auri pondus Samnītes attŭlērunt.* Cic. *Trĭdui viam* prōgressi, *rursus rěvertērunt;* for, *quum prōgressi essent.* Cæs. *Diŏnȳsius tȳrannus, Sȳrăcūsis* expulsus, *Cŏrinthi pŭěros* docēbat. Cic. *Diŏnȳsius, cultros* mětuens *tonsōrios, candenti carbōne sĭbi ădūrēbat căpillum.* Id. *Risus interdum ĭta rěpente ērumpit, ut eum* cŭpientis *těnēre něqueāmus.* Id. *Cĭcōniæ* abĭtūræ *congrěgantur in lŏco certo.* Plin.

NOTE 1. If the participle refers to a noun not contained in the leading proposition, it is put with that noun in the ablative absolute. See § 257, R. 3.

NOTE 2. (*a.*) The English clauses most frequently expressed in Latin by means of participles are such as are connected by relatives or by *as, when, after, although, since, because,* etc.; as, *Nēmo observat lūnam nĭsi* labōrantem. Sen. *Ut ŏcŭlus, sic anĭmus, se non* vĭdens, *alia cernit,*—though not perceiving itself. Cic. *Servĭlius Ahāla Spūrium Mælium, regnum* appětentem, *intěrēmit,*—because he was aspiring to the sovereignty. Cic.—(*b.*) When a participle is connected with a relative or interrogative it can only be translated by a circumlocution; as, *Non sunt ea bŏna dīcenda,* quĭbus abundantem *lĭcet esse mĭserrĭmum,*—which one may possess in abundance, and still be very miserable. Cic. *Sěnātus absurdum esse dīcēbat, ignōrāre rēgem,* quid spěrans *aut* pětens *věněrit,*—with what hope or request he had come. Liv.

(*b.*) When two verbs are in English connected by *and*, and the actions denoted by them are regarded as simultaneous, one of them may be expressed in Latin by the present participle; as, He sits and holds his lute, *Ille* (*Arīon*) *sēdens cĭthăram tĕnet.* Ovid. *Simul hoc* dīcens *attollit in ægrum se fémur.* Virg. i. e. *hoc dīcit* et *attollit.* But if one of the actions precede the other, the perfect participle must be used; as, Cæsar attacked and defeated the enemy, *Cæsar hostes* aggressus *fūgāvit.* Submersas *obrue puppes,* i. e. *Submerge* et *obrue.* Virg.—When the English clause would be connected by *although*, the participle is often followed by *tămen.* Later writers in such case join the particles *quamquam, quamvis, ĕtiam* and *vel* with the participle itself; as, *Cæsărem mīlites, quamvis* rĕcūsantem *ultro in Afrĭcam sunt sĕcūti.* Suet.; and these are sometimes retained in the ablative absolute.—It is only in late Latin that participles are sometimes used in describing persons as possessing certain attributes, e. g. *adstantes, audientes,* for *ii qui adstant, audiunt,* i. e. the bystanders, hearers.

(*c.*) A participle is used with verbs signifying to *represent* and *perceive*, especially to *see* and *hear*, when the object is described or perceived in a particular state; as, *Apelles pinxit Alexandrum Magnum fulmen* tĕnentem. Plin. In English the *infinitive* is often joined with verbs of seeing and hearing; as, *Audīvi te cănentem,* I heard you sing. *Audīvi te cănēre,* would be, I heard that you sung. *Vĭdēmus Pŏlўphēmum vastā se mōle* mŏventem. Virg.

Note 3. In many cases, for want of a perfect participle active, and a present participle passive, this construction cannot be used. Thus, *quum āmāvisset* cannot be exchanged for a participle corresponding with the English *having loved.* As the perfect participles of deponent verbs, however, have an active signification, they admit of the participial construction. The want of a perfect active participle may also be supplied by the perfect passive participle in the ablative absolute. See § 257, R. 5.

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

§ **275.** I. Gerunds are governed like nouns, and are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

Mĕtus pārendi sĭbi, Fear of obeying him. Sall. *Parcendo* victis, By sparing the vanquished. Liv. *Effĕror stŭdio* patres *vestros vĭdendi,* I am transported with a desire of seeing your fathers. Cic. *Pĕtendi* consŭlātum *grātiā.* Sall. *Vĕnit ad rĕcĭpiendum* pecūnias. Varr.

Remark 1. The gerund is the same in form as the oblique cases of the neuter singular of participles in *dus,* but it has the meaning of the active voice. It is sometimes translated by the present participle with a preposition, and sometimes by a present infinitive active; as, *Consilium Lăcĕdæmŏnem* occŭpandi, A design of occupying, or to occupy, Lacedæmon. Liv.

Rem. 2. The gerund is sometimes, though rarely, used in a passive sense; as, *Spes* restĭtuendi *nulla ĕrat,*—of being restored. Nep. *Athēnas* ērŭdiendi *grātiā* missus,—for the purpose of being instructed. Just. *Ante dŏmandum.* Virg. *Ades ad* impĕrandum. Cic.

Rem. 3. The gerund is in its nature a verbal noun, having only the genitive, dative, ablative, and, after a preposition, the accusative. In its signification it corresponds with the English present participle when used as a verbal noun. Hence, in the oblique cases, it supplies the place of a declinable present infinitive active; but in the accusative there is this difference between the infinitive used as an accusative and the gerund, that the infinitive has simply the power of an abstract noun, whereas the gerund expresses a real action; as, *Multum intĕrest inter dăre* et *accĭpĕre.* Sen. *Non sōlum ad discendum prōpensi sŭmus, sed ĕtiam ad dŏcendum.* Cic.

II. When the *object* of an active verb is to be expressed, the participle in *dus* is commonly used in preference to the gerund; the object taking the case in which the gerund, if used, would have been put, and the participle agreeing with it.

Thus, to express 'the design of writing a letter,' which, with the aid of the gerund, would be represented in Latin by *Consĭlĭum scrībendī ĕpistŏlam*, the participle in *dus* is commonly substituted for the gerund: and since, in this example, the gerund, (*scrībendī*) is in the genitive, the rule requires that, in substituting the participle for the gerund, the object of the gerund (*ĕpistŏlam*) should also be put in the genitive, and that the participle (*scrībendus*) should agree with it in gender, number, and case. Hence with the participle the expression is, *Consĭlĭum scrībendæ ĕpistŏlæ*. Between the two forms of construction there is no difference of signification. So, *Consĭlia urbis dēlendæ* (Cic.), for *urbem dēlendī*, Plans for destroying the city. *Rĕpărandārum classĭum causā* (Suet.), for *rĕpărandī classes*. Perpĕtiendo lăbōri *idōneus*. Colum. *Ad* dēfendendam Rōmam *ab* oppugnandā Căpuā *dūces Rōmānos abstrăhĕre*. Liv.

REMARK 1. The same construction is used with the future passive participles of *ūtor, fruor, fungor, pŏtior*, and rarely of *mĕdeor*, as these verbs were originally followed by the accusative; as, *Ætas ad hæc* ūtendā *idōnea*. Ter. *Justĭtiæ* fruendæ *causā*. Cic. *In mūnĕre* fungendo. Id. *Hostes in spem* pŏtiundōrum castrōrum vēnĕrant. Cæs. *Aquæ sălūbritāte* mĕdendisque corpŏrĭbus *nōbĭles*. Vell.

REM. 2. When a participle is thus used for a gerund, it is called a *gerundive*, and is usually translated like a gerund. The gerundive cannot be substituted for the gerund, where ambiguity would arise from the gender not being distinguishable. It should therefore not be used when the object of the gerund is a neuter pronoun or adjective; as, *Alĭquid făciendī rătĭo* (Cic.), not *ălicūjus*. *Artem et* vēra *et* falsa *dĭjŭdĭcandī* (Id.), not *vērōrum dĭjŭdĭcandōrum:* because it would not be known whether *ălicūjus* and *vērōrum* were masculine or neuter. It is to be remarked, also, that the change of the gerund into the gerundive is less frequent in some writers than in others.

III. Examples of the construction of gerunds, in each of their cases, have been already given, among other nouns, under the heads *Genitive, Dative, Accusative*, and *Ablative*. The following remarks specify in what connections they are used: and when it is said that the gerundive is governed in any of the cases like the gerund, it will of course be understood of the noun which is limited by a gerundive.

REMARK 1. The genitive of gerunds and gerundives may follow either nouns or relative adjectives; as,

Amor hăbendi. Cic. *Patriam spes vĭdendi*. Virg. *Nam hăbet nātūra, ut ăliārum omnium rērum, sic* vivendi *mŏdum*. Cic. *Barbăra consuĕtūdo hŏmĭnum immŏlandōrum*. Id. *Postrēmo Cătĭlĭna* dissĭmŭlandi *causā aut* sui expurgandi, *in* sĕnātum vēnit. Sall. *Inĭta sunt consĭlĭa urbis* dēlendæ, *cīvium* trŭcīdandōrum, *nōmĭnis Rōmāni* exstinguendi. Id. *Vēnandi stŭdiōsi*. Cic. *Certus eundi*. Virg. *Insuētus nāvĭgandi*. Cæs. *Pĕrītus cīvitātis rĕgendæ*. Nep.

(1.) The nouns after which these genitives most frequently occur are *ămor, ars, causa, consĭlĭum, consuĕtūdo, cōpĭa, cŭpĭdĭtas, dēsĭdĕrĭum, dĭffĭcultas, fīnis, făcultas, forma, grātĭa, illĕcebra, lĭbīdo, lŏcus, licentia, mŏdus, mātĕrĭa, mos, occāsĭo, ōtĭum, pŏtestas, rătĭo, spătĭum, spes, stŭdĭum, tempus, ūsus, vĕnĭa, vis, vŏluntas.*

NOTE 1. With these and other substantives the infinitive also may be used, when with a tense of *sum* they form a periphrasis for a verb which is followed by the infinitive, or supply the place of an adjective of which the infinitive is the subject; as, *Quĭbus ŏmnia hŏnesta atque inhŏnesta* vendĕre *mos ĕrat*, With whom it was a custom, or, who were accustomed. Sall. *Tempus est* abīre, It is time, i. e. *tempestīvum est*, it is proper to go.

(2.) The relative adjectives, which most frequently take after them these genitives, are such as denote *desire, knowledge, remembrance,* and their contraries; as, *ărĭdus, cŭpĭdus, stŭdĭōsus, pērītus, impĕrītus, insuētus, certus, conscius, ignārus, rŭdis,* etc. See § 213, R. 1, (3.)

NOTE 2. With the relative adjectives the infinitive is also joined poetically.

(3.) Instead of an accusative after the gerund, or a genitive plural with a gerundive, a noun or pronoun in the genitive plural is sometimes joined with the gerund; as, Exemplōrum *ēlĭgendi pŏtestas,* instead of *exempla ēlĭgendi,* or, *exemplōrum ēlĭgendōrum.* Cic. Eārum rērum *infĭtiandi rătĭo.* Id. *Făcultas* agrōrum *condōnandi.* Cic. *Nōmĭnandi* istōrum *ĕrĭt cōpĭa.* Plaut.

(4.) The pronoun *tui* and also the plurals *vestri* and *sui,* even when feminine, are joined with the masculine or neuter form of the gerundive in *di;* as, *Quŏniam* tui vĭdendi *est cōpĭa.* Plaut. *Non vĕreor, ne quis hoc me* vestri adhortandi *causā magnĭfĭce lŏqui existĭmet.* Liv. *In castra vēnērunt* sui purgandi *causā.*— With the demonstrative pronouns, *ējus, hŭjus, illĭus,* the participle usually agrees, but in two passages of Terence *ējus,* though referring to a woman, has the participle in *di,* not in *dæ;* as, *Ego* ējus *vĭdendi cŭpĭdus rectā consĕquor.* Ter. *Tui* in the first example and *ējus* in the last are feminine.

(5.) By a Greek idiom the gerund and gerundive, after the verb *sum,* are sometimes found in the genitive denoting a *tendency* or *purpose,* with no noun or adjective on which they can depend; as, *Rēgium impĕrĭum inĭtio* conservandæ libertātis *fŭĕrat.* Sall. Sometimes *esse* in some form is to be supplied; as, *Quæ postquam glōrĭōsa mŏdo, nĕque belli patrandi cognōvit,* scil. *esse.* Id. *Causā* or *grātiā* may sometimes be supplied. In some other cases, also, the word on which the gerund in *di* depends is not expressed, and the gerund seems to be used instead of the infinitive; as, *Mănĕat prōvinciālĭbus pŏtentiam suam tāli mŏdo* ostentandi, scil. *făcultas.* Tac. *Quum hăbĕrem in ănĭmo* nāvĭgandi, scil. *prōpŏsĭtum.* Cic.

REM. 2. The dative of gerunds and gerundives is used after adjectives which govern a dative (§ 222), especially after those which signify *usefulness* or *fitness;* and also after certain verbs and phrases, to denote a *purpose;* as,

Charta empŏrētĭca est ĭnūtĭlis scrībendo. Plin. Căpessendæ *reĭpūblĭcæ hăbĭlis.* Tac. *Ut nec triumvĭri* accĭpiundo, *nec scrībæ* rĕf ĕrundo *suffĭcĕrent.* Liv. *Lŏcum oppĭdo* condendo *căpĕre.* Id. *Non fuit consĭlĭum agrum* cŏlendo aut vēnando *intentum ætātem ăgĕre.* Sall. *Tĭbĕrĭus quăsi firmandæ vălĕtūdĭni in Campāniam concessit.* Tac. *Quum* solvendo *ære ăliēno rĕspūblĭca non esset.* Liv. *Quum* solvendo *cīvĭtātes non essent,*—were insolvent. Cic.

(1.) The verbs and phrases upon which this dative most frequently depends are, *Stŭdēre, intentum esse, tempus impendĕre, tempus consūmĕre* or *insūmĕre, ŏpĕram dăre, suffĭcĕre, sătis esse, deesse, esse,* signifying *to serve for, to be adequate to,* and, in later writers, on verbs of motion.—The dative of the gerund after *sum* is usually supposed to depend on *ĭdōneus* understood; but see § 227, R. 3.

(2.) The dative of the gerundive, denoting a purpose, is also used after names of office; as, *Dĕcemvĭri* lēgĭbus scrībendis, i. e. the ten commissioners for drawing up a code of laws. Liv. So, *Cŏmĭtia* creandis dĕcemvĭris. Id. *Triumvĭros* agro dando *creat.* Id.

(3.) A purpose is more commonly expressed by *ad* and the accusative of the gerund, or by a clause with *ut,* than by the dative; as, *Pĕcus* ad vescendum *hŏmĭnĭbus apta.* Cic.

REM. 3. The accusative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *ad,* to, or *inter,* during or amid, and sometimes *ante, circa,* or *ob;* as,

Ad pœnĭtendum *prŏpĕrat, qui cĭto jūdĭcat.* Pub. Syr.   *Inter bĭbendum,* While drinking. Just.   *Ad tŏlĕrandos făcĭlius* lăbōres. Quint.   *Ad castra făcienda.* Cic.   *Ob absolvendum.* Id.

NOTE. The construction of the gerundive instead of the gerund almost invariably occurs here when the object of the gerund is to be expressed.

REM. 4. The ablative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *a, (ab), de, e, (ex),* or *in;* or it is used without a preposition, as the ablative of cause, manner, or means; as,

Aristŏtĕlem non dēterruit a scrĭbendo. Cic.   *Ex assentando.* Ter.   *Non vĭdeor* a dēfendendis hŏmĭnĭbus *discēdĕre.* Cic.   *Crescit* eundo. Virg.   *Rem quærunt* mercātūris făciendis. Cic.   *Ōrātiōnem Lătīnam* lĕgendis nostris *effĭcies plēniŏrem.* Id.

NOTE 1. This ablative also occurs, though rarely, after *pro* and *cum;* as, *Pro răpŭlando.* Plaut.   *Cum lŏquendo.* Quint.

NOTE 2. Generally with the ablative of the means, and always with the ablative after a preposition, the gerund, when its object is to be expressed, is changed to the gerundive. In a few passages the ablative of the gerundive is differently construed; as, *Nullum offĭcium* rēfĕrendă grātiă *măgis nĕcessārium est,* quam grātiæ *rĕlātiōne grātiæ.* § 256. Cic.   *Nec jam* possĭdendis *pūblĭcis* agris *contentos esse.* § 244. Liv.   *Is fĭnis fuit* ulciscendă *Germānĭci morte,*—in avenging the death of Germanicus. Tac.; where the ablative seems to imply time. § 253.

SUPINES.

§ **276.** Supines, like gerunds, are verbal nouns, having no other cases except the accusative and ablative singular. In certain connections they supply the place of the present infinitive; the supine in *um* having an active and the supine in *u* a passive signification. As in the case of gerunds, we are to regard their construction both as verbs and as nouns. As verbs we are to notice their government, as nouns, their dependence.

I. Supines in *um* are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

Non Grāiis servītum mātrĭbus *ībo,* I shall not go to serve Grecian matrons. Virg.   *Te id* admŏnĭtum *vĕnio.* Plaut.

II. Supines in *um* follow verbs of motion, and serve to denote the *purpose* of the motion; as,

Cŭbĭtum discessĭmus. Cic.   *Ire* dējectum *mŏnŭmenta rēgis.* Hor.   *Lēgāti vēnērunt* questum *injūrĭas, et res* rĕpĕtītum. Liv.   *Quum* spectātum *lūdos īret.* Nep.   So after participles; as, *Patriam* dēfensum *rĕvŏcātus.* Nep.   Spectātum *admĭssi.* Hor.

NOTE. The construction of the supine in *um,* considered as a noun, is analogous to that of names of places in answer to the question 'whither?' (§ 237), the notion of *purpose* arising from its verbal character.

REMARK 1. Supines in *um* sometimes follow verbs which do not express motion; as, Do *fīliam nuptum.* Ter.   *Vos ultum injūrias* hortor. Sall.

REM. 2. The supine in *um* with *eo* literally signifies ' I go to do a thing,' and hence ' I intend,' or, ' am going to.' Instances of this use are found in Plautus and Terence and in the prose writers later than Cicero; as, *Mea Glȳcĕrium, quid ăgis? cur te* īs perdĭtum? Why are you going to destroy yourself? Plaut.   *Bŏnōrum præmia* ēreptum eunt. Sall.   With *eo* the supine in *um* often forms a periphrasis equivalent to the same mood and tense of the verb from which the

supine is formed; as, *Ne bŏnos omnes* perdītum eant (Sall.), for *perdant*. *Ereptum eunt* (Id.), for *ērĭpiunt*. *Ultum īvit* (Tac.), for *ultus est*. Ultum īre *injūrias festīnat*, i. e. *ulcisci*. Sall.

Rem. 3. The supine in *um* most frequently occurs with the infinitive *īrī*, with which it forms the future infinitive passive; as, *Brūtum* vīsum īrī *a mē pŭto*. Cic. In this construction the accusative properly depends upon the supine, and *īrī* is used impersonally; 'I suppose that I am going to see Brutus.' § 184, 2, (a.) Its notion of futurity is derived from the proper signification of the active voice, as *perdītum īrī*, to go to destroy, the idea of intending passing easily into that of futurity.

Rem. 4. But to express a purpose Latin writers in general prefer using a gerund or gerundive in the accusative with *ad* or in the genitive with *causā* or *grātiā*, a subjunctive clause with *ut* or *qui*, a present or future active participle, and sometimes poetically an infinitive. See § 275, R. 1, 2: §§ 262, 264, 274, and 271.

III. The supine in *u* is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful, agreeable, easy* or *difficult, worthy* or *unworthy, honorable* or *base*, and a few others; as,

Mīrābĭle dictu! Wonderful to tell, *or* to be told! Virg. *Jūcundum cognĭtu atque audītu*, Pleasant to be known and heard. Cic. *Res factu făcĭlis*, A thing easy to be done. Gell. *Incrēdĭbĭle mĕmŏrātu*. Sall. *Turpia dictu*. Cic. *Optĭmum factu*. Id.

Note. The principal supines in *u* in common use are *audītu, cognĭtu, dictu, factu, inventu, mĕmŏrātu* and *nātu*, which occurs in the expressions, *grandis, mājor, mĭnor, maxĭmus*, and *mĭnĭmus nātu*. In *magno nātu*, of an advanced age, and *maxĭmo nātu fīlius*, the eldest son, *nātu* is the ablative of a verbal substantive, since neither gerunds nor supines are joined with adjectives.

Remark 1. The principal adjectives, after which the supine in *u* occurs, are *affābĭlis, arduus, asper, bŏnus, deformis, dignus, indignus, dulcis, dūrus, făcĭlis, diffĭcĭlis, fœdus, grăvis, hŏnestus, horrendus, incrēdĭbĭlis, jūcundus, injūcundus, magnus, mĕmŏrābĭlis, mollis, prōclīvis, pulcher, rārus, turpis*, and *ūtĭlis*.

Rem. 2. The supine in *u* is used also after the nouns *fas, nĕfas*, and *ŏpus;* as, *Hoc fas est dictu*. Cic. *Nĕfas dictu*. Ovid. *Dictu ŏpus est*. Ter.—In the following examples it follows a verb: *Pŭdet dictu*. Tac. Agr. 32. *Dictu fastīdienda sunt*. Val. Max. 9, 13, 2.

Rem. 3. As the supine in *u* is commonly translated by a passive form, it is placed under the passive voice; but, in many cases, it may with equal or greater propriety be translated actively. As a noun, its construction may be referred to the ablative of limitation. § 250.

Rem. 4. (a.) Instead of the supine in *u*, an infinitive, a gerund or gerundive with *ad*, or a verbal noun in the ablative, and sometimes in the dative or accusative, may be used; as, *Ardua imĭtātu, cĕtĕrum* cognosci *ūtĭlia*. Val. Max. *Illud autem făcĭle ad* crēdendum *est*. Cic. *Opus* proscriptiōne *dignum*. Plin. *Aqua* pōtui *jūcunda*. Id. *Făcĭlior ad* intellectum *atque* imītātiōnem. Quint. With *ŏpus est* the perfect passive participle is often used instead of the supine in *u ;* as, *Opus est* mātūrāto, There is need of haste. Cf. § 243, R. 1.

(b.) The construction with *ad* and the gerund; as, *res făcĭlis ad intellĭgendum ;* or with *sum* and the infinitive active; as, *făcĭle est invĕnīre*, is used by the best writers after *făcĭlis, diffĭcĭlis*, and *jūcundus*. The most common construction of *dignus* is with *qui* and the subjunctive, (§ 264, 9), but the poets and later prose writers have joined it with the infinitive passive.

ADVERBS.

§ **277.** I. Adverbs modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and sometimes of other adverbs ; as,

Bĕne mŏnes, You advise well. Ter. *Fortissĭme urgentes,* Most vigorously pressing on. Plin. *Măle narrando.* Ter. *Longe dissĭmĭlis.* Cic. *Valde bĕne.* Id.

REMARK 1. Adverbs may also modify nouns, when they are used as adjectives or participles, and accordingly denote a quality, or when a participle is understood. They are also joined to adjective pronouns, when their adjective-character predominates; and sometimes limit the meaning of a preposition; as, *Pŏpŭlus lāte rex,* for *lāte regnans,*—ruling far and wide. Virg. *Nĭhil admŏdum,* Nothing at all. Cic. *Hŏmo plāne noster,*—entirely ours, that is, devoted to us. Id. *Homērus plāne ōrātor.* Id. *Admŏdum puella.* Liv. *Lāte tўrannus.* Hor. *Grăvĭbus* süperne *ictĭbus conflictābantur,* i. e. *sŭperne accĭdentĭbus.* Tac. *Multārŭ̄a* circa *cĭvĭtātum,* i. e. neighboring cities. Liv.

REM. 2. (*a.*) Most of the modifications made by adverbs may also be made by means of the various cases of nouns and adjectives, and many modifications may be made by these, for expressing which no adverbs are in use. In general those limitations which are most common can be expressed by adverbs; as, *săpĭenter* for *cum săpĭentiā; hic* for *in hoc lŏco; bĕne* for *in bŏno mŏdo; nunc* for *hoc tempŏre.*—(*b.*) The following are examples of other parts of speech used adverbially, viz. *Nĭhil,* 'in no way'; *nonnĭhil,* 'in some measure'; *quidquam,* 'at all'; *ălĭquid,* 'somewhat'; *quid?* 'why?'

REM. 3. A negative adverb, modifying another negative word, destroys the negation; as,

Non părēre nŏluit, He was not unwilling to obey. Nep. *Haud ignāra măli,* Not ignorant of evil. Virg. *Haud nĭhil est,* It is something. Ter. Nec *hoc ille* non *vĭdit,* And this he clearly perceived. Cic. So, *nonnulli,* some; *nonnumquam,* sometimes. *Non,* before a negative word, commonly heightens the affirmative sense, while it softens the expression; as, *Hŏmo non indoctus,* i. e. *hŏmo sāne doctus.* *Non sĕmel,* i. e. *sæpĭus; non ignōro, non nescio, non sum nescĭus,* I know very well. *Qui mortem in mălis pŏnit,* non *pŏtest eam* non *tĭmēre,*—must needs fear it. Cic.

REM. 4. When the subject and predicate of a proposition are both modified by negative words, and also when the predicate contains two negatives, the proposition is affirmative; as,

Nēmo non vĭdet, Every one sees. Cic. *Nĕque hœc* non *ēvēnērunt,* And this indeed took place. So, if both the antecedent and the predicate of a relative clause are negative, the proposition is affirmative; as, *Nēmo est, qui nescĭat,* Every body knows. Cic.

REM. 5. (*a.*) But in the case of *non* followed by *ne*—*quĭdem,* the two negatives do not destroy each other; as, *Non fŭgĭo* ne *hos* quĭdem *mōres:* and when the negative leading proposition has subordinate subdivisions with *nĕque* —*nĕque, nēve*—*nēve,* or *non*—*non,* these negative particles are equivalent to *aut* —*aut;* as, Non *me carmĭnĭbus vincet,* nec *Orpheus,* nec *Lĭnus.* Virg. Nēmĭnem, non *re,* non *verbo,* non *vultu dēnĭque offendi.* Cic. Nullĭus *rei* nĕque *præs,* nĕque *manceps factus est.* Nep.

(*b.*) In a few passages, however, two negatives in Latin, as in Greek, strengthen the negation, and this exception appears to have been derived from the language of common life; as, *Jūra te* non *nŏcĭtūram hŏmĭni* nēmĭni. Plaut.

(*c.*) *Nēmo, nullus, nĭhil,* and *numquam* have a different sense according as the *non* is placed before or after them; as, *Non nēmo,* some one; *nēmo non,* every one; *non nulli,* some; *nullus non,* every; *non nĭhil,* something; *nĭhil non,* every thing; *non numquam,* sometimes; *numquam non,* at all times. So, *nusquam non,* every where, but instead of *nonnusquam, ălĭcŭbĭ* is used.

REM. 6. (*a.*) *Non* is sometimes omitted after *non mŏdo* or *non sōlum,* when followed, in a subsequent clause, by *ne quĭdem,* if both clauses have the same verb, and if the verb is contained in the second clause; as,

Mihi non mŏdo īrasci, sed ne dŏlēre quĭdem impūne lĭcet, which is equivalent to *Mihi non mŏdo non īrasci, sed ne dŏlēre quĭdem impūne lĭcet,* or *Mĭhi non mŏdo īrasci, sed dŏlēre quĭdem impūne non lĭcet,* Not only am I not permitted to be angry, but not even to grieve with impunity. Cic. *Quum sĕnātui non sōlum jŭvāre rempūblĭcam, sed ne lūgēre quĭdem licēret.* Id.

(*b.*) *Non* is also rarely omitted after *non mŏdo* when followed by *sed* or *vērum* with *ĕtiam,* and also after *vix*; as, *Qui non mŏdo ea fŭtūra tĭmet, vērum ĕtiam fert, sustĭnetque præsentia,* Who not only does *not* fear.... Cic. *Hæc gĕnĕra virtūtum non sōlum in mōribus nostris, sed vix jam in libris rĕpĕriuntur,* These virtues are not only not found in life, but scarcely in books. Id.

REM. 7. *Fácĭle,* in the sense of *undoubtedly, clearly,* is joined to superlatives, and words of similar import; as, *Vir ūnus tōtius Græcĭæ* fácĭle doctissĭmus. Cic. *Hōmo rĕgiōnis illius virtūte* fácĭle princeps. Id.

REM. 8. Sentences are often united by means of an adverb which is repeated before each of the connected clauses; as, *mŏdo—mŏdo,* and *nunc—nunc,* (sometimes –sometimes); as, *Mŏdo hoc, nŏdo illud dĭcĭt; mŏdo huc, mŏdo illuc vŏlat.* Instead of the second *mŏdo* other particles of time are sometimes used; as, *ălĭquando, nonnumquam, interdum, sæpius, tum* or *deinde.—Partim—partim,* 'partly—partly,' is sometimes used with a genitive or the preposition *ex,* in the sense of *ălii—ălii,* as a nominative in all the genders; as, *Quum partim e nōbis ita tĭmĭdi sunt, ut, etc., partim ĭta rĕpūblĭcā āversi, ut, etc.—Sĭmul—sĭmul,* 'as well—as,' like *nunc—nunc,* is not found in Cicero.—*Quā—quā* is equivalent to *et—et.— Tum—tŭm* is used sometimes like *mŏdo—mŏdo,* sometimes like *partim— partim;* as *Erumpunt sæpe vitia ămĭcōrum tum in ipsos ămīcos, tum in ăliēnos.* Cic. *Hæc (bĕnĕfĭcia) tum in ūnĭversam rempūblĭcam, tum in singŭlos cīves confĕruntur.* Id. ·

REM. 9. *Quum—tum* is equivalent to *et—et,* except in assigning a greater importance to the second part: hence it must be translated by ' both—and especially,' ' not only—but also,' or ' but more particularly.' Sometimes additional weight is given to the second part by means of *vēro, certe, ĕtiam, quŏque, præcipue, imprīmis* or *maxĭme.* This use of *quum—tum* seems to have had its origin in the use of *quum* with the subjunctive and often with the indicative in the protasis, followed by *tum* in the apodosis. When *quum* followed by *tum* serves to express the opposition between single words which have the same verb, it is to be regarded as a complete adverb; as, *Fortūna quum in rĕlĭquis rēbus, tum præcipue in bello plūrĭmum pŏtest.* Sometimes the verb stands in the first part of the sentence; as, *Quum omnis arrŏgantia ŏdiōsa est, tum illa ingĕnii atque ēlŏquentiæ multo mŏlestissĭma.* *Tum* is sometimes repeated in the second part of the sentence; as, *Quem păter mŏriens quum tūtōrĭbus et prŏpinquis, tum lēgĭbus, tum æquĭtāti măgistrātuum, tum jūdĭciis vestris commendātum pŭtāvit.* Cic. Sometimes the gradation is, *quum—tum—tum vēro.*

REM. 10. *Non mŏdo—sed ĕtiam* (or *non sōlum,* or *non tantum—vērum ĕtiam*) generally expresses the transition from less important to more important things, like the English ' not only—but (also)'. The transition from greater to smaller things is expressed by *non mŏdo—sed,* without the *ĕtiam,* which we render in English by ' I will not say—but only,' and in Latin, too, we may say *non dĭcam* or *non dico—sed;* as, *Quid est ĕnim mĭnus non dico ōrātōris, sed hŏmĭnis.*

REM. 11. *Tam—quam* expresses a comparison in degree; as, *Nēmo tam multa scripsit,* quam *multa sunt nostra.* With superlatives they are rendered into English by ' the—the ' and comparatives; as, *Vĕternōsus* quam *plūrĭmum bĭbit,* tam *maxĭme sĭtit,* The more he drinks, the more he thirsts. Cato. *Quam quisque pessĭme fēcĭt,* tam *maxĭme tūtus est.* Sall.— *Tam—quam quod maxĭme* signifies, ' as much as possible.'— *Non tam—quam* signifies, ' not so much—as,' or ' less—than '; as, *Prōvincia* non tam *grātiōsa et illustris,* quam *nĕgōtiōsa ac mŏlesta.* Cic.

REM. 12. *Non mĭnus—quam* and *non măgis—quam* are equivalent to *æque— ac,* ' as much as,' but in *non măgis—quam* the greater weight is attached to the affirmative clause beginning with *quam;* as, *Alexander* non *dūcis* măgis quam

mīlĭtis mūnĭa exsĕquēbātur, Alexander performed as much the service of a soldier as that of a commander. In this connection *plus* frequently supplies the place of *măgis*.

(*a.*) *Sic* and *ita* are demonstrative adverbs corresponding to the relative *ut*. The restrictive meaning of *ita* (see § 191, R. 5.), is sometimes made more emphatic by the addition of *tămen*. *Tantus* is used in a like restrictive sense; as, *Præsĭdĭi tantum est, ut ne mūrus quĭdem cingi possit*, i. e. 'only so much.' Cæs.

(*b.*) *Ut—ita* or *sic* places sentences on an equality. They may sometimes be translated 'although—still,' or 'indeed—but.'—The adverb *ut*, 'as,' sometimes takes the signification of the conjunction *quod*, 'because'; as, *Atque ille, ut semper fuit ăpertissĭmus, non se purgāvit.* Cic.

REM. 13. In an enumeration, *prīmum, deinde, tum, dēnĭque* are commonly preferred to the numerals, *prīmum, sĕcundo*, (for *sĕcundum* is not often used), *tertium, quartum*, etc., unless the strict succession of the numbers is required. Sometimes *tum* is used once or twice instead of *deinde*, or the series is extended by *accēdit, huc adde*, etc. Sometimes *dēnĭque* is followed by *postrēmo* to form the conclusion of a series, but often *dēnĭque* without the other adverbs concludes a series, and is then equivalent to 'in short' or 'in fine.' See Cic. Cat. 1, 5.

REM. 14. *Mĭnus* is often used for *non*; as, *Nonnumquam ea, quæ prædicta sunt*, mĭnus *ēvĕnĭunt*. Cic.—So, *si mĭnus—at*, 'if not—yet;' and *sin mĭnus*, 'but if not,' without a verb, after a preceding *si*; but with *si non* the verb is repeated. —The English 'how little' is in Latin *quam non*; and 'so little,' *ĭta non* or *ădeo non*; as, *ădeo non cūrābat, quid hŏmĭnes de se lŏquĕrentur.*

REM. 15. *Nunc* always expresses the time actually present, or the time to which a narrator transfers himself for the purpose of making his description livelier. Thus in speaking of the present time we may say, Nunc *prīmum somnia me ēlūdunt* or *ēlūsērant;* but in a narrative we must say, *Somnia tunc prīmum se dĭcēbat ēlūsisse.* Compare the use of *hic* and *ille*. See § 207, R. 23, (*c.*)

REM. 16. The conjunction *dum*, 'while,' when added to negatives, becomes an adverb, signifying 'yet'; as, *nondum*, 'not yet'; *necdum*, 'and not yet'; *nullusdum*, 'no one yet'; *nĭhildum*, 'nothing yet.' Hence *vixdum* signifies 'scarcely yet'; as, *Vixdum ĕpistŏlam tuam lēgĕram, quam ad me Curtius vēnit.* Cic.— So, also, the conjunction *nĭsi*, by omitting its verb or uniting it with the leading verb, acquires, after negatives and negative questions, the sense of the adverb 'except,' which is generally expressed by *prætĕrquam* or the preposition *præter*, and must be so expressed when no negative precedes. Hence the expression 'except that' may be rendered either by *nĭsi quod* or *prætĕrquam quod*.—After *nĭhil ălĭud* we may use either *nĭsi* or *quam, nĭsi* referring to *nĭhil* and *quam* to *ălĭud*. Hence *nĭhil ălĭud nĭsi* signifies 'nothing further,' or 'nothing more,' and *nĭhil ălĭud quam*, 'nothing else,' or 'no other thing but this.'

REM. 17. *Ut*, 'as,' in interposed clauses, such as *ut ŏpĭnor, ut pŭto, ut censeo, ut crēdo*, is frequently omitted. *Crēdo*, used in this manner often takes an ironical sense.

PREPOSITIONS.

II. 1. See respecting the construction of prepositions with the accusative, § 235; and with the ablative, § 241. See, also, for the different meanings of prepositions, § 195, and for their arrangement, § 279, 10.

2. Two prepositions must not be joined in Latin, as they sometimes are in English, with the same noun; as, to speak *for* and *against* a law; or, I have learned this *with*, and, to some extent, *from* him. These sentences may be thus expressed in Latin: *pro lēge et contra lēgem dĭcĕre; hæc cum eo, partim ĕtiam ab eo dĭdĭci.* Those dissyllabic prepositions only, which are sometimes used as adverbs, may follow another, without being joined with a case; as, *Quod aut sĕcundum nātūram esset, aut contra.* Cic. *Cis Pădum ultrăque.* Liv Cæsar reverses the order, *Intra extrăque mūnĭtiōnes.* B. Civ. 3, 72.

3. When nouns mutually dependent upon a preposition are in apposition, when they constitute an enumeration without a connective, and when connected by copulative, disjunctive, adversative, or comparative conjunctions, the preposition is not repeated, unless such nouns are to be distinguished from each other, or are emphatic; as,

Quid dīcam de thēsauro *omnium rērum*, mĕmōriā? *Hoc appārĕt* in bestiis, vŏlucrĭbus, nantĭbus, agrestĭbus, cĭcŭrĭbus, fĕris, *ut se ipsæ dīligant.* Cic. *Sæpissĭme* inter me *et* Scīpiōnem *de āmīcĭtiā dissĕrēbātur.* Id. *Quid făcĕres si* in ălĭquam dŏmum villamve *vēnisses?* Id. *Nĭhil* per īram *aut* cŭpīdĭtātem *actum est.* Id. *Thĕmistŏcles non mĭnus* in rēbus gĕrendis *promptus quam* excō-gĭtandis *ĕrat.* Nep.

4. The monosyllabic prepositions *ab, ad, de, ex,* and *in* are often used before each of two nouns connected by *et,* etc., especially if the qualities denoted by such nouns are to be considered separately. If the nouns are separated by *et—et, nec—nec,* etc., the prepositions must be repeated; as, *Ut eōrum* et in *bellīcis* et in *civĭlĭbus offĭciĭs vĭgeat industria.* Cic.—*Inter* is frequently repeated by Cicero after *intĕresse,* and other writers repeat it after other verbs also; as, *Quid* intersit inter *pŏpŭlārem—cīvem, et* inter *constantem, sĕvērum et grăvem.* Cic. *Certātum* inter *Ap. Claudium maxĭme fĕrunt et* inter *P. Dĕcium.* Liv.

5. (*a.*) In poetry a preposition is occasionally omitted with the first of two nouns, and put with the second only; as, *Quæ nĕmŏra, aut quos ăgor in spĕcus,* (Hor.) for, in *quæ nĕmŏra aut in quos spĕcus ăgor.* So, Hor. Ep. 2, 1, 25.—(*b.*) An ellipsis of a preposition with the relative pronoun sometimes occurs, together with that of the verb belonging to the preceding demonstrative; as, *In eādem ŏpīniōne fui, quā rĕlĭqui omnes,* (Cic.), properly *in quā rĕlĭqui omnes fuĕrunt.*

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ **278.** Copulative, disjunctive, and other coördinate conjunctions, connect similar constructions.

NOTE 1. Clauses are similarly constructed, which are mutually independent, whose subjects and verbs are in the same case and mood, and which have either no dependence or a similar dependence on another clause.

NOTE 2. (*a.*) Words have a similar construction, when they stand in the same relation to some other word or words in the sentence. Hence,

(*b.*) Conjunctions connect the same cases of nouns and pronouns, dependent, if the cases are oblique, upon the same government; the same number, case, and gender of adjectives, belonging to the same noun; the same mood of verbs, either independent, or alike dependent; adverbs qualifying the same verbs, adjectives, etc.; and prepositions on which depends the same noun or pronoun; as, *Concĭdunt venti, fŭgiuntque nūbes,* The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. Hor. *Lŏcum, quem* et *non cŏquit sol,* et *tangit vos.* Varr. *Lūdi dĕcem per dies, facti sunt,* nĕque *res ulla prætermissa est.* Cic. *Vĭdes, ut altā stet nĭve candĭdum Sōracte,* nec *jam sustĭneant ŏnus silvæ lălōrantes, gĕlūque flūmĭna constĭtĕrint ăcūto.* Hor. *Intellĭgĭtis* et *ănĭmum ei præsto fuisse,* nec *con-sĭlium dĕfuisse.* Cic. *Gĕnĕri ănĭmantium omni est a nātūrā trĭbūtum, ut se tueātur, dēclīnet*que *ea, quæ nŏcĭtūra vĭdeantur.* Id. *Aut* nēmo, *aut* Căto *săpiens fuit.* Id. *Pulvis* et *umbra sŭmus.* Hor. *Si tu* et *Tullia vălētis,* ĕgo et Cĭcĕro *vălēmus.* Cic. *Aggĕre jacto* turrĭbus*que constĭtūtis.* Cæs. *Clārus* et *hŏnōrātus vir,* An illustrious and honorable man. Id. *Cæsar Rĕmos* cŏhortātus, *lĭbĕrālĭterque ōrātiōne* prōsĕcūtus. Cæs. *Păter tuus, quem* cŏlui *et* dīlexi. Cic. *Belgæ spectant* in septentriōnem *et* ŏrientem sōlem. Cæs. *Nāvĭbus junctis, rătĭbus*que *complūrĭ-bus* factis. Id. *Lēge, vel tăbellas* redde. Plaut. *Allobrŏges trans Rhŏdănum* vĭcos possessiōnes*que hăbēbant.* Cæs. *Quum triumphum* ēgĕris, *censor*que *fuĕris, et* ŏbĭĕris *lēgātus.* Id. *Quum ad oppĭdum* accessisset, *castrăque ĭbi* pōnĕret. Cæs.

Ades *ănĭmo, et* ŏmitte *tĭmŏrem.* Cic.　*Ea* vĭdēre *ac* perspĭcĕre *pŏtestis.* Id. Grăvĭter *et* cōpĭöse *dixisse dīcitur.* Id. Cum *frātre an* sĭne. Id.　Cf. § 277, II. 2. *Cui carmĭna cordi, nŭmĕrosque* intendĕre *nervis.* Virg.　*Nec* census, *nec clārum* nōmen *ăvōrum, sed* prŏbĭtas *magnos* ingĕnĭumque *făcit.* Ovid.　*Phĭlŏsŏphi nĕ- gant* quemquam vĭrum *bŏnum esse, nĭsi* săpĭentem. Cic.　Glōria *virtūtem tam- quam* umbra *sĕquĭtur.* Id.

REMARK 1. Copulative conjunctions may connect either single words and phrases or entire clauses; the other conjunctions, whether coördinate or subordinate, connect clauses only.

REM. 2. Words thus connected are sometimes in different cases, though in the same construction; as, Meā *et* reĭpūblĭcæ *intĕrest.* Cic. (See § 219.)　*Sīve es* Rōmæ, *sīve* in Epīro. Id. (See §§ 221 and 254. But see also § 221, Note.)　*In Mettii descendat jūdĭcis aures, et* patris *et* nostras. Hor. See § 211, R. 3.　In like manner, *Hannĭbal non* ălĭter *vinci pŏtuit, quam* mŏrā.

REM. 3. As the subjunctive is often used for the imperative, they may be connected by coördinate conjunctions; as, Disce *nec* invĭdeas. Pers.

REM. 4. Where the purpose of the writer requires it, coördinate conjunc- tions sometimes connect independent propositions, whose verbs are in different moods; as, *Stŭpōrem hŏmĭnis, vel* dīcam *pĕcŭdis,* vĭdēte. Cic.　*Nec* sătis scio, *nec, si* sciam, *dīcĕre* ausim. Liv.

REM. 5. *Et* is used after *multi* followed by another adjective, where in English 'and' is usually omitted; as, *Multæ et magnæ arbŏres,* Many large trees. In such cases *et* supplies the place of *et is,* introducing a more accurate description. See § 207, R. 26, (c.)

REM. 6. The conjunction is often omitted; as, (*a.*) When two single words, as comprehending the whole idea, are opposed to each other, as, *vĕlim, nōlim,* whether I would or not; *maxĭma mĭnĭmă,* the greatest as well as the least; *prīma postrēma,* from the first to the last; *dignos indignos ădīre ; īre rĕdīre,* to go to and fro.　*Ædĭfĭcĭis omnĭbus pūblĭcis prīvātis, sacris prŏfānis sic* pĕpercit. Cic.　*Nam glŏriam, hŏnōrem, impĕrium bŏnus ignāvus æque sĭbi exoptant.* Sall. C. 11.

(*b.*) *Et* is very frequently omitted between the names of two colleagues; as, *Consŭles dĕclārāti sunt Cn. Pompeius M. Crassus.　P. Lentŭlo L. Triārio, quæs- tōribus urbānis.* Cic.　Sometimes, also, when the two persons are not colleagues. It is also occasionally omitted between two words in the oratorical style; as, *Adĕrant ămīci, prŏpinqua.* Id.; also with verbs; as, *Adsunt, quĕruntur Sĭcŭli.* Id. In good prose, if three or more substantives are joined, it is usual either wholly to omit the conjunction or to insert it between each.　The following may serve as an example of both cases: *Qui non mŏdo Cŭrĭis, Cătōnĭbus, Pompeiis, antīquis illis, sed his rĕcentĭbus, Mārĭis et Dĭdĭis et Cœlĭis commĕmŏrandis jăcēbant.* This is also the common practice with adjectives and verbs, and hence when *et* has not previously occurred in an enumeration of persons or things, we should not conclude the enumeration with *et ălĭi, et rĕlĭqui, et cētĕra,* etc., but should make use of the adjectives alone, *ălĭi, rĕlĭqui, cētĕra,* etc.　But though *et, ac* and *at- que* are not used alone in the third or fourth place, yet the enclitic *que* fre- quently occurs in this position; as, *Prĕcor ut ea res vōbis păcem, tranquillĭtā- tem, ōtium, concordiamque affĕrat.* Cic.　*Et* may be supplied also when two protases introduced by *si* are joined together; where we say 'if—and if,' or 'if—and.' See an example in Cic. Off. 3, 9.

(*c.*) An ellipsis of *ut* is supposed when *ne* precedes and *et, atque,* or *que* is used to continue the sentence, those copulative conjunctions in such case ob- taining the meaning of the adversative *sed ;* as, *Mŏnēre cœpit Pŏrum, ne ultĭma expĕrīri persĕvērāret, dēdĕretque se victōri.* Curt.

REM. 7. Copulative conjunctions are often used, before each of two or more connected words or clauses, in order to mark the connection more forcibly; as, Et *pĕcūnia persuădet, et grātia, et auctōrĭtas dīcentis, et dignĭtas, et postrēmo aspectus.* Quint.　*Hoc et turpe, nec tămen tŭtum.* Cic.　Nĕque *nāta est, et æterna est.* Id.　Et *tĭbi et mĭhi vŏluptāti fŏre.* Id.　Before clauses the disjunctive con-

junctions are used in a similar manner; as, *Res ipsa* aut *invītābit* aut *dĕhortābĭtur.* Id. So, also, *nunc...nunc, sĭmul...sĭmul, partim...partim, quā...quā, tum... tum, quum...tum,* are used before successive clauses.

Rem. 8. To connect different names of the same person or thing, *sīve* or *seu,* rather than *aut* or *vel,* is employed; as, *Mars sīve Māvors.* Cf. § 198, 2, (*c.*)

Rem. 9. Instead of *et* and *ut* with the negatives *nēmo, nihil, nullus,* and *numquam, nĕque* (or *nec*), and *ne* are used with the corresponding affirmative words *quisquam, ullus, umquam,* and *usquam.* But 'in order that no one' is rendered in Latin by *ne quis* and not by *ne quisquam,* see § 207, R. 31, (*a.*); as, *Hōræ quidem cēdunt, et dies, et menses, et anni:* nec *prætĕrĭtum tempus* umquam *rĕvertītur.* Cic. *Sēnātus dēcrēvit, dărent ŏpĕram consŭles,* ne quid *respūblĭca dētrĭmenti căpĕret.* Cæs.

Rem. 10. The conjunctions *ĭgĭtur, vērum, vērumtămen, sed,* and *sed tămen,* indicate a return to the construction of the leading clause, when it has been disturbed by the insertion of another clause. These conjunctions, in such connection, are usually rendered by 'I say,' and sometimes in Latin *inquam* is so used. *Nam* also is occasionally employed in this way and very rarely *ĭtăque.*

Rem. 11. *Vēro* and *autem* are frequently omitted in adversative clauses, especially in short ones; as, *Vincĕre scit Hannĭbal, victōriā ūti nescit.* Liv. This omission often occurs in describing a progress from smaller to greater things, as in Cic. Cat. 1, 1. And it is to be remarked that *non* in the second member of such adversative sentences is used without *et* or *vēro;* as, *ăliēna vitia vĭdet, sua non vĭdet.* But in unreal suppositions or ironical sentences, where the second member contains the truth, *et non* or *ac non* must be used, where we may supply 'rather'; see § 198, 1, (*c.*); as, *Quăsi nunc id ăgātur,—ac non hoc* quærātur. Cic.

INTERJECTIONS.

Respecting the construction of interjections with the nominative, see § 269, R. 13:—with the dative, § 228, 3:—with the accusative, § 238, 2:—and with the vocative, § 240.

ARRANGEMENT.

I. OF THE WORDS OF A PROPOSITION.

§ **279.**   1. In arranging the parts of a proposition in English, after *connectives,* are placed, first, the *subject* and the words which modify or limit it; next, the *verb* and its modifiers; then, the *object* of the verb; and finally, *prepositions* and the words depending upon them. This is called the *logical* or *natural* order.

2. (*a.*) In Latin, either of the four principal parts of a sentence may be placed first, and there is great freedom in the arrangement of the rest, but with this general restriction in prose, that *words which are necessary for the complete expression of a thought should not be separated by the intervention of other words.* In ordinary discourse, especially in historical writing, the following general rule for the arrangement of the parts of a sentence is for the most part observed.

(*b.*) In a Latin sentence, after *connectives,* are placed, first, the *subject* and its modifiers; then, the *oblique cases* and other words which depend upon or modify the verb; and last of all, the *verb.*

(*c.*) Hence a Latin sentence regularly begins with the subject and ends with the principal verb of its predicate; as, Dumnŏrix *grătiā et largītiŏne ăpud Sĕquănos plūrĭmum* pŏtĕrat. Cæs. But the verb is often not placed at the end of a sentence, especially if the sentence is long, or if two many verbs would be thus brought together at the end. In the familiar style, also, the verb is often placed earlier in the sentence, and in explanatory clauses it is sometimes placed at the very beginning of the proposition, in which case a conjunction is generally added.

(*d.*) It is also to be remarked, as a further modification of the general rule of arrangement, that, in sentences containing the expression of emotion, the word whose emphasis characterizes it as especially affecting the feelings, or as forming a contrast, is placed at the beginning; as, Cĭto *ārescit lacrĭma, præsertim in ălĭēnis mălis,* Quickly dries the tear, especially when shed for others' woes. Cic. Sua *vĭtĭa insĭpientes et* suam *culpam in sĕnectūtem confĕrunt.* Id.

(*e.*) If there be no *emotive* or *pathetic* word requiring prominence, the place at the end of the proposition is reserved for the *signĭficant* word, that is, the word which is to be most strongly impressed upon the understanding or memory; as, *Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partes* tres. Cæs. *Quod ante id tempus accĭdĕrat* numquam. Id. *Quod ălĭud ĭter hăbĕrent* nullum. Id. *Quæ virtus ex prŏvĭdendo est appellāta* prūdentia. Cic.

3. (*a.*) Connectives generally stand at the beginning of the clause which they introduce, and with the following this is their only position; viz. *et, ĕtĕnim, ac, at, atque, atqui, nĕque* or *nec, aut, vel, sīve, sin, sed, nam, vērum,* and the relatives *quāre, quōcirca,* and *quamobrem.*

(*b.*) Most other connectives generally stand in the first place, but when a particular word is peculiarly emphatic, this word with all that belongs to it stands first, and the conjunction follows it. *Ut,* even when there is no particular emphasis, is commonly placed after *vix, pæne,* and *prŏpe,* and also after the negatives *nullus, nēmo, nĭhil,* and the word *tantum.* In Cicero, *ĭtăque* stands first and *ĭgĭtur* is commonly placed after the first, and sometimes after several words.

(*c.*) *Autem, ĕnim,* and *vēro* (but), are placed after the first word of the clause, or after the second, when the first two belong together, or when one of them is the auxiliary verb *sum;* as, *Ille* ĕnim *rĕvŏcātus rĕsistĕre cœpit.* Cæs. *Ego* vēro vellem, *affuisses.* Cic. Incrēdĭbĭle est ĕnim, *quam sit,* etc. Id. They rarely occur after several words; as, *Cur non de integro* autem *dătum.* Id. The enclitics *que, ne, ve,* are usually subjoined to the first word in a clause; but when a monosyllabic preposition stands at the beginning, they are often attached to its case; as, Rōmam *Cāto dēmigrāvit,* in fŏrōque *esse cœpit;* and this is always the case with *a, ad* and *ob.* So, also, for the sake of euphony, *Apud quosque.* Cic.

(*d.*) *Quĭdem* and *quŏque,* when belonging to single words, are always subjoined to the emphatic word in a clause; as, *Verbo ille reus ĕrat,* re quĭdem vēro Oppiănĭcus. Cic. *Me scĭlĭcet maxĭme, sed proxĭme illum* quŏque *fĕfellissem.* Id. In negative sentences, *ne* precedes, and *quĭdem* follows, the emphatic word; as, Ne *ad Cātōnem* quĭdem *prŏvŏcābo.* Cic.— *Quĭdem* is sometimes attracted from the word to which it properly belongs to a neighboring pronoun; as, *Tibĭque persuāde, esse te* quĭdem *mĭhi cārissĭmum, sed multo fŏre cārĭōrem, si,* etc., instead of, *te cārissĭmum* quĭdem *mĭhi esse.*—Prepositions and conjunctions belonging to the word on which the emphasis rests are placed with it between *ne* and *quĭdem;* as, *Ne in fānis* quĭdem. Cic. *Ne si dŭbĭtētur* quĭdem. Id. *Ne quum in Sĭcĭlĭā quĭdem fuit.* Id.; and even *Ne cūjus rei arguĕrētur* quĭdem.— So, also, in Cicero, *non nĭsi,* 'only,' are separated; and the negative may even be contained in a verb.

(*e.*) The preceding rules respecting the position of connectives are often violated by the poets, who place even the prepositive conjunctions after one or more words of a proposition; as, *Et tu, pŏtes* nam, etc.. Hor. *Vīvos et rŏdĕret*

ungues. Id. They even separate *et* from the word belonging to it; as, *Audīre et vĭdeor pĭos errāre per lūcos.* Id. So, *Auctius* atque *dii mĕlius fēcēre.* Id. And they sometimes append *que* and *ve* neither to the first word, nor to their proper words in other connections; as, *Messallam terrā dum sĕquĭturque māri,* instead of *terrā mărīque.* Tib. In such arbitrary positions, however, these conjunctions are almost invariably joined to verbs only.

4. When a word is repeated in the same clause, so that one is opposed to, or distinguished from, the other, they must stand together; as, *Hŏmĭnes hŏmĭnĭbus maxĭme ūtĭles esse possunt.* Cic. *Equĭtes* ālii āliō *ᴅlapsi sunt.* Liv. *Lēgĭtque* vĭrum vĭr. Virg. *Mănus mănum lăvat.* Petr. So, also, the personal and possessive pronouns; as, *Sĕquĕre quo* tua te *nātūra dūcit. Suum se nĕgōtĭum ăgĕre dicunt.*

5. Words used antithetically are also placed near each other; as, *Dum* tă-cent, clāmant. Cic. *Frăgĭle* corpus ănĭmus *sempiternus mŏvet.* Id.

6. *Inquam* and often *aio,* introducing a quotation, follow one or more of the words quoted; as, *‘Non nosti quid păter,’* inquit, *‘Chrȳsippus dĭcat.’* Hor. *‘Quid,’* aio, *‘tua crīmĭna prōdis?’* Ovid. When a nominative is added to *inquit,* it usually follows this verb; as, *Mĭhi vĕro,* inquit Cotta, *vidētur.* Cic.—*Dīcit* and *dīxit* are used like *inquit* only by the poets.

7. (*a.*) The adjective may be placed before or after its noun according as one or the other is emphatic, the more emphatic word being placed before the other. When any thing is dependent on the adjective, it usually follows its noun. When a noun is limited by another noun, as well as by an adjective, the adjective usually precedes both; as, *Ulla* offĭcii *præcepta.* Cic. *Tuum* erga dignĭtātem meam *stŭdĭum.* Id.

(*b.*) Demonstratives, and the adjectives *prīmus, mĕdius,* etc., when signifying the first part, the middle part, etc., (see § 205, R. 17,) usually precede their nouns; as, *Ea res.* Cæs *His ipsis verbis.* Cic. *Mĕdia nox.* Cæs. *Rĕlĭqua Ægyptus.* Cic.

8. Monosyllables are usually prefixed to longer words with which they are connected; as, *Vĭr clārissĭmus.* Cic. *Di immortāles. Res innŭmĕrābĭles. Vis tempestātis.* Cæs.

9. (*a.*) When nouns are put in apposition, the one which explains or defines the other is generally put last, unless it is to be made emphatic; as, *Opes* irrī-tāmenta *mălōrum.* Ovid. Hence names of honors or dignities, and every thing of the nature of a title, are commonly placed after the proper name, as explanatory additions. Thus, especially, the names of changeable Roman dignities; as, *Cĭcĕro* consul; *C. Cŭriōni* trĭbūno plēbis; but also permanent appellations; as, *Ennius* pŏēta; *Plăto* phĭlŏsŏphus; *Diŏnȳsius* tȳrannus; and such epithets as *vĭr hŏnestissĭmus; hŏmo doctissĭmus.* But the hereditary title *rex* is frequently placed before the name; as, rex Dĕiŏtărus; and so the title *Impĕrātor* after it became permanent.

(*b.*) In the arrangement of the Roman names of persons, the *prænōmen* stands first, next the *nōmen* or name of the *gens,* third the *cognōmen* or name of the *fămĭlia,* and last the *agnōmen;* as, *Publius Cornēlius Scīpio Afrĭcānus.* The prænomen is usually denoted by a letter. In the imperial times the *nōmen* is often either omitted or follows as something subordinate.

10. (*a.*) Oblique cases precede the words on which they depend, but they follow prepositions; as,

Pŏpŭli Rōmāni laus est. Cic. Laudis *ăvĭdi,* pĕcūniæ *lĭbĕrāles.* Sall. Cunctis esto *bĕnignus,* nulli *blandus,* paucis *fămĭliāris,* omnibus *æquus.* Sen. *Mŏnŭ-mentum* ære *pĕrennius.* Hor. Hanc tĭbi dōno *do.* Ter.—*Ad* mĕrīdiem spectans. Cic. *Extra* pĕrīcŭlum. Id.

(*b.*) Genitives depending upon neuter adjectives are commonly placed last; as, *Incerta fortūnæ.* Liv. *Nec tĭbi plus* cordis, sed *mĭnus* ōris *inest.* Ovid.

REMARK. This rule, so far especially as it relates to genitives, is in a great degree arbitrary, as the position of the governed and governing words depends on the idea to be expressed; thus, *mors patris tui*, contrasts the death with the preceding life; but, *frātris tui mors* distinguishes this case of death from others. Hence we say, *ănĭmi mōtus*, *ănĭmi morbus*, *corpŏris partes*, *terræ mōtus.*—An objective genitive usually follows the word on which it depends; as, *ūnā signĭfĭcātĭōne* litĕrārum, by means of a single notice by letters.—When several genitives are dependent on one noun, the subjective genitive commonly precedes and the objective genitive may either precede or follow the governing noun.—The genitive dependent on *causā* or *grātiā*, 'on account of,' regularly precedes these ablatives; as, *glōriæ causā mortem ŏbīre;* ēmŏlŭmenti *sui grātiā.*

(*c.*) When a noun which is governed by a preposition, is modified by other words which precede it, the preposition usually stands before the words by which the noun is modified; as, *A prīmā lūce ad sextam hōram.* Liv. *Ad ănĭmi mei lætitiam.* Cic. *Ad bĕne beātēque vīvendum.* Id.

(*d.*) Sometimes, however, the preposition comes between its noun and an adjective or a genitive, by which the noun is modified; as, *Nullā in re.* Cic. *Justis de causis.* Id. *Suos inter æquāles.* Id. *Hanc ob causam.* Id. *Magno cum mĕtu.* Id. *Quā in urbe.* Id. *Eā in re.* Id. *Ætātis suæ cum prīmis.* Nep.—So, also, a conjunction may follow the preposition; as, *Post vēro Sullæ victōriam.*

(*e.*) *Per*, in adjurations, is often separated from its case by other words; as, *Per ĕgo te deos ōro.* Ter.—In the poets, other prepositions are sometimes separated in the same manner; as, *Vulnĕra, quæ* circum *plurīma* mūros *accēpit patrios.* Virg.

(*f.*) *Tĕnus* and *versus*, and sometimes other prepositions, (cf. § 241, R. 1,) follow their cases, especially when joined with *qui* or *hic.* This occurs most frequently with the prepositions *ante*, *contra*, *inter*, and *propter;* more rarely with *circa*, *circum*, *pĕnes*, *ultra* and *adversus;* and with still less frequency with *post*, *per*, *ad*, and *de;* as, *quam ante*, *quam contra*, *quos inter*, *quem propter*, *quos ad*, *quem ultra*, *hunc adversus*, *hunc post*, *quam circa.*—The preceding prepositions, and more rarely others also, sometimes, especially in the poets and later prose writers, follow nouns and personal pronouns. In such case, if the noun be modified by an adjective or a genitive, the preposition sometimes stands between them, and sometimes follows both; as, *Postes sub ipsos.* Virg. *Rīpæ ăpud Euphrātis.* Tac. *Māria omnia circum.* Virg. And more rarely other words intervene; as, *His accensa sŭper.* Id. *Vitiis nēmo sĭne nascĭtur.* Hor.

11. Infinitives precede the verbs on which they depend; as,

Jŭgurtha, ŭbi eos Africā dēcessisse rătus est, nĕque propter lŏci nātūram Cirtam armis expugnāre possit, mœnia circumdat. Sall. *Servīre măgis quam impĕrāre părāti estis.* Id.

12. A word which has the same relation to several words, either precedes or follows them all; as, *Vir grăvis et săpiens.* Cic. *Clărus et hŏnŏrātus vir.* Id. *In scriptōrĭbus lĕgendis et imitandis*, or *In lĕgendis imitandisque scriptōrĭbus*; but not *In lĕgendis scriptōrĭbus et imitandis.* *Quum respondēre nĕque vellet nĕque posset.* *Hăbentur et dicuntur tyranni.* *Amīcitiam nec ūsu nec rătĭōne hăbent cognĭtam.*

13. Relatives are commonly placed after their antecedents, and as near to them as possible; as,

Qui sim, ex eo, quem ad te mīsi, cognosces. Sall. *Lĭtĕras ad te mīsi, per quas grātias tĭbi ĕgi.* Cic.

14. *Quisque* is generally placed after *se*, *suus*, *qui*, ordinals and superlatives; as, *Suos* quisque *dĕbet tuērī.* Cic. *Sătis sŭperque est sibi suārum* cuīque *rērum cūra.* Id. *Sēvērĭtas ănĭmadversĭōnis infĭmo* cuīque *grātissima.* Id. *Maxĭme dĕcet, quod est cūjusque maxĭme suum.* Id. *Quisque* very rarely begins a proposition.

15. (*a*.) An adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it qualifies; but if the same word is modified by the oblique case of a noun, the latter commonly follows the adverb; as, *Măle parta* mŭle *dĭlābuntur*. Cic. *Nĭhil* tam *aspĕrum nĕque* tam *dĭffĭcile esse, quod* non *cŭpĭdĭssĭme factūri essent*. Sall.—*Impĕrium* făcĭle *iis artĭbus* rĕtĭnētur, *quĭbus ĭnĭtio partum est*. Id. *Sed* maxĭme *ădŏlescentium fămĭlĭărĭtātes* appĕtēbat. Id. *Non* tam *in bellis et in prœlĭis*, quam *in prōmĭssis et fĭde* firmĭōrem. Cic.—(*b*.) When *non* belongs to a single word of the proposition, it always stands immediately before it ; as, non *te rĕprĕhendo, sed fortūnam*. But if it belongs to the proposition generally, it stands before the verb, and particularly before the finite verb, if an infinitive depends on it; as, *Cur tantŏpĕre te angas, intellĭgĕre sāne* non possum. Instead of *non dico, nĕgo* is generally used; as, *nĕgāvit eum ădesse*.—The negatives *non, nĕque, nēmo, nullus*, when joined to general negative pronouns or adverbs, such as *quisquam, ullus, umquam*, always precede them though not always immediately; as, *nēmĭni quidquam nĕgāvit; non nēmĭni me umquam te vĭdisse*. § 207, R. 31.

Note 1. In some phrases, custom has established a certain order, which must be observed and imitated; as, *Cīvis Rōmānus, pŏpŭlus Rōmānus, jus cīvĭle, æs ălĭēnum, terrā mărĭque, Pontĭfex maxĭmus, măgister ĕquĭtum, trĭbūnus mīlĭtum, trĭbūn mīlĭtum consŭlāri pŏtestāte, Jūpĭter optĭmus maxĭmus, via Appĭa; ne quid respūblĭca dētrĭmenti căpiat*. Cic. The ablatives *ŏpĭnĭōne, spe, justo, sōlĭto*, (see § 256, R. 9), generally precede the comparative.

Note 2. Exceptions to the foregoing principles are very numerous. These may arise (*a*) from emphasis; (*b*) from poetic license; and (*c*) from regard to the harmony of the sentence. The following general rule sometimes modifies nearly all the preceding.

16. The emphatic word is placed before the word or words connected with it which are not emphatic.

Note 3. The last place is often an emphatic one, except for the verb. When the verb is neither first nor last in a proposition the word before it is emphatic. An adjective, when emphatic, commonly precedes its substantive; when not emphatic, it commonly follows it. But with the demonstrative pronouns the rule is reversed.

Note 4. The principal poetical variation in the arrangement of words consists in the separation of the adjective from its noun, and in putting together words from different parts of a proposition.

17. A sentence should not close like a hexameter verse, with a dactyl and spondee; as, *Esse vĭdētur ;* nor, in general, with a monosyllable.

18. *Hiātus* should be avoided; that is, a word beginning with a vowel should not follow a word ending with a vowel.

19. A concurrence of long words or long measures,—of short words or short measures,—of words beginning alike or ending alike,—should be avoided.

II. OF THE ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

§ **280.** A compound sentence, whose clauses are united as protasis and apodosis, or in which the leading clause is divided by the insertion of one or more subordinate clauses, is called a *period*.

1. (*a*.) In the former kind of period the protasis must precede the apodosis; as, *Quum Pausănĭas sēmĭănĭmis de templo ēlātus esset*, confestim ănĭmam efflāvit, When Pausanias had been carried out of the temple but just alive, he immediately expired. In a period of the latter kind the verb of the principal proposition is placed at the end, and the subordinate clauses between the parts of the leading clause; as, Pausănĭas, *quum sēmĭănĭmis de templo ēlātus esset*, confestim ănĭmam efflāvit, Pausanias, when he had been carried out of the temple but just alive, immediately expired. Nep.

(*b*.) A sentence, such as *Scīpio exercĭtum in Afrĭcam trăjēcit, ut Hannĭbălem ex Ĭtălĭā dēdūcĕret*, is not periodic in its structure, but it becomes so when we

say, *Scīpĭo, ut Hannĭbălem ex Ităliā dēdūcĕret, exercĭtum in Afrĭcam trājēcit.* Periods in which the subordinate clause precedes with two conjunctions; as, *Quum ĭgitur Rōmam vēnisset, stătim impĕrātōrem ădiit,* are made still more strictly periodic by placing first the conjunction which belongs to the whole, and then inserting the subordinate proposition; as, Ităque, *quum Rōmam vēnisset,* stătim impĕrātōrem ădiit.

2. (*a.*) If the verbs of the leading and dependent clauses have the same subject, or the same noun depending on them, they are commonly formed into a period; as, Antĭgŏnus, *quum adversus Sēleucum Lȳsĭmăchumque dīmĭcāret,* in prœlio occīsus est. Nep. Quem, *ut barbări incendium effūgisse ēmĭnus vīdērunt,* tēlis missis interfēcērunt. Id.

(*b.*) So, also, when the noun which depends on the verb of the leading clause is the subject of the dependent clause; as, L. Manlio, *quum dictātor fuisset,* M. Pompōnius, trĭbūnus plēbis, diem dixit. Cic.

3. When obscurity would arise from separating the leading subject and verb by dependent words or clauses, they are often placed together at the beginning or end of the sentence; as, Lātæ (sunt) deinde lēges, *non sōlum quæ regni suspĭcĭōne consŭlem absolvērent, sed quæ ădeo in contrārium vertĕrent, ut pŏpŭlārem ĕtiam făcĕrent.* Liv. The position of the leading verb is also often otherwise varied, from regard to emphasis, to avoid monotony, or to prevent its meeting with the verb of the last dependent clause; but clauses, when so arranged, do not constitute a period.

4. When one clause is interrupted by the introduction of another, the latter should be finished before the first is resumed.

5. Clauses expressing a *cause,* a *condition,* a *time,* or a *comparison,* usually precede the clauses to which they relate.

6. A short clause usually stands before, rather than after, a long one.

III. OF THE CONNECTION OF CLAUSES.

(1.) In connecting propositions, relatives, whether pronouns, pronominal adjectives, or adverbs, are often employed in order to avoid the too frequent recurrence of *et, autem,* and certain other conjunctions. Every relative may be used for this purpose instead of its corresponding demonstrative with *et*; as, *qui* for *et is, quālis* for *et tālis, quo* for *et eo,* etc. They are used also before those conjunctions which are joined with *et* or *autem* at the beginning of a proposition; as, *si, nĭsi, ut, quum,* etc. (see § 206, (14.); as, *quod quum audivissem, quod si fēcissem, quod quamvis non ignōrassem,* for *et quum hoc, et si hoc, et quamvis hoc;* or *quum autem hoc,* etc.; and, often, also, where in English no conjunction is used, and even before other relatives; as, *quod qui făcit, eum ĕgo impium jūdico,* i. e. *et qui hoc făcit,* or, *qui autem hoc făcit.* In the ablative with comparatives the relative is often used as a connective; as, *Căto,* quo *nēmo tum ĕrat prūdentior,* i. e. Cato, who was more prudent than all others.

(2.) In propositions consisting of two members, the relative pronoun is joined grammatically either to the apodosis or to the protasis; with the former in, Qui, *quum ex eo quærĕrētur, cur tam diu vellet esse in vītā,* Nihil hăbeo, inquit, quod accūsem sĕnectūtem. Cic. de Sen. 6. But is more frequent with the protasis or secondary clause; as, A quo quum quærĕrētur, quid maxĭme expĕdīret, *respondit.* Cic. Off. 2, 25. When it is thus joined with the protasis, the nominative of the demonstrative is supplied with the apodosis from another case of the relative in the protasis, as, in the preceding passage, from the ablative. But for the sake of emphasis the demonstrative may be expressed, and frequently, also, for the sake of clearness; as, *Qui nos quum a postĕrīōribus non esset rĕtentus,* Arcēsĭlas eum rĕvŏcāvit. Cic. de Fin. 2, 1. The accusative is sometimes to be supplied; as, *Qui (Hērāclĭtus) quŏniam intelligi nōluit, ŏmittāmus.* Cic. N. D. 3, 14. When the demonstrative precedes, and is followed by a proposition consisting of two members, the relative is attached to the prota-

sis, which is placed first, and not to the leading clause or apodosis; as, *Ea suāsi Pompeiō*, quĭbus ille si pāruisset, *Cæsar tantas ŏpes, quantas nunc hăbet, non hăbēret.* Cic. Fam. 6, 6.   *Nŏli adversus eos me velle dūcĕre,* cum quĭbus ne contra te arma ferrem, *Ĭtăliam rĕlĭqui.* Nep. Att. 4.

(3.) Where in English we use 'however' with the relative; as, He promised me many things, which, however, he did not perform, the Latins made use of the demonstrative with *sed* or *vērum*, or the relative alone implying the adversative conjunction; as, *multa mĭhi prōmīsit,* sed ea *non præstĭtit,* or, quæ *non præstĭtit,* but not *quæ autem* or *quæ vēro*. *Qui autem* and *qui vēro* are used however in protases, where the relative retains its relative meaning, and there is a corresponding demonstrative in the apodosis; as, *Qui autem omnia bŏna a se ipsis pĕtunt, iis nihil mălum vidēri pŏtest, quod nātūræ nĕcessitas affĕrat.* Cic. de Sen. 2.

(4.) In double relative clauses, especially where the cases are different, Cicero frequently for the second relative clause substitutes the demonstrative; as, *Sed ipsīus in mente insīdēbat spĕcies pulchrĭtūdĭnis exĭmia quædam, quam intuens,* in eūque dēfixus, *ad,* etc. for *et in quā.* Cic. Orat. 2.   And sometimes even when the cases are the same; as, *Quem Phlīuntem vēnisse fĕrunt, eumque cum Leonte dissĕruisse quædam.* Cic. Tusc. 5, 3; where *et* alone would have been sufficient.

(5.) From this tendency to connect sentences by relatives arose the use of *quod* before certain conjunctions merely as a copulative. See § 206, (14.)

(6.) *Nĕque* or *nec* is much used by Latin writers instead of *et* and a negation, and may be so used in all cases except when the negative belongs to one particular word; see § 278, R. 9.   *Nĕque* or *nec* is added to *ĕnim, vēro,* and *tămen,* where we cannot use 'and.'   To these negative expressions a second negative is often joined, in which case *nĕque ĕnim non* is equivalent to *nam; non vēro non,* to *atque ĕtiam,* a stronger *et; nec tămen non,* to *attămen.*

ANALYSIS.

§ **281.** I. 1. The analysis of a complex or a compound sentence consists in dividing it into its several component propositions, and pointing out their relation to each other.

2. In resolving a sentence into its component clauses, the participial constructions equivalent to clauses should be mentioned, and ellipses be supplied. See § 203, 4; § 274, 3; and § 257.

3. In a continued discourse the connection and relation of the successive sentences also should be specified.

Rules for the Analysis of Complex and Compound Sentences.

(1.) State whether the sentence is complex or compound. § 201, 11, 12.

(2.) If complex, (1) specify the principal and subordinate clauses. (2) Specify the class to which the subordinate proposition belongs, (§ 201, 7), and (3), its connective, and the class to which such connective belongs, (§ 201, 8 and 9.)

(3.) If compound, specify the principal propositions, with their subordinates, if any they have, as in the case of complex sentences.

II. The analysis of a proposition or simple sentence consists in distinguishing the subject from the predicate, and, in case either of them be compound, in pointing out the simple subjects or predicates of which it is composed, and, if complex, in specifying the several modifiers, whether of the essential or subordinate parts.

Rules for the Analysis of a Simple Sentence.

1. Divide it into two parts—the subject and the predicate, § 201, 1—3. If these are simple, the analysis is complete, but if either is compound:—

2. Specify the simple subjects or predicates of which the compound consists.—If either is complex:—

3. Point out the grammatical subject, and the words, phrases, etc. *directly* modifying it.

4. Point out the words, phrases, etc., which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical subject, and those which modify them, and so on successively, until the relation of each of the words composing the logical subject is specified.

5. Point out the grammatical predicate, and the words, phrases, etc., *directly* modifying it.

6. Point out the words, phrases, etc., which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical predicate, and those which modify them, and so on successively, until the relation of each of the words composing the logical predicate is specified.

PARSING.

III. Parsing consists in resolving a proposition into the parts of speech of which it is composed, tracing the derivation of each word, and giving the rules of formation and construction applicable to it.

Rules for Parsing.

1. Name the part of speech to which each word belongs, including the subdivision in which it is found.

2. If it is an inflected word:—

(1.) Name its root or crude form, and decline, compare, or conjugate it.

(2.) If it is a noun or pronoun, tell its gender, number and case:—if in the nominative or in the accusative with the infinitive, tell its verb:—if in an oblique case depending on some other word, tell the word on which its case depends.

(3.) If it is an adjective, adjective-pronoun, or participle, tell the word which it modifies.

(4.) If it is a finite verb or an infinitive with the accusative, tell its voice, mood, tense, number, person, and subject.

3. If it is a conjunction, tell its class and what it connects.

4. If it is a preposition, tell the words whose relation is expressed by it.

5. If it is an adverb, tell its class and what it qualifies.

6. Prove the correctness of each step of the process by quoting the definition or rule of formation or construction on which it depends.

NOTE. The words constituting a proposition are most conveniently parsed in that order in which they are arranged in analysis.

Examples of Analysis and Parsing.

1. *Equus currit,* The horse runs.

Analysis. This is a simple sentence: its subject is *ĕquus*, its predicate is *currit*, both of which are simple. See § 201, 1-3; § 202, 2; and § 203, 2.

Parsing. *Equus* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d decl., § 38; masc. gender, § 28, 1; third person, § 35, 2; its root is *ĕqu–*, § 40, 10; decline it, § 46; it is in the nominative case, singular number, § 35, 1, (*b.*); the subject of *currit*, § 209, (*a.*)—*Currit* is a neuter verb, § 141, II.; of the 3d conjugation, § 149, 2, from *curro;* its principal parts are *curro, cŭcurri, cursum, currĕre,* § 151, 4; it is from the first root *curr–;* give the formations of that root, § 151, 1; it is in the active voice, § 142, 1; indicative mood, § 143, 1; present tense, § 145, I.; third person, § 147; singular number, § 146; agreeing with its subject-nominative *ĕquus,* § 209, (*b.*)

NOTE. The questions to be asked in parsing *ĕquus* are such as these, Why is *ĕquus* a *noun?* Why a *common* noun? Why of the *second* declension? Why *masculine?* etc.—In parsing *currit,* the questions are, Why is *currit* a *verb?* Why a *neuter* verb? Why of the *third* conjugation? Which are the *principal parts* of a verb? Of what does the *first root* of a verb consist? What parts of a verb are derived from the *first root?* etc. The answer in each case may be found by consulting the etymological rules and definitions.

2. *Sœvius ventis ăgĭtātur ingens pīnus,* The great pine is more violently shaken by the winds. Hor.

Analysis. This also is a simple sentence:—its subject is *ingens pīnus,* its predicate *sœvius ventis ăgĭtātur;* both of which are complex, § 201, 10, § 202, 6, and § 203, 5.

The grammatical subject is *pīnus,* the pine; this is modified by *ingens,* great, § 201, 2, § 202, 2, and § 202, 6, (3.)

The grammatical predicate is *ăgĭtātur,* is shaken; this is modified by two independent modifiers, *sœvius,* more violently, and *ventis,* by the winds, § 203, II. 3, Rem., § 203, I. 1, (2), and (3.)

Parsing. *Pīnus* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d and 4th declensions, § 38 and § 99; feminine gender, § 29, 2; 3d person, § 35, 2; from the root *pīn–,* § 40, 10; (decline it both in the 2d and 4th declensions);—it is found in the singular number, § 35, 1, and the nominative case, the subject of *ăgĭtātur,* § 209, (*a.*)

Ingens is a qualifying adjective of quantity, § 104, 4, and § 205, N. 1; of the 3d decl., § 105, 1, and § 38; of one termination, § 108, and § 111; from the root *ingent–,* § 40, 10; (decline it like *præsens,* § 111, but with only *i* in the ablative, § 113, Exc. 3,);—it is found in the singular number, feminine gender, § 26, R. 4; and nominative case, agreeing with its noun *pīnus,* § 205.

Agĭtātur is an active frequentative verb, § 141, I., and § 187, II. 1; of the 1st conjugation, § 149, 2; from the first root of its primitive *ăgo,* § 187, II. 1, (*b.*); (name its principal parts in both voices, see § 151, 4; and give the conjugation of the passive voice, indicative mood, present tense, see § 156,);—it is found in the singular number, § 146; third person, § 147; agreeing with its subject-nominative *pīnus,* § 209, (*b.*)

Sœvius is a derivative adverb of manner, § 190, 2–4; in the comparative degree, from the positive *sœve* or *sœvĭter,* which is derived from the adjective *sœvus,* § 194, 1 and 2, and § 192, II. 1, and Exc. 1 and 2; modifying the verb *ăgĭtātur,* by expressing its degree, § 277.

Ventis is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d declension, § 38; masculine gender, § 46; from the root *vent–,* § 40, 10; (decline it);—it is found in the plural number, § 35, 1; ablative case, modifying *ăgĭtātur* by denoting its means or instrument, § 247.

3. *Mĭthrĭdātes, duārum et vīginti gentium rex, tŏtĭdem linguis jūra dixit,* Mithridates, king of twenty-two nations, pronounced judicial decisions in as many languages. Plin.

Analysis. This also is a simple sentence; its subject is *Mĭthrĭdātes, duārum et vīginti gentium rex,* its predicate is *tŏtĭdem linguis jūra dixit,* both of which are complex, § 201, 10, § 202, 6, and § 203, 5.

The grammatical subject is *Mĭthrĭdātes;* this is modified directly by *rex,* § 202, I. (1.)

Rex is limited by *gentium,* § 202, I. 1, (2.)

Gentium is limited by the compound addition *duārum* and *vīginti* connected coördinately by *et,* § 202, III. 3.

The grammatical predicate is *dīxit;* this is limited by *jūra* and *linguis,* the former a simple, the latter a complex addition, as it is modified by *tŏtĭdem,* § 203, I. 1, (2.) and II. 1.

Parsing. *Mĭthrĭdātes* is a proper noun, § 26, 2; of the third declension, § 38; masculine gender, § 28, 1; from the root *Mĭthrĭdāt–,* § 40, 10; genitive *Mĭthrĭdātis,* § 73, 1; (decline it in the singular number only, § 95, (*a.*);—it is found in the nominative case, the subject of *dīxit,* § 209, (*a.*)

Rex is a common noun—third declension, § 38; masculine gender, § 28, 1; from the root *rēg–,* § 40, 10; genitive *rēgis,* § 78, 2; (decline it);—it is found in the singular number—the nominative case, in apposition to *Mĭthrĭdātes,* § 204.

Gentium is a common noun from *gens*—third declension—feminine gender, § 62; from the root *gent–,* § 56, I, R. 1; genitive *gentis,* § 77, 2 and (2.); (decline it);—it is found in the plural number—genitive case, § 83, II. 3; limiting *rex* subjectively, § 211 and R. 2.

Duārum is a numeral adjective, § 104, 5; of the cardinal kind, § 117; from *duo, duæ, duo ;* from the root *du–;* (decline it, § 118, 1,)—it is found in the plural number, § 118, 2; feminine gender, genitive case, § 26, R. 4; agreeing with its noun *gentium,* § 205.

Et is a copulative conjunction, § 198, 1, connecting *duārum* and *vīginti,* § 278.

Vīginti is a numeral adjective of the cardinal kind, indeclinable, § 118, 1; limiting *gentium,* § 205.

Dīxit is an active verb, § 141, I.; of the third conjugation, § 149, 2; from *dīco,* (give the principal parts in the active voice, and its first, second, and third roots, § 150, 4, and § 171, 1;) it is formed from the second root *dix–,* (give the formations of the second root);—it is found in the active voice, § 141, 1; indicative mood, § 143, 1; perfect indefinite tense, § 145, IV. and Rem.; singular number, third person, agreeing with *Mĭthrĭdātes,* § 209, (*b.*)

Jūra is a common noun, of the third declension, from *jus,* root *jūr–,* § 56, I. R. 1. genitive *jūris,* § 76, Exc. 3; neuter gender, § 66; (decline it);—it is found in the plural number, accusative case, § 40, 8; the object of *dīxit,* § 229.

Linguis is a common noun, of the first declension, feminine gender, from *lingua,* root *lingu–,* (decline it);—found in the plural number, ablative case, after *dīxit.* § 247.

Tŏtĭdem is a demonstrative pronominal adjective, § 139, 5, (2.) and (3.); indeclinable, § 115, 4; it is in the ablative plural, feminine gender, limiting *linguis,* § 205.

4. *Pausănias, quum sēmiănĭmis de templo ēlātus esset, confestim ănĭmam efflāvit.* Nep. Paus. 4.

Analysis. This is a complex sentence, § 201, 11; consisting of two members, which are so arranged as to constitute a period, § 280, 1.

The principal proposition is, *Pausănias confestim ănĭmam efflāvit,* § 201, 5. The subordinate proposition is, *quum (is) sēmiănĭmis de templo ēlātus esset,* § 201, 6.

The leading proposition has a simple subject, *Pausănias,* § 202, 2, and a complex predicate, *confestim ănĭmam efflāvit,* § 203, 3; in which *efflāvit* is the grammatical predicate, § 203, I. 1, (2.) and (3.), and II. R. 2., and also by the adverbial clause *quum sēmiănĭmis,* etc. § 201, 6 and 7, and § 203, I. 3.

The subordinate proposition, which is connected to the leading clause by the subordinate conjunction *quum,* § 201, 9, has a simple subject, viz. *is* understood, and a complex predicate, *sēmiănĭmis, de templo ēlātus esset,* § 203, 3.— The grammatical predicate is *ēlātus esset,* § 203, 2; which is modified by *sēmiănĭmis,* § 203, I. 1, (1.), and *de templo,* § 203, I. 2, and II. Rem. 2.

Parsing.   Pausănias, a Greek proper noun, § 26, 2;—1st decl., §§ 41 and 44; masc. gender, § 28, 1; root *Pausăni-;* found in sing. num., nom. case, the subject of *efflāvit,* § 209, (*a.*)

Confestim, an adv. of time § 190, 3; limiting *efflāvit,* § 277.

Anĭmam is a com. noun of 1st decl., fem. gender, § 41; from *ănĭma,* root *ănĭm-;* (decline it);—it is found in the sing. num., acc. case, the object of *efflāvit,* § 229.

Efflāvit, an act. verb, 1st conj., from *efflo,* compounded of *ex* and *flo,* § 196, 6; (give the principal parts in the act. voice and the three roots);—it is formed from the second root; (give the formations of that root); in the active voice, ind. mood, perfect indefinite tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *Pausănias,* § 209, (*b.*)

Quum is a temporal conjunction, § 198, 10; connecting the dependent to the principal clause, § 278.

Sēmiănĭmis is a predicate adj., of the 3d decl., of two terminations, § 109; (decline it);—it is in the sing. num., masc. gend., nom. case, agreeing with *is* understood, § 210, R. 1, (*a.*)

De is a preposition, expressing the relation between *ēlātus esset* and *templo,* § 195.

Templo is a com. noun, 2d decl., neut. gend., from *templum,* root *templ-;* (decline it);—in the sing. num., abl. case, after *de,* § 241.

Elātus esset is an irregular active verb, of the third conjugation, § 179; from *effĕro,* compounded of *ex* and *fĕro,* § 196, 6; (see *fĕro* and compounds, § 172;) (give the principal parts in both voices, and the 1st and 3d roots);—it is formed from the third root, *ēlāt-,* (give the formations of that root in the passive voice); in the subjunctive mood, pluperfect tense, § 145, V.; sing. num., third person, agreeing with *is* understood referring to *Pausănias,* § 209, (*b.*)

5. Rōmāna pūbes, *sēdāto tandem păvōre, postquam ex tam turbĭdo die sĕrēna et tranquilla lux rĕdiit, ŭbi văcuam sēdem rēgiam vīdit, etsi sătis crēdēbat patrĭbus, qui proxĭmi stĕtĕrant, sublīmem raptum prŏcellā; tămen, vĕlut orbĭtātis mĕtu icta,* mœstum ălĭquamdiu sĭlentium obtĭnuit. Liv. 1, 16.

Analysis. This is a complex sentence, whose clauses constitute a period, § 280. It is composed of the following members or clauses:—

1. Rōmāna pūbes [tămen] *mœstum ălĭquamdiu sĭlentium obtĭnuit.* This is the leading clause.   The following are dependent clauses.
2. *vĕlut orbĭtātis mĕtu icta,*
3. *sēdāto tandem* păvōre,
4. *postquam ex tam turbĭdo die* sĕrēna et tranquilla lux *rĕdiit,*
5. *ŭbi văcuam sēdem rēgiam vīdit,*
6. etsi sătis *crēdēbat patrĭbus,*
7. qui proxĭmi *stĕtĕrant,*
8. *sublīmem raptum prŏcellā.*

NOTE 1. In the preceding clauses the predicates are printed in Italics.

NOTE 2. The connective of the 1st clause, is. the adversative *tămen,* which is inserted on account of *etsi* intervening between the principal subject and predicate.   The connective of the 2d clause is *vĕlut,* of the 4th *postquam,* of the 5th *ŭbi,* of the 6th *etsi,* followed by a clause constituting the protasis, and of the 7th *qui.*   The 3d and 8th clauses have no connectives.

(1.) The grammatical subject of the leading clause is *pūbes,* which is limited by *Rōmāna.*   The grammatical predicate is *obtĭnuit,* which is limited by *ălĭquamdiu* and *sĭlentium,* and also either directly or indirectly by all the dependent clauses.   *Silentium* is itself modified by *mœstum.*

The second, third, fourth, fifth, and sixth clauses are used adverbially to denote the time and other circumstances modifying the principal predicate *silentium obtĭnuit,* § 201, 7.

(2.) The second is a participial clause, equivalent to *vĕlut* (*ea* scil. *pūbes*) *orbĭtātis mĕtu icta esset*, § 274, 3, (*a*.)

(3.) The third clause is also participial, and is equivalent to *quum tandem păvor sēdātus esset*, § 257, R. 1; and hence *păvōre* represents the subject, and *sēdāto tandem* the predicate—the former being simple, the latter complex.

(4.) The grammatical subject of the 4th clause, which is connected to the leading clause by *postquam*, § 201, 9, is *lux*, which is modified by *sĕrēna* and *tranquilla*.—The grammatical predicate is *rĕdiit*, which is modified by *postquam* and *ex tam turbĭdo die*, § 203, I. 1, (3.), and II. 1.

(5.) The grammatical subject of the fifth clause is *ea* understood.—The grammatical predicate is *vīdit*, which is modified by *ŭbi* and *vācuam sēdem rēgiam*, § 203, I. 1, (3.) and II. 1.

(6.) The grammatical subject of the sixth clause also is *ea*. Its grammatical predicate is *crēdēbat*, which is modified by *sătis* and *patrĭbus*, § 203, I. (2.) and (3.), and by the 8th clause, II. 3.

(7.) The grammatical subject of the seventh clause is *qui*. Its grammatical predicate is *stĕtĕrant*, which is modified by *proxĭmi*, § 203, I. (1.) It is an adjective clause, modifying *patrĭbus*, § 201, 7 and 9.

(8.) The grammatical subject of the eighth clause, which has no connective, § 20*ł*, Rem., is *eum*, i. e. *Rōmŭlum*, understood. Its grammatical predicate is *raptum (esse)*, which is modified by *sublīmem* and *prŏcellā*.

P a r s i n g . *Rōmāna* is a patrial adjective, § 104, 10, derived from *Rōma*, § 128, 6, (*a*.) and (*e*.); of the 1st and 2d declensions, § 105, 2; fem. gender, sing. number, nom. case, agreeing with *pūbes*, § 205.

Pūbes, a collective noun, § 26, 4; 3d decl., fem. gender, § 62; from the root *pŭb-*, § 56, I. R. 6; genitive *pūbis*, § 73, 1; (decline it);—found in the nom. sing., the subject of *obtĭnuit*, § 209, (*a*.)

Tămen, an adversative conjunction, § 198, 9, relating to *etsi* in the 6th clause.

Mæstum, a qualifying adj., § 205, N. 1; of the 1st and 2d declensions, neut. gender, sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *silentium*.

Alĭquamdiu, an adverb of time, § 191, II.; compounded of *ălĭquis* and *diu*, § 193, 6; and limiting *obtĭnuit*, § 277.

Silentium, a com. noun, 2d decl., neut. gender, § 46; sing. number, acc. case, the object of *obtĭnuit*, § 229.

Obtĭnuit, an active verb, of the 2d conj., § 149, 2; from *obtĭneo*, compounded of *ob* and *tĕneo*, see § 168; (give the principal parts in the act. voice, and the formations of the 2d root, § 157 at the end);—found in the active voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *pūbes*, § 209, (*b*.)

Vĕlut for *vĕlut si*, an adverb, compounded of *vel* and *ut*, §193, 10; modifying *icta*, and *obtĭnuisset* understood, (as they would have done if, etc.)

Orbĭtātis, an abstract noun, § 26, 5; from the primitive *orbus*, § 101, 1 and 2; 3d decl., fem. gender, § 62; from the root *orbĭtāt-*, § 56, I., and R. 1; (decline it);—found in the sing. num., subjective gen. case, limiting *mĕtu*, § 211.

Mĕtu, an abstract noun, 4th decl., masc. gen., § 87; sing. num., abl. case, § 247.

Icta, a perf. part. pass., from the active verb *īco*, of the 3d conj. (give the principal parts in both voices, and decline the participle);—found in the fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *pūbes*, § 205.

Sēdāto, a perfect pass. part. from the active verb *sēdo*, of the 1st conj., § 149, 2; (give the principal parts in both voices, § 151, 4; and decline it, § 105, R. 2.);—found in the masc. gender, sing. num., abl. case, agreeing with *pă-vōre*, § 205.

Tandem, an adverb of time, § 191, II.; modifying *sēdāto*, § 277.

Păvōre, an abstract noun, § 26, 5, and § 102, 1; (from *păveo*), 3d decl., masc. gen., § 58; root *păvor*, § 56, II., and § 70, (decline it);—found in the sing. number, sing. case, absolute with *sēdāto*, § 257.

Postquam, an adverb of time, compounded of *post* and *quam*, § 193, 10; modifying *rĕdiit*, and connecting the 1st and 4th clauses, § 201, 9.

Ex, a preposition, § 195, R. 2.

Tam, an adverb of degree, § 191, R. 2; modifying *turbĭdo*, § 277.

Turbĭdo, an adjective, agreeing with *die*.

Die, a common noun, 5th decl., masc. gender, § 90, Exc. 1.; sing. number, abl. case, after the prep. *ex*, § 241.

Sĕrēna, an adj., 1st and 2d decls., fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *lux*, § 205.

Et, a copulative conjunction, § 198, 1; connecting *sĕrēna* and *tranquilla*, § 278.

Tranquilla, like *sĕrēna*.

Lux, a common noun, 3d decl., fem. gen., § 62; from the root *lūc-*, § 56, I., and R. 2; genitive *lūcis*, § 78, 2.

Rĕdiĭt, an irregular neuter verb, of the 4th conj., § 176; from *rĕdeo*, compounded of *eo*, § 182, and the inseparable prep. *red*, § 196, (*b.*), 3; (give its principal parts);—found in the ind. mood., perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *lux*, § 209, (*b.*)

Ubi, an adverb of time, and like *postquam*, a connective, § 201, 9; and modifying *vīdit*, § 277.

Văcuam, an adj., qualifying *sēdem*.

Sēdem, a common noun, 3d decl., fem. gen., § 62; from the root *sēd-*, § 56, I., R. 6; genitive *sēdis*, § 73, 1; (decline it);—found in the sing. num., acc. case, the object of the transitive verb *vīdit*, § 229.

Rēgĭam, a denominative adj., § 128, I., 2, (*a.*); from the primitive *rex*, agreeing with *sēdem*.

Vīdit, an active verb, of the 2d conj., (give its principal parts in the active voice, and the formations of the 2d root); found in the active voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *ea*, i. e. *pŭbes*, understood.

Etsi, a concessive conjunction, § 198, 4; corresponding to the correlative adversative conj. *tămen*, § 198, 4, R. and 9.

Sătis, an adverb of degree, § 191, III., and R. 2; modifying *crēdēbat*, § 277.

Crēdēbat, an act. verb, § 141, I.; 3d conj., (give the principal parts in the active voice and the formations of the 1st root);—found in the act. voice, ind. mood, imperfect tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *ea*, scil. *pŭbes*, understood.

Patribus, a common noun, § 26, 3; 3d decl., from the root *patr-*, § 56, II., R. 3; gen. *patris*, § 71; masc. gender, § 28, 1; plur. num., dat. case, depending on *crēdēbat*, § 223, R. 2.

Qui, the subject of the 7th clause, is a relative pronoun, § 136; masc. gender, plur. num., agreeing with its antecedent *patribus*, § 206, R. 19, (*a.*); and is nominative to *stĕtērant*, § 209, (*a.*)

Proxĭmi, an adj. of the superlative degree, § 126, 1, (compare it); of the 1st and 2d decls., masc. gen., plur. num., nom. case, agreeing with *qui*. § 205, § 210, R. 1, (*a.*) and R. 3, (2.)

Stĕtērant, a neuter verb, 1st conj., irregular in its 2d root, § 165; (give its principal parts, and the formations of the 2d root);—found in the act. voice, ind. mood, plup. tense, § 145, V.; 3d person plural, agreeing with its subject *qui*, § 209, (*b.*)

Sublīmem, an adj., of the 3d decl., and two terminations, § 109; masc. gen., sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *eum*, (i. e. *Rōmŭlum*,) understood, and modifying also *raptum esse*, § 205, R. 15.

Raptum (esse), an act. verb, 3d conj.; (give the principal parts in both voices and the formations of the 3d root in the passive voice)—found in the pass. voice, inf. mood, perf. tense; but, following the imperfect, it has the meaning of a pluperfect, § 268, 2, and § 145, V.; depending on *crēdēbat*, § 272.

Prŏcellā, a com. noun, 1st decl., fem. gen., sing. num., abl. case, § 247.

PROSODY.

§ 282.   Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables, and the laws of versification.

QUANTITY.

1. The quantity of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it. Cf. § 13.

2. A syllable is either *short*, *long*, or *common*.

(*a.*) The time occupied in pronouncing a short syllable is called a *mora* or *time*.

(*b.*) A long syllable requires two *moræ* or double the time occupied in pronouncing a short one; as, *ămārĕ*.

(*c.*) A common syllable is one which, in poetry, may be made either long or short; as the middle syllable of *tĕnĕbræ*.

3. The quantity of a syllable is either *natural* or *accidental;*— natural, when it depends on the *nature* of its vowel; accidental, when it depends on its *position*.

Thus the *e* in *rĕsisto* is short by nature; while in *rēstĭti* it is long by its position, since it is followed by two consonants: § 283, IV. On the contrary, the *e* in *dēdūco* is naturally long, but in *dĕerro* it is made short by being placed before a vowel: § 283, I.

4. The quantity of syllables is determined either by certain established *rules*, or by the *authority* of the poets.

Thus it is poetic usage alone that determines the quantity of the first syllables of the following words, viz. *māter*, *frāter*, *prāvus*, *dīco*, *dūco*; *păter*, *ăvus*, *cădo*, *măneo*, *grăvis*, etc.; and hence the quantity of such syllables can be ascertained by practice only or by consulting the gradus or lexicon.

5. The rules of quantity are either *general* or *special*. The former apply alike to all the syllables of a word, the latter to particular syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

§ 283.   I. (*a.*) A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is short; as, *e* in *mĕus*, *i* in *patrĭa*.   Thus,

> *Conscĭa* mens recti fāmæ *mendācĭa* rīdet. *Ovid.* F. 4, 311.
> Ipse *ĕtĭam exĭmĭæ* laudis succensus *ămōre*. *Virg.* A. 7, 496.

(*b.*) So also when *h* comes between the vowels, since *h* is accounted only a breathing; as, *nĭhil:* (see § 2, 6.)   Thus,

> Dē *nĭhĭlō nĭhil,* in *nĭhĭlum* nil posse *rĕverti.* *Pers.* 4, 84.

Exc. 1. (*a.*) *Fīo* has the *i* long, except in *fĭt* and when followed by *er*; as *fīunt, fīēbam.* Thus,

Omnia jam *fīant, fīĕri* quæ posse nĕgābam. *Ovid.* Tr. 1, 8, 7.

(*b.*) It is sometimes found long even before *er*; as, *fīĕret.* Ter.; *fīĕri.* Plaut: and, on the contrary, Prudentius has *fīŏ* with *i* short.

Exc. 2. (*a.*) *E* is long in the termination of the genitive and dative of the fifth declension, when preceded and followed by *i*; as, *făcīēi.* Thus,

Non rădii sōlis, nĕque lūcĭda tēla *dīēi. Lucr.* 1, 148.

(*b.*) In *spei, rei,* and *fĭdei, e* is short.

Note. In Lucretius, the *e* of *rei* is, in a few cases, long; and that of *fĭdei* is lengthened once in Lucretius and once in a line of Ennius.

Exc. 3. (*a.*) *A* is long in the penult of old genitives in *aī* of the first declension; as, *aulāī, pictāī.* Cf. § 43, 1.

(*b.*) *A* and *e* are also long in proper names in *aīus, eīus,* or *eīa*; as, *Cāius, Pompēius, Aquilēia*; and in the adjectives *Grāius* and *Vēius.* Thus,

Æthĕrium sensum, atque *aurāī* simplĭcis ignem. *Virg.* A. 6, 747.
Accĭpe, *Pompēi,* dēductum carmen ab illo. *Ovid.* Pont. 4, 1, 1.
Necnon cum Vĕnĕtis *Aquilēia* perfūrit armis. *Sil.* 8, 606.

Exc. 4. (*a.*) *I* is common in genitives in *ius*; as, *ūnīus, illīus.* Thus,

Illīus et nītĭdo stillent unguenta căpillo. *Tibull,* 1, 7, 51.
Illīus pūro dēstillent tempŏra nardo. *Id.* 2, 2. 7.

(*b.*) But *i* in the genitive of *alter* is commonly short; and in that of *ălius* it is always long.

Exc. 5. The first vowel of *ēheu* is long; that of *Dīāna, ĭo,* and *ŏhe,* is common.

Exc. 6. Greek words retain their original quantities, and hence, in many *Greek* words, a vowel is long, though immediately followed by another vowel; as,

āēr, Achāïa, Achĕlōüs, dīa, ēos, Lāertes, and Greek words having in the original a long *e* or *o* (*η* or *ω*.) See also § 293, 3.

(1.) Words which, in Greek, are written with *ei* (*ει*) before a vowel, and in Latin with a single *e* or *i*, have the *e* or *i* long; as, *Æneas, Alexandrīa, Cassiopēa, Clīo, Dārīus, ĕlĕgīa, Gălătēa, Mēdēa, Mausōlēum, Pĕnĕlŏpēa, Thālīa, Atrīdes.*
Hence, most adjectives in *eus,* formed from Greek proper names, have the *e* long; as, *Cỹthĕrēus, Pĕlŏpēus*; and the *e* remains long when *ei* is restored; as, *Pĕlŏpēïa.*

Exc. *Acădēmia, chŏrea, Mălea, plătea,* and some patronymics and patrials in *eïs*; as, *Nĕreïs,* have the penult common.

(2.) Greek genitives in *eos,* and accusatives in *ea,* from nominatives in *eus,* generally shorten the *e*; as, *Orphĕos, Orphĕa*;—but the *e* is sometimes lengthened by the Ionic dialect; as, *Cēphēos, Ilĭōnēa.*

(3.) Greek words in *ais, ois, aius, eius, oius, aon,* and *ion,* generally lengthen the first vowel; as, *Nāis, Mĭnōis, Grāïus, Nērēïus, Mīnōïus, Māchāon, Ixīon.* But *Thēbāis, Sīmŏïs, Phăon, Deucălĭon, Pygmălĭon,* and many others, shorten the former vowel.

Note 1. Greek words in *aon* and *ion,* with *o* short in the genitive, have the penult long; but with *o* long in the genitive, they have it short; as, *Amỹthāon, -āŏnis; Deucălĭon, -ŏnis.*

NOTE 2. In Greek proper names in *eus* (gen. *eos*), as *Orpheus*, the *eu* in the nominative is always a diphthong in the original, and, with very few exceptions, in the Latin poets.

II.   A diphthong is long; as, *aūrum, fœnus, Eūbœa, Pompēius, Orpheū*. Thus,

> Infernīque lácus, Æ̆ǣǣque insŭla Circæ. *Virg*. A. **3**, 386.
> Thēsaūros ignōtum argenti pondus et *aūri*. *Id*. A. 1, 359.
> Harpyiǣque cŏlunt ălǣe, Phīnēïa postquam. *Id*. A. 3, 212.

EXC. 1. *Præ*, in composition, is short before a vowel; as, *prăustus, prăecūtus*. Thus,

> Nec tōtā tămen ille prior prăeunte cărīnā. *Virg*. A. 5, 186.

In Statius, and Sidonius Apollinaris, it is found long.

EXC. 2. A diphthong at the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, is sometimes made short; as,

> Insŭlǣ Iōnio in magno, quas dīra Cĕlæno. *Virg*. A. 3, 211.

EXC. 3. The diphthongs consisting of *u* followed by a vowel are either long or short; the two vowels thus combined being subject to the same rules of quantity, as their final vowel would be if standing alone; as, *quā, quī, quŏrum, quĭa, quĭbus, quātio, quĕror, æquŏr, linguā, sanguis*.

III.   A syllable formed by contraction is long; as,

ălĭus for *alĭus*; *cōgo* for *cŏǎgo*; *nīl* for *nĭhil*; *jūnior* for *jŭvĕnior*.   Thus,

> Tītyre cōge pĕcus, tu post cārecta lătēbas. *Virg*. E. 3, 20.

IV.   A vowel naturally short, before two consonants, a double consonant, or the letter *j*, is long by *position*; as, *ārma, bēllum, āxis, gāza, mājor*.   Thus,

> Pāscĕre ŏpŏrtet ŏves dēdūctum dīcĕre cārmĕn. *Virg*. E. 6, 5.
> Nēc mȳrtŭs vīncet cŏrȳlos ; nēc laurea Phœbi. *Id*. E. 7, 64.
> At nōbis, Pax alma, vĕnī, spīcamque tĕnēto. *Tibull*. 1, 10, 67.
> Rāra jŭvant: prīmis sic mājor gratia pōmis. *Mart*. 4, 29, 3.

NOTE 1. A vowel (other than *i*) before *j* is in reality lengthened by forming a diphthong with it, since *i* and *j* are in fact but one letter. Thus *major* is equivalent to *maï'-or*, which would be pronounced *mă'-yor*. See § 9, 1.

EXC. 1. The compounds of *jŭgum* have *i* short before *j*; as, *bĭjŭgus, quādrĭjŭgus*.   Thus,

> Intĕreā bĭjŭgis infert se Lūcāgus albis. *Virg*. A. 10, 575.

REMARK.   The vowel is long by position, when either one or both of the consonants is in the same word with it; but when both stand at the beginning of the following word, the vowel is either long or short; as,

> Tolle mŏras; sempĕr nŏcŭit differre părātis. *Lucan*. 1, 281.
> Ferte cīti *ferrŭm*; dăte tēlā; scandīte mūros. *Virg*. A. 9, 37.
> Ne tămen ignōrĕt, quæ sīt sententiā scripto. *Ovid*.

NOTE 2. A short vowel at the end of a word, before an initial double consonant or *j* in the following word, is not lengthened.

NOTE 3. In the comic poets a vowel frequently remains short though followed by two consonants, especially if only one of them is in the same word.

EXC. 2. A vowel *naturally short*, before a mute followed by a liquid, is common; as, *ăgris, phărĕtra, vŏlŭcris, pŏplĭtes, cŏchlea.* Thus,

> Et prīmo sĭmĭlis *vŏlŭcri,* mox vēra *vŏlŭcris. Ovid.* M. 13. 607.
> Nātum ante ōra *pătris, pătrem* qui obtruncat ad āras. *Virg.* A. 2, 663.
> Nox tĕnĕbras prŏfert, Phœbus fŭgat inde *tĕnĕbras. Ovid.*

REM. 1. If the vowel before a mute and liquid is *naturally long*, it continues so; as, *sălūbris, ambŭlācrum.*

REM. 2. In *compound* words, of which the former part ends with a mute, and the latter begins with a liquid, a short vowel before the mute is made long by position; as, *ăbluo, ŏbruo, sŭblĕvo, quamŏbrem.*

REM. 3. A mute and liquid at the beginning of a word seldom lengthen the short vowel of the preceding word, except in the arsis of a foot; as,

> Terrasquĕ tractusque măris cœlumque prŏfundum. *Virg.* E. 4, 51.

REM. 4. In Latin words, only the liquids *l* and *r* following a mute render the preceding short vowel common; but, in words of Greek origin, *m* and *n* after a mute have the same effect, as in *Tĕcmessa, Prŏcne, Cÿcnus.*

SPECIAL RULES.

FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

I. DERIVATIVE WORDS.

§ **284.** Derivative words retain the quantity of their primitives; as,

by conjugation, *ămo, ămat, ămābat, ămāvi, ămātus,* etc.; by declension, *ămor, ămōris, ămōri, ămōribus,* etc.; so, *ănĭmal, ănĭmātus,* from *ănĭma; gĕmĕbundus,* from *gĕmĕre; fămĭlia,* from *fămŭlus; māternus,* from *māter; prŏpinquus,* from *prŏpe.*

NOTE 1. *Lār, pār, sāl,* and *pēs* in declension shorten the vowel of the nominative; as, *sălis, pĕdis,* etc.

NOTE 2. The vowel of the primitive is sometimes lengthened or shortened in the derivative by the addition or removal of a consonant.

REM. 1. Derivatives from increasing nouns of the second or third declension agree in quantity with the increment of their primitives; as,

puĕrĭtia, from *puĕri; virgĭneus,* from *virgĭnis; sălūber,* from *sălūtis.*

REM. 2. In verbs, the vowels of the derived tenses and of derivative words agree in quantity with the verbal root from which they are formed; as,

mŏvēbam, mŏvēlo, mŏveam, mŏvērem, mŏve, mŏvēre, mŏvens, mŏvendus, from *mŏv,* the root of the present, with *ŏ* short;—*mŏvĕram, mŏvĕrim, mŏvissem, mŏvēro, mŏvisse,* from *mōv,* the root of the perfect, with *ō* long; *mōtūrus* and *mōtus;*—*mōto, mōtio, mōtor,* and *mōtus, -ūs,* from *mōt,* the root of the supine, with *ō* also long.

REM. 3. (a.) *Sŏlūtum* and *vŏlūtum* from *solvo* and *volvo* have the first syllable short, as if from *sŏluo, vŏluo.* So, from *gigno* come *gĕnui, gĕnĭtum,* as if from *gĕno;* and *pŏtui,* from *pŏtĭs sum (possum).*

(*b.*) The *a* in *da*, imperative of *do*, is long, though short in other parts of the verb. See § 294, 2.

(*c.*) The *o* in *pŏsui* and *pŏsĭtum* is short, though long in *pōno*.

Exc. 1. Perfects and supines of two syllables have the first syllable long, even when that of the present is short; as,

vēni, vīdi, fēci, from *vĕnio, vĭdeo, făcio; cāsum, mōtum, vīsum*, from *cădo, mŏveo, vĭdeo.*

Note 3. Such perfects are supposed to have been formed either by the contraction of reduplicated syllables, as *vĕnio*, perf. *vĕvĕni*, by syncope *vēĕni*, by crasis *vēni*, or by the omission of a consonant, as *vĭdeo*, perf. *vĭdsi*, by syncope *vīdi*, the vowel retaining the quantity which it had by position.

Note 4. The long vowel of dissyllabic supines probably arose in like manner from syncope and contraction; as, *vĭdeo, vĭdsum*, by syncope *vīsum; mŏveo, mŏvĭtum*, by syncope *mŏĭtum*, by contraction *mōtum.*

(1.) (*a.*) These seven perfects have the first syllable short:—*bĭbi, dĕdi, fĭdi*, (from *findo*), *scĭdi, stĕti, stĭti, tŭli.* So also *percŭli*, from *percello.*

(*b.*) The first syllable is also short before a vowel (§ 283, I.); as, *rŭi.*

(2.) (*a.*) These ten supines have the first syllable short:—*cĭtum*, (from *cieo*), *dătum, ĭtum, lĭtum, quĭtum, rătum, rŭtum, sătum, sĭtum*, and *stătum.*

(*b.*) So, also, had the obsolete *fŭtum*, from *fŭo*, whence comes *fŭtūrus.*

Exc. 2. (*a.*) Reduplicated polysyllabic perfects have the first two syllables short; as,

cĕcĭdi, cĕcĭni, tĕtĭgi, dĭdĭci, from *cădo, căno, tango*, and *disco.*

(*b.*) The second syllable of reduplicated perfects is sometimes made long by position; as, *mŏmŏrdi, tĕtĕndi.—Cĕcĭdi* from *cædo*, and *pĕpĕdi* from *pēdo*, retaining the quantity of their first root also have the second syllable long.

Exc. 3. Desiderative verbs in *urio* have the *u* short, though, in the third root of the verbs from which they are formed, it is long; as, *cœnātŭrio* from *cœnātū*, the third root of *cœno.* So *partŭrio, ēsŭrio, nuptŭrio.*

Exc. 4. Frequentative verbs, formed from the third root of verbs of the first conjugation, have the *i* short; as, *clāmĭto, vŏlĭto.* See § 187, II. 1.

Exc. 5. A few other derivatives deviate from the quantity of their primitives.

1. Some have a long vowel from a short one in the primitive. Such are,

Dēni, *from* dĕcem.	Mōbĭlis, *from* mŏveo.	Stīpendium, *from* stips
Fōmes *and* } *from*	Persōna, *from* persŏno.	(stĭpis).
Fōmentum, } fŏveo.	Rēgŭla *and* } *from*	Suspīcio, ōnis, *from* sus-
Hūmānus, *from* hŏmo.	Rex (rēgis), } rĕgo.	pĭcor.
Lāterna, *from* lăteo,	Sēcius, *from* sĕcus.	Tēgŭla, *from* tĕgo.
Lītera *from* lĭno.	Sēdes, *from* sĕdeo.	
Lex (lēgis), *from* lĕgo.	Sēmen, *from* sĕro.	

2. Some have a short vowel from a long one in the primitive. Such are,

Dĭcax, *from* dīco.	Mŏlestus, *from* mōles.	Săgax, *from* sāgio.
Dux (dŭcis), *from* dūco.	Năto, *from* nātu. *sup.*	Sŏpor, *from* sōpio.
Fĭdes, *from* fīdo.	Nŏto, *from* nōtu. *sup.*	Vădum, *from* vādo.
Lăbo, *from* lābor, *dep. v.*	ŏdium, *from* ōdi.	Vŏco, *from* vox (vōcis.)
Lŭcerna, *from* lūceo.	Quăsillus, *from* quālus.	

Note 1. *Disertus* comes regularly (by syncope) from *dissertus*, the prefix *dis* being short, § 299, 1. Cf. *dirimo* and *diribeo*, where *s* is changed to *r*. See § 196, (*b.*) 2.

Note 2. Some other words might, perhaps, with propriety be added to these lists; but, in regard to the derivation of most of them, grammarians are not entirely agreed.

Remark 1. Some of these irregularities seem to have arisen from the influence of syncope and crasis. Thus *mōbĭlis* may have been *mŏvĭbĭlis; mōtum, mŏvĭtum,* etc.

Rem. 2. Sometimes the vowel in the derived word being naturally short, is restored to its proper quantity by removing one of the consonants which, in the primitive, made it long by position; as, *nŭx, nŭcis.* So, when the vowel of the primitive is naturally long, but has been made short before another vowel, it is sometimes restored to its original quantity by the insertion of a consonant; as, *hībernus,* from *hĭems.*

Rem. 3. The first syllable in *lĭquĭdus* is supposed to be common, as coming either from *lĭquor* or *lĭqueo;* as,

<div style="text-align:center">Crassăque convĕniant lĭquĭdis, et lĭquĭda crassis. *Lucr.* 4, 1255.</div>

II. COMPOUND WORDS.

§ 285. 1. Compound words retain the quantity of the words which compose them ; as,

dēfĕro, of *dē* and *fĕro; ădōro,* of *ăd* and *ōro.* So *ăbŏrior, āmŏvĕo, circŭmĕo, cŏmĕdo, ēnītor, prōdūco, sŭbōrno.*

2. The change of a vowel or a diphthong in forming the compound does not alter its quantity ; as,

concīdo, from *cădo; concĭdo,* from *cædo; ērĭgo,* from *rĕgo; reclūdo,* from *claudo; inīquus,* from *æquus.*

Exc. 1. A long syllable in the simple word becomes short in the following compounds:—*agnĭtus* and *cognĭtus,* from *nōtus; dējĕro* and *pējĕro,* from *jūro; hŏdie,* from *hōc die: nihĭlum* and *nĭhil,* from *hīlum; causĭdĭcus,* and other compounds ending in *dĭcus,* from *dīco.*

Exc. 2. *Imbēcillus,* from *băcillum,* has the second syllable long. The participle *ambĭtus* has the penult long from *ītum,* but the nouns *ambĭtus* and *ambĭtio* follow the rule.

Exc. 3. *Innŭba, prōnŭba,* and *subnŭba,* from *nūbo,* have *u* short; but in *connubium,* it is common.

Exc. 4. *O* final, in the compounds of *do* and *sto,* is common, though long in the simple verbs. § 294, (*a.*)

Note 1. Prepositions of one syllable, which end in a vowel, are long (§ 294, (*a.*); those which end in a single consonant are short (§ 299, 1.)—*Trā* from *trans* is long; as, *trādo, trādūco.*

Exc. 5. *Pro,* in the following compounds, is short:—*prŏfānus, prŏfāri, prŏfecto, prŏfestus, prŏfĭciscor, prŏfĭteor, prŏfŭgio, prŏfŭgus, prŏcella, prŏfundus, prōnĕpos, prōnĕptis,* and *prŏtervus.* It is common in *procūro, profundo, propāgo, propello,* and *propīno.*—Respecting *præ* in composition before a vowel, see § 283, II. Exc. 1.

Rem. 1. The Greek preposition *pro* (before) is short; as, *prŏphēta.* In *prŏlŏgus, propōla,* and *propīno,* it is common.

Rem. 2. The inseparable prepositions *di* (for *dĭs*) and *se* are long; as,

dīdūco, sēpāro. Respecting *dĭsertus,* see § 284, Exc. 5, 2, N. 1.

Rem. 3. (*a.*) The inseparable preposition *re* or *red* is short; as, *rĕmitto, rĕfĕro, rĕdămo.*

(*b.*) *Re* is sometimes lengthened in *rēlĭgio, rēlĭquiæ, rēlĭquus, rēpĕrit, rētŭlit, rēpŭlit, rēcĭdit, rēdūcĕre,* where some editors double the consonant following *re.* Cf. § 307, 2.   In the impersonal verb *rēfert, re* is long, as coming from *res.*

Rem. 4. *A* ending the former part of a compound word, is long; the other vowels are short; as,

mālo, quāpropter, trādo, (trans do); nĕfas, valĕdĭco, hujuscĕmŏdi; bĭceps, trĭdens, omnĭpŏtens, signĭfĭco; hŏdie, quandŏquidem, phĭlŏsŏphus; dŭcenti, lŏcŭples, Trōjŭgĕna; Pŏlȳdōrus, Eurȳpȳlus, Thrăsȳbŭlus.

Exc. 1.   **A.**   *A* is short in *quăsi, eădem,* when not an ablative, and in some Greek compounds; as, *cătăpulta, hexămĕter.*

Exc. 2.   **E.**   *E* is long in *crēdo, nēmo, nēquam, nēquāquam, nēquidquam, nēquis, nēquĭtia; mēmet, mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, sēse, vēcors, vēsānus, vēnēfĭcus,* and *vĭdēlĭcet;*—also in words compounded with *se* for *sex* or *sēmi;* as, *sēdĕcim, sēmestris, sēmŏdius;* but in *selibra* it is found short in Martial.

Note 2. (*a.*) The first *e* in *vĭdēlĭcet,* as in *vĭde,* is sometimes made short. See § 295, Exc. 3.

(*b.*) *E* is common in some verbs compounded with *făcio;* as, *lĭquefăcio, pătefăcio, rărefăcio, tăbefăcio, tĕpefăcio.*

Exc. 3.   **I.**   (1.) *I* is long in those compounds in which the first part is declined, (§ 296;) as, *quĭdam, quĭvis, quĭlĭbet, quantīvis, quantīcumque, tantīdem, unĭcuīque, eīdem, reīpūblicæ, utrīque.*

(2.) *I* is also long in those compounds which may be separated without altering the sense, (§ 296;) as, *lūdīmăgister, sīquis, agrĭcultūra.*

(3.) *I,* ending the former part of a compound word, is sometimes made long by contraction; as, *tībīcen* for *tĭbĭĭcen,* from *tĭbia* and *căno.* See § 283, III.

(4.) *I* is long in *bīgæ, quadrīgæ, īlicet, scīlicet.*

(5.) In *idem,* when masculine, *i* is long; but when neuter, it is short.   The *i* of *ŭbĭque* and *utrōbĭque,* the second in *ĭbĭdem,* and the first in *nīmīrum,* are long. In *ŭbĭcumque,* as in *ŭbi, i* is common.

(6.) Compounds of *dĭes* have the final *i* of the former part long; as, *bīduum, trīduum, mĕrīdies, quŏtīdie, quŏtīdiānus, prīdie, postrīdie.*

Note 3. In Greek words, *i,* ending the former part of a compound, is short; as, *Callĭmăchus;* unless it comes from the diphthong *ei* (*ει*), or is made long or common by position.

Exc. 4.   **O.**   (1.) In compounds, the final *o* of *contro, intro, retro,* and *quando* (except *quandŏquĭdem,*) is long; as, *contrōversia, intrōdūco, retrōcēdo, quandōque.* *O* is long also in *ăliōqui* (-*quin*), and *utrōque.*

(2.) *O* is long in the compounds of *quō* and *eo;* as, *quōmŏdo, quōcumque, quōnam, quōlĭbet, quōmĭnus, quōcirca, quōvis, quōque* (i. e. *et quo*); *eōdem, eōne;* but in the conjunction *quŏque,* it is short.

(3.) Greek words which are written with an *omĕga* (*ω*) have the *o* long; as, *geōmetra, Mīnōtaurus, lăgōpus.*

Exc. 5.   **U.**   *U* is long in *Jūpĭter* (*Jŏvĭs păter*), and *jūdĭco* (*jūs dĭco*).

III. INCREMENT OF NOUNS.

§ **286.**   1. A noun is said to *increase,* when, in any of its cases, it has more syllables than in the nominative singular; as, *pax, pācis; sermo, sermōnis.*   The number of *increments* in any case of a noun is equal to that of its additional syllables.

2. Nouns in general have but one increment in the singular, but *ĭter*, *sŭpellex*, compounds of *căput* ending in *ps*, and sometimes *jĕcur*, have two increments; as,

iter, ĭ-tĭn-ĕ-ris; sŭpellex, sŭ-pel-lec-tĭ-lis; anceps, an-cĭp-ĭ-tis; jĕcur, jĕ-cĭn-ŏ-ris.

REMARK. The double increase of *iter*, etc., in the singular number arises from their coming from obsolete nominatives, containing a syllable more than those now in use; as, *itĭner*, etc.

3. The dative and ablative plural of the third declension have one increment more than the genitive singular; as,

rex,	Gen. *rē-gĭs,*	D. and Ab. *rēg-ĭ-bus.*
sermo,	—— *ser-mō-nis,*	——— *ser-mōn-ĭ-bus.*
iter,	—— *ĭ-tĭn-ĕ-ris,*	——— *ĭt-ĭ-nĕr-ĭ-bus.*

4. The last syllable of a word is never considered as the increment. If a word has but one increment, it is the penult; if two, the antepenult is called the first, and the penult the second; and if three, the syllable before the antepenult is called the first, the antepenult the second, and the penult the third increment; as,

$$\overset{1}{ser}\text{-}mo, \ \overset{1}{ser}\text{-}\overset{2}{mo}\text{-}nis, \ ser\text{-}\overset{1}{mon}\text{-}\overset{2}{i}\text{-}bus; \ \overset{1}{i}\text{-}ter, \ \overset{1}{i}\text{-}\overset{2}{tin}\text{-}\overset{}{e}\text{-}ris, \ \overset{1}{it}\text{-}\overset{2}{i}\text{-}\overset{3}{ner}\text{-}i\text{-}bus.$$

5. In the third declension, the quantity of the first increment is the same in all the other cases as in the genitive singular; as,

sermōnis, sermōni, sermōnem, sermōne, sermōnes, sermōnum, sermōnĭbus. Bōbus, or *būbus,* from *bos, bŏvis,* is lengthened by contraction from *bŏvĭbus.*

NOTE. As adjectives and participles are declined like nouns, the same rules of increment apply to all of them; and so also to pronouns.

INCREMENTS OF THE SINGULAR NUMBER.

OF THE FIRST, FOURTH, AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

§ **287.** 1. When nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions increase in the singular number, the increment consists of a vowel before the final vowel, and its quantity is determined by the first general rule with its exceptions, § 283, I.

Thus, *aura,* gen. *aurāi,* § 283, I. Exc. 3, (*a.*): *fructus,* dat. *fructŭi,* § 283, I. (*a.*): *dies,* gen. *diēi,* § 283, I. Exc. 2, (*a.*)

INCREMENTS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

2. The increments of the second declension in the singular number are short; as,

gĕner, gĕnĕri; sătur, sătŭri; tĕner, tĕnĕri; vĭr, vĭri. Thus,

Ne, *puĕri,* ne tanta ănĭmis assuescĭte bella. *Virg.* A. 6, 833.
Monstra sĭnunt; *gĕnĕros* externis affŏre ab ōris. *Id.* A. 7, 270.

EXC. The increment of *Iber* and *Celtiber* is long. For that of genitives in *ius,* see § 283, Exc. 4.

INCREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

3. The increments of the third declension and singular number in *a* and *o* are long; those in *e*, *i*, *u*, and *y*, are short; as,

ănĭmal, ănĭmālis ; audax, audācis ; sermo, sermōnis ; fĕrox, fĕrōcis ; ŏpus, ŏpĕris ; cĕler, cĕlĕris ; mīles, mīlĭtis ; supplex, supplĭcis ; murmur, murmŭris ; dux, dŭcis ; chlămys, chlămy̆dis ; Styx, Sty̆gis. Thus,

> Prōnăque cum spectent *ănĭmālia* cētĕra terram. *Ovid.* M. 1, 84.
> Hæc tum multiplĭci pŏpŭlos *sermōne* replēbat. *Virg.* A. 4, 189.
> Incumbent *gĕnĕris* lapsi sarcīre ruīnas. *Id.* G. 4, 249.
> Quālem virgĭneo dēmessum *pollĭce* flōrem. *Id.* A. 11, 68.
> Adspĭce, ventōsi cĕcĭdērunt *murmŭris* auræ. *Id.* E. 9, 58.

Exceptions in Increments in A.

1. (*a.*) Masculines in *al* and *ar* (except *Car* and *Nar*) increase short; as, *Annĭbal, Annĭbālis ; Amilcar, Amilcāris.*

(*b.*) *Par* and its compounds, and the following—*ănas, mas, vas (vădis), baccar, hĕpar, jŭbar, lar, nectar,* and *sal*—also increase short.

2. *A*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as, *daps, dăpis ; Arabs, Arăbis.*

3. Greek nouns in *a* and *as* (*ădis, ănis,* or *ătis*) increase short; as, *lampas, lampădis ; Mĕlas, Mĕlănis, poēma, poëmătis.*

4. The following in *ax* increase short:—*ăbax, anthrax, Arctŏphy̆lax, Atax, Atrax, clīmax, cŏlax, cŏrax,* and *nyctĭcŏrax, drŏpax, fax, harpax, pănax, smīlax,* and *sty̆rax.*—The increment of *Sy̆phax* is doubtful.

Exceptions in Increments in O.

1. *O*, in the increment of neuter nouns, is short; as,

marmor, marmŏris ; corpus, corpŏris ; ĕbur, ĕbŏris. But *os* (the mouth), and the neuter of comparatives, like their masculine and feminine, increase long. The increment of *ădor* is common.

2. *O* is short in the increment of Greek nouns in *o* or *on*, which, in the oblique cases, have *omicron,* but long in those which have *omĕga ;* as,

Aēdon, Aēdŏnis ; Agămemnon, Agămemnŏnis :—Plăto, Plătōnis ; Sĭnon, Sĭnōnis ; Sĭcyon, Sĭcyōnis. Sĭdon, Orĭon, and *Ægæon,* have the increment common.

3. (*a.*) In the increment of gentile nouns in *o* or *on,* whether Greek or barbaric, *o* is generally short; as,

Măcĕdo, Măcedŏnis. So, *Amazŏnes, Aŏnes, Myrmidŏnes, Santŏnes, Saxŏnes, Sĕnŏnes, Teutŏnes,* etc.

(*b.*) But the following have *o* long:—*Eburōnes, Lacōnes, Iōnes, Nasamōnes, Suessōnes* (or *-iōnes*), *Vettōnes, Burgundiōnes. Brĭtones* has the *o* common.

4. Greek nouns in *or* increase short; as, *Hector, Hectŏris ; rhētor, rhētŏris ; Agēnor, Agēnŏris.*

5. Compounds of *pus,* (πῦς), as *trĭpus, pŏly̆pus, Œdĭpus,* and also *arbor, mĕmor, bos, compos, impos,* and *lĕpus,* increase short.

6. *O*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as,

scrobs, scrŏbis; ĭnops, ĭnŏpis; Dŏlŏpes. But it is long in the increment of *cercops, Cyclops,* and *hydrops.*

7. The increment of *Allobrox, Cappădox,* and *præcox,* is also short.

Exceptions in Increments in E.

1. Nouns in *en, enis* (except *Hymen*), lengthen their increment; as, *Sīren, Sīrēnis.* So, *Aniēnis, Nēriēnis,* from *Anio* and *Nērio,* or rather from the obsolete *Anien* and *Nēriēnes.*

2. *Hæres, lōcŭples, mansues, merces,* and *quies*—also *Iber, ver, lex, rex, ălec* or *ălex* (*hăl-*) *narthex* and *vervex*—*plebs* and *seps*—increase long.

3. Greek nouns in *es* and *er* (except *aër* and *œther*) increase long; as, *magnes, magnētis; crāter, crātēris.*

Exceptions in Increments in I.

1. Nouns and adjectives in *ix,* increase long; as, *victrix, victrīcis; fēlix, fēlīcis.*

Exc. *Călix, Cĭlix, coxendix, fīlix, fornix, hystrix, lărix, nix, pix, sălix, strix,* and rarely *sandix* or *sandyx,* increase short.

2. *Vibex* and the following nouns in *is* increase long:—*dis, glis, lis, vis, Nēsis, Quiris,* and *Samnis.* The increment of *Psōphis* is common.

3. Greek nouns, whose genitive is in *inis* increase long; as, *delphin, delphīnis; Sălāmis, Sălāmīnis.*

Exceptions in Increments in U.

1. Genitives in *udis, uris,* and *utis,* from nominatives ın *us,* have the penult long; as,

pălus, pălūdis; tellus, tellūris; virtus, virtūtis. But *intercus, Ligus* and *pĕcus, pĕcŭdis,* increase short.

2. *Fur, frux,* (obs.), *lux,* and *Pollux,* increase long.

Exceptions in Increments in Y.

1. Greek nouns whose genitive is in *ynis,* increase long; as, *Trăchyn, Trăchÿnis.*

2. The increment of *bombyx, Ceÿx, gryps,* and *mormyr,* is long; that of *Bebryx* and *sandyx* is common.

INCREMENTS OF THE PLURAL NUMBER.

§ **288.** 1. A noun in the plural number is said to increase, when, in any case, it has more syllables than in the ablative singular.

REMARK. When the ablative singular is wanting, or its place is supplied by a form derived from a different root, an ablative may, for this purpose, be assumed, by annexing the proper termination to the root of the plural.

2. When a noun increases in the plural number, its penult is called the plural increment; as, *sa* in *mūsārum, no* in *dŏmĭnōrum, pi* in *rūpium* and *rūpĭbus.*

3. In plural increments, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* are short; as,

bŏnārum, ănĭmābus, rērum, rēbus, gĕnĕrōrum, ambōbus; sermōnĭbus, lăcŭbus. Thus,

> Appia, *longārum*, tĕrītur, rēgīna *viārum*. *Stat.* S. 2, 2, 12.
> Sunt lacrymæ *rērum*, et mentem mortālia tangunt. *Virg.* A. 1, 462.
> Atque ălii, *quōrum* cōmœdia prisca *virōrum* est. *Hor.* S. 1, 4, 2.
> *Portŭbus* ēgrĕdior, ventisque *fĕrentĭbus* ūsus. *Ovid.*

IV. INCREMENT OF VERBS.

§ **289.** 1. A verb is said to increase, when, in any of its parts, it has more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active; as, *das, dă-tis; dŏces, dŏ-cē-mus.*

2. The number of increments in any part of a verb is equal to that of its additional syllables. In verbs, as in nouns, the last syllable is never considered the increment. If a verb has but one increment, it is the penult; and this first increment, through all the variations of the verb, except in reduplicated tenses, continues equally distant from the first syllable. The remaining increments are numbered successively from the first; as,

ă-mas,	mŏ-nes,	au-dis,
1	1	1
ă-mā-mus,	mŏ-nē-tur,	au-dī-tis,
1 2	1 2	1 2
ăm-ā-bā-mus,	mŏn-ē-rē-tur,	au-di-ē-bas,
1 2 3	1 2 3	1 2 3 4
ăm-ā-vĕ-rā-mus.	mŏn-ē-bīm-ĭ-ni.	au-di-ē-bām-ĭ-ni.

3. A verb in the active voice may have three increments; in the passive, it may have four.

4. In determining the increments of deponent verbs, an active voice, formed from the same root, may be supposed.

<div align="center">1   1 2</div>

Thus the increments of *læ-tā-tur, læt-ā-bā-tur*, etc., are reckoned from the supposed verb *læto, lætas*.

§ **290.** In the increments of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* are short; as,

ămāre, mŏnēre, făcĭtōte, vŏlŭmus, rĕgēbāmĭni. Thus,

> Et *cantāre* păres, et respondēre părāti. *Virg.* E. 7, 5.
> Sic ĕquĭdem *ducēbam* ănĭmo, *rēbarque* fŭtūrum. *Id.* A. 6, 690.
> Cumque lŏqui pŏtĕrit, mātrem *făcĭtōte* sălūtet. *Ovid*, M. 9. 878.
> *Scindĭtur* incertum stŭdia in contrāria vulgus. *Virg.* A. 2, 39.
> Nos nŭmĕrus *sŭmus*, et frūges consūmĕre nāti. *Hor.* Ep. 1, 2, 27.

(a.) *Exceptions in Increments in* A.

The *first* increment of *do* is short; as, *dămus, dăbāmus, dăret, dă-tūrus, circumdăre, circumdăbāmus.*

(b.) *Exceptions in Increments in* E.

1. *E* before *r* is short in the *first* increment of all the present and imperfect tenses of the third conjugation, and in the *second* increment in *bĕris* and *bĕre ;* as,

rĕgĕre (infin. and imperat.), *rĕgĕris* or *rĕgĕre* (pres. ind. pass.), *rĕgĕrem* and *rĕgĕrer* (imp. subj.); *ămābĕris, ămābĕre ; mŏnēbĕris, mŏnēbĕre.*

NOTE 1. In *vĕlim, vĕlis,* etc., from *vŏlo,* (second person, regularly *vŏlis,* by syncope and contraction *vīs,*) *ĕ* is not an increment, but represents the root vowel *ŏ,* and is therefore short; § 284, and § 178, 1.

2. *E* is short before *ram, rim, ro,* and the persons formed from them; as,

ămāvĕram, ămāvĕrat, ămāvĕrim, mŏnuĕrĭmus, rexĕro, audīvĕrĭtis.

NOTE 2. In verbs which have been shortened by syncope or otherwise, *e* before *r* retains its original quantity; as, *flēram,* for *flēvĕram.*

For the short e before *runt,* in the perfect indicative, as, *stĕtērunt,* see *Systole,* § 307.

(c.) *Exceptions in Increments in* I.

1. *I* before *v* or *s,* in tenses formed from the second root, is long; as,

pĕtīvi, audīvi, quæsīvit, dīvīsit, audīvĭmus, dīvīsĭmus, audīvĕram.

2. *I* is long, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, in the final syllable of the third root of *gaudeo, arcesso, dīvĭdo, făcesso, lăcesso, pĕto, quæro, rĕcenseo* and *oblīviscor ;* as,

gāvīsus, arcessītus, dīvīsus, făcessītus, lăcessītus, pĕtītus, quæsītus, rĕcensītus, oblītus ; gāvīsūrus, etc.

3. *I* in the first increment of the fourth conjugation, except in *ĭmus* of the perfect indicative, is long; as,

audīre, audīrem, audītus, audītūrus, pres. *vĕnīmus,* but in the perfect *vēnĭmus.* So in the ancient forms in *ībam, ībo,* of the fourth conjugation; as, *nutrībat, lēnībunt ;* and also in *ībam* and *ībo,* from *eo.*

NOTE 3. When a vowel follows, the *i* is short, by § 283; as, *audĭunt, audĭēbam.*

4. *I* is long in the first and second persons plural of subjunctives in *sim, sis, sit,* etc., (§ 162, 1,); as, *sīmus, sītis, vĕlīmus, vĕlītis,* and their compounds; as, *possīmus, adsīmus, mālīmus, nōlīmus.* So also in *nōlīto, nōlīte, nōlītōte,* after the analogy of the fourth conjugation.

5. *I* in *ris, rimus* and *ritis,* in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common; as,

vīdĕrīs, Mart., *occīdĕrīs,* Hor.; *vīdĕrĭtis* (Ovid), *dĕdĕrĭtis* (Id.); *fēcĕrĭmus* (Catull.), *ēgĕrĭmus* (Virg.)

(d.) *Exceptions in Increments in* U.

U is long in the increment of supines, and of participles formed from the third root of the verb; as,

sĕçŭtŭs, sŏlŭtus, sĕcūtūrus, sŏlūtūrus.

RULES FOR THE QUANTITY OF PENULTIMATE AND ANTEPE-
NULTIMATE SYLLABLES.

I. PENULTS.

§ 291.   1. Words ending in *acus, icus,* and *icum,* shorten the
penult; as,

ămārăcus, Ægyptiăcus, rustĭcus, trītĭcum, viātĭcum.

Except *Dācus, mĕrācus, ŏpācus; ămīcus, aprīcus, fīcus, mendīcus, pīcus, postīcus, pŭdīcus, spīcus, umbilīcus, vīcus.*

2. Words ending in *abrum, ubrum, acrum,* and *atrum,* lengthen the
penult; as,

candēlābrum, dēlūbrum, lāvācrum, vērātrum.

3. Nouns in *ca* lengthen the penult; as,

ăpŏthēca, cloāca, lactūca, lōrīca, phōca.

Except *ălĭca, brassĭca, dĭca, fŭlĭca, mantĭca, pĕdĭca, pertĭca, scŭtĭca, phălărĭca, tŭnĭca, vŏmĭca;* and also some nouns in *ica* derived from adjectives in *ĭcus;* as, *fabrĭca, grammătĭca,* etc. So *mănĭcæ.*

4. Patronymics in *ades* and *ides* shorten the penult; as, *Atlantiădes, Prĭămĭdes.*

Except those in *ides* which are formed from nouns in *eus* or *ēs* (*ĭs*); as, *Atrīdes,* from *Atrēus; Neoclīdes,* from *Neoclēs;* except, also, *Amphiărāĭdes, Bēlīdes, Amȳclīdes, Lȳcurgĭdes.*

5. Patronymics and similar words in *ais, eis,* and *ois,* lengthen the
penult; as,

Achāĭs, Chrȳsēĭs, Mīnōĭs. Except *Phōcăĭs* and *Thēbăĭs.* The penult of *Nē-reĭs* is common.

6. Words in *do* lengthen the penult; as,

vādo, cēdo, dulcēdo, formīdo, rōdo, testūdo. Except *cădo, dīvĭdo, ĕdo* (to eat), *comĕdo, Macĕdo, mŏdo, sŏlĭdo, spădo, trĕpĭdo.* *Rudo* is common.

7. Words in *idus* shorten the penult; those in *udus* lengthen it;
as,

callĭdus, herbĭdus, limpĭdus, lîvĭdus, perfĭdus; crūdus, lūdus, nūdus, sūdus, ūdus.
Except *Idus, fīdus, infīdus, nīdus, sīdus.*

8. Nouns in *ga* and *go* lengthen the penult; as,

sāga, collēga, aurīga, rūga; imāgo, cālīgo, ærūgo. Except *călĭga, ossĭfrăga, tŏga, plăga,* (a region, *or* a net), *fŭga* and its compounds, *stĕga, eclŏga, ĕgo, harpăgo, lĭgo.*

9. Words in *le, les,* and *lis,* lengthen the penult; as,

crīnāle, mantēle, ancīle; āles, mīles, prōles; annālis, crŭdēlis, cīvīlis, cŭrūlis.—
Except *măle;*—verbals in *ĭlis* and *bĭlis;* as, *ăgĭlis, ămābĭlis;*—adjectives in *atĭlis;* as, *umbrātĭlis,;*—and also, *indōles, sŏbŏles; pĕriscĕlis, dapsĭlis, grăcĭlis, hŭmĭlis, părĭlis, sĭmĭlis, stĕrĭlis, mūgĭlis, strigĭlis.*

10. Words in *elus, ela, elum,* lengthen the penult; as,

phăsēlus, quĕrēla, prēlum. Except *gĕlus, gĕlum, scĕlus.*

11. Diminutives in *olus, ola, olum, ulus, ula, ulum,* also words in

ilus, and those in *ulus*, *ula*, and *ulum*, of more than two syllables, shorten the penult; as,

urceŏlus, filiŏla, lectŭlus, rătiuncŭla, corcŭlum, păbŭlum; rŭtĭlus, garrŭlus, făbŭla. Except ăsĭlus.

12. Words in *ma* lengthen the penult; as,

fāma, poēma, rīma, plūma. Except ănĭma, cŏma, dĕcŭma, lacrĭma, victĭma, hăma.

13. A vowel before final *men* or *mentum* is long; as,

lĕvāmen, grāmen, crīmen, flūmen, jūmentum, ātrāmentum. Except tămen, cŏlŭmen, Hўmen, ĕlĕmentum, and a few verbal nouns derived from verbs of the second and third conjugations; as, ălĭmentum, dŏcŭmen or dŏcŭmentum, ēmŏlŭmentum, mŏnŭmentum, rĕgĭmen, spĕcĭmen, tĕgĭmen, etc.

14. Words ending in *imus* shorten the penult; as,

ănĭmus, dĕcĭmus, finĭtĭmus, fortissĭmus, maxĭmus. Except būnus, līmus, mīmus, ŏpīmus, quădrīmus, sīmus, trīmus, and two superlatives, īmus and prīmus.

NOTE. When an adjective ends in *umus* for *imus*, the quantity remains the same; as, dĕcŭmus, optŭmus, maxŭmus, for dĕcĭmus, etc.

15. *A*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, before final *mus* and *mum*, are long; as,

rāmus, rēmus, extrēmus, prōmus, dūmus, pōmum, vŏlēmum. Except ătŏmus, balsămun, cinnămum, dŏmus, glŏmus, hŭmus, postŭmus, thălămus, tŏmus, călămus, nĕmus.

16. (a.) Words in *na*, *ne*, *ni*, and *nis*, lengthen the penult; as,

lāna, ărēna, cărīna, mātrōna, lūna, māne, septēni, octōni, inānis, finis, immūnis. Except advēna, cottāna, ptisāna, mĭna, gĕna, bĕne, sĭne, cănis, cĭnis, jŭvĕnis; and the following in *ina*,—buccĭna, dŏmĭna, fiscĭna, fēmĭna, fuscĭna, lāmĭna, māchĭna, pāgĭna, pătĭna, sarcĭna, tĭbĭcĭna, trŭtĭna: and in plur. ăpĭnæ, mĭnæ, nundĭnæ. So compounds of gĕno; as, indĭgĕna.

(b.) Verbs in *ino* and *inor* shorten the penult; as,

destĭno, fascĭno, inquĭno, sĭno, crīmĭnor. Except festīno, propīno, săgīno, ŏpīnor, and the compounds of clīno; as, inclīno, etc.

17. (a.) Adjectives in *inus*, when they express time, or indicate a material or an inanimate substance, shorten the penult; as,

crastĭnus, diūtĭnus, pristĭnus, pĕrendĭnus: fāgĭnus, crŏcĭnus, hўăcinthĭnus, ădămantĭnus, crystallĭnus, ŏleăgĭnus, bombўcĭnus. Except mātūtīnus, rĕpentīnus, vespertīnus.

(b.) Other adjectives and words in *inus* and in *inum* lengthen the penult; as,

canīnus, bīnus, pĕregrīnus, mărīnus, clandestīnus, sŭpīnus: līnum. Except ăcĭnus, ăsĭnus, coccĭnus, cŏmĭnus, ēmĭnus, cŏphĭnus, dŏmĭnus, făcĭnus, fătĭcĭnus, prŏtĭnus, sĭnus, termĭnus, gĕmĭnus, circĭnus, mĭnus, vātĭcĭnus, succĭnum, fascĭnum.

18. *A*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, before final *nus* and *num*, are long; as,

urbīnus, sĕrēnus, patrōnus, prōnus, mūnus, trĭbūnus, fānum, vĕnēnum, dōnum. Except ănus, an old woman, galbănus, mănus, ōceănus, plătănus, ĕbĕnus, gĕnus, lĭmĭgĕnus, pĕnus, tĕnus, Vĕnus, ŏnus, bŏnus, sŏnus, thrŏnus; lăgănum, peucĕdănum, pŏpănum, tympănum, abrŏtŏnum.

19. Words ending in *ba*, *bo*, *pa*, and *po*, shorten the penult; as,

făba, jŭba, syllăba; bĭbo, cŭbo, prŏbo; ălăpa, lŭpa, scăpha; crĕpo, partĭcĭpo. Except glēba, scrība, būbo, glūbo, lĭbo, nūbo, scrībo, sīpho, cēpa, cūpa, pāpa, pūpa, rīpa, scōpa, stūpa; cāpo, rēpo, stīpo.

20. Words in *al*, *ar*, *are*, and *aris*, lengthen the penult; as,

trĭbūnal, vectīgal : lŭpānar, pulvīnar ; altāre, lăqueāre ; nāris. Except *ănĭmal, căpĭtal, cŭbĭtal, tŏrăl, jŭbar, sălar, măre, bĭmāris, hĭlāris, canthāris, cappāris, Ĭcăris.*

21. Before final *ro* or *ror*, *a* and *e* are short; *i*, *o*, and *u*, are long; as,

ăro, păro, fĕro, gĕro, sĕro, cĕlĕro, tempĕro, quĕror ; mīror, spīro, tīro ; auctōro, ignōro, ōro ; cūro, dūro, fĭgūro ; lūror. Except *dēclāro, pĕro, spĕro ; fŏro, mŏror, sŏror, vŏro, fŭro, sătŭro ;* and derivatives from genitives increasing short; as, *augŭror, dĕcŏro, mĕmŏro, murmŭro,* etc.; from *augur, augŭris ; dĕcus, dĕcŏris,* etc.

22. Before final *rus*, *ra*, *rum*, *e* is short; the other vowels are long; as,

mĕrum, mĕrus, hĕdĕra, sĕrum, cētĕrum; cārus, mīrus, mōrus, mūrus, gȳrus; āra, spīra, ōra, nātūra, lōrum.
Except,1. *austĕrus, gălĕrus, plērus, prōcērus, sincērus, sērus, sĕvērus, vērus, crātēra, cēra, pēra, panthēra, stătēra.*
Exc. 2. *barbărus, cammărus, cămărus, canthărus, chŏrus, fŏrus, hellĕbŏrus, nŭrus, ŏpĭpărus, ōvĭpărus, phosphŏrus, pirus, sătȳrus, scărus, spărus, tartărus, tŏrus, zĕphȳrus ; amphŏra, ancŏra, cithăra, hăra, lȳra, mŏra, purpŭra, phĭlȳra, pȳra, sătĭra ; fŏrum, gărum, părum, suppărum.*

23. Adjectives in *osus* lengthen the penult; as,

fūmōsus, vīnōsus.

24. Nouns in *etas* and *itas* shorten the penult; as,

pĭĕtas, cīvĭtas, bŏnĭtas.

25. Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult, those in *iter* and *itus* shorten it; as,

stātim, (constantly), *vĭrītim, trĭbūtim ; acrĭter, fundĭtus.* Except *stătĭm,* (immediately), *offātim.*

26. (*a.*) Words in *ates*, *itis*, *otis*, and in *ata*, *eta*, *ota*, *uta*, lengthen the penult, as,

vātes, pĕnātes, vītis, mītis, căryōtis, Ĭcărĭōtis, pīrāta, mēta, poēta, ălūta, cĭcūta. Except *sĭtis, pŏtis, drăpĕta, nŏta, rŏta.*

(*b.*) Nouns in *ita* shorten the penult; as,

ămĭta, nāvĭta, orbĭta, sēmĭta. Except *pītuīta.*

27. Nouns in *atum*, *itum*, *utum*, lengthen the penult; as,

lŭpātum, ăcŏnītum, vĕrūtum. Except *dēfrŭtum, pulpĭtum, pĕtŏrĭtum, lŭtum* (mud), *compĭtum.*

28. Nouns and adjectives ending in *tus* lengthen the penult; as,

barbātus, grātus, bōlētus, făcētus, crīnītus, pĕrītus, ægrōtus, tōtus, argūtus, hirsūtus. Except *cătus, lătus, (-ĕris), impĕtus, mĕtus, vĕgĕtus, vĕtus ; ănhēlĭtus, dĭgĭtus, grătuītus, hālĭtus, hospĭtus, servĭtus, spīrĭtus ; antīdŏtus, nŏtus, quŏtus, tŏtus* (so great); *arbŭtus, pŭtus ; inclўtus ;* and derivatives from perfect participles having a short penult; as, *exercĭtus, hăbĭtus.*

29. A penultimate vowel before *v* is long; as,

clāva, olīva, dīves, nāvis, cīvis, păpāver, pāvo, prīvo, ōvum, prāvus, æstīvus, fŭgĭtīvus. Except *ăvis, brĕvis, grăvis, lĕvis, ŏvis ; căvo, grăvo, jŭvo, lăvo, lĕvo, ŏvo ; ăvus, căvus, făvus, nŏvus, făvor, păvor, nŏvem.*

30. Words ending in *dex, dix, mex, nix, lex, rex,* lengthen the penult; as,

cōdex, jūdex; lōdix, rādix; cīmex, pūmex; jūnix; ĭlex; cārex, mūrex.
Except *cŭlex, sĭlex, rŭmex.*

II. ANTEPENULTS.

§ 292.   1. *I* is short in diminutives in *icŭlus* and *icellus* (*a, um*), whether nouns or adjectives; as,

collĭcŭlus, dulcĭcŭlus, crātĭcŭla, pellĭcŭla, mollicellus. Except words in which the preceding vowel is short; as, *cŭtĭcŭla, cănĭcŭla:* or in which *i* is long in the primitive; as, *cornĭcŭla,* from *cornix, -ĭcis.*

2. Numerals in *ginti, ginta, ēni,* and *esĭmus,* lengthen the antepenult; as,

vīgintĭ, quādrāginta, trīcēni, quinquāgēsĭmus.

3. *O* and *u* before final *lentus* are short; as,

vīnŏlentus, fraudŭlentus, pulvĕrŭlentus, trŭcŭlentus.

4. A vowel before final *nea, neo, nia, nio, nius, nium,* is long; as,

ărānea, līnea, cāneo, mūnia, pūnio, Făvōnĭus, patrĭmōnium. Except *castănea, tīnea, măneo, mĭneo, mŏneo, sĕneo, tĕneo, ignōmĭnia, luscĭnia, vĕnia, lănio, vĕnio, ingĕnium, gĕnius, sĕnio, sĕnium;* words in *cinium,* as, *lēnōcĭnium;* and derivatives in *onius,* when *o* in the root of the primitive is short; as, *Agămemnŏnius,* from *Agămemnon, -ŏnis.*

5. Words ending in *areo, arius, arium, erium, orius, orium,* lengthen the antepenult; as,

āreo, cĭbārius, plantārium, dictērium, censōrius, tentōrium. Except *cǎreo, vǎrius, dēsīdĕrium, impĕrium, măgistĕrium, mĭnistĕrium.*

6. Adjectives in *atĭcus, atĭlis,* lengthen the antepenult; as,

ăquātĭcus, plumātĭlis. Except some Greek words in *ătĭcus;* as, *grammătĭcus.*

7. *I* before final *tūdo* is short; as,

altĭtūdo, longĭtūdo.

8. Verbals in *bĭlis* lengthen *a* but shorten *i* in the antepenult; as,

ămābĭlis, mīrābĭlis; crēdĭbĭlis, terrĭbĭlis. In *hăbĭlis, b* belongs to the root.

9. *U* before *v* is short, (except in *Jūverna*); as,

jŭvĕnis, jŭvĕnālis, jŭvĕnīlĭtas, flŭvius, dīlŭvium.

III. PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 293.   1. Patrials and proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, *shorten* the penult:—

ba,	de,	o,[6]	ges,	dus,[13]	ena,[19]	arus,	atus,[22]
ca,[1]	le,[4]	on,[7]	les,	eus,[14]	anes,	erus,[21]	itus,[23]
la,[2]	pe,[5]	os,[8]	lis,[10]	gus,[15]	enes,	yrus,	otus,[24]
be,	re,	er,[9]	bus,	lus,[16]	aris,	asus,	
ce,[3]	al,	mas,	cus,[11]	mus,[17]	yris,	osus,	
che,	il,	ras,	chus,[12]	phus,[18]	asis,[20]	usus,	

Exceptions.

¹Mărīca, Nāsīca.—²Erīphyla, Messāla, Phĭlŏmēla, Suādēla.—³Bĕrĕnīce.—⁴Erĭphӯle, Neŏbūle, Pĕrĭmēle.—⁵Eurōpe, Sĭnōpe.—⁶Carthāgo, Cūpāvo, Cŭpīdo, Orīgo, Theāno.—⁷Alēmon, Anthēdon, Chalcēdon, Iāson, Phĭlēmon, Pŏlӯpē-mon, Sarpēdon, Thermōdon.—⁸Cercӯros, Pĕpărēthos, Pharsālos, Sĕrīphos.—⁹Mĕleāger.—¹⁰Bessālis, Eumēlis, Jŭvĕnālis, Martiālis, Phăsēlis, Stӯmphālis.—¹¹Bĕnācus, Caīcus, Grānĭcus, Nŭmĭcus, Trĭvīcus.—¹²Ophiūchus.—¹³Abӯdus.—¹⁴Căphārcus, Enīpeus, Prōmētheus, Phŏrōneus, Salmōneus, Oīleus.—¹⁵Cēthē-gus.—¹⁶*Names in* -clus, *in* -olus (*except* Æōlus, Naubōlus), *in* -bulus, (*except* Bĭbŭlus) Eumēlus, Gætūlus, Iūlus, Massӯlus, Orbēlus, Pharsālus, Sardănăpā-lus, Stӯmphālus.—¹⁷*Some in* -dēmus *and* -phēmus; *as,* Acădēmus, Pŏlӯphē-mus.—¹⁸Scrīphus.—¹⁹Alcmēna, Athēnæ, Cămēna, Fīdēna, Messēna, Mūrēna, Mӯcēnæ.—²⁰Amāsis.—²¹Hōmērus, Ibērus.—²²Arātus, Cærātus, Torquātus.—²³Hĕrāclītus, Hermăphrŏdītus.—²⁴Būthrōtus.

2. Proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, *lengthen* the penult:—

ana,¹	sa,	num,⁷	tas,	nus,¹²	urus,	etus,¹⁶
ina,²	ta,⁴	tum,	des,⁹	pus,¹³	esus,¹⁵	utus,
ona,³	tæ,⁵	or,⁸	tes,¹⁰	irus,	isus,	ytus,¹⁷
yna,	enc,⁶	nas,	tis,¹¹	orus,¹⁴	ysus,	vus.

Exceptions.

¹Sĕquăna.—²Mŭtĭna, Prōserpĭna, Ruspĭna, Sarsĭna.—³Axŏna, Matrŏna.—⁴Dalmăta, Prŏchӯta, Sarmăta, Lăpĭtha.—⁵Gălătæ, Jaxămĕtæ, Massăgĕtæ, Măcĕtæ, Saurŏmătæ.—⁶Clӯmĕne, Hĕlĕne, Melpŏmĕne, Nyctĭmĕne.—⁷Arĭmĭ-num, Drĕpănum.—⁸Nŭmĭtor.—⁹Miltĭădes, Pӯlădes, Sōtădes, Thūcӯdĭdes; *pa-tronymics in* -des, (§ 291, 4,) *and plurals in* -ades.—¹⁰Antĭphātes, Chărītes, Eu-rybātes, Ichnŏbātes, Euergĕtes, Massăgĕtes, *and all names in* -crates.—¹¹Der-cĕtis.—¹²Apĭdănus, Apŏnus, Cārănus, Chrӯsŏgŏnus, Cimĭnus, Clӯmĕnus, Con-cānus, Dardănus, Diădūmĕnus, Eărĭnus, Erĭdănus, Fūcĭnus, Hĕlĕnus, Lībănus, Mŏrĭni, Mӯcŏnus, Nebrŏphŏnus, Olĕnus, Pĕrĭclӯmĕnus, Rhŏdănus, Santŏnus, Sĕquăni, Stĕphănus, Tĕlĕgŏnus, Termĭnus, *and names in* -gonus *and* -xenus.—¹³Œdĭpus.—¹⁴Păcŏrus, Bospŏrus, *and names in* -chorus *and* -phorus; *as,* Stēsĭ-chŏrus, Phosphŏrus.—¹⁵Ephĕsus, Vogĕsus, Vŏlĕsus.—¹⁶Iăpĕtus, Tăӯgĕtus, Vĕnĕtus.—¹⁷Æpӯtus, Anӯtus, Eurӯtus, Hippŏlӯtus.

3. The penultimate vowel of the following proper names, and ad-jectives derived from proper names, though followed by a vowel, is long. See § 283, I. Exc. 6.

Ænēas, Æthīon, Achĕlōus, Achillēus, Alcўŏnēus, Alexandrīa, Alōeus, Al-phēus, Amīnēus, Amphiārāus, Amphīgĕnīa, Amphīon, Amӯthāon, Arīon, An-chīsēus, Atlantēus, Antiŏchīa, Biŏnēus, Cæsărēa, Cālaurēa, Calliŏpēa, Cassiŏ-pēa, Cleanthēas, Cӯdŏuēus, Cӯmŏdŏcēa, Cӯthĕrēa, Dārīus (-ēus), Dēĭdămīa, Dĭdӯmāon, Diŏmēdēus, Dŏlĭchāon, Echīon, Elēus, Endӯmĭōnēus, Enӯo, Eōus, Erĕbēus, Erecthēus, Gălātēa, Gĭgantēus, Hērăclēa (-ēus), Hippŏdămīa, Hӯpĕ-rīon, Ilīthӯīa, Imāon, Iŏlāus, Iphĭgĕnīa, Ixīon, Lāŏdămīa, Lātōus, Lesbōus, Lӯcāon, Măchāon, Mausōlēum, Mēdēa, Mĕnĕlāus, Mēthīon, Myrtōus, Ophīon, Orīon, Orīthӯīa, Orphēus, Pallantēum (-us), Pandīon, Paphăgēa, Pēnēus, Pen-thĕsīlēa, Phœbēus, Poppēa, Prōtĕsīlāus, Pyrēnēus, Sardōus, Thālīa.

NOTE. *Eus* in the termination of Greek proper names, is commonly a diph-thong; as, *Alceus, Cœneus, Orpheus, Pēleus, Perseus, Prōteus, Thēseus, TЎdeus,* which are dissyllables; *Briăreus, Enĭpheus, Macăreus, Typhōeus,* which are tri-syllables, *Idŏmĕneus,* etc. Cf. § 283, Exc. 6, Note 2. But in those which in Greek are written εὐς (*eios*), *eus* forms two syllables; as, *Alphēus.* So also in adjectives in *eus*, whether of Greek or Latin origin; as, *Erĕbēus, Erecthēus, Orphēus; aurĕus, lignĕus.*

QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

I. VOWELS.

MONOSYLLABLES.

§ **294.**   (*a*.) All monosyllables, except enclitics, ending in a vowel, are long; as,

ā, āh, dā, stā, ē, dē, mē, tē, sē, nē, rē, ĭ, f ī, hī, quī, nī, sī, O or *ōh, dō, prō, prōh, quō, stō, tū.*

POLYSYLLABLES.

A *final.*

1. *A* final, in words declined, is short; as, *mūsă, templă, căpĭtă, Tȳdeă.* Thus,

Mūsă mĭhi causas mĕmŏrā; quo nūmĭne læso.... *Virg.* A. 1, 8.

Exc. *A* final is long in the ablative of the first declension, and in the vocative of Greek nouns in *as* and *es;* as,

Mūsā, fundā; O Ænēā, O Pallā, O Anchīsā.

2. *A* final, in words not declined, is long; as, *ămā, frustrā, anteā, ergā, intrā.* Thus,

Extrā fortūnam est quidquid dōnātur ămīcis. *Mart.* Epig. 5, 42, 7.

Exc. *A* final is short in *eiă, ĭtă, quiă,* and in *pŭtă,* when used adverbially, in the sense of ‘for example.’ It is sometimes short in the preposition *contrā,* and in numerals ending in *ginta;* as, *trĭginta,* etc. In *postea,* it is common. *A* final is also short in the names of Greek letters; as, *alphă, bētă,* etc., and in *tărătantără,* the imitated sound of the trumpet.

E *final.*

§ **295.**   *E* final, in words of two or more syllables, is short; as, *nātĕ, patrĕ, ipsĕ, currĕ, rĕgĕrĕ, nempĕ, antĕ.* Thus,

Incĭpĕ, parvĕ puer, rīsu cognoscĕrĕ mātrem. *Virg.* E. 4, 60.

Remark. The enclitics *-que, -ne, -ve, -ce, -te, -pte,* etc., as they are not used alone, have *e* short, according to the rule; as, *nĕquĕ, hŭjuscĕ, suaptĕ.* Cf. § 294, (*a*.)

Exc. 1. *E* final is long in nouns of the first and fifth declensions; as,

Calliŏpē, Tȳdīdē, f īdē. So also in the compounds of *rē* and *diē;* as, *quārē, hŏdiē, prīdiē, postrīdiē, quŏtīdiē,* and in the ablative *fāmē,* originally of the fifth declension.

Exc. 2. *E* final is long in Greek vocatives from nouns in *-es,* of the third declension; as, *Achillē, Hippŏmĕnē;* and in Greek neuters plural; as, *cētē, mĕlē, pĕlăgē, Tempē.*

Exc. 3. In the second conjugation, *e* final is long in the second person singular of the imperative active; as, *dŏcē, mŏnē;*—but it is sometimes short in *căvĕ, vălĕ,* and *vĭdĕ.*

Exc. 4. *E* final is long in adverbs formed from adjectives of the second declension ; as,

plăcĭdē, pulchrē, valdē for *vălĭdē, maxĭmē ;* but it is short in *bĕnĕ, mălĕ, infernĕ,* and *supernĕ.*

Exc. 5. *Fĕrē, fermē,* and *ŏhē,* have the final *e* long.

I *final.*

§ **296.** *I* final is long ; as, *dŏmĭnī, fīlī, classī, dŏcērī, sī.* Thus,

<p style="text-align:center">Quid dŏmĭnī făcient, audent cum tālia fūres. Virg. E. 3, 16.</p>

Exc. 1. (*a.*) *I* final is common in *mĭhi, tĭbi, sĭbi, ĭbi,* and *ŭbi.*

(*b.*) In *ŭbīque* and commonly in *ĭbīdem* it is long, but in *ŭbĭvis* and *ŭbĭnam* it is short.—(*c.*) In *nĭsi, quăsi,* and *cui,* when a dissyllable, *i* final is common, but usually short. In *ūtĭnam* and *ūtĭque,* and rarely, also, in *ūti,* it is short.

Exc. 2. *I* final is short in the dative singular of Greek nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive; as, *Pallădĭ, Mĭnōĭdĭ, Tēthȳĭ.*

Exc. 3. *I* final is short in the vocative of Greek nouns in -*ĭs* ; as, *Alexĭ, Daphnĭ, Părĭ.* But it is long in vocatives from Greek nouns in -*īs,* (* us*) -*entos ;* as, *Sĭmōī, Pȳrōī.*

Exc. 4. *I* final is short in Greek datives and ablatives plural in -*sĭ,* or, before a vowel, -*sĭn* ; as, *Dryăsĭ, hērōĭsĭ, Trōăsĭn.*

O *final.*

§ **297.** *O* final, in words of two or more syllables, is common ; as, *virgŏ, ămŏ, quandŏ.* Thus,

<p style="text-align:center">Ergŏ mĕtu căpĭta Scylla est ĭnĭmīca păterno. Virg. Cir. 386.
Ergō sollĭcĭtæ tu causa, pĕcūnia, vītæ es ! Prop. 3, 5, 1.</p>

Exc. 1. *O* final is long in the dative and ablative singular ; as, *dŏmĭnō, regnō, bonō, suō, illō, eō.*

Exc. 2. *O* final is long in ablatives used as adverbs ; as, *certō, falsō, mĕrĭtō, vulgō, eō, quō ;* and also in *omnīnō,* in *ergō,* 'for the sake of,' and in the interjection *iŏ.*

REMARK 1. The final *o* of verbs is almost always long in poets of the Augustan age.

REM. 2. In poets subsequent to the Augustan age, final *o* in verbs, in gerunds, and in the adverbs *ădeo, īdeo, ergo, sĕro, vēro, porro, retro, immo, ĭdcirco, sŭbĭto,* and *postrēmo,* is sometimes short.

Exc. 3. *O* final is short in *cĭto, illĭco, prŏfecto,* and the compounds of *mŏdo ;* as, *dummŏdŏ, postmŏdŏ,* etc.; and in *ĕgo* and *hŏmo* it is more frequently short than long.

Exc. 4. *O* final in Greek nouns written with an omĕga (ω) is long ; as, *Clīō, Dīdō, Athō,* and *Andrŏgeō,* (gen.)

U *final.*

§ **298.** 1. *U* final is long ; as, *vultū, cornū, Panthū, dictū, diū.* Thus,

<p style="text-align:center">Vultū, quo cœlum tempestātesque sĕrēnat. Virg. A. 1, 255.</p>

Exc. *Indŭ* and *nĕnŭ,* ancient forms of *in* and *non,* have *u* short. *U* is also short in terminations in *ŭs* short, when *s* is removed by elision; as, *contentŭ',* for *contentŭs.* See § 305, 2.

Y *final.*

2. *Y* final is short; as, *Mōlў, Tiphў.* Thus,

Mōlў vŏcant sŭpĕri: nigrā rādīce tĕnētur. Ovid. M. 14, 292.

Exc. *Y* in the dative *Tēthў,* being formed by contraction, is long. § 283, III.

II. CONSONANTS.

MONOSYLLABLES.

§ **299.** 1. Monosyllabic *substantives* ending in a consonant are long; all other monosyllables ending in a consonant are short; as,

sōl, vīr, fūr, jūs, splēn, vēr, fār, lār, Nār, pār, Sēr, fūr, fās, mās, rēs, pēs, Dīs, glīs, līs, vīs, flōs, mōs, rōs, Trōs, ōs, (ōris,) dōs, grūs, rūs, tūs ;—nĕc, in, ăn, ăb, ăd, quĭd, quĭs, quŏt, ĕt ; as,

Ipse dŏcet *quĭd* agam. *Fās* est *ĕt ăb* hoste dŏcēri. *Ovid.* M. 4, 428.
Vēr ădeo frondi nĕmŏrum, *vēr* ūtīle silvis. *Virg.* G. 2, 323.

Note. The rules for the quantity of final syllables ending in a consonant imply that the consonant is single, and that it is preceded by a single vowel. If otherwise the syllable will be long by § 283, IV. and II.

Exc. 1. *Cŏr, fĕl, mĕl, pŏl, vĭr, ŏs* (gen. *ossis*), and probably *vas* (*vădis*), are short.

Exc. 2. *En, nōn, quīn, sīn, crās, plūs, cūr,* and *pār,* are long: so also are particles and pronouns ending in *c,* except *nĕc,* which is short, and the pronouns *hīc* and *hŏc,* in the nominative and accusative, which are common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllabic plural cases of pronouns and forms of verbs in *as, es,* and *is,* are long; as, *hās, quās, hōs, nōs, vōs, quōs, hīs, quīs ;—dās, flēs, stēs, īs, fīs, sīs, vīs ;* except *ĕs* from *sum* which is short.

Exc. 4. The abridged imperatives retain the quantity of their root; as, *dĭc, dūc,* from *dīco, dūco; făc, fĕr,* from *făcio, fĕro.*

POLYSYLLABLES.

D, L, N, R, T, *final.*

2. Final syllables ending in *d, l, n, r,* and *t,* are short; as, *illŭd, consŭl, carmĕn, pătĕr, căpŭt.*   Thus,

Obstŭpuit *sĭmŭl* ipse, sĭmul perculsus Achātes. *Virg.* A. 1, 513.
Nōmĕn Ariŏnium Sīcŭlas *implēvĕrăt* urbes. *Ovid.* F. 2, 93.
Dum *lŏquŏr,* horrŏr, hăbet; parsque est mĕmĭnisse dŏlōris. *Id.* M. 9, 291.

Exc. 1. *E* in *liĕn* is long.

Exc. 2. In Greek nouns, nominatives in *n* (except those in *on,* written with an *omicron*), masculine or feminine accusatives in *an* or *en,* and genitives plural in *on,* lengthen the final syllable; as,

Tītăn, Oriōn, Ænĕăn, Anchīsēn, Calliŏpēn ; ĕpĭgrammătōn.

Exc. 3. *Aēr, œthēr,* and nouns in *ēr* which form their genitive in *ēris,* lengthen the final syllable ; as,

cratēr, sotēr. So also *Ibēr ;* but the compound *Celtiber* has sometimes in Martial its last syllable short.

REMARK. A final syllable ending in *t,* may be rendered long by a diphthong, by contraction, by syncopation, or by position; as, *aut, ăbĭt* for *ăbiit, f ūmăt,* for *fumăvit, ămānt.* See § 283, II. III. IV., and § 162, 7, (*d.*)

M *final.*

NOTE. Final *m* with the preceding vowel is almost always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel. See *Ecthlipsis,* § 305, 2.

3. Final syllables ending in *m,* when it is not cut off, are short ; as,

Quam laudas, plūmā? cocto *nŭm* ădest hŏnŏr īdem. *Hor.* S. 2, 2, 28.

REMARK. Hence in composition the final syllables of *cum* and *circum* are short ; as, *cŏmĕdo, circŭmăgo.*

C *final.*

4. Final syllables ending in *c* are long ; as, *ālēc, illīc, istāc, illūc.* Thus,

Illīc indocto prīmum se exērcuit arcu. *Tib.* 2, 1, 69.

Exc. The final syllable of *dōnĕc* is short ; as,

Dōnĕc ĕris fēlix, multos nŭmĕrābis ămīcos. *Ovid.* Trist. 1, 9, 5.

AS, ES, *and* OS, *final.*

§ **300.**   Final syllables in *as, es,* and *os,* are long ; as,

mūsās, piĕtās, ămās, Æneās, quiēs, sermōnēs, diēs, Pēnĕlŏpēs, dŭcentiēs, mŏnēs, hŏnōs, virōs, dŏmĭnōs. Thus,

Hās autem *terrās,* Itălīque hanc lītŏris ōram. *Virg.* A. 3, 396.
Si mŏdo *dēs* illis cultus, *sĭmŭlēs*que părātus. *Ovid.* M. 6, 454.

Exc. 1. (*a.*) AS. *As* is short in *ănăs,* in Greek nouns whose genitive ends in *ădis* or *ădos* ; as, *Arcăs, Pallăs ;* and in Greek accusatives plural of the third declension ; as, *hērōăs, lampădăs.*

(*b.*) *As* is short also in Latin nouns in *as, ădos,* formed like Greek patronymics ; as, *Appiăs.*

Exc. 2. ES. (*a.*) Final *es* is short in nouns and adjectives of the third declension which increase short in the genitive ; as, *hospĕs, līmĕs, hĕbĕs ;* gen. *hospĭtis,* etc.

(*b.*) But it is long in *ăbiēs, ăriēs, păriēs, Cĕrēs,* and *pēs,* with its compounds *cornĭpēs, sŏnĭpēs,* etc.

(*c.*) *Es,* in the present tense of *sum* and its compounds, and in the preposition *pĕnēs,* is short.

(*d.*) *Es* is short in Greek neuters in *es ;* as, *căcoĕthĕs,* and in Greek nominatives and vocatives plural from nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive ; as, *Arcădĕs, Trŏĕs, Amazŏnĕs ;* from *Arcas, Arcădis,* etc.

Exc. 3. OS. (*a.*) *Os* is short in *compŏs, impŏs,* and *ŏs* (*ossis*), with its compound *exŏs.*

(*b.*) *Os* is short in Greek nouns and cases written in the original with *omi-cron*; as (1) in all neuters; as, *chăŏs*, *ĕpŏs*, *Argŏs*; (2) in all nouns of the second declension; as, *Ĭlĭŏs*, *Tўrŏs*, *Dēlŏs*; except those whose genitive is in *ō*, (Greek ω); as, *Athōs*, gen. *Athō*; (3) in genitives singular of the third declension; as, *Pallădŏs*, *Tēthyŏs*, from *Pallăs* and *Tēthys*.

IS, US, *and* YS, *final.*

§ **301.**   Final syllables in *is*, *us*, and *ys*, are short; as,

turrĭs, *mīlĭtĭs*, *mītĭs*, *ămātĭs*, *ămābĭs*, *măgĭs*; *pectŭs*, *bŏnŭs*, *ējŭs*, *ămāmŭs*, *rursŭs*, *tĕnŭs*; *Căpўs*, *Ĭtўs*.   Thus,

> Non *ăpĭs* inde tŭlit collectos sēdŭla flōres. *Ovid.* M. 13, 928.
> *Sērĭŭs* aut cĭtius sēdem *prŏpĕrāmŭs* ad ūnam. *Id.* M. 10, 33.
> At *Căpўs*, et quōrum mĕlior sententia menti. *Virg.* A. 2, 35.

EXC. 1. IS. (*a.*) *Is* is long in plural cases; as,

mūsīs, *nōbīs*; *omnīs*, *urbīs*, (for *omnēs*, *urbēs*); *quīs*, (for *quēis* or *quĭbus*).   So also in the adverbs *grātīs*, *ingrātīs*, and *fŏrīs*, which are in reality datives or ablatives plural.

> Et lĭquĭdi sĭmŭl ignis; ut *hīs* exordia *prīmīs*. *Virg.* A. 6, 33.
> *Quīs* ante ōra patrum Trōjæ sub mœnĭbus altis. *Id.* A. 1, 95.
> Non *omnīs* arbusta jŭvant, hŭmĭlesque mўrīcæ. *Id.* E. 4, 2.
> Adde tŏt ēgrĕgias *urbīs*, ŏpĕrumque lăbōrem. *Id.* G. 2, 155.

(*b.*) *Is* is long in the nominative of nouns whose genitive ends in *ītis*, *īnis*, or *entis*; as, *Samnīs*, *Sălămīs*, *Sĭmoīs*.

(*c.*) *Is* is long in the second person singular of the present indicative active of the fourth conjugation; as,

audīs, *nescīs*.   So also in the second persons, *fīs*, *īs*, *sīs*, *vīs*, *vĕlīs*, and their compounds; as, *adsīs*, *possīs*, *quamvīs*, *mālīs*, *nōlīs*, etc.   Cf. § 299, 1, EXC. 3.

(*d.*) *Rĭs*, in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common; as, *vĭdĕrĭs*.

EXC. 2. US. (*a.*) *Us* is long in nouns of the third declension which increase long, and in the genitive singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension, (§ 89, Rem., and § 283, III.); as,

tellūs, *virtūs*, *incūs*;—*fructūs*.   But *pălŭs*, with the *us* short, occurs in Horace, Art. Poet. 65.

(*b.*) *Us* is long in Greek nouns written in the original with the diphthong *ous* (οὖς) whether in the nominative or genitive; as, nom. *Amăthūs*, *Opūs*, *Œdĭpūs*, *trĭpūs*, *Panthūs*; gen. *Dīdūs*, *Sapphūs*.   But compounds of *pus* (πούς), when of the second declension, have *us* short; as, *pŏlўpŭs*.

NOTE.   The last syllable of every verse, (except the anapæstic and the Ionic *a minōre*), may be either long or short at the option of the poet.

REMARK.   By this is meant, that although the measure require a long syllable, a short one may be used in its stead; and a long syllable may be used where a short one is required; as in the following verses, where the short syllable *ma* stands instead of a long one, and the long syllable *cu* instead of a short one:—

> Sanguĭnĕāque mănu crĕpĭtantia concŭtit armă. *Ovid.* M. 1, 143.
> Non ēget Mauri jăcŭlīs, nec arcū. *Hor.* Od. 1, 22, 2.

VERSIFICATION.

FEET.

§ **302.** A foot is a combination of two or more syllables of a certain quantity.

Feet are either simple or compound. Simple feet consist of two or three syllables; compound feet of four.

I. SIMPLE FEET.

1. *Of two Syllables.*

Spondee,.............two long, — —; as,...................*fŭndŭnt.*
Pyrrhic,.............two short, ◡ ◡; as,....................*Dĕŭs.*
Trochee, or *choree,*....a long and a short, — ◡; as,..........*ărmă.*
Iambus,.............a short and a long, ◡ —; as,..........*ĕrānt.*

2. *Of three Syllables.*

Dactyl,..............a long and two short, — ◡ ◡; as,.......*cŏrpŏră.*
Anapæst,............two short and a long, ◡ ◡ —; as,........*dŏmĭnī.*
Tribrach,...........three short, ◡ ◡ ◡; as,................*făcĕrĕ.*
Molossus,...........three long, — — —; as,................*cōntēndūnt.*
Amphibrach,.........a short, a long, and a short, ◡ — ◡; as,..*ămārĕ.*
Amphimăcrus, or *Cretic,* a long, a short, and a long, — ◡ —; as,..*cāstĭtās.*
Bacchīus,.............a short and two long, ◡ — —; as,........*Cătōnēs.*
Antibacchīus,.........two long and a short, — — ◡; as,.......*Rōmānŭs.*

II. COMPOUND FEET.

Dispondee,..........a double spondee, — — — —; as,.........*cōnflīxērūnt.*
Proceleusmatic,......a double Pyrrhic, ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡; as,.........*hŏmĭnĭbŭs.*
Ditrochee,..........a double trochee, — ◡ — ◡; as,.........*cōmprŏbāvĭt.*
Diiambus,...........a double iambus, ◡ — ◡ —; as,.........*ămāvĕrānt.*
Greater Ionic,.......a spondee and a Pyrrhic, — — ◡ ◡; as,...*cōrrēxĭmŭs.*
Smaller Ionic,.......a Pyrrhic and a spondee, ◡ ◡ — —; as,...*prŏpĕrābānt.*
Choriambus,........a choree and an iambus, — ◡ ◡ —; as,...*tērrĭfĭcānt.*
Antispast,...........an iambus and a choree, ◡ — — ◡; as,...*ădhæsīssĕ.*
First epitrit,........an iambus and a spondee, ◡ — — —; as,...*ămāvērūnt.*
Second epitrit,......a trochee and a spondee, — ◡ — —; as,...*cōndĭtōrēs.*
Third epitrit,.......a spondee and an iambus, — — ◡ —; as,...*discōrdĭās.*
Fourth epitrit,......a spondee and a trochee, — — — ◡; as,...*āddūxīstĭs.*
First pæon,.........a trochee and a Pyrrhic, — ◡ ◡ ◡; as,...*tēmpŏrĭbŭs.*
Second pæon, ...an iambus and a Pyrrhic, ◡ — ◡ ◡; as,...*pŏtēntĭă.*
Third pæon,........a Pyrrhic and a trochee, ◡ ◡ — ◡; as,...*ănĭmātŭs.*
Fourth pæon,.......a Pyrrhic and an iambus, ◡ ◡ ◡ —; as,...*cĕlĕrĭtās.*

REMARK. Those feet are called *isochronous,* which consist of equal times; as the spondee, the dactyl, the anapæst, and the proceleusmatic, one long time being considered equal to two short.

METRE.

§ **303.** 1. *Metre* is an arrangement of syllables and feet according to certain rules.

2. In this general sense, it comprehends either an entire verse, a part of a verse, or any number of verses.

3. Metre is divided into *dactylic, anapæstic, iambic, trochaic, choriambic,* and *Ionic.* These names are derived from the original or fundamental foot employed in each.

4. A *metre* or *measure,* in a specific sense, is either a single foot, or a combination of two feet. In the dactylic, choriambic, and Ionic metres, a measure consists of one foot; in the other metres, of two feet. Two feet constituting a measure are sometimes called a *syzygy.*

VERSES.

§ **304.** A *verse* is a certain number of feet, arranged in a regular order, and constituting a line of poetry.

1. Two verses are called a *distich;* a half verse, a *hemistich.*

2. Verses are of different kinds, denominated sometimes, like the different species of metre, from the foot which chiefly predominates in them; as, *dactylic, iambic,* etc.;—sometimes from the number of feet or metres which they contain; as, *sēnārius,* consisting of six feet; *octŏnārius,* of eight feet; *mŏnŏmĕter,* consisting of one measure; *dĭmĕter,* of two; *trĭmĕter, tetramĕter, pentamĕter, hexamĕter;*—sometimes from a celebrated author who used a particular species; as, *Sapphic, Anacreontic, Alcaic, Asclepiadic, Glyconic, Phalæcian, Sotadic, Archilochian, Alcmanian, Pherecratic, Aristophanic,* etc., from *Sappho, Anacreon, Alcæus, Asclepiădes, Glўcon, Phalæcus, Sotădes, Archilŏchus, Alcman, Pherecrătes, Aristophănes,* etc.—and sometimes from the particular uses to which they were applied; as, the *prosodiac,* from its use in solemn processions, the *parœmiac,* from its frequent use in proverbs.

3. A verse, with respect to the metres which it contains, may be complete, deficient, or redundant.

(1.) A verse which is complete is called *acatalectic.*

(2.) A verse which is deficient, if it wants one syllable at the end, is called *catalectic;* if it wants a whole foot or half a metre, it is called *brachycatalectic.*

(3.) A verse which wants a syllable at the beginning, is called *acephalous.*

(4.) A verse which has a redundant syllable or foot, is called *hypercatalectic* or *hypermĕter.*

4. Hence, the complete name of every verse consists of three terms—the first referring to the *species,* the second to the *number of metres,* and the third to the *ending;* as, the *dactylic trimĕter catalectic*

5. A verse or portion of a verse of any kind (measured from the beginning) which contains three half feet, or a foot and a half, is called a *trihēmĭmĕris;* if it contains five half feet, or two feet and a half, it is called a *penthēmĭmĕris;* if seven half feet, or three feet and a half, a *hepthēmĭmĕris;* if nine half feet, or four feet and a half, an *ennehēmĭmĕris.* A portion of a verse consisting of one whole metre and a half, is called a *hēmiŏlius,* as being the half of a *trimeter.*

NOTE. The respective situation of each foot in a verse is called its *place.*

6. SCANNING is the dividing of a verse into the feet of which it is composed.

REMARK. In order to scan correctly, it is necessary to know the quantity of each syllable, and also to understand the following poetic usages, which are sometimes called

FIGURES OF PROSODY.

SYNALŒPHA.

§ **305.** 1. *Synalœpha* is the elision of a final vowel or diphthong in scanning, when the following word begins with a vowel.

Thus, *terra antīqua* is read *terr' antīqua; Dardănĭdæ infensi, Dardănĭd' infensi; vento huc, vent' huc.* So,

Quidve mŏror? si omnes ūno ordĭne hăbētis Achīvos. *Virg.* A. 2, 102.

Which is scanned thus—

Quidve mŏror? s' omnes ūn' ordĭn' hăbētis Achīvos.

(1.) The interjections *O, heu, ah, proh, væ, vah,* are not elided; as,

O et de Lătiâ, *O* et de gente Săbīnā. *Ovid.* M. 14, 832.

REMARK. But *O,* though not elided, is sometimes made short; as,

Te Cŏrȳdon *O* Alexi; trăhit sua quemque vŏluptas. *Virg.* E. 2, 65.

(2.) Other long vowels and diphthongs sometimes remain unelided, in which case, when in the thesis of a foot, they are commonly made short; as,

Victor ăpud răpĭdum Sīmoënta sŭb *Iliŏ* alto. *Virg.* A. 5, 261.
Anni tempŏre eo *quī Etēsiæ* esse fĕruntur. *Lucr.* 6, 717.
Ter sunt *cōnātī* impōnĕre *Pēliŏ* Ossam. *Virg.* G. 1, 281.
Glaucō et *Pănŏpēæ,* et Inōo Mēlĭcertæ. *Id.* G. 1, 436.

(3.) Rarely a short vowel, also, remains without elision; as,

Et vēra incessu pătuit *deă.* Ille ŭbi mātrem.... *Virg.* A. 1, 405.

(4.) Synalœpha in a monosyllable occasionally occurs; as,

Si ad vitŭlam spectas, nihil est, quod pocŭla laudes. *Virg.* E. 3, 48.

For synalœpha at the end of a line, see *Synapheia,* § 307, 3.

ECTHLIPSIS.

2. *Ecthlipsis* is the elision of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, when the following word begins with a vowel. Thus,

O cūras hŏmĭn*um,* O quant*um* est in rēbus Ināne! *Pers.* 1, 1.

Which is thus scanned—

> O cūras hŏmin' O quant' est ĭn rēbus īnāne.

Monstr*um* horrend*um*, informe, ingens, cui lūmen ădemptum. *Virg.* A. 3, 658.

(1.) This elision was sometimes omitted by the early poets; as,

> Corpŏrŭm officium est quŏniam prĕmĕre omnia deorsum. *Lucr.* 1, 363.

See § 299, 2.

(2.) Final *s*, also, with the preceding vowel, is sometimes elided by the early poets before a vowel, and sometimes *s* alone before a consonant; as, *content' atque* (Enn.), for *contentus atque; omnĭbu' rēbus*. (*Lucr.*) So,

> Tum lătĕrāli' dŏlor, certissĭmu' nunciu' mortis. *Lucil.*

REMARK. This elision took place principally in short syllables.

For ecthlipsis at the end of a line, see *Synapheia*, § 307, 3.

SYNÆRESIS.

§ **306.** 1. Synæresis is the contraction into one syllable of two vowels which are usually pronounced separately. Thus,

> Aureā percussum virgā, versumque vĕnēnis. *Virg.* A. 7, 190.
> Eosdem hăbuĭt sēcum, quĭbus erat ēlāta, căpillos. *Prop.* 4, 7, 7.
> Tītȳre, pascentes a flūmine *reice* căpellas. *Virg.* E. 3, 96.

REMARK 1. So *Phaëthon* is pronounced *Phœthon; alveo, alvo; Orphea, Orpha; deorsum, dorsum.*

(1.) Synæresis is frequent in *ii, ĭidem, iisdem, dii, diis, dein, deinceps, deinde, deest, deĕrat, deĕro, deĕrit, deesse*; as,

> Præcīpĭtātur ăquis, et ăquis nox surgit ab îsdem. *Ovid.* M. 4, 92.
> Sint Mæcēnātes; non deerunt, Flacce, Márōnes. *Mart.* 8, 56, 5.

REM. 2. *Cui* and *huic* are usually monosyllables.

(2.) When two vowels in compound words are read as one syllable, the former may rather be considered as elided than as united with the latter; as, *e* in *anteambŭlo, anteīre, antĕhac, dehinc, mehercŭle*, etc., and *a* in *contrāīre*.

(3.) The syllable formed by the union of *i* or *u* followed by another vowel retains the quantity of the latter vowel, whether long or short; as, *ăbiĕte, ăriĕte, ābiĕgnœ, păriĕtibus, consiliŭm, fortuītus, Nāsĭdiĕnus, vindēmiātor, omniă; gēnuă, tēnuĭs, pītuīta, flūviŏrum*, etc. In such examples, the *i* and *u* are pronounced like initial *y* and *w*; as, *ābyĕte, păryĕtibus, consĭlyum, fortwītus, Nāsĭdyēnus, omn-yā, tenwĭs, pĭtwīta*, etc.; and, like consonants, they have, with another consonant, the power of lengthening a preceding short vowel, as in the above examples.

NOTE. In Statius, the word *tĕnuiŏre* occurs as a trisyllable, in which the three vowels, *uio*, are united in pronunciation; thus, *tĕn-wiŏ-re.*

(4.) Sometimes, after a synalœpha or echthlipsis, two vowels suffer synæresis; as, *stellio et*, pronounced *stell-yet*: consīlium *et*,—*consīl-yet.*

(5.) If only one of the vowels is *written*, the contraction is called *crasis*; as, *dî, consĭlî*, for *dii, consĭlii.*

DIÆRESIS.

2. *Diæresis* is the division of one syllable into two; as,

> aulăī, Trŏĭa, sĭlŭa, sŭădent; for aulœ, Troia or Troja, silva, sŭădent. So,
> sŭesco for suesco; rĕlĭqŭŭs for rĕlĭquus; ecqŭĭs for ecquis; mĭlŭŭs for milvus, etc.,
> as,

Æthĕreum sensum, atque *aurāï* simplĭcis ignem. *Virg.* A. 6. 747.
Atque ălios ălii irrīdent, Vĕnĕremque *sŭādent*. *Lucr.* 4, 1153.
Grammătici certant; et ădhuc sub *iūdĭce* lis est. *Hor.* A. P. 78.
Aurārum et *silŭæ* mĕtu. *Id.* O. 1, 23, 4.

(1.) So in Greek words originally written with a diphthong (ευ or η); as, *ĕlĕgēïa* for *ĕlĕgīa*, *Bacchēïa* for *Bacchēa*, *Rhœtēïŭs* for *Rhœtēus*, *Plēïăs* for *Plĭăs:* and also in words of Latin origin; as, *Vēïŭs* for *Veïus*, *Aquilēïă* for *Aquileïă*.

REMARK. This figure is sometimes called *dialy̆sis*.

SYSTOLE.

§ **307.** 1. *Systŏle* is the shortening of a syllable which is long by nature or by position; as,

vĭdē'n for *vĭdesne*, in which *e* is naturally long; *sătī'n* for *sătisne*, in which *i* is long by position;—*hŏdie* for *hŏc die; multimŏdis* for *multīs mŏdis.* So,

Dūcĕre *multĭmŏdis* vōces, et flectĕre cantus. *Lucr.* 5, 1405.

(1.) By the omission of *j* after *ăb, ăd, ŏb, sŭb,* and *rĕ,* in compound words, those prepositions retain their naturally short quantity, which would otherwise be made long by position; as, *ăbĭci, ădĭcit, ŏbĭcis,* etc. Thus,

Si quid nostra tuis *ădĭcit* vexātio rēbus. *Mart.* 10, 82, 1.

REMARK. In some compounds the short quantity of *ăd* and *ŏb* is preserved before a consonant by the elision of the *d* or *b* of the preposition, as in *ăpĕrio, ŏpĕrio, ŏmitto,* etc.

(2.) The penult of the third person plural of certain perfects is said by some to be shortened by systole; as, *stĕtĕrunt, tŭlĕrunt,* etc.; but others ascribe these irregularities to the errors of transcribers, or the carelessness of writers.

DIASTOLE.

2. *Diastŏle* is the lengthening of a syllable which is naturally short.

(1.) It occurs most frequently in proper names and in compounds of *re;* as, *Prĭămīdes, rēlĭgio,* etc. Thus,

Hanc tĭbi *Prĭămīdes* mitto, Lēdæa, sălūtem. *Ovid.* H. 16, 1.
Rēlĭgiōne patrum multos servāta per annos. *Virg.* A. 2, 715.

(2.) Some editors double the consonant after the lengthened *re;* as, *rellĭgio.*

(3.) Diastole is sometimes called *ectăsis.*

SYNAPHEIA.

3. *Synapheia* is such a connection of two consecutive verses, that the first syllable of the latter verse has an influence on the final syllable of that which precedes, either by position, synalœpha, or ecthlipsis. See §§ 283 and 305.

(1.) This figure is most frequent in anapæstic verse, and in the *Ionic a minōre.*

The following lines will illustrate its effect:—

Præceps silvas montesque *fugīt*
Citus Actæon. *Sen.*

Here the *i* in the final syllable of *fugit,* which is naturally short, is made long by position before the following consonants, *tc.*

> Omnia Mercŭrio sĭmĭlis, vōcemque cŏlōrem*que*
> Et crīnes flāvos.... *Virg.* A. 4, 558.
> Dissĭdens plēbi nŭmĕro beātōr*um*
> Exīmit virtus. *Hor.* O. 2, 2, 18.

In the former of these examples, synapheia and synalœpha are combined, *que* being elided before *et* in the following line; in the latter there is a similar combination of synapheia and ecthlipsis.

(2.) By synapheia, the parts of a compound word are sometimes divided between two verses; as,

> .... si non offendĕret *ūnum-*
> *Quemque* poëtārum līmæ lābor et mŏra... *Hor.* A. P. 290.

(3.) In hexameter verse a redundant syllable at the end of a line elided before a vowel at the beginning of the next line, by causing the accent to fall on the second syllable of the concluding spondee, and connecting the two verses by synapheia, excites the expectation of something which is to follow, and often tends to magnify the object; as,

> Quōs sŭpĕr- | -ātrā sī- | -lĕx, jām- | -jām lāp- | -sūră că- | -dēntī- | *-que*
> Immĭnet assĭmĭlis. *Virg.* A. 6, 602.

REMARK. The poets often make use of other figures, also, which, however, are not peculiar to them. Such are *prosthĕsis, ăphœrĕsis, syncŏpe, epenthĕsis, apocŏpe, paragōge, tmēsis, antithĕsis,* and *metathĕsis.* See § 322.

ARSIS AND THESIS.

§ **308.** (1.) *Rhythm* is the alternate elevating and depressing of the voice at regular intervals in pronouncing the syllables of verse.

(2.) The elevation of the voice is called *arsis,* its depression *thesis.* These terms designate, also, the parts of a foot on which the elevation or depression falls.

1. The natural arsis is on the long syllable of a foot; and hence, in a foot composed wholly of long, or wholly of short syllables, when considered in itself, the place of the arsis is undetermined; but when such foot is substituted for the fundamental foot of a metre, its arsis is determined by that of the latter.

REMARK. Hence, a spondee, in trochaic or dactylic metre, has the arsis on the first syllable; but in iambic or anapæstic metre, it has it on the last.

2. The arsis is either equal in duration to the thesis, or twice as long.

Thus, in the dactyl, — ◡ ◡, and anapæst, ◡ ◡ —, it is equal; in the trochee, — ◡, and iambus, ◡ —, it is twice as long. This difference in the proportionate duration of the arsis and thesis constitutes the difference of rhythm. A foot is said to have the *descending* rhythm, when its arsis is at the beginning, and the *ascending,* when the thesis is at the beginning.

3. The stress of voice which falls upon the arsis of a foot, is called the *ictus.* When a long syllable in the arsis of a foot is resolved into two short ones, the ictus falls upon the former.

NOTE 1. Some suppose that the terms *arsis* and *thesis,* as used by the ancients, denoted respectively the rising and falling of the hand in beating time, and that the place of the thesis was the syllable which received the ictus

Note 2. As the ancient pronunciation of Latin is not now understood, writers differ in regard to the mode of reading verse. According to some, the accent of each word should always be preserved; while others direct that the stress of voice should be laid on the arsis of the foot, and that no regard should be paid to the accent.

It is generally supposed that the final letters elided by synalœpha and ecthlipsis, though omitted in scanning, were pronounced in reading verse.

CÆSURA.

§ **309**. *Cæsura* is the separation, by the ending of a word, of syllables rhythmically or metrically connected.

Cæsura is of three kinds:—1, of the *foot;* 2, of the *rhythm;* and 3, of the *verse.*

1. Cæsura of the foot occurs when a word ends before a foot is completed; as,

Silves- | -trem tenu- | -i Mu- | -sam medi- | -tāris a- | -vēnā. *Virg.* E. 1, 2.

2. Cæsura of the rhythm is the separation of the arsis from the thesis by the ending of a word, as in the second, third, and fourth feet of the preceding verse.

Rem 1. It hence appears that the cæsura of the rhythm is always a cæsura of the foot, as *e. g.* in the 2d, 3d, and 4th feet of the preceding verse; but, on the contrary, that the cæsura of the foot is not always a cæsura of the rhythm, as *e. g.* in the fifth foot of the same verse.

(1.) Cæsura of the rhythm allows a final syllable naturally short, to stand in the arsis of the foot instead of a long one, it being lengthened by the *ictus;* as,

Pĕctŏri- | -bŭs ĭnhī- | -āns spī- | -rāntĭā | cōnsŭlĭt | ēxta. *Virg.* A. 4, 64.

This occurs chiefly in hexameter verse.

Rem. 2. Cæsura of the foot and of the verse do not of themselves lengthen a short syllable, but they often coincide with that of the rhythm.

3. Cæsura of the verse is such a division of a line into two parts, as affords to the voice a convenient pause or rest, without injury to the sense or harmony.

Rem. 3. The cæsura of the verse is often called the *cæsural pause.* In several kinds of verse, its place is fixed; in others, it may fall in more than one place, and the choice is left to the poet. Of the former kind is the pentameter, of the latter the hexameter.

The proper place of the cæsural pause will be treated of, so far as shall be necessary, under each species of verse.

Rem. 4. The effect of the cæsura is to connect the different words harmoniously together, and thus to give smoothness, grace, and sweetness, to the verse.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF METRE.

DACTYLIC METRE.

§ **310**. I. A *hexameter* or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyl, the sixth a spondee, and each of the other four either a dactyl or a spondee ; as,

Āt tŭbă | tĕrrĭbĭ- | -lēm sŏnī- | -tūm prŏcŭl | ærĕ că- | -nŏrŏ. *Virg.* A. 9, 503.
Intŏn- | -sĭ crī- | -nēs lŏn- | -gā cēr- | -vīcĕ flŭ- | ĕbānt. *Tibull.* 3, 4, 27.
Lūdĕrĕ | quæ vĕl- | -lēm călă- | -mō pēr- | -mīsĭt ă- | -grēstī. *Virg.* E. 1, 10.

1. The fifth foot is sometimes a spondee, and the verse in such case is called *spondaic;* as,

Cără dĕ- | -ūm sŏbŏ- | -lēs māg- | -nūm Jŏvĭs | Incrĕ- | -mēntūm. *Virg.* E. 4, 49.

REMARK 1. In such verses, the fourth foot is commonly a dactyl, and the fifth should not close with the end of a word. Spondaic lines are thought to be especially adapted to the expression of grave and solemn subjects.

2. A light and rapid movement is produced by the frequent recurrence of dactyls; a slow and heavy one by that of spondees; as,

Quādrŭpĕ- | -dāntĕ pŭ- | -trēm sŏnī- | -tū quătĭt | ūngŭlă | cāmpum. *Virg.* A. 8, 596.
Illi īn- | -tĕr sē- | -sē māg- | -nā vī | brāchĭā tōllunt. *Id.* A. 8, 452.

REM. 2. Variety in the use of dactyls and spondees in successive lines, has an agreeable effect. Hexameter verse commonly ends in a word of two or three syllables, and a monosyllable at the end of a line is generally ungraceful, but sometimes produces a good effect; as,

Stērnĭtŭr, | ĕxānĭ- | -mīsquĕ, trĕ- | -mēns prŏ- | -cŭmbĭt hŭ- | -mī bōs. *Virg.* A. 5, 481.
Pārtŭrĭ- | -ūnt mōn- | -tēs: nās- | -cētŭr rĭdīcŭ- | -lūs mūs. *Hor.* A. P. 139.

3. The beauty and harmony of hexameter verse depend much on due attention to the *cæsura.* (See § 309.) A line in which it is neglected is destitute of poetic beauty, and can hardly be distinguished from prose; as,

Rōmæ | mœnĭă | tērrŭĭt | īmpĭgĕr | Hānnĭbăl | ārmĭs. *Enn.*

4. The cæsural pause most approved in heroic poetry is that which occurs after the *penthemimĕris,* i. e. after the arsis in the third foot. This is particularly distinguished as *the heroic cæsura.* Thus,

Āt dŏmŭs | īntĕrĭ- | -ŏr ‖ rĕ- | -gālī | splēndĭdă | lūxū. *Virg.* A. 1, 637.

5. Instead of the preceding, a cæsura in the thesis of the third foot, or after the arsis of the fourth, was also approved as heroic; as,

Īnfān- | -dūm rĕ- | -gīnă ‖ jŭ- | -bēs rĕnŏ- | -vārĕ dŏ- | -lōrem. *Virg.* A. 2, 3.
Īndĕ tŏ- | -rō pátĕr | Ænĕ- | -ās ‖ sīc | ōrsŭs ăb | āltŏ. *Id.* A. 2, 2.

REM. 3. When the cæsural pause occurs, as in the latter example, after the *hephthemimĕris,* i. e. after the arsis of the fourth foot, another but slighter one is often found in the second foot; as,

Prīmă tĕ- | -nēt, ‖ plaū- | -sūquĕ vŏ- | -lāt ‖ frĕmĭ- | -tūquĕ sĕ- | -cūndo. *Virg.* A. 5, 338.

6. The cæsura after the third foot, dividing the verse into exactly equal parts, was least approved; as,

Cuī nōn | dīctŭs Hy̆- | -lās pŭĕr ‖ ĕt Lā- | -tōnĭă | Dēlos. *Virg.* G. 3, 6.

REM. 4. The cæsural pause between the fourth and fifth feet was considered as peculiarly adapted to pastoral poetry, particularly when the fourth foot was a dactyl, and was hence termed the *bucolic* cæsura; as,

Stānt vītŭ- | -lī ĕt tĕnĕ- | -rīs mū- | -gītĭbŭs ‖ āĕră | cōmplēnt. *Nemes.*

NOTE 1. The cæsura after the arsis is sometimes called the *masculine* or *syllabic* cæsura; that in the thesis, the *feminine* or *trochaic,* as a trochee immediately precedes. When a cæsura occurs in the fifth foot it is usually the trochaic cæsura, unless the foot is a spondee; as,

Frāxĭnŭs | īn sīl- | -vīs pūl- | -chērrĭmă, | *pīnŭs ĭn* | hōrtīs. *Virg.* E. 7, 65.

(*a.*) It is to be remarked that two successive trochaic cæsuras in the *second* and *third* feet are, in general, to be avoided, but they are sometimes employed to express irregular or impetuous motion; as,

Ūna Eu- | -rūsquĕ Nŏ- | -tūsquĕ rŭ- | -ūnt crē- | -bērquĕ prŏ- | -cĕllīs. *Virg.* A. 1, 85.

(*b.*) Successive trochaic cæsuras are, in like manner, to be avoided in the *third* and *fourth* feet, but are approved in the *first* and *second*, in the *fourth* and *fifth*, and in the *first, third* and *fifth*. See Virg. A. 6, 651: 1, 94: and 6, 522.

NOTE 2. In the principal cæsura of the verse poets frequently introduce a pause in the sense, which must be attended to in order to determine the place of the cæsural pause. For in the common place for the cæsura in the third foot there is often a cæsura *of the foot;* while, in the fourth foot, a still more marked division occurs. In this case, the latter is to be considered as the principal cæsura, and distinguished accordingly; as,

Bellī | ferrā- | -tōs pōs- | -tes, ‖ pŏr- | -tāsquĕ rĕ- | -frēgit. *Hor.* S. 1, 4, 61.

II. The *Priapēan* is usually accounted a species of hexameter. It is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each, having generally a trochee in the first and fourth place, but often a spondee and rarely a dactyl; in the second, usually a dactyl; and an amphimacer and more rarely a dactyl in the third; as,

Ō cŏ- | -lōnĭă | quæ cŭpīs ‖ pōntĕ | lūdĕrĕ | lōngō. *Catull.* 17, 1.

It is, however, more properly considered as choriambic metre, consisting of alternate Glyconics and Pherecratics. See § 316, IV. V. Thus,

Ō cŏ- | -lōnĭă, quæ | cŭpīs
Pōntĕ | lūdĕrĕ lōn- | -go.

NOTE. A regular hexameter verse is termed *Priapēan,* when it is so constructed as to be divisable into two portions of three feet each; as,

Tērtĭă | pārs pā- | -trī dătă ‖ pārs dătá | tērtĭă | mātrī. *Catull.* 62, 64.

See above, 6.

§ **311.**   III. A *pentameter* verse consists of five feet.

REMARK 1. It is generally, however, divided, in scanning, into two hemistichs, the first consisting of two feet, either dactyls or spondees, followed by a long syllable; the last, of two dactyls, also followed by a long syllable; as,

Nātū- | -ræ sĕquī- | -tūr ‖ sēmĭnă | quīsquĕ sŭ- | -æ. *Prop.* 3, 7, 20.
Cārmĭnī- | -bŭs vī- | -vēs ‖ tēmpŭs īn | ōmnĕ mĕ- | -īs. *Ovid.*

1. According to the more ancient and correct mode of scanning pentameter verse, it consists of five feet, of which the first and second may each be a dactyl or a spondee; the third is always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth are anapæsts; as,

Nātū- | -ræ sĕquī- | -tūr ‖ sēm- | -ĭnă quīs- | -quĕ sŭæ.
Cārmĭnī- | -bŭs vī- | -vēs ‖ tēm- | -pŭs īn ōm- | -nĕ mĕīs.

2. The cæsura, in pentameter verse, always occurs after the penthemimeris, i. e. at the close of the first hemistich. It very rarely lengthens a short syllable.

3. The pentameter rarely ends with a word of three syllables. In Ovid, it usually ends with a dissyllable.

REM. 2. This species of verse is seldom used, except in connection with hexameter, a line of each recurring alternately. This combination is called *elegiac* verse. Thus,

Flēbĭlĭs īndīgnōs, Ēlĕgēĭă, sōlvĕ căpīllos.
Ah nĭmĭs ēx vērō nūnc tĭbĭ nōmĕn ĕrit! *Ovid.* Am. 3, 9, 3.

§ **312.**   IV. The *tetrameter a priōre*, or *Alcmanian dactylic tetrameter*, consists of the first four feet of a hexameter, of which the fourth is always a dactyl; as,

Gărrŭlă | pēr rā- | -mōs, ăvīs | ōbstrĕpĭt. *Sen.* Œd. 454.

V. The *tetrameter a posteriōre*, or *spondaic tetrameter*, consists of the last four feet of a hexameter; as,

Ībĭmŭs, | Ō sŏcĭ- | -ī, cŏmĭ- | -tēsque. *Hor.* Od. 1, 7, 26.

REMARK. The penultimate foot in this, as in hexameter verse, may be a spondee, but in this case the preceding foot should be a dactyl; as,

Mēnsō- | -rēm cŏhĭ- | -bēnt Ar- | -chȳtā. *Hor.* Od. 1, 28, 2.

VI. The *dactylic trimeter* consists of the last three feet of a hexameter; as,

Grātō | Pȳrrhă sŭb | āntro. *Hor.* Od. 1, 5, 3.

REMARK. But this kind of verse is more properly included in choriambic metre. See § 316, V.

VII. The *trimeter catalectic Archilochian* consists of the first five half feet of a hexameter, but the first and second feet are commonly dactyls; as,

Pŭlvĭs ĕt | ūmbră sŭ- | -mus. *Hor.* Od. 4, 7, 16.

VIII. The *dactylic dimeter*, or *Adonic*, consists of two feet, a dactyl and a spondee; as,

Rīsĭt Ā- | -pōllo. *Hor.* Od. 1, 10, 12.

IX. The *Æolic pentameter* consists of four dactyls preceded by a spondee, a trochee, or an iambus.   Thus

X. The *Phalœcian pentameter* consists of a dactylic penthimimeris and a dactylic dimeter; as,

Vīsē- | -bāt gĕlĭ- | -dæ ‖ sīdĕră | brūmæ. *Boëthius.*

REMARK. A trochee is sometimes found in the first place and an iambus in the first and second places.

XI. The *Tetrameter Meiurus*, or *Faliscan* consists of the last four feet of a hexameter, except that the last foot is an iambus instead of a spondee; as,

Ūt nŏvă | frūgē grā- | -vīs Cĕrĕs | ĕat. *Boëthius.*

XII. The *Tetrameter Catalectic* consists of the tetrameter a priore wanting the latter half of the concluding dactyl; as,

Ōmne hŏmĭ- | -nūm gĕnŭs | ĭn tēr- | -rīs. *Boëthius.*

ANAPÆSTIC METRE.

§ **313.**   I. The *anapæstic monomēter* consists of two anapæsts; as,

Ŭlŭlās- | -sĕ cănĕs   *Sen.*

II. The *anapæstic dimeter* consists of two measures, or four anapæsts ; as,

<div align="center">Phărĕtrāe- | -quĕ grăvēs | dătĕ sāe- | -vă fĕrŏ.... <i>Sen.</i></div>

REMARK 1. The first foot in each measure of anapæstic metre was very often changed to a dactyl or a spondee, and the second foot often to a spondee, and, in a few instances, to a dactyl.

REM. 2. Anapæstic verses are generally so constructed that each measure ends with a word, so that they may be written and read in lines of one, two, or more measures.

IAMBIC METRE.

§ **314.** I. 1. The *iambic trimeter*, or *senarius*, consists of three iambic measures, or six iambic feet ; as,

<div align="center">Phăsē- | -lŭs ĭl- | -lĕ, ‖ quĕm | vĭdē- | -tĭs hōs- | -pĭtēs.... <i>Catull.</i> 4. 1.</div>

2. The cæsura commonly occurs in the third but sometimes in the fourth foot.

3. The pure iambic measure was seldom used by the Latin poets, but to vary the rhythm spondees were introduced into the first, third, and fifth places. In every foot, also, except the last, which was always an iambus, a long syllable was often changed into two short ones, so that an anapæst or a dactyl was used for a spondee, and a tribrach for an iambus, but the use of the dactyl in the fifth place was very rare ; as,

Quŏ, quŏ | scĕlēs- | -tī rŭī- | -tĭs? āut | cūr dēx- | -tĕrīs.... *Hor.* Epod. 7, 1.
Ălĭtī- | -bŭs āt- | -quĕ cănĭ- | -bŭs hŏmī- | -cīdam Hēc- | -tŏrēm.... *Id.* Epod. 17, 12.

4. Sometimes, also, a proceleusmatic, or double pyrrhic, was used in the first place for a spondee. The writers of comedy, satire, and fable, admitted the spondee and its equivalents (the dactyl and anapæst) into the second and fourth places, as well as the first, third, and fifth.

5. The following, therefore, is the scale of the Iambic Trimeter:—
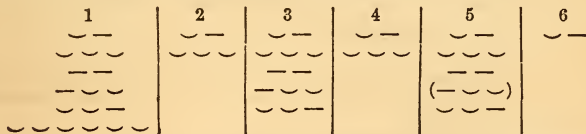
6. In the construction of the Iambic Trimeter an accent should fall on the second syllable of either the third foot or both the second and fourth feet ; as,

<div align="center">Ibīs | Lĭbūr- | -nīs <i>in</i>- | tĕr āl- | -tă nā- | -vīum | .
Ŭtrŭm- | -nĕ <i>jús</i>- | -sī pĕr- | -<i>sĕquē'</i>- | -mŭr ŏ- | -tĭum. |</div>

II. The *scazon*, or *choliambus* (lame iambic), is the iambic trimeter, with a spondee in the sixth foot, and generally an iambus in the fifth ; as,

<div align="center">Cŭr ĭn | thĕā- | -trŭm, Cătŏ | sĕvē- | -rĕ, vē- | -nĭstī?
Ăn ĭdĕ- | ŏ tăn- | -tŭm vēn- | -ĕrās, | ŭt ēx- | -īrēs? <i>Mart.</i> Ep. 1, 1, 3.</div>

This species of verse is also called *Hipponactic* trimeter, from its inventor, Hippŏnax.

III. The *iambic tetrameter* or *quadrātus*, called also from the number of its feet *octonarius*, a measure used by the comic poets, consists of four iambic measures, subject to the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

Nūnc hīc | dĭēs | ălĭām | vītam āf- ‖ -fērt, ălĭ- | -ōs mō- | -rēs pōs- | -tŭlat. *Ter.* A. 1, 2, 18.

REMARK. The cæsura regularly follows the second measure.

IV. The *iambic tetrameter catalectic* or *Hipponactic*, is the iambic tetrameter, wanting the last syllable, and having always an iambus in the seventh place, but admitting in the other places the same variations as the trimeter and tetrameter; as,

Dēprēn- | -să nā- | -vīs īn | mărī, | vēsā- | -nīēn- | -tĕ vēn- | -to. *Catull.* 25, 13.

V. The *iambic trimeter catalectic* or *Archilochian*, is the iambic trimeter (I.), wanting the final syllable. Like the common iambic trimeter, it admits a spondee into the first and third places, but not into the fifth; as,

Vŏcā- | -tŭs āt- | -quĕ nōn | vŏcā- | -tŭs aū- | -dit. *Hor.* Od. 2. 18, 40.
Trăhūnt- | -quĕ sīc- | -cās mäch- | -ĭnæ | cărī- | -nas. *Id.* Od. 1, 4, 2.

VI. The *iambic dimeter* consists of two iambic measures, with the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

Fōrtī | sĕquĕ- | -mŭr pĕc- | -tŏre. *Hor.* Epod. 1, 14.
Cănĭdī- | -ă trāc- | -tāvīt | dăpēs. *Id.* Epod. 3, 8.
Vĭdē- | -rĕ prŏpĕ- | -rāntēs | dōmum. *Id.* Epod. 3, 62.

REMARK. The iambic dimeter is also called the *Archilochian dimeter*.

The following is its scale:—
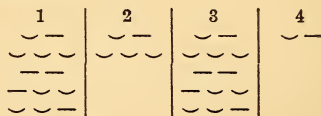
VII. The *iambic dimeter hypermeter*, called also *Archilochian*, is the iambic dimeter, with an additional syllable at the end; as,

Rĕdō- | -gīt īn | vērōs | tĭmō- | -rēs. *Hor.* Od. 1, 37, 15.

REMARK. Horace always makes the third foot a spondee.

VIII. The *iambic dimeter acephalous* is the iambic dimeter, wanting the first syllable; as,

Nōn | ĕbŭr | nĕque aū- | -rĕum.... *Hor.* Od. 2, 18, 1.

REMARK. This kind of verse is sometimes scanned as a catalectic trochaic dimeter. See § 315, IV.

IX. The *iambic dimeter catalectic*, or *Anacreontic*, is the iambic dimeter, wanting the final syllable, and having always an iambus in the third foot; as,

Ut tī- | -grĭs ōr- | -bă gnā- | -tīs. *Sen.* Med. 863.

X. The *Galliambus* consists of two iambic dimeters catalectic, the last of which wants the final syllable.

REMARK 1. It was so denominated from the *Galli* or priests of Cybele, by whom it was used.

REM. 2. In the first foot of each dimeter the anapæst was generally pre-
ferred to the spondee. The catalectic syllable at the end of the first dimeter
is long, and the second foot of the second dimeter is commonly a tribrach; as,

Sŭpĕr āl- | -tă vēc- | -tūs A- | -tȳs ‖ cĕlĕrī | rătĕ mä- | -rïa. *Catull,* 63, 1.

REM. 3. The cæsura uniformly occurs at the end of the first dimeter.

TROCHAIC METRE.

§ **315.** 1. Trochaic verses bear a near affinity to iambics. The addi-
tion or retrenchment of a syllable at the beginning of a pure iambic verse, ren-
ders it pure trochaic, and the addition or retrenchment of a syllable at the be-
ginning of a pure trochaic line, renders it pure iambic, with the deficiency or
redundancy of a syllable in each case at the end of the verse.

I. The *trochaic tetrameter catalectic* consists of seven feet, fol-
lowed by a catalectic syllable. In the first five places and very
rarely in the sixth, it admits a tribrach, but in the seventh a
trochee only. In the *even* places, besides the tribrach, it admits
also a spondee, a dactyl, an anapæst, and sometimes a proceleus-
matic; as,

Jūssŭs | ēst ĭn | ērmĭs | īrĕ: ‖ pūrŭs | īrĕ | jūssŭs | ēst. *Auct. P. Vĕn.*
Rōmŭ | læās | ĭpsă | fēcīt ‖ cūm Sá- | -bīnīs | nūptĭ- | -ās. *Id.*
Dánăĭ | dēs, cŏ- | -ītĕ; | vēstrās ‖ hīc dĭ- | -ēs quæ- | -rĭt mä- | -nūs. *Sen.*

The following is its scale:—

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
— ‿	— ‿	— ‿	— ‿	— ‿	— ‿	— ‿	
‿ ‿ ‿	‿ ‿ ‿	‿ ‿ ‿	‿ ‿ ‿	‿ ‿ ‿	‿ ‿ ‿		
	— —		— —		— —		
	— ‿ ‿		— ‿ ‿		— ‿ ‿		
	‿ ‿ —		‿ ‿ —		‿ ‿ —		

REMARK 1. The *pure* trochaic verse was rarely used, and the dactyl very
rarely occurs in the fourth place. The cæsural pause uniformly occurs after
the fourth foot, thus dividing the verse into a complete dimeter and a catalec-
tic dimeter. The comic writers introduced the spondee and its equivalent feet
into the odd places.

REM. 2. The complete trochaic tetrameter or *octonarius* properly consists of
eight feet, all trochees, subject, however, to the same variations as the catalec-
tic tetrameter; as,

Īpsĕ | sūmmīs | sāxīs | fīxūs | āspĕ- | -rīs, ĕ- | -vīscĕ- | -rātŭs. *Enn.*

II. The *Sapphic* verse, invented by the poetess Sappho, consists
of five feet—the first a trochee, the second a spondee, the third a
dactyl, and the fourth and fifth trochees; as,

Intĕ- | -gĕr vī- | -tæ, ‖ scĕlĕ- | -rīsquĕ | pūrŭs. *Hor.* Od. 1, 22, 1.

1. Sappho, and, after her example, Catullus, sometimes made the second
foot a trochee.

2. Those Sapphics are most harmonious which have the cæsura after the
fifth semi-foot.

NOTE 1. In the composition of the Sapphic stanza, a word is sometimes
divided between the end of the third Sapphic, and the beginning of the Adonic
which follows; as,

Lābĭ- | -tŭr rī- | -pā Jŏvĕ | nōn prŏ- | -bāntĕ ux-
ōrĭŭs | āmnĭs. *Hor.* Od. 1, 2, 19.

It has been thought by some that such lines should be considered as one Sapphic verse of seven feet, the fifth foot being either a spondee or a trochee.

Note 2. This verse is sometimes scanned as epichoriambic, having an epitrite in the first place, a choriambus in the second, and ending with an iambic sizygy catalectic; thus,

<div align="center">Intĕgēr vī- | -tǣ, scĕlĕrīs- | -quĕ pūrŭs.</div>

III. The *Phalœcian* verse consists of five feet—a spondee, a dactyl, and three trochees; as,

<div align="center">Nōn ēst | vīvĕrĕ, | sēd vă- | -lērĕ | vītă. *Mart.*</div>

Remark 1. Instead of a spondee as the first foot, Catullus sometimes uses a trochee or an iambus. This writer also sometimes uses a spondee in the second place.

Rem. 2. The *Phalœcian* verse is sometimes called *hendecasyllabic*, as consisting of eleven syllables; but that name does not belong to it exclusively.

IV. The *trochaic dimeter catalectic* consists of three feet, properly all trochees, and a catalectic syllable, but admitting also in the second place a spondee or a dactyl; as,

<div align="center">Nōn ĕ | -būr nĕ- | -que āūrĕ- | -um. *Hor.* Od. 2, 18, 1.
Lēnīs | āc mŏdĭ- | -cūm flū- | -ēns
Āŭră, | nĕc vēr- | -gēns lă- | -tus. *Sen.* Œd. 887.</div>

Note. This measure is the same as the acephalous iambic dimeter (see § 314, VIII.), and it is not important whether it be regarded as iambic or trochaic.

CHORIAMBIC METRE.

§ **316.** (*a.*) In a pure choriambic verse each metre except the last is a choriambus, and the last an Iambic syzygy.

Note. A spondee and iambus, i. e. a third epitrite, are sometimes used in place of the Iambic syzygy.

(*b.*) An *epichoriambic* verse is composed of one or more choriambi with some other foot, especially a ditrochee or a second epitrite, joined with it.

I. The *choriambic pentameter* consists of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus; as,

<div align="center">Tū nē | quǣsīĕrīs, | scīrĕ nĕfās, | quĕm mĭhī, quĕm tĭbī, *Hor.* Od. 1, 11, 1.</div>

II. The *choriambic tetrameter* consists of three choriambi, or feet of equal length, and a Bacchius; as,

<div align="center">Omnĕ nĕmūs | cūm flūvīīs, | ōmnĕ cănāt | prŏfūudum. *Claud.*</div>

2. In this verse Horace substituted a spondee for the iambus contained in the first choriambus; as,

<div align="center">Tĕ dĕōs ō- | -rō, Sȳbărīn | cūr prŏpĕrēs | ămāndō. *Hor.* Od. 1, 8, 2.</div>

3. Some scan this verse as an epichoriambic tetrameter catalectic, beginning with the second epitrite.

III. 1. The *Asclepiadic tetrameter* (invented by the poet Asclepiădes) consists of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus; as,

<div align="center">Mǣcē- | -nās, ătăvīs ‖ ēdītĕ rēg- | -ĭbŭs, *Hor.* Od. 1, 1, 1.</div>

2. This form is invariably observed by Horace; but other poets sometimes, though rarely, make the first foot a dactyl.

3. The cæsural pause occurs at the end of the first choriambus.

4. This measure is sometimes scanned as a dactylic pentameter catalectic. See § 311, III.   Thus,

<div align="center">Mæcē- | -nās, ătă- | vīs ‖ ĕdītĕ | rēgĭbŭs.</div>

IV. 1. The *choriambic trimeter*, or *Glyconic* (invented by the poet Glyco), consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and an iambus; as,

<div align="center">Sīc tē | dīvă pŏtēns | Cўprī... *Hor.* Od. 1, 3, 1.</div>

2. The first foot is sometimes an iambus or a trochee.

3. When the first foot is a spondee, the verse might be scanned as a dactylic trimeter.   Thus,

<div align="center">Sīc tē | dīvă pŏ- | -tēns Cўpri.</div>

V. 1. The *choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Pherecratic* (so called from the poet Pherecrātes), is the Glyconic deprived of its final syllable, and consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and a catalectic syllable; as,

<div align="center">Grătō, | Pўrrhă, sŭb ān- | -trō. *Hor.* Od. 1, 5, 3.</div>

2. The first foot was sometimes a trochee or an anapest, rarely an iambus.

3. When the first foot is a spondee, this measure might be scanned as a dactylic trimeter.   See § 312, VI.

4. The Pherecratic subjoined to the Glyconic produces the Priapean verse. See § 310, II.

VI. 1. The *choriambic dimeter* consists of a choriambus and a Bacchius; as,

<div align="center">Lўdĭă dīc | pĕr ōmnēs. *Hor.* Od. 1, 8, 1.</div>

2. This verse is by some called the choriambic dimeter catalectic. Cf. § 316, (*a.*)

IONIC METRE.

§ **317.** I. The *Ionic a majōre*, or *Sotadic*, (from the poet Sotădes), consists of three greater Ionics and a spondee.

1. The Ionic feet, however, are often changed into ditrochees, and either of the two long syllables in those feet into two short ones; as,

<div align="center">Hās, cūm gĕmĭ- | -nā cŏmpĕdĕ, | dēdĭcăt că- | -tēnās,
Sătūrnĕ, tĭ- | -bī Zōĭlŭs, | ānnŭlōs prī- | -ōrēs. *Mart.*</div>

2. Hence the following is its scale:—

<div align="center">

1	2	3	4
— — ◡ ◡	— — ◡ ◡	— — ◡ ◡	
— ◡ — ◡	— ◡ — ◡	— ◡ — ◡	— —
◡ ◡ — ◡ ◡	◡ ◡ — ◡ ◡	◡ ◡ — ◡ ◡	
— ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡	— ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡	— ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡	

</div>
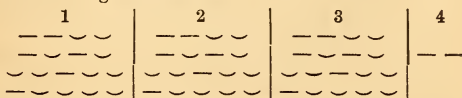
NOTE. The final syllable, by § 301, note, may be short.

II. 1. The *Ionic a minōre* consists generally of verses of three or four feet, which are all smaller Ionics; as,

<div align="center">Pŭer ālēs, | tĭbĭ tēlās, | ŏpĕrōsǣ- | -quē Mĭnērvǣ... *Hor.* Od. 3, 12, 4.</div>

2. In this verse, as in the anapæstic, no place is assigned to the pause; because, since the metres, if rightly constructed, end with a word, the effect of a pause will be produced at the end of each metre.

COMPOUND METRES.

§ **318.**   Compound metre is the union of two species of metre in the same verse.

I. The *dactylico-iambic* metre or *Elegiambus* consists of a dactylic penthemimĕris (312, VII.), followed by an iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Scrībĕrĕ | vērsĭcŭ- | -lōs ‖ ămō- | -rĕ pĕr- | -cūlsūm | grăvī. *Hor.* Epod. 11, 2.

II. The *iambico-dactylic* metre or *Iambelegus* consists of the same members as the preceding, but in a reversed order; as,

Nīvēs- | -quĕ dē- | -dūcūnt | Jŏvēm : ‖ nūnc mărĕ, | nūnc sīlŭ- | -æ. *Hor.* Epod. 13, 2.

NOTE.   The members composing this and the preceding species of verse are often written in separate verses.

III. The *greater Alcaic* consists of an iambic penthemimeris, i. e. of two iambic feet and a long catalectic syllable, followed by a choriambus, and an iambus; as,

Vīdēs | ŭt āl- | -tā ‖ stēt nīvĕ cān- | -dīdum. *Hor.* Od. 1, 9, 1.

REMARK 1.   The first foot is often a spondee.

REM. 2.   The cæsura uniformly occurs after the catalectic syllable.

REM. 3.   This verse is sometimes so scanned as to make the last two feet dactyls.

IV. The *dactylico-trochaic* or *Archilochian heptameter*, consists of the dactylic tetrameter *a priōre* (§ 312), followed by three trochees; as,

Sōlvītūr | ācrīs hī- | -ēms grā- | -tā vīcĕ ‖ vērīs | ĕt Fă- | -vōnī. *Hor.* Od. 1, 4, 1.

REMARK.   The cæsura occurs between the two members.

V. The *dactylico-trochaic tetrameter* or *lesser Alcaic*, consists of two dactyls, followed by two trochees, i. e. of a dactylic dimeter followed by a trochaic monometer; as,

Lēvīă | pērsŏnŭ- ‖ -ĕrĕ | sāxă. *Hor.* Od. 1, 17, 12.

COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

§ **319.**   1.   A poem may consist either of one kind of verse only or of a combination of two or more kinds.

2.   A poem in which only one kind of verse is employed, is called *carmen monocōlon;* that which has two kinds, *dicōlon;* that which has three kinds, *tricōlon.*

3.   When the poem returns, after the second line, to the same verse with which it began, it is called *distrŏphon;* when after the third line, *tristrŏphon;* and when after the fourth, *tetrastrŏphon.*

4.   The several verses which occur before the poem returns to the kind of verse with which it began, constitute a *stanza* or *strophe.*

5.   A poem consisting of two kinds of verse, when the stanza contains two verses, is called *dicōlon distrŏphon,* (see § 320, 3); when it contains three, *dicō-*

lon tristrŏphon, (Anson. Profess. 21); when four, *dicŏlon tetrastrŏphon,* (§ 320, 2); and when five, *dicŏlon pentastrŏphon.*

6. A poem consisting of three kinds of verse, when the stanza contains three verses, is called *tricŏlon tristrŏphon,* (§ 320, 15); when four, *tricŏlon tetrastrŏphon,* (§ 320, 1).

HORATIAN METRES.

§ **320.** The different species of metre used by Horace in his lyric compositions are twenty. The various forms in which he has employed them, either separate or in conjunction, are nineteen, arranged, according to the order of preference given to them by the poet, in the following

SYNOPSIS.

1.   Two greater Alcaics (§ 318, III.), one Archilochian iambic dimeter hypermeter (§ 314, VII.), and one lesser Alcaic (§ 318, v.) ; as,

> Vĭdēs, ŭt āltā stēt nĭvĕ cāndĭdŭm
> Sōrāctĕ, nēc jām sūstĭnĕānt ŏnŭs
>   Sīlvæ lăbōrāntēs, gĕlūquĕ
>   Flūmĭnă cōnstĭtĕrĭnt ăcūto.   (*Lib.* 1, 9.)

REMARK. This is called the Horatian stanza, because it seems to have been a favorite with Horace, being used in thirty-seven of his odes.

2.   Three Sapphics (§ 315, II.) and one Adonic (§ 312, VIII.) ; as,

> Jām sătĭs tērrīs nĭvĭs ātquĕ dīræ
> Grāndĭnĭs mīsĭt pătĕr, ēt, rŭbēntĕ
> Dēxtĕrā sācrās jăcŭlātŭs ārces,
>   Tērrŭĭt ūrbem.   (*Lib.* 1, 2.)

3.   One Glyconic (§ 316, IV.) and one Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.) ; as,

> Sīc tĕ Dīvă pŏtēns Cȳpri,
>   Sīc frātrēs Hĕlĕnæ, lūcĭdā sīdĕra...   (*Lib.* 1, 3.)

4.   One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.) ; as,

> Ĭbīs Lĭbūrnīs īntĕr āltā nāvĭum,
>   Amīcĕ, prŏpūgnācŭla.   (*Epod.* 1.)

5.   Three Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.) and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.) ; as,

> Scrībērĭs Vărĭō fōrtĭs, ĕt hōstĭum
> Vīctōr, Mæōnĭī cārmĭnĭs ālĭti,
> Quām rĕm cūmquĕ fĕrōx nāvĭbŭs āŭt ĕquis
>   Mīlĕs, tĕ dŭcĕ, gēssĕrit.   (*Lib.* 1, 6.)

6.   Two Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.), one Pherecratic (§ 316, v.), and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.) ; as,

> Dīānām, tĕnĕræ, dīcĭtĕ vīrgĭnes :
> Īntōnsūm, pŭĕrī, dīcĭtĕ Cȳnthĭum,
>   Lātōnāmquĕ sŭprēmo
>   Dīlēctām pĕnĭtŭs Jŏvi.   (*Lib.* 1, 21.)

7.   The Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.) alone ; as,

> Mæcēnās ătăvīs ēdĭtĕ rēgĭbus.   (*Lib.* 1, 1.)

8. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic tetrameter *a posteriōre* (§ 312, V.) ; as,

> Laūdābūnt āliī clārām Rhŏdŏn, aūt Mĭtÿlēnen,
> Aūt Ĕphĕsūm, bĭmărīsvĕ Cŏrīnthi...   (*Lib.* 1, 7.)

9. The choriambic pentameter (§ 316, I.) alone ; as,

> Tū nē quaēsīĕrīs, scīrĕ nĕfās, quĕm mĭhī, quĕm tĭbi...   (*Lib.* 1, 11.)

10. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.) ; as,

> Nōx ĕrăt, ĕt cōēlō fūlgēbāt lūnă sĕrēno
> Inter mĭnōră sīdĕra.   (*Epod.* 15.)

11. The iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) containing spondees ; as,

> Jām, jam ĕffĭcācī dō mănūs scĭēntiæ.   (*Epod.* 17.)

12. One choriambic dimeter (§ 316, VI.) and one choriambic tetrameter (§ 316, II.) with a variation ; as,

> Lȳdĭă, dīc, pĕr ōmnes
> Tē Dĕōs ōrō, Sȳbărīn cūr prŏpĕrās ămāndo...   (*Lib.* 1, 8.)

13. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic trimeter without spondees (§ 314, I.) ; as,

> Āltĕră jām tĕrĭtūr bēllĭs cīvīlĭbŭs ǣtas;
> Sŭīs ĕt īpsă Rōmă vīrĭbŭs rŭit.   (*Epŏd.* 16.)

14. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic penthemimeris (§ 312, VII.) ; as,

> Dīffūgĕrĕ nīvĕs: rĕdĕūnt jām grāmĭnă cāmpīs,
> Ārbŏrĭbūsquĕ cŏmæ.   (*Lib.* 4, 7.)

15. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.), one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 312, VII.), and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.) ; as,

> Pēttī, nĭhīl mē, sīcŭt āntĕă, jŭvat
>   Scrībĕrĕ vērsĭcŭlos,
>   Amōrĕ pĕrcŭlsūm grăvi.   (*Epoa.* 11.)

NOTE. The second and third lines are often written as one verse. See § 318, I.

16. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.), one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.), and one dactylic penthemimeris (§ 312, VII.) ; as,

> Hōrrĭdă tēmpēstās cōēlūm cōntrāxĭt; ĕt īmbres
>   Nĭvēsquĕ dēdūcūnt Jŏvem:
>   Nūnc mărĕ, nūnc sĭlŭæ...   (*Epod.* 13.)

NOTE. The second and third lines of this stanza, also, are often written as one verse. See § 318, II.

17. One Archilochian heptameter (§ 318, IV.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, V.) ; as,

> Sōlvĭtŭr ācrīs hĭēms grātā vĭcĕ vērĭs ĕt Făvŏnī,
>   Trăhūntquĕ sīccās māchĭnæ cărīnas.   (*Lib.* 1, 4.)

18. One iambic dimeter acephalous (§ 314, VIII.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, V.) ; as,

> Nōn ĕbŭr nĕquĕ aūrĕum
>   Mĕă rĕnīdĕt īn dŏmō lăcūnar.   (*Lib.* 2, 18.)

19. The Ionic *a minōre* (§ 317, II.) alone ; as,

> Mĭsĕrārum ēst nĕquĕ ămōrī dărĕ lūdŭm, nĕquĕ dŭlcī...   (*Lib.* 3, 12.)

§ 321. A METRICAL KEY TO THE ODES OF HORACE.

*Containing, in alphabetic order, the first words of each, with a refer-
ence to the numbers in the preceding Synopsis, where the metre is
explained.*

Quo, quo, scelesti ruïtis........No. 4	Tu ne quæsiĕris..............No. 9
Quum tu, Lydia.................. 3	Tyrrhēna regum.................. 1
Rectius vives.................... 2	Ulla si juris..................... 2
Rogāre longo.................... 4	Uxor paupĕris Ibÿci............. 3
Scribēris Vario.................. 5	Velox amœnum.................. 1
Septīmi, Gades........ 2	Vides, ut altā 1
Sic te Diva potens.............. 3	Vile potābis..................... 2
Solvĭtur acris hiems 17	Vitas hinnuleo 6
Te maris et terræ................ 8	Vixi puellis..................... 1

The following are the single metres used by Horace in his lyric compositions, viz :—

1. Dactylic Hexameter.
2. Dactylic Tetrameter *a posteriōri.*
3. Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic.
4. Adonic.
5. Trimeter Iambic.
6. Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.
7. Iambic Dimeter.
8. Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter.
9. Iambic Dimeter Acephalous.
10. Sapphic.
11. Choriambic Pentameter.
12. Choriambic Tetrameter.
13. Asclepiadic Tetrameter.
14. Glyconic.
15. Pherecratic.
16. Choriambic Dimeter.
17. Ionic *a minōre.*
18. Greater Alcaic.
19. Archilochian Heptameter.
20. Lesser Alcaic.

APPENDIX.

GRAMMATICAL FIGURES.

§ 322.   Certain deviations from the regular form and construction of words, are called *grammatical figures*.   These may relate either to Orthography and Etymology, or to Syntax.

I. FIGURES OF ORTHOGRAPHY AND ETYMOLOGY.

These are distinguished by the general name of *metaplasm*.

1. *Prosthĕsis* is the prefixing of a letter or syllable to a word; as, *gnātus*, for *nātus; tĕtŭlĭ*, for *tŭlĭ.*   These, however, are rather the ancient customary forms, from which those now in use were formed by aphæresis.

2. *Aphæresis* is the taking of a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as, *'st*, for *est; răbōnem*, for *arrăbōnem.*

3. *Epenthĕsis* is the insertion of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *ălĭtŭum*, for *ālĭtum; Māvors*, for *Mars.*

4. *Syncŏpe* is the omission of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *deûm*, for *deōrum; meûm factûm*, for *meōrum factōrum; sæcla*, for *sæcŭla; flesti*, for *flēvisti; rĕpostus*, for *rĕpŏsitus; aspris*, for *aspĕris.*

5. *Crasis* is the contraction of two vowels into one; as, *cōgo*, for *cŏăgo; nil*, for *nihil.*

6. *Paragōge* is the addition of a letter or syllable to the end of a word; as, *med*, for *me; claudier*, for *claudi.*

7. *Apocŏpe* is the omission of the final letter or syllable of a word; as, *mēn'*, for *mēne; Antōni*, for *Antōnii.*

8. *Antithĕsis* is the substitution of one letter for another; as, *olli*, for *illi; optŭmus*, for *optĭmus; affĭcio*, for *adfĭcio.*   *O* is often thus used for *u*, especially after *v;* as, *voltus*, for *vultus; servom*, for *servum.* So after *qu;* as, *æquom*, for *æquum.*

9. *Metathĕsis* is the changing of the order of letters in a word; as, *pistris*, for *pristis.*

II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

§ 323.   The figures of Syntax are *ellipsis, pleonasm, enallăge*, and *hyperbăton.*

1. (*a.*) *Ellipsis* is the omission of some word or words in a sentence; as,

Aiunt, scil. *hŏmĭnes.   Dārīus Hystaspis*, scil. *fīlius.   Căno*, scil. *ĕgo.   Quid multa?* scil. *dīcam.   Ex quo*, scil. *tempŏre.   Fĕrina*, scil. *caro.*

(*b.*) Ellipsis includes *asyndĕton, zeugma, syllepsis*, and *prolepsis.*

(1.) *Asyndĕton* is the omission of the copulative conjunction; as, *ăbiit, excessit, ēvāsit, ērūpit* scil. *et.* Cic.   This is called in pure Latin *dissŏlūtio.*

(2.) (*a.*) *Zeugma* is the uniting of two nouns or two infinitives to a verb, which, as to its meaning, is applicable to only one of them; as, *Pācem an bellum gĕrens:* (Sall.) where *gĕrens* is applicable to *bellum* only, while *pācem* requires *ăgĕre. Semperne in sanguĭne, ferro, fūgā versābĭmur?* (Id.) where the verb does not properly apply to *ferro.*

(*b.*) *Nĕgo* is often thus used with two propositions, one of which is affirmative; as, *Nēgant Cæsărem mansūrum, postŭlātāque interpŏsĭta esse,* for *dīcuntque postŭkāta...* Cic. See § 209, Note 4.

(*c.*) When an adjective or verb, referring to two or more nouns, agrees with one, and is understood with the rest, the construction is also sometimes called zeugma, but more commonly syllepsis; as, *Et gĕnus, et virtus, nisi cum re,* vīlior *algā* est. Hor. *Cūper tibi* salvŭs *et hædi.* Virg. *Quamvis ille nĭger, quamvis tu* candĭda esses. Id.

(3.) *Syllepsis* is when an adjective or verb, belonging to two or more nouns of different genders, persons, or numbers, agrees with one rather than another; as, Attŏnĭti *nŏvĭtāte* păvent Baucis, *tĭmĭdusque* Phĭlēmon. Ovid. *Prōcumbĭt* ūterque prōnus *hŭmi,* i. e. *Deucălĭon et Pyrrha.* Id. Sustŭlĭmus *mănus et ēgo et* Balbus. Cic. So, Ipse cum frātre *ădesse* jussi sŭmus. Id. *Prōjectisque ămĭcŭlo et lĭtĕris.* Curt. See §§ 205, R. 2, and 209, R. 12, (3.) and (7.)

(4.) *Prōlepsis* is when the parts, differing in number or person from the whole, are placed after it, the verb or adjective not being repeated; as, *Prĭncĭpes utrinque pugnam cĭcbant, ab Săbīnis* Mettius Curtius, *ab Rōmānis* Hostus Hostīlius. Liv. *Bŏni quŏniam convenĭmus ambo, tu călămos inflāre,* ēgo *dĭcĕre* versus. Virg.

2. (*a.*) *Pleonasm* is using a greater number of words than is necessary to express the meaning; as,

Sic ōre lŏcūta est. Virg. *Qui* măgis *vēre vincĕre quam diu impĕrāre* mālit. Liv. *Nēmo ūnus.* Cic. *Forte fortūnā.* Id. *Prūdens sciens.* Ter.

(*b.*) Under pleonasm are included *parelcon, polysyndĕton, hendĭădys,* and *periphrăsis.*

(1.) *Părelcon* is the addition of an unnecessary syllable or particle to pronouns, verbs, or adverbs; as, *ĕgŏmet, ăgĕdum, fortassean.* Such additions, however, usually modify the meaning in some degree.

(2.) *Pŏlȳsyndĕton* is a redundancy of conjunctions; as, *Una Eurusque Nŏtusque ruunt crēberque prŏcellis Afrĭcus.* Virg.

(3.) *Hendĭădys* is the expression of an idea by two nouns connected by *et,* -que, or *atque,* instead of a noun and a limiting adjective or genitive; as, Pătĕris *lĭbāmus et* auro, for *aureis pătĕris.* Virg. Libro *et silvestri* sūbĕre *clausam,* for *libro sūbĕris.* Id. Cristis *et* auro. Ovid. Met. 3, 32.

(4.) *Pĕriphrăsis* or *circumlŏcūtio* is a circuitous mode of expression; as, *Tĕnĕri fœtus ŏvium,* i. e. *agni.* Virg.

3. (*a.*) *Enallăge* is a change of words, or a substitution of one gender, number, case, person, tense, mood, or voice of the same word for another.

(*b.*) Enallăge includes *antimeria, heterōsis, antiptōsis, synĕsis,* and *anacolūthon.*

(1.) *Antĭmĕria* is the use of one part of speech for another, or the abstract for the concrete; as, *Nostrum istud* vīvĕre *triste,* for *nostra vīta.* Pers. *Aliud* cras. Id. Conjŭgium *vĭdēbit?* for *conjŭgem.* Virg.

(2.) *Heterōsis* is the use of one form of noun, pronoun, verb, etc., for another; ǝꜱ *Ego quŏque una pereo,* quod *mihi* est cārius, for *qui mihi sum cārior.* Ter.

Rōmānus *prœlio* victor, for *Rōmāni victōres.* Liv. Many words are used by the poets in the plural instead of the singular; as, *colla, corda, ōra,* etc. See § 98. *Me truncus illapsus cĕrebro sustŭlĕrat,* for *sustūlisset.* Hor. See § 259, R. 4.

(3.) *Antiptōsis* is the use of one case for another; as, *Cui nunc cognōmen* Iūlo, for *Iūlus.* Virg. § 204, R. 8. Uxor *invicti Jŏvis esse nescis,* for *te esse uxō-rem.* Hor. § 210, R. 6.

(4.) *Synēsis,* or *synthĕsis,* is adapting the construction to the *sense* of a word, rather than to its gender or number; as, Sŭbeunt *Tēgœa* jŭventus *auxĭlio* tardi. Stat. *Concursus* pŏpŭli mīrantium *quid rei est.* Liv. Pars *in crŭcem* acti. Sall. *Ubi* illic est scĕlus, qui *me perdĭdit?* Ter. *Id* mea *mĭnĭme rēfert,* qui *sum nātu maxĭmus.* Id. See § 205, R. 3, (1.) and (3.), and § 206, (12.)

(5.) *Anăcŏlūthon* is a disagreement in construction between the latter and former part of a sentence; as, *Nam* nos omnes, *quibus est ălĭcunde ălĭquis objĕctus lăbos, omne quod est intĕrea tempus, priusquam id rescītum est,* lucro est. Ter. In this example, the writer began as if he intended to say *lucro hăbēmus,* and ended as if he had said *nōbis omnibus,* leaving *nos omnes* without its verb.

4. (*a.*) *Hўperbăton* is a transgression of the usual order of words or clauses.

(*b.*) Hўperbăton includes *ănastrŏphe, hystĕron prŏtĕron, hўpallăge, synchўsis, tmēsis,* and *părenthĕsis.*

(1.) *Anastrŏphe* is an inversion of the order of two words; as, *Transtra per et rēmos,* for *per transtra.* Virg. *Collo dăre brăchia circum,* for *circumdăre.* Id. *Nox ĕrit ūna sŭper,* for *sŭperĕrit.* Ovid. *Et făcit āre,* for *ārĕfăcit.* Lucr.

(2.) *Hystĕron prŏtĕron* is reversing the natural order of the sense; as, *Mŏriā-mur, et in mĕdia arma ruāmus.* Virg. *Vălet atque vīvit.* Ter.

(3.) *Hўpallăge* is an interchange of constructions; as, *In nŏva fert ănĭmus mūtātas dĭcĕre formas corpŏra,* for *corpŏra mūtāta in nŏvas formas.* Ovid. *Dăre classĭbus Austros,* for *dăre classes Austris.* Virg.

(4.) *Synchўsis* is a confused position of words; as, *Saxa vŏcant Itălĭ, mĕdiis quæ in fluctĭbus, āras,* for *quæ saxa in mĕdiis fluctĭbus, Itălĭ vŏcant āras.* Virg.

(5.) *Tmēsis* or *diacŏpe* is the separation of the parts of a compound word; as, *Septem subjecta triōni gens,* for *septentriōni.* Virg. *Quæ me cumque vŏcant terræ.* Id. *Per mĭhi, per, inquam, grātum fēcĕris.* Cic.

(6.) *Părenthĕsis* or *diălўsis* is the insertion of a word or words in a sentence interrupting the natural connection; as, *Tītўre dum rĕdeo,* (brĕvis est via,) *pasce căpellas.* Virg.

REMARK. To the above may be added *archaism* and *Hellenism,* which belong both to the figures of etymology and to those of syntax.

(1.) *Archaism* is the use of ancient forms or constructions; as, *aulāi,* for *aulœ; sĕnāti,* for *sĕnātūs; fuat,* for *sit; prŏhĭbesso,* for *prŏhĭbuĕro; impetrassĕre,* for *impetrātūrum esse; fărĭer,* for *fărī; nēnu,* for *non; endo,* for *in;—Opĕram ăbūtitur,* for *opĕrā.* Ter. *Quid tibi hanc cūrātio est rem?* Plaut.

(2.) *Hellenism* is the use of Greek forms or constructions; as, *Hĕlĕne,* for *Hĕlĕna; Antiphon,* for *Antipho; aurās* (gen.), for *aurœ; Pallădos, Pallăda,* for *Pallădis, Pallădem; Trōăsin, Trōădas,* for *Trōădĭbus, Trōădes;—Abstinēto īrā-rum.* Hor. *Tempus dēsistĕre pugnœ.* Virg.

§ **324.** (1.) To the grammatical figures may not improperly be subjoined certain others, which are often referred to in philological works, and which are called

TROPES AND FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

(2.) A rhetorical *figure* is a mode of expression different from the direct and simple way of expressing the same sense. The turning of a word from its original and customary meaning, is called a *trope.*

1. (*a.*) A *metaphor* is the transferring of a word from the object to which it properly belongs, and applying it to another, to which that object has some analogy; as, Ridet *ăger*, The field smiles. Virg. *Ætas* aurea, The golden age. Ovid. Naufrăgia *fortūnæ*, The wreck of fortune. Cic. *Mentis* ŏcŭli, The eyes of the mind. Id. *Virtus ănĭmum glōriæ* stĭmŭlis *concĭtat.* The harshness of a metaphor is often softened by means of *quăsi, tamquam, quĭdam,* or *ut ita dīcam;* as, *In ūnā phĭlŏsŏphiā* quăsi *tăbernācŭlum vĭtæ suæ collŏcārunt.* Id. Opĭmum quoddam et tamquam ădĭpātæ *dictĭōnis gĕnus.* Id.

(*b.*) *Cătăchrēsis* or *ăbūsio* is a bold or harsh metaphor; as, Vir *grĕgis ipse căper.* Virg. *Eurus per Sicŭlas* ĕquĭtāvit *undas.* Hor.

2. *Metonymy* is substituting the name of an object for that of another to which it has a certain relation; as the cause for the effect, the container for what is contained, the property for the substance, the sign for the thing signified, and their contraries; the parts of the body for certain affections; the possessor for the thing possessed; place and time for the persons or things which they comprise, etc.; as, *Mortāles,* for *hŏmĭnes.* Virg. *Amor dūri* Martis, i. e. *belli.* Id. *Frūges* Cĕrērem *appellāmus, vīnum autem* Lībĕrum. Cic. *Cŭpio* vĭgĭliam *meam tĭbi trādĕre,* i. e. *meam cūram.* Id. Pallĭda *mors.* Hor. *Hausit* pătĕram, i. e. *vīnum.* Virg. Vīna *cŏrōnant,* i. e. *pătĕram.* Id. *Necte ternos* cŏlōres, i. e. *tria fīla diversi* cŏlōris. Id. *Cĕdant* arma tŏgæ, i. e. *bellum pāci.* Cic. Sæcŭla *mŭtescent,* i. e. *hŏmĭnes in sæcŭlis.* Virg. *Vīvat Pācŭvius vel* Nestŏra tōtum. Juv. *Doctrīnā* Græcia *nos sŭpĕrābat,* for *Græci sŭpĕrābant.* Cic. Pāgi *centum Suevōrum ad rīpas Rhēni consēdĕrant,* for *pāgōrum incŏlæ.* Cæs. Tempŏra *ămīcōrum,* for *res adversæ.* Cic. Claudius *lēge prædiātōriā vēnālis pĕpendĭt,* for *Claudii prædium.* Suet. *Vīci ad* Jānum *mĕdium sĕdentes,* for *Jāni vīcum.* Cic.

3. *Sўnecdŏche* is putting a whole for a part, a genus for a species, a singular for a plural, and their contraries; also the material for the thing made of it; a definite for an indefinite number, etc.; as, Fontem *fĕrēbant.* Id. *Tectum,* for *dŏmus.* Id. *Armāto* mĭlĭte *complent,* for *armātis mīlĭtibus.* Id. *Ferrum,* for *glădius.* Id. *Qui Cŏrinthiis* ŏpĕrĭbus *ăbundant,* i. e. *vāsis.* Cic. Urbem, urbem, *mi Rūfe, cŏle,* i. e. *Rōmam.* Cic. Centum *puer artium,* i. e. *multārum.*

4. *Irony* is the intentional use of words which express a sense contrary to that which the writer or speaker means to convey; as, *Salve* bŏne *vir, cūrasti* prŏbe. Ter. Egrĕgiam *vēro* laudem, *et* spŏlia ampla *rĕfertis, tūque, puerque tuus.* Virg.

5. *Hўperbŏle* is the magnifying or diminishing of a thing beyond the truth; as, *Ipse arduus, altăque pulsat sīdĕra.* Virg. *Ocior Euro.* Id.

6. *Mĕtălepsis* is the including of several tropes in one word; as, *Post ăliquot ăristas.* Virg. Here *aristas* is put for *messes,* and this for *annos.*

7. (*a.*) *Allegory* is a consistent series of metaphors, designed to illustrate one subject by another; as, *O nāvis, rĕfĕrent in māre te nŏvi fluctus.* Hor.

(*b.*) An obscure allegory or riddle is called an *ænigma;* as, *Dic, quĭbus in terris tres păteat cœli spătium non amplius ulnas.* Virg.

8. *Antŏnŏmăsia* is using a proper noun for a common one, and the contrary; as, Irus *et est subito, qui mŏdo* Crœsus *ĕrat,* for *pauper* and *dīves.* Ovid. So, by periphrasis, *pōtor Rhŏdăni,* for *Gallus.* Hor. *Eversor Carthāgĭnis,* for *Scipio.* Quint. *Elŏquentiæ princeps,* for *Cicero.* Id. Tўdīdes, for Diŏmēdes. Virg.

9. *Lītŏtes* is a mode of expressing something by denying the contrary; as, *Non laudo,* I blame. Ter. *Non innoxia verba.* Virg.

10. *Antiphrăsis* is using a word in a sense opposite to its proper meaning; as, *Auri* sacra *fāmes.* Virg.

11. *Euphemism* is the use of softened language to express what is offensive or distressing; as, *Si quid accĭdisset Cæsări,* i. e. *si mortuus esset.* Vell.

12. *Antănaclăsis* or *punning* is the use of the same word in different senses; as, *Quis nĕget Ænēæ nātum de stirpe Nĕrōnem?* Sustŭlit *hic nātrem,* sustŭlit *ille patrem.* Epigr. Amāri *jucundum est, si cūrĕtur ne quid insit* ămāri. Cic.

13. *Anăphŏra* or *ĕpănăphŏra* is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses; as, Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium pălătii, nihil urbis vĭgĭlur, nihil tĭmor pŏpŭli, etc. Cic. Te, dulcis conjux, te, sōlo in lĭtŏre sĕcum, te, vĕniente die, te, dĕcĕdente, cănĕbat. Virg.

14. *Epistrŏphe* is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses; as, Pœnos pŏpŭlus Rōmānus justĭtiā vīcit, armis vīcit, lĭbĕrālĭtāte vīcit. Cic. In pure Latin this figure is called *conversio*.

15. *Symplŏce* is the repetition of a word at the beginning, and of another at the end, of successive clauses, and hence it includes the anaphŏra and the epistrŏphe; as, Quis lēgem tŭlit? Rullus: Quis mājōrem pŏpŭli partem suffrāgiis prīvāvit? Rullus: Quis cŏmĭtiis præfuit? Idem Rullus. Cic.

16. *Epănălepsis* is a repetition of the same word or sentence after intervening words or clauses. See Virg. Georg. II. 4—7.

17. *Anădĭplōsis* is the use of the same word at the end of one clause, and the beginning of another; as, Sĕquĭtur pulcherrĭmus Astur, Astur ĕquo fīdens. Virg. A. 10, 180. Nunc ĕtiam audes in hōrum conspectum vĕnīre, vĕnīre audes in hōrum conspectum? Cic. This is sometimes called *ĕpănastrŏphe*.

18. *Epănădĭplōsis* is the use of the same word both at the beginning and end of a sentence; as, Crescit ămor nummi, quantum ipsa pĕcūnia crescit. Juv.

19. *Epănădos* or *rĕgressio* is the repetition of the same words in an inverted order; as, Crŭdēlis māter măgis, an puer imprŏbus ille? Imprŏbus ille puer, crŭdēlis tu quŏque, māter. Virg.

20. *Epizeuxis* is a repetition of the same word for the sake of emphasis; as, Excĭtāte, excĭtāte eum ab infĕris. Cic. Ah Cŏrȳdon, Cŏrȳdon, quæ te dēmentia cēpit? Virg. Ibĭmus, ibĭmus, utcumque præcēdes. Hor.

21. *Climax* is a gradual amplification by means of a continued anadiplosis, each successive clause beginning with the conclusion of that which precedes it; as, Quæ rĕlĭqua spes manet lĭbertātis, si illis et quod lĭbet, licet; et quod lĭcet, possunt; et quod possunt, audent; et quod audent, vōbis molestum non est? Cic. This, in pure Latin, is called *grădātio*.

22. *Incrēmentum* is an amplification without a strict climax; as, Făcĭnus est, vincīri cīvem Rōmānum; scĕlus, verbĕrāri; prŏpe parrĭcīdium, nĕcāri; quid dīcam in crŭcem tolli? Cic.

23. *Pŏlyptŏton* is the repetition of a word in different cases, genders, numbers, tenses, etc.; as, Jam clĭpeus clĭpeis, umbōne rĕpellĭtur umbo; ense mĭnax ensis, pĕde pes, et cuspĭde cuspis. Stat.

24. *Parĕgmĕnon* is the use of several words of the same origin, in one sentence; as, Abesse non pŏtest, quin ĕjusdem hŏmĭnis sit, qui imprŏbos prŏbet, prŏbos imprŏbāre. Cic. Istam pugnam pugnābo. Plaut.

25. *Părŏnŏmāsia* is the use of words which resemble each other in sound; as, Amor et melle et felle est fēcundissĭmus. Plaut. Cīvem bŏnārum artium, bŏnārum partium. Cic. Amantes sunt āmentes. Ter. This figure is sometimes called *agnŏmĭnātĭo*.

26. *Hŏmœoprŏphĕron* or *alliteration* is the use in the same sentence of several words beginning with the same letter; as, O Tite, tūte Tāti, tibi tanta, tȳranne, tŭlisti. Enn. Neu patriæ vălĭdas in viscĕra vertĭte vīres. Virg.

27. *Antĭthĕsis* is the placing of different or opposite words or sentiments in contrast; as, Hūjus ōrātiōnis diffĭcilius est exĭtum quam princĭpium invĕnīre. Cic. Cæsar bĕnĕfĭciis ac mūnĭfĭcentiā magnus hăbēbātur; integrĭtāte vītæ Cato. Sall.

28. *Oxȳmōron* unites words of contrary significations, thus producing a seeming contradiction; as, Concordia discors. Hor. Quum tăcent, clāmant. Cic.

29. *Sȳnŏnȳmia* is the use of different words or expressions having the same import; as, Non fĕram, non pătiar, non sĭnam. Cic. Prōmitto, rĕcĭpio, spondeo. Id.

31*

30. *Părăbŏla* or *Sĭmĭle* is the comparison of one thing with another; as, *Rĕpente te, tamquam serpens e lătĭbŭlis, ŏcŭlis ēmĭnentĭbus, inflāto collo, tŭmĭdis cervīcĭbus, intŭlĭsti.* Cic.

31. *Erŏtēsis* is an earnest question, and often implies a strong affirmation of the contrary; as, *Crēdĭtis āvectos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quæ me æquŏra possunt accipĕre?* Id.

32. *Epănorthōsis* or *Correctĭo* is the recalling of a word, in order to place a stronger or more significant one in its stead; as, *Fīlium ūnĭcum ădŏlescentŭlum hăbeo: ah! quid dixi? me hăbēre?* *Imo* hăbui. Ter.

33. *Apŏsiōpēsis, Rĕtĭcentĭa,* or *Interruptĭo,* is leaving a sentence unfinished in consequence of some emotion of the mind; as, *Quos ĕgo—sed mōtos vræstat compōnĕre fluctus.* Virg.

34. *Prŏsŏpŏpœia* or *personification* represents inanimate things as acuing or speaking, and persons dead or absent as alive and present; as, *Quæ (patria) tēcum, Cătĭlina, sic ăgit.* Cic. *Virtus sūmit aut pōnit sĕcūres.* Hor.

35. *Apostrŏphe* is a turning off from the regular course of the subject, to address some person or thing; as, *Vi pŏtĭtur; quid non mortālia pectŏra cōgis, auri sacra* fămes! Virg.

36. *Părăleipsis* is a pretended omission of something, in order to render it more observed.   See Cic. Cat. 1, 6, 14.

37. *Epĭphōnēma* or *Acclāmātĭo* is an exclamation or grave reflection on something said before; as, *Tantæ mōlis ĕrat Rōmānam condĕre gentem.* Virg.

38. *Ecphōnēsis* or *Exclāmātĭo* shows some violent emotion of the mind; as, *O tempŏra! O mōres!*

39. *Apŏria, Diŏpŏrēsis,* or *Dŭbĭtātĭo,* expresses a doubt in regard to what is to be said or done; as, *Quos accēdam, aut quos appellem?* Sall.

40. *Prŏlepsis* is the anticipation of an objection before it is made, or of an event before it occurs; as, *Vērum anceps pugnæ fuĕrat fortūna. Fuisset: Quem* mētui mŏrĭtūra? Virg.

§ **325.**   To the figures of rhetoric may be subjoined the following terms, used to designate *defects* or *blemishes* in style:—

1. *Barbarism* is either the use of a foreign word, or a violation of the rules of orthography, etymology, or prosody; as, *rĭgŏrōsus,* for *rĭgĭdus* or *sĕvērus; dommĭnus,* for *dŏmĭnus; dăvi,* for *dĕdi.*

2. *Solecism* is a violation of the rules of syntax; as, *Vĕnus pulcher; vos invĭdēmus.*

3. *Neoterism* is the use of words or phrases introduced by authors living subsequently to the best ages of Latinity; as, *murdrum,* a murder; *constăbŭlārius,* a constable.

4. *Tautology* is a repetition of the same meaning in different words; as, *Jam vos* ăciem, *et* prœlia, *et* hostem *poscĭtis.* Sil.

5. *Amphĭbŏlia* is the use of equivocal words or constructions; as, *Gallus,* a Gaul, or a cock. *Aio te, Æăcida, Rōmānos vincĕre posse.* Quint.

6. *Idiŏtism* is a construction peculiar to one or more languages: thus, the ablative after comparatives is a Latinism.   When a peculiarity of one language is imitated in another, this is also called *idiŏtism.*   Thus, *Mitte mihi verbum,* instead of *Fac me certiŏrem,* is an Anglicism.

ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING.

I. OF TIME.

1. *The Roman Day.*

§ **326.** (1.) With the Romans, as with us, the day was either *civil* or *natural*. Their civil day, like ours, extended from midnight to midnight. The natural day continued from sunrise to sunset, as, on the other hand, the night extended from sunset to sunrise. The natural day and night were each divided into twelve equal parts or *hours*, which were consequently of different length, according to the varying length of the days and nights in the successive seasons of the year. It was only at the equinox that the diurnal and nocturnal hours of the Romans were equal to each other, as each was then equal to the twenty-fourth part of the civil day.

(2.) In the Roman camp the night was further divided into four watches (*vǐgǐliæ*), consisting each of three Roman hours, the second and fourth watches ending respectively at midnight and at sunrise.

2. *The Roman Month and Year.*

(1.) The calendar of the Romans, as rectified by Julius Cæsar, agreed with our own in the number of months, and of the days in each, according to the following table:—

Jānuārius . 31 days.	Maius . . 31 days.	September 30 days.
Februārius 28 or 29.	Jūnius. . 30 "	Octōber . . 31 "
Martius. . . 31 days.	Quintīlis 31 "	Nŏvember 30 "
Aprīlis . . . 30 "	Sextīlis . 31 "	Dĕcember 31 "

In early times the Roman year began with March, and the names *Quintīlis*, *Sextīlis*, *September*, etc., indicated the distance of those months from the commencement of the year. *Quintīlis* and *Sextīlis* were afterwards called *Jūlius* and *Augustus* in honor of the first two emperors. The Romans, instead of reckoning in an uninterrupted series from the first to the last day of a month, had in each month three points or periods from which their days were counted—the *Calends*, the *Nones*, and the *Ides*. The Calends (*Cǎlendæ*), were always the *first* day of the month. The Nones (*Nōnæ*), were the *fifth*, and the Ides (*Idus*), the *thirteenth;* except in March, May, July, and October, when the Nones occurred on the *seventh* day, and the Ides on the *fifteenth*.

(2.) They always counted forward, from the day whose date was to be determined, to the next Calends, Nones, or Ides, and designated the day by its distance before such point. After the first day of the month, therefore, they began to reckon so many days before the Nones; after the Nones, so many days before the Ides; and after the Ides, so many before the Calends, of the next month.

Thus, the second of January was denoted by *quarto Nōnas Jǐnuǎrias*, or *Jǎnuǎrii*, scil. *die ante:* the third, *tertio Nōnas;* the fourth, *prǐdie Nōnas;* and the fifth, *Nōnis*. The sixth was denoted by *octāvo Idus;* the seventh,

septĭmo Idus; and so on to the thirteenth, on which the Ides fell. The four-teenth was denoted by *undĕvīgĕsĭmo Călendas Februārias,* or *Februārii;* and so on to the end of the month.

(3.) The day preceding the Calends, Nones, and Ides, was termed *pridie Calendas,* etc., scil. *ante:* in designating the other days, both the day of the Calends, etc., and that whose date was to be deter-mined, were reckoned; hence the second day before the Calends, etc., was called *tertio,* the third *quarto,* etc.

(4.) To reduce the Roman calendar to our own, therefore, when the day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, it is necessary to take one from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Nones or the Ides, and to sub-tract the remainder from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fell in the given month.

Thus, to determine the day equivalent to *IV. Nonas Jānuārias,* we take 1 from 4, and subtract the remainder, 3, from 5, the day on which the Nones of January fell (i. e. 4—1=3, and 5—3=2): this gives 2, or the second of Jan-uary, for the day in question. So *VI. Idus Aprīlis:* the Ides of April falling upon the 13th, we take (6—1, i. e.) 5 from 13, which leaves 8 (i. e. 6—1=5, and 13—5=8): the expression, therefore, denotes the 8th of April.

(*a.*) In reckoning the days before the Calends, as they are not the last day of the current month, but the first of the following, it is necessary to subtract two from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Calends of the following month, and to take the remainder from the number of days in the month.

Thus, *XV. Cal. Quintīles* is 15—2=13, and 30—13=17, i. e. the Roman date XV. Cal. Quint. is equivalent to the 17th of June.

(*b.*) To reduce our calendar to the Roman, the preceding method is to be reversed. Thus when the given day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, (unless it be the day before the Nones or the Ides), we are to *add* one to the number denoting the day of the month, according to our reckoning, on which the Nones or Ides fell. But if the day is after the Ides, (unless it be the last day of the month), we must add *two* to the number of days in the month, and then subtract the number denoting the day of the month as expressed in our reckoning. The remainder will be the day before the Nones, Ides or Calends.

Thus to find the Roman date corresponding to the third of April, we have 5+1—3=3; the required date, therefore, is *III. Non. Apr.*—To find the proper Roman expression for our tenth of December we have 13+1—10=4; the date, therefore, is *IV. Id. Dec.*—The Roman expression for the 22d of August, in pursuance of the above rule, is found thus, 31+2—22=11, and the date is *XI. Cal. Sept.*

(5.) In leap year, both the 24th and 25th of February were called the sixth before the Calends of March. The 24th was called *dies bĭsextus,* and the year itself *annus bĭsextus,* bissextile or leap year.

(*a.*) The day after the Calends, etc., was sometimes called *postrĭdie călen-das,* etc.

(*b.*) The names of the months are properly adjectives, though often used as nouns, *mensis* being understood.

(6.) The correspondence of our calendar with that of the Romans is exhibited in the following

TABLE.

Days of our months.	MAR. MAI. JUL. OCT.	JAN. AUG. DEC.	APR. JUN. SEPT. NOV.	FEBR.
1	Calendæ.	Calendæ.	Calendæ.	Calendæ.
2	VI. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
5	III. "	Nonæ.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.
6	Pridie Non.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.
7	Nonæ.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
13	III. "	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie Id.	XIX. Cal.	XVIII. Cal.	XVI. Cal.
15	Idus.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Cal.	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Pridie " Mar
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie Cal.	
31	Pridie Cal.	Pridie Cal.		

(7.) In leap-year the last seven days of February were reckoned thus:—

23. VII. *Calendas Martias.*	27. IV. *Cal. Mart.*
24. *bisexto Cal. Mart.*	28. III. " "
25. VI. *Cal. Mart.*	29. *pridie Cal. Mart.*
26. V. " "	

(*a.*) Hence in reducing a date of February in leap-year to the Roman date, for the first 23 days we proceed according to the preceding rule in 4, (*b.*), as if the month had only 28 days. The 24th is marked as *bisexto Cal. Mart.*, and to obtain the proper expression for the remaining five days we regard the month as having 29 days. Thus the 27th of February in leap-year is 29+2—27=4, and the proper Roman expression is *IV. Cal. Mart.*

(*b.*) On the other hand, to reduce a Roman date of February in leap-year to our date we reverse the above process, and during the Nones and Ides and until the *VII. Calendas Martias* we reckon the month to have only 28 days:— *bisexto Cal. Mart.* is set down as the 24th, and for the remaining days designated as *VI. V. IV. III.* and *pridie Cal. Mart.* we reckon the month to have 29 days. Thus *III. Cal. Mart.* is 3—2=1, and 29—1=28, and the given day is equivalent to the 28th of February.

(8.) The Latins not only said *tertio*, *prīdie*, etc., *Cǎlendas*, etc., but also *ante diem tertium*, etc., *Cǎlendas*, etc.; and the latter form in Cicero and Livy is far more common than the former, and is usually written thus, *a. d. III. Cal.*, etc.

(9.) The expression *ante diem* was used as an indeclinable noun, and is joined with *in* and *ex*; as, *Consul Lătīnas fērias* in ante diem *tertium Idus Sextīlis ēdixit*, The consul appointed the Latin festival for the third day before the Ides of August. Liv. *Supplicātio indicta est* ex ante diem *quintum Idus Octōbres.* Id. So, Ad pridie *Nōnas Maias.* Cic.

(10.) The week of seven days (*hebdŏmas*), was not in use among the Romans under the republic, but was introduced under the emperors. The days of the week were then named from the planets; *dies Sōlis*, Sunday; *dies Lūnæ*, Monday; *dies Martis*, Tuesday; *dies Mercǔrii*, Wednesday; *dies Jŏvis*, Thursday; *dies Vĕnĕris*, Friday; *dies Sāturni*, Saturday.

(11.) The term *nundinæ* (from *nŏvem—dies*) denotes the regular market day at Rome when the country people came into the city; but it is not used for the purpose of denoting the period of eight days intervening between two successive market days.

(12.) The year at Rome was designated by the names of the consuls for that year. Thus Virgil was born, *M. Licinio Crasso et Cn. Pompeio Magno consulibus*, i. e. in the year of the consulship of Crassus and Pompey. But in Roman authors events are often dated from the year in which Rome was founded, which, according to Varro, was in the 753d year before the birth of Christ. This period was designated as *anno urbis condĭtæ*, and by abbreviation, *a. u. c.*, or simply *u. c.*, and sometimes by *a.* alone, before the numerals.

Thus the birth of Virgil was *a. u. c.* 684. To reduce such dates to our reckoning, if the given number is less than 754, we subtract it from the latter number, and the difference is the required year before Christ. The birth of Virgil therefore is 754—684=70 before Christ.—But if the number of the Roman year exceeds 753, we deduct 753 from the given number, and the remainder is the year after Christ. For example, the emperor Augustus died *a. u. c.* 767, and the corresponding year of our era is 767—753=14.

II. TABLES OF MONEY, WEIGHT, AND MEASURE.

Of the As.

§ **327.** The Romans used this word (*As*) to denote, I. The copper coin, whose value (in the time of Cicero) was about one cent and a half of our money. II. The unit of weight (libra), or of measure (jūgĕrum). III. Any unit or integer considered as divisible; as, of inheritances, interest, houses, etc.; whence *ex asse hēres*, one who inherits the whole. The multiples of the *As* are, *Dŭpondius* (*duo pondo*; for the *As* originally weighed a pound), *i. e.* 2 Asses; *Sestertius* (*sesqui tertius*), *i. e.* 2½ Asses; *Tressis*, *i. e.* 3 Asses; *Quatrussis*, *i. e.* 4 Asses; and so on to *Centussis*, *i. e.* 100 Asses. The *As*, whatever unit it represented, was divided into twelve parts or *unciæ*, and the different fractions received different names, as follows:

	Uncia.		Uncia.
As...........................	12	Quincunx	5
Deunx......................	11	Triens..........................	4
Dextans	10	Quādrans, or Tĕruncius..........	3
Dodrans	9	Sextans.........................	2
Bes...........................	8	Uncia...........................	1
Septunx......................	7		
Sēmis	6	Sescuncia......................	1½

The *Uncia* was divided in the following manner:—

1 Uncia contained	2	Sēmunciæ.
"	"	3	Duellæ.
"	"	4	Sīcilĭci.
"	"	6	Sextŭlæ.
"	"	8	Drachmæ.
"	"	24	Scrūpŭla.
"	"	48	Obŏli.

ROMAN COINS.

These were the *Tĕruncius*, *Sembella*, and *As* or *Lĭbella*, of copper; the *Sestertius*, *Quinārius* (or *Victōriātus*), and *Dēnārius*, of silver; and the *Aureus*, of gold.

				$	Cts.	M.
The Tĕruncius......................				0	0	3.9
2	Tĕruncii make	1 Sembella.........		0	0	7.8
2	Sembellæ	"	1 As *or* Lĭbella.....	0	1	5.6
2½	Asses*	"	1 Sestertius........	0	3	9
2	Sestertii	"	1 Quinārius........	0	7	8
2	Quinārii	"	1 Dēnārius........	0	15	6
25	Dēnārii	"	1 Aureus..........	3	90	0

* Sometimes also (in copper) the triens, sextans, uncia, sextŭla, and dūpondius.

ROMAN COMPUTATION OF MONEY.

Sestertii Nummi.

	$	Cts.	M.
Sestertius (or nummus)	0	3	9
Dĕcem sestertii	0	39	0
Centum sestertii..	3	90	0
Mille sestertii (equal to a sestertium)	39	0	0

Sestertia.

	$		
Sestertium (equal to mille sestertii)......................	39	0	0
Dĕcem sestertia	390	0	0
Centum, centum sestertia, or centum millia sestertiûm......	3900	0	0
Dĕcies sestertiûm, or dĕcies centēna millia nummûm	39000	0	0
Centies, or centies H. S.	390000	0	0
Millies H. S.	3900000	0	0
Millies centies H. S.	4290000	0	0

N. B.—The marks denoting a Sestertius nummus are IIS., LLS., HS., which are properly abbreviations for 2 1-2 asses. Observe, also, that when a line is placed over the numbers, *centēna millia* is understood. as in the case of the numeral adverbs; thus, H. S. M͞C. is millies centies HS.; whereas HS. MC. is only 1100 Sestertii.

ROMAN CALCULATION OF INTEREST.

The Romans received interest on their loans monthly, their highest rate being one per cent. (*centesima*), a month, i. e. 12 per cent a year. As this was the highest rate, it was reckoned as the *as* or unit in reference to the lower rates, which were denominated, according to the usual division of the *as*, *sēmisses*, *trientes*, *quádrantes*, etc., i. e. the half, third, fourth, etc., of the *as* or of 12 per cent. according to the following table:—

		Per cent. a year.
Asses ūsūræ or centēsĭmæ	....	12
Sēmisses ūsūræ	....	6
Trientes ūsūræ	....	4
Quadrantes ūsūræ	....	3
Sextantes ūsūræ	....	2
Unciæ ūsūræ	....	1
Quincunces ūsūræ	....	5
Septunces ūsūræ	....	7
Besses ūsūræ	....	8
Dodrantes ūsūræ	....	9
Dextantes ūsūræ	....	10
Deunces ūsūræ	....	11

ROMAN WEIGHTS.

			Oz.	Dwts.	Gr.
	Sĭlĭqua	....	0	0	3.036
3	Sĭlĭquæ make	1 Obŏlus........	0	0	9.107
2	Obŏli "	1 Scrūpŭlum....	0	0	18.214
3	Scrūpŭla "	1 Drachma......	0	2	6.643
1⅓	Drachma "	1 Sextŭla	0	3	0.857
1½	Sextŭla "	1 Sĭcĭlĭcus.......	0	4	13.286
1⅓	Sĭcĭlĭcus "	1 Duella	0	6	1.714
3	Duellæ "	1 Uncia.........	0	18	5.143
12	Unciæ "	1 Libra* (As) ...	10	18	13.714

*The Libra was also divided, according to the fractions of the As, into Deunx, etc.

ROMAN MEASURES FOR THINGS DRY.

			English Corn Measure.			
			Peck.	Gal.	Pint.	Sol. in.
	Lĭgŭla	....	0	0	0 1-48	0.01
4	Lĭgŭlæ make	1 Cyăthus	0	0	0 1-12	0.04
1½	Cyăthus "	1 Acētăbŭlum...	0	0	0 1-8	0.06
4	Acētăbŭla "	1 Hēmĭna.......	0	0	0 1-2	0.24
2	Hēmĭnæ "	1 Sextārius	0	0	1	0.48
16	Sextārii "	1 Modius........	1	0	0	7.68

ROMAN MEASURES FOR THINGS LIQUID.

			English Wine Measure.		
			Galls.	Pints.	Sol. in.
	Lĭgŭla	....	0	0 1-48	0.117
4	Lĭgŭlæ make	1 Cyăthus	0	0 1-12	0.469
1½	Cyăthus "	1 Acētăbŭlum..............	0	0 1-8	0.704
2	Acētăbŭla "	1 Quartārius..............	0	0 1-4	1.409
2	Quartārii "	1 Hēmĭna.................	0	0 1-2	2.876
2	Hēmĭnæ "	1 Sextārius*..............	0	1	5.636
6	Sextārii "	1 Congius	0	7	4.942
4	Congii "	1 Urna....................	3	4 1-2	5.33
2	Urnæ "	1 Amphŏra (or Quadrantal).	7	1	10.66
20	Amphŏræ "	1 Cūleus	143	3	11.095

*The Sextārius was also divided into twelve equal parts, called cyăthi, and therefore the călĭces were denominated sextantes, quadrantes, trientes, according to the number of cyăthi which they contained.

N. B.—Cădus, congiārius, and dōlium, are the names of certain vessels, not measures, of capacity.

ROMAN MEASURES OF LENGTH.

				English paces.	Feet.	Inch. Dec.
	Digĭtus transversus		....	0	0	0.725 1-4
1 1-5	Digĭtus	make	1 Uncĭa..........	0	0	0.967
3	Uncĭæ	"	1 Palmus mĭnor....	0	0	2.901
4	Palmi mĭnōres	"	1 Pes	0	0	11.604
1 1-4	Pes	"	1 Palmĭpes........	0	1	2.505
1 1-5	Palmĭpes	"	1 Cŭbĭtus.........	0	1	5.406
1 2-3	Cŭbĭtus	"	1 Grădus	0	2	5.01
2	Grădus	"	1 Passus..........	0	4	10.02
125	Passus	"	1 Stădium	120	4	4.5
8	Stădia	"	1 Milliārium.......	967	0	0

ROMAN SQUARE MEASURES.

	Roman sq. feet.	English rods.	Sq. pls.	Sq. feet.
Jūgĕrum (As)	28,800	2	18	250.05
Deunx............	26,400	2	10	183.85
Dextans	24,000	2	02	117.64
Dodrans..........	21,600	1	34	51.42
Bes...............	19,200	1	25	257.46
Septunx	16,800	1	17	191.25
Sēmis.............	14,400	1	09	125.03
Quincunx.........	12,000	1	01	58.82
Triens	9,600	0	32	264.85
Quădrans	7,200	0	24	198.64
Sextans...........	4,800	0	16	132.43
Uncĭa.............	2,400	0	08	66.21

REMARK 1. The Romans reckoned their copper money by *asses*, their silver money by *sestertii*, and their gold money by *aurei* and sometimes by Attic *talents*.

REM. 2. The *as*, as the unit of money, was originally a pound of copper, but its weight was gradually diminished, until, in the later days of the republic, it amounted to only 1-24th of a pound.

REM. 3. (*a.*) The *dēnārius* was a silver coin, originally equal in value to ten *asses*, whence its name; but, after the weight of the *as* was reduced, the *dēnārius* was equal to eighteen *asses*.

(*b.*) The *sestertius*, or sesterce, was one fourth of the *dēnārius*, or two *asses* and a half (*sēmistertius*). The *sestertius* was called emphatically *nummus*, as in it all large sums were reckoned after the coining of silver money.

(*c.*) The *aureus* (a gold coin), in the time of the emperors, was equal to 25 *dēnārii*, or 100 sesterces.

REM. 4. In reckoning money, the Romans called any sum under 2000 sesterces so many *sestertii*; as, *decem sestertii*, ten sesterces; *centum sestertii*, a hundred sesterces.

REM. 5. Sums from 2000 sesterces (inclusive) to 1,000,000, they denoted either by *mille, millia*, with *sestertiûm* (gen. plur.), or by the plural of the neuter noun *sestertium*, which itself signified *a thousand* sesterces. Thus they said *quadrāginta millia sestertiûm*, or *quadraginta sestertia*, to denote 40,000 sesterces. With the genitive *sestertiûm, millia* was sometimes omitted; as, *sestertiûm centum*, scil. *millia*, 100,000 sesterces.

REM. 6. To denote a million, or more, they used a combination; thus, *dĕcies centēna millia sestertiûm*, 1,000,000 sesterces. The words *centēna millia*, however, were generally omitted; thus, *dĕcies sestertiûm*, and sometimes merely *dĕcies*. See § 118, 5. So, *centies*, 10 millions; *millies*, 100 millions.

REM. 7. Some suppose that *sestertium*, when thus joined with the numeral adverbs, is always the neuter noun in the nominative or accusative singular. The genitive and ablative of that noun are thus used; as, *Decies sestertii dote*, With a dowry of 1,000,000 sesterces. Tac. *Quinquagies sestertio*, 5,000,000 sesterces. Id. But this usage does not occur in Cicero.

ABBREVIATIONS.

§ **328.**   The following are the most common abbreviations of Latin words:—

A., *Aulus.*	M. T. C., *Marcus Tullius Cicero.*	Q., or Qu., *Quintus.*
C., *Caius,* or *Gaius.*	M., *Mānius.*	Ser., *Servius.*
Cn., *Cnēŭs.*	Mam., *Māmercus.*	S., *or* Sex., *Sextus.*
D., *Dĕcĭmus.*	N., *Nŭmĕrius.*	Sp., *Spŭrius.*
L., *Lūcĭus.*	P., *Publius.*	T., *Titus.*
M., *Marcus.*		Ti., or Tib., *Tĭbĕrius.*

A. d., *ante diem.*	F., *Fīlius;* as, M. F., *Marci fīlius.*	Pont. Max., *pontĭfex maxĭmus.*
A. U. C., *anno urbis conditæ.*	Ictus, *jūrisconsultus.*	Pr., *prætor.*
Cal., *or* Kal., *Călendæ.*	Id., *Idus.*	Proc., *prōconsul.*
Cos., *Consul.*	Imp., *impĕrātor.*	Resp., *respūblĭca.*
Coss., *Consŭles.*	J. O. M., *Jŏvi, optĭmo maxĭmo.*	S., *sălūtem, sacrum,* or *sĕnātus.*
D., *Dīvus.*	N., *nĕpos.*	S. D. P., *sălūtem dĭcit plūrĭmam.*
D. D., *dōno dĕdit.*	Non., *Nōnæ.*	
D. D. D., *dat, dĭcat, dĕdĭcat,* or *dōno dĭcat, dēdĭcat.*	P. C., *patres conscripti.*	S. P. Q. R., *Sĕnātus pŏpŭlusque Rōmānus.*
Des., *dēsignātus.*	Pl., *plēbis.*	S. C., *sĕnātûs consultum.*
D. M., *diis mānĭbus.*	Pop., *pŏpŭlus.*	Tr., *trĭbūnus.*
Eq. Rom., *ĕques Rōmānus.*	P. R., *pŏpŭlus Rōmānus.*	

To these may be added terms of reference; as, *c., căput,* chapter; *cf., confer,* compare; *l. c., lŏco citāto; l. l., lŏco laudāto,* in the place quoted; *v., versus,* verse.

DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE.

§ **329.**   1. Of the Roman literature for the first five centuries after the foundation of the city, but few vestiges remain. The writers of the succeeding centuries have been arranged in four ages, in reference to the purity of the language in the period in which they flourished. These are called the *golden, silver, brazen,* and *iron* ages.

2. The golden age is reckoned from the time of Livius Andronĭcus, about A. U. C. 514, to the death of Augustus, A. U. C. 767, or A. D. 14, a period of a little more than 250 years. The writers of the early part of this age are valued rather on account of their antiquity, and in connection with the history of the language, than as models of style. It was not till the age of Cicero, that Roman literature reached its highest elevation. The era comprehending the generation immediately preceding, and that immediately succeeding, that of Cicero, as well as his own, is the period in which the most distinguished writers of Rome flourished; and their works are the standard of purity in the Latin language.

3. The silver age extended from the death of Augustus to the death of Trajan, A. D. 118, a period of 104 years. The writers of this age were inferior to those who had preceded them; yet several of them are worthy of commendation.

4. The brazen age comprised the interval from the death of Trajan to the time when Rome was taken by the Goths, A. D. 410. From the latter epoch commenced the iron age, during which the Latin language was much adulterated with foreign words, and its style and spirit essentially injured.

5. The body of Latin writings has been otherwise arranged by Dr. Freund, so as to be comprised in three main periods,—the *Ante-classical, Classical,* and *Post-classical.* The ante-classical extends from the oldest fragments of the language to Lucretius and Varro; the classical from Cicero and Cæsar to Tacitus, Suetonius, and the younger Pliny inclusive; the post-classical from that time to the fifth century of our era. The classical Latinity is subdivided into (*a.*) *Ciceronian,* (*b.*) *Augustan,* (*c.*) *post-Augustan,* and to the language of the fourth and fifth centuries he has given the title of *late Latin.*

LATIN WRITERS IN THE DIFFERENT AGES.

(From the Lexicon of Facciolatus.)

WRITERS OF THE GOLDEN AGE.

Livius Andronīcus.	L. Cornelius Sisenna.	Q. Novius.
Lævius.	P. Nigidius Figŭlus.	C. Q. Atta.
C. Nævius.	C. Decius Laberius.	L. Cassius Hemĭna.
Statius Cæcilius.	M. Verrius Flaccus.	Fenestella.
Q. Ennius.	Varro Attacīnus.	Q. Claud. Quadrigarius.
M. Pacuvius.	Titinius.	Cœlius Antipăter.
L. Accius.	L. Pomponius.	Fabius Pictor.
C. Lucilius.	C. Sempronius Asellio.	Cn. Gellius.
Sex. Turpilius.	Cn. Matius.	L. Piso, and others.
L. Afranius.		

Of the works of the preceding writers, only a few fragments remain.

M. Porcius Cato.	Sex. Aurelius Propertius.	P. Ovidius Naso.
M. Accius Plautus.	C. Sallustius Crispus.	Q. Horatius Flaccus.
M. Terentius Afer.	M. Terentius Varro.	C. Pedo Albinovānus.
T. Lucretius Carus.	Albius Tibullus.	Gratius Faliscus.
C. Valerius Catullus.	P. Virgilius Maro.	Phædrus.
P. Syrus.	T. Livius.	C. Cornificius.
C. Julius Cæsar.	M. Manilius.	A. Hurtius, *or* Oppius.
C. Cornelius Nepos.	M. Vitruvius.	P. Cornelius Sevērus.
M. Tullius Cicĕro.		

To these may be added the following names of lawyers, whose opinions are found in the digests:—

Q. Mutius Scævŏla.	M. Antistius Labeo.	Masurius Sabīnus.
Alfenus Varus.		

Of the writers of the golden age, the most distinguished are Terence, Catullus, Cæsar, Nepos, Cicero, Virgil, Horace, Ovid, T. Livy, and Sallust.

WRITERS OF THE SILVER AGE.

A. Cornelius Celsus.
P. Velleius Paterculus.
L. Junius Moderatus Columella.
Pomponius Mela.
A. Persius Flaccus.
Q. Asconius Pediānus.
M. Annæus Seneca.
L. Annæus Seneca.

M. Annæus Lucānus.
T. Petronius Arbīter.
C. Plinius Secundus.
C. Silius Italīcus.
C. Valerius Flaccus.
C. Julius Solīnus.
D. Junius Juvenālis.
P. Papinius Statius.
M. Valerius Martiālis.

M. Fabius Quintiliānus.
Sex. Julius Frontīnus.
C. Cornelius Tacītus.
C. Plinius Cæcilius Secundus.
L. Annæus Florus.
C. Suetonius Tranquillus.

The age to which the following writers should be assigned is somewhat uncertain:—

Q. Curtius Rūfus.
Valerius Prŏbus.

Scribonius Largus.
Sulpitia.

L. Fenestella.
Atteius Capĭto.

Of the writers of the silver age, the most distinguished are Celsus, Velleius, Columella, the Senecas, the Plinies, Juvenal, Quintilian, Tacitus, Suetonius, and Curtius.

WRITERS OF THE BRAZEN AGE.

A. Gellius.
L. Apuleius.
Q. Septimius Tertulliānus.
Q. Serēnus Sammonĭcus.
Censorīnus.
Thascius Cæcilius Cypriānus.
T. Julius Calpurnius.
M. Aurelius Nemesiānus.
Ælius Spartiānus.
Julius Capitolīnus.
Ælius Lampridius.

Vulcatius Gallicānus.
Trebellius Pollio.
Flavius Vopiscus.
Cœlius Aureliānus.
Flavius Eutropius.
Rhemnius Fannius.
Arnobius Afer.
L. Cœlius Lactantius.
Ælius Donātus.
C. Vettus Juvencus.
Julius Firmĭcus.
Fab. Marius Victorīnus.
Sex. Rūfus, *or* Rūfus Festus.

Ammiānus Marcellīnus.
Vegetius Renātus.
Aurel. Theodōrus Macrobius.
Q. Aurelius Symmăchus.
D. Magnus Ausonius.
Paulīnus Nolānus.
Sex. Aurelius Victor.
Aurel. Prudentius Clēmens.
Cl. Claudiānus.
Marcellus Empirĭcus.
Falconia Prŏba.

Of an Age not entirely certain.

Valerius Maxĭmus.
Justīnus.

Terentiānus Maurus.
Minutius Fēlix.

Sosipăter Charisius.
Flavius Aviānus.

The opinions of the following lawyers are found in the digests:—

Licinius Procŭlus.
Neratius Priscus.
P. Juventius Celsus.
Priscus Jabolēnus.
Domitius Ulpiānus.

Herennius Modestīnus.
Salvius Juliānus.
Caius.
Callistrătus.
Æmilius Papiniānus.

Julius Paulus.
Sex. Pomponius.
Venuleius Saturnīnus.
Ælius Marciānus.
Ælius Gallus, and others.

Of the writers of the brazen age, Justin, Terentianus, Victor, Lactantius, and Claudian, are most distinguished.

The age to which the following writers belong is uncertain. The style of some of them would entitle them to be ranked with the writers of the preceding ages, while that of others would place them even below those of the iron age.

Palladius Rutilius Taurus Æmiliānus.
Æmilius Mäcer.
Messāla Corvīnus.
Vibius Sequester.
Julius Obsĕquens.
L. Ampelius.
Apicius Cœlius.
Sex. Pompeius Festus.
Prŏbus (auctor Notārum.)
Fulgentius Planciădes.
Hyginus.
C. Cæsar Germanĭcus.
P. Victor.
P. Vegetius.

Auctōres Priapeiōrum.
Catalecta Virgilii et Ovidii.
Auctor oratiōnis Sallustii in Cic. et Cicerōnis in Sall.; item illius *Antĕquam ī̆ret in exsilium.*
Auctor Epistŏlæ ad Octavium.
Auctor Panegyrĭci ad Pisōnem.
Declamatiōnes quæ tribuuntur Quintiliāno, Porcio Latrōni, Calpurnio Flacco.

Interpres Darētis Phrygii, et Dictyos Cretensis.
Scholiastæ Vetĕres.
Grammatĭci Antīqui.
Rhetōres Antīqui.
Medĭci Antīqui.
Catalecta Petroniāna.
Pervigilium Venĕris.
Poematia et Epigrammăta vetĕra a Pithæo collecta.
Monumentum Ancyrānum.
Fasti Consulāres.
Inscriptiōnes Vetĕres.

WRITERS OF THE IRON AGE.

Cl. Rutilius Numatiānus.
Servius Honorātus.
D. Hieronȳmus.
D. Augustīnus.
Sulpicius Sevērus.
Paulus Orosius.
Cœlius Sedulius.
Codex Theodosiānus.
Martiānus Capella.
Claudiānus Mamertus.
Sidonius Apollināris.

Latīnus Pacātus.
Claudius Mamertīnus, et alii, quorum sunt Panegyrĭci vetĕres.
Alcīmus Avītus.
Manl. Sevērīnus Boëthius.
Prisciānus.
Nonius Marcellus.
Justiniāni Institutiōnes et Codex.

Ruf. Festus Aviēnus.
Arātor.
M. Aurelius Cassidōrus.
Fl. Cresconius Corippus.
Venantius Fortunātus.
Isidōrus Hispalensis.
Anonȳmus Ravennas.
Aldhelmus *or* Althelmus.
Paulus Diacŏnus.

32*
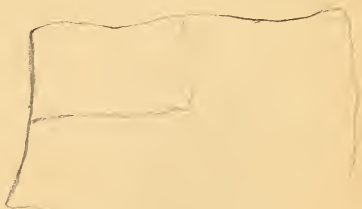
INDEX.

The figures in the following Index designate the *Sections* and their divisions: R. stands for *remark*, N. for *note*, E. for *exception*, W. for *with*, and pr. for *prosody*.

A, sound of, 7 and 8; nouns in, of 1st decl., 41; gender of, 41; of 3d decl. gender of, 66; genitive of, 68, 2; in acc. sing. of masc. and fem. Greek nouns, 79 and 80; in nom. acc. and voc. plur. of all neuter nouns, adjectives and participles, 40, 8; 83, I.; 85; 87; 105, 2; verbals in, 102. 6. (*c.*); change of in compd. verbs, 189; increment in, 3d decl., 287, 3; in plur., 288; of verbs, 290; ending the first part of compds., 285, R. 4; final, quantity of, 294.

A, ab, abs, how used, 195, R. 2, and 10; in composition, 196, I.. 1; before the abl. of distance, 236, R. 6; *ab, de,* or *ex*, with abl. of depriving, etc., 251, R. 1.

Abbreviations, 328.

Abdico, constr. of, 251, R. 2.

Abest mihi, 226, R. 2; *non multum abest quin*, 262, N. 7.

Abhinc, 253, R. 2.

Ablative, 37; sing. 3d decl., 82; of adjs. of 3d decl., 113; plur. 1st decl., 40, R. 6, and 43; 2d decl., 40, R. 6; 3d decl.,84; 4th decl., 89, 5; used adverbially, 192, I., II.; of character, quality, etc., 211, R. 6; after prepositions, 241; after compd. verbs, 242; after *opus* and *usus*, 243; after *dignus*, etc. 244; after *utor*. etc., 245, I.; after *nitor*, etc., 245, II.; after parts. denoting *origin*, 246; of cause, etc., 247; of means and agent, 248; of means, 249, I.; of accordance, 249. II.; of accompaniment, 249, III.; denoting in what respect. 250; after adjectives of plenty or want, 250, 2, (1.); after verbs of abounding, etc., 250, 2, (2.); after *facio* and *sum*. 250, R. 3; after verbs of depriving, etc., 251; of price, 252; of time when, 253; of place where, 254; of place whence, 255, 1; of place to or through which, 255, 2; after comparatives, 256; of degree of difference, 256, R. 16; abl. absolute, 257; how translated, 257, N. 1; equivalent to what, 257, R. 1; only with pres. and perf. parts., 257, R. 2; without a participle, 257, R. 7; with a clause, 257, R. 8; how it marks the time of an action, 256, R. 4; noun wanting, 256, R. 9.

Abounding and wanting, verbs of, with abl. 250; with gen. 220, (3.)

"About to do," how expressed, 162, 14; "about to be done," how expressed, 162, 14, R. 4.

Abstineo, w. abl.,251, N.; *vix* or *ægre abstineo, quin*, 262, N. 7.

Abstract nouns, 26; formation from adjs., 101; their terminations, 101, 1 and 2, (3.); from verbs, 102.

Abundo, 250, (2.) R. 1.

-*abus*, dat. and abl. plur. in, 43.

Ac or *atque*, 198, 1. R. (*b.*) and 2, R.; instead of *quam*, 256, R. 15; *ac si* with subj. 263, 2, and R.

Acatalectic verse, 304, 3. (1.)

Accent in English, 16; place of secondary accent, 16, 1 and 2; in Latin, 14 and 15; of dissyllables, 14, 4; of polysyllables. 14, 4, and 15—written accents, 5, 2, and 14, 2.

Accentuation, 14—16.

Accidents of nouns, 26, 7; of verbs, 141.

Accipio, w. part. in *dus*, 274, R. 7.

Accompaniment, abl. of,249, III..

Accordance, abl. of, 249, II.

Achivom for *Achivorum*, 53.

-*acis*, genitives in. 78. 2. (1.)

Accusative, 37; sing., terminal letter of in masculines and feminines, 40, 2; plural, terminal letter of in do.. 40, 7; of 3d decl., 79; of Greek nouns. 80; plur. 3d decl., 85; do. of adjs. of 3d decl., 114; neuter in all declensions, sing and plur., 40, 8; in *em* and *im*, 79; of Greek nouns in *im, in,* or *a*, 79, (*b.*) and 80; in *idem*, 80, E. 1; in *ym* or *yn*, 80, II.; in *ea*, 80, III.; in *etem, eta, em,* or *en*, 80, IV.; neuter used adverbially, 192, II., 4, and 205, R. 10; acc. after verbs, 229—234; omitted, 229, R. 4; inf. or a clause instead of, 229, R. 5; of a person after *miseret,* etc., 229, R. 6; after *juvat*, etc., 229, R. 7; after neuter verbs, 232; after compound verbs, 233; after verbal nouns and verbal adjs., 233, N.; of part affected, 234, II.; a limiting acc. instead of the abl. in *partim, vicem, cetera,* etc., 234, II.. R. 3; after prepositions, 235; of time and space, 236; of place, 237; after adverbs and interjections, 238; acc. as subject, 239; acc. of the thing supplied by the inf., 270, N., acc. w. inf., 272; do. exchanged for the subjunctive,

dimeter, 314, **VII.**;—heptameter, 318, **IV.**
Arenæ, as gen. of place, 221, R. 3, (4.)
Argo, genitive of, 69, E. 3.
Argos (-*gi*), 92, 4.
Arguo, constr., 217, R. 1.
Aristophanic verse, 304, 2.
-*arium* and -*arius*, nouns and adjs. in, 100, 8; 128, 3; 121, 4.
Arrangement of words, 279; poetical, 279, N. 4; of clauses, 280.
Ars, declined, 57.
Arsis and thesis, 308.
Article, wanting in Latin, 41, N.
-*as*, genitives in, 43; nouns in of 3d decl., gender of, 62; genitive of, 72; gen. plur. of, 83, **II.**, 4; in acc. plur. of Greek nouns of 3d decl., 85, E. 2.— -*as* and -*anus*, adjs. in, 128, 6; -*as* final, quantity of, 300.
As, value of, 327; how divided, 327;— gender of, 62, E. 1; 72, E. 1; gender of parts ending in *ns*, 64, 2; *assis non habere*, 214, R. 1.
Asclepiadic verse, 304, 2;—tetrameter, 316, **III.**
Asking, verbs of, with two accs., 231; constr. in the pass., 234, **I.**
Aspergo, 249, **I.** and R. 1 and 3.
Aspirate, 3, 1.
Assequor, *ut*, 273, N. 2.
-*asso* for -*avero*, 162, 9.
assuesco and *assuefacio*, w. abl., 245, **II.**; w. dat., 245, **II.**, R. 1.
Asyndeton, 323, 1, (1.)
-*at*, roots of nouns in, 56, **II.**, R. 5.
At, conj., 198, 9; *at enim*, *atqui*, 198, 9, (*b.*)
-*atim*, adverbs in, 192, **I.**, 1.
Atque, composition and meaning, 198, 1, R. (*b.*) See *ac*.
Attraction, 206, (6.); 209, N. 6 and R. 8; 210, R. 6; 272, N. 3.
Attribuo, W. participle in *dus*, 274, R. 7.
-*atus*, adjs. in, 128, 7.
Au, how pronounced, 9, 2 and R. 2.
Audeo, how conjugated, 142, R. 2.
Audio, conjugated, 160; used like *appellor*, 210, N. 2; constr., 272, N. 1; *audes* for *audies*, 183, R. 3;—*audiens*, constr., 222, R. 1.
-*aus*, nouns in, gender of, 62; genitive of, 76, E. 4.
Ausculto, constr., 222, R. 2, (*b.*), and (1.), (*a.*)
Ausim, 183, R. 1.
Aut and *vel*, 198, 2, R. (*a.*); *aut* and *ve*, 198, 2. R. (*d.*); *aut*—*aut*, 198, 2, R. (*e.*); *aut* with the singular, 209. R. 12, (5.)
Autem, 198, 9; its position, 279, 3, (*c.*); ellipsis of 278, R. 11.
Authority, in prosody, 282, 4.
Auxiliary verb, 153.
-*av* and -*atu* in the 2d and 3d roots of verbs 164.
Avarus, with gen., 213, R. 1.
Ave, 183, 8.
Avidus, with gen. 213, R. 1; w. gen. of gerund, 275, (2.); w. inf. poetically, 270, R. 1.
-*ax*, nouns in, gen. of, 78, 2, (1.); adjs. in, 129, 6; verbals in with gen., 213, R. 1.

B.

B, roots of nouns ending in, 56, **I.**; changed to *p.*, 171, 2.
Balneum, plur. -*ea* or -*eæ*, 92, 6.
Barbarism, 325, 1.
Barbiton, declined, 54, 1.
Belle, *bellissime*, 192, **IV.** R.
Belli, construed like names of towns, 221, R. 3; *bello*, 253.
Bene, derivation, 192, **II.**, 1; constr. of its compounds, 225, **I.**; *bene est*, w. dat., 228, 1; *bene*, w. acc., 239, R. 2; with verbs of price, 252, R. 3.
-*ber*, names of months in, how declined, 71 and 108.
Bes, gen. of, 73, E. 2.
Bibi, pr., 284, E., (1.)
Bicorpor, abl. of, 113, E. 2; 115, 1, (*a.*)
Biduum, *triduum*, etc., *biennium*, etc., 121, 2.
-*bilis*, adjs. in, 129, 4; how compared, 126, 4; with dative, 222, R. 1.
Bimestris, 113, E. 1.
Bipes, genitive of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, E. 2; 115, 1, (*a.*)
Bonus, declined, 105, 2; compared, 125, 5; *boni consulo*, 214, N. 1.
Bos, dat. and abl. plur. of, 84, E. 1; 286, 5; gender of, 80; genitive of, 75, E. 1; gen. plur., 83, **II.**, R. 1.
-*br*, roots of nouns in, 56, **I.**, R. 3.
Brachycatalectic verse, 304, 3, (2.)
Brazen age of Roman literature, 329, 4.
-*brum*, verbals in, 102, 5.
Bucolic cæsura, 310, 6, R. 4.
-*bulum*, verbals in, 102, 5.
-*bundus*, adjs. in, 129, 1; comparison of, 126, 5; with acc., 233, N.

C.

C, sound of, 10; before *s* in roots of nouns, 56, **I.**, R. 2; in roots of verbs, 171, 1; gender of nouns in, 66; genitive of, 70; *c* final, quantity of, 299, 4; *C.* for *Caius*, i. q. *Gaius*, 328.
Cælebs, 112, 2; in abl. sing., 113, E. 2; 115, 1, (*a.*)
Cæsura, 309; kinds of, 309; in hexameter verse, 310, 3; cæsural pause, 309, 3; in hexameter verse, 4—6; in pentameter verse, 311, 2; in iambic verse, 314, **I.** and x.; in trochaic verse, 315, **I**; in choriambic verse, 316, **III.**
Calco, change of *a* to *u* in its compds., 189, N. 3.
Calendar, Roman, 326, 6.
Calends, 326.
Callidus, 270, R. 1; 213, R. 1.
Canalis, abl. of, 82, 5, (*c.*)
Cano receptui, 227, R. 2.
Capax, w. genitive, 213, R. 1. (1.), and R. 5. (1.)
Capio, conjugated, 159; adjs. compounded of, 112, 2.
Capital letters, how used by the Romans, 2, 2; as numerals, 118, 7.
Caput declined, 57; *capitis* and *capite*, *damnare*, *accusare*, etc., 217, R. 3.

Facile, adv., 192, 4, (*b.*); w. superlatives, etc., 277, R. 7.

Facilis, constr., 276, III., R. 4; 222. R. 1, (*a.*)

Facio and compds., passive of, 180 and N.; changes of in the compds., 189, N. 1; w. gen. of value, 214, R. 2; w. two accs., 230, N. 1; w. abl., 250. R. 3; w. *ut* and subj., 273, 1, N. 2 and 3; w. participle, 273, 1; w. *de*, gen., 250, R. 3; *facere non possum quin*, 262, 2; *facere quod*, 273, N. 8; ellipsis of, 209, R. 4; *facere certiorem*, 230, N. 3.

Faliscan verse, 312, XI.

Fallit me, 229, R. 7.

Familia with *pater*, etc., gen. of, 43, 2.

Familiaris, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (*a.*); with gen., 222, R. 1, (*c.*)

Far, its root, 56, II., R. 6; gen. of, 71, E. 2; abl., 82, E. 1, (*b.*); 94 and 95.

Fas, gender of, 62, E. 2; 94; *fas erat*, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, R. 3; *fas est*, w. supine in *u*, 276, III., R. 2.

Faxo, *faxim* and *faxem*, 162, 9, and 183, R. 1.

Faux, genitive of, 78, 2, (5.); but cf. 94, p. 50; gen. plur., 88, II., 3.

Favetur, conjugated, 184, 2, (*b.*) constr., 223.

Fearing, verbs of, w. *ut* and *ne*, 262, R. 7.

Febris, ellipsis of, 205, R. 7, (1.)

Fecundus, w. gen. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.)

Feet, in poetry, 302; isochronous, 302, R.

Fel, its root, 56, II., R. 6; its genitive, 70, E.; 94.

Felix, declined, 111; 213, R. 4, (1.)

Femina, added to epicene nouns, 133, N.

Feminine nouns, of 1st decl., 41; of 2d decl., 49—51; of 3d decl., 62; exceptions in, 62—65.

Femur, genitive of, 71, 3.

Fer, 162, 4; quantity of, 299, E. 4.

Fero, conjugated, 179; its compds., 172, (p. 134); *fertur*, constr. of, 271, R. 2.

-ficus, comparison of adjs. in, 125, 3, (*a.*)

Fido, how conjugated, 142, R. 2; w. abl., 245, II.; w. dat., 245, II., R. 1; 223, R. 2.

Fidi, (from *findo*), pr., 284, E. 1, (1.)

Figures of prosody, 305—307; of orthography and etymology, 322; of syntax, 323; of rhetoric, 324.

Filia, dat. and abl. plur., 43.

Filius, voc. sing., 52.

Filling, verbs of, w. abl., 249, I.; w. gen., 220, 3.

Final syllables, quantity of, 294—301;—conjunctions, 198, 8.

Finitimus, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (*a.*)

Fio, conjugated, 180; w. gen. of value, 214, R. 2; w. two datives, 227, R. 1; *fit* and *fieri non potest ut*, 262, R. 3; *fit per me*, 262, R. 11; quantity of *i* in *fio*, 283, E. 1.

Flagito, w. two accs., 231, R. 1; w. *ut*, 273, N. 4.

Flecto, used reflexively, 229, R. 4, 1.

Flocci habere, etc., 214, R. 1.

Fluo and *struo*, 2d and 3d roots of, 171, N.

Follow, in what sense used, 203, 9.

Fons, gender of, 64, 1.

Foras and *foris*, 237, R. 5, (*c.*)

Forem, *fore*, etc., 154, R. 3; 162, 12, (1.); w. two datives, 227, R. 1.

Fractional expressions, 121, 6.

Freeing, verbs of, 251.

Frenum, plur. *freni* and *frena*, 92, 5.

Frequens, w. gen. or abl., 213, R. 3, (3.); cf. R. 4, (1.)

Frequentative verbs, 187, II., 1; quantity of *i* in, 284, E. 4.

Fretus, w. abl., 244; w. dat., 222, R. 6; w. inf., 244, R. 2, (*b.*)

Fructus, declined, 87.

Frugi, 115, 4; comparison of, 125, 5.

Fruor, w. abl., 245, I.; w. acc., 245, I., R. 1.

Frux, genitive of, 78, 2, (5.); 94.

Fugio, constr., 225, IV.; 210, R. 3, (2.); *fuge*, poetically, w. inf., 271, N. 3; *fugit me*, 229, R. 7.

Fui, etc., in compound tenses, 162, 12, (1.); *fuisse*, w. perf. pass. participles, 268, R. 1, (*b.*)

Fungor, w. abl., 245, I.; w. acc., 245, R.; 275, II., R. 1.

Fuo, root of *fui*, 154, R. 2 and 3; *futum*, pr., 284, E. 1, (2.)

Furo, 183, R. 2.

Furor, w. dat. or abl., 224, R. 2.

Future tense, 145, III.; how supplied in the subj., 260, R. 7; future perfect tense, 145, VI.; old form in *so*, 162, 9 and 10; future indic. for imperative, 267, R. 2; 259, R. 1, (4.); fut. imperative, 267, (2.), (3.); future pass. part. w. acc., 234, I., R. 2; fut. perf. for fut., 259, R. 1, (5.)

Futurum esse or *fore*, *ut*, w. subj., 268, R. 4, (*b.*); *futurum fuisse*, *ut*, 268, R. 5.

G.

G, sound of, 10; before *s* in roots of nouns, 56, R. 2; in roots of verbs, 171, 1, and E. 5.

Galliambus, 314, X.

Gaudeo, how conjugated, 142, R. 2; with abl., 247, 1, (2.); w. acc., 232, N. 1; with *quod*, etc., 273, N. 6.

Gemo, w. acc., 232, N. 1.

Gems, gender of names of, 29.

-gena, compounds in, 43, 2.

Gener, declined, 46.

General relatives, 139, 5, R.; how used, 207, R. 29.

General indefinites, 139, 5, R.

Gender, 26, 7 and 27; its divisions, 27; general rules of, 27—34; natural and grammatical, 27; masc. from signification, 28; fem. from do., 29; common and doubtful, 30; epicene, 33; neuter appellatives of persons, 32, 2; of Greek nouns, 34, R. 1; neuter, 34; of 1st decl., 41; excs in 1st decl., 42; of 2d decl., 46; excs. in 2d decl., 49; of 3d decl., 58, 62, and 66; excs. in 3d decl., 59—67; of 4th decl., 87; excs. in 4th decl., 88; of 5th decl., 90; excs. in 5th decl., 90; gender of adjs., 205.

Genero, w. abl., 246, R. 1; *generatus*, w. abl., 246.

Genitive, 37; sing., 1st decl., excs. in, 43; of 3d decl., 68; of adjectives, 3d decl., 112; plur., 1st decl., contracted, 43; 2d decl., do., 53; 3d decl., 83; terminal letters in all the declensions, 40, 5; of adjectives, 3d

I.

(b.); *nec is*, 207, R. 26, (c.); *necne* or *annon*, 265, R. 2; *necdum*, 277, I., R. 16; its place, 279, 3, (a.)

Necesse, defective adj., 115, 5; *necesse esse ut*, etc., 262, R. 3, N. 2; without *ut*, 262, N. 4; *necesse fuit*, the indic. for the subj., 259, R. 3; w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2; w. predicate dat.,269, R. 5; 273, 4.

Necessity, how expressed, 162, 15.

Necessario, after comparatives, 256, R. 9.

Nedum, w. subj., 262, N. 5; without a verb, ib.

Nefas, gender of, 62, E. 2: 94; w. supine in *u*, 276, III., R. 2.

Negatives, two, their force, 277, R. 3—5; negative joined to the conjunction, as, *nec quisquam, nec ullus*, etc., instead of *et nemo, et nullus*, etc., 278, R. 9.

Negligens, constr., 213, R. 4, (2.)

Nego, instead of *non dico*, 279, 15, (b.); w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1, and R. 6; *negor*, w. inf., 271, N. 1.

Negotium, ellipsis of, 211, R. 8, N.

Nemo, 94 and 95; for *nullus*, 207, R. 31; *nemo est qui*, 264, 7, N. 2; *nemo non*, 'every one' 277, R. 5, (c.)

Nempe, 191, R. 4; 198, 7, R., (a.)

Neoterism, 325, 3.

Nequa and *nequæ*, 138, 2.

Nequam, indeclinable, 115, 4; compared, 125, 5.

Neque, see *nec*; for *et non*, 198, 1, (c.); *neque—neque*, or *nec—nec, neque—nec, nec —neque*, 198, 1, (e.); *neque—et*, ib.; *neque* w. general negatives, 279, 15, (b.); *neque non*, 277, R. 3; *neque quisquam, ullus, umquam*, etc., 278, R. 9.

Nequeo, how conjugated, 182, N.; w. inf., 271, N. 4.

Ne quis or *nequis*, how declined, 138, 2; *ne quis*, instead of *ne quisquam*, 207, R. 31; 278, R. 9.

Nerio, genitive of, 69, E. 2.

Nescio an, 198, 11, R., (e.); 265, R. 3; *nescio quis*, 265, R. 4; *nescio quomodo*, ib.; w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.

Nescius, w. genit., 213, R. 1, (3.)

-*neus* and -*nus*, adjs. in, 128, 1, (b.)

Neuter, nouns, 34; not found in 1st and 5th decls., 40, 9; of 2d decl., 46; 54; of 3d decl., 66; exc. in, 66; 67; adjs. used adverbially, 205, R. 10; adjs. and adj. prons, w. genit., 212, R. 3; acc. of denoting degree w. another acc. after transitive verbs, 231, R. 5; verbs, 141; form of, 142, 1; neuter passives, 142, 2; neuter verbs with cognate, etc., subjects, 234, III.; w. cognate acc., 232, (1.); w. acc. of degree, etc., 232, (3.); w. abl. of agent, 184, 2; used impersonally, 184, 2; in the passive voice, 142, N. 2: participles of, 162, 18; neuters of possessive pronouns and adjs. instead of the genitive of their personal pronouns, or of a corresponding noun, 211, R. 8, (3.), (a.) and (b.)

Neutral passive verbs, 142, 3.

Neve or *neu*, 198, 8; after *ut* and *ne*, 262, N. 4.

Ni or *nisi*, 198, 5, R., (b.); *nisi*, 'except,' 261, R. 6; 277, R. 16; *nisi quod*, ib.; *nisi vero*, and *nisi forte*, 'unless perhaps,' ib.

Nihil, nihilum, 94; w. genitive, 212,R. 1; instead of *non*, 277, R. 2, (b.); 232, (3.); *nihil aliud quam* or *nisi*, 277, R. 16; *nihil*, acc. w. *æstimo* and *moror*, 214, N. 2 *nihil* w. *facio*, 214; as acc. of degree, 215, N. 3: 232, (3.); *nihil est quod*, etc., 264, 7, N. 2; *nihil abest, quin*, 262, N. 7; *nihil antiquius habeo* or *duco quam*, w. subj., 273, N. 1; *nihildum*, 277, I., R. 16.

Nimius, w. genit. or abl., 213. R. 5, (3.)

Nimio, w. comparatives, 256, R. 16; as abl. of price, 252, R. 3.

-*nis*, nouns in, gender of, 63, 1.

Nitor, w. abl., 245, II.; w. *in* or *ad*, 245, II., R. 2; w. inf. or subj., 273, 1, N. 1.

Nix, 56, R. 2; genit. sing., 78, (3.); genit. plur., 83, II., 3.

No, constr. of compds. of, 233, (3.), N.

Noctu or *nocte*, 253, N. 1.

Nolo, conjugated, 178, 2; constr., 273, 4; *noli* w. inf., paraphrasing the imperative, 267, N. and R. 3; *nollem*, meaning of, 260, II., R. 2.

Nomen est, constr., 226, R. 1; 211, R. 2, N.; *nomine*, without a prep. before the genitive following verbs of accusing, 217, R. 2, (b.); its place, 279, 9, (b.)

Nominative, 37; construction of, 209; 210; ellipsis of, 209, R. 1 and 2; wanting, 209, R. 3; w. inf., 209, R. 5; after interjections, 209, R. 13; formation in 3d decl. from the root, 56; plural, 3d decl., 83; of adjs. of 3d decl., 114. See Subject-nominative and Predicate-nominative.

Nomino, 230; pass., 210, R. 3, (3.)

Non, 191, R. 4; ellipsis of, after *non modo*, etc., followed by *ne quidem*, 277, R. 6; *non quo, non quod, non quin*, 262, R. 9; *non est quod, cur, quare*, or *quamobrem*, w. subj., 264, 7, N. 3; *non* before a negative word, 277, R. 3;—before *ne quidem*, 277, R. 6; position of, 279, 15, (b.); *non*, rare with the imperative, 267, R. 1; difference between *non* and *haud*, 191, R. 3; *non nemo, non nulli, non nihil, non numquam*, different from *nemo non*, etc., 277, R. 5, (c.); *non nihil*, to some extent, 232, (3.); *nonne*, 198, 11, R., (c.); *non modo—sed etiam*, and *non modo—sed*, equivalent to *non dicam—sed*, 277, R. 10; *non dubito, non est dubium, non ambigo, non procul, non abest, quin*, 262, 2, N. 7; *non quo non, non quod non*, or *non quia non*, instead of *non quin*; *non eo quod, non ideo quod, non quod*. 262, R. 9; *non priusquam, non nisi*, w. abl. absolute, 257, N. 4; *nondum*, 277, I., R. 16; *non* in the second member of adversative sentences without *et* or *vero*, 278, R. 11; *non nisi*, separated, 279, 3, (d.)

Nonæ, 'the Nones,' 326, 2.

Nonnullus, pronominal adj., 139, 5, (1.)

Nos, for *ego*, R. 7.

Nosco, 171, E. 6.

Noster, how declined, 139, 3.

Nostras, how declined, 139, 4, (b.)

Nostrum, how formed, 133, 3; different use of *nostrum* and *nostri*, 212, R. 2, N. 2.

'Not' and 'nor,' how expressed with the imperative, 267, R. 1; with subj., 260, R. 6, (b.)

Quidam, how declined, 138, 5; how used, 207, R. 33.

Quidem, its meaning, 191, R. 4; its place, 279, 3, (*d.*)

Quilibet, how declined, 138, 5; how used, 207, R. 34.

Quies and compds., gender, 61, 1; genit., 73, 4; 96.

Quin, 198, 8; w. subj., 262, R. 10; for a relative with *non*, ib., 1 and N. 6; for *ut non*, ib., 2; after *non dubito*, etc., *quin?* why not? w. indic., ib., N. 9.

Quippe, 198, 7, R., (*b.*); *quippe qui*, w. subj., 264, 8, (2.)

Quippiam, 138, 3, (*a.*)

Quiqui, 136, R. 4.

Quiris, genit. sing., 74, E. 4; genit. plur., 83, II., 5.

Quis, declined, 137; difference of *quis* and *qui*, 137, 1; between *quis* and *uter*, 212, R. 2, N. 1; *quis est qui?* w. subj., 264, 8, (2.); between *quis* and *aliquis*, 207, R. 30, (*b.*)

Quisnam, *quinam*, how declined, 137, 2.

Quispiam, how declined, 138, 3; how used, 207, R. 30; *quippiam*, w. genit., 212, R. 3, N. 1.

Quisquam, how declined, 138, 3; how used, 207, R. 31; *quicquam* and *quidquam*, w. genit., 212, R. 3; acc. of degree, 231, R. 5, (*a.*); 232, (3.)

Quisque, how declined, 138, 3; how used, 207, R. 35; with plur. verb, 209, R. 11, (4.); its place, 279, 14; w. a superlative, 207, R. 35, (*b.*); in apposition, 204, R. 10.

Quisquis, declined, 136, 4; its use, 207, R. 29; difference between *quisquis* and *quicumque*, 207, R. 29; w. indic, 259, R. 4, (3.)

Quivis, how declined, 138, 5; how used, 207, R. 34.

Quo, the correlative adv., 191, R. 1; *quo*, w. a comparative, 256, R. 16, (2.); for *ut eo*, w. subj., 262, R. 9; as adv. of place, w. genitive, 212, R. 4, N. 2, (*b.*); *quo mihi hanc rem*, 209, R. 4; 228, R. 5; *quo secius*, 262, R. 11, N.; *quo ne*, 262, R. 5.

Quoad, w. subj., 263, 4; w. *ejus*, 212, R. 4, R. 5.

Quocum, *quacum*, etc., instead of *cum quo*, etc., 241, R. 1.

Quod, causal conj., 198, 7; construction of, 273, 5; refers to past time, 273, (6.); w. subj. of *dico*, *puto*, etc., 266, 3, R.; *quod sciam*, etc., 264, 3; *quod*, referring to a preceding statement, 206, (14); 273, 6, (*a.*); w. genit., 212, R. 3; before *si*, *nisi*, etc., 206, (14); as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

Quojus and *quoi*, for *cujus* and *cui*, 136, R. 2.

Quoque and *etiam*, difference between, 198, 1, R., (*d.*); place of *quoque*, 279, 3, (*d.*)

Quot, indecl., 115, 4; interrogative, 121, 5; 139, 5, (3.); constr., 206, (16); *quot sunt, qui?* 264, 7, N. 2; *quotquot*, w. indic., 259, R. 4, (3.)

Quoteni and *quotus*, interrogative, 121, 5.

Quoties, interrog. adv., 121, 5.

Quotus-quisque, its meaning, 207, R. 35, (*a.*)

Quum, correlative of *tum*, 191, R. 7; instead of *postquam*, 253, N. 4; — conj., 198, 10; constr., 263, 5, and R. 1—4.

R.

R, before *s* in roots of nouns, 56, R. 1; nouns in *r*, genitive of, 70, 71; changed to *s* before *s* and *t*, 171, 3; *r* final, quantity of, 299, 2.

Rapio, w. dat. or abl., 224, R. 2.

Rarum est, *ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 3.

Rastrum, plur. *rastri* or *rastra*, 92, 5.

Ratio, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., R. 1, (1.); *ratione*, as abl. of manner, without *cum*, 247, 2.

Ratum est, *ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 2; *ratum*, pr., 284, E. 1, (2.)

-re in 2d person sing. of passive voice, 162, 3.

Re or *red*, inseparable prep., 196, (*b.*); 197, 18; quantity of, 285, R. 3, (*a.*)

Reapse, 135, R. 3.

Recens, abl. of, 113, E. 3 and R. 1; also adverb, 192, 4, (*b.*)

Receptio, constr., 233, R. 2, N.

Recingor, w. acc., 234, R. 1.

Recordor, w. genit. or acc., 216; w. pres. inf., 268, R. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.

Recte, instead of abl. of price, 252, R. 3.

Reckoning, Roman mode of, 326, 327.

Rectum est, *ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 3.

Recuso quin, and *quominus*, 262, N. 7 and R. 11; w. *ne*, 271, R. 1; w. inf., ib., N., and 271, N. 1.

Reddo, w. two accs., 230, N. 1; pass. 210, R. 3, (3), (*b.*); w. perf. pass. part., 274, R. 4.

Redoleo, w. acc., 232, (2.)

Redundant nouns, 99; adjs., 116; 109, N.; 111, N.; verbs, 185.

Redundo, w. abl., 250, 2, (2.)

Reduplication, 163, R.; of compound verbs, 163, E. 1; of verbs of 1st conj., 165, R. 2; of 2d conj., 168, N. 2; of 3d conj., 171, E. 1, (*b.*); quantity of, 284, E. 2.

Refero, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.

Refert and *interest*, w. genit., 214; 219; w. the adj. pronouns *mea*, etc., 219, R. 1; w. *ad.* etc., 219, R. 3; *refert*, pr., 285, R. 3.

Refertus, w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.)

Reflexive pronouns, 132, 4; 139, R. 2; how used, 208; for demonstratives, 208, (6.); ellipsis of, 229, R. 4; in oratio obliqua, 266, R. 3.

Reformido, w. inf., 271, N. 1.

Regno, w. genit., 220, 4.

Regnum, declined, 46.

Rego, conjugated, 158.

Relative adjs., 104, 13; 139, R.; government of, 213, R. 1; 222, 3; adverbs, w. subj., expressing a purpose, 264, 5, R. 2; used indefinitely, w. subj., 264, R. 3.

Relative pronouns, 136; agreement of, 206, R. 19; ellipsis of, 206, (5.); in the case of the antecedent, 206, (6.), (*a.*); referring to nouns of different genders, 206, (9.);—to a proposition, 206, (13.); agreeing with a noun implied, 206, (11); number and gender of, when referring to two or more nouns, 206, (15.);—relative clauses used as circumlocutions and to express the English 'so called,' 206, (19); relative adverbs for relative pronouns, 206, (20); the relative adjs. *quot*, *quantus*, etc., construction of,

206, (16); *qui* with *sum*, instead of *pro*, 206, (18); person of, 209, R. 6; 206, R. 19;— w. subj., 264; their place, 279, 13; 280, III., (2.); relatives as connectives, 280, III., (1.); 198, II.

Resolving, verbs of, 273, 1, (*a*.)

Relinquo, w. two datives, 227, R. 1; w. part. in *dus*, 274, R. 7; *relinquitur*, w. *ut* and the subj., 262, R. 3, N. 1.

Reliqua, acc., 234, II., R. 3; *reliquum est ut*, 262, R. 3.

Reminiscor, constr., 216.

Remitto, 229, R. 4, 1.

Removing, verbs of, w. abl., 251.

Remuneror, w. abl., 249, I., R. 1.

Renuncio, w. two accs., 230, N. 1; pass., 210, R. 3, (3.), (*b*.)

Repeated words, their place, 279, 4.

Repens, abl. of, 113, E. 3.

Reperio, w. two accs., 230, N. 1;—*reperior*, 210, R. 3, (3.), (*c*.); 271, R. 2;—*reperiuntur*, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.

Repo, constr. of compds. of, 233, (3.), N.

Repono, 241, R. 5.

Reposco, w. two accs., 231, R. 1.

Repugno, with *quominus* or *ne*, 262, R. 11.

Res, declined, 90; use of, 205, R. 7, (2.), N. 1.

Reses, genit. sing. of, 112, 1; defective, 115, 2.

Resipio, w. acc., 232, (2.)

Responsives, case of, 204, R. 11.

Respublica, declined, 91.

Restat, *ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 1.

Rete, abl. of, 82, E. 1, (*b*.)

Retracto, constr., 229, R. 4. 1.

Reus, w. genit., 213, R. 1, (3.); *reum agere* or *facere*, w. genit., 217, R. 1.

Rhetoric, figures of, 324.

Rhus, genit. of, 76, E. 3; acc. of, 80, II.

Rhythm, 308, (1.)

Rideo, w. acc., 232, N. 1.

-rimus, *-ritis*, quantity of, 290, E., (1.), 4.

-rimus, superlatives in, 125, 1.

Ritu, as abl. of manner without *cum*, 247. 2.

Rivers, gender of names of, 28.

-rix, verbals in, 102, 6; (*a*.) See *tor* and *trix*.

● *Rogo*, w. two accs., 231, R. 1; w. *ut*, 273, N. 4; 274, R. 7; without *ut*, 262, R. 4; constr. in pass., 234, I.

Roman day, 326, 1;—hour, ib.:—month, 326, 2;—names of the months, 326, 2, (1);—calendar table of, 326, 2, (6), p. 369;—week, 326, 2, (10); names of the days of the week, ib.;—year, how designated, 326, 2, (11);—money, weights and measures, 327;—tables of weights, etc., 327, pp. 370—373;—coins, 327, p. 371;—interest, how computed, ib.

Root or crude form of words inflected, what and how found, 40, 10; formation of nominative sing. from in 3d decl., 56, I. and II.

Roots of verbs, 150; general, 150, 1; special, 150, 2; second and third, how formed, 150, 3 and 4; third, how determined when there is no supine, 151, N.; first, its derivatives, 151, 1; irregularities in

tenses formed from, 162, 1—6; second, do., 151, 2; irregularities in tenses formed from, 162, 7—10; third, do., 151, 3; second and third, formation of, 1st conj., 164—166; 2d conj., 167—170; 3d conj., 171—174; 4th conj., 175—177; second and third irregular, 1st conj., 165; 2d conj., 168; 4th conj., 176.

-rs, nouns in, genitive sing. of, 77, 2, (2.); genit. plur. of, 83, II., 4.

Rudis, 213, R. 1, and R. 4, (2.); 275, III., R. 1, (2.)

Rupes, declined, 57.

Rus, construed like names of towns, in acc., 237, R. 4; in abl., 254; 255; cf. 82, E. 5, (*b*.); *rure*, not *ruri* with an adj., 255, R. 1.

-rus, participle in, how declined, 105, R. 2; its signification, 162. 14; 274, 2, R. 6; with *sim* and *essem* serving as future subjunctives, 162, R. 3; with *esse* and *fuisse*, 162, 14, R. 3; 268, R. 4; genitive plur. of, 162, 19; denotes intention, 274, R. 6; used for an English clause connected by 'since, when,' etc., ib.; as an apodosis, ib.

Rutum, pr., 284, E. 1, (2.)

S.

S, sound of, 11; added to some roots of nouns of 3d decl., 56, I.; added to roots of verbs ending in a consonant, 171; used instead of *t* in the 3d root of some verbs, 171, E. 5; inserted in some verbals, 102, 5, (*b*.); *s* preceded by a consonant, nouns in, gender of, 62; 64; genit. of, 77; final, elided, 305, 2.

Sacer, w. genit. or dat., 222, R. 2, (*a*.)

Sacerdos, gender of, 30; 61, 3.

Sæpe, comparison of, 194, 5.

Sal, 82, E. 1, (*b*.), and 66, E.; 96, 9; pr., 284, N. 1.

Salio, constr. of compds. of, 233, (3.), N.

Saltem, 193, II., 3.

Saluto, w. two accs., 230, N. 1; *salutor*, w. two nominatives, 210, R. 3, (3.)

Salve, 183, 9.

Samnis, genit. sing., 74, E. 4; genit. plur., 83, II., 5.

Sapio, w. acc., 232, (2.)

Sapphic verse, 304, 2; 315, II.

Sat, indecl., 115, 4; *satis*, w. genit., 212, R. 4; *satis esse*, w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., R. 2, (1); *satis habeo*, and *satis mihi est*, w. perf. infin., 268, R. 2; *satis erat*, indic. instead of subj., 259, R. 3; degrees of comparison, 126, 4.

Satago, w. genit., 215, (2.)

Satelles, gender of, 30; 61, 2.

Satiatus, w. abl. or genit., 213, R. 5, (3.)

Satisdo, w. *damni infecti*, 217, R. 3, (*c*.); w. dat., 225, I.

Satisfacio, w. dat., 225, I.

Satum, pr., 284, E. 1, 2.

Saturnalibus, for *ludis Saturnalibus*, 253, N. 1.

Satur, how declined, 105, R. 1; w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.)

Saturo, w. abl., 249, I., R. 1; w. genit. poet., 220, 3.

spes, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, ii., r. 1, (1.); *spe,* after comparatives, 256, r. 9; its place, 279, n. 1.

Spolio, w. abl., 251, n.

Spondaic verse, 310; tetrameter, 312.

Spondeo, 163, r.; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.

Stanza, 319. 4.

Statim, 193, ii., 1.

Statuo, 241, r. 5; 278, n. 1; 271, n. 3; 272, n. 1; *statutum habeo,* 274, r. 4.

Statum, pr., 284, e. 1, (2.)

Sterilis, w. genit. or abl., 213, r. 5, (2); w. *ad,* 213, r. 4. (2.)

Steti and *stiti,* pr., 284, e. 1, (1.)

'Still,' w. comparatives, how expressed in Latin, 256, r. 9, (b.)

Stipulor, 217, r. 3, (c.)

Sto, 163, r.; w. genit. of price, 214, r. 3; w. pred. nom., 210, r. 3, (2.); w. abl., 245, ii., 5, and r. 2; *stat per me,* construction of, 262, r. 11; compds. of, 233, (3.), n.

Strophe, 319, 4.

Studeo, w. dat., 223, r. 2; with gerund, 275, iii., r. 2, (1.); with the inf. with or without an accusative, 271, r. 4; w. *ut,* 273, 4, (a.); w. acc. *id,* 232, (3.)

Studiosus, w. genit., 213, r. 1; 275, iii., r. 1, (2.)

Studium, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, ii., r. 1, (1.)

Styx, gender of, 28. e.

Suadeo, constr., 273, n. 4; 262, r. 4.

Sub, in composition, force of, 122; government of, 235, (2); constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, r. 1, (b.)

Subject of a verb, 140; of a proposition, 201; 202; simple, complex, and compound, 202; its place in a sentence, 279, r. 2; subject of a dependent clause made the object of the leading verb, 229, r. 5, (a.)

Subject-nominative, 209; ellipsis of, 209, r. 1 and 2; when wanting, 209, r. 3; w. inf., 209, r. 5; 239, n. 1; two or more in the singular with a plural verb, 209, r. 12; (2.)

Subject-accusative, 239; ellipsis of, 239, r. 1—3; considered also as the accusative of the object after verbs of saying, showing, and believing, 272, r. 6.

Subjective genitive, 211, r. 2; possessive pronoun used instead of, 211, r. 3.

Subjectus, w. dat., 222, r. 1, (b.)

Subjunctive, 143, 2; its tenses, 145, r. 2; how used, 260—266, and 273; various use of its tenses, 260; how translated, 260, i. and ii., r. 1; for imperative, 260, r. 6; in impersonal verbs, 184, r. 2; in conditional clauses, 261; after particles, 262 and 263; after *qui,* 264; after relative advs., 264, r. 2; indefinite subj., 264, 12 and n.; in indirect questions, 265; in inserted clauses, 266; in oratio obliqua, 266, 1 and 2; after what verbs used, 273; after adjectives, 213, r. 4; exchanged for acc. w. inf., 273, 3, (b.); subjunctive in doubtful questions, 260, r. 5; in repeated actions after relative pronouns and adverbs, 264, 12

Subito, 193, ii., 1.

Subordinate conjunctions, 198, ii.;—propositions, 201, 6 and 7.

Substantive, 26—103; substantive pronouns, 132, 138; their gender, 132, 8; declined, 133; as subject nominative, ellipsis of, 209, r. 1; dat. of, redundant, 228, n.; substantive verb, 153; substantive clauses, 201, 7 and 8; 229, r. 5; 231, r. 2, (b.); substantive clause instead of the abl. after *opus est,* 243, r. 1; and after *dignus* and *indignus,* 244, r. 2, (b.)

Subter, constr., 235, (4.)

Subtractive expressions in numerals, 118, 4; 120, 2, 3, and 5.

Succenseo, 223, r. 2; w. *quod,* 273, n. 6.

Sufficio, w. dat. of gerund, 275, iii., r. 2, (1.)

Sui, signification of, 132, 4; declined, 133; use of, 208; 266, r. 3; 275, ii., r. 1, (4.)

Sultis for *si vultis,* 183, r. 3.

Sum, why called an auxiliary, 153; why substantive, ib.; why the copula, 140, 4; conjugated, 153; compds. of, 154, r. 5—r. 7; w. a genit. of quality, 211, r. 6, (7); in expressions denoting part, property, duty, etc., 211, r. 8, (3); 275, r. 1, (5); denoting degree of estimation, 214; w. dat., 226; with two datives, 227; how translated, 227, r. 3; w. abl. denoting in regard to, 250, r. 3; w. an abl. of place, manner, etc., in the predicate, 210, r. 3, (1); w. dat. of gerund, 275, r. 2, (1); w. abl. of price, 252, r. 1; w. genit. of value, 214; *sunt qui,* w. subj., 264, 6; *sunt quidam, nonnulli,* etc., 264, 6, r. 4; ellipsis of as copula, 209, r. 4 *fin.;* of *esse* and *fuisse,* 270, r. 3; *sum* w. predicate nom., etc., 210, r. 3, (1); *esse* w. predicate nom., 271, n. 2. and r. 4.

Sumo, w. two accs., 230, r. 2; poet. w. inf., 271, n. 3.

Supellex, genitive of, 78, 2, (2); abl. of, 82, r. 5, (a.)

Super, constr., 235, (3); of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, r. 1, (b.)

Superfluo, w. abl., 250, 2, (2), r. 1.

Superjacio, constr., 233, (1.)

Superlative degree, 122, 6; particular use of, 122, r. 4; formation of, 124; by *maxime,* 127, 1; superlative with *quisque,* 207, r. 35; w. partitive genit., 212, r. 2, and r. 4, n. 7; place of, 296, (7), (b.)

Supero, w. abl., 256, r. 16, (3.)

Supersedeo, w. abl., 242.

Superstes, genit. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 113, e. 2; 115, 1, (a.); 126, 5, (b.); w. genit. or dat., 222, r. 2, (a.)

Supersum, w. dat., 224, 11; *superest ut,* etc., 262, r. 3, n. 1.

Superus, its degrees of comparison, 125, 4; *supremus* or *summus,* 205, r. 17; *summum* used adverbially, 205, r. 10; 234, ii., r. 3.

Supines, 25 and 143, 3; few in number, 162, 11; in *um,* by what cases followed, 276, i.; on what verbs dependent, 276, ii., w. *eo,* 276, ii., r. 2 and 3; supines in *u,* after what adjs., 276, iii., and r. 1; after *fas, nefas,* and *opus,* 276, iii.. r. 2; of two syllables, quantity of, 284, e. 1.

in genit. plur. 3d decl., 83; 114;—**advs.** in, 192, II., 4. (*b.*)
Uncia, 327, p. 372.
-*undus*, participles in, 162, 20.
Unde domo, 255, R. 1.
Umquam, 191, II.; *umquam*, *usquam*, *usque*, *uspiam*, 191, R. 6.
-*untis*, in genit. of Greek nouns, 76, E. 6.
Unus, declined, 107; when used in plur., 118, R. 2; added to superlatives, 127, N. 2; *unus et alter*, with verbs singular, 209, R. 12; w. relative and subj., 264, 10; for *solum*, *tantum*, etc., 205, R. 15. (*b.*); *unum*, as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)
Unusquisque, how declined, 138, 4.
-*ur*, nouns in, gender of, 66, 67; genit. of, 70, 71.
-*ura*, verbals in, 102, 7, R. 2.
Urbs, in apposition to names of towns, 237, R. 2, (*b.*)
-*urio*, verbs in, 187, II., 3.
-*uris*, genitives in, 76, E. 3.
-*us*, nouns in, of 2d decl., 46; exceptions in, 49—51; voc. sing. of, 46, N. and 52; of 3d decl., gender of, 66; 67; genitive of, 76; Greek genit. in, 69, E. 3; nouns in of 4th decl., 87—89; participles in, how declined, 105, R. 2; verbals in, 102, 7; final, quantity of, 301.
Usitatum est, *ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 3.
Uspiam, *usquam*, *usque*, 191, R. 6; *usquam*, w. genit., 212, R. 4, N. 2; *usque*, w. acc., 195, R. 3; 235, R. 9.
Usus, w. abl., 243; *usu venit*, *ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 1; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., R. 1. (1.)
Ut or *uti*, a conj., 198, 8; *ut non* and *ut ne*, ib.; w. subj., 262; its correlatives, 262, II. 1; ellipsis of, 262, R. 4; its meaning after *metuo*, etc., 262, R. 7; *ut non*, 262, R. 5, and R. 6, 2; *ut—ita* or *sic*, 277, R. 12, (*b.*); *ut*, 'as,' ellipsis of, 277, R. 17; *ut*, 'even if,' and *ut non*, w. subj., 262, R. 2; *ut* with certain impersonal verbs and subj., 262, R. 3; in questions expressing indignation, 270, R. 2, (*a.*); *ut*, *ut primum*, etc., with the historical perf., indic., instead of the pluperf., 259, R. 1, (*d.*); its place, 279, 3, (*b.*); *ut* after *est* with a predicate adj., 262, R. 3, N. 4; *ut credo*, *ut puto*, etc., in interposed clauses, 277, I., R. 17; *ut*, 'because,' 277, I., R. 12, (*b.*); *ut qui*, 264, 8, 2; *ut si*, w. subj., 263, 2; *ut ita dicam*, 207, R. 33, (*b.*) *fin.*; *ut*, 'as if,' w. abl. absolute, 257, N. 4; *utut*, w. indic., 259, R. 4, (3); ellipsis of *ut* when *ne* precedes and *et*, etc., follow, 278, N. 6, (*c.*)
Utcumque, w. indic., 259, R. 4, (3.)
Uter, how declined, 107; w. dual genit., 212, R. 2, N. 1.
Utercumque, how declined, 107.
Uterlibet, *uterque*, and *utervis*, their meaning and declension, 107; 139, 5, (1), (*b.*); *uterque*, use of, 207, R. 32; *uterque*, w. plur. verb, 209, R. 11, (4.)
Utilis, w. dat., 222, R. 1; 275, III., R. 2; w. *ad*, 222, R. 4, (1.); *utile est ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 3; *utilis*, w. inf. poetically, 270, R. 1.(*b.*); 275, R. 2; *utilius fuit*, indic. instead of subj., 259, R. 3; w. supine in *u*, 276, III., R. 1.

Utinam and *uti*, w. subj., 263, 1.
-*utis*, genitives in, 76, E. 2; 112, 2.
Utor, w. abl., 245; w. acc., 245, I., R.; w. two ablatives, 245, N.; *utor*, *fruor*, etc., their gerundives, 275, II., R. 1.
Utpote qui, w. subj., 264, 8, (2.)
Utrique, how used, 107, R. 32, (*c.*)
Utrum and *utrumne*, 198, 11.
-*utus*, adjectives in, 128, 7.
-*uus*, adjectives in, 129, 3.
-*ux*, nouns in, genit. of, 78, 2, (5.)
Uxor, ellipsis of, 211, R. 7.

V.

V, changed to *u*, 163, 2; sometimes dropped in forming the 2d root of verbs of the 3d conj., 171, E. 4.
Vaco, 250, 2, R. 1.
Vacuus, w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.); cf. 251, N.
Vado, constr., 225, IV.; 232, N. 1; 233, (3.), N. 1.
Væ, w. dat., 228, 3; w. acc., 238, 2.
Valde, 127, 2.
Valeo, w. abl., 250, 2, R. 1; 252; w. acc., 252, R. 4; *valere* or *vale dico*, w. dat., 225, I., N.; w. inf. 271, N. 1.
Validus, 213, R. 5, (4.)
Valuing, verbs of, 214, R. 2; w. genit., 214; w. abl. 252, R. 1.
Vapulo, 142, R. 3.
Variable nouns, 92; adjs., 122.
Vas, genit. of, 72, E. 1; gender of, 62, E. 1, and E. 2; 93, 2.
-*ve*, 198, 2, and N. 1, p. 76; place of, 279, 3, (*c.*)
Vehor, compds. of. 233, (3.), N.
Vel, 198, 2; difference between *vel* and *aut*, 198, R.; *vel* w. superlative degree, 127, 4; w. comparatives, 256, R. 9, (*b.*)
Velim, w. subj. without *ut*, 260, R. 4; 262, R. 4.
Vellem, how used, 260, R. 2.
Velox, constr., 222, R. 4, (2.)
Velut, *velut si*, *veluti*, w. subj., 263, 2; *velut*, 'as if,' w. abl. absolute, 257, N. 4.
Venalis, w. abl. of price, 252.
Vendo, w. abl., 252; w. genit., 214, R. 3, N. 1.
Veneo, 142, R. 3; 252; 214, R. 3, N. 1.
Venio, w. two datives, 227, R. 1; w. *ad* or *in*, 225, IV.; w. dat., 225. R. 2; *venit mihi in mentem*, constr., 211, R. 8, (5); 216, R. 3.
Venitur, conjugated, 184, 2, (*b.*)
Verbal terminations, 152; nouns, 102; w. acc., 233, R. 2, N.; of place, 237, R. 1; w. dat., 222, R. 8; w. abl. of place, 255; w. genit. of personal pronouns, 211, R. 3, (*a.*); verbal adjs., 129.
Verbs, 140—189; subject of, 140, 1; active or transitive, 141, I.; neuter or intransitive, 141, II.; neuter passive, 142, 2; neutral passive, 142, 3; deponent, 142, 4; common, 142, 4, (*b.*); principal parts of, 151, 4; neuter, participles of, 162, 16; inceptive, 173; desiderative, 187, II., 3; 176, N.; irregular, 178—182; defective, 188; re-

dundant, 185; verbs spelled alike, or having the same perfect or supine, 186; derivation of, 187; imitative, 187, 3; frequentative, 187, II.. 1; inceptive, 187, II., 2; desiderative, 187, II., 3; diminutive, 187, II., 4; intensive, 187, II.. 5; 187, II., 1, (e.); composition of, 188; changes in composition, 189; compounds from simples not in use, 189, N. 4; agreement of, 209, (b.); ellipsis of, 209, R. 4; person of with qui, 209, R. 6; agreeing with predicate nominative, 209, R. 9; with collective nouns, 209. R. 11; plural with two or more nominatives, 209, R. 12; after uterque, etc., 209, R. 11, (4); after a nominative with cum and the abl., 209, R. 12, (6); after nominatives connected by aut, 209, R. 12, (5); their place in a sentence, 279, 2; in a period, 280.

Vere and *vero*, 192, 4, N. 1.
Vereor, w. genit. poet., 220, 1; w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, R. 7; w. inf., 271, N. 1.
Verisimile est ut, 262, R. 3, N. 3; w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2.
Veritum est, w. acc., 229, R. 6.
Vero, use of in answers, 192, 4, N. 1; 198, 9. R., (a.); ellipsis of, 278, R. 11; its place, 279, 3, (c.)
Verses, 304; combinations of in poems, 319.
Versification, 302.
Versus, w. acc., 195, R. 3; 235, R. 9; place of, 279, 10, (f.)
Verto, constr., 225, IV.; w. two datives, 227, R. 1; 229, R. 4, 1.
Verum est, ut, 262, R. 3, N. 3; w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2; *verum*, conj., 192, 9; its place, 279, 3; *verum* and *verum-tamen*, 'I say,' 278, R. 10; *verum enimvero*, 198, 9, R., (a.); *vero* after comparatives, 256, R. 9.
Vescor, with abl., 245, I.; with acc., 245, I., R.
Vespere, or *-ri*, 253, N. 1.
Vester, how declined, 139, 1; *vestrûm*, 133, 3; used after partitives, 212, R. 2, N. 2.
Vestio, 229, R. 4, 1.
Veto, 273, 2. (d.); 262, R. 4; w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.
Vetus, declension of, 112, 2; its superlative, 125, 1; 126, 3.
Viâ, abl. of place without *in*, 254, R. 3.
Vicem for *vice*, 247. 1, N. 3.
Viciniæ, genit. of place, 221, R. 3, (4.); 212, R. 4, N. 2, (b.)
Vicinus, w. dat. or genit., 222, R. 2, (a.)
Victrix, 115, 1, (b.); how declined as an adj., 129, 8.
Videlicet and *scilicet*, 198, 7, R., (a.); pr. 285, R. 4, N. 2.
Video, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1; w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, N. 3; *videres*, 260, R. 2; *video* for *curo*, w. *ut*, 273, N. 1; *videor*, constr., 271, R. 2; 272, R. 6.
Viduus, constr., 213, R. 5, (4); 250, 2, (1.)
Vigeo, w. abl., 250, 2, R. 1.
Vigil, abl. of, 113, E. 3; genit. plur. of, 114, E. 2; 115, 1, (a.)
Vigiliæ, 326, 1, (2.)

Vigilias, vigilare, 232.
Vilis, w. abl. of price, 252.
Vir, how declined, 48, 2.
Virgilius, voc. of, 52; accent of, 14, E.
Virgo, declined, 57.
Virus, gender of, 51.
Vis, declined, 85; acc. sing. of, 79, 2; abl. sing., 82, E. 2; genit. plur., 83, II., 3; 94; *vi* and *per vim*, difference between, 247, 3, R. 4; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., R. 1, (1.)
Vitabundus, w. acc., 233, R. 2, N.
Vitam vivere, 232, (1.)
Vitio creati magistratus, 247, 2.
Vivo, w. abl., 245, II., 4; w. pred. nom., 210. R. 3, (2); *tertia vivitur ætas*, 234, III.
Vix, with part. fut. pass., 274, R. 12; *vizdum*, 277, I., R. 16.
Vocative, 37; sing., its form, 40, 3; plur., 40, 4; ellipsis of, 240, R. 2.
Voco, constr., 225, R. 1; 230, N. 1; pass., 210, R. 3, (3.)
Voices, 141.
Volucer, in genit. plur., 108, R. 2.
Volo, (are), compds. of, 233, (3), N.
Volo, conjugated, 178, 1; w. perf. inf., 268, R. 2; w. perf. part., and ellipsis of *esse*, 269, R. 3; its construction, 271, R. 4, and N. 4; 273, 4; 262, R. 4; *volens*, w. dat. of person, 226, R. 3; *volo bene* and *male alicui*, 225, I., N.; *volo*, w. reflexive pron., 228, N., (b.)
Voluntary agent of pass. verbs. 248, I.; ellipsis of, 141, R. 2; 248, I., R. 1; when expressed by *per* and acc., 247, R. 4; of neuter verbs, 248, R. 2; dative of voluntary agent, 225, II. and III.
Volutum, pr., 284, R. 3.
Vos, see *tu*, 133.
Voti and *votorum damnati*; 217, R. 3.
Vowels, 3, 1; sounds of, 7 and 8; vowel, before a mute and liquid, its quantity, 13, 6, and 283, IV., E. 2; before another vowel, quantity of, 13, 3, and 283, I.; in Greek words, 283, E. 6; before two consonants, 13, 5, and 283, IV.; ending first part of a compound, quantity of, 285, R. 4.
Vulgus, gender of, 51; 95.
Vultur, gender of, 67.

W.

W, not used in Latin, 2, 4.
Weight, acc. of, 236, R. 7; weights, Roman, 327.
Willingness, verbs of, constr., 273, 4.
Winds, gender of names of. 28.
Wishing. verbs of, constr., 271, R. 4.
Words, division of, 17—23; arrangement of, 279; gender of as mere words, 34, 3.
Writers in different ages, 329.

X

X, sound of, 12; its equivalents, 3, 2; 56, R. 2; 171, 1; in syllabication, 18, 4; nouns in, gender of, 62 and 65; genitive of, 78, 2.